
ARMA PACIS FVLCRA


ARMA PACIS FVLCRA


BARRIEF · ÆTATIS SVÆ * 42
VERA EFFIGIES GVILIELMI
Though this Effigies here does Represent
and Portray forth his faces Liniament
Yet Read his Booke and you therin will find
that he hath Pictur'd there a Soldiers minde

1661

MILITARIE DISCIPLINE:

OR THE YOUNG

ARTILLERY-MAN.

VVherein is discourſed and Shown

the *Poſtures* both of *Musket* and *Pike*,
the Exacteſt way, &c.

Together with the Exerciſe of the Foot in their *Motions*,
with much variety: As alſo, diverſe and ſeveral *Formes* for the
Imbatteling ſmall or greater *Bodies*, demonſtrated by the Num-
ber of a ſingle *Company*, with the *Reducements*: Very ne-
ceſſary for all ſuch as are Studious in
the *Art Military*.

Whereunto is alſo added, the *Poſtures* and *Beneficial Vſe* of the *Half-Pike*,
joyned with the *Musket*. With the way to draw-up the *Swediſh Brigade*.

As alſo, MARS *his Triumph*.

And in this laſt *Edition* is added,
Some brief Inſtructions *for the Exerciſing of the* Cavalry, *or* Horſe-Troopes.

The Sixth Edition, Newly Reviſed and Enlarged,
By
Colonel *William Barriffe*.

Pſal. 144. 1.
Bleſſed be the Lord my ſtrength, which teacheth my hands to War, and my Fingers to Fight.

London, Printed by *Gartrude Dawſon*, 1661.

~~War 1156.61~~
War 2026.61*

1864 Dec 20
The Hon ble
Theophilus Parsons LL D
Prof in Harvard University
Ob 6 1865

TO THE

RIGHT HONORABLE, *ALGERNON*,

Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord of the *Honours* of *Cockermouth*, and *Petworth*, Lord *Percy*, *Lucy*, *Poynings*, *Fitzpaine*, *Bryan*, and *Latimer*, Knight of the Noble Order of the *Garter*, Lord High Admirall of *England*, *Ireland*, and *Wales*, and of the *Dominions* and *Iles* of the same, of the Town of *Calis*, and the *Marches* of the same; of *Normandy*, *Gascoigne*, and *Aquitaine*, Lord General of the Navy, and Seas, of the said Kingdoms of *England* and *Ireland*, one of the Lords of his *Majesties* most Honourable Privie Counsel, and Lord Lieutenant of *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, and *Westmerland*.

Right Honourable,

THe *Glory* of the *Meridian Sun* is the more resplendently set off by the *foile* and *darknesse* of a *Shadow*; which is a perpetual *follower* of his *light*: as my *ambition* in all humble Service, is devoted to your Lordship. The memory of so many *Heroical Ancestors*, as (in all *Ages*) have enobliz'd your *potent Family*; together with their *Martial* and *Renowned Atchievements*, do for ever stand recorded in the *Book* of *Honour* and *Fame*. And that (were occasion fairly offered) your Honour hath *Spirit* and *Bravery* enough, in a *Military emulation*, to arrive up to the height of their *glory*: Your constant and noble *Deportments* (as well in your private *carriage*, as of late in your publick *Triumph*, when you were *installed* into that most *Noble Order* of the *Garter*) do most evidently presage of you. This as it hath attracted all eyes and expectations; So hath it encouraged my *low ambition* (amongst the rest) to esteem your Honour a fit Patron for a Book of this Nature. Your *innate* and *inbred Vertues*, together with that *Courtesie*, *Noblenesse* and *Affability*, (the inseparable *companions* of *anciently descended Honour*) speak you so easie of access, that my *Young Artillery-man* despaireth not of acceptance and admission to kiss the hands of your *Great Lordship*. The *first Fruits* it is of my weak *endeavours*, and the experiments of my private observations. Such as it is, my humble Request to your good *Lordship*, that out of the accustomed *freedom* and *goodnesse* of your *nature*, you would be pleased to daign *acceptance* of it: Even the *acceptance* and *patronage* of this Sixth *Edition*, as you pleased to do of the Five former. Which as it may be an ample testimony of the continuance of your *Honourable Favours* to the *Authour*, So this my *Dedication* shall give *assurance* to the World of the continuance and redoubling of my former *devotions* and *obligations*; and how well I was pleased that so great a *Peer* vouchsafed the *Patronage* of the former. And I withal beseech yonr *Honour*, to give *pardon* unto that *presumption*, which hath proceeded from *devotion*. I confess it an *ambition* in me, to *soar so loftily* in my *Dedication*; But as *Alexander*, sometimes, refused not a mean *Present* of *Fruit* from the hands of a simple *Gardner*; so my hope is, your *Honour* will hold me excused for offering so *worthless* and *mean* a *Mite* to so *Great* and *Honourable* a *Personage*. Especially, considering that the *subject* of my *Discourse* is intended for the *bettering of the Souldiers knowledge of the Trained Bands*; and that your *Lordship* is one of his Majesties *Lieutenants*, it may prove a good *inducement* to your *Honours* liking (who are known to be so great a *lover* of your *Country*) to *vouchsafe* the *Protection* and *Patronage* of these my endeavours, whereby I shall for ever stand *obliged* in all *humility*, and remain,

Your Honours most humble and devoted Servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To the Right VVorſhipful, Sir *Ralph Boſvile*, Knight: Captain of a Select Company of *Foot*, in the County of KENT.

YOu may be pleaſed to remember (*Noble* Sir) *how often you have* importun'd *me to write* ſomething (*by way of inſtruction*) *for the* bettering of the Judgements of ſuch young Gentlemen and Souldiers, whoſe minds ſtand this way affected. *And although* (*for my own part*) *I can better mannage the* Pike *than the* Pen; *yet that I might not be wanting in all acknowledgement, I have taken upon me to ſatisfie your Requeſt, which ſhall ever carry the* Authority *of a* Command with it. *Expect not* (*I beſeech you* Sir) *to find my* Book *ſet forth with* fine Phraſes, *nor to be dekt with* Hiſtorical Diſcourſes *of* Forreign Fought Battels, *this being the only thing by me intended in it, to ſet forth the* Exact Grounds *of this our* Modern Diſcipline, *for the* Exerciſing of a Foot Company. *Nor is it to be eſteemed a* ſmall Advancement *to the Knowledge of the* Art Military; *even to have taught this* little, *ſeeing it muſt be confeſſed to have been one of the chiefeſt* Means, *to make* Philip *from a* poor Prince, *to become a* powerful Monarch; *and his Son* Alexander, a mighty Conqueror. *I mean his* exact obſervance *of the* true Grounds of Military Diſcipline, *which beginneth with the* Inſtruction *of a* private Company.

Adde hereunto (*which I have alſo touch'd upon*) *his frequent* Practiſe, *and inuring of his* Souldiers to the Uſe of Armes; *together with* his well ordering *and* contriving *the ſeveral* Forms *and* Figures *of his* Battels. *Alwayes* (*by the way*) *obſerving how to make his* advantage, *either from the* Time, *the* Number, *or the* Place, *or ſome other ſuch like* opportunity. *But not to cloy your* quainter Ears *with* impertinent Diſcourſes, *who are not only a* Maſter of Armes, *but of* Arts; *alſo a Gentleman that hath been* Captain *either over* Horſe *or* Foot, *for the ſpace of theſe laſt* forty years; *and from your very* infancy brought *up in the very* boſome *of the* Muſes; *So that now you are become a* Neſtor *for* Counſel, *an* Apollo *for* Muſick, *and a* Mars *for the* Field. *But leſt by Acknowledging your* worthy parts (*your* native modeſty *being ſuch, that you never love to hear your own* due deſerved praiſes) *I purchaſe a* Frown *for a* Recompence; *I forbear. My humble Deſire now is, That your* Worſhip *will be pleaſed to Accept of my* well meaning: *And although I be wanting in* Artful Expreſſions, *yet to reſt aſſured that I am yours in all* humble *and* hearty Affection, *and ſhall ſtill continue*

Yours,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To all the VVorthy Colonels, Lievtenant Colonels, Majors, and Captains of the City of LONDON.

Especially unto those that are, and continue Members of the *Artillery-Garden*.

The Right Worshipful, PHILIP SKIPPON, Esquire, Serjeant Major General of all the Forces of *London*, and Captain of that Ancient and Worthy Society Exercising Arms in the *Artillery-Garden*.

Red Regiment.
Colonel *Thomas Atkins*, Alderman.
Lievtenant Colonel *Rand. Manwaring*.
Serjeant Major *William Tucker*.
1. Capt. *William Tompson*.
2. Capt. *Edward Hooker*.
3. Capt. *Laurence Bromfield*.
4. Capt *Rich. Hum*.
Col. Captain, *George Mosse*.

White Regiment.
Colonel *Isaac Pennington*, Lord Major of *London*.
Lievt. Colonel, *Robert Davis*.
Serjeant Major, *Thomas Chamberlaine*.
1. Cap. *Thomas Player*.
2. Cap. *Christopher Whichcote*.
3. Cap. *William Manbie*.
4. Cap. *Joseph Vaughan*.
Col. Cap. *Richard Verner*.

Yellow Regiment.
Colonel *John Wollaston*, Knight and Alderman.
Lievt. Colonel. *Ralph Harrison*.
Serjeant Major, *Richard Cuthbert*.
1 Cap *Robert Tichbourne*.
2. Cap. *Walter Lee*.
3. Cap *William Hitchcock*.
Col. Cap. *John Brett*.

Blew Regiment.
Colonel *Thomas Adams*, Alderman.
Lievt. Colonel, *Francis West*.
Serjeant Major *William Underwood*.
1. Cap. *Edward Bellamie*.
2 Cap. *John Booker*.
3. Cap. *George Dipford*.
4. Cap *VVilliam Coleson*.
Col. Cap. *Edward Clegatt*.

Green Regiment.
Colonel *John Warner*, Alderman.
Lievt. Col. *Matthew Foster*.
Serjeant Major, *Owen Roe*.
1. Capt. *Matthew Sheppard*.
2. Capt. *Francis Roe*.
3. Capt. *Robert Mainwaring*.
Col. Capt. *Thomas Juxon*.

Orange Regiment.
Colonel *John Towse*, Alderman.
Lievt. Col. *Rowland VVilson*.
Serjeant Major, *Nathaniel Comfield*.
1. Capt. *Thomas Gower*.
2. Capt. *Richard VVollaston*.
3 Capt. *Miles Petrie*.
Colonel Captain,

Right worthy *Colonels*, and *Captains*:

ALthough it is commonly found, that every man by a kind of Affection, love to magnifie and most to extol those things, whereunto he finds his mind most naturally inclined. Yet all such partiality and private affection laid apart, the love to my Country gave the first heat unto this Work: And the rather I was induced thereunto, because I held my self oblieged; that my small Rivolet ought to make an Acknowledgment, or Retribution to the Ocean, whence my poor Streames were first dirived. And therefore in the first place to your selves, who are the *Colonels*, *Lievtenant Colonels*, *Majors*, and *Captains* over the *Trained Bands*, and are not only the choicest Flowers of our City, but also of the *Artillery-Garden*, unto whom I was first beholding for the *rules* and *rudiments* of my *Military instruction*. And therefore, Right worthy *Commanders* & *Captains* accept of this my acknowledgement; neither suffer any misconstruction to pass upon it, or to impute it otherwise than to my *gratitude*. For this *Sixth* publishing of my worthless *Work*, I hope I shall give none of you offence, by reason I know it is your *earnest desire* that (if it might be) *all his Majesties faithful Souldiers* and loving Subjects, might be made perfect, both in the *Practick* and *Theorie*, and all other *necessary requisites* pertinant to the *Art Military*. This is daily manifested unto us, by your *frequent* bearing of *Arms* on *General dayes*, whereby you not only give a *powerful* and *good example* to others, warming the *sterility* of the *coldest affections*; but like so many *studs of imbellishment*, you garnish and adorn the *body of our Militia*. Persist then, *worthy Captains*, in so brave an intendment, and *immortalize your Posterities*, by ingraving your *Names* in the *Book of Honour*, who neither want *Skill* nor *Courage*, to *merit* with those, whose *legions* have filled the *Trumps* of *Fame*. But I have soared beyond the modest bounds of your *Departments*, for which I crave your pardons: by which you will further endear

Yours, WILL. BARRIFF.

TO THE READER:

Courteous Reader,

ALthough I have ſet forth this ſmall *Treatiſe*, principally aiming at the benefit of my *Country*, yet I know that ſome will not be *wanting*, to diſparage both the *Workman* and the *Work*, the matter and manner: For ſuch is the *miſery* of the *times*, and the malice of men, that the frothy Depraver, ſhall *find* (in ſome men) an opinion of his *worth*, by detracting from other mens merits: For mine own part I ingeniouſly confeſs, that amongſt many in our own *Ground*, I was the meaneſt, both for Skill and Scholler-ſhip, to have undertaken a Work of this Nature; but being continually preſt by my Acquaintance, ſome for the *Poſtures*, others for the *Motions*, and by ſome again for *Figures*, I being alwayes willing to further men this way affected; granted, and gave to ſome men Copies, and ſuffered others to peruſe my Notes, which I had placed in an old waſte Paper Book. But at length, Time, and mens Tongues together, had begot an opinion, that I had writ a *Book*. Which was ſo freely divulged, that I was queſtioned by ſome to know when it would come forth of the *Preſſe*, when as yet I had not the leaſt *conceit* to put *Pen* to *Paper* tending to this purpoſe: So that being engaged ſomething in my Credit, and withal requeſted by a Right Worthy *Knight*, then my *Captain*, who had power to *Command*: And laſtly, being thruſt on by the importunity of ſome of my familiar Friends; I have put my *Card* amongſt the reſt into the *bunch* to be ſhuffled, not much caring where it be *dealt*, ſo it be not mixt with the ——— If any Carp at the *plainneſſe* of the *ſtile*, I conceive that it fits beſt with the Subject; works of this Nature chiefly requiring it: If ſuch, whom opinion hath made proud, and cuſtom captious, ſhall happen to be my Superviſors, to them I ſay, That it is eaſier to find faults than mend them; and to mend *Books* than to *make* them. But to the *Courteous* and *Skilful*, whoſe better parts will yield better Fruits, I ſhall requeſt their favourable Cenſure, and that with their Judgements they will mend what by over-ſight I have miſt. For which their *loves*, I ſhall ever ſtand *engaged*: And remain,

Their thankful Friend and Servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To my worthy Friend the Author.

HE that commends, too poorly doth dis-praise,
And those good parts he so commends, betrayes:
A silent admiration is the best,
When words fall short, whereby should be expreſt,
What we conceive; for faint and bare Commends
Meant for a praiſe, miſs utterly their ends.

Ralph Boſvile, Knight.

Ad Amicum ſuum ingenioſem, *Gulielmum Barriffe*, Authorem.

Z Oile venenatæ jaculari cuſpide Linguæ,
Nil valet; hic veniunt Pallas *&* Arma *ſimul.*
O quàm ſecurus Liber hic, qui Martis *&* Artis
Palladiæ *ſacro Numine tutus erit!*

To his much deſerving Friend the Author.

A Souldier? and a Scholler? who did ſee,
Mars and *Minerva* both in one agree?
Why come and ſee, loe here is one hath ſpent,
His time in *Mars's*, and the *Muſes* Tent:
Both Say, and Do, how few can? but here (lo)
He that doth Say ſo much, can much more Do.
By's Practiſe, and his Precepts thou maiſt ſee,
And learn to know, and do as much as He.
What others get with pains, charge, hazard, harms,
Here may be learn'd with eaſe, the uſe of Armes.
Zoilus may catch and carp, now here, now there,
But thou't beyond his Tongue-ſhot, never fear,
Thou that doſt dread nor pikes, nor guns, nor ſwords,
Dread not the blaſts of barking *Momus* words.
Go on my Friend, and let there ſpring from our
Artillery Garden, many ſuch a Flower.

Samuel Carleton,
Lievt. Colonel.

To my loving Friend the Author.

HOmer *eterniz'd is for Writing, what*
Achilles *and his* Myrmidons *did at*
The Siege of Troy. *I envy not his Fame,*
But needs muſt future Ages greatly blame,
If they forget to Memoriſe thee too,
That ſhow'ſt not what was done, but how to do.

Another of the ſame.

OUr *Author* now the Sixth time treads the *Stage,*
Of *Mars*, wherein he merits equipage
With any he, that Characteriz'd with Pen,
The neat'ſt Contrivements to Imbattle men.
Woe's me, or him, or that State that ſhall miſs,
A Brother, Friend, a *Man of War* like this.
This *Gardner*, that's adorned with more *flowe*
Of Diſcipline; then is the year with *hours.*

Rowland Gwin,
Lievtenan

On his much Honored Friend the Author.

AS London (Englands *far-fam'd Emporie*)
In her brave Garden of Artillery;
With reaſon Glory may, becauſe therein
Is Exercis'd exacter Diſcipline,
By Motions and apt Firings, than is done
In any other place of Chriſtendom;
So may that Garden as deſervedly,
(Accompliſt Barriffe) *joy and boaſt of thee,*
Although here ſtil'd, The young Artillery Man,
Of thy abounding modeſty, yet can
Thy ſkill or courage thereby vailed be,
No more, than Sun-beams by a Tyffanie:
Why young? *Is't 'cauſe thou'lt ſtill a Learner be*
Even ſo muſt all that aim at Excellency;
New accidents, and expert mens direction,
Brings th' Art of War ſtill nearer to perfection.
'Tis ſaid great Alexander *wept, for that*
He no more Worlds could find to ſubjugate;
And yet if he before Oſtend *had been,*
He might have eaſier wept, than entred in;
Becauſe by late Experiments he'd do find,
That Art, grown Univerſal, and refin'd.
The Art of Arts, which claims the Diadem,
As the prime means, to gain bright honours Gem
And ſuch whereby the Romans *Sword acquir'd,*
The World its Monarchy, and ſo admir'd.
And fear'd, it made them known to be, that all
(*Beſides themſelves*) *they did* Barbarians *vall.*
All which adds to thy worth, for tutering men
Therein by Poſtures, Motions, Voice, and Pen:
And in a way ſo plain, yet exquiſite,
And all compriſing that is requiſite.

For forming of Choice Squadrons, that thy merit,
Will to the end of time, renown inherit;
Because the skilful'st Leader can no more
Then teach men how to Fight (and march before)
With best advantage; yet saw I thee do
A Captains Office, and a Souldiers too,
In first Commanding what thou would'st do; And
Being first in executing such Command
With such exact dexterity, as none
Could say thou cam'st short in perfection
To Forreign Discipliners, near or far,
Though daily train'd up in the Schooles of War.
Yet as th'art modest in thy Title, so
Th'art in displaying what thou treas'st of too,
For thou adorn'st not thy Book's Frontispiece
With glorious Titles *to endear its Price,*
As th' Art of War, *or* Souldiers Academy:
Nor more pretendest than a Company,
Or Squadrons exercise: *and yet a* way
To see a greater Body in Array
Thereby discover'st. Onwards then, and stead
Thy Nation, by supplying, (at her need)
Thy Country with large Troopes *well disciplin'd.*
For which Occasion *will hereafter find*
A mean to Crown thy merit. *Whilst thy Friends*
Wish thy Designes *acquire their hop'd for ends.*

Ja: Haward, ex hospitio Graiensi, *Arm.*

To his much esteemed Friend, and fellow Souldier, the Author.

CRitick, Observe thy Distance, censure not,
Nor spend thy judgement like an Ideot
That nothing knows; If knowing, know thou then
Thou must be rank't amongst the envious men
If once thou dost attempt to contradict
The matter that this Book contains in it:
The Method's plain, not deckt with Complements,
Those frivolous, idle, needless supplements:
The substance ponderous is; no fond conceit
Affronts thee friend. With shame they shall retreat;
And so retreat, as not to Charge again
In Front, in Reer, or Flanks. Thou shalt disdain
All Formalists, that fain would Souldiers seem,
Who much expressive are; in Judgment green.

Andrew Wheatley. Ex hospitio Grai.

Ad Amicum Gulielmum Barriff.

YOung, and so old in *Martial Discipline?*
Distrust will say, This work is none of thine.
But I that know it, will aver the same
To be thine own, and not anothers Fame.
A Noble *Souldier* scorns to be so base,
By others Worah to purchase his own Grace.
And such is *Barriffe:* What his *Book* doth speak,
It is his own: let Envie swell and break.

Amicus H. Peiow.

An *Anagram* and *Acrostick* on his loving Friend, *Colonel*

Anagramma. } WILLIAM BARRYFFE.
I fill fame by War.

I f Lilly, Campden, *and Learn'd* Udall's *Name*
F inds memory still, and fills the trump of Fame
I n framing Rules for Youth, that might them teach
L earn'd Arts in tongues above the common reach:
L et then Wars rudiments, *that here are brought*
F or England's *good, by none be set at nought*
A nd scorn'd: for they in time will make renown'd
M en studious in this Art, and their Attempts crown'd
E ndure: He that in War will seek to gain,
B e perfect must in all, and that retain.
Y oung though our Barriffe *be, yet this his* Book
W ill speak him old, if well thereon you look;
A ll Postures *for the* Musket, *and the* Pike
R eformed are by him, and eke the like
R esin'd in Motions *all, they there do stand*
W ith Forms *and* Firings *framed to your hand.*
I n Band *or in a* Regimental *way:*
L ook here, and soon a Figure Form *you may:*
L ove to his Country, and our Gardens *Fame,*
I n time prevail'd with him, to let This fame
A gain to Press *be brought; O let not then*
M ad rage, rash censure of proud ignorant men
B e prevalent: but let the learn'd, the just,
A nd eke the noble: yea all those that must
R enowned be, and will gain Fame *by* War.
R egard what's good, forbear harsh doom: then far
Y our Fame will flye, and we encourag'd shall
F rom Barriffs Young Artillery Man *seek all*
F or honours Wreath: and to fill Fame by War,
E v'n here in England, *and abroad full far.*

Thomas Whitley, *Lievt.*

MILITARY DISCIPLINE:
OR,
The Young ARTILLERY Man.

CHAP. I.
Concerning Postures, and handling of Armes.

THe first Rudiments of education, wherewithall to enter young *Souldiers*, which desire to be instructed in that part of the *Art Military*, which concerneth the *Infantry*, (or *Foot-Souldiers*) ought to be *the well-managing and handling of their Armes*: which may easily be attained by frequent *Practice*, and the *Souldiers* thereby be brought to use them with *ease*, *safety*, and *delight*: where on the contrary (without *exercise*) the *easiest Armes* become not only troublesome burthens unto the *unskilful bearers*, but too often prove dangerous and hurtfull, both to themselves, and fellowes, that *ranke* and *file* with them. Neither need any be *disheartened*, for no man is born a *Souldier*, nor can attain to any excellency in the *Art Military* without *practice*: But by *practice* is gained *knowledge*; *knowledge* begets *courage* and *confidence*; few or none being *fearful* to *execute* what by *frequent practice* they have throughly *learned*.

And therefore it will be necessary for every one that intends any *proficiency* in this part of the *Art Military*, first to be *instructed* in the *Postures* and wel-*handling* of their *Arms*; (a thing much to be desired in our *Trained bands*, though small hope of amendment, seeing that our *Souldiers* are scarce called *forth* to *exercise* either *Posture* or *Motion* once in four or five yeares. Whose the fault is, I know not; *only I pray God that it may be amended, lest shame and infamy be the least of evils which our careless security may bring upon us*: Yet pardon this digression, for my zeal to my Countries good had almost transported me beyond the bounds of my intent; but of this no more. I will now come to the *Postures* of the *Musket* and *Pike*:) which some conceive, are fittest to *begin* from the *taking up* of their *Armes* and *arming* the *Souldiers*, concluding them with the *laying down* of their *Armes*, or *disarming* them. Nevertheless, because that some (especially such as have been in the parts beyond the Seas) have not accustomed themselves to any strict observance of *Posture*, for the *arming* and *disarming* of the *Musketier*, but, after the manner of the *field*, come *ready charged* and *shouldred*, and so from thence making the entrance or beginning to the *Postures*; by which meanes others have been emboldened too censoriously to object against the rest, as superfluous: which they themselves, at some time or other, cannot avoid. Therefore to the end that they also may have satisfaction, I have so placed the *Postures* of the *Musket*, that they may make use of so many of them as they shall thinke necessary, and leave the rest to such as require a more exact and ample satisfaction. But before I expose the *Postures* to the publike survay, me thinks I hear some already enquiring, What is *Posture*? Wherefore, that I may satisfie them, and not be troublesome to others, in briefe thus.

Posture in a Souldier is, the garbe or figure that he useth in the handling of his Armes, *consisting of severall* Motions *for atchieving of each Posture. The* Motion *being the work-ing part; the* Posture, *the alteration or act, either in circumstance or matter:* As, *to rest your* Musket *being one* Posture, *to shoulder your* Musket *another; so likewise for the rest.*

The definition of Posture.

Howbeit, some perchance will object (as formerly hath been to one of *Athens*, making a long Oration in the praise of *Hercules* his valour) and say, Who ever doubted of it? So to me, Who ever questioned these for *Postures*? Yet I have known them not only questi-

oned, but written against; peremptorily concluding, that there are but three *Postures* to be used for the *Musket*: whose errors I shall easily confute. But more of this after the *Postures* of the *Musket*. Wherefore for the more orderly proceeding, conceive their *Arms* to *lie before them on the ground*, and then the first *command* will be, to *stand to their Arms*.

The manner of *Arming* the *Musketttier*, and *Postures* of the *Musket*.

Take up your } *Bandeliers.*
Put on your }

Take up your } *Match.*
Place your }

Take up your Musket and Rest.

Rest your Musket.

Now, if you please, you may performe your saluting *Posture*.

Poyse your } *Musket.*
Shoulder your }

Take your rest into your right hand, and you are armed ready to March.

Thus being *armed*; with *Muskets shouldred*, some account their *Postures* to begin from this place; which may be done either *standing* or *mooving*, as they successively follow.

Take your Match between the fingers of your right hand.

Put your rest string about your left wrist, and carry your rest in your left hand.

* *Set the But-end of your Musket on the grownd (though improperly) call, Ordering the Musket.*

Return your Match between the fingers of your left hand.

Unshoulder your Musket & Poyse.

Joyne your rest to the out side of your Musket.

Open } *your Pan.*
Clear }
Prime }
Shut }

Cast off your loose Cornes.

Blow off your loose Cornes, and bring about your Musket to the left side.

Trail your Rest, and ballance your Musket in your left hand.

Charge with Powder.

Draw forth } *your Scouring Stick.*
Shorten }

Charge with Bullet.

Put your Scouring Stick into your Musket.

Ram home your Charge.

Withdraw } *your Scouring Stick.*
Shorten }
Return }

Bring forward your Musket and Rest.

Poyse your Musket, and recover your Rest.

Thus having *charged*, some men will *shoulder*, and so from thence *make ready*; beginning their *Postures* from the *unshouldering* of the *Musket*: accounting of those past, as *Motions of Posture*: But they do but tangle themselves in their owne snares: therefore I proceed.

Joyne your Rest to the out side of your Musket.

Draw forth your Match.

Blow your Coal.

Cock } *your Match.*
Fit }

Guard your Pan.

Blow the Ashes from your Coal.

Open your Pan.

Present upon your Rest.

Give fire brest-high.

Dismount your Musket, joyning your rest to the out-side of your Musket.

Uncock, and return your Match.

Clear } *your Pan.*
Shut }

Poyse } *your Musket.*
Shoulder }

Take your Match between the fingers of the right hand.

Take your Rest into your right hand, clearing your string from your wrist.

Return your Rest into the left hand, the string loose.

Return your match into your left hand.

Unshoulder your Musket, & poyse.

Rest your Musket.

* *Set the But-end of your Musket on the ground.*

Lay down, Musk. & Rest.

Take off } *your Match.*
Lay down }

Take off } *your Bandeliers*
Lay down }

March from your Armes.

There is likewise the a *Sentinell Posture*, which is, The *Musketttier* having his *Musket charged* with *bullet* his *Match cocke*, his *Pan guarded*, *stands* with his *Musket rested*, ready to peform such *duty* as shall be *commanded*, or given him in *charge*. Some have likewise taught to *make ready* on, or from the *Sentinell Posture*. But note, that as none comes to *stand Sentinell*, but comes ready *charged*; so if any occasion happen that he must

a *The Sentinell Posture.*

give

give fire in the time of his *ſtanding Sentinell*, it cauſeth an *Alarm* to the *Quarter*, or *Corps du guard*, from whence he is ſet out; ſo that he will have no fit time to *make ready upon his Reſt*. Wherefore I conceive it ſuperfluous; but will ever conform to better judgement.

[a] *The Funeral Poſture*

We have alſo the [a] *Funeral Poſture*, which from the *Reſt* is to be performed at three motions, but cannot ſo well be expreſt in *writing*, as it will expreſſe it ſelfin *action*. Therefore ſeeing that it is rather an Ornament to Obſequies, than truly neceſſary for *Armies*, I will not ſpend more time about it, but come to the *Poſtures* of the *Pike*. Yet before I paſſe upon them, give me leave to anſwer ſome, which out of a criticall humour, will alwayes be carping at others, condemning theſe *Poſtures*, ſaying, there are more by halfe, then are either good or uſefull: and that there are no more *Poſtures* to be uſed, but *Make ready*, *Preſent*, *Give fire*. The which we will not deny, that in *Service* there are any other Commands *uſeful*: notwithſtanding I would have them to know, that [b] *Make ready* is no *Poſture*, but a word of *command*, including all *Poſtures* from the firſt *arming* of the *Souldier*, to the *Preſent*: or, if the *Muskettier* be *charged*, *ſhouldred*, or *both*, then the word (*Make ready*) *commands* the proſecution of the reſt of the *Poſtures*, which are between the *Poſture* you then immediatly are at, when the *word* is given, and the other *Poſture*, *Preſent*: For which reaſon, when we teach *Muskettiers* at firſt, it is moſt neceſſary to inſtruct them punctually, from *Poſture* to *Poſture*; which being once attained, they will *manage their Arms* more *ſurely*, more *comely*, with more *celerity*, and with better *execution*, and as the firſt may eaſily be taught the beſt way. [c] But if they have once got an habit of being ill, there will be as much or more paines ſpent in reclaiming their errors, as at firſt to teach them the beſt, ſafeſt, and readieſt way.

[b] *Make ready, no Poſture, but a word of Command.*

[c] *Ill cuſtome hardly reclaimed.*

CHAP. II.

Of the Poſtures *of the* Pike.

THat which followeth next of courſe, is the Poſture of the *Pike*: Wherefore, that we may obſerve *Order* in our proceeding, we will likewiſe conceive their *Pikes* to lie in like manner before them on the ground: And then, as before, the *firſt command* will be, to *Stand to* their Armes.

Hande / *Order* } *your Pikes.* | *To your* { (d) *Open* / (e) *Cloſe* } *Order.*

[d] *Open Order in reſpect of Poſture for the Pike, is when the files ſtand at double diſtance, or open Order at the leaſt; then the Pikemen are to extend their right arms, and place their Pikes about a foot to the right of their right legs: it is uſefull only to make a gallant ſhew.*

[e] *Cloſe order is to place the But-end of the Pike on the inſide of the foot, and is only uſefull upon a ſtand, to receive and abate the fury of the Horſe, upon a deſperate charge.*

Charge from the Foot.

Which is to *charge* with the *But-end* of your *Pike* at the *inſide* of your *right foot*, your *Pike* in the *left hand*, drawing your *Sword* over the *left arm*.

Charge to the { *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.*

Order your Pikes, and put up your Swords.

Note that theſe *Charges at the Foot*, are to *receive a deſperate enemy on Horſe*, upon a *ſtand* in ſome *ſtrait*, or other *place of advantage*, the *Muskettiers to give fire over the Pikemens heads*, or *elſewhere*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*.

From Order { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheek* / *Traile* } *your Pikes.* Order as you were. | *Charge to the* { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Order as you were. *Shoulder your Pikes.*

[f] *Charges to the reer is to be underſtood alwais to the left-about, becauſe it is 3. times ancerer way then charging to the right about.*

Advance your Pikes.

From Advance { Port / Comport / Cheeke / Traile } your Pikes. Advance as you were.

Charge to the { Front. / Right. / Left. / Reer. } Advance as you were.

Shoulder your Pikes.

From the Shoulder { Port / Comport / Cheek / Traile } your Pikes. Shoulder as you were.

Charge to the { Front. / Right. / Left. / Reere. } Shoulder as you were.

From *Comport*, *Cheeke*, or *Traile*, the *Pike-man* may, at the discretion of the *Commander*, *charge* either to the *Front*, *Reere*, or *Flanks*, as shall be necessary, or thought expedient. I will do it only once over; for the *Charges* will be all alike, whether you *Comport*, from *Order*, from *Advance*, or *Shoulder*. And so likwise for *Cheek* and *Traile*, &c.

From Comport, Charge to the { Front. / Right. / Left. / Reere. } Comport as you were.

Traile your Pikes.

From the Traile Charge to the { Front. / Right. / Left. / Reer. } Traile as you were.

Cheek your Pikes.

From the Cheeke Charge to the { Front. / Right. / Left. / Reer. } Cheek as you were.

Order / Lay down } your Pikes.

I shall undergoe the censure of some, for that they will find more *Postures* of the *Pike* here then formerly they knew of, and so by their conclusion more then there is any need of; for now-adays there are such, that will limit the *Discipline* of the *Militia* to the verge of their own knowledge; and whatsoever else they shall see either *acted* or *written* by others, that is without the lists of their *kenning*, they will peremptorily conclude for superfluous, and improper; howsoever, I shall alwayes referre my self to the judgement of the more judicious.

The *Charges* of the *Pike* are *twofold*, either for *Defence*, or *Offence*: *Charges underhand*, or *over-hand*: but divers and different they are from their several *wayes* and *Postures*, from which they are, or may be done, although they are not always *useful*, yet at some times they may be *useful*; and therefore very requisite to be known of all such as either are, or at least would be accounted for *good Souldiers*.

The use of the Pike.

As I have set down the *Postures* themselves both of *Musket* and *Pike*, so it were not amisse, if that the *Motions of Posture* were likewise here expresst. But because they will take up too much time, and fill too much paper, and the subject it self not pleasing unto many, I will spare my labour, and my book the lines, rather suffering the censure of curtaild brevity, then tedious prolixity.

CHAP. III.

Of the Drum.

OUr *Souldiers* being sufficiently *instructed* in the *Postures* of such *Arms* as they *carry*, (or are appointed to use;) the next thing they are to *learn* is the *knowledge* of the *several beats* of the *Drum*, which is requisite to be *learnt* of the *Souldier*; as any thing else in this way. For the *Drum* is the *voyce* of the *Commander*, the *spurre* of the *valiant*, and the *heart* of the *coward*, and by it *they* must receive their *directions*, when the *roaring Canon*, the *clashing* of *Armes*, the *neighing* of *Horses*, and other *confused noise* causeth that

that neither *Captain*, nor other *Officer* can be *heard*. Therefore it wil be neceſſary that every Souldier ſhould learn theſe ſix ſeveral Beats, *viz.*

1 A Call. 2 A Troop. 3 A March. 4 A Preparative. 5 A Battaile. 6 *A* Retreat.

1 By a *Call*, you muſt *underſtand* to *prepare* to hear preſent *Proclamation*, or elſe to repaire to your *Enſigne*. *A Cal.*

2 By a *Troop*, *underſtand* to *ſhoulder* your *Musket*, to *advance* your *Pike*, to *cloſe* your *Ranks* & *Files* to their *Order*, and to *Troop along* with (or *follow*) your *Officer* to the *place* of *Randezvous*, or elſe-where. *A Troop.*

3 By a *March* you are to *underſtand* to *take* your *open order* in *rank*, to *ſhoulder* both *Musket* and *Pikes*, and to direct your *March* either *quicker* or *ſlower*, according to the *beat* of the *Drum*. *A March.*

4 By a *Preparative* you are to *underſtand* to cloſe to your *due diſtance*, for *skirmiſh* both in *rank* and *file*, and to *make ready*, that ſo you may *execute* upon the *firſt command*. *A Preparative.*

5 By the *Battail* or *charge*, *underſtand* the *continuation* or *preſſing forward* in *order* of *battaile* without *lagging behind*, rather boldly ſtepping *forward* in the *place* of *him* that *falls dead* or *wounded*, before thee. *A Battail.*

6 By a *Retreat*, *underſtand* an *orderly retiring backward*, either for *relief*, for *advantage* of *ground*, or for ſome other *political end*, as to *draw* the *enemy* into ſome *ambuſhment*, or ſuch like. Much more might be written concerning the *Drum*, but this may ſuffice for the preſent. *A Retreat.*

CHAP. IV.

Of Ranks and Files, their places and dignities.

NOw that our *Souldiers* are ſomewhat *skilful* in *managing* of their *Armes*, and no leſſe capable of the ſeveral *beats* of the *Drum*, it is high time for them to know the difference *between a Rank and a File*. Wherefore know, that *a Rank is a row of men ſometimes more, ſometimes fewer, ſtanding, moving, or marching even a breſt*, or (as ſome write) *pouldron to pouldron*, or *ſhoulder to ſhoulder*. *A file is a ſequence of men, ſtanding one behind another, back to belly, in a ſtraight line from Front to Reere*, conſiſting ſometimes of 6. 8. or 10. men, on ſome occaſions the *Spaniards* make them 12. *deep*. But when any one would ſhew much *variety* of *exerciſe*, then 8. wil be the more *pliant* and *dividual number*, yet for *ſervice* in the *Feild*, where men are not altogether ſo *expert* (as I could wiſh our Country-men were) 10. men is a fit number, not only for the cauſe aforeſaid, but alſo becauſe that 10. is the *ſquare Root* of a 100. and is a convenient number to draw *Companies* into *groſſer bodies*. *What is a Ranke. What is a File. Where men are expert. 8 is a ſufficient depth, and may better keep their order then when they are deeper.*

And now I think it would not be much amiſſe, if I ſhou'd inſert the ſeverall *places* of *dignity* & *precedency* in *Rank*, as alſo in *File*. Wherefore becauſe that * *Files* are firſt to be *drawn forth*, and that by *adding* or *joyning* of *Files together* Ranks are *made*, we will begin *firſt* with the precedence of *Files*. Therefore conceive their *dignities* according to the *Figures* (or *Numbers*) hereunder *placed*, firſt in *File*, then of *Rank*, laſtly of *both conjoyned*. **In placing your men, firſt draw your Souldier forth in files, and not in ranks, as ſome have fondly uſed.*

Front.

Front.	Number of dignity.
1. P 1.	2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1
2. P 5.	P P P P P P P P
3. P 8.	8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
4. P 4.	Number of place.
5. P 3.	
6. P 7.	
7. P 6.	
8. P 2.	
Reere.	

Number of dignity.

2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	0
P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	1
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	P	5
Number of place.							3	P 8
							4	P 4
							5	P 3
							6	P 7
							7	P 9

Number of dignity.

It will not be (of it self) sufficient that I have here both *naked* and *figured* each *worth*; thereby pointing out the several *places* and *dignity*, proper to each *particular man* in his *file* and *rank*: but it will be expected of some, that I should back my *Conclusions*, either with sound & solid reasons of mine own, or at the least with the concurring opinions of others. But as for such, who have employed themselves upon this *Subject*, either for want of due consideration, or a rational understanding the *parts of a File*, they have voted their *judgements* as divers as their *number*; each man having a fancy to his own *way*. And if it were much *material*, I might here demonstrate unto you the several opinions of *Leo*, *Robertellus*, *Count* Mansfield*, Sir *Tho. Kellie*, and many others: but their works being extant, I will spare the labour. Nevertheless I will say thus much, that *Cap. John Bingham*, although somewhat *obscurely*, yet in my judgement hath best delivered himself concerning this particular: which although he hath expreſt by way of *Tetrarchies* & *Mirarchies*, the same may be understood as well by *Ranks* and *Files*. His words are these: "* *Every* "*Tetrarch is over four Files, in all which the Comander that hath the right, hath the first* "*place; he that hath the point of the left, the second place; he that standeth on the right hand* "*next to him, the third place. The last place is his, that standeth next to the Commander of* "*the right point on the left hand: He demonstrates it by way of figure thus.*

* *A Book set out in his name but none of his.*

* *In the Tactiks of Ælion, lib 1. the notes of the tenth Chapter.*

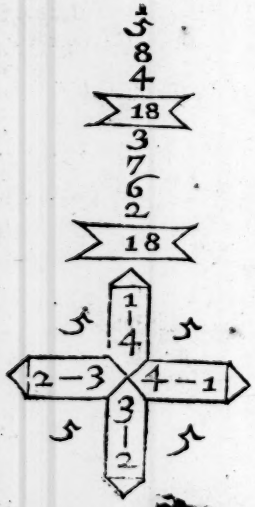
	PMM.	MMP.	PMM.	MMP.	
Right wing	1 5 1	4 8 4	3 7 3	2 6 2	Left wing.

The Middle.

CHAP. V.

Reasons for precedency of dignity in Ranks and Files.

I Shall now endeavour to give some reasons for these *severall places* of *dignity* in *Ranke* and *File*. And first, for that Geometricall proportion gives both *life* and *being*, to *order*, by *discipline*, consider that all *parts* of the *body* ought to be *answerable*. Wherefore seeing that the *joyning* of *Files* & *Ranks* produceth *greater bodies*; it is necessary that a true proportion should be kept from the *beginning*: and that in *drawing forth* of *Files*, they observe to make the *reer-halfe-file* answerable in *skill* and *worth* to the *front-half-file*: and that the *file-leaders*, & *half-ranks* of the *left-flank* should be equivalent in *worth*, *skill*, and *valour*, to the *right-flank*; that the *reere division* hold like proportion with the *front division*, and that all parts of the *body* be *ballanced* with true proportion, so near as the knowledge of the *Souldiers*, and the *number* of the *men* will give you *leave*; and that there may be correspondency in their *worth*, *place*, and *dignity*, you may observe by adding the *figures* of *number* together which are in the *margent*, where you shal find, that the *dignity* being added together of the *front-half-file*, makes the number of 18; and the worth of the *reer-half* being in like manner added makes the like *number*. So also shall you find the *dignity* and *worth* of the *file-leaders* of the *left-flank* to parallel the *worth* of those on the *right-flank* by the same rule. if you will have it yet more cleare, observe, that the *file-leader* is the *chiefe* in his *file*, the *bringer-up* the *second*, the *half-file leader* the *third*, the last man of the *front half file* the



the *fourth*. Now note, that as the *worth* of the *first precedes* the *second*, so the *worth* of the *third exceeds* the *fourth*: Add the *first worth* to the *fourth worth*, and that makes *five*; adde the *second worth* to the *third*, and it makes the same *number*: so that there is *equality* throughout the *battel*, both in *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*: for it were unreasonable, that all the *chief men* should be on the *right-flank*, and all the *worst* on the *left*; for the *left* must be *opposed* to the *enemies right*. The *file-leader* ought to be the *worthiest* because he hath the *Command* of his *file*, and *marcheth first against* his *enemy*. The *bringer-up* ought to be the *second*, because his *place* of *march* is in the *reer*, and is in most danger, should the *enemy charge* on that *part*: the *half-file-leader*, is the *third* in *honour*, because that when the *halfe-file is taken off* upon any *occasion*, he is the *leader*. (unlesse they be *commanded* to *face about*) The *last man* of the *front-half-file* is the *fourth* in *dignity*, for when the *reere-division* is *taken off*, then he is the *bringer-up*, or the *file* being faced about, he is the *half-file-leader to the reer*: the next *man* to the *file-leader* hath the *fift place* of *honour*, for that one *doubling brings him into the front*: the next *man before* the *bringer up*, hath the *sixt place* of *honour*, for that if the *body* be *faced about*, one *doubling brings him into the front accidental*; or keeping the *proper front* by once *doubling* of *ranks* he becomes *bringer-up* to his *file-leader*: the *seventh place* of *honour* is his, that *marcheth* next after the *half-file-leader*, for that when the *half-files double the front*, or *marcheth forth* then one *doubling*, *ranks him even* with the *front*: the *eighth* & *last place* of *honour* is *his*, that is the *third* from the *front*, the *file* being but eight *deep*, which may also be *made a file-leader* though with more trouble than the rest; for by *countermarching front* & *reer into the midst*, and then *facing* to the *former front*, and after *doubling* of *ranks* makes him likewise a *file-leader*. Now as *every mans dignity is more or lesse in his file*, *so is all his rank with him*. Wherefore this that hath already been said, may suffice to inform those which as yet are ignorant of the several *places of dignity*, both in *rank* and *file*. Nevertheless for the clearer *demonstration* of these *rules of dignity*, *and for that they are of more concernment*, *than at first every man can imagine*, I have drawn forth *three tables*. The first of *six deep*, and *six* a breast: the second of *eight deep*, and *eight* a breast: the third of *ten deep*, and *ten* a breast: which will shew the particular *dignities* due to each man in *rank* & *file*. I have also added *three other square tables*: the first of *thirty six men*, the second of *sixty foure*, the third of *one hundred*. And in *each table* I have shewed every *mans place* of *dignity* in *file* and *rank*, as also in the *joyned body*, from the *first* and *chief* to the *last* and *least* in *dignity* by figures of number, with an addition of their sums together; to shew their *uniformity*, and proportion to each other.

The Places of Dignity of 10. *in Rank.*

2	6	0	7	3	4	8	9	5	1

The Places of Dignity of 8. *in Rank*

2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1

Places of dignity of 6 *in Rank*

2	6	3	4	5	1

Rules of Dignity ought not to be regulated by ill customes, conceited opinions, and false grounds, but by truth and reason.

Places of dignity of 6 *in File*

5
4
3
6
2

The places of dignity of 8 *in file*

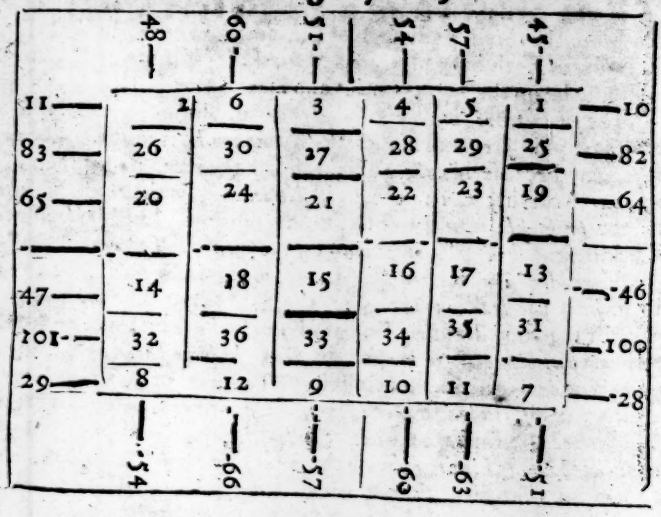
5
8
4
3
7
6
2

The Places of Dignity of 10 *in File*

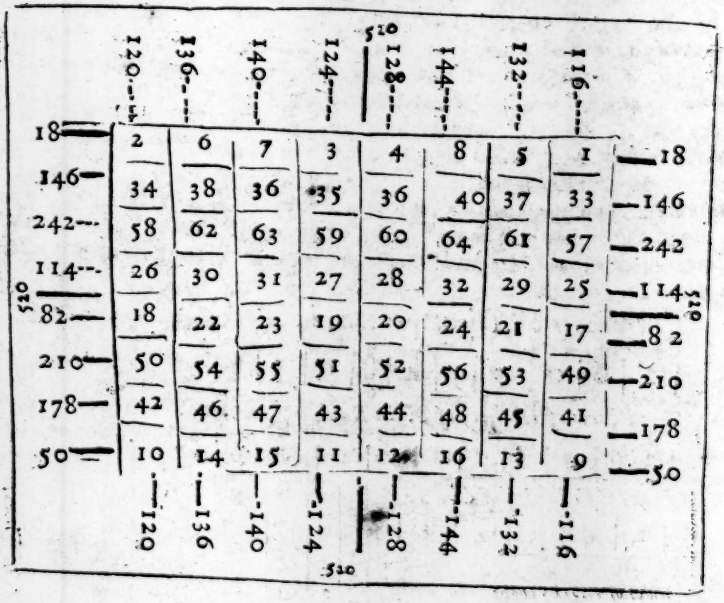
5
9
8
4
2
7
1
0
6
2

Th

The Table of Dignity for 36. Men.



The Table of Dignity for 64. Men.



The

The Table of dignity for 100. men.

	230—	250—	270—	255—	235—	240—	260—	265—	245—	225—	
28---	2	6	10	7	3	4	8	9	5	1	---27
228---	42	46	50	47	43	44	48	49	45	41	---227
428---	82	86	90	87	83	84	88	82	85	81	---427
378---	72	76	80	77	73	74	7	79	75	71	---377
178---	32	36	40	37	33	34	38	39	35	31	---177
128---	22	26	30	27	23	24	28	29	25	21	---127
328---	62	66	70	67	63	64	68	69	65	61	---327
478---	92	96	100	97	93	94	98	99	95	91	---477
278---	52	56	60	57	53	54	58	59	55	51	---277
78---	12	16	20	17	13	14	18	19	15	11	---77
	---240	---260	---280	---265	---245	---250	---270	---275	---255	---235	

If you pleaſe to make an experiment of the *uniformity* and *proportion* that one *file* or *rank* holdeth with another, and would firſt make tryal of a *file*, then *add the number of one file together*; (which done) *add the numbers* together of the next *file in dignity*, into one ſumm; then *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall alwayes find, that *one file precedes the other* no more then there are particular *places in a file*: as 6. in *files* of 6. *deep*, 8. in *files* of 8. *deep*, and 10. in *files* of 10. *deep*; the which makes no diſproportion, but are only *numbers of diſtinctions*.

Would you make an experiment *between the dignity of rank and rank*? then, as before, add the *ſimple numbers* together of *one rank*, the which being found, add the *ſimple numbers* togethe of the next *rank* in *dignity*; the which in like manner being performed, *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall find the remainder alwayes to be the *compleat number of the ſquare body*. * As for example, in the Table of *thirty ſix*, *add the numbers of the firſt* rank (or *file-leaders*) together, and you ſhall find by addition twenty one; add the numbers of the ſecond *rank* in *dignity* (which are the Bringers up) together, and you ſhall find fifty ſeven: then *ſubſtract* the number of the *firſt rank* from the *ſecond* in *dignity*, & the remainder wil be thirty ſix, the juſt *number of the whole ſquare* and ſo in like manner is the number of difference between every two next *ranks of dignity* in that Table. The other Tables, in like nature, having the ſame difference, according to the number of the body; either of thirty ſix, ſixty four, ᵇ or one hundred. But I doubt I ſhal be blamed for tedious curioſity, becauſe I have inſiſted longer upon this *Subject* then at firſt I intended; which makes me the more willing (though ſomewhat abruptly) to break from it and come to ſhew the manner of *joyning* or *drawing up of files into Battalia*. To which purpoſe, the *Serjeants* are firſt *to draw forth their files*, & after *to lead them up into order*, according to every mans *worth* and *honour*; as firſt *the right hand file*, then *the left hand file*, and ſo *the other files* ſucceſſively *within them*, according to their ſeveral *worths* and *places*, as by the following *form*, and the *figures* of number, you may plainly perceive.

*Files precede each other in dignity according to their places. Each man in the right hand file preceding him of the ſame place in the left hand file, which makes the difference of number between them 6. at 6. deep 8. at 8. deep &c.

*The differences between every next rank of dignity in the table of 36. is the ſame number.

ᵇ In the table of 64 the difference between the next ranks of dignity is 64. In the table of 100. the difference is the like number of 100 &c.

Front.

Dignity of place.

Left Flank. Number of place	0	2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	0	Right Flank. Dignity of place.
1	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		1	
2	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		5	
3	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		8	
4	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		4	
5	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		3	
6	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		7	
7	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		6	
8	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M		2	
	0	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	

Number of Place.

Reere.

If there be *any* that shall say, These are *niceties*, and of no *repute* amongst *Souldiers*: I dare say, they have been well *reputed* of by good *Souldiers*; no disparagement unto the *fault-finders*, (if there happen to be any such.) As for the *noble, worthy*, and *well-knowing Souldiers*, I am almost *confident*, that out of their true-speaking *judgments*, they will either conclude that it is so *used*, or at the least, that it *ought* so to be; but if this can work no *effect* with the---I leave every man freely to his own *judgment*, desiring the *judicious* alwayes to hold a favourable opinion of my well-meaning.

Ignorant Souldiers most ambitious.

CHAP. VI.

Of several Distances.

NOw that our *Souldiers* have attained some small knowledge in the use of their *Arms* (me thinks, like some of our [a] *little knowing Souldiers* of the *Trained Bands*) they already begin to be ambitious of *File-leaders* places; therefore, that their own *weaknesse* may light them to read their own *follies*, we will see how they will behave themselves in the exercise of the Company. Where the first thing we are to instruct them in, is their *distances*. But because it is disputable, whether *distance* be one of the *Motions* or no; we will first declare what *distance* is. To which I say, that indeed [b] *distance* it self is no *motion* but there is *motion* in producing such *distance*; for, *Distance is the space of ground between man and man, either in file or rank, having relation only to the place between each party*. All the rest of the *motions* having not only relation to the one, but to the other. Wherefore, not to spend more time in a matter so apparent, we will say, that the *Discipline of a foot Company consists chiefly in distance and motion*. And therefore seeing that *distance* is the fore-runner of *motion*, & that [c] no *motion* can be performed without *distance*, we will leave to discourse it, and fall to the matter it self, and shew how many sorts of *distance* is ordinarily used in our *modern discipline*; which are these *four* hereunder named, *viz.*

[a] *Distance of rank is to be understood between rank and rank.*

[b] *Distance of file is to be understood between file and file.*

[c] *The exact place from whence to measure your distance is from the center of your men, whether it be rank or file.*

Close Order,	*which is*	*One foot and a half.*
Order,	*both in*	*Three foot.*
Open Order,	*Ranke*	*Six foot.*
Double Distance,	*and File*	*Twelve foot.*

It hath been the opinion of some ancient Commanders, that the *distance of rank* was alwayes *double the distance of file*, although they went both under one and the same denomination: As that, *Order* in *file* was *three foot*, *Order* in *rank six foot*, *Open Order* in *file six foot*, *Open Order* in *rank twelve foot*; and so of other *distances*. But the best received opinions hold them to be alike both in *rank* & *file*. There is to be considered in *distance* these* *three* especially, that is, *distance* for *march*, *distance* for *motion*, & *distance* for *skirmish*,

These 3. distances especially remarkable.

Yo

You are to observe, that your *distance for march* is to be *three foot between file and file, and six foot between ranke and rank*; *distance for motion six foot both in ranke and file*; *distance for intire doublings, wheelings, and skirmish, three foot in rank and file. Close order is useful* for your *files of Pike-men*, when they are to receive a *Charge* from the *horse*: that so they may *stand* the *stronger*, by so much as they are the *closer ferried together*: as also for the ranks of *Muskittiers*, when they are to poure on a salute of shot.

It next followes, that I shew the *divers words of command*, and direction; for the several *openings* and *closings* of *ranks* and *files*. But I shall first recommend to the care of the *curious discipliner*; that in the first place he *command his Souldiers* to *even* their *ranks*, and *streighten* their *files*: to be *silent*, and *attentive* to their *words of command*, and *directions*, which being performed, the *words of command* for *distance*, are as followeth.

Rankes and files to your close order.

Files open to the right / *Ranks open forward* — *to your order.*

Files open to the right / *Ranks open forward* — *to your open order.*

Files open to the right / *Ranks open forward.* — *to your double distance.*

Files close to the right / *Ranks close forward* — *to your open order.*

Files close to the right / *Ranks close forward.* — *to your order.*

Files close to the right / *Ranks close forward.* — *to your close order.*

Files open to the left / *Ranks open backward* — *to your order.*

Files open to the left / *Ranks open backward.* — *to your open order.*

Files open to the left / *Ranks open backward.* — *to your double distance.*

Files close to the left / *Ranks close backward.* — *to your open order.*

Files close to the left / *Ranks close backward.* — *to your order.*

Files close to the left / *Ranks close backward.* — *to your close order.*

In motion of files you are to observe your Leader.

In motion of ranks you are to observe your right-hand man.

Files (*open* / *to the*) / *Ranks* (*open* / *to the*) — (*right and left* / *front and reer*) — *to your order.*

Files (*open* / *to the*) / *Ranks* (*open* / *to the*) — (*right and left* / *front and reer*) — *to your open order.*

Files (*open* / *to the*) / *Ranks* (*open* / *to the*) — (*right and left* / *front and reer*) — *to your double distance.*

Files (*close* / *to the*) / *Ranks* (*right & left inward* / *middest*) — *to your open order.*

Note that when *files open* to the *right*, the *left-hand file* must stand *fast*, every *file* taking his *distance* from the *file* next his *left hand*; And when they *open* to the *left*, then the *right-hand-file stands*, every *file* taking his *distance* from the *file* next his *right hand*. Observe also that when *ranks open forward*, then the *last rank* stands, every *rank* taking his *distance* from the *ranke* next behind him: And when they open *backward*, then the *first rank is to stand*, every *ranke* to take his *distance* from the *rank* next before him. You are likewise to take notice in the *action*, that you are either to *face* to the *right*, or to the *right about*.

Observations for the opening of ranks and files.

Note also, that in *closing* of *files*, if it be to the *right*, then contrary to *the opening*, the *right-hand-file stands*, the rest *closing* to the *right*, taking their *distance* from their *next right-hand-file*. If you *close* to the *left*, then the *left-hand-file stands*, the rest of the *files closing* to the *left*, taking their *distance* in like manner. When *files close to the right and left*, then they *close inward*, taking their *distance* from the *files* within them, nearer to the *middest of the body*. Also note, that when *files* are commanded to *open* to the *right* & *left*, (or by *division*) it must be *outward*. If *ranks close to the front and reer*, then the *first* & *last rank* stand, the other taking their *distances* from them. If they *close ranks* towards the *center* or *midst*, then they *close* towards their *two midlemost ranks*.

Observations for the closing of ranks and files.

It is not required that every *Captain* or other *Officer* that shal *exercise* a *Company*, shal use all these severall *openings* and *closings* which are here expresst, but rather, that he shal make use of so many of them, as he shall think fit for his present occasion or *exercise*; although they al may be useful, at some time or other: I may spare examples, for it must needs be apparent to the meanest capacity.

CHAP. VII.

Of Marching the Company in Divisions, with the order and places of the Officers and Drums.

Front.
C
M M M M
M M M M S. 4.
M M M M
D. 2.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
E.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
D. 1.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
S. 1.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
D. 4.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
S. 2.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
D. 3.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
S. 3. M M M M
L.

OUr *Souldiers* now being somewhat *expert* in their *Distances*, we will next draw them forth into a *deep March*. Wherefore note, that our *Files* must be at *Order*, and our *Ranks* at *Open Order*: the *Musketiers* of the *right Flank* are to make the *Van*, and to *March* next after the *Captaine*: The *Pikes* are to make the *Battell*, and to *march* after the *Ensigne*, either in one or two *Divisions*, according to their number. The *Muskettiers* of the *left Flank* (sometimes called the *second Division of Muskets*) make the *Reer-Guard*; which is *led* commonly by the *second Serjeant*. Howbeit, if there be but one *Division* of *Pikes*, then the *eldest* (or chiefest) *Serjeant leads* the *second Division of Muskettiers*. If the *Company* be but small, then it is best to make but two *Divisions*, one of the *Muskettiers*, another of the *Pikes*. For the *placing* of the rest of the *Officers*, you may perceive by the *Figure* in the Margent: Wherefore note, that M. stands for *Muskets*, P. for *Pikes*, D. for *Drums*, S. for *Serjeants*, E. for *Ensigne*, L. for *Lieutenant*, and C. for *Captain*.

Note, If you have but three *Drums*, then let the *Drum* in the second *Division* of *Pikes* be wanting: If only two, then upon a *march* the first between the third and fourth *Rank* of the *Front Division of Muskettiers*. The second between the third and fourth *Rank* of the second *Division of Pikes*.

Note, that between each *Division* in *march* there ought to be *twelve foot distance*, six *foot* before the *Officer*, and six *foot* behind him.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of drawing the Divisions up into a square.

WHen you would bring your *Body* again into *Battalia*, command your *Front-division* to make *Alt* or *Stand*; then give order to your *Ensign*, either by a *Serjeant* or by some *sign*, to lead up the *first-division* of *Pikes* on the *left* of the *first division* of *Muskettiers*, with his *Colours flying*, and *Pikes* to continue *shouldred* so long as the *Drum* beats a *March*: But if it beat a *Troop*, then the *Pikes* are to *advance*, and *close their Ranks forward to their Order*, and so the *Ensign to troop them up with his Colours fierld.* The eldest *Serjeant* is to lead up the *second division* of *Pikes*: The second *Serjeant*, in like manner, is to lead up the second or *reere division* of *Muskettiers*; each *division* still *marching* up to the *left* of that *division* next before it. The manner you may plainly see in the *Figure*; where the *Front-division* is marked in the *Reere* with the letter F. The *first-division* of *Pikes* with the letter G. The *second-division* of *Pikes* with H. The *second-division* of *Muskettiers* hath in the *Reere* the letter I. The other *Figure* following, in forme of a *square*, shewes their standing, after the *Divisions* are led up. All the *file-leaders* standing even in *Front* together, making one *Rank*.

C
M M M M S. 4.
M M M M
M M M M
D.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
E.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
D.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
F.
S.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
G.
D.
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
H.
S.2.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
D.
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
S.3. M M M M
L. I.

E. C.

	2 6 7 3		2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1		4 8 5 1	
S.2. 1	M M M M	D.	P P P P P P P P	D.	M M M M	1 S.1.
2	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	5
3	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	8
4	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	4
5	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	3
6	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	7
7	M M M M		P P P P P P P P		M M M M	6
S.3. 8	M M M M	D.	P P P P P P P P	D.	M M M M	2 S.4.

L.

Distance of *place*, and *motions* of the *body*, are a part of the *Art Military*, used for the *instructing* and *disciplining foot souldiers*, whereby to fit and enable them to the *quicke*, *true*, and *orderly* performance of all *formes* and *figures* of *Battaile*, as may best suit with the *time*, *number*, *place*, and *discretion* of the *Commander*. And may rightly be divided into the se *five* generall heads, (viz.) *Distance*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings*, which have (not unaptly) been compared to the *five Vowels*; for as without one or more of the Vowels, no word can be spelled; so without one or more of these, neither *form*, nor *action* can be performed.

CHAP. IX.

What is meant by Facing, with the use of the word, whether to be used or refused.

BEfore we come to shew the variety of *Facings* in the action, I think it will not be amisse to speak a word or two in the way of *definition*: What is meant by *Facing*? To which I answer, that, *Facing is a particular turning of the Aspect from one part to another, whereby the Front-proper becomes a Front-accidentall: and a Front-accidental may be reduced to his proper Front.* There are some so seemingly curious, that by no means they will allow of the word *Face*; concluding it altogether unnecessary: and no other word must be given but, *To the Right*, *To the Left*, &c. Yet I wonder that men will *stumble* at so small a *straw*, which cannot choose but be better used than refused: For the word *Face* is but one sillable, and quickly pronounced, and gives so clear an expression of the intent of the *Commander*, that it concludes it necessary. As for example, Should you command a *Company* to *Double Ranks to the Right*, and then command them *as* they *were*, and then say, *To the Left*, it might *puzzle* a good *Souldier* at the first to discerne whether he should *face* or *double*. The like mistake might be among *Counter-marches*: Wherefore I conceive that none can justly tax it for superfluous, [a] seeing the easiest expression hath always been accounted for the best. Yet spare me, for my intent is not to over-sway any man in his opinion, but rather to diliver mine; leaving all men freely to their own likings.

The word Face necessary to be used.

[a] *The easiest & plainest instructions are always to be preferred in the teaching your Souldiers.*

If my intent were to make a great book with a little matter, I might then here insert *figures* for every particular *Facing*, and their *Reducements* to their first *Posture*; which would take up divers sheets of paper, and to little purpose: For I suppose that every man, that knowes any thing, may easily conceive the *Idea* of any ordinary *Facing* in his mind. Wherefore I will shew but one or two of the hardest. You are to observe, that for the true performance of [b] *Facings*, every man is to turn upon the *ball* or *center* of the *left-foot*, & to move from the ground onely with the *right*: The *left-foot* being the keeper of *rank* & *file*.

[b] *In the exercise of the motion of Facing you are to be at open order, in rank and file.*

When you face to any hand, in the reducement you are to return by the contrary.

Face to the
- Right.
- Left.
- Right and Left.
- Right about.
- Left about.
- Right and Left inward.
- Right Angle.
- Left Angle.
- Foure Angles.

} *Face as you were.*

The *Front-half-files* standing, it will be requisite for the *halfe-files* to the Reer to do as much by themselves; whereby they will the more aptly perceive, how that the *Subdivision* goeth under the denomination of the *half-files*, &c.

Halfe-

Half-files face to the { Right. / Left. / Right and Left. / Right about. / Left about. / Right and Left inward. } *As you were.*

There is a word which is ordinarily uſed, and proper, for *reducements* of *Facings*, which is, *To your Leader*. *Face to your Leader a word of reducement.*

There is another *Facing* alſo ſometimes *commanded*, which is, *Face to the Center*, and is moſt proper when the *body ſtands* in ſome *circular form*, or *hollow ſquare*. We have alſo a *Facing* which cauſeth the body to *face* to the *Front*, *Reere*, and *Flanks*, which ſome call *Facing ſquare*.

CHAP. X.

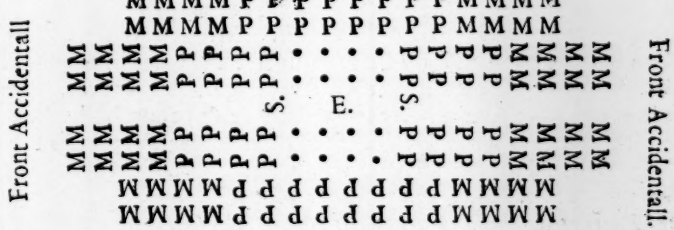
Of Facing ſquare, and how to perform it; the uſefulneſs of Facings, and the ſeveral parts thereof.

WHen we inſtruct our *Souldiers* how to *face ſquare*, (if the *Body* be but 8. *deep*) command the *two firſt Ranks ſtand faſt*, the *two laſt Ranks face about*, *the reſt of the Body face to the right and left*. If the *Body* be *deeper*, we command more *Ranks* to the *Front*, and ſo likewiſe to the *Reer*. It will be very neceſſary for *young Souldiers* to move 10. or 12. *paces* upon every *motion* of *Facings*, whether they are *entire* or *diviſional*. I wil now prick two ſeveral *figures* of *facing*, which will be ſufficient to demonſtrate all the reſt.

The Command is, *Face ſquare and March.*
The Direction is, *Two firſt Ranks ſtand.*
Two laſt Ranks face about.
The reſt of the Body, face to the right and left.
(then) *March all.*

Proper Front.

C.



L.

The Front of the Reere.

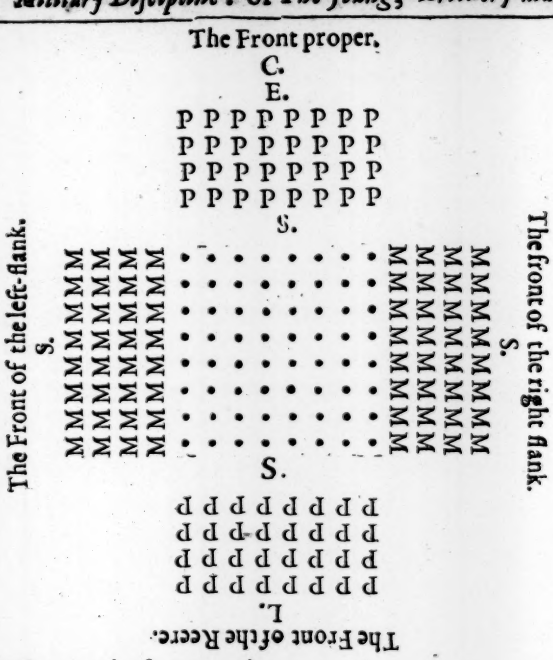
When your *Souldiers* begin any *motion*, let them *advance* their *Pikes*, and *ſhoulder* their *Muſquets*. When they come to a *ſtand* (and have performed their *direction*) let them *order* their *Armes*; that is, to *reſt their Muſquets*, and *order their Pikes*.

To reduce them to their firſt order.

Face all about to the Right, March and cloſe your diviſions.
Face all to your Leader, (who then ſtands at his *Front-proper*,)
Facing ſquare, another way, and *Marching* upon it.

The Command is, *Face ſquare, and March.*
The Direction is, *Muſquettiers face to the right and left.*
(Next) *Half-files of Pikes, face about to the right.*
(Laſt) *March all.*

The



To reduce this *Figure* to its former *order*.

Face all about to the Right, March and close your Divisions.

Face all to your Leader, and then they are reduced.

Facings are so *useful* and *necessary* that you may as well dispense with any one of the grounds of this *Art*, as with them; for they are *usefull* almost upon all occasions, & not only sooner *executed* than any other of the *motions*, but may be *needfull* when *Wheelings* and *Counter-marches* cannot be used, as in a *strait*. There are no more than *four Facings intire*, besides *angular*; but *divisional* there be divers: and indeed very necessary many of them be, as occasion may offer it self for their several *uses*; howsoever, peremptorily to say, there be so many and no more, were too restrictive, & I conceive hath been concluded by none; but it still rests at the *discretion* of the *Commander, to exercise more or fewer of them*, as he best liketh, and the necessity requireth, either for *action* or *exercise*.

The necessity of Facings, and how usefull.

Intire. *Intire Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *whole company* are directed one way.

Divisionall. *Divisional Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *souldiers* are at one and the same time *directed divers and several wayes*; as, to the *front* and *reere*, the *right* and *left*, or to all *four* at once, &c.

Angular. *Angular Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *Company* is directed to the *right corner* man, which is the *right-angle*, or to the *left corner* man, which is the *left-angle*; or to the *four corner* men, which are the *four angles*.

The use of Angular Facings. *Angular Facings* were of great repute among the Ancients, for their *figures* called the *Diamond*, the *Wedge*, the *Sheers*, the *Saw*, and such like, when they made such *formes* of *Battell*: But in our *modern discipline* I conceive them to be of little or no use, onely thus we honour the memory of the Ancients, in their practice. And some say they are very fit for *exercise*; for that by their use the *souldier* is made more *apt* and *perfect* in the other. Therefore let this suffice to be spoken concerning *Facings*, and now be pleased to turn your *aspect*, and take a *view* how our *young souldiers* will behave themselves in the performance of [illegible] *doublings*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of Doublings, their use and parts.

Doublings are to most excellent and singular good use for the *strengthening* of any part of the *Battell*, according to the occasion, or discretion of the Commander; and *consists* of these *two generalls, Doublings of length*, and *Doublings of depth*; all times in *quantity of number*, sometimes both in *number* and *place*; both having this *restriction*, to be *doublings* of *ranks* or *flanks*: every particular *doubling* pointing at one of these, although there be *sundry* and *divers wayes* for the doing of them, each of them being to very good purpose, for some consideration or other. *Doublings* of [a] *ranks*, from what *forme* soever it be done, doth make the *number double* so much as it was before; and sometimes doth *extend* the *length* of the *Battell* to *double* the *proportion* of *ground* as well as *number*.

[a] *Doublings of Ranks allwayes extending the length, either in number, or place or both.*

Doublings of [b] *files* (or *flanks*) do also *double* the *number* in *depth*, and sometimes becomes a *doubling* both of *number* and *place*. Wherefore for the better understanding of *doublings*, observe with me these *six* usuall wayes following.

[b] *Doublings of files (or flanks) allwayes extending the depth, either in number or place, or both.*

The several parts or branches of Doublings,

Doublings of	Ranks.	1.	Doublings of	The Reere.	4.
	Halfe-files.	2.		Files.	5.
	Bringers-up.	3.		Halfe-ranks.	7.

The first is the *doubling of ranks*, and is when every *even rank doubleth into the odde*. The second is, when the *halfe-files double their ranks forwards into the front*. The third, when the *Bringers-up double their ranks forwards into the front*. The forth, when the *front-halfe-files double the reere*. These first foure being *doublings* of *Ranks*, the *length* of the *Battell* being by them *extended* either *simply* in *number*, or both in *number* and *place*. The next two are *doublings* of *flanks*; the first whereof is the ordinary *doublings of files*, every one of the *even files* being inserted into the *odd files*, accounting from the hand named. The next is, the *doubling* of *halfe-ranks*, which is to be understood when one *flank doubleth the other*, either by *passing through, counter-march, doubling entire*, or *divisionall*.

Note, that the distance for particle and divisionall doublings is open order in ranke and file. Note also, that the ordinary doublings of ranks and files is or ought to be performed by three steps, first stepping forth with that foot which is next unto the place named, and in the reducement returne by the contrary hand.

You are to note in this *motion* of *doubling*, that as there is one part of the *body stands*, so the other part *moves*: the *standing part* is to be *doubled*, the *part moving* are those that *double*, as you may perceive by the *Figures*, which shew the manner of each *doubling*. That which next follows are the words of *command*, and *direction* for *doublings*, with the several *reducements* following next after them.

The words of Command for Doublings, with the reducements.

Ranks to the {Right / Left} double. {*Ranks as you were.*} | Files to the {Right / Left} double. {*Files as you were.*}

Bringers-up, double your Ranks forward to the right.
Bringers-up, face about to the left, march forth into your places.
Bringers-up, double your ranks forward to the left.
Bringers-up, face about to the right, march forth into your places.
Files to the right and left double {outward. / inward.} *Files as you were.*
Halfe-files, double your ranks forward to the right.
Halfe-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.
Halfe-files, double your Ranks forward to the left.
Halfe-files, face about to the right, march forth into your places.
Front-half files, face about to the left, and double the Reere to the right. *March forth into your places.*

Note that in doubling of ranks and files, if you double ranks to either hand, doub-

ing of files to the contrary, reduceth them. Or in doubling of files to any hand doubling of ranks to the contrary will reduce them

Front-halfe-files face about to the right. } and double the reere to the left. *March forth into your places.*

Front-half-files counter-march to the right. } and double the Reere.
Front-half-files counter-march to the left.

The word of reducement for either, is, *Front-half-files, as you were.*

Note that upon all motions of doublings, that they who are to double, before they move from their places, are to advance their Pikes, and shoulder their Muskets. When they have performed their doubling, they are to conform to the posture of those whom they double, whether it bee Order, Advance, or shoulder. Note that all intire doublings are to be performed at order in both ranke and file. *Or it may be reduced by halfe-files (that now are) double your ranks formards to the contrary hand

Half-ranks to the right, by counter-march double your left-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.*
Half-ranks to the left, by counter-march double your right-flank. *Half, ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth into your places.*
Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.*
Half-ranks of the left, double your right-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth into your places.*
Half-files double your Front to the right intire. *Half-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.*
Half-files double your front to the left intire. *Half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*
Half-files double your front inward intire. *Half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*
Half-files double your front by division. *Half-files face about to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.*
Front-half-files double your reere by division. *Front-half-files face about to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.*
Front-half-files double your reere to the right intire. *Front-half-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.*
Front-half-filees double your reere to the left intire. *Front-half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*
Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank intire, advancing. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth and take your places.*
Half-ranks of the left, double your right-flank intire, advancing. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth and take your places.*
Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank by division. *Half-ranks that doubled, face about to the right, march forth into your places.*
Double your ranks to the right intire. *Ranks that doubled, face to the left,* and *march into your places.*
Double your ranks to the left intire. *Ranks that doubled, face to the right, and march into your places.*
Double your ranks by division. *Ranks that doubled face to the right and left inward, and march into your places.*
Double your files to the right intire, advancing. *Files that doubled, face about to the left, march down into your places.*
Double your files to the left intire, advancing. *Files that doubled, face about to the right, march down into your places.*
Files, double your depth intire to the { right. left. } * *Files that doubled, as you were.*

Files

Files, double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his bringer-up.
Files that doubled, as you were.
Files, double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his bringer-up.
Files that doubled, as you were.

CHAP XII.

Of Inversion, and Conversion, and of doubling ranks.

THere is yet another *doubling* of the *depth*, which is called *Inversion*. But because some out of their ignorance make little or no difference betwixt *Inversion* and *Conversion*, give me leave for the cleering of the doubt, to place *Conversion* & *Inversion* together, that by their contrary *effects* the difference may be the more *perspicuous*, to such as shall be desirous to know them. Yet before I either enter upon *figure* or *command*, for *inversion* or *conversion*, I hold it necessary to shew some of the *figures* of those *doublings*, for which I have already given the words of *Command* and *Reducements*. And then next after them, I will place both the *words* of *Command*, and the *Figures* belonging to *Inversion* and *Conversion*.

This *Figure* next following is a *doubling* of *ranks* to the *right*, where you may perceive how the *even ranks* are *inserted* into the *odde ranks*: the *pricks denoting* the *places* they *stood in* before the *doubling* began, the *little line* or *stroke* drawn from the *pricks*, shewing the manner of the *doubling*: I think it would be needless to make another *figure*, to shew the *doubling* of *ranks* to the left; for the meanest judgment may by this *figure* easily apprehend what the other would be.

Note that in the doubling of ranks, the even ranks are to double into the odde, beginning always to reckon from the first rank.

The Command is, *Ranks to the right double.*
The Direction is, *Every even rank move at three steps into the odde.*

Front.

	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
1	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	
2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
3	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	
4	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
5	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	
6	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
7	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	
8	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

Ranks as you were, or, *Files to the left double.*

CHAP. XIII.

Doubling of Files.

IN *doubling* of *files* ever observe this *rule*, that the *even files* are to be *inserted* into the *odde files*: alwayes beginning from the *hand named*: as for example, in this present *doubling* of *files*, the *left-hand-file stands fast*, the second *file doubleth* into it, the *fourth file* into the *third*, and so for the rest. If your command be to *double* your *files* to the *right*, then contrariwise the *right-hand-file stands fast*, the rest of the *even files doubling* into the *odde*, accounting from the *right*, as before from the *left*. Thus much may suffice for the *doubling* of *files*: only take this by way of admonition, that as in *doubling* of *ranks* any way, you are to observe your *right-hand-leader*: so in *doubling* of *files*, you are to observe your *file-leader*; so that as neer as possibly may be, you may either in *rank* or *file* be altogether in one *motion*. If you please further to observe with me, that this *doubling* is a *doubling* of *number*, and not of *place*, the *depth* of the *battel* not being thereby *extended*, for further satisfaction observe this *Figure*.

In doubling of files, note if the doubling be to the left, as in this figure, then every man of the even files steps behind his left-hand man, as

three steps, every even file doubling into the odd files, always beginning to account with the outmost file to the hand named; as I have formerly said.

The Command is *Files to the left, double.*
The Direction is, *Every even file from the left, at three steps move into the odde.*

Front

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
1	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
2	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
3	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
4	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
5	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
6	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
7	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
8	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

The Reducement, *Files, as you were:* or *Ranks to the right, double*

CHAP. XIV.

Of Doubling by Bringers-up.

In this doubling of ranks by bringers-up, as likewise in all other of like nature, they that are to move, are to advance their pikes. But if the Commander please, it will be best for the ease of the musketiers to be shouldred. And upon all doubling of ranks whatsoever, let them be sure to observe their right hand men.

THe *Doubling* which next followeth, shall be a *doubling* by *bringers-up*; of which sort, one *Figure* will be sufficient; which I hold most necessary to demonstrate in manner of *Motion*: the *Command* and *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *Bringers-up, double your Ranks forward to the right.*
The Direction is, *The first Rank pass forward to the right, and rank even with the* Front, *the rest following successively.*

Front.

	2	6	7	3	2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	4	8	5	1	
1	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	1
2	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	5
3	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	8
4	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	2 4
	8	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
5	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	6 3
	7	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
6	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	7
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

The Reducement, *Bringers-up, Face-about to the left, March forth into your places.*

This *doubling of Ranks by Bringers-up*, differeth from the other *doubling of Ranks* which I first shewed, not only in regard of the *distance* between the *Ranks* and *quantity of ground*, but also in the *dignity* of the *Doublers*.

First,

First, it differeth in *place*, the former leaving *larger distance* between *rank* & *rank*, being *double that distance* they formerly *stood at*: this, to the contrary, continuing and preserving the *distance* they first had between each *rank*, and leaving all that ground the *half-files formerly occupied*; as you may in part perceive by the *little pricks* at the bottome of the *Figure*.

It differeth also in *dignity*, bringing the *best* and *second sort of Souldiers* together into the *front*: the other producing the *fifth rank in dignity to be doubled into the first*. *&c.* The manner of the *doubling* you may plainly perceive by the *figure*; the *motion* of this *doubling*, and way to perform it, is as followeth: The *eighth* or *last rank*, which are the *Bringers-up*, passe forwards *even in ranke*, through or between the *intervals*, to the *right* of them that stand before them, until they come *even in rank* with the *Front*: the *seventh rank* following those which *marched* from behind them, placing themselves in the *second ranke*; the *sixth* in the *third*; the *fifth rank*, or *half-file*, in the *fourth* or *reer* of the *front-half file*. This *doubling* maketh a very able *front*, in bringing all the best *Souldiers* together. And although it hath *diminished* the *number* in regard of the *depth*, yet it hath *doubled* the *number* in the *length*. This *doubling* is in *quantity* of *number*, not of *ground*. When you *reduce* them into their *places*, remember this, that the *rank* which last took his *place* in the execution of this *motion*, must first *march* into his *place* in the way of *reducement*: for as they are led on by their *bringers-up*, contrariwise they are led off by their *half-file-leaders*.

This doubling is a great strengthning to the Front.

In the *doubling* of the *Front* to the *left* by *bringers-up*, it is the same; only differing in the hand: Wherefore let this suffice for *doublings* by *Bringers-up*.

CHAP XV.

Doublings of files outward and inward.

THe next *doubling* is a *doubling of files outward*; which works the same effect as to *double files* to the *right and left*: for the *right flank* is to *double to the right*, the *left flank* to the *left*. As you may plainly perceive by the following *Figure*.

The Command is, *Files, to the right and left double outward.*

The Direction is, *The out-most files of each flank stand, the even files from each flank double into the odde.*

Front.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
1	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
2	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
3	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
4	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
5	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
6	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
7	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
8	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M
	M	M	P	P									M	M	M	M

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

Files as you were.

This

This *doubling* of *files* to the *right* and *left outward*, ſtrengthneth *both* the *flanks* at *once* by *doubling* their *numbers* in *depth*: But it *weakneth* the *inward part*, where it taketh *two files* clean away leaving a *large intervale* in the *midſt*. Some ſay, it is good when a *Commander* will grace any, to bring them through the *center* or *midſt* of the *Battalia*, But you muſt note, if you have an odde *file* you cannot ſo punctually performe it, as when the *number* of your *files* be *even*. The manner of the *doubling* you may perceive by the *figure*, the *motion* by the *little lines* drawn from the pricks, the performanee is as followeth.

Doubling files to the right and left inwards

The *outmoſt file* of each *flank ſtands*, the ſecond *file double into them*; the third *file* from each *flank ſtands*, the fourth *file double* into the third, the ſixth into the fifth, and ſo likewiſe for the reſt.

If you would *double files* to the right and *left inward*, it is to be done the contrary way for whereas in this *figure* of doubling laſt performed, the *outmoſt files* ſtand, the other *doubling outward* into them: contrariwiſe the two *inmoſt files* ſhould ſtand, the reſt *doubling* to them *inward*: and whereas in this there is a *larger diſtance* in the *midſt*, than is in any other part, the other part *contra* would be *cloſeſt* in that part. Some men do not approve of either of theſe *doublings*. I leave every man to his own choice. The *Practice* tends to *perfection*, and he that can do much, may do leſs when he liſteth.

CHAP. XVI.

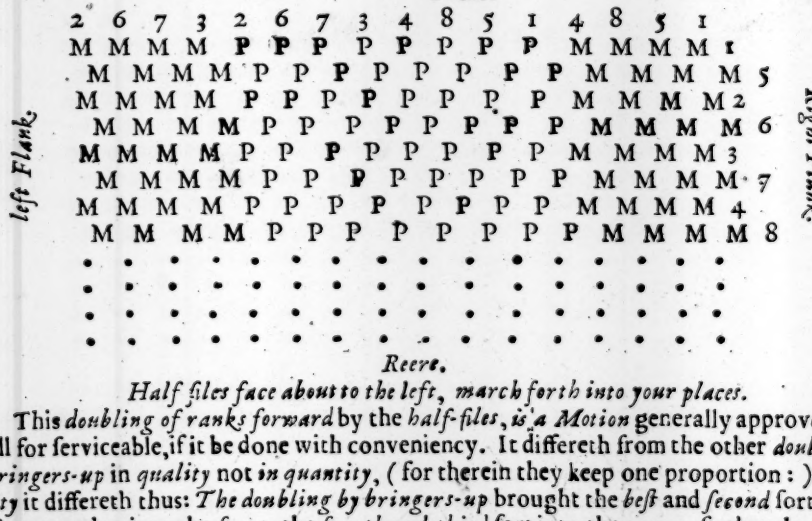
Of doubling by half-files

THe next doubling is a *doubling* by *half-files*, whereby the *length* of the *battel* is extended to *double* the former proportion of *number*, the *depth* being extenuated both in *number* and *place*. The *Figure* will demonſtrate unto you the manner of the *motion*, which is as followeth.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your ranks forward to the right.*

The Direction is, *Half-file-leaders paſs forwards to the right into the Front, the reſt of the ranks following ſucceſſively.*

Front.



Reere.

Half files face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Doubling by half-file by the Greeks called parembole. or inſercion Tact Ælian. 31. &c.

This *doubling of ranks forward* by the *half-files*, *is a Motion* generally approved of by all for ſerviceable, if it be done with conveniency. It differeth from the other *doubling* by *bringers-up* in *quality* not *in quantity*, (for therein they keep one proportion:) In *quality* it differeth thus: *The doubling by bringers-up* brought the *beſt* and *ſecond* ſort of *ſouldiers* together into the *front*, the *fourth* and *third* ſort into the *reere*: ſo that the *reer* was worſe then the *front*: this doubling by *half-files* brings the *beſt* and the *third* toge-

together into the *front*, and leaves the *second* and fourth in the *reere*: so that the *front* is made more able then the *reere* by ½. It differeth likewise in *motion*; For whereas in the other doubling by *bringers-up*, the *Motion* was begun by the last *ranke*, every *Ranke* following the *ranke* which came from behind them: this contrariwise is directly led forth by the *fifth ranke* from the *front* (if they be but *eight deep*) and so is executed more surely and suddenly; the *fifth ranke* passing into the *first*; the *sixth ranke* into the *second*; the *seventh* into the *third*, and so for the rest. For the **reducement*, when they are commanded to *face about to the left, and march forth into their places*, then as the motion was led on by the *halfe-file-leaders*, so in the *reducement* they are led off by the *Bringers-up*: *Doubling* of *halfe-files* to the *left* produceth the same effect, only the contrary hand.

Doubling halfe-files makes the front succede the reere byone third.

**In the reducement of this doubling the bringers-up are the leaders of the motion.*

CHAP. XVII.

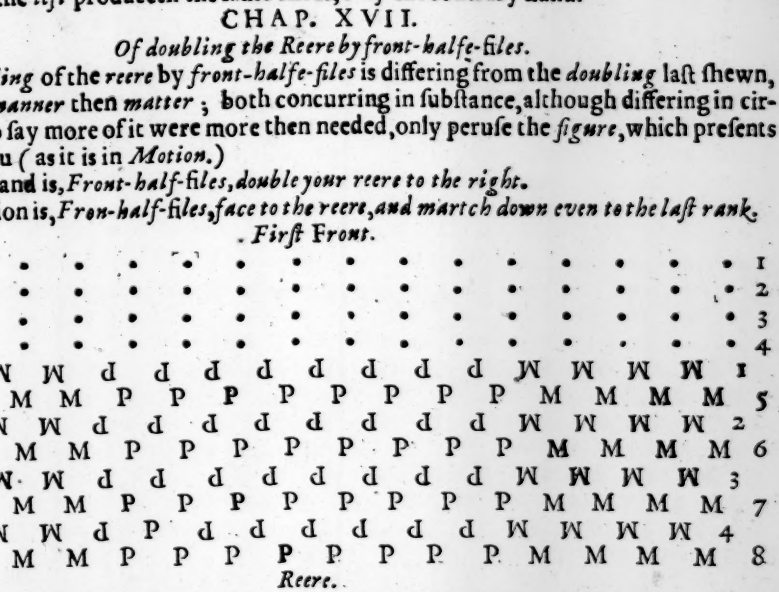
Of doubling the Reere by front-halfe-files.

THe *doubling* of the *reere* by *front-halfe-files* is differing from the *doubling* last shewn, more in *manner* then *matter*; both concurring in substance, although differing in circumstance. To say more of it were more then needed, only peruse the *figure*, which presents it self unto you (as it is in *Motion*.)

The Command is, *Front-half-files, double your reere to the right.*

The Direction is, *Fron-half-files, face to the reere, and march down even to the last rank.*

First Front.



Reere.

Front-halfe-files, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

This *doubling* of the *Reere*, by the *front-half-files*, is to be performed after this manner. (The *command* being first given) the *front-half-files face about to the left* (the *pikes* being all *advanced*, the *musquets* all either *poysed* or *shouldered*) and so being *led* by the *halfe-file-leaders* to the *reere*, which are those that hold the fourth place of *honour*, they *march directly forwards* to the *left* of the other part of the *body*, which stod *faced* in *opposition*, until the *leaders* of the *doubling* have *ranked* even in *rank* with the *bringers-up*, the rest *ranking* even with the other *standing ranks*, according to their *places*: If it be for *service* that this *doubling* is used, then the whole *Body* is to *face about* to the *reere*, being the *part* to be *doubled*: If only for *exercise*, then the *Commander* may (if he please) keep his *place*, and the *doubling* being performed, *face* the *whole body* to the *Leader*, and *command* for the *reducement*; *Files to the right, double intire advancing*, which *reduceth* each man to his first *place*.

The Ranke which holds the fourth place of honour are the leaders of the motion.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of doubling the reere by Counter-march.

THere is another manner of doubling of the reer, by the front-half-files, contrary to that shewn in the precedent chapter, which is done by the way of the *Lacedemon-counter-march*,

march, which some would rank amongst the *Counter-marches*; because (say they) the *motion* is a *Counter-march*: But the *act intended*, or thing wrought, is a *doubling*; and if it were to have the denomination of a *Counter-march*, then it ought not to mix with any other part of the *Body*, onely to *counter-march the front into the midst*, and there to stand without passing forward to the *Reere*, (which makes it a *doubling*) and then it might be accounted for a* *part-counter-march*. But as it is here commanded, and performed, it is a *doubling*. Observe the Command, and Figure following.

*A part-counter-march is when one wo yor part of the Body counter-marcheth thereby not altering the number of the length or depth of the figure, but onely transferring one part into another, It is at the discretion of the Commander to face the Company which way he pleaseth, either for motion, or reducement of any motion formerly performed.

The Command is, *Front-half-files, counter-march to the left, and double the Reere.*

The Direction is, *Reere-halfe-files, face to the Reere and stand, the rest counter-march to the left and lose ground.*

First Front.

2 6 7 3 2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1 4 8 5 1

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M

W W W W d d d d d d d d W W W W

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

W W W W d d d d d d d d W W W W

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

Reere.

Front-halfe-files, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

This *doubling* of the *Reere* by *counter-march*, produceth the same effect to the *Reere*, as *doubling the Front* by *Bringers-up* doth unto the *Front*: The *Counter-march* by which it is performed, is *a Counter-march of losse of ground*; we will speak more of it amongst the *Counter-marches*. The Command to reduce it is, (if the Commander stand at the hand of that part that is doubled) *Front-halfe-files, face-about to the left, march forth into your places.* If hee keep his first stand, having faced them to him, then, *Front-halfe-files, march forth into your places.* To double the *Reere* to the *left* by *Counter-march*, is the same, differing onely in the hand. I will next shew a *doubling* of the *left-flank* by way of *Counter-march*.

CHAP. XIX.

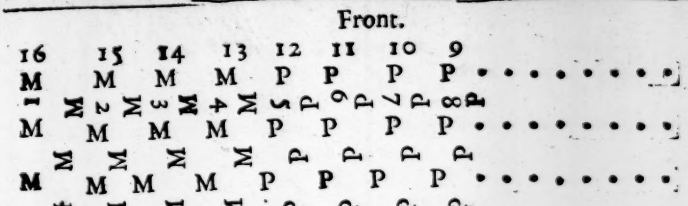
Of doubling Flanks by way of Counter-martch.

HAlfe-*Ranks* (or *Flanks*) are then said to be *doubled, when the depth of your Battalia is increased to double their former proportion of Number or place*, (or both;) which may be done divers wayes. But this Chapter and Figure is only to demonstrate unto you *the doubling of the Left-flank by way of Counter-martch.* The Figure followeth, as the *doubling* is in *motion.*

The Command is, *Halfe-ranks to the right, by Counter-martch double your Left-flank.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right, and counter-martch to lose ground.*

Front.



Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, March forth into your places.

This *Doubling of half-ranks by counter-march* is a *doubling of Number*, not of *place*; for the *depth* ſtill retains the ſame proportion in *quantity of ground*, only augmented by one man, the *length of your Battalia* being diminiſhed both in *number and place*; the *right-flank being wholly inſerted into the left-flank*: as you may perceive by the figure. The motion is to be performed on this manner: *The half ranks of the right face to the right and then even in rank together counter-march between the Intervals*, until the out-moſt *file* to the *right*, which is marked with the figure 1, become into the out-moſt *file* of the *left-flank*, which is marked with the number 16; the ſecond into the fifteenth; the third into the fourteenth; the fourth into the thirteenth, and the reſt in like manner. The uſe of this *doubling* is, to ſtrengthen one of the *flanks*, by bringing more hands to do preſent execution, the other *flank* being in more ſafety. The way for the Reducement of this motion is after this manner: *The half-ranks, that doubled being faced to the right*, then they which were the laſt in taking their *places* in the *motion*, now are the firſt which take their places in the *reducement*, orderly *marching in rank together*, until they come to their places; then *facing* to their *Leader* they become *files* again. The *left-flank* may in like manner *double the right by counter-march*; the difference is this: the *right-flank ſtands*, the *left-flank is inſerted into the right* as before the *right was into the left*. To ſhew another *Figure* for it would be altogether needleſs.

The uſe of this doubling.

Obſerve the manner of the reducements.

CHAP. XX.

Doubling half-files to the right entire, to accommodate the doubling of half-ranks.

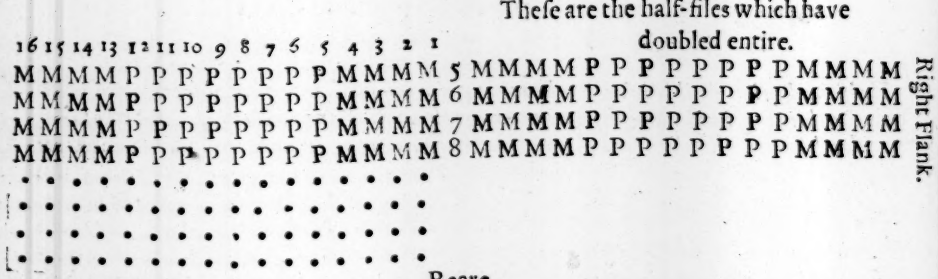
I Should now come to ſhew another manner of *doubling of flanks*, by *inſerting the one flank* into the other, a different way from the laſt ſhewn: but if I ſhould perform it as the Body ſtands in the ordinary *Square*, *flanked with Muſquettiers*, then it would produce a mixture of Armes. To avoid which, before you enter upon this *doubling* of *paſſing in, through*, or *between your half-ranks*, cauſe your *half-files to double the Front to the right entire*; which being performed, you may then proceed to the *doubling* of your *flanks* any way, without mixture of Armes. If I ſhould have ſhewen this motion with

Pikes or *Musquettiers* alone, this first *doubling of half-files entire* might have been spared; but I desire not to leave any thing obscure or difficult, but to render it as easie and apparant as I may, to the capacity of the meanest Reader: And if any place in this small Treatise of mine shall seem ambiguous, I shall intreat the courteous to impute it to my lack of language to express my self, rather than any will in me to conceal or obnubilate the sense, whereby to deprive them of the true meaning of any thing in this book contained. But, lest by *doubling of words* I prove tardy in my work, I will forbear further circumstance, and come to the prosecution of the matter: which, in the first place, will be a *doubling of half-files to the right entire*, whereby the next *doubling* may be the more commodiously accomplished. The *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your Front to the right entire.*

The Direction is, *Half-files, face to the right and march,*
Face to your Leader.
March up and even your Front.

Front



Reere.

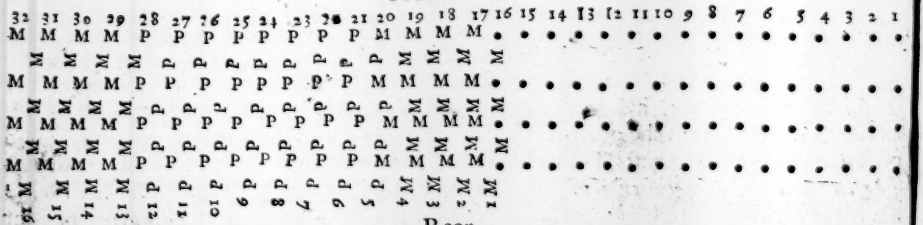
This *doubling of half-files to the right entire.* I have fully expresst in the *Figure*, as the Body stands, the motion being ended; because we are to adde another *doubling* before we reduce them. This figure next following will be best shewn in the motion (or action) not fully performed: that thereby the manner may be the more easily discerned. But by the way observe, that this *doubling of half-files, is a doubling both of number and place*; for the *length* of the *Battalia* is not only *double so many a breast as they were before*, but they also have *extended* their *length* to *double* their proportion of *ground*, which formerly they did occupy. I forbear to speak more of this *doubling* until we come to shew it in motion: and now proceed to the next *doubling* upon this.

All entire Doublings are Doublings both of number and place:

The Command is, *Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank.*

The direction is, *Half-ranks of the right, face to the left and march, face to your Leader.*

Front.



Reer.

Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.

This

This *doubling* of *halfe-ranks* is a more speedy and sure *doubling* than the *doubling* of *half-ranks* by *counter-martch*: notwithstanding, it is most commonly used when the Body consists but of one sort of Armes, being either all *Musquettiers* or all *Pikes*. Nevertheless, because in my Figures I have as well *Musquettiers* as *Pikes*, I have made use of a *doubling by half-files intire*, and from that have *doubled my left-flank*, so to prevent the *mixture* of *Armes*. However, [a] *mixture* of *Armes* upon some occasion may be *necessary*. The manner to performe the motion is this, *The left-flank stands, the halfe-ranks of the right face to the left*, and then the *inmost file of the right-flank* (all the files of the right-flank being by this facing become ranks) *is the leader of this motion*, martching forth directly to their *left-hands, between the intervales of the ranks of the left-flank, untill that the sixteenth file, which now is become a rank, hath placed it self orderly in the two and thirtieth file*, (which is the out-most file of the left-flank;) *the fifteenth in the one and thirtieth, the fourteenth in the thirtieth, the thirteenth in the nine and twentieth, and so likewise of all the rest*. The place may be perceived by the Figure. The *doubling* is of [b] *number*, and not of *place*. For [b] reducement to both these *doublings*, first cause the *halfe-ranks which last doubled*, to face to the *right*, and so to *martch into their places*: They that *last* took their *places* in the *motion*, are the *first* that take their *places* in the *reducement*. The *doubling* of *half-ranks* being thus reduced; next for the reducing of the [c] *half-files*, (which were *doubled* before, for the accommodating of the *doubling of halfe-ranks*) command the *half-files to face-about to the left*, and *to martch forth into their places*: Where with I will conclude these sorts of *Doublings*, which require *open Order in rank and file*, and come next to shew *intire doublings*, which claime a closer distance for their true performance. And therefore, conceive them closed to their [d] *Order* both in *ranke* and *file*.

[a] *Mixture of Armes at some time may be necessary.*

[b] *The reducements to both these doublings; and first to reduce the doubling of the Left-flank.*

[c] *The doubling of half-files to the right intire reduced.*

[d] *Order both in rank and file the true distance required for intire doublings.*

CHAP. XXI.

The difference between intire and divisionall Doublings, and of doubling half-files intire.

HAving closed our Souldiers to their due distance, I will next proceed to shew *doublings intire*. But me thinks I heare some already enquiring, What is meant by *intire doublings?* and therefore, without offence to the curious, give me leave to be so curteous to tell them, That all *doublings* are either *intire* or *divisionall*. *Intire doublings* being these, or such like, as when the *files* or *half-files*, *ranks* or *half-ranks*, (according as the Command shall be given) doe *martch forth joyntly together, without division or dissipation, to double the part commanded*. *Particle* and *divisionall doublings* being such as I have formerly shewen: as when the *files* or *half-files*, *ranks* or *half-ranks*, are *dis-ranked* and *divided* into more *parts* or *places* than one. This may serve for way of distinction: I will now shew *intire doublings*, as they are in action; and first begin with *doubling half-files*. The Figure followeth.

What intire Doublings are.

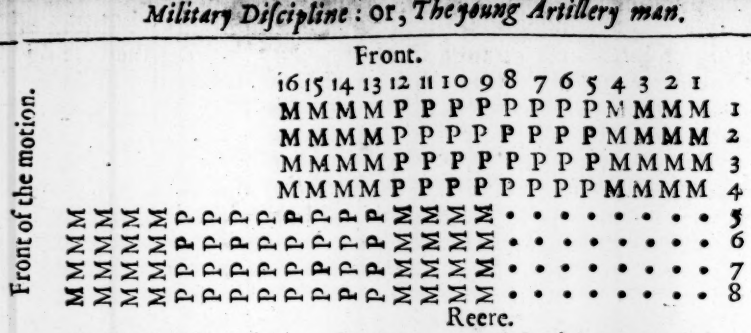
What is meant by Particle & Dividuall Doublings.

The Command is,

Half-files, double you front to the left intire.

The Direction is.

Half files face to the left and Martch.
Face to your Leader.
Martch up and even your front.



Half files, face about to the right, march forth into your places.

This *doubling of half files intire*, hath been held a better *doubling* then either the ordinary *doubling* of *ranks*, or the uſefull way of *doubling* by *half-files* or *Bringers-up*; ſome of the cauſes are theſe: Firſt, it makes no diſturbance to the other part of the *Battalia*; but that it may either be executed in the time of *motion*, *exerciſe*, or *skirmiſh*. Secondly, it appeares another *ſolid Body*, to the great diſheartening of any enemy. Thirdly, it is very apt for *over-fronting*, being a *doubling* both of *number* and *place*. That it hath been uſed by *Antiquity*, take one example out of *Polybius*; Philopemen *the* Achaian *Generall having ranged his Battalias in form of* Plagiophalanx, *the* Lacedemonia Machanidas *being to confront him, march up directly oppoſite to his right wing, in form of a Herſe* (*by them called* Orthophalanx) *but being come within convenient diſtance, he ſuddenly cauſeth the Reer-half-files to double the front to the right intire, thereby equallizing the left wing of the* Achaians. The manner or way to performe the Motion is this; *The half files face to the left, and march till they are quite clear of that part of the Body which ſtands; then they face to the* Leader, *and ſo march up, untill they are become even in rank with thoſe which ſtand upon the right-flank*: and then the Figure will be perfect. For the reducement, the word of command is, *Half-files, face about to the right, march forth into your places*: Having faced-about, they march ſtraight forth, untill they be clear of the *front-half files*; then they *face to the left*, and march ſtraight forth, untill every man hath his right place, and then face right after their Leaders. The *doubling* of *half-files to the right intire*, is performed after the ſame manner, onely differing in the hand.

Doubling by half-files intire, a ſervice-able doubling.

Polybius lib. 1. p. 6. 1. B. & *Aelian* in his *Tactics*: the notes of the 32. Chap.

The direction for this doubling of half-files.

The word of Command and reducement of this doubling.

CHAP. XXII.

Of doubling the Front inward intire,

DOubling of the *Front inward intire*, hath been a Doubling as uſefull as ancient: notwithſtanding, moſt commonly uſed by great Bodies; as when one *Regiment*, *Diviſion*, or *Maniple*, *moveth forward between two others*, thereby *ſeconding* or *relieving them*: whereby the *Front* of all the *three diviſions* become *ranged* in an *even line*; but I have only taken upon me to ſhew the motion in a private Company. The Figure whereof followeth, as it is in the execution.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your Front inward intire,*

The Direction is, *Front-half-files, face to the right and left, and march, Stand, and face to your Leader.*
Reere-half files, march up and even your front.

Front

Front.

16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P M M M M

The halfe-files.

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 5
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 6
M M P P P P P P P P P P M M M M 7
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 8

Reere.

Halfe-files, face-about and martch: Front-half-files, cloſe your Diviſion: Face all to your Leader.

It hath been the cuſtome amongſt ancient Souldiers and great Commanders, that in the matter of *Exerciſe* they ſhew ſome things which are moſt apt for a *private Company*; ſome for a *Regiment*, other ſome moſt uſefull for compleat *Armies*: ſo in like manner it muſt be the diſcretion of every Reader, (whether hee read for *apprehenſion* or *reprehenſion*) to ſuit and fit each Motion to his true end and purpoſe; and with the wiſe man, *rather read twice, than judge once*: and then perhaps, when the intent of the Author is *perceived*, his opinions may be *received*. Yet, what need I, or any other Apologiz ought in the behalfe of this *Form*, or any other ſuch like; ſith they are but the expreſſions of the *various Figures*, which proceed of the words of Command, uſed (almoſt) by every ordinary *Exerciſer of a Foot-Company*? Nevertheleſs, if *Æſops* long-ear'd beaſt paſſing by ſhould peep into this *Druggiſts-ſhop*, and quarell with the Compounds, I ſhall not ſtudy for a further anſwer, then that, *The excellent and skilfull Phyſician can convert that into an antidote, which the unlearned Foole will make his Poyſon.* But leſt I be tax'd for digreſſion, the Motion of this Doubling is thus performed: *The half-files of the Front* face to the Right and Left, and martch till they have left a diſtance between them ſufficient to receive the *half-files* of the *Reere*, then *ſtand*, and *face to their Leader*. That done, the *half files martch up and even their Front*. For the reducement of this Figure, there are (as for all the reſt) divers wayes. But becauſe that it is neceſſary to ſhew one, let the *half-files* face-about to the *Reere*, and martch untill they are cleare of the *Front-half-files*, then cauſe them to *ſtand*, and *face to their Leader*: that being performed, command the *Front-half files* to *cloſe their diviſions*, and they are rightly reduced as at firſt.

The manner or way how this dobling ought to be performed.

The Reducement.

CHAP. XXIII.

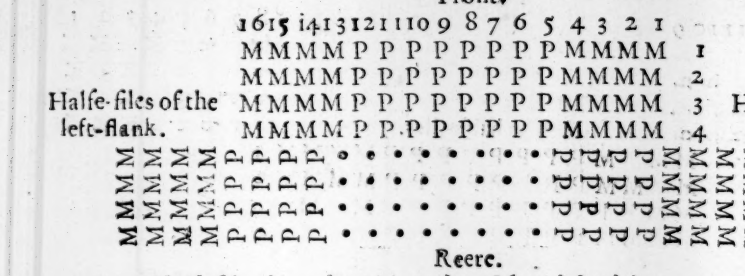
Of Halfe files doubling the Front by diviſion.

THis Doubling hath been very well approved of by Count *Mansfild*, Sir *Thomas Kelly*, Captain *Bingham*, and divers other moderne *Souldiers* of good eſteeme, who preferre theſe ſorts of Doublings before any other; becauſe theſe *Doublings* may be uſed in time of fight, without diſturbance to the other part of the Battell. The Figure ſtands as it is in motion.

The Command is, *Half files, double your front by diviſion.*

The Direction is, *Half files, face to the right and left, and martch; Stand, Face to your Leader; Martch up and even your front.*

Front.



Reere.

Halfe-files, face-about inward. March forth into your places

The manner how this doubling ought to be performed.

The way to performe this motion, is as followeth: the *half-files* are to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and to march untill they are cleere of the Reere-part of the *front-division*, then they face to their Leader, and march up, untill they be come even in rank with the *front*, & so stand: which perfects this *doubling*.

The reducement.

The way to reduce them is as followeth. The *half-files* are to *face-about* to the *Reere*, and to march forth-right, untill they are cleare of the *front-half-files*, and then they are to *face* to the *right* and *left* inward; and so to march and close their *division*: then being *faced* to their Leader, they are *reduced* as at first.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of doubling the Reere by Division.

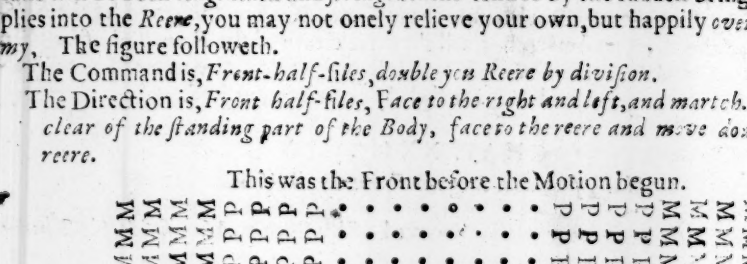
THis next doubling shall be a *doubling of the reere by the front-halfe-files*, which will work the same effect to the *Reere*, as the last *doubling* by *division* did to the *front*. It may be usefull in the passing of a River, when the enemy chargeth or pursueth in the Reere. *The front division either opening*, as you may perceive by the figure (next following) and suffering the *Reere-half-files* to pass through them, they *maintaining the skirmish*, untill the other have attained the further banke of the river; or else the *Front-half-files* being *opened* to the *right*, and *left*, and *faced* upon the *Enemy*, *March* gallantly up, and *receive* the *Charge*, whilest the others provide for themselves. This motion may also be usefull, when you have gained some place of advantage, for then by this *doubling of the Reere*, your Battaile will be both *lengthened* and *strengthened*. And so by the sudden bringing of these supplies into the *Reere*, you may not onely relieve your own, but happily *over-front* your enemy. The figure followeth.

The Motion advantagious for the strengthening of the Reere.

The Command is, *Front-half-files, double your Reere by division.*

The Direction is, *Front half-files, Face to the right and left, and march. When they are clear of the standing part of the Body, face to the reere and move down even with the reere.*

This was the Front before the Motion begun.



Reere.

Front-halfe-files, face about to the right and left inward, March forth into your places

The

The motion may be thus performed: The *Front-half-files face* to the *right* & *left*, & *martch* until they are cleer of the other *half-files* of the *reer*; Then they *face* to the *reer* & *martch* on until they have attained to be even in *rank* with them, whom they had command to *double*; which perfects the *doubling*. The way to *reduce* them, is as followeth: If you keep your place of the first Front, then let your *Front-half-files face about*, (according to the former directions) & *martch until they are cleer of the reer-half-files*, which stand; Then *face* to the *right* and *left inward*, and close their *Divisions*; So being faced all to their leader, they are reduced. Sundry & divers wayes there are for *reducement*, both of this and most other *figures*. Nevertheless I conceive, if I give one *reducement* to each *figure*, it may suffice to those that know little; As for such which know better, they know more wayes to the wood than one: And surely, should I enlarge my self but half so much as I might, (and indeed in some things, no more than were needful) I should then bring my *Volume* into too great a *bulke*; and by the *price* hinder some of the profit: But I am willingly silent in many things, to the end, that others may thereby be the better encouraged by my weaknesses, to take notice of their own *worths*, which may induce them to put pen to paper, and thereby produce some *worthy work*, which may tend to their credits, and their Countries good.

Instructions how to perform this doubling.

The Reducement.

The curious may find many wales of reducement:

CHAP. XXV.

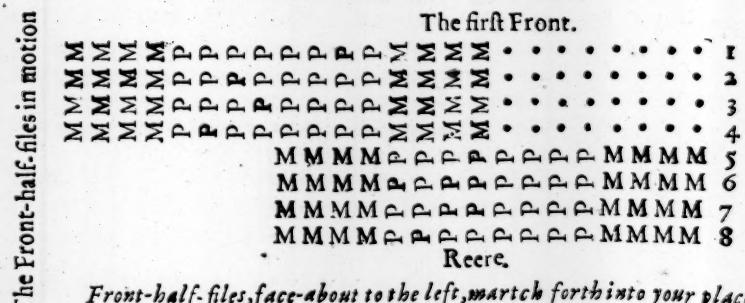
Of Doubling the Reer intire, by the Front-half-files.

THis next *doubling* shal be a *doubling* of the *reer* to the *right intire*, by the *front-half files*: which I intend not fully to demonstrate, but to deliver the *figure*, as it will offer it self in the *motion*. And I conceive it will not be amiss (for the benefit of the *Learner*) to render some *formes* in their moving *posture*, rather than to shew them all as they would appear, the *motion* being perfected; for the way of the *working*, gives a great deale more light to the *Learner*, than to shew the thing absolutely wrought. Neither would I have any think, although I shew these variaties of *doublings*, and acknowledge them to be of singular good use for the extention of the *length* or *depth* of any Battail; but that the wise conduct and skil of the Commander must so order them, that the *extending* of the *length*, do not too much weaken the *depth*; nor that the *strengthening* of the *depth* be not too *great a weakning* to the *front* or *length* of your Battaile. I might give examples how divers great Commanders, either by good fore-sight, or ill over-sight, have gained to *themselves* and their Countries, *honour* and *victory*, or *loss* and *slavery*. But others have been very plentiful in examples of this nature, which makes me forbear: For my intent is not to write a History of the actions of others, but rather to shew to such as are not so skilful, the *Postures*, *Motions*, and some few *formes* or *figures* of *Battel* with their several *Reducements*, *thereby to indeare such as have generous and publique spirits, to endeavour the attainment of this Military skill*. The *figure* of this present *Doubling* followeth.

The

The Command is,
Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right intire.

The Direction is,
Front-half-files, face to the left and martch: Stand, and face all to the Reer of the Battel.
Martch, and rank even with the Reere.



Front-half-files, face-about to the left, martch forth into your places.

The way to perform this Motion, (or Doubling) is after this manner: The *Front-half-files* face to the Left, and martch until they are cleer of the *Reer-half files*: then face again to the Left, (which is the *Reere*) and martch out-right until they *rank even* with the laſt *rank* of the *Reer-diviſion*; which gives concluſion to the Doubling.

Note the Motion.

The reducements.

For the Reducement; Let your *Front-half-files* face-about to the Left, & martch right-forth until they are cleer of the *Reer-half-files*: then face them to the Right, and let them martch into their places. That done, if the *Commander* goe to his *firſt front*, and face them all to him, they are reduced as at firſt. To *double* the *Reer* to the *left intire*, may be done after the ſame manner; only differing in the hand.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Doublings by flanks, or half-ranks intire.

A doubling of Number and Place.

HAving ſhewed the *Particle-doublings*, and the *doublings* of *Front* and *Reer intire*, and by *diviſion*; I will next ſhew the *doublings* of *flanks* after the ſame manner. And will firſt begin with a *doubling* of the *left-flank*, by advancing the *right-flank*, and placing it before the leaders of the *left-flank*: which is a *doubling* both of Number and Place, and may ſerve to ſingular good uſe, for the *ſtrengthening* of any *flank* where it may be needful; for it makes the *Battail defenſible* on every part. The Figure, as it is in motion, followeth.

The

The Command is, *Double your left-flank intire, advancing.*
The Direction is, *Right-flank, Martch, Stand, Face to the left, and martch even with the left-flank; Face all to your leader.*

Front of the right-flank.

Right-flank.

P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M

Front.

Left-flank.

M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P

Reere.

Right-flank that doubled, face about to the left, martch forth into your places.

If you would have your *Musquettiers* to *double even* with the *Musquettiers* of the *contrary flank*, then it is no more but thus: Cause the *halfe-rankes* of the *right-flank* to *martch* forth-right, (as you may perceive by the Figure) untill the *Reere-rank* of the *right-flank* by *advanced* about *three foot* before the *front* of the *left-flank*; then cause that *flank* so *advanced*, to *counter-martch* their *Ranks* to the *right*; and then all your *Musquettiers* will be together on the *left-flank*: the *Pikes* likewise by themselves on the *right-flank*. If this be performed, then the *Reducement* must be answerable after the same manner.

This Reducement conceives the whole Body faced to the left-flank. If they face to the proper front, then Right-flank that doubled, face to the right martch forth into your places. Or, Halfe-files that now are, double your front to the left intire. Either of these will do it.

For instruction how the *motion* of this *doubling* ought to be performed, (according to the words of Command and Direction formerly given) is as followeth. The *left-flank* (or *halfe-ranks* of the *left*) stands fast: the *right-flank*, both *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*, martch forth-right, untill the *Reere* of the *right-flank* be advanced before the *Front* of the *left flank*; as aforesaid. Then face them to the *left*, and cause them to martch untill the *Pikes* are *even* in *rank* with the *Musquettiers*; then face to the *Leader*, and the *doubling* is perfect.

For the *Reducement*, let the *right-flank* that *doubled face to the right*, and *martch* until they are cleare of the *left-flank* (or standing part of the Battalia:) Then cause them to face again to the *right*, and *martch* straight down into their places: Lastly, being *faced* to the first *front*, they are rightly *reduced*. The *right-flank* may also face about, and *double* the *left-flank* towards the *Reere*; both (for manner of Figure) work one and the same effect, differing onely in circumstance; the one being a *doubling advancing forwards before the Front*, the other a *doubling of the depth towards the Reere*. The *left-flank* may *double* the *right-flank intire*, either to the *Front* or *Reere*, but by this that hath already been shewn the others may be understood: wherefore I spare the Figures.

The Reducement.

CHAP. XXVII

Of doubling Flanks by Division.

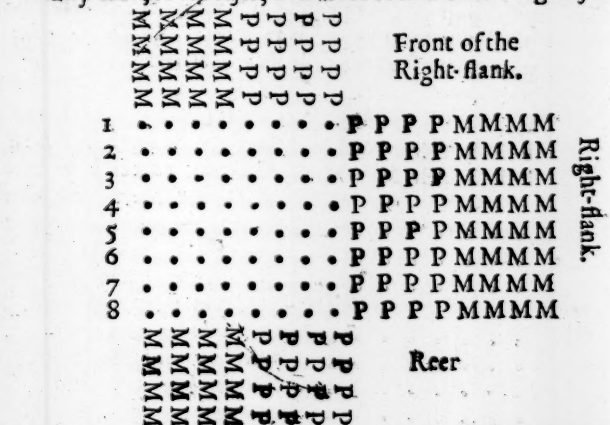
THis next *doubling* is a *doubling* of *Flanks by division*: & without question, a serviceable *doubling*, and very usefull for some occasions. For, if you note the Figure, and conceive rightly what it will produce, (the *Motion* being ended) it makes a strong form of Battail, to give fire three severall wayes at once. The Figure followeth.

The Command is,

Left-flank, double your right-flank by division.

The Direction is,

Halfe-files of the left flank, face to the Reere: Front and Reere-half-ranks, move cleare of the Body, and stand: Front-half-files, face to the right; and Reere-half-files, to the left; and move even with the right-flank.



Halfe-ranks that doubled, face about inward; Martch forth into your places.

Note the instruction.

The *motion* of this *doubling* is thus to be performed: The *Reer-halfe-files* of the *left-flank* face-about to the *right*, and then both the *Front-halfe-files* and *Reer-halfe-files* martch forth-right, untill they are cleare of that part of the *Body* that *stands*; then each *division* faceth that way which they are to *double*, (which the *Front-halfe-files* must do to the *right*, the *Reer-halfe-files* to the *left*;) and so martch forth-right, untill the *Doubling* be performed. For the *Reducement*, you are to conceive, it may be diversly performed:

The reducement.

If the leader be at the *right-flank*, (which is the part that was *doubled*) then the *Reducement* is as followeth: The *halfe-ranks* that *doubled*, face-about inward, and martch forth-right, untill they are cleare of the *right-flank*, which *stands*; then the *Front-halfe-files* face to the *left*, the *Reer-halfe-files* to the *right*, and then *close* their *division*: the Leader going to his first *front*, and facing the whole *Body* to him, they are *reduced* as at first. If that the *right-flank* would *double* the *left-flank* by *division*, the matter is the same; differing onely in the hand.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of doubling Ranks intire.

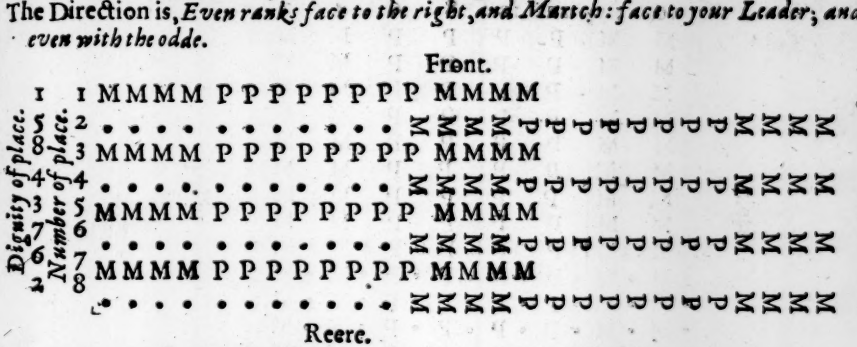
Note the difference of dignity in the doubling.

Differing from doubling by halfe-files in distance.

Doubling of ranks to the right intire, is a doubling both of Number and Place; and in some sort worketh the same effect as the doubling of halfe-files to the right intire: But differeth first in regard of the *parties*, which are the *Doublers*; and secondly, in the *distance* left after the *Doubling*. For the first, which is matter of *dignity*, the *fifth* and *first* in honour are ranked together in the *Front*, the *second* and *sixth* in dignity make the last *Ranke* in the *Reere*: So that the *Front* precedes the *Reere* $\frac{1}{4}$ in worth; whereas in the *doubling* by *halfe-files*, the *Front* exceeded the *Reere* by $\frac{1}{3}$. Secondly, it differeth for the *distance*, by leaving *Open Order*, at the least, between all the *ranks*. For further satisfaction, observe this Figure following.

The

The Command is, *Double your Ranks to the right Entire.*
The Direction is, *Even ranks face to the right, and Martch: face to your Leader, and rank even with the odde.*



Ranks that doubled, face to the left. Martch forth into your places.

The *motion* of this *doubling*, ought to be performed, as followeth; namely, if the *doubling* be to the *right*, as is above expressed by this figure: Every *even ranke*, *faceth to the right*. The *right-hand-man* of each *rank*, becomming the *leader* of his *rank file-wise*: leading them forth, and in their *martch* or moving forwards, a little bending to the *left*: that when the *left-hand-man* of each Rank, (which are the *bringers-up* of the *motion*) are cleer of the standing part of the *body*, by onely *facing* to the *front*, they may stand even in *rank* with the rest of the *company*. For *reducement* of this *doubling*, it may be as followeth. Command the ranks that *doubled*, to *face* to the *left*, and martch forth-right into their places. Or for variety, command *halfe-ranks* of the *right*, to *face* to the *left*, and *double* the *left-flank*. Both which, as the *Company* now stand, work one and the same effect. The *left-hand-man* of *each ranke*, being the *leaders* of the *motion* in the *reducement*. To *double ranks* to the *left Intire*, is to be done after the same manner; onely observing the *differences* of the *hand*. This *doubling* may also be done by *division*. But I spare the Figures.

Instructions for the Doubling.

Note that the left-hand-men, are the Leaders of the motion, in the reducement.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of doubling Files intire, advancing.

Doubling of *Files* to the *right intire*, advancing, is (also) a *doubling* both of *number* & *place*: for it increaseth the *depth*, to double their former *proportion* of number: as from *eight*, to *sixteen*; from *ten* to *twenty*; &c.

It also gaineth so much more *ground* before the *Front*, as formerly the *Battell* did contain: by *transferring* the *even Files* of the *body*, into the *ground*, before the *Front* of the *odde Files*: but this *doubling diminisheth* the number of the *length* of your *Battell*, although it preserves their *place*. I spare to speak further of it, only thus. Let the antiquity of this *doubling* plead for its excellency, and if that may hold for a rule, then this may be ranked amongst the best. For further directions, observe the following Figure.

The Command is, *Double your Files to the right intire, advancing.*
The Direction is, *Even Files advance forwards, and place your selves before the odde files to the right.*

Front.

	16	14	12	10	8	6	4	2	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
Left Flank.	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	Right Flank.
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	16 M	14 M	12 P	10 P	8 P	6 P	4 M	2 M	1
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	2
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	3
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	4
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	5
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	6
	• M	• M	• P	• •	• P	• P	• M	• M	7
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	8

Reere.

Files that doubled, face-about to the left. March forth into your places.

Inſtructions to perform the doubling.

The *motion* of this *doubling* ought to be performed after this manner. The *odde files* are to *ſtand*, beginning your account from the *outmoſt file* to the *hand* named. The *Muskettiers* and *Pikes* of the *even files*, are to *advance* their *Armes*; and follow their *file-leaders*, every *file-leader* leading his *file* forth-right, before his next *file* to the right, untill the *bringers-up* of the *even files*, are orderly placed, before the *leaders* of the *odde files*: as you may perceive by the *Figure*. For *reducement*; let the *files* that *doubled, face-about* to the *left*; the *bringers-up* of each *file* leading them forth-right, down the *Intervals*, which are on the *left-hand*, untill they are come *even* with the *Reere*: and then *ſtand*, and *face* to their *leader*, and they are reduced, as at firſt. The *doubling* of *files* to the *left Intire*, advancing, is after the ſame manner: it onely differeth in the *hand*: therefore I ſpare the *figure*. They that love to be curious, may likewiſe *double files*, by *diviſion*, *advancing*.

The reduce ment.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Files doubling their depth.

THis next *doubling* is a *doubling to the depth of the right Intire*: and is likewiſe a *doubling of Files*, as the other laſt ſhewn in the precedent Chapter; Being alike both for *number* and place: notwithſtanding it *differeth* from the *other*, both in *manner* of executing, and in ſome ſort of the *matter* executed. For whereas the other *doubling* by *advancing* of *files*, did *transferre* all the *even files* into the ground before the Front: Contrariwiſe, this *doubling* doth *transferre* them into the ground next behind the *Reere*. And as in the *other doubling*, you may perceive half the *file-leaders* to remain in the *front*, the other half to be *halfe file-leaders*: This *doubling* hath half the *file-leaders* in the *front*, the other half being the laſt *ranke* of the *Reere*: *thoſe which were the former *bringers-up* being become the two *innermoſt* or *middlemoſt rankes*. The *Figure* followeth, being demonſtrated as the *Body ſtands*: the *Motion* being ended.

*By this doubling the bringers up become the two middlemoſt ranks.

The

The Command is, *Files, double your depth to the right intire, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.*

The Direction is, *Even files from the right face to the Reere, and every man place himself after his bringer-up,*

Front.

	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Left-Flank.	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	1
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	2
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	3
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	4
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	5
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	6
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	7
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	8
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	8
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	7
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	6
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	5
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	4
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	3
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	2
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	1

Right-Flank.

Reere.

Files, as you were: Or, *Bringers-up double your Ranks forward to the left.*

The manner or way how this doubling ought to be performed.

The manner of the *motion* for this *doubling*, is as followeth: The Command being given, *Files, double your depth to the right intire, every man falling behind his Bringer-up*, then the *even files*, accounting from the *hand* named, immediately *face about* to the *right*, and the *Bringers-up* of each of the *even files* turn behind the *Bringers-up*, of the *odde files*, that *stand*; and so every man, as he cometh down to the *Reere*, turneth to the *left*, behind him that *martcheth* down the next before him, untill those that were the *Leaders* to the *even files* are become the *Bringers-up* to those which were the *odde files*. The *Reducement* is as followeth: *Bringers-up that now are, double your ranks forward to the left.* Which being performed, they are as at the first. If you would be instructed in the manner, turne back and see it, where the *Bringers-up double* their *ranks* forward into the *Front*: It is the fourteenth Chapter

The Reducement.

Some doublings omitted.

I have willingly past over another *doubling* of the *depth*, because it is much after the manner of that which is done by *advancing file upon file*; which is the *doubling* of the last Chapter. It differeth only thus: In the last Figure, the *even files martched* forth, placing themselves before the *odde files*: and in this which I have omitted, the *even files* are to *face about*, and *march* forth-right towards the *Reere*, untill the *File-leaders* of the *even files* have placed themselves just behind the *Bringers-up* of the *odde files*; and then every man to *face* to his *Leader*. Some have a *doubling* of the *depth* by *Counter-martch*; which I conceive scarce worth penning, yet willing to leave every man to his own liking; and as I do nothing in it, so I will say nothing of it. There are others that have written concerning *doubling* of *place*; nevertheless, because they are nothing but the *opening* of *ranks* and *files*, whereby the *length* or *depth* of your *Battell* is *extended*, and so *doubled* in *place*, and not in *number*, I forbear to write further of them; desiring not to treat of such things as are more *curious* than *necessary*.

Doubling the depth by Counter-martch

Doubling of place.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Conversion and Inversion, with their words of Command, and Reducements.

ACcording to my promise, I will now shew the difference between *Inversion* and *Conversion*; whose very names are so intricate and troublesome (to many) that they are more puzled with the words then the work. Some are of opinion, that they are both one, differing in *letter*, not in *matter*. Others would have a difference, if they could tell how, or where. But generally they are so chopt and changed one for the other, that the *Souldier* cannot in truth tell which is either. But that you may not be deceived, take this for a *rule*, that *Inversion doth alwayes produce file* or *files*; and *Conversion*, *rank* or *ranks*. *Inversion* consists of *files filing*, or of *ranks filing*. *Conversion*, of *ranks ranking* to the *right* or *left*: or by *increase* of *files*, *ranking* by *even* or *uneven parts*: and of *ranks wheeling* to the *right* or *left*. I shall speak further of them in their several places. But by the way you are to observe, that *Inversion* and *Conversion* require larger *distance* of *ground* than any other *motions*; which must be the *Officers* care to open the *ranks* or *files*, to such *distances* as shall be necessary to contain the *ranks* or *files* so to be *Inverted* or *converted*; whether it be *double-distance*, or twice *double-distance*, or any other lesser or larger quantity of ground. The words of *Command*, with their several *Reducements*, are as followeth.

Inversion.

Inversion.

Files, file to the Right. / Left. — *File-leaders, lead up your files as you were.* — Ranks, file to the Right. / Left. / Right & Left. — *Files, ranks as you were.*

Files, file to the Right and Left by division.

Conversion.

Conversion.

Ranks rank
- 3. 5. 7. or 9. to the Right.
- 4. 6. 8. or 10. to the Left.
- By increase 2. 4. 6. 8, &c. to the Right.
- By increase 1. 3. 5. 7, &c. to the Left.
- Intire to the Right into the Front.
- Intire to the Left into the Front.
- By division into the Front.

Ranks, rank as you were.

Ranks, wheele to the Right. / Left. / Right & Left. — *For reducements; Face-about to the* Right / Left / Right & Left. — *And wheel into your places. Then face to your Leader.*

Files, rank
- 3. 5. 7. or 9. to the Right.
- 4. 6. 8. or 10. to the Left.
- By increase (to the Right) 1. 3. 5. 7, &c.
- By increase (to the Left) 2. 4. 6. 8, &c.
- To the Right / To the Left — into the Front.

Ranks, file as you were

To avoid the words of *Inversion* and *Conversion*, I have delivered the directions without naming either of them: onely I have expresst the *six* first words of *Command* to be *Inversion*, and the last *sixteen* to be *Conversion*. For I conceive it altogether unnecessary to add to every word of *Command*, *Inversion* or *Conversion*; for by so doing, the unlearned and ignorant *Souldier* will be so confused with the strangeness of the word, that he will scarce by any meanes be made capable of the *matter*. For mine own part, I have ever held this opinion, that the easiest *expressions* are ever to be preferred, in the way of *instruction*, to *young Souldiers*. I might have much inlarged my self, in the words of *direction*, concerning

cerning this Subject, and have written concerning *ranks* and [illegible] *ranking* by *decreaſe*; but theſe already expreſt may ſuffice to demonſtrate to any the grounds of all: and if any will be curious, by the practice of theſe, the reſt will be found. I alſo at firſt intended to have drawn a Figure, the more lively to have expreſt thereby each ſeveral word of *Command*; but, upon better conſideration, I perceived that ſome of them would require much room, and not be ſo apt to print, without their Figures were cut, and were facile enough to the meaneſt capacity, by their words of *Command* and *Direction*; therefore, I conceive, the paines and coſt may be ſpared, delivering the Figures of ſome few of them, that are *moſt neceſſary*, and for the reſt, expreſſe by word what they will produce in Figure.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Files *filing in ſequence.*

The command is, *Files, file to the right.*

TO perform this *word* of *Command*, The *right-hand-file martcheth away ſingle*, the *ſecond file* from the *right* falleth into the *reer* of the *firſt*, the *third* behind the *ſecond*, the *fourth* behind the *third*; and ſo conſequently all the reſt of the *files* fall into the *reer* of their next *right-hand-files*, until all the whole *Company* become one *file*. It may be uſefull to paſſe ſome narrow bridge, or thicket, or elſe-where, where but one at once can paſſe; the *Commander* being willing to preſerve his *files* intire and whole. The way for the *reducement* may be after this manner: The place being convenient, every *file-leader* is to *lead* up his *file* to the *left* of him that *martcheth* before him, untill all the *file-leaders* are *even* in *rank* together; their *files* orderly following them. The *word* for the *reducement* is, *File-leader, lead up your files as you were.* For *files* to *file* on in *ſequence* to the *left*, may be performed after the ſame manner; it onely differeth in the *hand*, but works the ſame *effects* onely, the *right-hand-file-leader* led the other, and the *left-hand-file* fell laſt of all into the *Reere*; this, contrariwiſe, is led forth by the *left-hand-file*, and the *right-hand-file* is the laſt that taketh place in the *Reere* of the *extended file.* *Inverſion.*

Files, file to the right and left by Diviſion.

Files filing by *diviſion*, is wrought after the ſame manner; but differeth in this, *That the right-hand-file of the Company, and the left-hand-file of the ſame, begin to lead forth at one and the ſame time, in their ſeveral places: The files of the right-flank falling file-wiſe behind the right-hand file; the files of the left flank falling in like manner behind the left-hand file.* So that if the *Body* be *flanckt* with *Muſkettiers*, then this *filing* by *diviſion* bringeth all the *Muſkettiers* into the *Front-Diviſion*, and the *Pikes* in the *Reere* of them. If there be an *odde file*, it moſt commonly falleth to the *right*. The *word* for *reducement* is, *File-leaders, lead up your files as you were.* This ſort of *Inverſion* is called, *Filing in ſequence*. I will now ſhew another ſort of *Inverſion*, which is by *Ranks filing*: The which I will demonſtrate unto you by two Figures, which will be ſufficient to inſtruct the deſirous.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of inverting Ranks; or *Ranks filing.*

THis following Figure of *Inverſion*, is of *Ranks filing to the right, where all the* Ranks *are to be inverted to the out-moſt file to the right*: For the doing whereof, let all your *files* be *cloſed* to their *Order*, or *Cloſe-order*, as ſhall be thought moſt neceſſary; the *ranks opened*, either *forward* or *backward*, to *double-diſtance*, or twice *double-diſtance*, (more or leſſe) as the *Commander* ſhall ſee moſt convenient, according to his number. Having *cloſed* your *files*, and *opened* your *ranks* unto their due *diſtance*, then let every *rank* move after

his

his *right-hand-man*, [illegible] every *ranke* stand right in *File*, after the *right-hand-leader* of his rank. In this Figure I have only *opened* the *four first ranks* to their distance, and *inverted* but *two* of the *four*. By which it may easily be perceived, both the *manner* of the *work* & the *matter* which is to be *wrought*. But if the *Commander* will perform it upon a *March*; then they shall not need to *open* to any *distance*, but to take their *distance* in the *execution*; which is the easiest way, and will be thus performed. The *right-hand-man* of the *first rank* marcheth forth-right; all his *rank facing* to the *right*, and *marching file-wise* after him. The *right-hand-man* of the second *rank* falling immediately after the *left-hand-man* of the first *rank*, all his *rank* in like manner following of him. The *right-hand-man* of the third *rank*, after the *left-hand-man* of the second; his *rank* likewise following of him. And so for all the rest, untill they are all become one *file*.

This kind of Inversion best performed marching.

Ranks file to the right.

Front.

8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

m m P P P P m m 1

m m P P P P m m 2

This *Ranks filing*, is sooner performed, and *reduced*, then *files filing*: and in the *reducement* will presently be ready to make resistance, against any opposition in the *front*. Whereas if *files file*, it will be a great while before the *file leaders* will be able to make *good* the *front*: the manner of the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, is as followeth. If they were *eight* men before in *rank*, then the first eight men, *rank* to the *left*, into the *front*, The next *eight* men *rank* next after them, which makes the second *rank*. The third *eight* men, *ranking* to the *left*, make the third *rank*. And so forward for the rest, untill they are *reduced*, as at the first. But it may be, that some will object, that in this *Figure* there is *mixture* of *Armes*; which if they will avoid, they may either *march* forwards their *Musquetiers* of each *division*, and *close* them before the *Pikes*; and *invert* them first. Or they may *march* forwards their *Pikes* first, and leave their *Musquetiers* to come in the *Reer*. Or if they please, they may upon a deep *march*, first *invert* the *front-division* of *Musquetiers*, then their *Pikes*, and last the *reer-division* of *Musquetiers*; which way soever it be done, the word for *Reducement* will be, *Files, Rank as you were*.

The reducement.

Mixture of Armes hath many times proved advantagious.

By this deep March is to be understood aright according to Ælian.

Ranks file to the Left, is performed after the same manner. It *differeth* from this last done, but onely in the *hand*. And whereas the *right-hand-file-leader*, was the *leader* of the last, this would be led by the *left-hand file-leader*: The *left-hand-leader* of each *rank*, leading forth his *Rank file-wise*, as before it was performed, but to the *contrary hand*; I spare the *Figure*.

Ranks, Files to the left.

M M P P P P M M 4

M M P P P P M M 5

M M P P P P M M 6

M M P P P P M M 7

M M P P P P M M 8

Reer.

Files, rank as you were.

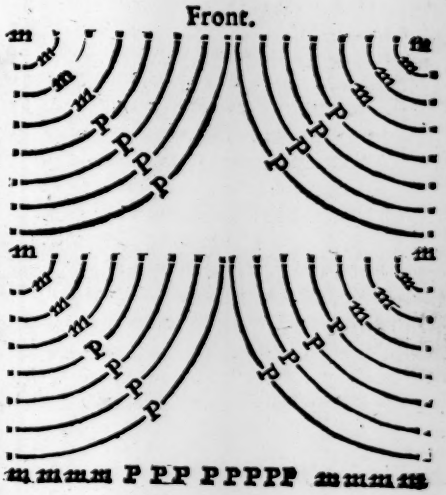
CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Ranks filing by division; and how usefull.

THis next *Figure* of *Inversion* is of *Ranks filing by division*; and is a *doubling of the depth, by unequall proportion*: For whereas in most of all other *doublings* the number of the Length or Depth is augmented but to double their former proportion of number, this *doubling* of *Inversion* makes their Depth so many times more in number as there are *Files* to *double*; or half so many times, if it be done by *Division*; as in the next following *Figure*. It hath been of ancient use amongst the *Grecians*, and in these our latter times it hath been held of speciall use, to avoid the shot of the great Ordnance, when of necessity we are to *march* against any *Battery*. It hath also been held good, to prevent the imminent danger of some great *showre* of *small shot*, likly to be poured out upon the *Front* of your *Battalia* It may also serve for a *guard*, honourable *passage*, large *intervaile*, *street*, or *gallery* (as some call it) for any great *Personage* or *Commander* to passe through. It is also of common use for *lodging* of the *Colours* or *Ensigne*: And many other such like.

Ranks, file to the right and left by division.



Tacticke Ælian. Chap. 30. pag. 6. line the last.

MMMMP PP PPPPP MMMM

MMMMP P P P P P P P MMMM

MMMMP P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMMP P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMMP P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMMP P P P P P P P MMMM

Reer.

Files, rank as you were.

For instruction how to perform this *motion*, It is the same with the last *Figure*; differing onely in this, that as in the other *Figure* all the whole *ranks* turned to the *right*, behind their *right-hand-men*; in this *motion*, the *left-flank*, (or *halfe-rank* to the *left*) fall into the out-most *file* to the *left*; the *halfe-ranks* to the *right*, behind their severall *right-hand men*: as you may perceive in part by the *Figure*. I have shewn the *Figure*, in the manner of the *action*, not fully performed. The *pricks rank-wise*, denoting the places from whence they came: The quarter-circles, shewing the way of the *motion*: the *pricks file-wise*, directing or shewing their places they are going to.

Reducement by Conversion.

For *reducement* to the *Figure*, it is no more than this: The *Ranks* which before *inverted* into *files*, now again *convert* into *ranks*, as they were. The *word* of Command for it, is, *Files, rank to the right and left inward, as you were.*

Military Discipline to much slighted by middle sort of Citizens.

I hope this that hath already been shewn, will be sufficient (at least in some small measure) to give satisfaction to those, which as yet have not known what is meant by *Inversion*: Yet I could wish, that such as exercise the Companies of the Trained-Bands of this Kingdome, would rather make use of the plainer *word* of *demonstration*; which is, *Ranks, file*; or *Files, file*; and leave out the word *Inversion*, as a word not futable with the capacity of divers of our Souldiers of the Trained-Bands; especially of this City, where Porters, Colliars, Water-bearers, & Broom-men, are thrust into the rooms of men of better quality, as though they themselves were too good to do the King and their Country service.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the severall parts of Conversion: and how they are to be understood.

THe next branch of *Discipline*, which I offer to your view, shall be of *Conversion*, & of its severall parts: Wherein, if there be any that think me tedious, let them turn it over, and settle on some other part, which may be to them more delectable; whilest I, in the mean time, shall endeavour to give content to all: neither stuffing out my book with *needlesse discourses*, nor yet too much abbreviating the matter, whereby to render it too obscure to the commonest capacity. Wherefore take their parts as they hereafter follow.

Conversion consists of these parts, *viz.* Of

- Ranks ranking
  - *In equall parts.* 1
  - *In unequall parts.* 2
  - *Intire into the Front.* 3
  - *By division into the Front.* 4
  - *By wheeling to the Flanks.* 5
- Files ranking
  - *By equall parts.* 6
  - *By unequall parts.* 7
  - *Intire into the Front.* 8

Ranking in equall parts. This manner used both by Greeks and Romans; and is the best for a strait.

First, of *Ranks ranking* in *even* or *equall parts*: Which is to be understood, *when there are twelve, or twenty, (more or lesse) marching abreast, and the Commander (either for the narrownesse of a passage, or for some other intent (causeth his ranks to rank three, or six abreast, or five, ten, or any other number, either according to the place, or occasion; every rank holding equality of number.*

Ranking in unequall parts.

Secondly, *Ranks* then *rank* by *unequall parts*, when they *rank by increase*, or *decrease*: As when the first *rank* shall be *three*, the next *five*, then *seven, nine*, &c. which is commonly used, for the making of *Diamond* and *Triangular Figures.*

Rank ranking intire into the Front.

Thirdly, *Ranks* then *rank intire into the Front*, when the *first rank stands*, the *second rank placeth it self on the right or left of the first*, the *third by the second*, the *fourth by the*

the third, and so forward for all the rest, untill *all the ranks*, (either to the *right* or *left*) according to direction, *are become one Ranke in the front.*

Ranks ranking by division into the Front.

Fourthly, *ranks* then *rank by division into the front*, when the *second Ranke*, and all the rest of the ranks behind, open to the *right* and *left*: the one part going to the *right*, the other to the *left*; *ranking even* with the *first*, as before, and all together making one *Rank*.

Ranks ranking to the flanks by wheeling.

Fifthly, *Ranks* then *rank* to the *flanks*, or *flanks*, when either the *right-hand-man* of *each rank*, or *the left-hand-man* (or both together) *are as it were the Hindge of the motion, the rest of each rank wheeling about them, to the right or left*, or each hand by division, *untill that every rank be brought into the distance which was before the Ranke*; *between the right-hand-man of the rank next before, and the right hand man of the same rank you stand in.* If it be to the *left*, then they *wheele* into the *distance* between the *left-hand-leaders* of each Rank. If it be by *division*, then *half* the rank wheeleth to the *right*: the other *half* to the *left*, and produceth two Ranks.

Files ranking in equall parts.

Sixthly, *Files* then *rank by equall parts*, when they rank three, foure, or five abreſt, (more or leſſe) ſtill keeping the number of men in ranke, of due proportion. If you rank three abreſt (either to the *right* or *left*) and your *File* be but eight deep, then the firſt ſix men make two ranks; the third rank muſt be made up by the leader of the ſecond *file*. And ſo for all the reſt. If you rank four, and the *files* be eight *deep*, then every *file* makes two ranks. If you rank five, the *files* being eight *deepe*, the the firſt five men make a rank; and the firſt two men of the ſecond *file* from the hand named, make up the *ſecond* rank. Five of the other ſix, make up the *third* rank. And ſo forward for the reſt. If the *depth* of the *file* were ten men, then it would make two *even* ranks.

Files ranking by unequall parts.

Seventhly, *Files* then rank by unequall parts, when they either rank by progreſſionall increaſe or by decreaſe: As when every rank exceeds the rank before it, by two, three, or four, be it more or leſſe. Or elſe that each rank decreaſeth, after the ſame manner.

Files ranking intire into the Front.

Eighthly, *Files* then rank intire into the *front*; when there is *ſo much diſtance between file and file, as will contain each file, rank-wiſe: Every man in the file martching forward to the right or left, as ſhall be commanded, untill he ſtand even in rank with the leader of his file, which brings the Body into one rank.*

CHAP. XXXVI.

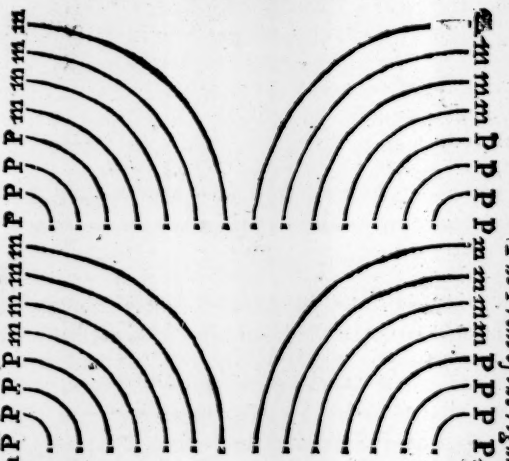
Of Ranks wheeling by converſion.

IF I would ſtrive to be *curious*, I ſhould need no other *ſubject* to lengthen my diſcourſe, but onely this of *Inverſion* and *Converſion*, which of it ſelf would yeeld matter ſufficient to make a book. But I have taken a larger taske: And therefore like the Artiſts in *Geography*, who ſometimes by a *ſpot* preſent a *Towne*, and by a *wrinckled line* a large River; ſo muſt I crave of the favourable Reader, that in this ſmall Treatiſe of *Diſcipline*, he will not expect that I ſhould inlarge my ſelf ſo amply, as I might upon every part. For then my book would grow beyond his bounds, and I beyond my promiſe. But leſt I be taxed for digreſſion, this that hath already been ſhewn may ſuffice for *converſion*. But becauſe it may be expected, that I ſhould ſhew *converſion* in *Figure*, as well as the other *Motions*, therefore to ſatisfie ſuch, I ſhal demonſtate two *Figures* unto them, which may ſerve for all the reſt. The one ſhall be of ranks *wheeling by converſion*: the other of *files ranking four to the left*. The word of *Command* for the firſt ſtands placed right over the *Figure*.

This *figure* of *Converſion* is of *rankes wheeling to the right and left*: or *rankes ranking to each flank by wheeling*. It differeth from *ranks filing*, both in manner and matter. In the manner thus, Whereas in *ranks filing* to the right and left, the *right* and *left-hand-file-leaders* preſerve and continue their places; and with that, their honours: In this *wheeling by converſion* to the *right* and *left*, contrariwiſe the *innermoſt file-leaders* become the *outmoſt* men in that part where the *front* ſtood; the other *file-leaders ranking even* within them. Some men have called this, *Ranks filing by Converſion, to the right and left*, But corruptly. For *converſion* alwaies produceth *ranks*, as I formerly ſaid: and *Inverſion*, *files*. But their miſtake groweth from this, that when *Ranks wheel to the right*, or *right* and *left*, then (ſay they) they by *wheeling* become *file*, or *files*, which is a palpable miſtake. For when we have any *command* for *wheeling*, It is a *maxime* for us to *wheele our aſpects unto the hand or part named*. By which doing, we either become rank or ranks; and not files, as ſome have fought formerly to maintain. One uſe, among many, for this *motion* is. It is the ſpeedieſt way for a great Body (if they have their due diſtance) to *give fire to one or both flanks* that as yet I know of. The way to perform this *motion*, is as followeth. The *right* and *left hand-men* of every rank become the *Hinges* of the *motion*: the reſt of each rank *wheeling by equall diviſion* to the right and left about, and above their right & left-hand-Leaders, untill they become ranks to the flanks; as you may perceive by the *Figure*, where the *pricks* denote unto you the places they ſtood in before the *motion*: the *quarter circles*, ſhewing the *way* of their motion, themſelves being converted into two ranks, ſheweth the motion executed, I have onely *converted* three of the ranks; for it would have taken too much room, to have *wheeled* all the *ranks*. And it is eaſie by this that is ſhewn to conceive the reſt. If you would avoid *mixture of Armes*, then place all your *Muskettirs*, either in *front* or *reer*; or elſe *wheel* only your *Muskettiers*, and leave your *Pikes* ſtanding; Or it may be done, the *body marching* at *length*, the *Muskettiers* being in the *front* and *reer-diviſions*. The *word* for the *reducement* is, *Ranks, rank as you were*.

Ranks, wheel to the right and left by diviſion.

The firſt Front.



P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P

P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P

Reer.

The eaſieſt way for the *Reducement*, will be firſt for to *face* about to the *Reer*, and then to *wheel back* into their *places*. Then *face* to their Leader; and they will be reduced as at firſt. Now we will come to ſhew the next *figure* of *converſion*, which is of *files* converted into Ranks by *equall proportion*.

CHAP

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Files *ranking in equall parts.*

IN this *Chapter* I intend to shew the *manner, of files ranking by Converſion in equall parts*; which *motion* I have ſeen uſed by ſome *Commanders*, at ſuch times as their *Companies* have been but ſmall, having not had above two or three *files* of *Muſquettiers* upon a *flank*, and being willing to *martch forth* their *Companies* in *diviſions*. And this, becauſe that two *a-breſt* would be ſomewhat improper (unleſſe it were upon neceſſity, in ſome narrow *paſſage*(& that three *a-breſt* is alſo ſomewhat with the thinneſt; therefore to angment the *Front* of their *martch*, they have *ſhortned* ſomewhat of their *depths*, in each *diviſion*, by cauſing their *files* to *rank* four or five, according as their *depth* may be, when the *Command* ſhall be given. This *motion* of *Converſion* may alſo be uſefull for *larger Bodies*; for if upon a *martch* you are to paſſe thorow ſome *ſtrait*, where not above four or five can *martch a-breſt*, and that being paſt thorow, you are to direct your courſe to the *right* or *left*: If your way be to the *right*, then cauſe your *files* to *rank* to the *left*: If to the *left*, then let the *files rank* to the contrary hand. For by ſo doing, having paſt the *ſtrait*, and faced your *Body* that way which you intend your *Martch*, by commanding the *File-leaders* to *martch*, and the *half-files* to *ſtand* and take their places, your *Body* will be led again by their *proper* File-leaders, all *a-breſt*: the *Muſquettiers* becomming again the *Flankers*, which in the paſſage of the *ſtrait* were in the *Front* and *Reere*. For the better underſtanding the manner of the *motion*, obſerve the following *Figure*.

Files, rank four to the left,

Front.

This was the

1 File	M	M	M	M	f			
	M	M	M	M	h			
2 File	M	M	M	M	f			
	M	M	M	M	h			
3 File	M	M	M	M	f			
	M	M	M	M	h			
4 File	M	M	M	M	f			
	M	M	M	M	h			
5 File	P	P	P	P	f			
	P	P	P	P	h			
6 File	P	P	P	P	f			
	P	P	P	P	h			
7 File	P	P	P	P	f			
	P	P	P	P	h			
8 File	P	P	P	P	f			
	P	P	P	P	h			

9 P f P P P h P

16 15 14 13 12 11 10

M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P

The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *Command* being firſt given (as above-ſaid) the *right-hand-file-leaders* leadeth forth his *file*, and the *three next men* behind him move forwards to the *left* of each other, until they *rank even a-breſt* with their *file-leader*. The next *four* in like manner *ranking* to the *left*, make the ſecond *rank*. The *file-leader* of the ſecond *file* placeth himſelf next after him that was the *halfe-file-leader* of the firſt, which now is become the *right-hand-man* of the ſecond *rank*; the *three next men* behind him making up of his *rank* in like manner: And ſo forward for all the reſt, untill the *Motion* be fully perfected. This *converts* each *file* into two *ranks*, and brings all the proper *file-leaders* and *halfe-file-leaders* to make the *out-moſt file* to the *right*; the *bringers-up* both of the *Front* and *Reer-half-files* make the *outer-moſt file* to the *left*. The figures of umber which are on the *left-flank* of the *Figure*, in which the word *file* added to each of them,

Direction for files ranking 4. to the left.

them demonstrates the *places* of the *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth file*; and so consequently for all the rest, according to their *former standing*, and the *places* they now occupy, being *converted* into *ranks*. The letters *f* and *h*, which are placed on the *right-flanke*, shews the *places* of those which were the *file-leaders* and *half-file-leaders*; each of the proper *file-leaders* having now his *half-file-leader* next after him. I have shewen this *Figure* partly *performed*, partly *performing*, and partly *standing* as before the *Motion* began.

The Reducement. For *reducement* of this *Motion* of *files ranking foure to the left*, one way is, to cause your *ranks* to *file* (or *invert*) *to the right*: which being done, *Command every File-leader to lead up his file to the left*; and so every man will have his *place*. For another way, *Face the whole Body to the right, and command the file-leader to martch, and half-files to stand, and take their places*; and then they are all *reduced*, onely the *File-leaders* of the *right flank* are on the *left*, and the *File-leaders* of the *left-flank* are on the *right*; which is *reduced* by any *intire Counter-martch of rank or file*.

A second way of Reducement.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

The conclusion of Doublings.

THere are yet another sort of *Doublings*, both of *length* and *depth*, which are performed by *divisionall wheelings*: which because they have ever been accounted for *wheelings*, I will not displace them; but still rank them in their former places, although in truth they are *Doublings*: The *working part* indeed is *wheeling*; but the *intent*, or *thing wrought*, is *Doubling*. I will speak further of them, when I come to shew them in their severall places. And here I mean to set a *Period* to our *Doublings*: Concluding, that those *Souldiers* who can put every one of these to his right use, as also give to each his right *reducement*, must needs be skilful and expert in this part of the *Art Military*. And contrariwise, they that are ignorant in these *Doublings*, can never truly attain to the right-managing of a *Foot-company*, either for *exercise* or *service*. For *Doublings*, indeed, are the onely *Motions* for *variety* and *alteration* of *Figures*, or *formes* of *Battaile*; no other *Motions* doing the like: And therefore, *Doublings* must needs be accounted the most *excellent* amongst all the *Motions*.

You that have eyes to read, and skill to judge,
And have perus'd these Doublings *I have done,*
Though I have tedious been, yet do not grudge,
For you know well, I have skipt over some:
But marvell not, the cause I do not shew them;
It is not much materiall for to know them.

Those that are skilfull in the Art *of* Warre,
And take delight to exercise *their Men,*
Shall find more pleasure in these Doublings *farre,*
If that they intermix *them now and then:*
And so contrive their Doublings *in these cases;*
And lastly, one word brings them to their places.

Why in our Country *do we Captains chuse,*
That have no skill, *nor* art-full *inclination?*
They do themselves and Country much abuse,
Thus to deceive them in their expectation.
I think the Cause *of this fault in our* Nation
Is, that our Gentry *holds not* Armes *in* fashion.

But some, perhaps, will say I am too bold,
There's no such need for Captains to have skill;
The Muster-masters *have enough (some hold)*
The Captains and the Counties for to fill.
So whilst the Muster-master *doth the* labour,
The Officers *may play upon a* Tabour.

But stay, me thinks one pulls me by the sleeve,
And tells me that I have my selfe forgot:
Wherefore of Doublings *here I take my leave;*
Intreating those that read, *mistake me not:*
Let Muster-masters take their money, then,
But let the Captains exercise their men.

CHAP

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Counter-martches: Their Antiquity, and words of direction.

THe next branch of *Discipline* which offers it selfe to your perusall, are *Counter-martchs*: which are of three kinds. To wit, *Chorean*, *Lacedemonian*, *Macedonian*: which is, Maintaining, Losing, and Gaining. Each of them are to be performed two manner of wayes. One by *File*: the other by *Rank*.

There are also *Counter-martches*, *Intire*, and *Divisionall*. But divers men are as divers in their opinions concerning the *Macedonian* and *Lacedemonian Counter-martches*. Some will have the *Macedonian*, a *Counter-martch* of gaining ground; because that it transfers the *Battalia* into the ground before the *Front*. Others will have it, a *Counter-martch* of losse; because (say they) the *Enemy* being in the *Reer*, it makes a semblance of flying. Some will have the *Lacedemonian*, a *Counter-martch* of gaining ground; because the *Enemy* appearing in the *Reer*, it makes a semblance of charging or falling on. Others call it, a *Counter-martch* to lose ground; because it loseth al that ground the *Battalia* stood upon; taking in stead thereof the ground behind the *Reer*. There are others of opinion, that there are *Counter-martches* of losse and gain, in either of them. All these are furnished with *reasons*, to back their *opinions*. But if I should stand to shew their many & severall reasons, I might well be thought to be without reason my self. My opinion is, that taking the ground before the *Front*, is gaining ground: and that to leave the ground we stood on, to take the ground next behind the *Reere*, is losse of ground: And yet to take either, whereby there is advantage gotten, must needs be gaining. But where the matter it self is so indifferent, it were fondnes to spend longer time about it. Wherefore note, that *Counter-martches* were of ancient use amongst the Greeks many hundred of years since, & from them learned, & practised by many other *Nations*; and so still continued unto this day. But as the *Snow-ball* by much rowling becomes the greater: So, in like manner these *Counter-martches* have received *addition* in all ages. So that the three originall ones are now become more then thirty, accounting those *divisionall*; and yet are all of them fathered upon one or other, of the three kinds. Though some of them will scarcely be owned or acknowledged; as you shall perceive, when I come to shew them in their severall places. But amongst all the *Motions*, this might be the best spared: as being least beneficiall to this our *moderne Discipline*. But because that *knowledge is no burthen*, and that at sometimes they may be usefull; therefore first take the *words* of *Command* or *Direction*, which are as followeth.

Diversities of opinions concerning losing and gaining of ground.

To go back unto the ground we have formerly past, is losse of ground.

Counter-martches of great antiquity.

Counter-martches: least usefull of all other parts of the Art Military.

Intire Counter-martches by File.

Files to the {*Right*, *Left*} *hand, Count-martch.* Chorean.

Files to the {*Right*, *Left*} *Counter-martch, every man turning on the ground he stands.* Lacedemo:

File-leader, face about to the {*Right*, *Left*} *the rest passe through to the* {*Right*, *Left*} *and place your selves behind your leader.* Macedonian

File-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the {*Right*, *Left*} *placing your selves before your leaders.* Bast: Counter martch

File-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the {*Right*, *Left*} *placing your selves before your Leaders; following your bringers up.* Bast: Coun

Bringers-up, face about to the {*Right*, *Left*} *the rest passe through to the* {*Right*, *Left*} *and place your selves before your Bringers-up.* Lacedemo

Bringers

Lacedemo. *Bringers-up, stand: the rest of* {Right / Left} *the Body passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves behind your Bringers-up.*

Intire Counter-martches, by Ranks.

Cretan or Chorean: *Ranks to the* {Right / Left} *Counter-march.*

Lacedemo: *Ranks to the* {Right / Left} *Counter-march, every man turning on the ground hee stands.*

Macadoni: *Right-hand-File, face to the left: the rest passe through to the right: placing your selves behind your right-hand-men.*

Left-hand-file may face to the right, and do as much.

Bast: Counter-martch: {Right / Left} *hand-file stand; the rest passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves on the out-side of your* {Right / Left} *hand-men.*

Lacedemo. {Right / Left} *hand-file Face to the* {Right / Left} *the rest passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves before your* {Right / Left} *hand-men.*

Divisionall Counter-martches, by Files.

Cretan, or Chorean. *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst.*

Bast: Coun *File-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.*

Lacedemo, *File-leaders, and bringers-up stand; the rest passe through to the right: and place your selves before your Leaders and Bringers-up.*

Macedoni. *File-leaders, face about; Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right; and place your selves behind your leaders and bringers-up.*

Bast. Coun *Front-half-files, interchange ground with the reer.*

Divisionall Counter-martches, by Ranks.

Chorean or Cretan *Counter-martch your wings (or flanks) into the midst (or Center.)*

Lacedemo. *The out-most file of each Flank, face outward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selves before your out-side men.*

Macedoni. *The out-most file of each Flanke, face inward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selves behind your out-side men.*

Bast. Counter-martch. *The out-most file of each Flanke, stand: the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves on the out-side of your out-side men.*

Interchange your Flanks.

Note what is done by the *out-most Files*, may be *reduced* by controverting the *command* to the *innermost Files*; but must be done before they have closed their *divisions*, &c.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Chorean Counter-martch: and the way to perform it.

The distance for Counter-martch is six foot, or open order in rank and file.

I Could willingly have prickt a *Figure* for each of these *Counter-martches*, but that they will take up too much room. And therefore I will onely prick some few of the hardest of them; and for the rest, I will endeavour by words to make them as *facile* as I may: that so they may be apprehended by the meanest capacity. And first I wil begin with the (*Persian*, *Cretan*, or) *Chorean counter-martch*. The *word* of *Command*, or *Direction* is,

Files to the right-hand, Counter-martch.

[a] *Note that when there is a Counter-martch comman-*

[a] This *Chorean Counter-martch*, is by some called the *Modern Counter-martch*. I conceive their reason to be, because that it is more inuse then any of the other: Or else, for antiquity, it might claim many Ages. It is a *Counter-martch maintaining ground*: for it worketh its effect on the same *ground it stands*; neither *losing* nor *gaining*. But it *transfers* the file-

file-leaders into the *place* of the *Bringers-up*: and the *bringers-up* into the *place* of the *file-leaders*: withall turning the *aspect* of the *Body*, or *Battalia*, to the *Reer*. The way to performe this *motion* is as followeth: As soon as the [b] *Word of Command* is given, if it be to the *right*, then all the *file-leaders* step forwards with their right legs, and *face-about to the right*; every *file-leader* with his *file* following him, passing down towards the, *Reer*, through the *Intervall* on his right-hand, still observing to keep *even* in *rank* with his *right-hand-man*. But by the way, note that no man must *turn* untill hee come to the *ground* where at first his *file-leader* began the *Counter-march*. This *Motion* is then performed, when the *Bringers-up* have attained unto the *place* where before their *file-leaders* stood; being *faced* right after them.

ded without any other addition, then it alwayes intended a Chorean Counter-march.

[b] Observe the direction for the Chorean Counter-march.

Files to the left-hand, Counter-march.

To *counter-march* to the *left*, worketh the same effect, and is done after the same manner; onely *differing* in the *hand*.

For *reducement*: If you *counter-march* to the *right*, do as much to the *left*, and they will be as they were. For any *intire Counter-march* of *files* will be *reduced* (of what kind soever) by making another *intire Counter-march*, to what *hand* soever.

But if any desire to be so *curious*, as to have them not onely *reduced* to the same *aspect*, but also *precisely* to the same *place*; then, if the *Counter-march* were to the *right*, *counter-march* again to the *right*; if to the *left*, accordingly to the *left*.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Counter-martching to lose ground.

The Command is, *Files to the right, counter-march; every man turning after his Leader on the ground hee stands.*

THis Lacedemonian *Counter-march*, is a *Counter-march of losse of ground*; *for that it leaves all the ground the Battalia formerly did containe, and inlieu or place thereof taketh the ground behind the Reere.* This *Counter-march* is to be performed when the *Body* is upon a *stand*: And (as the *Chorean*) it turnes the *Aspect towards the Reere*. The *Greeks* were wont with this *Countermartch* to bring their *file-leaders* to oppose any Enemy appearing to the *Reere*; thereby gallantly bearding their Enemies in the teeth neither politickly making shew of *flight*, whereby to bring the Enemy into *dis-array*; nor over-providently carefull of the *advantage of ground*. The *Motion* of this *Counter-march* is to be performed as followeth: The *file-leaders* of each *file* are to step side-wayes to the *right*, and therewithall to *face-about* to the *Reere*, and so *martch* even in *rank* together down between the * *Intervalls*, no man advancing a *foot* forwards, but turning in like manner after their *Leaders*, when they are past by them; still observing to keep their due distance: And so a whole *rank* together, still turning off to the *right*, each *rank* successively doing the like, untill the *Counter-march* be fully performed. Any *intire Counter-march* of *files* will *reduce* this. But, for order sake, take one of the same sort to the contrary *hand*; which is.

* *An Intervall is the space of ground between file and file, or ranke and rank; but in this place is intended the space of ground between the files.*

Files to the left, counter-march; every man turning after his Leader, on the ground he stands.

I shall not need to speak further concerning this *Counter-march* of losse of ground to the *left*, seeing that it differs from the other onely in the alteration of the *hand*: the substance and effect of both being one and the same. Only I will now speak of a second sort of *Counter-march*, which is of the same kind: The Command is,

Bringers-up, face-about to the right; the rest passe through to the Reere, and place your selves before your Bringers-up.

This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* doth alſo loſe the ground whereon it formerly
Lacedemo ſtood: and takes the ground behind the *Reere*. The manner of the *Motion* is as followeth: The laſt *rank* (or *Bringers-up*) *face about to the Reere, and ſtand*; the reſt of the *Body facing about* in like manner, and paſſing through or between their *Bringers-up*, and placing themſelves *even* in *rank* before them. The *Motion* is begun by the *rank* next the *Bringers-up*, and ſo continued ſucceſſively by the reſt, untill the *Counter-martch* be ended. It may be *reduced* by doing the ſame to the *contrary hand*. Nevertheleſs, for brevity ſake, I will make uſe of a ſprig from the ſame bough, and *reduce* this *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* by another of the ſame kind. The Command is,

Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Bringers-up.

Lacedemo This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* is thus to be performed: The laſt *rank* (or *Bringers-up*) are to *ſtand*, and the reſt of the *Body* to *face* to the *Reere*, and paſe through to the *right*, and place themſelves behind their *Bringers-up*; contrary to the *Counter-martch* laſt ſhewen, where they placed themſelves before. The *Motion* is alſo begun by the ſecond *ranke* from the *Reere*, the reſt following ſucceſſively, untill the *File-leaders* are become the *Bringers up*; then *face* them about after their proper *File-leaders*, and they are *reduced*.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Counter-martches to gain ground; or, the Macedonian Counter-martch.

The Command is,

File-leaders, face about to the right; the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders.

Macedoni. THis *Macedonian Counter-martch* is for *gaining ground*; for that it leaves the ground the *Battalia* formerly ſtood upon, taking in *lieu* thereof the ground next before the *Front*: It alſo turns the *aſpect* towards the *Reere*. The *motion* of this *Counter-martch* is from the *Reer* to the *Front*; contrary to the *Lacedemonian*, whoſe *motion* is from the *front* to the *Reere*. This *Macedemonian Counter-martch* makes ſemblance in the *Reere* of *flight*,
Macedon. *Counter-martch makes ſemblance of flight.* but preſently produceth an orderly ſetled *Front*, when perhaps the Enemy, with a two early purſuit, hath broken the order of their array.

The way to perform this *Counter-martch*, according to the directions formerly given, is as followeth: The *file-leaders* (or firſt *ranke*) *face-about to the right*; the reſt of the *body* paſs through between the *Intervalls* (or diſtances of files) to the *right*, and place themſelves behind their *Leaders*; every *rank* (beginning with that next the *file-leaders*) paſſing through ſucceſſively, and taking their places, untill the *Counter-martch* be fully executed. It may be *reduced* as the reſt, by doing the ſame to the *contrary hand*: or, as I have formerly ſaid, by any *intire Counter-martch* of *file*; and therefore I will *reduce* it by another *Macedonian Counter-martch*. The Command is as followeth:

File-leaders, face to the Reere; the reſt of the Body paſs through to the left, following your Bringers-up, placing your ſelves behind your Leaders.

Macedoni- This *Macedonian Counter-martch* is rather remembred for its antiquity than excellency, (as ſome more of them be;) Nevertheleſs, if any will be curious to obſerve the *Motion*, it may be performed as followeth: The *firſt ranke* (or *file-leaders*) *face* to the *Reere*, then the *laſt ranke* begin the *Counter-martch*, paſſing forward between the *Intervals*; the *ſeventh ranke* following the *eighth*, the *ſixth* following the *ſeventh*, and ſo likewiſe the reſt, untill the whole *Body* be transferred into the ground before the *Front*; and then joyntly together *facing to the right-about*, after their *Leaders*, the *Counter-martch* is ended. For *reducement*, obſerve this for all, that any *intire Counter-*

martch

martch of file, may be *reduced* by another *intire counter-martch by file*, of what *kind*, or to what *hand* soever.

These three last Chapters of *Counter-martches*, are the original grounds of all the rest; yet I shall shew one in the ensuing Chapter, which time hath begotten out of the latter *two*, which takes part with *either*, being absolute in *neither*.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Bastard Counter-martch.

The Command is, *File-leaders, stand; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.* Bast. counter-martch

THis passing through (or *Bastard counter-martch*) is partly *Macedonian*, and partly *Lacedemonian*; for first with the *Macedonian* it takes the ground before the *Front*, the *Motion* being from the *Reer* forward: it is partly *Lacedemonian*, for that they pass through, and place themselves before their *Leaders*, and for that it makes semblance of *falling on*, or *charging* the Enemy. Nevertheless, the *Macedonian* disclaims it, for that it alters not his *aspect*: The *Lacedemonian* refuseth it, for that it takes the ground *before the Front*, and not that *behind the Reer*, and with the *Chorean*, it holds no affinity. And, indeed, many there be that will not allow it for a *Counter-martch*; for certain, the word it self will not bear it: Notwithstanding, seeing that it hath been long ranged amongst them, I will not be he that shall displace it, but will pass forwards, to shew the manner of the *Motion*; which is to be performed as followeth: * The *File-leaders* stand, according to the former direction, the rest of the *Body* advance their *Arms*, the *second rank* first passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before the *first rank*, the *third rank* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*, and so forwards for the rest, until the *last rank* (or *Bringers-up*) are become the *fore-most*; which perfects the *Motion*. It may be d severally useful; as to *skirmish* against an *Enemy*, advancing by way of d *introduction*; or upon occasion to bring the *Reer-men* to *martch* in *Front*, and such like. For the *Reducement*, you may do as much to the *contrary hand*; only, for order sake, I will *reduce* it by another like it self.

* *Instructions to forme the motions of this Counter martch.*

d *This Bastard Counter-martch is the same with Introduction.*

The Command is, *File-leaders-stand; the rest pass through to the right, placing your selves before your Leaders, following your Bringers-up.* Bast. coun.

This *Motion* may be done either to the *right* or *left*, and is nothing differing from that *last* shewen, but that, whereas the *other* began with the *second rank*, this contrariwise begins with the *last rank* (or *Bringers-up*) every *rank* successively following the *rank* which came from behind them, until they which were the *Leaders* are become the *last* in the *Reer*. If this *Counter-martch* be first done, it may be *reduced* by any of those formerly shewen, &c.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Counter-martching Ranks to maintain ground.

The Command is, *Ranks to the Right-hand counter-martch.*

THis *Chorean Counter-martch of ranks, is an altering or changing of one Flank for the other, the Battalia still keeping the same ground, only the right-flank becomes the left, and the left becomes the right.* The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *command* being given, then the whole *Body faceth* to the *hand* named, and every man in the *out-most file* to the *right*, (*files* by this *facing* being become *ranks*) turns down through the *Interval*, (or *distance* between *rank* and *rank*) *martching* forth-right unto the *part*, which was the *left-flank*, with their *ranks*, *file-wise*, following them: being come unto their ground, they *face* as before, and the *Counter martch* is performed. Chorean.

For the *Reducement*, let *ranks counter-martch* to the *left*, after the ſame manner, differing only in the hand, and they are as at firſt.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Counter-martching, Ranks to loſe ground.

The Command is, *Ranks to the right hand counter-martch, every man turning after his right-hand-man, on the ground he ſtands.*

Lacedemo. *Ranks by this facing become files, and files to the contrary become ranks.*

THis *Lacedemonian Counter-martch of Ranks, is a falling on upon the left flank, the Motion being begun by the right*: It leaves all the ground the *Battalia* ſtood on, & takes in place thereof the *ground beſide the left-flank*, turning the *aſpect* to the *left*. The manner or way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The whole *Body faceth to the right*, and then the *right-hand-file*, being *faced*, (becomes a *rank*) begins the *Counter-martch*, turning down the *Intervals* of the *Ranks*, (which by this *facing* is made the *diſtance* between the *files*) and ſo *martcheth* forth-right, beyond that which was the *left-flank*, every man following him that was his *right-hand-man*, (but not ſtepping forwards one foot of ground) until the *Counter martch* be performed. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, do as much to the *left*, and they will be as at firſt: Or (if you pleaſe) take another of the ſame kind: The word of *Command*, or *Direction*, is,

Right-hand-file, face to the right, the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your right-hand men.

Lacedemo. This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch of ranks, makes a falling on upon the right-flank*, the *Motion* being from the *left-flank* to the *right*, leaving all the ground whereon the *Battalia* ſtood, and taking in lieu thereof the *ground beſide the right-flank*. In thoſe dayes, when *Counter-martches* were more uſeful and accommodable to their *Military practices* and *diſcipline*, than now they are for ours, the *Lacedemonian Counter-martches* were of chief repute, as well amongſt the *Macedonians* as the *Spartans*, & others. The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *right-hand-file faceth* to the *right*, the reſt of the *Body facing* to the *right*, do paſs through the *Intervals*, or ſpaces, to the *right*, placing themſelves before their *right-hand-men*, until the *left-hand-file* become the *foremoſt rank*. If you do this *Counter-martch* by it ſelf, then for *Reducement*, firſt *face* them to their *Front-proper*, then let the *left-hand-files face* to to the *left*, and do as much to the *left*; & then they will be as at firſt.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the Macedonian *Counter-martch by rank.*

The Command is, *Right-hand-file, face to the left; the reſt paſs through to the right, placing your ſelves behind your right-hand-men.*

Macedon. THis Macedonian *Counter-martch of ranks, contrary to the* Spartan, *diſ-martcheth from the Enemy, upon that flank where he appears, and preſents the contrary flank to receive the Charge.* It is performed after this manner: The *out-moſt file to the right, faceth to the left*; the reſt of the *Body* (or *Battalia*) *faceth to the right*, every man paſſing through to the *right*, and placing themſelves behind their *right-hand-men*. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, as all the reſt, there are divers and ſeveral wayes; but, perform as much to the *left* as you have done to the *right*, and they will be as at firſt: Or, if you pleaſe, this following *Baſtard counter-martch* will do the ſame.

The word of *Command*, or *Direction*, is *Right-hand-file ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, placing your ſelves on the out-ſide of your right-hand-men.*

Baſt counter martch. This paſſing through, or *Baſtard Counter-martch*, of *Ranks*, doth alter both *ground* and *flank*: (ſtill reſerving the *aſpect* without *alteration*.) It is to be performed as followeth: The *out-moſt*, or *right-hand-file ſtands*; the reſt of the *Body*, *facing* to the *right*, paſſe through

through to the *right*, every man placing himself on the *right* side of his *right-hand-man*, and so standing even in *rank*, the *Motion* still continuing, until the *left-hand-file* is become the *right*; the *right* the *contrary*. If this *Counter-martch* be done alone, for the *reducement*, let the *left-hand-file* stand, and do as much to the *left*, as before to the *right*, and they will be as at first.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Counter-martching Front and Reer into the midst.

FOr the *Intire counter-martches*, I have endeavoured to express them, as well as I could in words, but for the *divisional counter-martches*, I intend to demonstrate both in *word* and *figure*, whereby they may be the more easily apprehended by such as shall be desirous to know them: notwithstanding before I enter upon the *divisional counter-martches*, I would willingly clear one thing which by some will be carped at, which is the using of the word *Middest*, instead of the word *Center*: The word *Center* (I confess) hath ben the more usual word amongst us: and yet it is not altogether so proper to our use as the other; wherefore give me leave, without offence, to use those words, which are not only more proper, but more significant. The *midst* of the *Battel* is to be understood, either from the *Front* and *reer*; or from both *Flanks* (or *Wings*): If between *Front* and *Reer*, the *Midst* must between the *half-file leaders*, and the *Reer-rank* of the *Front-half-files*, extending it self from *Flank* to *Flank*: The *Midst* between the *Flanks* is between the two *innermost files*; continuing the whole *depth* from *Front* to *Reer*. The *Center* is truly the extreamest part, tittle, or point in the *midst* of a *circumference*, & therefore not so pertinent to express the intention and true understanding of the *Motion*, as the word *Middest*. Wherefore not to trifle time in matters so apparent, we will proceed to our first divisional *Counter-martch*, which shall be *Chorean*.

Of divisional Counter-martches.

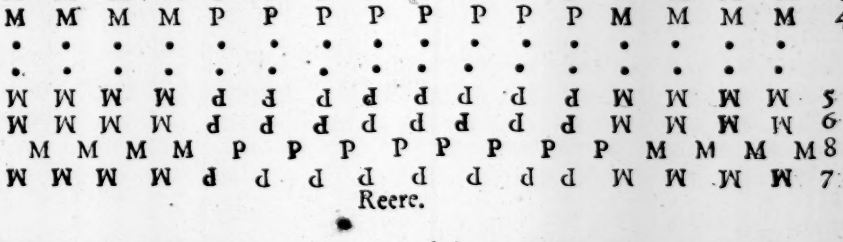
Middest and Center.

The midst is to be understood in a two fold sense, either between the Files, or between the Ranks.

The Command is, *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst.*

The Direction is, *Half-files face to the Reer: Front-half-files turn off to the right Reer-half-files to the left.*

Front.



Chorean.

Reere.

This *divisional chorean Counter-martch*, brings our *File-leaders*, and *bringers-up* together in the *midst*, and the *ranks* that were in the *midst* into the *Front* and *Reer*, It is a *counter-martch* maintaining ground; for every man *martcheth up* into his *leaders* ground before he *faceth* about to *counter-martch*: The way to perform the *Motion*, is as followeth. The *command* being given to *counter-martch*, either let the *Commander*, or some other of the *Officers*, command the *half-files* to *face-about*: then the *file-leaders* step-

Note that for Counter-martching Front and Reer into the midst the Front half-files ever turn off to the right, the Reer-half-files to the left, which being truly observed, they will alwayes meet even in the middle of the Battaile, where to the contrary if they turne both off to the right, they can never do the Counter-martch but wrong.

ping

ping forwards with the right leg, *face-about* to the *right*, passing down the *Intervals* on the *right-hand*, the rest of the *Front-half-files* following their *Leaders*, and not *turning* until they come to the ground where their *Leaders* turned down before them: The *bringers-up* with the *Reer-half-files*, at the same instant turning down their *Intervals* on the *left-hand*, the rest of their *division* following them, until the *file-leaders* & *bringers-up* meet together in the *midst* of the *Battel*, and then having *faced* all to their *leader*, the *Motion* is performed. For the *Reducement* of this *figure*, doing the same thing over again will *reduce* it; or any other *divisional Counter-march* of *file*.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of bringing Front and Reer together, into the midst, by the Bastard Counter-march.

The Command is, *File-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand, the rest pass through to the Right, and place your selves before your Leaders.*

Bast. counter-march

THis *Bastard Counter-march* doth bring the leaders and bringers-up together into the midst, and saves two facings, and is quicklier performed, then the other last done, or any other in the precedent *Chapters*: The way to perform the *motion*, is as followeth: The *first Rank* stands, and the *half-file-leaders* stand, then those of the *front-half-files* pass through their *intervals* to the *right*, placing themselves before their *file-leaders*: The *second rank* before the *first*, the *third* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*, the *reer-half-files* at the same instant doing the like, & placing themselves before their *half-file-leaders*, as the other did before their *file-leaders*: This *motion* may be either reduced by doing the same over again to the contrary hand, or else by *Counter-marching Front* and *Reer* in the *midst*, or by any other of the *divisional Counter-marches* of *Files*.

Note, that as the Front-half-files empties the space of ground between the leaders and Half file-leaders; placing themselves in the ground before the Front, so in the mean time their places are replenished by the Souldiers of the Reer half-files, which march up and supply their rooms.

Another way of bringing the front and reer into the midst, by the Chorean Counter-march.

The Command is, *Front and Reer-half-files, Counter-march to the right.*

Chorean.

THis *Chorean Counter-march*, doth also bring the *file-leaders* & *bringers-up* together into the *midst*, and turns the *aspect* towards the *reer*, making the *half-file-leaders*, the *file-leaders* accidental. The *Counter-march* is easie and quickly performed; the manner is as followeth; (The *command* being given as aforesaid) the *front-half-files counter-march* to the *right*, following their *file-leaders*. The *reer-half-files* in like manner, and at the same time *counter-march* to the *right*, following the *half-file-leaders*, every *file-leader* falling directly after his *bringer-up*.

The Reducement.

For *Reducement*, *counter-march front* and *reer* into the *midst*; then *face* to the *first front*, and they are as at first.

Part-counter-march.

Sometimes occasion may require a *part-counter-march*, as when the *front-half-files*, *reer-half-files*, *half-ranks* of the *right*, *half-ranks* of the *left*, or any other part of the *body* (more or less) doth *counter-march* to either hand, not intermixing with the standing part of the *body*: and these *part-counter-marches* may be performed after the *Chorean*, *Lacedemonian*, or *Macedonian* way: nevertheless, I willingly forbear to enlarge my self; rather with the dogs of *Nile* run and lap, giving only a touch of these things and away; leaving others more amply to proceed, that shall affect more curiosity; whilst I proceed to the next Chapter and *Counter-march*.

CHAP.

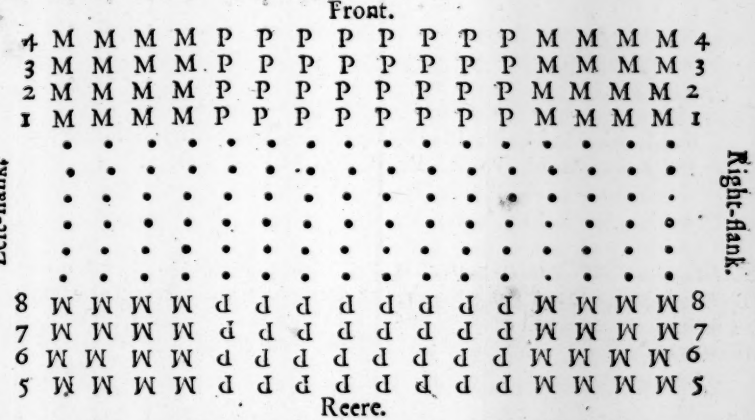
CAAP. XLIX

A divisionall Counter-march, to make a large Interval between the first and last Ranks.

This *Divisionall* Lacedemonian *Counter-march* makes semblance of *charging*, or *falling on* to the *Front* and *Reere*; leaving all the ground which was occupied by the Souldiers between *Front* and *Reere*, transferring them into the ground before the *Front*, and behind the *Reere*: The ground (or place) of the former standing, by this *Motion* becoming vacant; which I have demonstrated in the Figure by the *pricks*. This *Counter-march*, notwithstanding that it bears the name of the *Lacedemonian*, yet the *Motion* of the *Front-half-files* is after the manner of the *Bastard Counter-march*; that of the *Reere-half-files* only being after the *Spartan guise*. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure* are as followeth.

The Command is, *File-leaders and Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders and Bringers-up.* Lacedemo.

The Direction is, *Halfs-files face to the Reere.*



The way to performe this *Motion* is as followeth: The *halfe-files* are commanded to *face* to the *Reere*, and then the *Front-half-files* passe through to the *right*, placing themselves before their *Leaders*; the *second ranke* before the *first*, the *third* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*; the *Reere-half-files* at the same instant passing through to the *Reere*, after the same manner, and placing themselves before their *Bringers-up*. You may perceive by the figure of *Number*, placed on the *flanks* of the *Figure* of *Battell*, both how the men stood before the *Motion* began, as also how, and in what place they stand, the *Motion being ended*. For the *Reducement*, if you have not closed their *distance*, you may *face* them *about*, and so let them pass again into their places: Or else, by doing the same *Counter-march* over again, or to the *contrary hand*, or any such like way, will *reduce* them. This next following *Counter-march* will also *reduce* them; or this will *reduce* that. The *Command* and *Direction* is, as you shall find it placed over the *Front* of the *Figure*.

If you reduce them by another Counter-march, first close your divisions.

CHAP. L.

Of making a large Interval between the first and last ranks, by the Macedonian *Counter-march.*

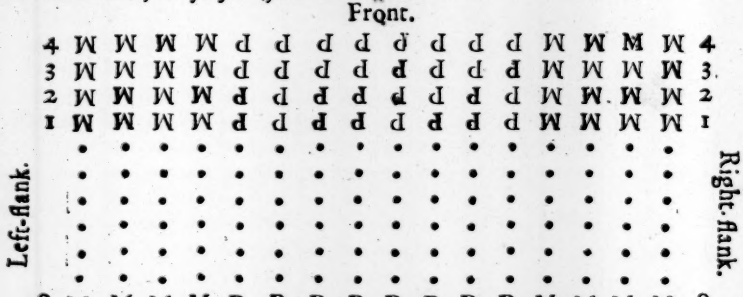
This *divisionall* Macedonian *Counter march*, is little different from that next before it; onely the other turned the *aspect outward*, to the *Front* and *Reere*, this *Counter-* Macedoni-

march,

martch turnes the *aspect inwards, towards the midst.* It may be usefull, if the *Commander* would shew or publish ought before his best Souldiers, for that it not onely leaves a large *distance*, but that it bringes the best Souldiers into the *midst*, with their *aspects* directed *inwards.* It may also serve to conduct any great *Personage* crosse the length of your *Battell*, whereby to shew them the *bravery* of your Souldiers, &c. The *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *File-leaders, face about; Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves behind your File-leaders and Bringers-up.*

The Direction is, *Halfe-files, face to the Reere.*



Note that when the Reer-half-files face-about, the last rank, which are the bringers-up, are still to keep their standing.

The *Motion* of this *Counter-martch* may be thus performed: The *first ranke* (or *file-leaders*) *face-about*, the *last rank stands*, the *Reere-half-files face-about*, and so the *Front-division* pass forwards, and place themselves behind the *file-leaders*, the *Reere-half-files* behind the *bringers-up.* The manner you may perceive the plainer, if you note the Figures of *number* which are placed on the *flanks* of the *Figure*; their *number* shewing the places they had from the *Front* before the *Motion* began. This *Figure* may be *reduced* either by the same word of *Command* which produced it, or else by any of the fore-going *Divisionall Counter-martches.* Our next shall be a *Counter-martch* of *exchange of ground.* The words of *Command* and *Direction* follow in the next Chapter.

CHAP. LI.

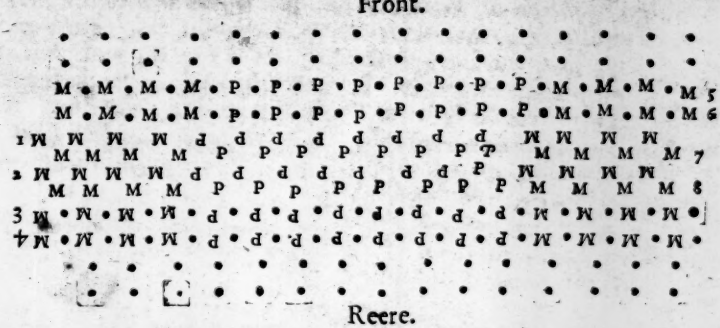
Of Interchanging ground.

THis *Interchanging of ground*, or *Bastard Counter-martch*, may not rightly be said to be derived from any one of the particular grounds of *Counter-martch*; but rather participating of them all: And yet, considering it actually performed, it is different from them all. For whereas the other *Counter-martches* of *files* in *division*, although they bring the *Front* and *Reere* into the *middest*, yet the *Front-half-files* continue still on the same part, and the *Reere-half-files* do not alter into the places of the other: But this, contrary to any other of the *divisionall Counter-martches*, *transferres the Front-half-files into the ground or place of the Reere-half-files*, *and them in the contrary part, bringing the file-leaders and Bringers-up together into the midst.* The following *Figure* demonstrates the *body* in *motion.*

The Command is, *Front and Reer-half-files interchange ground.*

The Direction is, *Front-half-files, face to the Reere, then both divisions move straight forwards to the Right.*

Front.



The way to perform this *motion* is as followeth. The *Front-half-files face-about*, passing forward to the *right* (being led by the *bringers-up* of the *front-half-files*) between the *Intervals* toward the *reer*; The *reer-half-files* at the same instant in like manner *martching* forwards, betwren the *Intervals*, on their right hands into the *front*, until the *front-division* have attained the places of the *reer*, and they contrariwise the *places* of the *Front*. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, do as much back again: Or if you would reduce it some other way, you may first make an intire *counter-martch* of *files*, and then *counter-martch front* and *reer* into the *midst*; for under two *counter-martches* it will not be *reduced*. Now I will passe to shew *divisional counter-martches* of *ranks* or *flanks*, The first shall be *Chorean*, as in the *Chapter* following. *The Reducement.*

CHAP. LII.

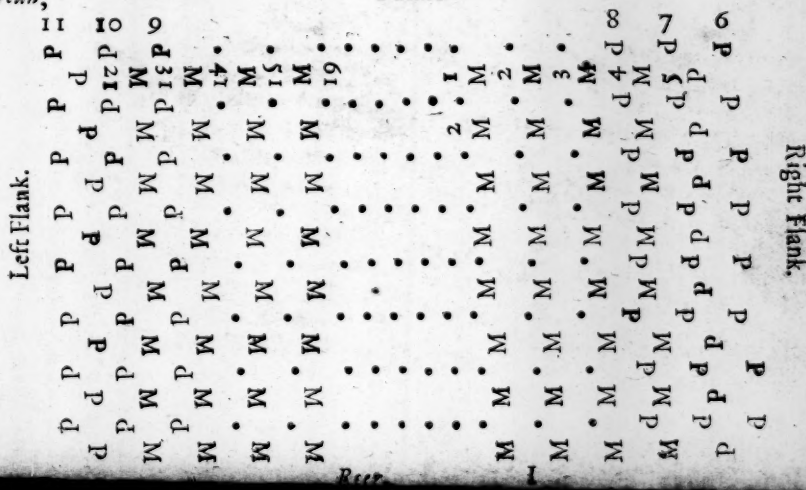
Of Counter-martching the flanks (or wings) into the midst of the Battel.

THis *Chorean counter-martch* of the *Wings* (or *flanks*) into the *midst* is ordinarily used when the *Commander* would bring the light armed into the *midst* of the *Battel*, to secure them from the incursions of the *Horse*. It is a *Motion* too dangerous to meddle withal in the eye of the Enemy, although the Souldiers be expert; but by no means to be thought upon in the field, amongst the untrained and unskilful. This *counter-martch* performs the *Motion* on the same ground. The *Figure* followeth.

The command is, *Counter-martch your flanks into the midst.*

The direction is, *Face to the right and left.*

Chorean,



The

The *Command* being given, *the whole body faceth to the right and left by division, the outtermost files by this facing becoming ranks, every man in the right-hand file, being a leader to his half-ranke file-wise, and so likewise in the left-hand-file the same, then they counter-martch the right-flank to the right, the left flank to the left*, which you must always observe to do, and your flankers will meet just in the *midst* of your *Battalia*. Lastly, having *faced* them to their *first-front*, the *Counter-martch* is ended.

Note that upon the Counter-martching of Flanks into the midst, the right-flank must alwais observe to turne to the right, the left-flank to the left: for if they should both turn off to the right, they will never meet right, if they turn off both to the left, it will be as bad.

To *Reduce* them, they may either use the same *Counter-martch* again, or any of these following *divisionall Counter-martches* of *Flanks*, (unless it be that of *interchanging* of *ground*.) The next shall be *Lacedemonian*: The *Command* and words of *Direction* are, as in the Chapter following.

CHAP. LIII.

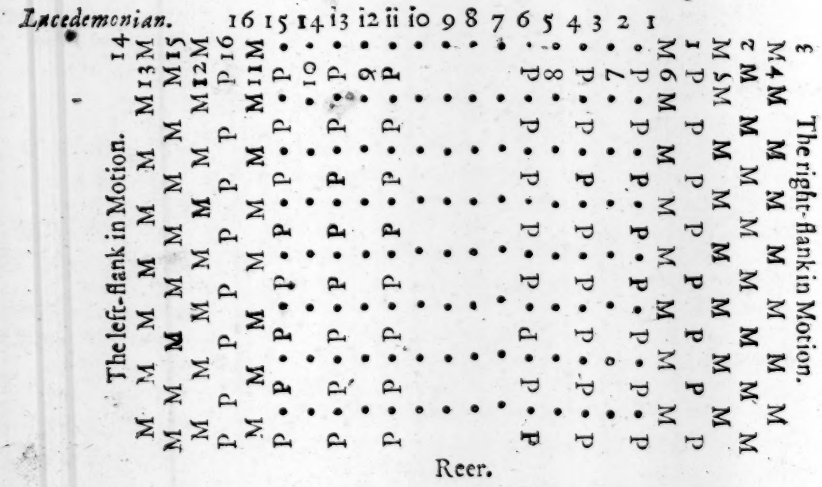
Of Counter-martching to take the ground on the out-side of the Flanks, the Aspects outward.

THis *Lacedemonian* Counter-marrch *of half-flanks or ranks, makes semblance of charging on, and issuing forth upon both flanks, but leaves a large waste distance of ground, un-occupied between the two out-most files, or midst of the Battaile.* The Command and Figure followeth.

The Command is, *The out-most file of each flank, face outward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves before your out-side men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*

Front.



Reer.

The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *right-hand file faceth* to the *right*, the *left-hand-file* to the *left*; the rest of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left*, the *right-flank* passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before their *right-hand-men*: The *second file* from the *right* begins the *Motion* on the *right-flank*: The *left-flank* in

in like manner passing through to the *left*, and placing themselves before their *left-hand-men*: The *second file*, accounting from the *left*, begins the *Motion* on the *left-flank*: But you must note, that the *files* become *ranks* with the *facing*.

For the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, if you will first *face* them to their *proper-Front*, you may then command *the two in-most files stand, the rest passe through to the right and left in-ward, and take their places*; Or, if you please, make use either of a *Chorean*, or a *Macedonian Counter-march* of *Ranks* by *division*, and with a *facing* and *closing* their *divisions*, they will be perfectly *reduced*. *The Reducement.*

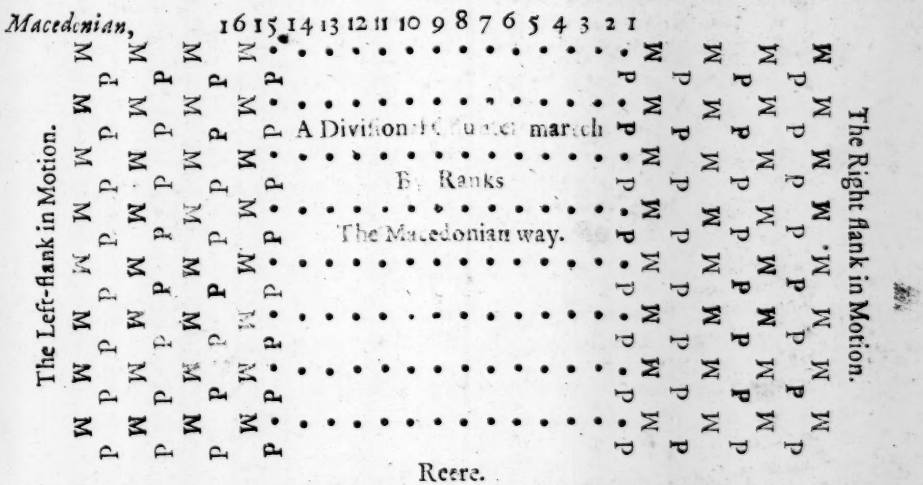
CHAP. LIV.

Of Counter-marching to take the ground on the out-side of the Flanks, and to digest their aspects inward.

THis *division* of Macedonian *Counter-march*, differeth little from the *Counter-march* of the last *Chapter*, except it be in the *alteration* of the *aspect*; for whereas the last *Counter-march* turned the *Fronts* of each *flank* outward, this contrariwise directeth them inwards, causing each *flank* to confront the other in *opposition*. The Command and Figure are as followeth,

The Command is, *The out-most file of each flank face inward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves behind your out side men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The *Motion* is thus performed: The *outer-most file* of each *flank faceth inward*, the rest of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*; those of the *right flank* passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves behind their *right-hand-men*; those of the *left-flank* passing through to the *left*, and placing themselves behind their *left-hand-men*: The *Motion* is begun by the *second file*, from each *flank*. I might here shew these *Counter-martches*, beginning their *Motion* from their *middle-most files*; but I am willingly silent, hoping that these may suffice to the curteous, not much forcing my self to give satisfaction to the curious. For the *reducement* of this *Counter-march*, having *faced* them to their *first front*, you may (if you please) command the *two inner-most files to face outward*, *The Reducement.*

the reſt paſſe through to the right and left inward, placing themſelves behind their right and left-hand-men; which being done, the whole *Body* will ſtand *faced* to the *right* and *left outward*; then being *faced* to their *Leader*, they are *reduced*. If you would *reduce* it by ſome other way, you may make uſe either of the *Counter-martch* which is next before, or of that which next followeth, or of any other *Diviſional Counter-martch* of *Ranks* (which doth not *interchange grownd*:) Our next two which follow, will be *Baſtard Counter-martches*; with the which we will conclude this our *fourth branch of Diſcipline*

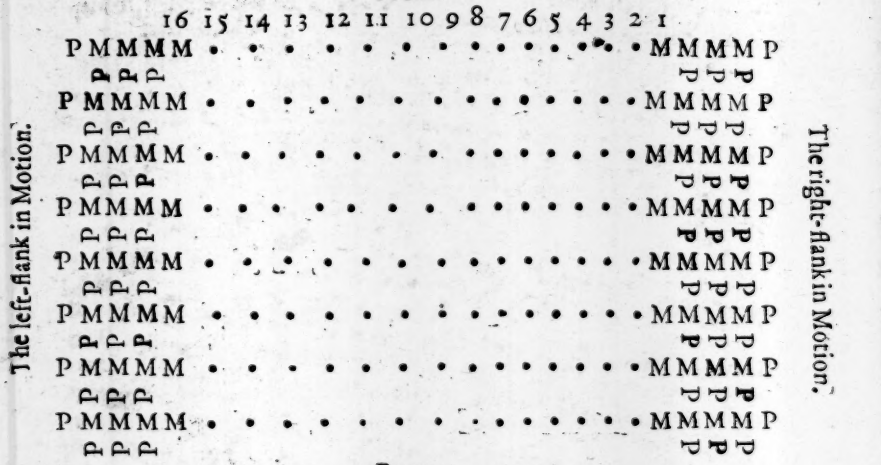
CHAP. LV.

Of taking the ground on the out-ſide of the flank, not altering the aſpects.

THis *Diviſional Baſtard Counter-martch, produceth the ſame effect which the other two next before it wrought, onely differing in the aſpect*; *for the* Lacedemonian *turned the aſpect outward, the* Macedonian *turned the aſpect inward, and this keeps the aſpect ſtill directed the ſame way*. He that knows every way, may, when time ſerves, make uſe of thoſe wayes which are moſt neceſſary and ſutable to his preſent occaſion; and the Proverb ſaith, *Knowledge is no burthen*. The *Command* and *Figure* are as followeth.

The Command is, *The out-moſt file of each flank ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the right and left, and place your ſelves on the out-ſide of your right and left-hand-men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The way to perform this *Counter-martch* is as followeth: (According to the *Command*) the *out-moſt file* of each *flank ſtands*, the reſt of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*, the *right-flank* paſſing through to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*; thoſe of the *right-flank* placing themſelves on the *out-ſide* of their *right-hand-men*: in like manner, thoſe on the *left-flank* placing themſelves on the *out-ſide* of their *left-hand-men*.

The Reducement. It may be *reduced* either by any of the foregoing *Diviſional Counter-martches of Ranks*; or elſe, being *faced* to any of the *flanks*, then the *ranks* become *files*; and by *diviſional Counter-marthes* of *files*, you may *reduce diviſional Counter-martches* of *ranks*, or by *ranks files*; only you muſt obſerve ſome *facings*. Yet for this *Figure*, if you pleaſe,

command

command the two inner-most files stand, the rest face to the right and left inward, and so march into their places. The next shall be a *Counter-march* of *Interchanging of flanks*.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Interchanging ground by the Flanks, and bringing the inner-most files of Pikes, to become the out-most Ranks.

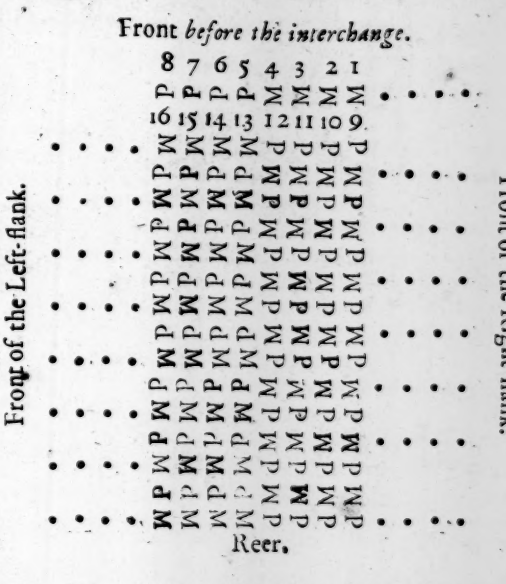
THis *Exchanging of Flanks*, is a *Bastard Counter-march*, but differing from all the other *Divisional Counter-marches* of *Ranks*; for this *transfers* the *right-flank* into the place of the *left*, and the *left* into the place of the *right*. It is very apt to receive a *Charge* from the *Horse*; for as soon as they shall be commanded to *interchange* their *flanks*, they *face* to the *right* and *left inward*, and then the *inner-most files* of *Pikes* begin the *Motion*, the rest of each *flank following orderly file-wise*, the *Pikes porting* so soon as they begin to *move*, and *charge* as they see occasion. If need be, the *Pikes* may *charge* at the *foot*, and the *Musquettiers give fire over them*. If any object, that the *Pikes* will have too *large a distance*, they may *close* at their own pleasure, so soon as they have *past through*. The *Command* and *Figure* are as followeth.

Note that if you please, you may passe the Pikes alone thorow, and let the Musquettiers stand; But then there will be a large distance between the Musquettiers in the midst.

The Command is, *Interchange Flanks.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left inward, and march.*

For the *Reducement*, you may, if you please, *interchange ground* again: nevertheless, if you would *reduce* it by some other way, *Counter-march* your *flanks* into the *middest*, & then an *intire Counter-march* either of *Rank* or *File* will *reduce* them.



I might have further enlarged my self upon this subject, both in *Command* and *Figure*; but it may be that some will find fault with these which I have already pened, concluding them for *nicities*, and for no *service*; because they cannot presently apprehend for what use or service they may be fit. Notwithstanding, I would intreat such (if any such happen to be my over-lookers) that they would suspend their censures, until they have fully informed their judgements. Yet thus much I will conclude with them, that [a] *Counter-marches* might the best be spared of all the *Motions*, as being least beneficial to this our *Modern Discipline*: And yet, to very good use many of them might serve, if our Souldiers were well practised in them. Nevertheless, such is the wilful stupidity of the times, that many good and useful things are disreputed, and accounted of no use, because the Souldiers, wanting skil, cannot perform them as they ought; which, would the *Officers* take more pains, by often instructing their Souldiers, the hardest *Motions* would become facile and easie. And to say truth, the greatest fault is [b] want of skill in those which should give instruction to others: and yet they wil not stick to carp at such as shall shew more than they; concluding such things for

[a] *Counter-marches lesse useful in the Modern Discipline. Practice brings perfection.*

[b] *The ignorant have been always the greatest oppugners and traducers of the skilful.*

for superfluous and improper, which they themselves do not rightly understand. But lest I be taxed for digression, I will conclude this Branch of *Discipline* with these few lines following.

Some burthened are with more command than skill,
Which had they power suting to their mind,
You then should see Reason inthral'd to Will,
Nor any 'bove their Knowledge should you find;
For rather than they'l study to learn better,
They wish all wanting, none to know a letter.

So be there many Officers in Bands,
That neither know themselves, nor care for those
That skilfull are in Postures, and Commands;
Nor are they careful which end fore most goes:
They think, to Dice, to Drab, to Swear and Swill,
Is skill enough for them, learn more that will.

And if that any man more forward be,
For to instruct the Souldier (as is fit)
With such a fellow they cannot agree;
He is vain-glorious, strives to shew his Wit:
They will be sure to quarrel, and deprave him,
And in their Cups, perhaps, they'l———

Such honest Hearts as spend both Means and Time,
To practise others for their Countries good,
Why should this Good be counted for a Crime,
To those that for their Prince would spend their blood?
That Country sure will best be kept from Harms,
Whose Subjects pleasure take to practise Arms.

But on this subject I'l no longer bide,
Of Counter-martches *here I'l take my leave.*
To shew the Wheelings *next I shall provide,*
Which follows next of course as I conceive.
And though with Verse my Counter-martches *close,*
Beginning Wheelings, *I return to Prose.*

CHAP. LVII.

Of Wheelings, *their Kinds and Uses, with their several Words of Commands.*

THe next Branch springing from this *Military root*, is *Wheelings*, which are of *two kinds*, viz. *Wheelings Angular, and Wheelings on the Center.* Also be pleased to take notice that all of them are either *intire* or *divisionall*: The use of *intire Wheelings* is, to *turn the aspect of the Front-proper to the right, to the left, or reere; either for the gaining of the Wind, Sun, or some such like Advantage*; or to *confront the Enemy with their best Souldiers.* Most of the *divisionall Wheelings*, being indeed more properly *Doublings*, either *extending* the *length* or *depth* of the Battel. Notwithstanding, because I would not be taxed with *Innovation* or *Alteration*, I have, according to the usual received way, placed them amongst the *Wheelings*: And now I will shew their words of *Command* or *Direction.* But before I enter upon them, give me leave to lay down an Observation or two, for the better instruction of the Souldiers in their *Wheelings.* The first is, *That before you enter upon your Wheelings, you close both ranks and files to their Order; which is, Three foot both in rank and file.* The other, *That upon all Wheelings you must be sure to observe your Leader, and follow him, keeping your due distance; your Musquetiers being all either poysed or shouldred; your Pikes ought to be advanced.*

Most of the divisionall Wheelings are Doublings.

Note that the distance for Wheelings ought to be Three foot between rank and file.

Note, that upon the Exercise of the Motions, whether it be Distance, Facings, Doublings, Countermartches, or Wheelings, the Musquetiers ought to be all upon one and the same Posture, either poysed or shouldred: The Pikes in like manner, either shouldred or advanced.

The words of *Command* are as followeth.

Wheele your Battel to the { *Right.* / *Left.* / *Right* } / *Left* } *about.*

Wheele

Wheele your Battell to the { *Right* / *Left* / *Right* / *Left* } { *about* } *on the same ground.*

Wheele { *Off your Front by Division.* / *Your Front inward to the Reer.* / *Front and Reer into the* { *Right* / *Left* } *Flank.* }

Wheele { *Your Flanks into the* { *Front.* / *Reer.* } / *Both Flanks into the Front and Reere.* / *Your Front and Reer into both Flanks.* }

Observe that the first four *Wheelings* are *Angular*, the next four are *wheelings on the Center*, or more properly, on the midst of the *Front*: But all the first eight be *intire*; the latter eight are all *Divisionall*. You may also observe, that every following *Wheeling* is a *Reducement* unto that which is placed next before it; and the *Wheeling* next before may *reduce* that next following: As, to *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Front*; if you *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Reere*, it is *reduced*: or, to *wheele Front* and *Reere* into both *flanks*, if you *wheele* both *flanks* into the *Front* and *Reere*, they are likewise *reduced* as before. *Each following Wheeling reduceth the former.*

For the last eight *Wheelings*, which are *Divisionall*, I will prick for each of them his *Figure*. As for the first eight, which are *Intire*, I conceive them so easie to be understood, that I may spare the labour; yet I will endeavour to express them as well as I can in words. And first, I will begin with the *Wheelings Angular*, and then with the rest, according to their places. And therefore note, that when you are commanded to *wheele to the Right*, or *Left*, &c. and no other Command added, it is to be understood an *Angular Wheeling*, and so to be performed.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Wheelings Angular.

The Command is, *Wheele your Battell to the Right.*

1. THis is an *Angular Wheeling*, which transferrs the *aspect* or *countenance* of the *Front-proper*, into that part which was the *Right-flank*: It also removes the *Battalia* from the *ground* whereon formerly it stood, and placeth it on that part before the *Front*; the *hinge* or *axel-tree* of the *Motion* is the *Right corner-man*, or *right-hand-file-leader*, who with a small *motion* moveth to the *right*, every man, the more his place is remote from the *right-angle*, the more swift must be his *motion*; because his *arch-quadrant*, or *semi-circle*, is larger in proportion: wherefore it must be the discretion of the *Officers* so to instruct their Souldiers, that when they *wheel* to any *hand*, they may so moderate their *motion*, that they on the contrary *flank* be not forced to run; but so orderly to contain themselves, that they may still preserve an orderly and even *Front*. For the *Reducement*, *Wheele your Battell to the left*, in the like manner as it was *wheeled to the right*: nevertheless, you must then note, that it will not bring you back into the same ground you formerly stood on; for it hath *advanced* you the length of your *Battalia* before the place of your *first Front*. But if you would be *reduced* into the *same place*, or *plot* you first stood on, then *face your Battell to the right*, and being so *faced*, *wheele your Battel to the left*, which being performed, *face to the left*, and then they are compleatly *reduced*, both for *aspect* and *place*. The next Command is, *Observe the Directions for Angular Wheelings.*

2. *Note the reducement to the first place and*

Wheel your Battel to the right-about.

3. This is alſo an *angular wheeling*, and *tranſfers* the *aſpect* of the *front-proper*, towards the *reer*: It is to be performed in the ſame manner, as the *wheeling* to the *right* was, only the *motion* is twice ſo much: wherefore there ought to be the more care had, that ſo the *motion* may be orderly performed: for by ſo much as every man is nearer or further off, from the *right-corner-man*, by ſo much the more *ſwift* or ſlow, muſt he continue his *motion*, that ſo he may be ſure to keep ſtill, *even* in *Rank* with his *right-hand-man*. This *motion* being thus performed, your *Battel* will be removed from its former *ſtation*, taking in lieu thereof the ground *Diagonally* oppoſite to the the *right Angle*.

Note that wheeling to the right about, will not be reduced by wheeling back again to the left about, juſt into the ſame ground, if the wheeling be angular, but will be twice the length of the battel, removed to the right of your former ſtanding.

* 4. *To *reduce* theſe to their former *Aſpect*, *wheel* your *Battel* to the *left-about*, notwithſtanding the ground you formerly did poſſeſſe, will be twice the *length* of your *Battel*, to the *left*, of your *left-flank*; if you would *reduce* them as well to their firſt *ground*, as their firſt *aſpect*, *face* them to the *right*, and then *wheel* them to the *left-about*, which being done, face them to the *left*, and they are perfectly *reduced*, as at firſt. But the neereſt reducement of *aſpect* and *place* is; if you *wheel* to the *right-about*. Then *wheel* to the *right-about* again for *reducement*. If to the *left-about*, then to the *left-about* in like manner.

CHAP. LIX.

Of wheeling on the Center.

The Command is, *Wheel your Battel to the right, on the ſame ground.*

5. *Wheelings on the ſame ground quicklier performed then angular wheelings and in leſſe room.*

THis *wheeling* is by ſome called, *a wheeling on the Center*; by others, *a wheeling on the ſame ground*. I cannot abſolutely maintain it to be either, for that it only *wheels about the midſt of the firſt rank*. Neither may it rightly be termed a *wheeling on the ſame ground*, becauſe it loſeth of the *ground* it formerly ſtood upon. This *wheeling* is quicker performed, then the *angular wheelings*, and may be done in far leſs ground. For the *left-flank* advanceth forward, ſtill wheeling to the *right*, the *right flank* contrariwiſe *facing* to the *left*; and ſo falling backward. If you have an odd File, then the *middle file-leader* muſt be the *center* or *axel-tree* of the *motion*: if you have an even number of files, then the *middlemoſt file-leader* from the left. But if your *wheeling* be to the *left*, then the contary.

6. *The Reducement.* This by ſome is called the *Prince of Orange's wheeling*. For the *reducement*, *wheel* your Battel to the *left*, on the ſame ground: and they are reduced as at firſt. Our next *Command* is to

Wheel your Battel to the right-about, on the ſame ground.

7. *The Reducement,* This *wheeling*, is alſo a *wheeling on the Center*, or *midſt of the front*: and *tranſfers* the aſpect of the *front-proper* towards the *reer*, removing the Battel from the ground whereon it formerly ſtood, and placing it on the ground before the former *Front*. It is performed after the ſame manner as the laſt, only the *motion* is double ſo much as the other. In this *motion* on the *left flank*, every man is to obſerve his *right-hand-man*; and the *right-flank* muſt keep even after their *left-hand-men*, which become their *leaders*, *file-wiſe*, until they have attained their *ground*: after which, they face as before, making an *even front*. For the reducement, *wheel* your Battel to the *left-about* upon the ſame ground; and they will be reduced as at firſt. I will next ſhew the *diviſional wheelings*, and intend to give to each of them his *figure*: whereby they may appear the more eaſie to ſuch as do not yet rightly underſtand them. The firſt ſhall be a *wheeling-off by diviſion*: as in the next Chapter.

CHAP. LX.

Wheeling-off the Battel by diviſion.

THis *wheeling-off by diviſion* in greater *Bodies*, may be uſeful to meet ſeveral enemies, at one and the ſame time with the *Front of your Battalia*: and ſo conſequently with your

your *beſt Souldiers*. By this *motion* alſo the *Muſquetiers martching in Front*, may be *wheeled-off* by *diviſion* to *flank* their *Pikes*, But if you would *wheele-off* your *Battell* by *diviſion*; and again *conjoyn* them (when the *file-leaders* are come to the *reer*) then it brings all your *Muſquetiers* from the *flanks* to the *midſt* of your *Battalia*: and the *Pikes* on the *out-ſide* or *flanks*. If any queſtion the *depth* of the *number* of the *Figure*, I have *doubled files* to make the *Figure* more perfect, as you may perceive by the following *Figures*.

The Command is, *Wheele-off your Front by diviſion.*

First-Front.



Reer.

The way to perform this *Motion* is eaſie, for all the *file-leaders* of the *right-flank wheel-about to the right*: the reſt of each *file* following their *leaders*: the *file-leaders* alſo of the *left-flank*, *wheeling-about* to the *left* in the ſame manner; and then *joyn* or *cloſe* their *diviſions*. This being done, if you would then *reduce* them, *wheele* them off again by *diviſion*, after the ſame manner; and they will be as before. But if you would do it ſome other way, make uſe of this *Wheeling* next following: which will alſo bring them as they were. The word of *Command* or *Direction* followeth as in the next Chapter.

Note the direction, the wheeling is angular, the motion to be performed, wheeling-about the out-moſt file-leader on each flank.

CHAP. LXI.

Of wheeling the Front inward towards the Reer.

WHeeling your front inwards to the Reer, is here placed as a *Reducement* unto the preceding *wheeling*: and brings the *Muſkettiers* to the *flanks* again. Nevertheleſſe if you would do it, the Company being firſt *reduced*; then it brings the *Pikes* to be the *flankers*. Some have conceived that it may prove uſefull at any time, when your *Reer* ſhall be too much *over-laid by the enemies Caval'rie*: having firſt gained ſome *hill-ſide*, or other place of *advantage*, for then by this *wheeling* of your *front inward* to the *Reer*, (which to the *enemy* will make ſhew of *disbanding*, or *flight*: But to the contrary) your *Battell martcheth* towards *them* with a *ſetled* and *orderly body*, with all your *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*. In that order *firing* upon the *enemy*; the *Pikes* being the *Flankers*: thereby *defending* the flanks of your *ſhot* from the *fury* of the *Horſe*. The Figure as in motion followeth.

The Command is, *Wheele your Front inward to the Reer.*

The Front.



This was the Front.

This *Motion* will hardly be well done, if your *body* hold too large an extenſion of *length*

The Inſtruction how to performe the Motion.

But at what *depth* ſoever it is eaſie. The *Motion* is to be performed as followeth. The *right-hand file-leader*, with all the *leaders* of the *right-flank advance forwards*, and ſo *wheele-about* to the *left*: every *file* ſtill keeping cloſe to their *right-hand file*. The *left hand file-leader* likewiſe, with all the *leaders* of the *left flank advance forwards*, & *wheel-about* to the *right*; every *file* of the *left flank cloſing cloſe to the left*. Thus the *out-moſt files* of each *flank*, will meet and become the *innermoſt*: the *front* falling *perpendicularly* to the *reer*. For the *reducement* of this *figure*, you may if you pleaſe, either *wheel* them off to the *right* and *left* by *diviſion*: or elſe *wheel* your *front inward* again to the *reer*. Theſe two laſt *wheelings* have been demonſtrated with their *files doubled*, wherby the *figures* might be the more perfect, but with men it would have been needleſſe: wherefore *double ranks* to the contray *hand*, and they will be as at the firſt.

The reducement.

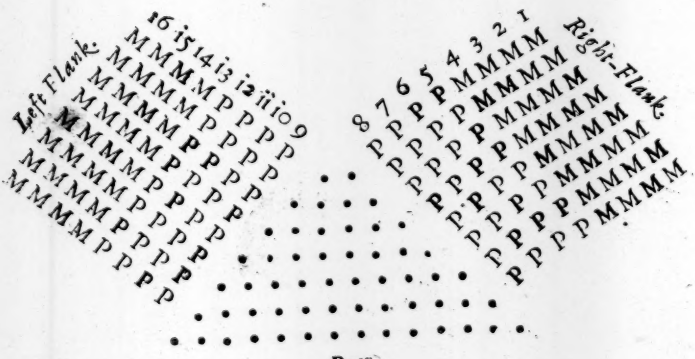
CHAP. LXII.

Of bringing the Flankes into the Front of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele your Flanks into the Front.*

The Direction is, *Follow your Leaders.*

Front.



Wheele your { Flanks / Wings / Front } into the { Front. / Front. / Battell. } Wheele your { Front / Front / Reere } into the { Midſt. / Center. / Flanks. }

This

THis *Divisional Wheeling of the Flanks into the Front*, is properly a *Doubling*, performed by *wheeling*. It brings all your *Musquettiers* from the *Flanks* into the *Front*. So that whereas this *Body* before could do *execution* but with eight *Musquettiers* at once, by this *Motion* they may pour on sixteen *shot* together. If they were *deeper* before the *Motion* began, then it would bring the more hands to imployment. If upon some *passe* you should be chased in the Reer by *Horse*, by this *Motion* of *wheeling* your *flanks* into the *Front*, you not only secure your *Musquettiers*, but also *barricado up* the *passage* with your *Pikes*; provided it be not above fifty foot over. Some call this a *wheeling on the Center*; because they *wheele-about* the *middle-men* of the *Front*. But I rather conceive it an *angular*; because upon the first *motion* of *dividing*, every *Division wheeleth about* his own *angle*, untill the *out-most file-leaders* of each *flank* meet together in the *midst*. You may perceive how, by the figures of *number*, where the figure 1 meets the *number* 16. 2 with 15, 3 with 14, and so for all the rest. Then, being *faced* to their *Leader*, every two *files* that meet, being now *joyned*, make one *rank*. There must be the like *order* and *decorum* kept in the *motion* of *wheeling* each *flank*, as I shewed in the instruction of *intire angular wheelings*. For *Reducement* of this *Motion*; *Wheele your flanks into the Reer*. Or else four times the same; as I have seen some do: although somewhat the further way about. Divers men are diversly opinionated, concerning the best *word* of *Command* or *Direction* for this *Motion*: These I have known-used, which I have placed at the bottome of the *Figure*. And if any man like one better then the other, be it at his own choice, either to use or refuse, while I passe to shew the next *Wheeling*.

This Wheeling most properly a Doubling.

Sixteen abreast allowing to each man 3. foot amounts to 48 foot.

The reducements.

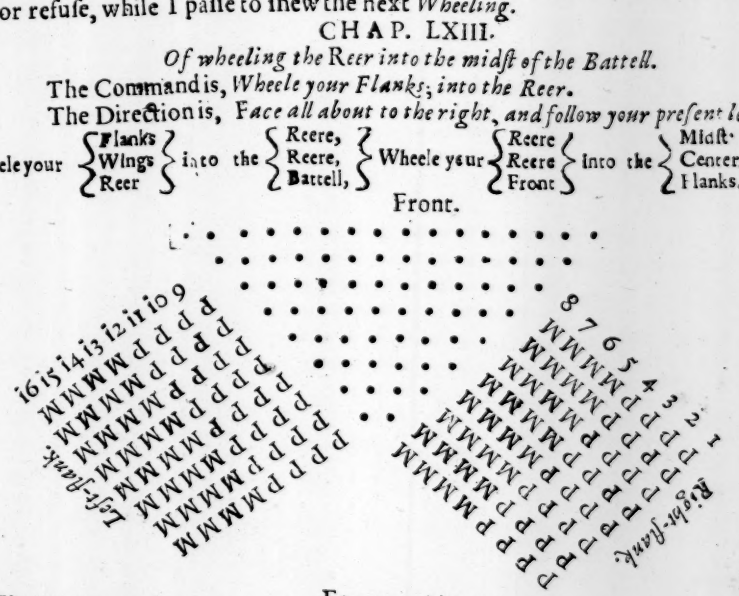
CHAP. LXIII.

Of wheeling the Reer into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele your Flanks; into the Reer.*

The Direction is, *Face all about to the right, and follow your present leaders.*

Wheele your { Flanks / Wings / Reer } into the { Reere, / Reere, / Battell, } Wheele your { Reere / Reere / Front } into the { Midst. / Center. / Flanks. }



Front-accidentall.

THis *Divisional wheeling* of the *Flanks* into the *Reere*, is also a *Doubling*, and performed as the other. And what soever might be said in behalfe of the *wheeling* of the *Front*

Upon all wheelings you must observe to follow your leaders; which must be understood, as well of those which become leaders accidentally, (by reason of facings) as of those which be the first and proper leaders. As in this wheeling for example, where the bringers-up are become the leaders of the motion.

Front into the *middeſt*, the ſame may be alſo ſpoken concerning the *wheeling* of the *Reer* into the *middeſt*: For this *Wheeling* brings your two *out-moſt files* to be the *firſt rank* to the *Reer*; the *Bringers-up* of the *right* and *left-hand-files* meeting together: the *Bringers-up* of the *right flank* meeting *face* to *face* with the *Bringers-up* of the *left-flank*. And ſo being *faced* to their *Leader*, they which before were compleat *files*, are now become *half-ranks*, either to the *right* or *left*. But you muſt note, that before you begin to *wheel*, you muſt *face* your *Body about* to the *Reer*; and then the *action* will be all one as if you *wheeled* your *flanks* into the *Front*. Wherefore I ſhall not need further to explaine it, having ſpoken fully to it in the precedent Chapter.

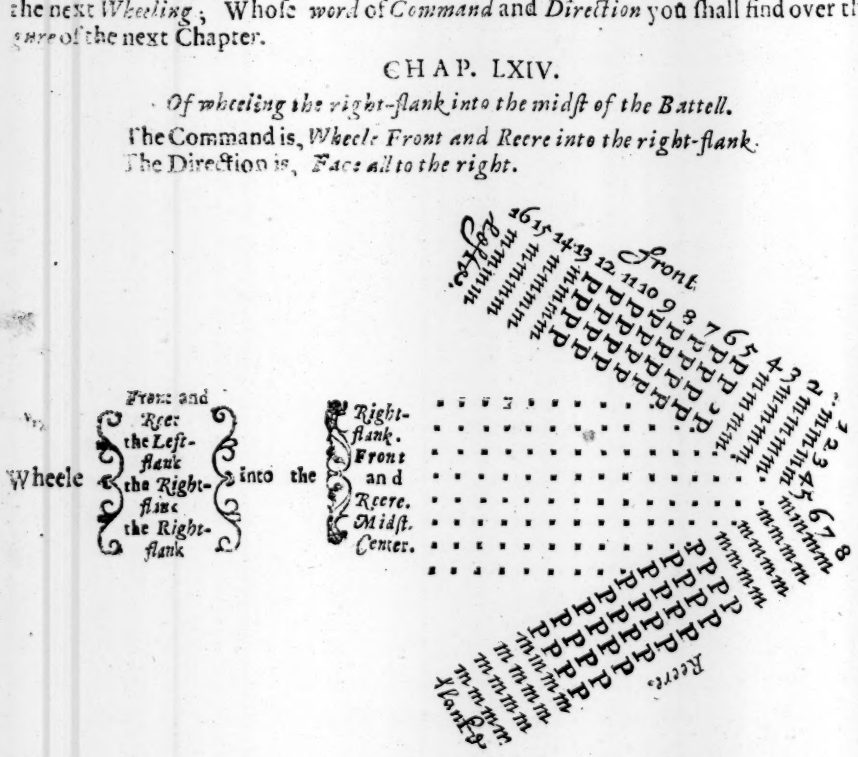
Note that the two middle-moſt Bringers-up are the bringers of this wheeling.

For the *Reducement* of this *Wheeling*; the *Commander* being at his *Front-accident all*, may command them to *wheele* their *wings* into the *Reer*, and ſo paſſe through to that part where his *proper file-leaders* are; and then *face* them to him, and they are *reduced*. Or elſe, when he hath paſt through to the *Reer*, and *faced* this *Company* to him, then his *Pikes* being fore-moſt, let him *wheele* his *flanks* into the *Front*; when being *faced* to their *Leader*, they are *reduced*. For this *Motion* there are alſo divers and ſeveral *words* of *Command*; And becauſe it may be, that ſome will better approve of ſome of the other *words* of *Command*, then of this that I have made uſe of, therefore I have placed others immediatly before the *Figure*, that ſo any that will may take their choice, while I paſſe to ſhew the next *Wheeling*; Whoſe *word* of *Command* and *Direction* you ſhall find over the *Figure* of the next Chapter.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of wheeling the right-flank into the midſt of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele Front and Reere into the right-flank.*
The Direction is, *Face all to the right.*



This

THis *Divisionall wheeling* of the *Front* and *Reer* into the *right-flank*, doth *quadruple* the *depth*; as may appeare by this *Figure*; which before the *Motion* began contained but 8. in *depth*, but this *wheeling* being perfected, makes them 32. namely, if you direct the *aspect* of the *Body* either to the *right* or *left*, after the *Motion* is ended. If you observe this *Wheeling*, it doth divide the *Musquettiers* on the *left flanke*; the one half of them *wheeling* to the *Front*, the other half to the *Reer*: all the *Musquettiers* of the *right flank wheeling* together into the *midst*. The *Pikes* are likewise divided; those that were the *Front-half files* are in the *middest* of the *Front-division* of *Musquettiers*, and those which were the *Reer-division* of *Pikes* are in the *middest* of the *Reer-division* of *Musquettiers*. This *Wheeling* may be to singular good use for the making of some *formes* of *Battell*. But I forbear now to treat concerning *Figures* and *formes* of *Battell*, reserving them to be spoken of in their due places; and come now to shew the way how to perform the *Motion*. The *Command* therefore being given to *wheele Front and Reer into the right-flank*, then the first thing the Souldiers are to do, is to *face* to the *right*; that done, they *wheele* together about the 4. and 5. men in the *right-hand-file*; which is the *half-file-leader* to the *Front*, and *half-file-leader* to the *Reer*. You may easily perceive how by the *Figure*; where the *Reer-division wheeleth* to the *left*, and the *Front-division* to the *right*, untill the *Bringer-up* of the *right-hand-file* meets in the *midst* with his *file-leader*: the *second* with the *seventh*; the *third* with the *sixth*; the *fourth* with the *fifth*, &c.

Note that if the length of your Battell be double the number of your depth, as in this Figure, then this wheeling of Front and Reer into the Right or Left-flank, doth quadruple their former depth. If the number were equall in length and depth, then by this wheeling they would be but doubled. If the number of your length exceed more then double your depth, by so much the more will the extension of the depth be beyond quadruple &c.

For the *Reducement* of this *Figure* of *Wheeling* there are many wayes, according as the *Body* may be *faced*: But first conceive them *faced* the same way as they were before this *Motion* began; and then the *wheeling* of *Front* and *Reer* into the *left-flank* will *reduce* them, when they are *faced* to their *Leader*. Or, if you will, *face* them that way which they *wheeled* in the *Motion*, which was to the *right*; then *wheele your flanks* into the *Reere*; when being *faced* to their *proper-front*, they are *reduced*. And so, in like manner, should you *face* them to some other part, they might be otherwise *reduced*. The next *Wheeling* will be the same to the *left*, as this is to the *right*; where, notwithstanding that the *Motion* be all one, yet it shall differ in the *placing* of the *men*. For before I begin the *Wheeling*, I will passe through all the *Musquettiers*, from the *right-flank* to the *left*; by which meanes, the *Body* will stand as appeareth by the *square Figure* following under *A*. From whence I will begin the next *Wheeling*.

The Reducement.

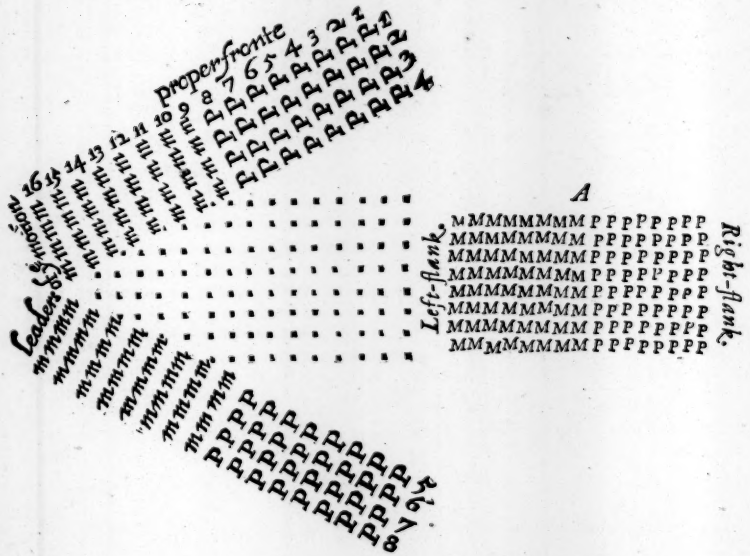
Wheelings may be diversly reduced, at the discretion of the Commander.

CHAP. LXV.

Of wheeling the Left-flank into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele Front and reer in the Left-flank.*

The direction is, *Face all to the left, and move after your present leaders.*



THis *Divisionall wheeling* of the *Front* and *Reer* into the *Left-flank*, is *in* like manner a *Doubling of the depth.* For the nature of the *Motion*, it is altogether like unto the *Wheeling* next before: differing onely in the *Flank*; and after that the *Body* is *faced* to the *left*, the *wheeling* is to be performed as *wheeling* the *Flanks* into the *Front.* But by reason that before the *Motion* began, all the *Pikes* were on the *right-flank*, by this *wheeling* they are brought to the *Front* and *Reer.* For the *aspect* being directed the same way it was before the *Command* was given, the *depth* will be 32. as in the other *Figure.*

The reducement.

For *Reducement*, the ordinary way is to *wheele* the *Front* and *Reer* into the *right-flank*. Or if upon any occasion you have *faced* your *Body* to the same way they have *wheeled*, (which was to the *left-flank*) and would give your *Command* from thence, then let them *wheele* their *flanks* into the *Reer.* This done, the *Commander* passing to his *first Front*, and *facing* them to him, they are as before this last *Wheeling* began. Then cause the *four files* of *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right*, and to passe through to their places. Lastly, *close* them to their due *distance* in *rank* and *file*, and they are perfectly *reduced.*

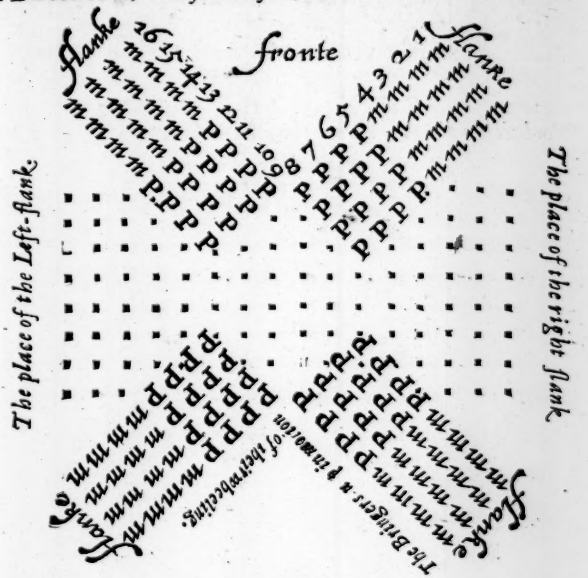
CHAP.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of wheeling Front *and* Reer *into the midst of the Battell.*

The Command is, *Wheele both* Flanks *into the* Front *and* Reer.

The Direction is, *Half-files, face-about to the* Reer.



Reeer.

THis *divisionall wheeling* of both *flanks* into the Front *Reer*, doth *double* the *depth*; making them from 8. *deep*, 16. It doth likewise transferre the *Musquettiers* from the *flanks* into the Front and Reere; making a *division* between the Front-*halfe-files* and *Reer-half-files*: So that of one *Body flankt* with *Musquettiers*, it maketh two; each having their *Musquettiers* in Front.

This *Figure*, and most others, (as well *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings* (are here set forth as the *motion* of each presents it self in the *execution*; few of them being shewn as they be when they are *executed*: And I conceive it the better way, not only for *direction*, but also for the *apprehension* of the Learner, to shew the work as it is in *doing*, rather then absolutly *performed*.

For the way how to perform this *wheeling*, take these directions following. The *Command* being first given, as afore-said, the first thing the Souldiers have to do is, for the *halfe-files to face-about*, and then the Front-*half-files* and *Reere-half-files wheele* at one and the same time; the Front-*division wheeling* about their two *inner-most file-leaders*, which are figured with the numbers of 8. & 9. unil the *file leaders* of the *right-flank* meet together in the *midst* with the *file-leaders* of the *left flank*; as you may easily perceive by the Figure shewing the *motion*; the rest of their *divisions* orderly following them. The *half-files* also being *faced about*, the *Bringers-up* in like manner *wheele* together; being now the *leaders* of the *motion*, in the *Reer*, as you may perceive. This being done, if you please, you may *face* them all to their *Leader*, (whom suppose to be at the *place* of his first-Front) and then command them to *close* their *Divisions*; which being performed, all

The direction to this wheeling.

your

your *file-leaders* are in the two *inner-most files* of the *front-division*, *file-wise*, and all the *bringers-up* in the *reer-division* of the same *files*.

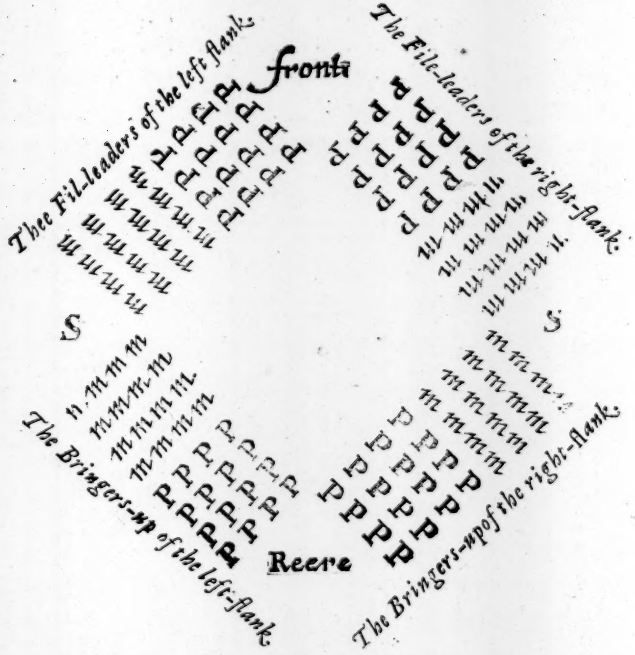
For the *reducement* of this *wheeling*, if you will, *face* them to either of the *flanks*, and command them to *wheel* both *flanks* into the *front* and *reer*, then *face* them again to their *proper-front*, and close their *divisions*, they will be as at first. But if you would make use of some other *wheeling*, to *reduce* it, then take this in the following Chapter.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of wheeling the flanks into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele front and reer into both flanks.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left, and wheel after your present leaders.*



THis *divisionall wheeling* of the *front* and *reer* into both *flanks*, may also be termed a *doubling of the depth*: by reason that from 8. *deep*, it *maketh double the former number*. By this *motion* also, the *Musketiers* which were before *flankers*, are now transferred into the *midst*, between the *front* and *reer* of the *Pikes*. And whereas in the other figure, the *wheeling* was about the two *middle-most file-leaders*, & *bringers-up*; this *wheeling* contrariwise, is about the two *halfe-file-leaders*, of the *out-most files* on each *flank*. In the other *wheeling*, the *file-leaders* and *bringers-up* made the *innermost files*, in this the

outermost

outer-moſt-file of each *flank*, as you may eaſily perceive by the *figure*. This *motion* being performed, leaves a large *Intervall* (or *diviſion*) from *front* to *reere*, between the *flanks*: if the Commander paſſe into the *midſt*, between each *diviſion*, and *face* them all to him; cauſing them to *cloſe* their *diviſions*, and martch forth into his firſt place, (directing their *aſpects* the ſame way) then will the *Pikes* be in the *front* and *reere*.

For the *reducement* of this *figure* (of *wheeling*) to its former *poſture*; you may *face* the *body* to one of the *flanks*. Which being done, command them again to *wheel front and reer into both flanks*, when being *faced* to their former *front*, & having *cloſed* their *diviſion*, they are reduced. Neverthleſs if you would make uſe of ſome other *wheeling* to *reduce* them, then *wheele both flanks* into the *front* and *reere*, and they will be as at firſt, after that they have *faced* to their *Leader*, and *cloſed* their *diviſions*. Thus as briefly, & as plainly as I could, have I run through the ſeverall *motions* and *grounds*, for the *diſciplining* of a *foot-company*. And although I neither can, nor hope to give ſatisfaction to all; yet I ſhall intreat the better qualified, that where I am wanting, there they will ſupply my defects with their goodneſſe. Or if it ſo happen, that I undergoe the cenſure of needleſs ſuperfluity: I would have ſuch to make uſe of ſo much of it, as they ſhall think fit for their own turnes, and leave the reſidue unto ſuch as may have opportunity for to uſe it. *The Reducement.*

This courteous Reader have I paſt the grounds,
And various motions of the Infantery,
Where thou maiſt gain the ſkill, coſt others wounds,
Though from a young one of th' Artillery.
Read and conſider, if thou nothing gain,
I aſk as little from thee for my paine.

If thou the Diſtances doſt well peruſe,
The ſeveral Facings, and the Doublings too,
The Counter-martches which of courſe enſues,
And then our Wheelings which we laſtly do:
Theſe being practis'd, learn'd, and underſtood.
The benefit turnes to thy Countries good.

Theſe like the Vowels are in number five,
With which we ſpell all words that can be nam'd:
So with theſe motions we all formes contrive,
And from theſe grounds are all our Figures fram'd.
Then frame thou no excuſe, but learne to know them,
And with as free an heart as I do ſhow them.

Now next of all I ſhould ſome firings ſhow,
But leſt perhaps I hold you over-long,
I think it fit ſome reſpite to beſtow,
For fear our Souldiers think I doe them wrong.
So pleaſe the Reador but to pauſe the whiles,
And ſee our Leaders exerciſe their files.

For now each Leader is ſo courteous growne;
He ſtrives to bring another to his place,
But they as modeſtly would keep their own,
And each prefers his follower to the grace.
So pleaſe you then but wink at the digreſſion,
And you ſhall ſee each Leader by ſucceſſion.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of making men file-leaders ſucceſſively, the files being eight deepe.

EVery Man may be made *file-leader* of his own *file ſucceſſively*, according to his *firſt ſtanding*, as well and eaſily in *great bodies*, as by *ſingle files*. Yea and with the ſame words of Command and Direction, as you may perceive by the following Table, where the Figures of *number* ſhew the ſucceſſion of each mans *leading*. The words of *Command* which produce each *leader*, being placed in the Columes of the following Table. In the firſt Colume, the *file* ſtands each man in his right place; with his *proper file-leader* in *front*. The reſt of the *files* demonſtrating the *places* of the men, according to their *ſtanding* upon the making of every ſeverall *file-leaders*. The *Commands* are *figured*: which produce the like *leaders*.

The Front of each file, as they come to be file-leaders ſucceſſively, with the numbers and places of the men, figured according to their proper places they firſt ſtood in.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
7	8	5	6	3	4	1	2
6	5	8	7	2	1	4	3
5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4
4	3	2	1	8	7	6	5
3	4	1	2	7	8	5	6
2	1	4	3	6	5	8	7
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

The ſeverall words of Command, which produce each File-leader.

2	Ranks / Files } to the right double } makes the File-leaders, and half-file-leaders, ſtand; the reſt paſſe thorow to the right, and place your ſelves before your Leaders.
3	Ranks / Files } to the Left double } makes the First Rank ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders,
4	Ranks / Files } to the Right double, makes the Counter-march Front and Reere into the midſt, and then face to the firſt Front,
5	Ranks, / Files, } to the Left double } makes the Then face about, or counter-march the front into the Reere, and they are reduced.
6	
7	
8	
1	

The firſt are the *proper-leaders* of the *files*. For to make the ſecond *leade*, if there be but one *file*, then, *file*, *rank two to the right*, if there be more *files*, then, *ranks to the right, double*, and *files to the right, double*. By which meanes the ſecond man is become *leader* of his *file*; every man being diſpoſed, as you may perceive by that *file*, whoſe *leader* is the *figure* of 2. To make him that was the third man, *leader*, let *file-leaders and half-file-leaders ſtand*, and *the reſt paſs through to the right, and place themſelves before their leaders*. Thus will the *file* ſtand like that, led by the *figure* of 3. For to make him that was the fourth man

leader;

leader; *Ranks to the left, double*; and *files to the left, double*: whereby the *file* will ſtand like that led by the figure of 4. For to make him that was the fifth man *leader*, let the *firſt rank ſtand*; *the reſt paſs through to the right, and place themſelves before their leaders*: by which means, the *file* will ſtand like that led by the figure of 5. For to make him that was the ſixth man *leader*, *Double your ranks to the left*, and, *Files to the left, double*: and then the *file* will ſtand like the *file* led by the figure of 6. For to make him that was the ſeventh man *leader* of the *file*, *Counter-martch, front and reer into the middeſt*, and *face them to their former front*: whereby the *file* will ſtand like that led by the figure of 7. For to make him that was the eighth man *lead* the *file*, *Ranks to the left double*, and, *Files to the left double*: and the *file* will ſtand like that led by the figure of 8. For to *reduce* them, *Cauſe the firſt rank to ſtand, the reſt to advance forwards to the right, placing themſelves before their leaders.* The reducement.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of making men File-leaders ſucceſſively, the Files being but ſix deep.

SOme will be inquiſitive to know for what uſe the *making of File-leaders by ſucceſſion* ſerveth; or whether it be not a meer curioſity? To which I thus anſwer: That it is not only *pleaſant*, but *profitable*. *Pleaſant* to the *leader* of a *file*, who having ſufficiently exerciſed his *file* in *Poſtures*, to give ſome time of reſpite or delectation for the recreating of their (almoſt) tired ſpirits, brings each man, *ſucceſſively*, to *lead* the *file*, by *proper words of Command*: And laſtly, *reduceth* each man to his *former ſtanding*. It muſt needs be profitable, and much available in *Diſcipline*, when the skilfull *Commander* can thereby (with much eaſe) *change* and *interchange*, bring what *ranks* he pleaſeth to *lead* in *Front*, and *exchange* them afterwards for others; yea, and laſtly, at his own pleaſure bring the *proper File-leaders* again into their places. This following Table ſhews each mans ſeveral place, and how they ſtand upon every mans comming to be made *File-leaders*; ſtill ſuffering alteration, according to their various *leaders*; demonſtrated here by the figures of *number* (which are placed at the bottome of thoſe Columnes wherein are writ the *words of Command*:) Underſtand that thoſe words over the figure of 2. are to make the ſecond man *file-leader*; thoſe words over the figure of 3. make the third man *leader*: And ſo forwards to the reſt, as in the Table.

The Front and standing of each File as they come to be Leaders.

6	5	4	3	2	1
5	6	5	2	1	2
4	3	1	6	4	3
3	4	6	1	3	4
2	1	2	5	6	5
1	2	3	4	5	6

The words of Command which produce each several Leader.

1	6	5	4	3	2
File-leaders stand; the rest passe thorow, and place your selves before your leaders.	Ranks, Files, to the right double.	Ranks to the left double, and Files double your depth to the Left.	File-leaders stand, the rest pass thorow to the right, and place your selves before your leaders.	Half-files double your front to the right, and files to the right double.	Ranks, Files, to the left double.

The *first man* is the *leader* of the *file*. For to make the *second man* leader, Command, *File, rank two to the left.* If there be more *files* than one, *Ranks to the left, double*; and *files to the left, double*: which makes the *second man* leader; every man in the *file* being disposed, as you may perceive by that *file* led by the figure of 2. For to make him that was the *third man* leader, Command, *Half-files, double the front to the Right*; and *Files to the right, double*: by which means, the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 3. For to make him that was the *fourth man* leader; *Face to the Reer*, and then he leads. But if you will keep the same *Front*, command the *first rank to stand, the rest to pass through to the left, placing your selves before your leaders*: Thus will the *file* stand like that led by the figure of 4. For to make the *fifth man* leader, command, *Ranks to the right, double*: and *Files to double their depth to the right intire*: by which means, the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 5. For to make the *sixth man* file-leader, cause *Ranks to the left, double*; and *Files to the left, double*: and then the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 6. For to *reduce* them, there needs no more but, *Face to the Reer*: Notwithstanding, if you would have *the Front* the same way, the Command is, *First-rank stand*; *the rest pass forwards to the right, placing your selves before your leaders.*

To reduce men.

For to make six men successively Leaders, by six words of Command, besides Facings.

The first is *leader*: For the second file, *Rank two to the left*, and, *Files to the left, double.*

For

For the third, *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst, & face to to that part which was the Reer.* For the fourth, *Face about to the right.* For the fifth *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst, and face to that which was the Reer.* For the sixth, *Files, rank two to the right,* and, *files to the right, double. Face them about,* and they are *reduced.*

CHAP. LXX.

Of making men File-leaders successively, according to their precedency and dignity in file.

HAving already demonstrated two Tables, for the making of men *File-leaders successively,* let it not be held impertinent if I present two others unto you; wherein I shall deliver the way of making men *File-leaders, according to dignity.* Snarling Synicks, I know, will *carp* at my *curiosity*; but *studious Souldiers* will *praise* my *industry.* Men naturally are not inclined to practise any thing, wherein they find not either profit or delight: few men by the *practise* of *Armes* makes * profit. If then the *aimes* of *honour* may be first attracted, with the various delights which are found in the study and practice of the *Art Military*, why should any grutch the gilt to the wholsome Pill, (which makes it the more readily and willingly received?) Or, why should any hinder the means, whereby *Souldiers* may be built up with delight, seeing that the benefit redounds to the reputation and honour of our Country? Thus much upon mine own knowledge: I have seen some so prepostrous to all conceit of *Souldiery*, that they have shunned it with as much care as thrifty husbands do beggery; yet casually happening to see the *exercise of a single file*, have been so taken with some conceit or knack, that without any further aime, they have taken *Armes*: wherein, by their *practice* and *industry*, they have attained so much *proficiency*, that now they are known excellent in many parts of the *Art Military*. Nor hath their flowring buds been any way priviledged, or might escape those private & frosty nips from aspersionating tongues; a fault too common and customary in many, to despise the vertue of those, whom they have known raw novices in that *art* and *faculty*, wherein themselves have been noted any thing extraordinary. But lest I be censured to be over-tart or tedious, I return to the work of this Chapter: which is, *the making men file-leaders in dignity.*

* *What fortunate prosits Souldiers have made by following this Art, read Rawleighs Hist. of the World, l. 5. c. 6. Sect. 2.*

Each mans *dignity* and *worth*, with the reasons thereof, are at large set forth in the *fourth* and *fifth* Chapters of this Book. The *Table* followeth, wherein is declared every mans *dignity*, and the words to make them *file-leaders* accordingly, &c.

File-leaders by Dignity.

	The proper file leader.	The bringer-up.	The half file-leader.	The bringer-up of the front half file.	The second man from the front.	The second man from the reere.	The next after the half file-leader.	The third man from the front
A. 1. File-leader.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
B. 2. Bringer-up,	5	6	7	3	6	2	3	7
C. 3. Half-file-leader.	8	7	6	8	1	3	2	4
D. 4. Bringers-up of the front-half-file.	4	3	2	7	2	7	6	3
	3	4	1	5	4	8	5	1
	7	8	5	6	3	1	4	2
	6	5	4	1	7	4	8	5
	2	1	8	2	8	5	1	6

The several words of command, which produce each File-leader.

2	File-leaders stand; the reſt paſs thorow to the right, and place your ſelves before your leaders.
3	File-leaders, and half-file leaders ſtand; the reſt paſs thorow to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders.
4	Bringers up, double your front to the right, and files to the right double.
5	Front and Reer half files interchange your ground.
6	Ranks to the left double, then, files double your depth to the left.
7	File leaders, & half-file leaders ſtand; the reſt paſs thorow to the right; placing your ſelves before your leaders.
8	Half files, double your front to the left, then files to the left double.
9	The words of command to reduce them to their former places, are placed beneath this Table.

The Reducement.

1. Front and reer half files interchange ground.
2. Ranks to the right double.
3. Bringers up face about to the left, & march into your places.

A. 1. File-leader.

B. 2. Bringer-up,

C. 3. Half-file-leader.

D. 4. Bringers-up of the front-half-file.

E. 5. The ſecond man from the front.

F. 6. The next before the bringer-up.

G. 7. Next after the half file-leader.

H. 8. The third man from the front.

The *file-leader* is the A. *chief man in dignity*, and *firſt leader* of the *file*. To make the B. *ſecond man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your leaders*. To make the C. *third man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file-leaders*, & *half-file-leaders, ſtand, the reſt paſs forwards to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders*. To make the D. *fourth man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *bringers-up, double your front to the left*, and (that being done) *files to the left, double*. To make the E. *fifth man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *front and reer half-files interchange ground*, and then *face* as before. To make the F. *Sixt man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file, rank two to the left* (if it be a *ſingle file*: but if you have more *files*, then command *ranks to the left double*) and *files double your depth to the left*. To make the G. *Seventh man in dignity file-leader*, (Command) *file-leaders*, and *half-file-leaders ſtand; the reſt paſſe forwards to the right, placing your ſelves before you leaders*. To make the H. *Eighth and laſt man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *half-files double your front to the left*. (that done) *Files to the left double*. This being performed, every man hath ſucceſſively been the *leader* of his own *file*, according to his *dignity* therein. The *reducement* is placed at the lower end of the *table*.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of making men file-leaders by dignity, the files being but ſix deep.

MAny wayes there be to make men *file-leaders*, either *ſucceſſively*, or by *dignity* in one *ſingle file*; which cannot ſo eaſily (nor ſo properly) be performed with a whole *company* (or *larger body*) and therefore neither proper nor *uſeful*. Such wayes only being fit to be *practiſed*, as will ſute with any number, the *depth* only *reſerved*,

which I have here under-taken for six *deep*. The following *Table* demonstrates their *Number of dignity*, and the *succession* of *each man* comming to *lead* in *Front*; as also *each mans place* upon the *alteration* of every *leader*, and *severall words of Command*. Beneath each Columne is placed the *words of Command*, to produce the next *ensuing leader*. Last of all is the *Reducement*.

Succession of leading in Dignity.

Number of Dignity.					
6	5	4	3	2	1
2	4	5	9	6	5
1	3	1	2	3	4
3	1	3	4	1	3
4	2	6	5	5	6
5	6	2	1	4	2

The words of Command which produce each File-leader.

1	6	5	4	3	2
The words of command to reduce them are at the end of this Table.	File-leaders stand, the reſt paſſe thorow to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders.	Ranks to the right double, and Files to the right double.	Front and Reere-halfe-files interchange ground.	File-leaders and halfe-file-leaders ſtand; the reſt paſſe thorow to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders.	Bringers-up, double your Front to the right, Files, double your depth to the right.

The Reducement.

Ranks to the Left } double.
Files to the Left }
Halfe-files, double your Front to the Right.
Bringers-up, face-about to the Right, and
marteh forth into your places.

Although the *Table* it ſelf were ſufficient to inſtruct the deſirous, yet for the clearer demonſtration, take theſe further inſtructions.

A. The *firſt rank*, or the *file-leaders* of each *file* are the *firſt* and *chiefeſt men in dignity*; every one in his own *file*. *A. The file-leaders.*

To make the B. *ſecond-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Bringers-up double your Front to the Right*; (and then) *Files, double your depth to the Right*. To make the C. *third-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *File-leaders and halfe-file-leaders, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders.* To make the D. *fourth-rank in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Front and Reer-half-files, interchange ground.* To make the E. *fifth-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Ranks to the right double*, (and) *Files to the right double.* To make the F. *ſixth and laſt-rank in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *File-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the left, and place your ſelves before your leaders.* The *Reducement* is placed at the lower end of the *Table*.

B. Bringers up.

C. Halfe-file leaders

D. Bringers up of the Front-half-files.

E. The ſecond man from the Front.

F. The ſecond rank from the Reers.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of drawing the Files again into a Body, and preparing them for skirmiſh.

BY this time (me thinks) I hear the * *Drums beat a Call*; which ſummons each *File-leader* to his *place*: every man obſerving his *order*, both in *rank* and *file*. The *Officers* having

* *Upon the firſt ſummons of the drum, every File-leader is to draw forth his file, (whether he be exerciſing them in Poſture or Motion) and to repaire to his Ranke-vour or Colours.*

having taken their due *places*; the *Captain* and *Enſigne* in the *Front of Pikes*, the *Lievtenant* in the *Reere*; the *Serjeants* on the *flanks*; the *Drums* on the *Front* and *Reere-angle* of the *Pikes*: as you may perceive by the *ſquare Figure* following.

Now the *Drums beat a Martch*, the *Enſigne* flying at the *head* of the *Pikes*, the *Pike* and *Muſquets ſhouldred*, *martching* at their *diſtance* of *Order* [a] in *File*, at *Open-Order* in *Ranke*: preſently, by a [b] *ſigne* from the *Captain*, the *Drums beat a Preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Ranks cloſe forwards to their Order*, the *Muſquittiers make ready*, and every man prepares himſelfe for *Battell* or *Skirmiſh*. And here the eyes of the *Drum* muſt be very vigilant to obſerve his *Captain* or *Commander*, that by the leaſt *ſigne*, either of his *hand*, *leading-ſtaffe*, or whatſoever elſe hee carries, he may either continue his *Charge*, *Retreit*, or elſe *Charge home*; and every *Souldier* ought to be ſo well *trained* and *practiſed*, that in the time of *Battell* he may receive *ample inſtructions* from the *ſound* of the *Drum*.

[a] *Diſtance in rank and file is to be underſtood betweene rank & file and not as ſome would fondly wreſt it.*

[b] *That is, to advance his Keyn, Pike, or Leading-ſtaffe.*

If the Captain ſends out looſe files or ranks to skirmiſh before the Front, the Enſigne continues ſtanding at the head of the Pikes, his Colours flying: If the Captain prepare to give fire, either even with the Front of Pikes, or in the ſingle horne Battell, then the Enſigne is to furle-up his Colours, and retreit to the halfe-files. The Body drawn into a ſquare with the Officers in their places.

Front.

E. C.

S. MMMM D. P P P P P P P D. MMMM S.
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P MMMM
S. MMMM D. P P P P P P P D. MMMM S.

L.

Reere.

Thus many Officers may ſerve for a large Company, if the Souldiers be expert and skillfull: and to the contrary, they are all too few, if they be raw and unexperienced. I have ſeen ſome Companies which have been ſo abſolutely ignorant, that each man would have needed an Officer to have kept him orderly in his place: Nevertheleſſe, I make no doubt, but that by the carefull over-ſight of the Lord Lievtenants, the good aſſiſtance of their Deputies, and the diligence of the Captains and their Officers, this fault will quickly be amended. And this might eaſily enough be done, if that thoſe which are owners of Armes would meet one hour or two in a fortnight, (at their beſt leaſures) and firſt practiſe the Poſtures of the Pike and Musquet, not omitting to exerciſe the Motions and Firings, when they are grown more expert. If any ſhall Object, that however this may be done in Towns and Cities, yet it cannot be in the Country Villages: I anſwer, that if they meet not above foure, ſix, or eight in a place, although they have no Officer to inſtruct them, yet by conferring and trying, and often practiſing, they will begin to carry their Armes with more eaſe, and to uſe them with more delight. Neither need they to be altogether ignorant, ſeeing there are divers printed pourtraitures of the Poſtures of each Armes, as alſo Books whereby they may have very ample inſtruction: By which having attained ſome little skill, they will not be contented untill they have better improved it, by the inſtruction of their

Usual Companies have beyond the Seas but two Serjeants and two Drums.

The willing mind will find many wayes to learne.

their *Officers*; after which they will prove better *proficients* in one hour, then as they were before in a yeare.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of Firing by forlorne Files, three severall wayes.

BEfore I enter upon *Formes* and *Figures* of *Battell*, be pleased to observe with me, that all *firings* are either *direct* or *oblique*: notwithstanding that the *formes* are full enough of *variety*, occasioned (most times) by the *situation* of the *place*, the *order* of the *Enemy*, and the *number* of *men*, with other *politicall observations* for the gaining of *wind* and *sun*. For the manner of *firings*, they are sometimes *advancing* against an *Enemy*, sometimes *receiving* the *Enemies charge* upon a *stand*, or else *retreiting*. Otherwhiles we give *fire* in the *Reere*, *martching* from the *Enemy*; or in *Flank*, *martching* by an *Enemy*; and it may so fall out, that the *Enemy* may *charge* in several places at once, as in *Front* and *Reer*; or in *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flank*; of which particulars, I will severally treat, desiring to give content to all, not making the least question, but that benefit may accrue unto some. And therefore hoping that the *courteous* & best *qualified* will accept of my good meaning, and not refuse my cates, although presented unto them in earthen vessels; whereby I shall be induced with more willingness to proceed in my intended discourses, so you be pleased to favour me with your better *opinions*; neither rashly condemning me of *prodigality*, for enterprising a work of such *consequence* as this; nor too suddenly accusing my simplicity, for preferring my *rush-light* befor the *Sun*, when others suffer their *Torches* to burne out in dark Lanternes; whom I confess to be farre more able (were they but half so willing) to have imparted of their *Talents* to the benefit of their *Country*. But seeing that they will not vouchsafe it, and that I, like *bold Bayard*, have adventured thus farre, I shall (with your good favour) proceed: And first I will begin with *Firings in Front, advancing*, and *standing*; and so to the rest. And for the more clear expression of each *firing*, I will deliver them both in *Words* and *Figures*: The *first* whereof shall be a * *Firing by forlorne files*, which commonly is used in our *exercise* two manner of wayes: One way is, for the *two outer-most files* of each *flank* of *Musquettiers* to *martch* forth, being led on by the two *junior Serjeants*, so farre as by the superiour *Commander* shall be thought fit; who being there to *stand*, the *fore-most ranks* are to *give fire*, *wheeling off* both to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (if it be so commanded) and to place themselves in the *Reere* of their own *files*, the rest *firing*, and doing of the like, untill they have *fired* once or twice over, according to their directions. This done, the next *two out-most files* of each *flank* are to *martch* forwards into the *place* assigned, and to do the like: those *files* which formerly *gave fire* in the mean time *trooping* back, and placing themselves next the *Pikes*, on the *in-side* of the *divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the rest of the *Musquettiers* (in like manner) *martching up*, and *firing*; still placing themselves next the *Pikes*, as afore-said. When they have *fired* all over, and placed themselves according to these *directions*, they are *reduced* as at first. A second way of *Firing by forlorne files* may be after this manner: The *out-most files* of each *flank* are led forth by the *Serjeants* (according to their charge) untill they have brought them unto a *fit place* for *execution*; and then they *command* their *files* to *rank inward*, and to *present*, and fire all together; as you may plainly perceive by the *Figure* following.

All firings either to the Front, Reer or Flanks, whether martching or standing, are either direct or oblique.

† Firing by forlorn files

Another way of firing. Note the distinction.

Note that the outermost file of each flanke being marcht forth, the next outermost files are to follow in the reere, untill the two first files have ranked inwards. Then the leaders of the second files are to

S M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M S
M M
M M
M M
M M
M M
M C M
M E M
S M M M D P P P P P P P P D M M M S
• • M M P P P P P P P P M M • •
• • M M P P P P P P P P M M • •
• • M M P P P P P P P P M M • •
• • M M P P P P P P P P M M • •
• • M M P P P P P P P P M M • •
• • M M D P P P P P P P P D M M • •
L.

marcht first after the first file leaders untill they have closed to their order.
†*These files being ranked inward the file leaders become the outermost men of the ranks when they give fire, and become leaders of their files again, in the wheeling off after they have fired.*

The first two *Files* having *ranked inward*, *presented* and *fired*, are to *wheele-off* to the *right* and *left*; following their * *leaders* in *single files*, and placing themselves on the *inside* of their *divisions* of *Musquettiers* next the *Pikes*; the next *outmost files* which followed the first in the *reere*, in the meane time, *ranking inward*, *firing*, and *wheeling-off*, as before, and placing themselves next the *Pikes*. And so forwards for all the rest of the *files*: still *martching up*, and doing the like, so long as the *Captaine* or *Commander* shall see fitting. These kinds of *firings* (and all such like) are either for the *beginning* of *skirmishes*, before the *Bodies* come within shot one of another, or to provoke the *Enemy* to *battell*, to draw them into some *ambushment* and other such politicall ends: the *number* of men which *martch* forth upon such *designs*, nor the *manner*, are not alwayes certaine, but consist sometimes of more, sometimes of fewer, according to the *number*, *time*, and *place*. If the *Commander* please, *the outer-most file on each flank* may when they *move forwards*, *and are come to their ground for firing*; *rank the one half of each file inward into the front*: *the rest being led by their half file-leaders*, *move forwards to their Order*, *standing file-wise after the outer-most men* (*of the former ranke*) *who are the file-leaders*; *having fired*, *they are to wheele-off*; *the others in the interim*, *ranking into their places*; *the next out-most Files to martch forwards*, doing according to the former directions for the whole Files.

CHAP. LXXIV.

Of Firings by two ranks, ten paces advanced before the Front: Next, even with the Front: And lastly, even with the half-files.

Advancing of two *ranks* to *fire*, *ten paces* before the Front, is most commonly used, when one or both *Battells* martch against each other; the *Musquettiers* being led forth by two ranks together ten or twenty *paces*, before the *front* of the *body*; that so they may come neare enough to do certaine *execution*. A *Serjeant* from each *flanke*, leading up the two *fore-most ranks*, (according as they shall have order) the first *ranke of each flanke* is to *present*, and *give fire*, *wheeling* either all *off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, as you may perceive by the following Figure.

Front.

Front.

S MMMM
W
W
W
S WMMMM D P P P P P P P D MMMM S
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
• • • • P P P P P P P P • • • •
• • • • D P P P P P P P D • • • •

E. C.

L.

Reere.

MMMM S
W
W
W
S to the *reer* of their own *diviſi-*

The first *ranke* having *preſented, fired,* & *Wheeled-off* (as aforeſaid) are to *martch* cloſe down in *ſingle file*, within *three foot* of their own *flanks*, until they come

The manner deſcribed how this firing ought to be performed.

ons; where every man is to place himſelf in the *reer* of his owne *file*. The ſecond *ranke* being at the *diſtance* of *three foot* behind the firſt *ranke*; when the firſt took their *ground*: they likewiſe are to reſt their *Muſquets*, mounting their *muzzles* clear of their *leaders*; and ſo to ſtand with their *matches cockt*, and *pannes guarded*, that ſo they may *levell* and *fire* as ſoon as their *leaders are clear* of them, and *wheele-off*, in like manner *placing* themſelves as they were before. The next two *ranks* are to begin to *advance forwards*, when they ſe the *laſt* of the *two former ranks*, *preſented, ready* to *fire*. And they alſo having *fired*, *wheel-off* as the others did before them. And ſo ſucceſſively, the reſt of the *ranks advancing, firing*, and *wheeling-off* again *placing themſelves* according to former *directions*. This way they may *give fire, once* or *oftner* over, as the *enemy* doth *advance*, or the *commander* ſhall ſee fitting. All this while that the *Muſquettiers advance* ſo farr before the *Front*, (if the *body* be upon *martch*) the *Pikes* may be *ſhouldered*: but when the *bodies* come within *eight-ſcore*, or leſs, (*if there be any doubt of the Enemies horſe*) then it is fit that the *Muſquettiers give fire* even with the *front* of the *Pikes*, and that the *Pikemen advance* their *Pikes*, and *cloſe forwards* to their *diſtance* of *three foot*, that ſo they may be *even* in *rank* with their *muſquettiers*, as you may perceive by the following *Figure*. If there be no fear of the *enemies horſe*, then the *Pikes* may move *ſhouldred and cloſe forward to their Order*; by that means ſaving their *Pikes* from being *ſhattered and broken* by the *bullets* that flie at *randome*.

No Commander ſo preciſely bound to any forme but that he may as occaſion ſerveth alter this Figure at his pleaſure.

Front.

S. MMMM D P P P P P P P P D MMMM S
W MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM W
W MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM W
W MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM W
W MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM W
MMMM P P P P P P P P MMMM
S. • • • • D P P P P P P P P D • • • • S.

E. C.

L.

Reere.

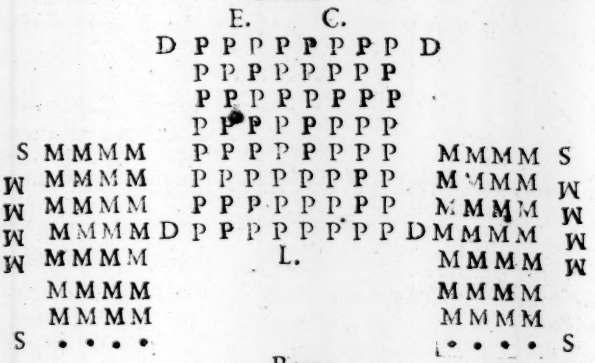
Now the *Pikes* being *advanced*, and the *ranks cloſed forwards* to their due *diſtance* of *Order*, the *muſquettiers* are to *preſent, even* with the *front*, every *rank ſucceſſively* moving forwards, until they come to be even in *rank* with the firſt *rank* of *Pikes*, there to *give fire*, and to *wheel-off* to the *right* and *left*, *trooping file-wiſe*, down cloſe to their own diviſions: and taking their places in the *Reere*, as in the former figures. The firſt *rank* of *muſquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled* away, the next *ranks* are to *move* forwards at three * *motions* into their places, and there to *give fire* after the ſame manner; *wheeling* away again, and placing themſelves according to for-

† *The three Motions are*, Blow your coal, Open your Pan, Preſent breſt-high. *You are to* blow your coal, *ſtepping forwards with your left foot.* Open your pan, *ſtepping forwards with your right foot.* Preſent, *ſtepping forwards with your left foot. Theſe Motiones are to be performed hand and foot together, by every one that advanceth ground to give fire, without expreſſing any directions in time of Skirmiſh.*

mer

mer *directions*, every *ranke* ſtill making good their *leaders ground*. In this ſort the *battell* may be continued, until they have fired once, twice, or oftner over: and that the *bodies* be come ſo cloſe together, that the *Pikes* begin to *port*, and ſo at length come to *puſh of pike*. Which done, the *Muſquettiers* are to *give fire*, either retreating, or elſe not to *advance* further than the *half-files* of *Pikes*. For in that place (the bodies being come ſo neer together) they will do as much *execution*, as if they were *even* with the *front*. The manner of the *ſtanding*, you may perceive by the following *Figure*.

The Pikes coming to the port and charge: the Muſquettiers either firing without advancing into their leaders ground, or even with the half files.



The *Pikes* being now *charged* & ready to come to the *puſh* the *Muſquettiers* are to advance no further than the *Half-files* of *Pikes*: that ſo they may do execution with their *ſhot* and be out of danger of the Pikes. This having attained, they are there to *preſent* and *give fire*; every rank ſtill *moving forwards*, and maintaining his leaders *ground* After they have performed their *firing*, they are to *wheel off* by *diviſion*, as in the former Figures: ſtill placing themſelves in the *reere* of their own *files*, alwayes taking their directions from the *Drum*, either for *charging* or *retreating*, &c.

The reducement. Note the ſeveral obſervations.

The *Batted* or charge being ended, the *Reducement* is eaſie. The *leader* of each *file*, being in his place at the *head* of his *file*, command the *Muſquettiers* to *martch* up, *even* with the *front* of *Pikes*, and then they will be as at firſt.

Obſerve withal, that when the *firing* is to be performed, *even* with the *Front*, then the *Muſquettiers* are ſtill to make good their *leaders ground*: the want to be in the place of moſt ſecurity, (which is the *Reer*) as you may perceive by the *pricks* which I have deſigned, for noting out the *empty rooms* of ſuch, who have *cloſed forwards* to make good the *ground* in the *Front*: the others that laſt *fired*, are *wheeled-off*, and *trooping* down into their places. When the firing is even with the half-files, they are to do the like, unleſs the *Drum beat a retreat*, for then the *Muſquettiers* neither *advance*, nor *retreat*: but every *Rank giving fire* on the ſame *ground* they *ſtand*: and then *wheel-off* again, that their fellowes may do as much. * Nevertheleſs when the *forlorne files martch forth*, or that two ranks *martch forth*, ten *paces* (or more) before the front: then they are to give *fire* as upon a *retreit*: unleſs the *enemy* give ground or flie. I will now ſhew ſome other wayes of *firing in front* (before I ſhew the *firings* in the *reere*) The firſt whereof, ſhall be the *horne-battel*: as in the Chapter following.

** Note concerning forlorne files, and two ranks before the front.*

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Horne-battel, how to make it, and to reduce it by firing.

THe *Horne-battel* may be for the ſame occaſion and uſe, as the *firing* by *two ranks*, *ten paces advancing before the Front*; and is by ſome held more ſerviceable; becauſe that the *Muſquettiers* do their *execution* more roundly, without any intermiſſion of time, and keep themſelves without ſtragling from their *Bodies*. Beſides, the *Wings* of *Muſquettiers*, being ſo advanced, are more apt for *over-fronting*, and more eaſily to be *wheeled*, whereby to charge the Enemy in *flank*: each of theſe *Wings* or *Diviſions* are to be led up by a *Serjeant* (or ſome other ſuperiour *Officer*) unto the *place* appointed by the *Chiefe*. But becauſe it may be performed in time of *exerciſe*, by the intelligible *Souldier*, obſerve the *Command* which produceth this following *Figure*.

Pikes ſtand, Muſquettiers martch, until the bringers-up rank with the Front of Pikes.

The Horn-battel.



The *Figure* being perfect, the *firſt-rank of Muſquettiers preſent, and give fire, wheeling-off* either all to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (according as they ſhall have direction) and placing themſelves orderly, in the *Reere* of their own *files*. The *next rank* (after the ſame manner) *firing* and *wheeling-off*, and placing themſelves behind thoſe which were their *leaders*. Thus is every *ranke*, ſucceſſively, to do the like, until they have all *given fire*. If the *Commander* would ſtill preſerve and continue the ſame *Figure*, then let the *Muſquettiers* ſtill *move forwards*, into the ground (or place) of them that *fired* before them; and the *forme* will be the ſame. But if by the *Chiefe* it be found neceſſary, that after once or twice *firing over*, the *Shot* ſhould *flank* their *Pikes*, then the *Muſquettiers* muſt not advance into their *leaders ground*, but to the contrary, every *rank* is to *preſent and fire* on the ſame *ground* they ſtand, and that ſo ſoon as they are *clear* of their *leaders*. Or, if need be, the *Pikes* may advance and *martch up*, to make their *Front intire*: which being done, the *File-leaders* of *Muſquettiers* being in *Front*, they are reduced.

The firing deſcribed.

Note.

The reducement.

CHAP. LXXVI.

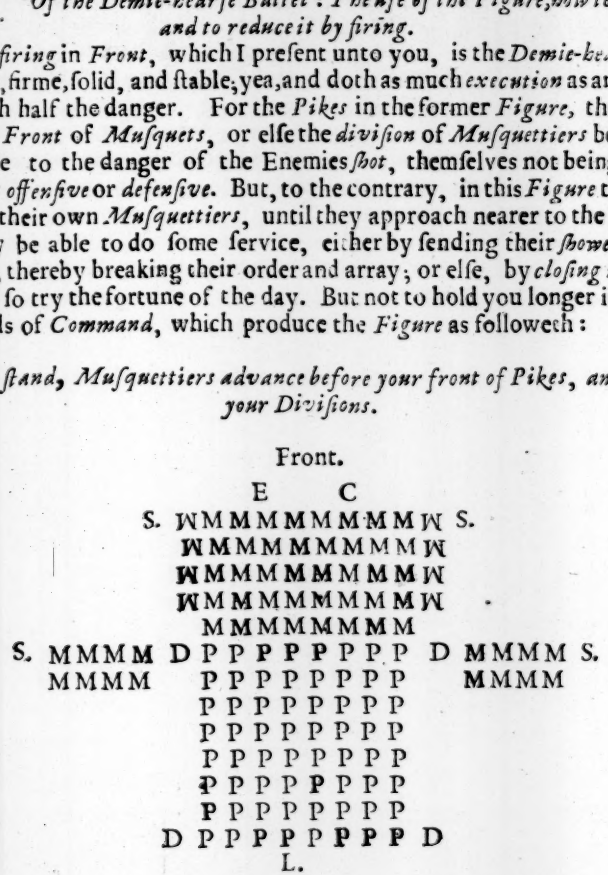
Of the Demie-hearse Battel: The use of the Figure, how to make it, and to reduce it by firing.

The next *firing* in *Front*, which I present unto you, is the *Demie-hearse*: which is a *Figure*, firme, solid, and stable; yea, and doth as much *execution* as any of the former, and that with half the danger. For the *Pikes* in the former *Figure*, they either *rank even* with the *Front* of *Musquets*, or else the *division* of *Musquettiers* being open, they become liable to the danger of the Enemies *shot*, themselves not being able to do any thing, either *offensive* or *defensive*. But, to the contrary, in this *Figure* they are securely covered by their own *Musquettiers*, until they approach nearer to the Enemy; whereby they may be able to do some service, either by sending their *showers* of *arrowes* amongst them, thereby breaking their order and array; or else, by *closing nearer*, come to the *shock*, and so try the fortune of the day. But not to hold you longer in *circumstance*, take the words of *Command*, which produce the *Figure* as followeth:

The danger of the Demie-hearse is fear of being over-fronted.

Pikes stand, Musquettiers advance before your front of Pikes, and close your Divisions.

Front.



The *firings* on this *Figure* may be divers; yet I shall content my self only to shew two of them: The * *first* is, that the *Musquettiers* may, at the discretion of the *Commander*, *give fire* in *Front*, and so *wheel-off* by *division* (or all to the *right*, as shall best please him that *commands* in *chief*) placing themselves in the *Reere* of their own *divisions* and *files* of *shot*, which is just before the *Front* of *Pikes*. The *next ranks* then *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, are to *present*, *fire*, *wheel-off*, and place themselves after the same manner; the rest of the *Musquettiers* doing the like, until they have all *given fire*: which *firing* doth nothing alter the *Form*, or *Figure* of *Battel*. Having *fired* once or twice over this way, the second *Firing* shall serve for *Reducement*; which is indeed the *Firing* intended to be expresst by this *Figure*. And that I may by *words* the more clearly explain the *Worke*, take these *directions* following.

† *The firing on this figure:*

The second firing on this figure serveth for the reducement.

The * *first-rank* having *given fire*, are to *wheele* equally *off* by *division*, each part falling *file-wise down*, close by their *flanks* of *Musquettiers*, until the *leaders* of the *ranks* of *musquets* come down as low as the *first-rank* of *Pikes*; which being performed, they are to

Note this direction.

face

face outwards, and to move so far-forth in a *straight line*, untill they have *ranked even* with the *first-ranke* of *Pikes*. But here-withall are they to observe, that they must leave an *intervall* between the *inner-most Musquet* of each *flank*, and the *outer-most File-leader* of the *Pikes*. So soon as the *first-rank* hath *given fire* and *wheeled-away*, the *second-rank* is to *give fire*, *wheeling-off* as before, and *passing down* between the *intervalls* on the *flanks*, placing themselves after their *leaders*. The same is every *rank* successively to do, untill all the *Musquettiers* are drawn from before the *Front*, and placed on the *flanks* of their *Pikes*. But when there are not above two *ranks* of *Musquettiers* to *give fire*, then the *Pikes* may *Port* and *Port*; and the *Musquettiers* have *fired*, and are *wheeled-away*, they may *Charge*. And lastly, the *Pikes* being *re-advanced*, the *Body* stands *reduced* as at first. *The Pikes Port and Charge.*

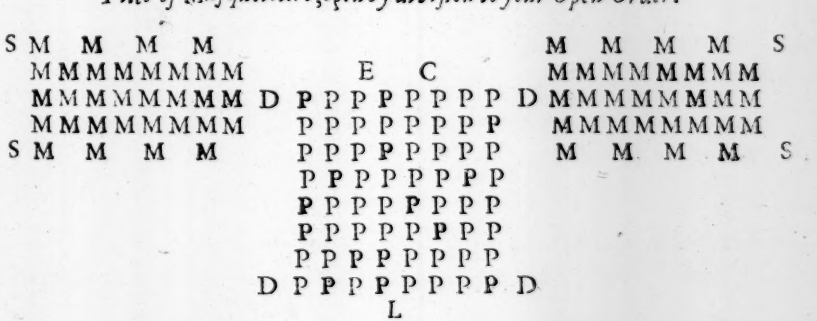
CHAP. LXXVII.

Of giving fire, advancing, by way of Introduction, with the beneficiall use of the Bow and Pike.

I Shall next offer to your perusall a *Figure* of *Introduction*; which is a *passing thorow* or *between*: being a *Firing*, *advancing* against the *Enemy*, and *gaining ground*, I will not dispute how usefull it is; but sure I am, it is over-ballanced with danger. As for such whom I have seen to *practise* it, they have rather used it for *variety*, in a wel-experienced *Company*, than for any known *excellency* it hath in it self. But if these *lines* happen to be over-lookt by any, that preserves a better opinion of this *Firing* by *Introduction* than I doe, I shall be willing to leave them to their own liking; while I in the mean time proceed to shew the manner of the *execution*, which is usually one of these two wayes. The first, when the *Motion is begun by the second-rank from the Front*. The other, when *it is begun by the Bringers-up*. Nevertheless you must note, that your *Files* of *Musquettiers* must be *opened* to their *Open-Order*, before the *Firing* begin, that so the *Musquettiers* may passe between the *intervalls* of each *File*, to *give fire* in the *Front*. And therefore take the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which will produce this *Figure* following. *Firing by Introduction ordinarily performed these two manner of wayes.*

Musquettiers, make ready to give fire by Introduction.

Files of Musquettiers, open by division to your Open-Order.



This *Firing* by *Introduction* may be thus performed: The *Pikes* being *flankt* with their *Musquettiers*, the *first-rank* of each *flank present* and *give fire*; having *fired*, they *stand* and *make ready* again in the same place; The *second rank* passing forwards before the *first*. *The direction for firing by Introduction.*

doe

doe there *fire* and *ſtand*: The *third-ranke* then paſſing forwards after the *ſecond*, and ſtanding *even in rank* with them that firſt *fired*, that ſo ſoon as the *ſecond-rank* hath *fired*, they may quickly ſtep before them, & *fire* in like manner. In this *Firing*, ſtill the *rank* which is next to *fire*, ſtands *even in rank* with them which laſt *fired*, untill thoſe which *ſtand prſented* have likewiſe *given fire*; after which, they then paſſe before them: the *rank* which was their next *followers*, paſſing forwards, and *ranking* with thoſe which laſt *fired*; every man following his *leader* ſucceſſively, untill the *Bringers-up give fire*, and *ſtand*; and then the *Figure* will become a *Horn-Battell*. All the while that this *Firing* by *Introduction* is continued, the *Pikes* may be * *ſhouldred* (if there be no fear of *Horſe*) or otherwiſe at diſcretion. If you continue this *Firing* twice over, the *Muſquettiers* will have their right *places*: which being done, *martch-up* your *Pikes*, to *rank even* with your *Muſquettiers* in *Front*, and they are *reduced*. For the[a] other way of *Firing* by *Introduction*, the firſt-*rank* (or *File leaders*) are to *give fire* as before, and to *ſtand*; the *laſt-rank* (or *bringers-up*) in the interim of their *Firing*, *martching-up*, and *ranking-even* with the *ſecond-rank*; the reſt following their *Bringers-up*, as they doe when *Bringers-up double* their *Front*. The *firſt-rank* having *fired*, the *Bringers-up* ſtep immediately before them, *preſent*, and *give fire*; the reſt ſtill ſucceſſively doing the like, untill every *rank* have *given fire* once over. Obſerve withall, that the *File-leaders* are to *give fire* twice over, being the firſt and the laſt; and then to *ſtand*, the *Pikes martching-up even* with their *Front* of *Muſquettiers*: And thus they are *reduced*, as at firſt. The *Pike-men* all the time of this *Firing* doe no ſervice: notwithſtanding, if one *halfe* of them had *Bowes* faſtened unto their *Pikes* (being able and wel-practiſed men) they might, whileſt the *Muſquettiers* are in *Firing*, be dealing of their doles about; and although their *arrowes* did not happen to wound mortally, yet the whiſtling noyſe, the terrour of the fight, and the ſeverall hurts (which could not chuſe but be many) would be a great abatement to the ſtouteſt courages: And great pity it is to ſee the luſty *Pike-man* poorly to drop down by the *Muſquet-ſhot*, himſelf not being able to hurt his Enemy at that diſtance, nor defend himſelf.

If there be no direction given, they are to paſſe thorow to the right.

† *The Pikes may be ſhouldred, and ſtill be moving ſlowly forwards, and ſo keep even with the Front of Muſquettiers.*

[a] *A ſecond way of firing by Introduction.*

The Reducement.

The uſe of the Bow & Pike.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

The way to make the Diamond-Battell: ſeverall wayes to Fire upon it: with divers other Figures and Firings, which are thereby produced.

THe *Diamond-Battell* is alſo a *Firing* in *Front*, though more for ſhew then *moderne ſervice*, yet becauſe that ſome hold it in venerable reſpect, I thought fit to place it amongſt the reſt; leaving every man to his liking, either to uſe it or refuſe it. It may be that ſome will look that I ſhould make the *Shear-Battell*, the *Wedge*, the *Saw*, and many ſuch like, which might be made either *hollow* or *ſolid*; but I ſhall intreat ſuch to ſpare me, for I would not willingly ſpend time to ſo ſmall purpoſe; chuſing rather to inſiſt on *Figures* more profitable for them, and commendable for me: Yet if any man have a mind to practiſe any of them, by obſervation of this *Diamond-Battell* hee may eaſily make them. But not to hold you longer with circumſtance, the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which are for the making of this *Diamond-Battell*, are as followeth:

Firſt, cauſe your Muſquettiers of the right-flank to open to the right, to a ſufficient diſtance, for receiving the Muſquets of the left-flank.

Then Command the Muſquettiers of the left-flank to paſſe thorow, into the ſpace of ground on the right.

Or you may cauſe your Pikes to ſtand, and Muſquettiers to move all into the Front, then joyn them before the Pikes; which is the better way. But whether your Muſquettiers be all in Front, or on the Flank.

The

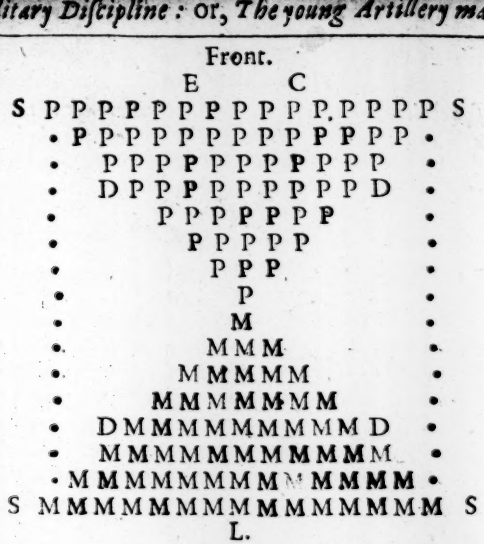
The Command is,

Files of Musquettiers, *rank* 1.3.5.7. *&* 9. *by increase to the left.*
Files of Pikes, rank after your Musquettiers, *accordingly by decrease,*



The *Musquettiers* may *Fire* on this Figure, divers wayes: though I onely intend to speak unto two of them. The first is the most usual way: and that is the *giving fire in rank*, the fore-most man (or *point* of the *Diamond*) first *giving fire*: then *wheeling-off* to the *right*, and placing himself just behind the *single Pikeman* in the *reer*. Then the *next rank* being three men, *give fire wheeling-off* by *division:* and placing themselves in rank, behind the *single Musquettier*, as they were before the *Firing* began. This done, the rank of five *Musquettiers give fire*; *wheeling-off*, in like manner, by *division*: ever observing, that where the *number* is *odde*, and they *commanded* to *wheel-off* by *division*, there the greatest *number* alwayes goeth to the right. And so in like manner, the *Ranks give fire* successively; and place themselves after their *leaders*, as before. When all the *Musquettiers* have *given fire*, and are *wheeling-off*, then *charge Pikes*, which will be fifteen in the *first rank*, the rest *decreasing*. Having advanced your *Pikes*, your Figure will stand like two *wedges*, with their points joyned, as you may perceive by this Figure next following.

The way to fire on the Diamond Battell.



Observe this way of reducement, by interchanging of ground.

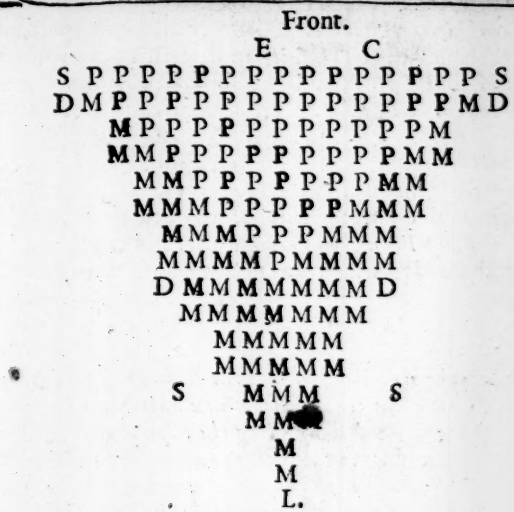
If you would reduce your men from this *figure*, without *firing*, (your men being sufficiently expert) let the *Musquettiers stand*, and *Pikes* face to the *Reer*, and so the *wedges* will stand faced in *opposition*; next, command them to *interchange ground*: the *Musquetiers* advancing forwards, into the *ground* of the *Pikes*, & the *Pikes* moving into the *ground* of the *Musquettiers*; then by facing the *Pikes* to the *former front*, the *body* will stand in form of a *Diamond* again.

If you would *reduce* this *Figure* again into the form of the Diamond, by firing your *Musquettiers*, (being now all in the *reer*) the *body* must *face-about*: and so the *firing* will be contrary to the former. But if you *wheel them about*, they may *give* fire the same way. Howsoever after they have *given* fire, they are to *wheel-off* by *division*, and to place themselves in the *reer* of the *Pikes*, even in rank again, as they were when at first they *gave* fire. Thus having all *fired over*, and *wheeled-away*, the *Pikes* may charge: and being again *advanced*, the *body* will stand in form of a *Diamond*: and this I pray you to conceive, for I intend not to re-make the Figure.

An oblique firing from the Diamond, the Musquettiers counter-marching & making a deep wedg The direction for this firing.

The second way of *firing* on the *Diamond figure*, is by way of *Counter-martch*: and is an *oblique* firing. For whereas in the other firing by *ranks* (in the *Diamond Battell*) each *ranke fired* by increase of two (*beginning* with one, and *ending* with fifteen in a *rank*) this *firing* contrariwise, *begins* with 15 & *ends* with 1. still decreating 2. For this *firing*, your *files* must be at *open-order*, because the *Musquettiers* must *counter-martch* down between the *intervalls* of their own *files* to the *right*: every *Musquettier* that finds himself without a *leader*, being to *present* and *give fire*, and then to *counter-martch* to the *right*, placing himself in the *reer* of his own *file*, behind the *Pikes*. When the first 15 have *fired*, then the next 13 *present*, *give fire*, and *counter martch*, still placing themselves in the *reer* of their own *files*. Next there *fireth* 11 then 9, &c. for still there *fires* so many, as are clear from any *leaders*. And in this manner of *firing*, they that *fire together*, stand neither in *rank* nor *file*, but *obliquely*. When all the *Musquettiers* have *fired*, and are *counter-martch* into the *reer* of their own *files*, let the *Pikes charge*: and then the *form* of your *Battell* will be like a *deep wedge*: as you may perceive by the following *Figure*, where your *Ranks* are become *two* and *two of a number*.

Front.



Your men ſtanding in this form of a *deep wedge*, if you pleaſe yet to be more [a] curious, *face* them all to the *Reer*, and command your *Muſquettiers* to *martch* 10. or 12. paces, your *Pikes* to ſtand; which done, your *Muſquettiers* will preſent you with an *hollow wedge*, and your *Pikes* with a *ſollid wedge*. Laſtly to [b] *reduce* all theſe ſeverall forms into the *firſt*, *proper*, *ſquare-Battell*; firſt, let the *ſollid cloſe forward*, into the *hollow* of the other: then let the *Muſquettiers make ready*, *preſent*, and *fire*, as before: that is to ſay, Every *Muſquettier* that finds himſelf without a *leader* is to *give fire*, and to *counter-martch* to the *Reere* of his own *File*, the reſt doing the like, ſucceſſively. When they have all *fired*, and are *counter-martcht* clear, let the *Pikes charge*, and then your *Body* will have the *form* of a *Diamond* again. Next, [c] *face* them all to the *Reere*, and command, *Ranks*, *file Armes*, and 8 *to the right*: which being done, paſſe thorow the *Muſquettiers* which belong to the *left-flanke*, into their places; and cloſe the *Muſquettiers* of the *right-flank* to their due *diſtance*: This done, they will ſtand all properly *reduced* into the *Square*, as at firſt.

[a] *Curioſity ſometimes not to be neglected. becauſe ſome men being therewith delighted. may thereby be gained to affect the practice of after ſome continuance thercin, may happly prove ſollid, and good Souldiers.* [b] *The reducemet.* [c] *This facing to the Reere, makes the Muſquettiers to be again in the Van.*

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the Convex half-Moon: The uſe of the Figure; and of ſeverall wayes of firing upon it.

THe *Convex half-Moon*, or *Semi-circular Battell*, is a *form* in it ſelf both good and uſefull; which the time, the number, and place (with other circumſtance) may make either beneficiall or prejudiciall: wiſe *Captains* and *Commanders* ever fore-ſeeing with providence, what *forms* or *Figures* may be moſt *profitable* and *available* for the preſent *ſervice*. * This *Convex Figure* may be uſefull, either at the *landing* of *Souliders* in an Enemies *Country*, or for neceſſity (the Enemy being more able in *Horſe*) making uſe either of *hedge*, *ditch*, *wood*, *creeke*, or *river*, to ſecure the *Reer*. For the *Figure* it ſelf it may be made many wayes; either with the *Muſquettiers* outer-moſt, or inner-moſt, or lined, &c. at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. It may alſo be made in a *Regimentall* way, or after the way of a ſmall and prive *Company*: But becauſe I have only in this my ſmall *Treatiſe*, taken upon me to ſhew the *Poſtures*, *Motions*, and *Figures*, which are moſt uſu-

* *The uſefulneſſe of this Figure.*

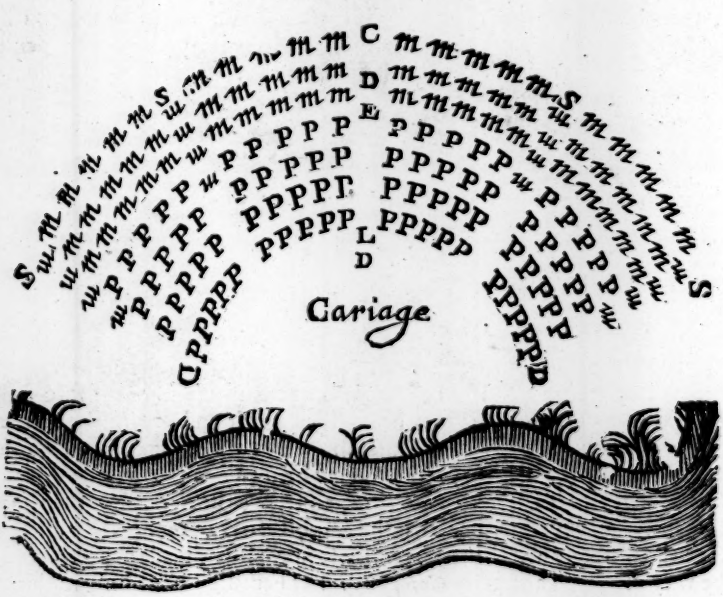
ally done in a ſmall *Company*, (although many of them, yea the more part, may be very fit for larger *Bodies*) I ſhall content my ſelf to *ſaile* in ſo ſmall a *Bottom*; not deſiring to put on more *ſaile*, than will ſuffice for the *bearing* of ſo ſmall a *burden*. Wherefore my requeſt ſhall be, that every *curteous & skilfull Pilot*, that ſhall *come-aboard* this ſmall *Bark*, will be pleaſed neiter to *launch* it into the *main*, leſt it be *ſwallowed* in the *ſurges*; nor to *expoſe* it to the danger of *ſhelves*, *rocks*, and *ſands* leſt it ſuffer *ſhip-wrack* for want of good *guidance*; but ſo to *ſteere* it, that it may ſafely *arrive* at its deſired *Harbour*: wherein they will both honour themſelves, in expreſſing their virtues; and gratifie me, by applying each *Motion*, *Figure* and *Form*, to his right uſe, and true intention. I will now ſhew how the *Figure* is to be made, which is as followeth: If your *Battell* be in *form* of an *Hearſe*, then *wheele* them to the *right* or *left-about*, untill they have attained this *Figure*. But if in a *Square*, then obſerve theſe following *words*; which will produce the *Figure*:

The direction to make this Figure.

Wheel your Flanks into the Front; then face the Body to one of the Flanks; and wheel your Battell into a Convex half-Moon.

If your *Body* be *large*, then, in ſtead of *wheeling the Flank into the Front*, cauſe your *Muſquettiers* to *move forwards*, and place themſelves *before their Pikes*: Then command 5. or 6. of the *out-moſt Files* on each *Flank* (both *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) *to wheele*; thoſe on the *left-flank to the left*, thoſe on the *right-flank to the right*; the reſt of the *Body*, in the mean time, *moving forwards* to a convenient *diſtance*, and 5. 6. or more of the *outer-moſt Files* to *ſtand*, and then to *wheele to each hand*, as afore-ſaid; the reſt doing the like ſucceſſively, untill you have *formed* your *Figure*.

The Convex half-Moon.



Having

Having brought your *Souldiers* into this [a] *Convex form*, you may face them all *inward* for *speech*, or *outward* for *fight*. Then let the *Officers* make *Intervalls* for the *Musquettiers*; and let the *outter-most Arch*, or first rank of each division, *present* & *give* fire, those of the *right-flank-wheeling-off* to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*; placing themselves in the *reer* of their own division of *Musquettiers*, still making good their *leaders* ground. The rest of the *ranks* are to do the same; untill they have all *given* fire. Never theleſſe, if your Enemy be too potent for you by reaſon of his *Horſe*, your [b] *Bow-Pikemen* need not ſtand idle, although they ſtand behind their *Muſquetiers*: for that they may ply them faſter with their ſhafts, then the others can with their ſhot; But if the [c] *Horſe* be ſo violent, that the *Muſquettiers* may not abide them, then let them *give* fire, and *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, as before; paſſing quite through their *Intervals*, and placing themſelves in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, every *rank* making good their *leaders* ground. Thus alſo are the reſt of the *Muſquettiers* to *give* fire, placing themſelves in the concave part of the body, as aforeſaid, following in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, which now make good the *Muſquettiers* ground. If [d] need be the *Pikes*, may charge over-hand, or if occaſion ſerves at the foot, drawing forth their ſwords over their left arms, and couching down their heads: by which means the *Muſquettiers* may *give* fire over their ſhouldiers. For the *firſt ranke* having *fired*, may kneel down on the ground, and charge again, the ſecond *rank* may *give* fire, and kneel in like manner, making ready again. And ſo for the reſt, all *giving* fire, & kneeling on the ground, that ſo the next *rank* behind may *give* fire over them. Thus continuing the *firing*, untill all the *Muſquettiers* have *given* fire once over. Nevertheleſſe, if the enemy ſhall ſtill continue his charge, and preſſe upon you, the *firſt rank* may riſe with the reſt, and *give* fire over again, as before. And ſo the battell may be continued; the *Pikes* ſtill keeping off the Horſe.

[a] The ſeveral waies to fight upon this convex figure.

[b] The bow and Pike very good and uſefull againſt the Horſe, in this figure of Buttel.

[c] A good way in time of neceſſity, to beat off the inſolence of the Horſe.

[d] Another way to give fire by extraduction, as in the next Chapter.

For the *reducement* of this figure, and to bring every man to his place, let your *Muſquettiers* (either *firing* or paſſing through) be brought into the *places* they were in, before they firſt *gave* fire, Then *face* the whole Body to one of the *flanks*, and martch them, untill they have evened their *ranks*, and ſtraitned their *files*. This done, if all your *Pikes* be on the *right-flank*, *wheele your right flank into the midſt*, if on the *left-flank*, *wheele front and reer into the left-flank*. This being done, let the *Commander* paſſe to his proper *file-leaders*, and *face* the whole Body to him, and they are reduced as at firſt. If you did not *whiel your flanks into the front*; But your Body being large enough, *you drew your Muſquettiers before your Pikes*: Then having ranged your Body even a-breſt: *Command your Muſquettiers to open to the right & left, untill they are cleer of the Pikes, then face to the firſt front, and martch up even a-breſt with the Pikes*, and they are *reduced* as at the firſt.

The reducement.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of Extraduction: the ſeveral uſes, Firings, and Reducement.

THe next *Firing* which I ſhall take upon me to demonſtrate, ſhall be by way of *Extraduction*: which is alſo a *firing* in *front*. It may be to ſingular good uſe in a *ſtraight*, or *paſſage* where your *Wings* and *Reer* may be ſecured, your Enemy being ſuppoſed too powerfull and potent for you. Alſo if the contrary ſide *abound in Horſe* or foot; I ſhould then adviſe to draw ſome of your *Muſquettiers* into the *Reer* of your *Pikemen*, who may *give* fire *under the ſhelter of their Pikes*, being either *ſorted* or *charged*: And indeed I ſhall give this *Firing* by *Extraduction* this teſtimony: That of all *firings* (defenſive or offenſive) (thoſe of the *Half-Pike* and *ſwines feather* excepted) it is the *beſt* and *ſafeſt againſt the Horſe* that yet I know of; each armes becomming the abſolute ſecurity of the other, and may be uſefull either in *ſmall* or *greater* Bodies. But this Chapter treats onely of a *party* or ſingle Company, and conceives it to be *chaſed* or *purſued* by *horſe*, but they having gotten into ſome *ſtraights*, there fill the mouth of the *paſſage* with your *Pikes*: and if the length

The uſe of this firing by Extraduction.

of your *Company* be not sufficient to do it, then double your *ranks* (as in this following Figure) and let your *Pikes* either *order*, *advance*, *port* or *charge*, according to the occasion: your *Musquettiers* being in the *reer*, may *martch up* into the *front* and *fire*. But before I shew the *Firing*, observe these following *directions*, which produce the *Figure*.

Pikes stand, *Musquettiers face to the reer, and martch, untill you are cleer of your body of Pikes.*

Then face inward, and close your division: that thing done, face to your Leader, and double your ranks.

This being performed, the *Pikes* are all in *front*, the *Musquettiers* in *Reer*.

A Firing by Extraduction.

Front.

The Musquettiers in this firing are to sleeve up file-wise to the front, and there give fire in rank, crosse the front of the Pikemen.

S M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M S
P P P P P P P C P P P P P P P M
P P P P P P P D P P P P P P P M
P P P P P P P E P P P P P P P M
D P P P P P P P D P P P P P P P M D
• • • • M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M M M M M M M
S M M M M M M M M M M M M M M S

L.

Reere.

The direction for this firing.

Having ordered your *Battell* in this manner, let the first *rank* of *Musquettiers* (which are those that follow next after the *Pikes*) *face* to the *right*, and *martch* forth (*file-wise*) up close by the *right-flank* of *Pikes*, until he that is the *leader* of them be come into the *front* of *Pikes*, then he is to lead them quite crosse the *front* of *Pikes*, untill he have attained the further part of the *front* to the *left*; which being done, they are all to *stand*, *present* & *give fire*. You must note withall, in this *firing*, that he which was the *right-hand-man*, of the *rank*, and was the *leader* of the *motion*, now becomes the *left-hand-man*, when he gives fire; and that having *fired*, they are to *wheel-off* to the *left*, close to the *left-flank* of *Pikes* and so to fall in the *reer* of the *Musquettiers*. In the *interim*, whilest that the *rank* which first fired is *wheeling-away*, the *second rank* is *martching* into their *places* to *give fire*. And in this manner they may maintain their *Battaile*, so long as they please: the *Pikes* either *porting* or *charging* all the whiles. The *Musquettiers* in the time of their *crossing the front*, are to couch or stoop under their *Pikes*; that so they may be no impediment to the *Pikes* in their *charge*. There is another way of *firing by Extraduction*, which is, that the *right-hand-leader* of *Musquettiers*, *placeth himself before the right file-leader* of *Pikes*: the rest all falling beyond him: nevertheless, because I conceive it not to be so good away as that already shewn, I will not trouble you with it: but come immediatly to the *reducement* of this, which is as followeth. Command your *Pikes* to stand, and your *Musquets* to *double* their *front* by *division*: but if you want room to do it, then first *double* your *files* to the *contrary hand* of that, which you *doubled* your *Ranks*; and so having *doubled* by *division*, as aforesaid, they will be *reduced*, as at first.

If the Pikes charge the Musquettiers must give fire kneeling on the ground.

Another way of placing the Musquettiers on this firing.

The reducement.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Broad or long-fronted-Battell, with the wayes of firing upon it.

THe *broad or long-fronted-Battell* must needs be of speciall use, for many occasions, either *offensive* or *defensive*. Which because it is so apparant to all, I shall not need to stand to reason with any; rather desiring to shew the manner of *making* and *reducing*

reducing it; which is as followeth: Cause your *Pikes* to *stand*, and your *Musquettiers* to *march*, untill the *Reer-rank* of the *Musquettiers* be *advanced* a little before the *first-rank* of *Pikes*; then let the *Musquettiers face inward*, (or in *opposition*) and *close their divisions*; and then *face to their Leader*. And if you would bring more *hands* to fight, *double ranks* to any *hand*, and the *Body* (for *form*) will stand like the *Figure* here next following. But the *speediest way* (and I think the best, I am sure with *expert Souldiers*) is to * *wheele* both *flanks* into the *Front*, which is the *way* intended by this *Figure*. For the manner of the *Firing* it self, you may partly perceive that there are *Intervalls* made for each *division*, to *wheel off* to the *right*, that so they may either fall in the *Reer* of the *Musquettiers*, and there continue the *Firing*; or else fall in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, and be thereby *secured* from the *Horse*. It may be done one or both wayes, according to the *occasion* or *discretion* of the *Commander*. Nevertheless, before I shew the *Firing*, observe these words of *Command*, which produce the *Figure*.

Direction to make the Broad-fronted Battel.

*Thiswheeling is intended but for a single Company; for if there be more Companies, thenthe way first shewn is farre the better.

Wheele your Flanks into the Front. *Face to your Leader.*

The broad-fronted-Battell.

Front.

S	M	M	M	M	S	M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M	S	M	M	M	M	S
	M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W
	D					D		E			C		D				D			
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P	

L

The *first-rank* having *presented*, and *given* fire, let them *wheel-off* to the *right*; all passing down the *Intervalls* to the *right*, and placing themselves in the Reer of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*: the next *Ranks* of *Musquettiers* making good their *leaders ground*, *firing*, *wheeling off*, and placing themselves as before. Having fired once or twice over this way, a second way may be to place themselves in the *Reer of their Pikes*, either *standing* or *advancing*: the *Pike-men*, in the men time, *clouding the cleare skie*, with their *airy Armory*. The *Musquettiers* having all *given* fire, and placed themselves in the *Reer*, if need be, the *Pikes* may *close* their *divisions*, and *charge over hand*: and if the Enemy shall still presse forwards, the *Pikes* may *charge at the foot*, the *Musquettiers giving* fire over them, or by *Extraduction*, as in the last Chapter.

The direction for the Firing.

A second way of placing the Musquettiers upon the Firing.

For *Reducement*, there are divers wayes by *Firing*; but because I would make every thing soplain & easie, that those that read for instruction, may perceive benefit, it hath caused me to *reduce* each *Figure* by it self, and not to multiply one upon another, whereby to make them too ambiguous: And therefore, if you make this *Figure* by *wheeling your Flanks into the Front*, and then *fire*, as afore-said, the *Reducement* may be, either to *fire them over again, and so to fall into their former places; and then to *wheel your Flanks into the Front again*: and lastly, *face about to the right*, and they will be as before. Or else if you would *reduce* them without *giving* fire over again, then command your *Musquettiers*,

Thereducements.

*Note that the second Firing will cause the Body to face the Reer, which becomes a Front-accidentall, and is the cause that the same command doth the Figure which first made it.

tiers to *double your Front by division*; that done, *wheel both Flanks into the Reer*, then *face to your Leader*, and command your *Musquettiers* to *double your front by division again*, and they are as at first. If I should proceed to shew the many and sundry wayes of *Firings*, which may be done in *Front*, my Book had need to have as many *leaves* as *lines*, and yet all too little. But that I may keep my self to my *promise*, and my Book to its *compasse*, I will next come to shew some *Firings in the Reer*; and amongst my *Divisional Firings* I shall insert some other sorts of *Front-Firings*, which here I have omitted.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of Dis-martching, or Firing in the Reer: *the severall wayes, and how they ought to be performed.*

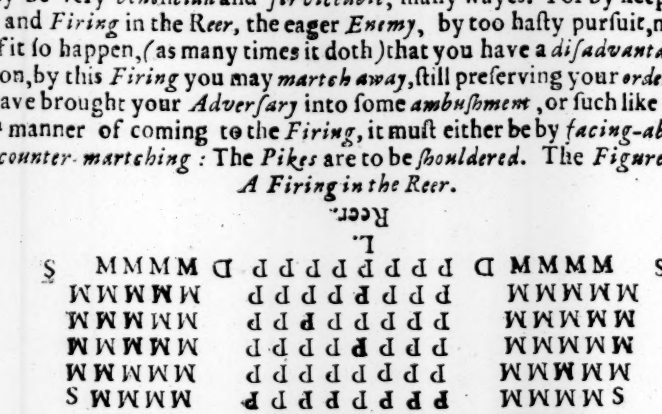
** The benefit and use of firing in the Reer.*

HAving so long maintained *Battell* in the *Front*, I will now *face* them *about*, and see how they will behave themselves upon their *Firings* in the *Reer*. Which kind of **Firings* may be very *beneficiall* and *serviceable*, many wayes. For by keeping an orderly *Martch*, and *Firing* in the Reer, the eager *Enemy*, by too hasty pursuit, may be disordered. Or, if it so happen, (as many times it doth) that you have a *disadvantageous* place to *imbattell* on, by this *Firing* you may *martch away*, still preserving your *order* and *aray*, until you have brought your *Adversary* into some *ambushment*, or such like *inconvenience*.

** Wayes to come to firing in the Reer.*

For the [a] manner of coming to the *Firing*, it must either be by *facing-about*, *wheeling-about*, or *counter-martching*: The *Pikes* are to be *shouldered*. The *Figure* followeth:

A Firing in the Reer.



The direction for this firing in the Reer.

The *Body* being upon a *martch*, if the *Enemy* appear in the *Reer*, let the *last-rank* of *Musquettiers face about*, and *give fire*; then *wheel-off* by *division*, *file-wise*, *martching-up* toward the *Front*, and there placing themselves before the *fore-most* Rank of *Musquettiers*, (the *two out-most men* of each Rank being the *leaders-up* of those which have *fired* (who are the first that take their places on the *out-side*, the rest *wheeling-about* them, and *ranking-even* with them on the *inside*; ever observing, that they *range-even* with the *second-rank* of *Pikes*. The rest of the *Musquettiers* also doing the like: and in this manner to continue the *Firing*, as occasion shall require. Nevertheless, of all the *Figures* and *Firings* that ever I have seen, this hath been the *worst* performed in all places: which might easily be amended, if the *Souldiers* would observe this following direction; namely, when the *last-rank* of Musquettiers have *presented* to the Reere, and are *giving of fire*, the *Rank* which *martched* next before them, do then * *blow*, *open*, and *present*, at three *motions*; still keeping along *even with the Body*, untill that last they *present* to the *Reer*; by which time, the Rank that *last* fired will be *wheeled-away*. The next *Rank*, so soon as the other

Never upon all firing in the Reer, to blow your coale, stepping forwards with your right foot.

open your pan stepping forwards with your left foot; (a little inclining to that hand to which you are to see about.) Present to the Reer stepping forwards with your right foot.

hath *presented*, is likewise at *three motions* to do the same: and so successively, for all the rest; every *ranke* observing, upon each *ranks firing*, to *lose* one; and to *martch* one *ranke* neerer to the *reere* of the *battell*, that so that part may still be kept firme and absolute.

This *giving* of *fire* towards the *reere* for *service*, is to be continued according to the quality of the *place*, the *occasion* for fight, and the discretion of the *Commander*. In *exercise* we commonly do it but once over; & then (if you please) you may make *Alt*, and *face* your *body about*, *giving fire* over again: & charging your *Pikes* upon it, if need so require, or at discretion of the *Commander*. Notwithstanding, if the *Horse* still pursue you in the *reer*, you having gained some *strait*, or *place* of *advantage*, may * *wheel* your *flanks* in the *front*, then *face* to the *reer*, and with your *charged Pikes* defend your *Musquettiers*: which (the *body* being so *wheeled*) will be in the *reer*. The *body* standing in this *form*, the *Musquettiers* may *sleeve-up* by way of *Extraduction*. The *manner*, you may perceive in the *Chapter which treats of that *figure*. If the *Horse* still press forwards, cause the *Pikes* to *charge* at the *foot*; the *Musquettiers giving fire over them*, as in the *Convex half-moon*. Lastly, to *reduce* them, having thus *fired*, *command* them to *wheel their flanks into the front*, and to *face-about*, after their proper *file-leaders*, and they are *reduced*. * Sometimes, we *give fire* in the *reer* having all our *Musquettiers martching* in the *reer* of the *Pikes*. For the *manner* of the *motion* it is as before: but for placing of the men, after they have *fired*, it may be different. As, to *wheele-off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *front* of the *Musquettiers*, next behind the *reer* of the *Pikes*. Or if the *body* be large, to *wheele all off to the right*, *through intervalls*, and so to *martch into the front of Pikes*. Or else they may *wheel of by division*, and *flank their Pikes*, and so *fire over again*, as before. If you have brought your *Musquettiers* (by *firing* to the *Reer*) before the *front* of *Pikes*, then to *reduce* them, you may either *wheel* the *body* about, and *give fire* in *front*, causing your *Musquettiers* to *fall off by division*, and so *flank* their *Pikes*, as you may perceive by the figure of the *Demy-hearse*. Or else, if you will *reduce* them without a *firing*, cause your *Musquettiers* to *open to the right* and *left*, and the *Pikes* to *martch up in the midst*: after which *facing* all to your *first-front*, they are as at first. I might have shewn a Figure for each of these several *firings* in the *Reer*, which would have delivered them with more variety: but I conceive that this here already expresst, may suffice: especially this being the ground of what may be spoken. Concerning *firings* in this nature, many men are of many minds, about this *firing* in the *Reer*. Some will have it, that the *last rank*, shall at one *motion*, *face* to the *reer*: and there *present*, and *give fire*. Others will have it at two *motions*, but either of them have their inconveniences. For however they pretend *sudden execution*, they are deceived: for would they make triall, by causing the *Musquettiers* of one of the *flanks* to *give fire* at one *motion*; and the *Musquettiers* of the other *flank*, at *three motions*, (as I have here set down) they should soon find that the *firing* upon *three motions* were the best: & that the other would be cast so far behind their *Body*, that they would be in some danger to be cut off. Besides this, they are longer in *clearing* themselves from their own men, which all the while must stay, untill they are *martched-off*: or else kill them, instead of the enemy, whereas in this other *firing* upon *three motions*, they still *keep along* with their *body*, doing their *execution* more suddenly and more safely. Nevertheless there be many so much wedded to their own wilfull opinions, that they will more willingly persist in a known errour, then be seen to alter what they have seemed to maintaine. But leaving such to steer by their own compass, I will here conclude my *firing* in the *reer*. And the next I shew, shall be *firings* in *flanks*: to which purpose, I pass all my *Musquettiers* to the *right-flank*. The words of direction for it are these.

Musquettiers of the right flank, open to the right (or face to the right, and martch.)
When they have opened to a sufficient distance, then stand.

* *Wheeling of the flanks into the front or reere, is most useful for small bodies.*

* *Chap: 80.*

* *Chap: 79.*

The reducement.

* *A second order of firing in the Reere.*

A reducement for this way of firing in the Reere.

* *Incap 76:*

Many differing opinions concerning firings in the reer:

Firing at three motions to the reere the best.

There is no error, which hath not some slippery and badfounda-tion, or some appearance of probability, resembling truth.

Musquettiers of the left-flanke, passe thorow between your ranks of Pikes, to the Intervall on the right-flanke: Then stand, and face all to your Leader.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Firings in flank in generall, and more particularly, of the gathering firing.

THe *Musquetteiers* being all on the *right-flank*, (as in the last Chapter is directed) it would be needless to make a Figure, whereby to demonstrate the standing of the Body, seeing that none can be so ignorant, but must needs know that all the *Musquettiers* being upon the *right*, the *Pikes* must be upon the *left*. Nevertheles, I shall endeavour to shew what is meant by *firing in flanks*. (Which for the generall) are of these two kinds. The first is, when the *enemy skirmisheth with us in flank as we martch*, the other when as by some sudden attempt or ambushment, the *party*, *division*, or *whole Body* is ingaged, and so forced to *stand*, and *face* to the *right*, or *left*, or both: By which *facing*, the *flanks* become *fronts accidentall*, and their *firings* will be after the same manner of the *firings in front*. Wherfore seeing I have already spoken sufficiently of them, I will now shew *firings in flanks*, *martching*; the particulars whereof are as followeth.* The first is for the *outmost file* to *give fire*, and stand, untill the next *file* have *fired*, which by some is called, the *gathering* firing. Secondly, *Firings* in *flanke*, and leading them up between the *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*. *Firing* in *flanke*, being led off by the *bringers-up*. *Firings* in *flanke*, sleeving up on the contrary *flanke* of *Pikes*. *Firing* in *flanke*, and drawing them up between the *innermost files* of *Pikes*.* All these *firings in flank*, are to be performed upon a *martch*, the *Pikes* are to be *shouldred*. Our first *firing in flanke* followeth.

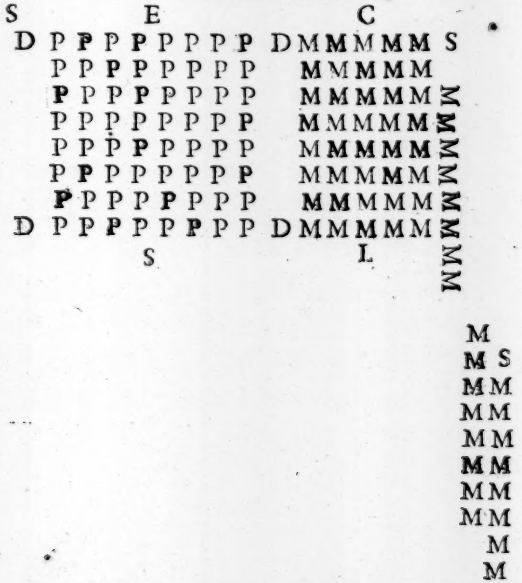
What is meant by firing in flanke.

*The divers & severall wayes of firings in flank martching.

*Upon all these firings in flanke martching, the Pikes are to bee shouldred.

The Command is, *Musquettiers, give fire to the right: and gather up your Files.*

Front of the Martch.



This *firing* on the *flank*, I have seen, and known used, by many good and able Souldiers. Nevertheles, in my opinion, the men stand in a great deale of danger, when having *given fire*,

fire; they can do no good, but ſtand like ſo many marks for their *Enemies* ſhot. Notwithſtanding, it may be, that ſuch, whom I have frequently ſeen to uſe it in their practice, may be able to render good reaſons for the ſervice; though as yet I cannot conceive it. I will therefore forbear any further to proſecute my opinions, and ſhew the manner of execution; which is to be performed as followeth: The *Command* being given to *Fire to the right marching*, preſently the *outer-moſt-file* to the *right faceth outward*, and *preſents*, the reſt of the *body* ſtill *marching* forwards: Then the *preſented File gives fire*, and ſtands, *facing fixing* again to their *firſt-front*: by that time, the *Body* will be *marched* clear of the ſtanding *file*, then the next *outer-moſt file*, *Preſents* and *fires* in like manner, the *Body marching* as before: Having *fired*, they in like manner *face* to their *firſt-front*, and ſtand; a *Serjeant* leading-up the *File* that firſt *fired*, on the *out-ſide* of the *File* that laſt *fired*: then they ſtand both together, until the third *File* hath *given fire* after the ſame manner; & then the *Serjeant* leads-up the two *Files even* with the third, which laſt *fired*. After this manner the ſeveral *Files* of *Muſquettiers face* to the *flank*, *give fire* ſucceſſively, and ſtand, until the *Serjeant* leads-up the reſt of the *Files*, which formerly *fired*, *even* with the *Front* of the *File* which laſt *fired*. Thus having all *fired* over, they are to *march-up* again, *even* with the *Front* of *Pikes*, and this *reduceth* them, as at firſt.

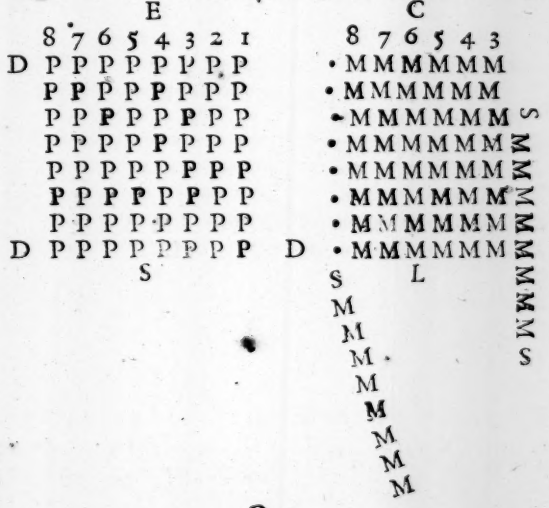
The direction for this.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

The ſecond manner of giving fire to the flank.

IF you would *fire* in *flank*, a more ſecure way than that laſt ſhewn, take this way of *Firing*; the which ſhall be full as *ſerviceable* for matter of *execution*, and ſhall farre precede it in way of *preſervation*, both in *ſecuring the Muſquettiers* (after they have *fired*) from the danger of their *Enemies ſhot*, as alſo in continuing the *Body intire* without ſeparation. It is eſpecially uſeful, when two *Enemies* are *divided by a River*, or by ſome ſuch like means ſecured from the *incurſions* of the *Horſe*: For then, by this way of *drawing* the *Muſquettiers* up between the *inner-moſt-file* of *Muſquettiers*, and the *outer-moſt file* of *pikes* to the *right*, your *Battel* may be continued according to the occaſion, or the *Commanders* diſcretion. The *Figure* followeth: The *Command* is,

Muſquettiers, give fire in Flank, marching-up between the Pikes and Muſquets.


E
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
D P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
D P P P P P P P P
S
C
8 7 6 5 4 3
• M M M M M M
• M M M M M M
• M M M M M M S
• M M M M M M
• M M M M M M
• M M M M M M
• M M M M M M
D • M M M M M M
S L
M
M
M

The direction for this firing.

The way to perform this *Motion* of *Firing*, is as followeth: The *outer-most file* being commanded to *face to the right*, and *present*, the rest of the *Body martcheth* away, as in the other *figure*, and the standing *file gives fire*. This done, and that the *Body* is *martched* clear of the standing *file*, the next *file presents* to the *right*, and the *file* that first *gave fire faceth* to the *first-front*, and is led by a *Serjeant cross the rear of the Musquettiers*, and up between the *Musquets* and *Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* are still to *open* to the *right*, as they *martch*, that so there may be *roome* for one *file* to *martch-up* between them and the *Pikes*. And so (successively) each *File* having *fired*, *martcheth-up* next unto the *right-flank* of *Pikes*. When all your *Musquettiers* have *given fire* once over, they are *reduced* as at the first. The *Battel* may be continued, at discretion. The next *Firing* in *Flank* (for the manner of *execution*) will be all one with this; the difference will be in the *wheeling-off*, and *placing* the *Musquettiers* after they have *fired*.

The firing being performed once over, they are reduced as at first.

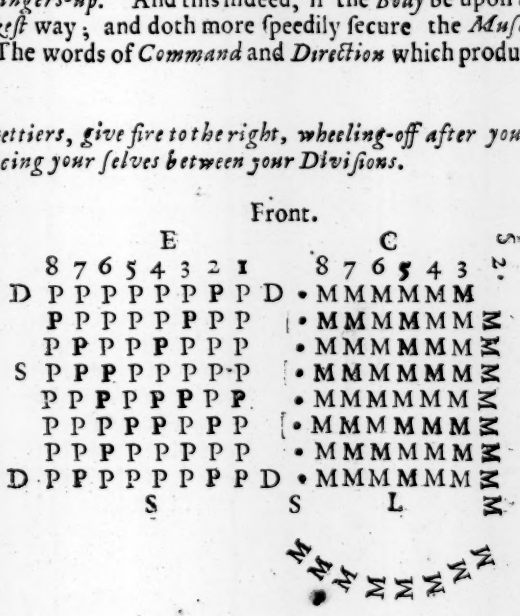
CHAP. LXXXV.

A Firing in Flank, led-off by the Bringers-up.

THe next *Firing* in *Flank*, which I propound to your perusal, will be nothing differing for *manner* of *execution*, from the *Firings* in *flank* formerly shewed: The only *difference* arising between them, is, That the *other files* of *Musquettiers*, after that they had *given fire*, were *led-off* by their *proper file-leaders*; and this, to the contrary, must be *led-off* by their *Bringers-up*. And this indeed, if the *Body* be upon a *slow martch*, is the *readiest* and *quickest* way; and doth more speedily secure the *Musquettiers*, after they have *given fire*. The words of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *Firing*, are as followeth.

The use of this firing in flank

Musquettiers, give fire to the right, wheeling-off after your Bringers-up, and placing your selves between your Divisions.



The direction for the Firing.

For the manner of *execution*, or way to perform this *Firing*, it is as followeth: The *Body* must be conceived to be *martching*, upon all these *Firings* in *Flank*, and that with their *Pikes shouldred*: This being presupposed, the *Command* being given, the *outer-most file*

file presents to the right, and *gives fire*; then *faceth to the right*, after their *Bringers-up*, who leadeath them off, crosse the *Reer* of *Musquettiers*, *martching them up* between the *division* of *Pikes* and *Musquettiers*, the *Bringers-up* supplying the *File-leaders* place, and *martching even* in *Rank* in the *Front* with the *File-leaders*; the *File-leader* of the same *file* becoming the *Bringer-up* in the *Reer*. The *files* of *Musquettiers*, or *Pikes* (according as the *Command* shall be given) are, as they *martch*, to *open*; thereby giving way to the *Musquettiers*, after they have *fired*, to *come-up* between the *divisions*; and so soon as the *first file* that *fired* is clear from the *right-flank*, the *second file presents*, and *fires*; in like manner *wheeling-off*, as before, and *martching-up* between the *Pikes* and *Musquettiers*; every *file* successively *giving fire*, and *wheeling-off* as aforesaid. This *Firing* may be performed *once*, *twice*, or *oftner over*, according to the discretion of the *Commander*. Nevertheless, if it be *twice* performed, the men are *reduced* as at first; every man having his right *place*. If you *fire* them but *once*, or *thrice*, (or any odd number of *times*) over, then you must *counter-martch* your *Files* of *Musquettiers* to *reduce* them. There is another way for the *Bringers-up* to *wheel-off*, and each of them to *lead-off* his *File*, until he comes to the *Reer* of the *division* which is between the *Musquets* and the *Pikes*; and there he is to *stand*, and *rank* with the *Bringers up*; the rest that follow, *passing-on forwards*, by way of *Introduction*, and every man *ranking* before him that was his *leader* in the *wheeling-off*, until the *proper-file-leader* be come into his *place* again. And after this *way*, they may *give fire*; each *Firing* being his own *Reducement*.

The first firing is reduced by doing the same over again.

Another way of placing the Musquettiers, when they are led off by the Bingers-up

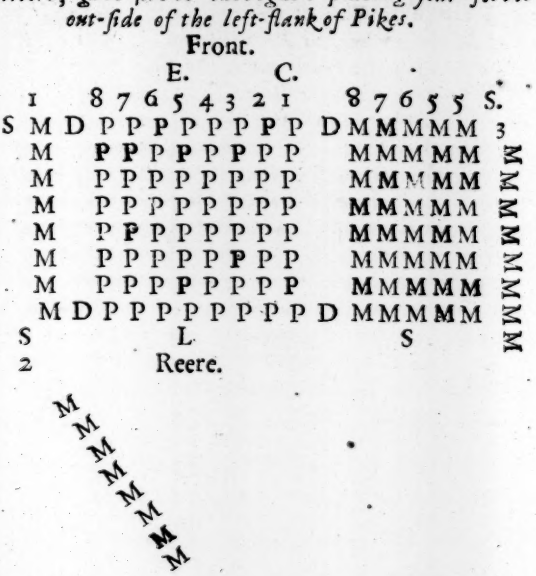
CHAP. LXXXVI.

The differences between Firings in Flank, martching; and of bringing the Musquettiers on the out-side of the Pikes

ALl, or the most part of the *Firings* in *Flank*, which are performed *martching*, in point of *execution*, are the same: the especial difference between them, being either in the *manner* of the *wheeling-off* after they have *fired*, or in the *material placing* them, whereby to make them more *offensive* or *defensive*. And this appeareth by the next following *Firing*; which is to be used at such time and place when as there may be doubt of the *Enemies Horse*. And therefore, for the more security of the *Musquettiers*, after they have *fired*, they are to be *drawn-up* on the *outer-side* of the *left-flank*; if * haply there may be some *hedge*, *ditch*, *river*, *hill*, *marsh*, *wood*, or such like convenient *safe-guard*, whereby to shroud them from the *fury* and *violence* of the *Horse*; that so the *Pikes* making *Alt*, and *facing* to the *Enemy*, may *charge*, and with their *armed points* (strongly and closely coucht) *receive* and *abate* the *fury* of the first *shock*. And, if need be, the *Pikes* may all *charge* at the *foot*, closely *serried* together, with their *swords* drawn, and the *Musquettiers* may *give fire* over them. But lest I *anticipate* my self in shewing the *use*, I will return to shew the *manner* of the *Firing*, intended by this following *Figure*: Only first take the *words* of *Command* and *Direction*, which are as followeth;

* *Situation often affords good help in time of need to the artful and industrious Souldiers. Or else a better way is to give fire by extraduction; as in* Chap. 80.

Muſquettiers, give fire to the right: placing your ſelves on the out-ſide of the left-flank of Pikes.



The direction for this firing

The *outmoſt files* having *preſented* to the *right*; the reſt of the *body* continueth the *march*, whileſt they in the mean time are *giving fire*. Which being done, and the *body clear*, the next *outermoſt file preſents*: the *file* that *laſt fired*, in the interim, *facing to the left after their proper file-leaders*; who *leadeth* them croſs the *Reer* (both of *Muſquets* and *Pikes* a pretty round pace, *ſleeving-up* on the out-ſide of the *left-flank* of *Pikes*. The next *file* having in like manner *fired*, doth alſo *troop-up* on the out-ſide of the *file*, led off before; every *file giving fire*, and doing the like. When all have *given fire*, & are *cleared away*, then the *Pikes* may charge; which is very neceſſary to accuſtome the *Souldiers* unto in time of *exerciſe*, both for *charging on*, & *retreiting*, as alſo to puſh with their *Pikes*, that ſo by practiſe they may be able to do it *orderly*, either way; ſtill keeping their *order* & *array*. Having *given fire* upon the *right-flank*, and drawn all your *Muſquettiers* in this manner to the *left-flank*, if you will cauſe them to *give fire* on the *left-flank*, and bring them back again to the *right-flank*, they will be *reduced*. Or if you would reduce them without a *firing*, then either paſs your *Muſquettiers* thorow between your *ranks* of *Pikes*, or elſe let your whole *diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* be drawn croſs, either the *front* or *reere* of *Pikes*, into their places: or by *diviſion* (if you pleaſe.) Your *Muſquettiers* alſo may *give fire* in *flank*, the *firſt file ſleeving up* on the *left-flank*; the reſt of the *files*, ſtill falling between the *Pikes* and the *Muſquettiers* which *wheeled-off* the laſt before them. And this is alſo a very good *firing*, and may be *reduced* with doing the like back again, and many other waies: they may alſo *fall-off* after the manner of the *Figure* laſt ſhewn: being *led* by their *bringers-up*, either into the *front*, or elſe after the manner as is diſcovered in the latter end of the laſt Chapter. But I endeavour all I may, to contract my matter, leſt my *Volume* ſhould exceed my intent. And therefore I ſhew but one *firing* more in *flank* upon a *march*, wherewith I will conclude theſe ſorts of *Firings*.

It is good to accuſtome the Pikes to charge.

They may be reduced by interchanging of flanks.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of Firing in flanke, and placing the Musquettiers in the midst of the Battell of Pikes: with other Firings from thence proceeding.

Firing in *flanke*, and bringing them *off* between the midst of *Pikes*, is to be used at such time, when as you would secure your *Musquettiers*. the place (otherwise) affording no *naturall convenience* of succour, such as I have formerly spoken of; and therefore by this manner of *falling-off*, where we want *naturall assistance* in the *scituation*, there *art* ought to supply us; namely, by contriving to bring up the *Musquettiers* between the *Pikes*, and so to defend them from the fury of the *Horse*. And, if need be, you may *draw* 3. or 4. *Files* of *Pikes* (more or less, according to your *number*, or the *danger*) *crosse* the *Musquets* both in *front* and *reere*, which are in the midst between the *Pikes*, which will as well preserve the *Musquettiers* in *front* and *reere*, as in *flanks*. But leaving further to discourse, what may be done; I will now shew how this is to be done. Only first take the *words* of *Command* and *direction* for the *firing*, as followeth. *The use of this firing*

Musquettiers, give fire to the right: martching up between the midst of Pikes.



The *Command* being given, for the *outer-most file* to *present* to the *right*, as (formerly in the other *firings* in *flank*) the rest of the *body* still *martcheth* on, untill that the *outer-most file* hath *fired*, and is *faced* to the *left* again, following their *leader*. He now leading them *off* to the *left*, *martcheth-up*, between the *middle-most files* of *Pikes*; who are then to *open* to the *right*, and *left*, so to give them roome to *martch-up* between them: In the mean time, the *next file* having *given fire*, *wheeleth-off* in like manner, *martching up* on the *left* of the *file*, which *fired* last before them. And so successively, for all the rest of the *files* of *Musquettiers*, all which are to *give fire*, and to *wheel-off*, as aforesaid, placing themselves still on the *left* of the *files* which *last fired*. Wherein is still to be noted, that the *files* of *Pikemen* are still to open to the *right* and *left*, and that for the receiving of the *Musquettiers*, after that they have *given fire*. This *Firing* (as all other the *Firings* in the *flanke*) may as well be led *off* by their *bringers-up*, as by the *file-leaders*: and then the *reducements* will be answerable. The *Musquettiers* having all *fired*, the *Pikes*, may *charge* at discretion. The *Bow-Pikemen*, which are in the *reer* of the *Musquettiers*, in the meane time not sparing to send their *showers* of *Arrowes* amongst the thickest of their *Enemies*, and if need require, the *front* of *Pikes charging* at the *foot*, with their swords drawn; The *Musquettiers* may *give fire over them*, *ranke* after *ranke*; for the *foremost ranks* having *fired*, may kneele upon the ground; and there *make ready* again: untill the other *ranks* behind

The direction for this firing.

Whilest the first division of Pikes charge, the reer, division of Pikes (having bowes) may doe good service against the horse.

hind them have likewise *given fire*. After this manner the *Battell* may be continued according as occasion shall require. For *reducement*, and to bring the *Musquettiers* into both *Flanks* again, as they were before I began these *Firings* in *Flanke*; Command your *Pikes* to *face inward*, and your *Musquettiers* to the *right* and *left out-ward*, and so to passe thorow, and *interchange ground*; then *facing* them to their *Leader*, they will be *reduced* as at the first. I would have the ingenious *Reader* to conceive, that all these *Firings* in *Flank* may as easily be performed to the *left*, and with the same *words*: only, the *words* of *Right*, must be changed for *Left*; and *Left* for *Right*. I might have further inlarged my self upon *Firings in Flanke*, but these already expressed, may suffice for to instruct the ignorant. As for the skillfull and experter sort of *Souldiers*, I shall rather request their approbation, then presume to write ought which may seem to pass me with the least conceit tending to their instructions. Wherefore, for the further prosecution of my intended discourse, I will next shew some *Divisionall Firings*. And (for *method* sake) I will first begin with *Firings in front and reere*: which may be performed either *martching* or *standing*. And to that end, suppose your *Musquettiers* to *martch* all in *Front* and *Reere*. Nevertheless, because it will not be amisse to shew with what *words* of *Command* and *Direction* the *Musquettiers* may be brought thither, therefore take notice from what part of the *Body* they are taken: And if they be in the *midst*, (as by this last *Firing* in *Flanke* they were brought) then *command* the *half-files* of the *Musquettiers to face about*; which done, let the *Pikes stand*, and the *Musquettiers martch*, untill they are *cleare* both of *Front* and *Reere* of *Pikes*; then let them *stand*, and *face* to their *Leader*: which being done, your *Battell* will stand in *form* of an *hollow square*: In which *hollow*, may be conveyed any *carriage*, or such like. But if you will not have your *Battell hollow*, then *command* your *Pikes* to *close* their *divisions*, and the *Musquettiers* will be all in *Front* and *Reer*. If your *Musquettiers* be on the *Flanks*, and you would bring them into the *Front* and *Reer*; then, after the same manner, let the *half-files* of *Musquettiers face* to the *Reere*; and then, both *half-files* of the *Front* and *Reere*, *martch*, untill they are clear of the *Angular Pike-men*: This done, let them *face* in * *opposition*, and *close* their *divisions*; after which, having *faced* all to their *leader*, they will be rightly placed: namely, the *front-half-files* of *Musquettiers* before the *Front* of *Pikes*. Thus will the *Battell* be somewhat near the *form* of an *Hearse*, and the *Musquettiers* be ready to *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, either *martching* or *standing*. But before I begin my *Divisionall Firings*, I would inreat you not to expect, that I should *reduce* every particular *Firing* so soon as it is performed, as I have done by these hitherto shewed; but rather let it be suitable to your liking, that I *reduce Firings* by *Firings*; sometimes *giving fire* upon a *Martch*, sometimes upon a *stand*, sometimes to the *Front* and *Reere*, sometimes to both *Flanks*. I doe the rather desire to goe in this way, because thereby I may expresse far more matter in fewer lines, and shorter time.

The reducement.

The direction how to bring the Musquettiers to the Front and Reere; either from the midst or flanks.

* *That is, the Front, half-files of Musquets face inward, & the reer-half-files of Musquettiers face inward; then close together, before the Front and behind the Reere of Pikes. Your Figure takes the denomination of a Hearse, when the depth doth manifoldly exceed the length, which must be thrice at least.*

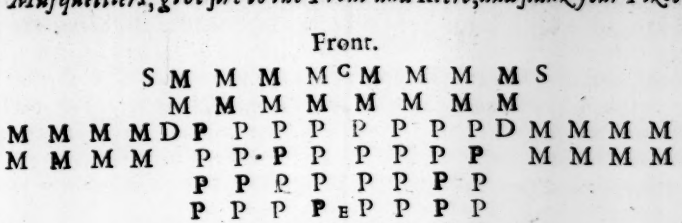
CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of Firing to the Front and Reere, upon a Martch.

THe *Musquettiers* being all placed in the *Front* and *Reer* (according to the directions in the last Chapter) I will now shew the manner of *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere*, upon a *Martch*. Which howsoever that it may be rare, and seldome usefull in service, yet it must needs be excellent for *practice*: For by the often using it, the *Souldiers* may be made capable of any *Firing*. The *Pikes* (you are to understand) are to be *shouldred*. The Command for the *Firing* is,

Musquettiers, give fire to the Front and Reere, and flank your Pikes.

Front.



Reere.

The *Command* being given (as above-said) the *first-rank presents*, the *last-rank faceth-about to the Reere*, and doth the like; and so both *giving fire* together, *wheel-off by division*; the one *half* of the *Rank* following after the *right-hand-man* of the same *rank*, the other *halfe* after the *left-hand man*, who leads them close down by the *side* or *flank* of the *Musquettiers*, untill they come to the *Pikes*. The *first-rank of Musquettiers now ranking even with the first-rank of Pikes*; *the last rank of Musquets, with the last-rank of the Pikes*; leaving a sufficient *intervall* betwixt them and their *Pikes*, for the other *Musquettiers* to *martch* between. And here you must note, that he that was *outer-most* when they *gave fire*, must likewise be *outer-most* when they have taken their *places on the Flank*. The *first* and *last-ranks* having *fired* and *wheeled off*, the next *Ranks* (*martching-on* as before, the *first-rank eight or ten paces before the Front*, the *last-rank* at *three steps to the Reer*) are in like manner to *present*, and *give fire*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and passing between the *divisions*, [a] there placing themselves, they of the *Front-division behind* those which *fired* last *before* them, and they of the *Reer-division before* them which *fired* last *behind* them; and so they may continue to *give fire*, untill they have all *fired* once over. Then may the [b] *Body make a stand*, and the *Pikes charge to the Front and Reere*, if need be. Or if the *Commander* would continue his *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere* still, upon the same *Figure*, then let the *Musquettiers* of the *Front* place themselves (after they have *given fire*) *behind the Musquettiers of their own division*; those of the *Reer-division*, placing themselves *betwixt the Reer of Pikes, and the Musquets of their owne division*, and so the *Body* moving but slowly forwards, they may continue the *Firing*. Having *given fire* to the *Front and Reere*, and *flanked their Pikes*, if the occasion offer, or the *Commander* please, they may *give fire* to the *Front and Reere* upon that *Figure*; which indeed I hold the better: as you may perceive in the ensuing Chapter.

The direction to the Firing: wherein you are to note, that the Musquettiers who are to fire in Front, are to move nimbly 8 or 10. paces before the rest of the Body, that so they may have fired and wheeled away before the rest of the body be so farre advanced. but if your body be large send a division before, which will be the better way.

[a] *Note this direction.* [b] *If need be the Body may make Alt, and charge to the Front and Reere*

CAAP. LXXXIX.

A second way of Firing to the Front and Reere.

THis second way of *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere* upon a *Martch*, may easily be performed, if the *Souldiers* be well and often instructed: Without which, all matters in the *Art Military* will seem difficult; and by which, all things will be made facile and easie. I could instance in divers *Motions* and *Figures*, by some reputed superfluous niceties;

which were the true uſes known to the *Commander*, and the way to execute to the *Souldier*, would be found to be of ſingular good ſervice. Nevertheleſs, becauſe to the * *Ignorant* nothing beyond their capacities may ſeem excellent, many good and ſerviceable *Motions* are ſlighted, and not accounted fit for ſervice. But I could well wiſh, that ſome good courſe might be taken, that the *Souldiers* of our *Trained-Bands* might have a little other *practice*, that ſo they might be able (at leaſt in ſome reaſonable way) to underſtand and *exerciſe* what ſhall be commanded them. But I have ſtrayed from the matter; and therefore take theſe words of *Command* and *Direction*, which being orderly executed, produce this *Figure* following:

* *Ignorant Souldiers account thoſe things nicieties which they underſtand not.*

Muſquettiers, give fire to the Front and Reere, placing your ſelves between your Diviſions.

Front.

E C

S MMMM D P P P P P P P P DMMMM S
WMMMM P P P P P P P P MMMMW
WMMMM P P P P P P P P MMMMW
W W P P P P P P P P W W
M W P P P P P P P P W M
MMMMM P P P P P P P P MMMMM
MMMMM P P P P P P P P MMMMM
S WWWW D P P P P P P P P D WWWW S

L

Reere.

The direction for this firing to the Front and Reere.

The way to performe this *Firing* is as followeth: (the Command being given) The *firſt-rank advanceth* 8. *or* 10. *paces before the Front of the body, there preſenting, and firing: the laſt rank of Muſquettiers, in the interim, preſenting at three motions to the Reer, and there in like manner firing:* which done, they are to *wheel-off to the right and left*, placing themſelves *between the Muſquettiers of their own diviſions.* Thoſe, namely, which were of the *Front-half-files*, falling into the *Reer* of their own *diviſion*; thoſe of the *Reer-half-files* (contrariwiſe) falling *before their half file-leaders*, and *ranking-even* with the *half-file-leaders* of *Pikes*; the next *Ranks*, ſucceſſively, *firing* and *wheeling-off* after the ſame manner. *Having fired once over, they are reduced every man to his place.* These two laſt *Firings* to be performed upon a *Marſch*, would ſeem very difficult to *unexperienced Souldiers*; but by often exerciſing they may be made capable of theſe, or of any other. Nevertheleſs, the *ſpeciall uſe of this Firing* is for ſmall *Bodies, being charged in Front* and *Reer* by *disbanded Squadrons*, or *ſmall parties*: But if your *Body* be *large*, the beſt way will be to ſend out a *conſiderable number* of *Muſquets* and *Pikes* before, *to beat-off the Enemy*: or if they be not able to beat him off, then to *hold him up*, untill you have *made good your* Retreit, and can either *reinforce* them with a *new ſupply*, or *relieve them* by bringing of *freſh hands* to maintain the fight.

The reducement.

CHAP. XC.

Firing to the Reere and Right-flank marching.

The uſe of this firing.

HAving already ſhewen *Firings in Front, Reere, and Flanks*, (ſome *marching*, and ſome *ſtanding*) I will now ſhew one *Firing* to the *Reere* and *Right-flanke*, upon a *Marſch*: The which, without all queſtion, muſt be very ſerviceable, at ſuch times as the obſequious and vigilant Enemy ſhal find ſome opportunity to *skirmiſh with the Body*, ſeeking to annoy them in their paſſage or *marſch*, *charging* them in the *Reer* and *Flank* at one

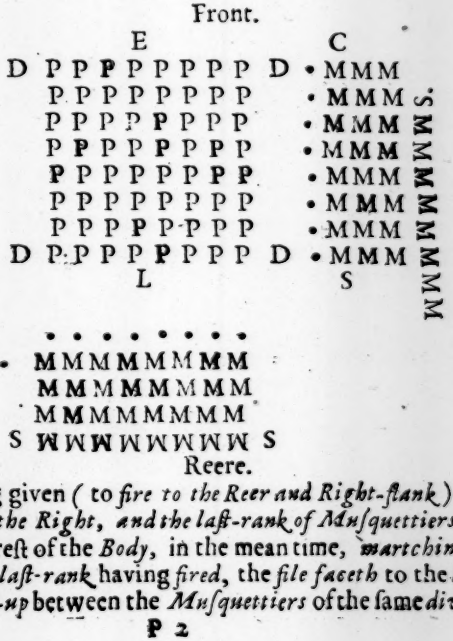
and

and the same time. I shall not need with arguments to enforce the usefulness of the *Firing*, for none that knowes any thing in the *Art Military*, but will ingeniously confess, that in time of *motion*, *either advancing*, *or retreiting out of an Enemies Country*, they shall be sure upon all *advantages* to be waited upon by Enemies, *charging in this nature.*

I might be infinite in examples of this kind, both ancient and modern, but my intent is not to write a History, every House and Shop being sufficiently stor'd with Works of that nature; and my task being only a few directions, for the better improvement of the exercise of *Foot-Companies*, the which I have hitherto endeavoured to keep my self close unto, and not flown out into extravagant and *forraign* Discourses: although I cannot deny, but that the seasonable recital and intermixture of *History*, would much have *beautified* and *imbellished* the *Worke*, as delivering it more fragrant to the sense, and conducing with more delectation, to the benefit of the memory. But it is not my intent to raise my labours to so large a Volume; nor indeed can I spend so much time from my more necessary affairs; but shall rest well contented, to leave such large labours to the abilities of the Learned, who with their artful Inventions may be able to garnish out their works with more attracting tearms; whilest I, in the mean time, according to the measure of my talent prosecute my ensuing Discourses.

You may (if you please) fire to the Flank and Reere, your Musquettiers being in their ordinary places, on the flanks of their Pikes. Nevertheless, a *securer way* for the *Pikes* will be, to draw the *Musquettiers from that flank* which is in least danger, *cross the Reere of Pike-men.* And this shall be the way I'l observe in this *Firing*. The words of *Command* are as followeth. *Ways of firing to the Flank and Reere*

Musquettiers, give fire to the Right and Reer, placing your selves between the Pikes and your own divisions.



The *Command* being given (*to fire to the Reer and Right-flank*) the *outer-most file of Musquettiers present to the Right, and the last-rank of Musquettiers present to the Reere*, *fire* and both *give fire*; the rest of the *Body*, in the mean time, *marching* a reasonable pace: *firing*, The *right-hand-file and last-rank* having *fired*, the *file faceth* to the *left*, after their *File-leader*, and so *martcheth-up* between the *Musquettiers* of the same *division*, and the *Pikes*, *The direction on for this*

If there be too many to wheel-off together, then make one interval, or more as the occasion requireth.

the *rank wheeling-off* to the *right*, and placing it self next after the *reer* of *Pikes*, and before the first *rank* of *Musquettiers* of the same *division*. If you please, you may make an *Intervall* between the *Musquettiers*: that so part may *wheel-off* to the *right*, on the *outside*, and the other part *wheel-off* to the *right*, and *march-up* between the *Intervall* into their places. The first *file* and *rank* that *presented*, have *given fire*, and *wheeled clear off the Body*, the next *file* and *rank*, *present*, and *give fire*; after the same manner *wheeling-off*, and taking their *places*, as aforesaid: and so successively, the rest (both *files* and *ranks*) *give fire* observing the same order. And having *given fire*, *once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over, they are still *reduced* to the same they were before the *firing* began. Then *draw* your *Musquettiers* from the *Reer*, to the *left-flank* again; and they will have their places as at first.

The reducement.

CHAP. XCI.

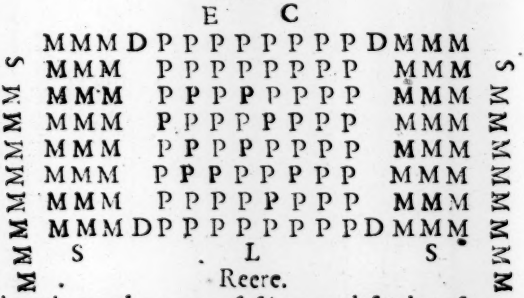
Of firing to both flanks, martching.

Firings, to *both flanks* and *martching*, without all peradventure are as requisite to be *practised* in times of *exercise*, as necessary to be *used* in times of *danger*: when the *politick* and *nimble enemy*, shall lie beating upon your *flanks*, thereby seeking to *distress* you in your *passage*, or *force* you to *Alt*, perhaps to your greater *disadvantage*. For the *manner* or *way* to perform the *firing*; it must have reference to the *time*, *number*, *place*, & strength of the *Enemy*: with other like circumstances considerable, by the *discreet* and *well-advised Captain*: and accordingly to *draw off* his *Musquettiers*, either for *security*, or *advantage*: Sometimes placing them between their own divisions and the *Pikes* (as in this following *firing*) at other times, placing them * between the midst of their *Pikes*, the better to secure them.

** As in Ch. 87. which is a very good firing if the souldiers be well exercised.*

Divers other such like wayes there are to be used at the discretion of the *Commander*, & as the present occasion shall require. *But because I insisted somewhat largly upon the firings on the right-flank, I shall not need to shew them again, by division on both flanks*; but will conclude them all in this one. The words of *Command* which produce the *firing*, are as followeth.

Musquettiers give fire to both flanks and then place your selves between the Pikes and your own divisions.



The direction for this firing.

The *Command* being given, the *outermost file on each flank presents outward*, the rest of the body still continuing the *martch*. The *presented files* (in the interim) *giving fire*; then *facing* after their *proper-file leaders*, who are to lead them up between the *Musquets* of their own *Divisions*, and the *Pikes*. In the time of their *wheeling-away*, the next *two files present*, *firing* after the same manner, and leading up as before. The rest (successively) doing the like, until they have *fired all over*; which brings them to their former places. The *Firing* may be continued at discretion, each *firing* being its own *Reducement*. Nevertheless,

theless, it may so fall out, that either through the *fury of the Enemy*, advantage or disadvantage of the ground (or some such like accident) the Body may be forced to make *Alt*, and to *face* to both *Flanks*; and so with *Fronts accidental*, to maintain the *fight standing*. To which end, the *Firing* in the succeeding *Chapter*, shall be of that sort. Therefore *suppose the Body faced to the right and left*, preparing to *give fire*.

The Musquettiers having given fire all over, they are reduced to their places, as at first.

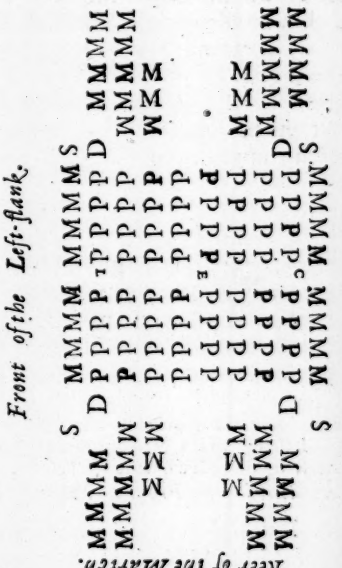
CHAP. XCII.

A Firing to both flanks standing.

Firing to both flanks, upon a stand, is a good & serviceable *Firing*. And although it shew but thin in the Figure; yet it may be useful for the *Field*, especially if there be a *larger proportion* of *number*, than I have made use of in my *Formes* and Figures of *Battel*. The words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produce the Figure, are as followeth.

Advance your Pikes and stand, Face to their Right and Left, Musquettiers give fire and flank your Pikes.

Front of the Martch.



The direction for this firing.

The Body being *faced* to the *right* and *left*, the *formost ranks of Musquettiers* (which were the *outermost Files*,) *present* and *give fire*, and then *wheel-off* by *division*, *ranking even with the formost ranks of Pikes*, and leaving sufficient *Intervals for the* rest of the *musquettiers*, to *martch* between them and the *Pikes*. The next rank *presenting* and *firing* after the same manner but not advancing forwards: only *firing* upon the same ground, and *wheeling-off* by *division*; afterwards passing down *between* the *Intervals*, and so rank after their leaders. It is herewithal to be noted, that they that were out-most when they *gave fire*, are likewise to be so when they have taken their places. If these instructions be not sufficient, turn back to the Figure of the *Demi-hearse*, where the manner of execution is all one with this. All the ranks of *Musquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled off*, as before; the *Pikes* if need be may *charge*, and the *Musquettiers give fire* over again, *wheeling-off* outward, and placing themselves in the *Reer of their own divisions*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and

Upon some occasions it will be necessary for the Musquettiers and Pikemen to advance into the leaders ground, but the such direction will be given.

The Demi-hearse, in Chap. 76.

* This facing brings all the musquettiers to the Front and Reere; if you would bring your Musquets into their first place let them give fire and wheel off as before, which will reduce them again to the Flanks:

faced your *Body* to the *first-front*, all your *Musquettiers* will be in *Front* and *Reer*: and then, if you *face your half-files-about*, and give *fire* after the same manner to the *Front* and *Reer*, having *faced* them again to their *first-front*, they will be *reduced*, as at first, into their ordinary *Square*. Nevertheless, I will *reduce* it by another *Firing*, which was first invented and shewed us by that worthy *Citizen*, and excellent *Souldier*, Captain *Henry Waller*, now deceased: it is a *Firing* in *Front*, the *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-division* opening to the *right and left*, and *sleeving-up on the Flanks of Pikes*, until the leaders of the *Reer-division* (who as then are the *half-file-leaders*) *rank even* with the *Front of Pikes*. The words of *direction*, that produce the *Figure*; following in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XCIII.

Captain Wallers *Triple Firing to the Front.*

THis *Triple Firing* to the *Front*, hath had the approbation of good and wel-experienced *Souldiers*, who have all acknowledged it to be both *solid* and *serviceable*; bringing many hands to fight in very good order, the *Pikes* being securely covered by their *musquettiers* in *Front*; neither need they be idle in time of *Battel*, if they have any * *Bow-Pike-men* amongst them, for that they may send their *Whistling Archery* over their *Musquettiers* heads, without offence to their Friends, though not without dammage to their Enemies. If any carp at the depth of the *Musquettiers* (either in this *Figure*, or in any other in this Book) I shall request them to suspend their censures, and wisely to conceive by a little, what a great deal meaneth: my intent not being to make my Book *monstrous*, by having little leavs, and large *Figures*. Only I desire with this small number to shew the nature of several *forms* and *figures* of *Battel*, the manner of their *Firings* and *Wheelings*, *off*, their orderly *placings*, and several wayes of *Reducement*; not having the least conceit to induce any to believe, that men are able long to continue an orderly execution at 4. deep, although (some times for *stratagems*) they may be reduced into a lesser number. But lest by digression I too farr trespass upon your patience, I will return to shew the manner of the *Firing*. Only, first observe the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produceth the following *Figure*.

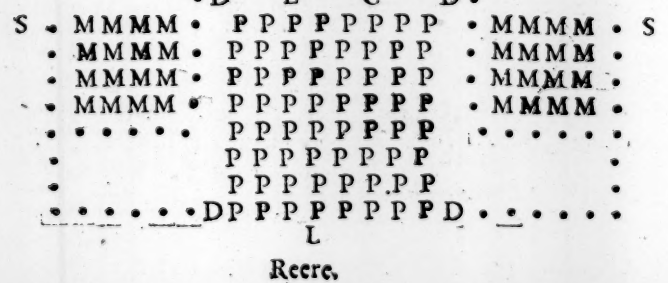
* The bow fastened to the Pike may do good service, where the Souldier is skilful, and the Enemy comes within their danger,

Note that in the foregoing *Chap*, the *Musquettiers* were left in the Front and *Reer*:

The direction over the Figure, Commanding the Reer-*Squadron* of *Musquettiers* to march-up and range-even with the Front of Pikes, which perfects this Figure. Some have mistaken, supposing I had formed this Figure with them words, conceiving all the *Musquettiers*, before that Command, on the Flanks,

Musquettiers of the Reer, double your Front of Pikes by division.

Front.



Reere.

The

The Command being given, the *firſt-rank* of *Muſquettiers* (both of *Front* and *Flanks*) *preſent* to the *Front*, and *give fire*, *wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left* by *diviſion*: The *Muſquettiers* of the *Front-diviſion* being *wheeled-off* (as afore-ſaid) *cloſe by the Flanks of their own Muſquettiers*, paſs directly down *between the Intervalls*, and place themſelves *even in Rank behind the Muſquettiers of the Reer-diviſion, which are upon the Flanks*. This you may perceive by the *pricks* that came down between the *Intervalls*. The *Muſquettiers* alſo that *fired* the ſame time on the *Flanks*, *wheel-off* in like manner, (the *right-flank* to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*) *marching* directly down, even with the *Reer-rank* of *Pikes*; and there place themſelves again, even in *rank* with the *laſt-rank* of *Pikes*. This done, the reſt of the *Ranks* (ſucceſſively) *give fire*, and do the like; every *Ranke* taking his place after the *Rank* which fired laſt before them; the other *Rank* moving one *Rank* forwarder. The *Muſquettiers* having *given fire* once over, and *falling-off* according to this direction, they will be *reduced* to the *Flanks* again, as they were at firſt, in the former Chapter. The *Firing* may be continued, or the *Pikes* may *charge*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*.

The direction for the firing.

The Muſquettiers having fired once over, they are reduced again to the flanke.

CHAP. XCIV

The Demie-Plinthium; being a Tripartite Firing, doing execution to the Front, Reere, and Right-Flank.

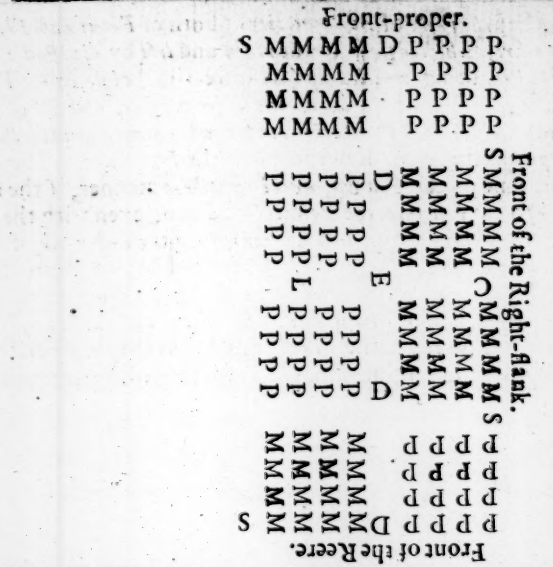
Figures and *forms* of *Battell* may be infinite; according to the judgments of the *Commanders*, and the various workings of the divers *motions*: no *art* nor *ſcience* yeelding more content unto the ſtudious *Practitioners*; none more *honourable* and *beneficiall* for the good of our *Countrey*; none more *neglected*, and leſs *countenanced*, then the *Practiſers* of the *Art Military*: nor none more *ſerued-up*, in the places of their abiding, than thoſe men this way affected. Our rich *gown-men* holding it as a Maxime, *That Souldiers (though Fortune hath been but ſparing in their portions) yet they muſt be taxed in the Pariſh-Books like grounded Gentlemen.* Thus much incouragement wee have for ſpending our mony and time for our Countries good; and this (in good time) I hope will be amended. The next *Firing*, being a *Firing Tripartite*, doth *execution* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Right-flank*, at one and the ſame time. For the *uſe*, I ſhall referre it to the *judgment* of the *judicious*: For the inſtruction, how it is to be *made*, the words of *Command* and *Direction* ſhew it; which are as followeth,

The common ſpeech being (ob let him pay) he hath money enough to ſpend upon his exercises of Souldiery.

Half-ranks of the left, double your Right-flank by diviſion.

Front.

If this figure were double d, having so many more ordered in the same manner on the left-flank, it would be a compleat form to fire to Front, Reere, and Flanks,



The direction how to make this Figure in the 27 Chap.

For the *Diriction*, look back to to the Chapter which treats of this *Doubling*: Onely, remember to *face* the *Divisions* that way which you intend they shall *give fire*.

For the manner of the *Firing*, it is ordinary: the *fore-most rank* of *Musquettiers* (on each part) having *fired*, they *wheel-off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (according as directions shall be given) *placing themselves* in the *Reere* of their *own divisions*: the *next rank*, in the mean time, *moving forwards* into their *leadexs ground*; there in like manner *firing*, *wheeling-off*, and placing themselves as before: the rest of the *ranks*, successively, doing the like. This *Firing* may be continued at pleasure of the *Commander*. The *Pike-men* (as advantage may be given) in the *interim*, either *porting*, *charging*, or sending their fatall *showers* amongst the thickest of their *Enemies*. Lastly, for *Reducement*, *face* them all to their *Front-proper*, then command, *half-ranks that doubled, to face to the left, and so to march into their places*. For further *directions*, turn back to *Chap.* 27. which shews the *Reducement* of the fore-going *Figure*.

The reduccment.

CHAP. XCV.

Of the Sconce-Battell.

For if it were made with a Regiment, Brigade, or larger Body, it would require other words of direction, but be nothing more difficult.

THe *Sconce-Battell* is a *Figure* most properly fit for a whole *Regiment*; at least, for a larger proportion of *number* then is here expresst; it neither being *good* nor *safe* to divide a small *Company* into so many *sub-divisions* and *Maniples*: yet, to give satisfaction unto some, I have placed it here amongst my *Figures*, and shewn the way how to make it with a *private Company*. for the manner or way how to *fire* upon it, may be diverse: the *Musquettiers* being so placed, that they may *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reere*, to the *Right* and *Left*, to all *four* together, at the discretion of the *Commander*. If your *Musquettiers give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, (every *Rank* making good his *leaders ground*) then the *Figure* will still continue the same. If they *give fire* without *advancing* into their *leaders ground*, then the *Musquettiers* will *rank-even* again with their *Pikes*; and the *Figure* will become an *hollow Cross*, the *Musquettiers* making the *Angles*. The words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produce the *Figure* are as followeth.

Half-

Half-files of Musquettiers, face to the Reer.

That being done, *Command all the Musquettiers to march to the Angles of their Pikes.*

Next cause, *The two first and two last Ranks of Pikes to stand.*

The rest to face to the right and left, and march until they are clear of the other Pikes, then stand.

Lastly, Command, *The two first and last ranks of Pikes, which did not move, to double their Files to the right.*

These words of *Command* and *direction* being *executed*, perfect the *Figure*, as followeth.

The Sconce Battel.



Many and several are the *Firings*, which (with some little *alteration*) may be drawn from this Figure. Nevertheless not to spin out time with discourse, the *Firing* now *intended* to be *shewn*, is to be performed to the *front* and *Reer*. To which purpose, the one *half* (both of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* are to *face-about to the right*; there *presenting* and *giving fire*: those of the *right-flank wheel-off* to the *right*; the *left flank* to the *left*, and *placing* themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. The next *rank* still *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*; the other *ranks*, successively do the like. After this manner, the *firing* may be continued, and the *Figure* still preserved. *By subdividing and new lacing some of the divisions.*

For *reducement*. First, *face* them all after their proper *file-leaders*. Secondly, cause the *front* and *reer-divisions* of *Pikes* to *double* their *ranks* to the *left*. Thirdly, *command* the *Pikes* of the *flanks* to *face* in *opposition*, *close* their *divisions*, and then to *face* after their *leaders*. Next, *command* the *Musquettiers* of the *front-division* to *face* to the *reer*. Lastly, *command* the *Musquettiers* (both of *front* and *reer*) to *close* their *divisions*. And then being *faced* to their *leader*, they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first. *The reducements.*

CHAP. XCVI.

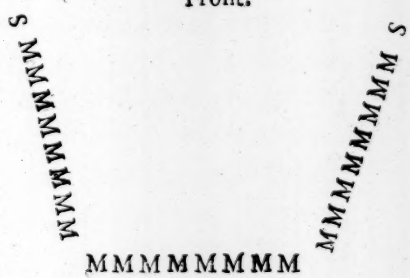
Of firing by three files at once; two of them standing oblique, the other direct.

WHen I began to treat of *Forms* and *Figures* of *Battel*, I noted all *Firing* to be either *oblique* or *direct*; and now for satisfaction to the curious, I shall insert two or

three *oblique forms* amongſt the reſt. The firſt whereof ſhall be a *Firing to the Front*, *by drawing forth the outer-moſt file on each Flank obliquely*, (or the *inner-moſt*, as ſhall ſeem beſt to the *Commander*) until the *bringers-up* of the *files*, *ſtand even* with the *right* and *left-angle-men*, over the *front* of *Pikes*. They may alſo lead a *file* of *Muſquettiers* croſs the *front* of Pikes; when having *placed* and *faced* them (as they ought) for *execution*, they will *ſtand* in manner of this following *Figure*.

The firſt making of direction to the Figure.

Front.



C

S MMM • D P P P P P P P P D • • MM S
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P = P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • D P P P P P P P P D • • MM

L

The way to give fire obliquely demonſtrated.

The *two files* of *Muſquettiers* which were *led forth*, *obliquely preſented inwards*, & the *file drawn croſſe* the *front of Pikes*, being *preſented* direct *Rank-wiſe*: upon the firſt *command*, they are all to *give fire together*, & then to *face* after their *bringers-up*, who lead their *files* directly into their *places*. This done they *face* to their *proper-front* again; the other *files* (in the mean time) leading forth after the ſame manner. Theſe having done their *execution*, are to return into their *places*: being *led-off* by their *bringers-up*, (as is aforeſaid.) The reſt of the *files*, after the ſame manner, *firing* and *returning* until they have all *given fire*; and then they will be all *reduced*, as at firſt.

CHAP. XCVII.

A Firing oblique, by four files together, in form of a W.

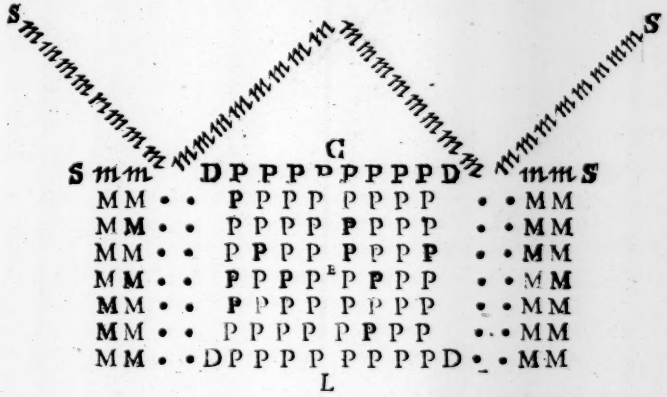
ALl the commendations that may be given of theſe *oblique Figures*, is, that they *pour out a great deal of ſhot at once, and may quickly be reduced to their places*. Notwithſtanding they are a great weakning to the *Body*, if any ſudden accident ſhould happen before they are ſetled in their former *ſtations*. Nevertheleſs, I ſhall leave them to themſelves and if they be found to hold out weight, I ſhall not grudg that I have given them room amongſt the reſt. But if they prove too light, let them be as lightly reſpected, yet bear ſomwhat with them for their *antiquity*. The way to make the *figure*, is as followeth. The two *inner-moſt files* of *Muſquettiers* on each *flank march* forth (each of them being *led* by an *Officer*) until they have taken their *places*. Then the *Officers* that *led* forth the *two middle-*

The direction to make this firing.

moſt

moſt files, are to return to their *places* again; the *Serjeants* that led forth the *outer-moſt files*, ſtanding to ſee them do their *execution*. Yet before the *Muſquettiers* have order to *give fire*, obſerve the manner of their *ſtanding*, by the following *Figure*.

The W *oblique.*



The *Muſquettiers* having *preſented*, according to their directions, they *give* fire all together; and then ſuddenly *facing* after their *Bringers-up*, *march* down into their places: the *next two files* of each *Flank*, in the *interim* of their *marching-away*, are to *move forwards* to their *ground*; where they are in like manner to *give fire*, and then to take their places, as aforeſaid. The reſt of the *files* of *Muſquettiers* (if you have more) muſt then *move forwards*, and do the like. And in this ſort may the *Muſquettiers give fire*, *once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over; each *Firing* being a *Reducement* to it ſelf. *The direction to give fire from this Figure.*

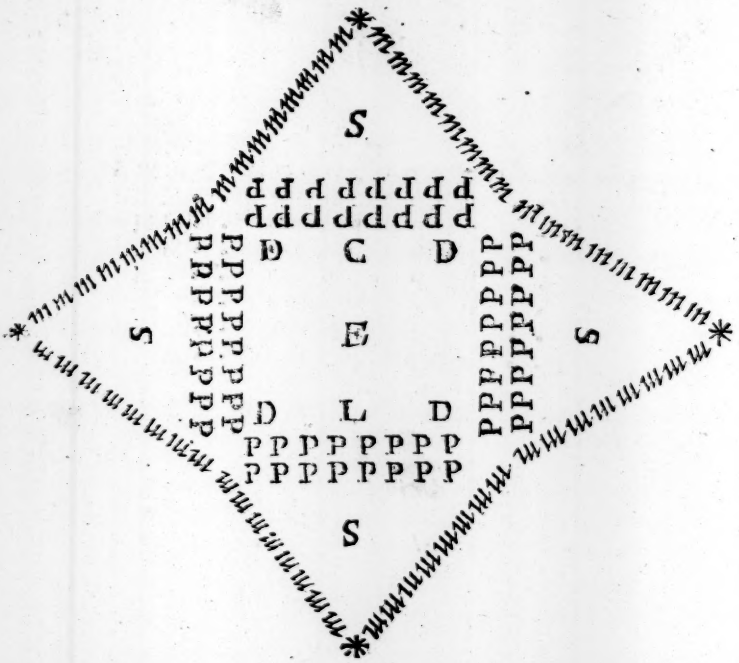
CHAP. XCVIII.

Of the Fort-battell; the way to make, and to reduce it.

THe *Figure* of the *Fort-Battell* is an *oblique Firing*, and taketh its *denomination* rather from the *ſimilitude*, then the *ſtrength* of a *Fort*. Its chiefe uſe is, for the *entertainment* of ſome great *Perſonage* or *Commander*, in the *Field*; who being received into the *midſt* of the *diviſion* of *Pikes*, the *Muſquettiers* may *preſent*, and *give* fire altogether, in one *volley*. Or if they would have the *Muſquettiers give* fire one after another, then the *volleys* by *ſucceſſion* (which ſome call the *Peal*) will be the beſt. If there be more *Muſquettiers* then will ſerve to make up the *Figure* ſingle, they may alſo *give* fire with the reſt, *preſenting obliquely*, between the *diſtance* of their *leaders*. The way to make this *Figure* is as followeth: Firſt, *draw forth the out-moſt* files (of *Muſquettiers*) on each *Flank*, in *form* of an *hollow wedge*, before the *Front* of *Pikes*: then cauſe the *next two out-moſt files* to *face-about*, and to follow their *Bringers-up*, in the ſame *forme*, to the *Reer*: Then let the *laſt two files* of *Muſquettiers* (on each *Flank*) be *drawn* after their *File-leaders*, in the ſame *manner* and *form*, to the *Flanks*. The *Muſquettiers* being thus *ordered*, and all *preſented obliquely outwards*, command the *two firſt* and *two laſt ranks* of *Pikes* to *ſtand*; the reſt of the *Pikes*, to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and ſo to *march* untill they are *clear* of the other *Pikes* which *ſtand*: then command the *Pikes* which *moved*, to *double their files to the right*: Laſtly, command all the *Pike-men* to *face out-wards*; each *The uſe of the Fort-Battell.* *The direction to make this Figure.*

division of *Pikes*, after their *hollow wedge* of *Muſquettiers*: Or elſe, let them *face* all *inward* to the *Center*; and then the *Body* will ſtand in *form* of the following *Figure*.

The Fort-Battell.



These firings are to be performed standing, the Muſquettiers having given fire, are to make ready again in their places maintaining their figure.

Having *fired* upon this *Figure*, there is no manner of *wheeling-off*; becauſe the *form* is ſtill to be continued. But when you come to *Reducement*, firſt *face* all the *Pikes* to their *proper-front*; that is, unto the *place* where you find the *proper file-leaders*. Secondly, let the *Pikes* which are *Flankers*, *double* their *ranks* to the *left*, and ſo *cloſe* their *diviſions*; then the *Pikes* will be *reduced*. For the *Muſquettiers*, firſt command thoſe that are on the *Flank*, to *lead-up* their *files* in their *due places*, cloſe to the *Pikes*: Next, command the *Muſquettiers* of the *Reer* to *ſleeve-up* on each *Flank* by *diviſion*: Laſtly, command the *Muſquettiers* before the *Front* of *Pikes*, to *face* after their *Bringers-up*, and to *march* down into their *places*: Laſtly, *facing* to their *Leader*, they are all *reduced* as at *firſt*.

Reducement.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of the Croſſe-Battell: how to make it with a private Company: the wayes to fire upon it: with other diſcourſes, concerning the neceſſities inforcing that Figure; with the means to make it more defenſive and ſerviceable: and laſtly, the way to reduce it.

THe *Croſſe-Battell*, although it muſt needs ſhew *poor* and *thin*, being here *demonſtrated* by a *number* not *ſufficient* to expreſſe the *worth* of the *Figure*; yet hath it paſt the *approbation* both of *ancient* and *modern Commanders*: who (with good *ſucceſſe*) have often

drawn

drawn out, the *grosse* of their *Battels* into this *form*; and therewith both *sustained*, and *re-charged* upon their *enemies*. Each *division* being very *aptly placed* to relieve the other. If the *enemy* be like to *give on in front*, then the *Reer-division* may *sub-divide*, and *march up by each flank* making the *wings*. But if that part be supplyed by the *Cavalry*, then they may serve to *line*, or *mixe*, *between the Intervalls*, and *divisions* of the *horse*; or be *otherwise disposed off*, at the discretion of the *Commander*. Nevertheless, if any object, that the *enemy* being in open *Campania*, may as well *charge* your *Battells* in *flank* or *Reer* as in *Front*. The answer may be easily given; that the *Body* being *faced*, the matter doth still continue the same.

If it be re-objected, that the *enemy* having the *advantage* in *number*, may seek to *distress* you; by *charging on the severall places at once*. To that may likewise be answered, that each *division* may *readily face* to that part and *receive their charge*.

Notwithstanding, discreet *Commanders* have ever been *cautious*, to *adventure* into the *even*, and [a] *open countries*, (when the *enemy* hath the *advantage* of *horse*; or much the *greater number* of *foot*) whereby they may be forced to the [b] *hazard* of a *Battell*: The which without *manifest necessities*, or (to the contrary) some *known* and *extraordinary* advantages, ought neither to be given, or *accepted*: So *nice* and *tickle* is the *chance* of *warre*; where small errours, oftentimes, are the *fore-runners* of great *over-throws*. But my intent is not to lanch forth into these lavish discourses, but timely to make my retreit unto my *private Company*, and without further circumstances, of what hath, or may be done; come to shew what I intend concerning this *figure*: and shew the wayes to *fire upon it*; the which are ordinarly two, &c.

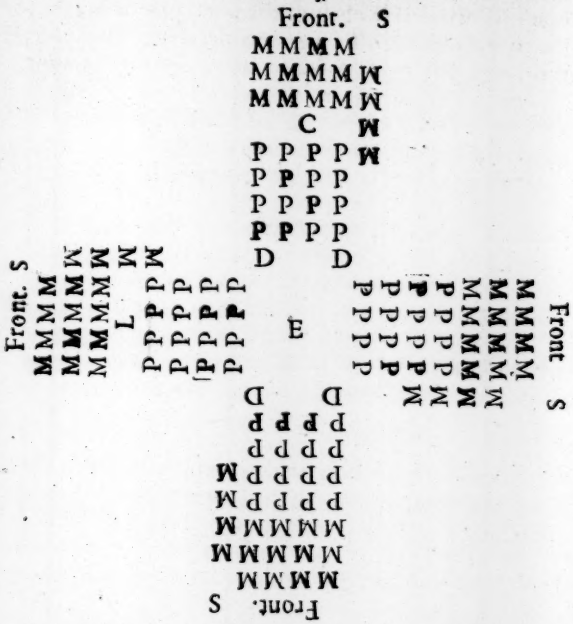
The [c] first, when the *Musquettiers give fire*, and then place themselves in the *reer* of their *own divisions* of *Musquets*. The [d] second way is, after that they have *fired*, to place them in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, the *Pikes* maintaining the *Musquettiers* ground. The words of *Command* which produce the *Figure*, are as followeth.

Two first Ranks, wheel your Front into the midst.
Two last Ranks, wheel your Reer into the midst.
The rest of the Body, face to the right and left, and so march, untill the Reer of the four divisions make an even hollow square.
Then let the Commander go into the midst, (or center) and face the whole Company to him: giving them such direction as is meet.
Lastly, being all faced about to the right, the body will stand like the following Figure.

a *Even and open Countries very dangerous for small bodies. where the enemy is superiour in number, or horse.*
b *The hazard of a Battell perilous.*
c *The first placing of the Musquets.*
d *The second way of placing the Musquets.*
The direction to make the Crosse-Battell

with a private Company: also you may observe if that the Crosse-Battell were to be made with a Brigade, or Regiment, then in stead of wheeling two Ranks, we should perhaps wheel two or 3. Companies to either part, &c

The Crosse Battell.



Note that as men stand in rank when they give fire, so they are to place themselves again, when they have fired. The outer-most man taking the out-side places: the rest in like manner, orderly placing themselves within them.

[a] This *Crosse Battell* being *faced* to the *front*, *reer*, and *flanks*, and the *Musquettiers commanded* to *give* fire: one *way* of *placing* them is, in the *reer* of their *own divisions* of *Musquettiers*; for that hereby, the *Musquettiers* will still continue their *places*. For the second *way*, after that the *first ranks* have *given* fire, let them *wheel-off* to the *right*, (or to the *right* and *left*, if the number be *large*) and [b] *place* themselves in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, each *rank moving forwards*, and *maintaining* their *leaders ground*. The second *rank* in like manner is to *fire*, and to take their *places* after the *Musquettiers* which *fired*, and *wheeled-off* last before them. The rest successively, are to do the like, untill all the *shot have fired*, and are *wheeled away*: then let the *Pikes charge*, &c. If any object, that it is *dangerous to have so large distance between the front of each* firing: I have already declared, that it must needs be occasioned by some great extremity, thrown upon us through *negligence*, or *necessity*, when we shall be forced to accept the *Battell*, with so evident signs of *disadvantage* where the *enemy* may surround and *charge* upon us in *front*, *reer*, and *flanks*. And therefore seeing that in such cases we are not alwayes afforded *meanes*, nor *time*, to *supply* all defects: we must be content, according to the suddennesse of the occasion to make so good *defence*, as for the present we may conveniently *provide*. And in such places which lie most *open* to the *enemy* (where through defect of *number*, [c] the danger must needs be *great*) there to place the *Wagons*, *Carts*, and other *Carriages* so *commodiously*, that they may serve for a *Rampart*, or defence against their *horse* or *foot*. Or if it may be found more *convenient*, to *impale* those places (least *defensible*) with sharp [d] *Pallisadoes*; (the which hath been a *weapon of ancient use, and now again lately practised, by the Gentlemen of Souldiers are disheartned by some known and evident disadvantage.* d *Pallisadoes used by the Persian army of Xerxes against the Grecians, at the Battell of Michale in Asia, about 1800 years since, in moderate service by the King of Swede against the Pole; as also in the Germane Warre.*

a The direction to this firing.

b When there is not above two or three ranks of Musquettiers to give fire, the Pikes may port, when all the Musquettiers are in the Rear of the Pikes, let them charge

c It is very dangerous to fight, when our

the

the Military Yard;) and I conceive may prove very *useful*, to defend the *voyd* and *open spaces*, which want other defence, from the *fury* and *insolence* of the *haughty* and *over-daring Horse*. But if all these *helps* be *wanting*, then three or four *files* of each *arms* may be *drawn crosse*, from the *Angle* of one *Front* to the *other*; the which being well-ordered, may make reasonable good *defence* on those *parts*.

Having *given fire* upon the *Crosse-battel*, and brought your *Musquets* to the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, if you would *reduce* them, *passe* into the *midst* or *center* of the *Figure*, and *face* all (both *Musquettiers* and *Pike-men*) to you; and cause those *divisions* which were the *flankers*, to *close to their order*: Next, *wheel* the *Fronts* into the *midst* of the two other *divisions*, one after the other; then go to the *first-front*, and *face* the whole *body* to you, and so you shall have all your *Musquettiers* in the *midst*, *flanking* with *Pikes*. If you would *reduce* them into their right places, command the *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left-outward*, the *Pikes* to *face* to the *right* and *left-inward*; and so to *passe thorow*, and *inter-change ground*. This being rightly performed, and the *Body re-faced* to their *first-front*, they are *reduced* to their proper *order*. *The reduce-ment.*

CHAP. C.

Of the hollow-fronted Crosse-battel: how to make it with a private Company; and the way to fire upon it, &c.

THis next *Figure* shall be of the *hollow-fronted Crosse*, which is a *stronger form* than that last shewn, and yet thus much let me warn you of, that there can be but little expectation of *strength* to be perceived, in *Battels* formed with so small a *number*. This notwithstanding, the * ingenious *Martialists* can easily discern those things, which in warr may prove most useful for their own, and their Countries benefit; although they are here expressed to the publike view in so *mean array*, and in such *thin numbers*. Wherefore, setting aside all Apologies and Excuses, I will briefly shew the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which will produce the following *Figure*.

* *Such and so great lovers of arms as* Philopœmen *the Achaian.* Rawleigh. *hist mun. c. 5 of the 5t Book 1 part*

Two first-ranks, wheel your front into the midst.

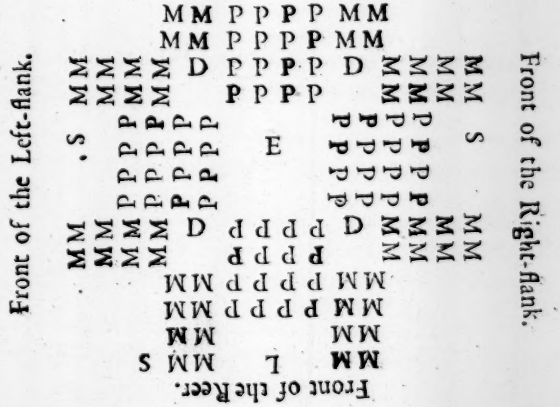
Two last-ranks, wheel your reer into the midst.

The rest face to the right and left, and march until they have made the perfect Crosse.

Lastly, cause the Musquettiers to flank their Pikes, according to this following Figure.

The hollow-fronted Crosse.

The directi-on to make the hollow-fronted Crosse, the files containing 8. men in depth.



The

The direction for this firing. The ſeveral *directions* for *Firing* upon this *Figure*, may be divers; but to avoid *diſtraction*, I will ſhew only one way, and that *directed* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*. Nevertheleſs (for varieties ſake) you may cauſe them to *give fire* once over, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*; ſtill *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, thereby to preſerve the *Figure* in the ſame *order*.

At the ſecond time of *Firing*, cauſe the *Pikes* to move *ſoftly up*, *even* with the *Front* of *Muſquettiers*, *porting* as they *advance forwards*. The *Muſquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled-off*, are to *place* themſelves in the *Reer* of their *diviſions* of *Pikes*, (whom before they *flanked*) every *Rank* of *Muſquettiers firing*, *wheeling-off*, and *placing* themſelves as afore-ſaid. Laſtly, the *Pikes* having *charged*, and again *re-advanced*, the *Body* will ſtand in the *figure* of a perfect *Croſſe*.

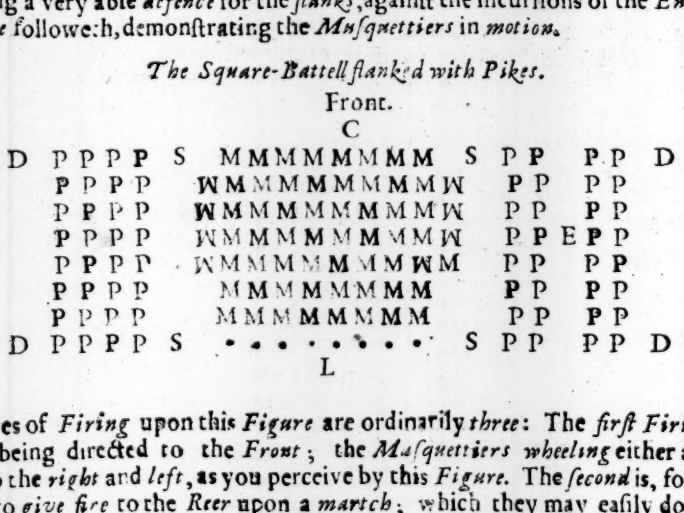
The reducement is the ſame with the Croſſe-Battell. For the *Reducement*, it is the ſame with the *Croſſe-battel*, delivered in the laſt Chapter: wherefore I ſhall need to add no further *directions* in this place for the ſaid *reducement*, then that the *Flank-diviſions* are to be *cloſed*, and the *Front* and *Reer-diviſions* to be *wheeled*, that the *Body* may be again returned into a *Square*, with the *Muſquettiers* in the *middle*. All this being here taught, I now proceed to ſhew one *Firing* with the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*.

CHAP. CI.

Of firing upon the Square-battel flanked with Pikes.

THe *Square-Battel flanked with Pikes* muſt needs be very ſafe for the *Muſquettiers*, as being a very able *defence* for the *flanks*, againſt the incurſions of the *Enemies horſe*. The *Figure* followeth, demonſtrating the *Muſquettiers* in *motion*.

The Square-Battell flanked with Pikes.



The ſeveral wayes of firing from this ſquare figure. The wayes of *Firing* upon this *Figure* are ordinarily *three*: The *firſt Firing* is, with the *aſpect* being directed to the *Front*; the *Muſquettiers wheeling* either all *off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, as you perceive by this *Figure*. The *ſecond* is, for the *Muſquettiers* to *give fire* to the *Reer* upon a *martch*; which they may eaſily do, from this *Figure*. The *third* is, to *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, upon a *ſtand*, the *half-files* being *faced-about*. A *fourth firing* may be, *to the Flanks by Extraduction*, if need be.

Note the firing to the front. If the *firing* be performed to the *front*, then every *Rank* is to *martch-up* into their *leaders ground*.

The firing to the reer. If the *Firing* be to the *Reer*, upon a *Martch*, then the *Ranks* (contrariwiſe) *cloſe backwards* towards the *Reer*, to make good the *Battell* on that part.

The firing to the front and reer. If it be to the *Front* and *Reer*, upon a *ſtand*, then the *Muſquettiers martch-up* into their *leaders ground*, and thoſe which have *fired* and are *wheeled off*, place themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*.

To

To write further of this *Firing*, were more than neceſſary; no one of theſe *Firings* any wayes altering the *Figure*, but the *aſpect* onely. Nevertheleſſe, if the *Commander* pleaſe, he may, after the *Firing* in *Front*, *wheel both Flanks into the Front*, and ſo *charge Pikes*; and from thence proceed to other *Firings*.

If the *Firing* were in the *Reer*, we may *wheel the Flanks into the Reer*, and cauſe his *Pikes* to *charge* that way.

If the *Firing* were to the *Front* and *Reer*, he may *wheel both Flanks into the Front and Reer*; and ſo *charge* with his *Pikes* both wayes: which by Captain *Bingham* is called *Amphiſtomus*.

Theſe two wheelings are to be underſtood for ſingle Companies, and not for larger bodies.

If the *Firing* were to one or both *Flanks* by *Extraduction*, then the *Pikes port* all the time the *Muſquettiers are giving fire*, and after *charge*, at diſcretion of the *Commander*. You may further obſerve, that if the *Horſe charge home*, then the *Pike men* muſt *charge*, and the *Muſquettiers couch* very low, while they *move croſs the Front*, and *give fire* on their knees. Before I come to *Reducement*, I ſhall proceed to the next *Firing* in the enſuing *Chapter*.

CHAP. CII.

Of the ancient manner of the imbattailing the Plinthyum: the placing of each Arms, and the uſe of the Figure.

THe *Plinthyum*, *anciently uſed amongſt the* Grecians, *was an even, four-ſided (or four-fronted) Battel; the middle-part thereof being commonly hollow: on the out-ſides alwayes martched the heavie armed; the light and nimble armed Slingers, Darters, and Archers, being more ſecurely placed in the midſt.* Eudamus.

Notwithſtanding, it took denomination from the *form*, and not from the *placing* of the *Arms*: (For example) *Eumenes* having ſent for his *Elephants* to their *wintering ſtations*, *Antigonus* thought to take them by *ſurpriſe*; and to that purpoſe ſent 2300 *Spear-men* and *Tarentines*, with all his *light-armed foot*; who overtaking them upon the way, &c. The *Commanders* of the *Elephants* ordered the *Beaſts* into the *Plinthyum*, caſting all their *Carriage* into the *midſt*. And indeed, it was a *Figure* commonly taken up in the times of neceſſity, when the *adverſe part* was much the abler in *Horſe*. And to that purpoſe was it framed by *Timotheus* the *Athenian*, *Briſidas* the *Lacedemonian*, *Bardillis* the *Illirian*, *and many others*; being uſeful and neceſſary, as well in time of *Battel* as in *Martch*; at both times for the ſecurity of the *Carriage*, and the defence of the *ſick* and *wounded*. Much like unto this, is our *hollow four-fronted Battel*; which may well retain the ſame name, although ſometimes differing in the placing of our *Arms*. For if it ſhould ſo happen (as it often doth) that a *Charge* be given in *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*, at one and the ſame time, then I conceive this enſuing *Figure* very apt for defence, for that the *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes* are ſo placed, that each *Arms* may be aiding and aſſiſting to the other. For ſeeing that neither * *Muſquettiers* nor *Pike-men* alone, can be ſingly ſufficient of themſelves, to withſtand the able and reſolute *Horſe-man*, (without great *advantage of ground*) on the contrary, the *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes* being *conjoyned* into one *Body*, and being *well-ordered*, they are not onely able to defend themſelves againſt their *fury*, but alſo to put them to the *worſt*. Yet this muſt not be underſtood of *raw* and *unskilful Souldiers*, whoſe ignorance is cauſe of diffidence; but of *hardy*, *experienced*, and *well-exerciſed* men, ſuch as know well how to demean themſelves *couragiouſly* in time of *Fight*. The *words* of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *Figure*, are as followeth:

The Elephants were ordered into an hollow ſquare by their Commander. Eudamus.

Sir Walter Rawleighs hiſt. munde lib. 4 cap 4. ſect. 4. as alſo in the Tactiks of Ælian, l. 2 the notes of the 24. chap

Plinthyum is an hollow four-fronted Battel, having direct angles.

**Vnleſs the Muſquettiers had half pikes, and know how to uſe them.*

Half files of Pikes, face to the Reer, and martch until they are clear of the laſt Rank of Muſquettiers.

Note that all the Muſquettiers muſt be in the midſt, and the Pikes on the flanks, when you begin to make his Figure. If your Muſquet be on the flank when you make it, then the Croſſe will be Pikes, and the Angles Muſquets, &c.

Secondly, Command.

Half-files of Musquettiers, face to the right and left, (then) *march between the Divisions of Pikes.*

Thirdly, Command.

Left-half-ranks of the first-Division of Musquts, face to the Reere, and march between the Reere-divisions of Pikes.

Lastly, having *evened their Ranks, straightned* their *Files*, and *closed* their *Divisions* to an *equal distance*, and being rightly *faced*, the *Body* will stand like the following *Figure*.

The Plinthyum, or four-fronted Battel.

Front-proper.

Front of the Left-flank.

P P P P P D M M M M S P P P P
P P P P P M M M M P P P P
P P P P P M M M M P P P P
P P P P P M M M M P P P P
S D
M M M M C M M M M
M M M M E M M M M
M M M M I M M M M
D S P P P P
d d d d W W W W P P P P
d d d d W W W W P P P P
d d d d W W W W P P P P
d d d d S W W W W D P P P P

Front of the Right-flank.

Front of the Reere.

The Plinthyum is an hollow square-battel, fronted four wayes, the number equal in length and depth. Another kind of Plinthyum is to have the depth exceed the length, the light armes to be placed in the midst of the hollow part. See the Tactick of Ælian, the second book, the notes of the 24. chapter.

The manner of the *Firing* may easily be apprehended by the *Figure*; the *Musquettiers giving fire* in *Rank*, and *wheeling* all *off* to the *Right*, do then passe down their *Intervals*, under the favour of their *Pikes*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *Divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the *Pikes charging* at discretion. Having *fired once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over, and still maintaining the same ground, the *Figure* will continue to be the same.

If the *Reer-part* of the *Battel* was by any means secured, so that you need *give fire* but three wayes, then the *Front-half files* of *Musquettiers* might have been preserved intire.

This *Plinthyum*, or *four-fronted Battel*, may as well be made with the *Musquettiers* in the *Angles*, the *Pikes* making the *Crosse*: this kind of *Command*, always making the *Crosse* of the *Armes* in the *middest* of the *Battel*.

The reducement of the Plinthyum into the solid square, flanked with Pikes.

After that you have *given fire*, at discretion, upon this *Figure*, and *charged* your *Pikes*, if you would *reduce* them to the first *Square*, command the whole *Body* to *face* to the *Front-proper*.

Secondly, command the *Musquettiers* in the *Reer* to *march-up* on the *left* of the *Musquettiers* in *Front*; the *Pikes* being first *opened*, to give them place.

Thirdly, cause the *Musquettiers* in *flank* to *face-inward*, and to *close* their *Divisions*.

Lastly, cause the *Pikes* to *march-up*, placing themselves right after their *leaders*.

This being done, the *Body* will be brought again into a *solid Square*, *flanked* with *Pikes*. I forbear further to *reduce* them until I shew the next *Figure*. Yet, for further satisfaction to any that shall require it, command your *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left-outward*;

outward; the *Pikes* to *face-inward*, and so to *interchange ground*; and then being rightly *faced*, they are *reduced*. The perfect reducement

CHAP. CIII.

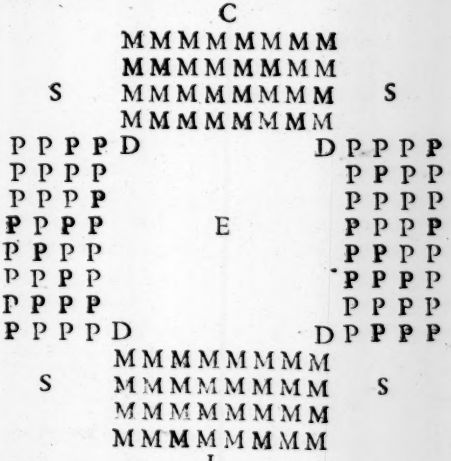
Another hollow Square for Martch.

SUndry *forms* there be which go under the denomination of the *hollow ſquare*, and very diverſly they may be framed. Some are hollow, *impalled* with *Pikes*; the *Pikes* again, *girdled* with *ſhot*, and they *impalled* with *Pikes*. Some again, with diviſions of *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*: orderly mixt with an *hollow* in the midſt. A fourth ſort is when each *arms* are divided by themſelves, as when the *Pikes* make the *front* and *reer*, and the *Muſquettiers* the *wing*. A fifth way is, when the *Muſquettiers* lead in *front* and *reer*, and the *Pikes* make both the *Flanks*. All theſe waies are very neceſſary and uſefull, as the time, occaſion, or place ſhall give cauſe; or the judgement of the *Commander* ſhall ſee fitting. Nevertheleſſe the *hollow Battel*, which I now intend to demonſtrate unto you is eſpecially uſeful for a *martch*, whereby to ſecure the *carriage*, as likewiſe to preſerve the ſick and wounded; it may alſo ſerve for the *Commander* to conſult with his Officers, or to make any *Speech* or *Oration* to the Souldiers. Or the *Enſigne* may in ſign of triumph, diſplay his *Coulors* in the midſt upon a *martch* after *Skirmiſh*. *As it now is the cuſtom after exerciſe.*

The way to make this *figure* (the *Muſquettiers* being in the *midſt*) is as followeth. Firſt, to *command* the *half-files* of *Muſquettiers to face the Reer*:

Then command all the *Muſquettiers to martch, and the Pikes to ſtand.*

When they are clear of the *front* and *reer* of the *Pikes*, let them ſtand, and *face* all to the *Front-proper*: and it produceth this following *Figure*.



If the *firing* be onely intended to the *front*; then *command* the *Muſquettiers* of the *Reer-diviſion*, to *open* to the *right* and *left*, and to ſleeve-up on the *out-ſide* of the *Pikes*, there *preſenting* and *firing* at the ſame inſtant, with the *Muſquettiers* of the *Van*: each part *wheeling-off*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*. This *firing* doth conceiue the *reer* to be by ſome means ſecured. But if you preſuppoſe a *Charge* to be given to the *front* and *reere martching*, it may be retaliated (or acquitted) ſtill conti- The direction to this firing.

 nuing

nuing the *martch*. Nevertheleſſe the inſolence of the *Enemy* will ſcarce be repelled, or abated, without an *Alt*, and *facing about* to the *Reer-half-files*, the which being performed, the *Muſquettiers* are to *preſent*, and *give fire*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *reer* in their own *diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*; each *rank* moving *forward* into their *leaders ground*: and doing the like. If you ſhould *give fire*, and not move forwards into your *leaders ground*, then the *Muſquettiers* would fill the hollow in the midſt betwen the *Pikes*. Nevertheleſs, ſuppoſe the *Figure* ſtill to continue to be the ſame, becauſe I will now come to the *reducement*, and the rather, for that I have not done it ſince I began with the *Hollow-fronted Croſs*. But now (ſo pleaſe you) I will *reduce* all by a *firing*. And to that end, firſt, cloſe your *diviſions* of *Pikes*; and then the *Muſquettiers* will be all in the *front* and *reer*.

The Reducement by a firing, the which is not expreſt in Figure in this place: it is in Chap. 88.

Secondly, cauſe the *half-files* (both *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) to *face* to the *Reer*. Then cauſe the *Muſquettiers* both of *Front* and *Reer*, to *give fire*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. When they have *fired* all over, the *Pikes* may *charge*: who being again advanced, and all *faced* to the *front proper*, they are all *reduced* (as at firſt) into the *ordinary ſquare*, *flanked with Muſquets*.

CHAP. CIV.

Of the Hearſe-Battel, and of the hollow Hearſe, and Croſſe.

Tacticks Chap. 30. The uſe of the Hearſe.

THe *Hearſe-Battel*, by the *Greeks* called *Orthophalanx*, as in *Elian*, *is when the depth doth manifold exceed the length, thrice at the leaſt. As when our Companies martch forth by right inductions* (or in *ſucceſſive diviſions.*) It is a *figure* eſpecially uſeful for *martch*, becauſe that upon thoſe occaſions, a *Body drawn out in length* would meet with many *lets* and *impediments*, by reaſon of the variety of ground, and other *accidents*, the which they muſt comply withal in their way. Sometimes incountering with *woods* and *buſhes*, ſometimetimes with *hills* and *ſtraights*, ſometimes with *rivers*, *bridges*, *ditches*, *pits*, *quagmires*, and many other the like inconveniences; which would quite break the *order*, and *array* of any other *figure*, having the *length* more *extended*. This *form* is alſo held the beſt for *martch* in the night; becauſe the *range* (or *breaſt*) not being long, the *order* may be the better *preſerved*, and the *martch performed* with more ſilence. But of all other, it is the *weakeſt*, *bringing but few hands to fight*; and hath ſeldom or never been *uſed* by any good *Commander*, unleſs it were upon neceſſity. It may be made either *ſolid* or *hollow*, and being conjoyned to the *croſſe*, may prove more ſerviceable, eſpecially for the ſecurity of the *Carriage*.

If it were not for ſuch impediments it were better to martch in form of battel, with the front & wings extended at length.

The hearſe battel of all other, the weakeſt for fight.

True it is, that were the *form* far more *ſtrong*, yet being demonſtrated, by ſo ſmall a *number*, might well render it ſuſpected: ſeeing the worth thereof (by reaſon of the *thinneſs*) could not ſo evidently appear, as otherwiſe it would, were the *number larger*.

But I have onely taken upon me to ſhew the *ſeveral forms* and *figures* of *Battel*, which may be *formed* and *practiſed* by a *private Company*: as having *limited* my ſelf, not to exceed the number of 128 men. Wherefore my requeſt muſt be that the *courteous reader* when he ſhall find that any *figure* for want of *number* looks *thinne*, (or poor) he will there be pleaſed to *cloath* it in a larger *number*: for that thereby the *Battel* will appear the more *ſollid*, and the *beholder* become the better *ſatisfied*.

This figure fit for a convoy.

This *Figure* may in like manner be *uſeful* for a *Convoy*: the *hollow parts* thereof, being very *commodious* to *ſecure* the *carriage*: the men alſo are very well *diſpoſed* to *help* and *aſſiſt* each other, in whatſoever part it ſhould happen them to be *aſſailed*.

The words of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *figure*, are as follows.

Wheele front and reer into the left-flank.

That

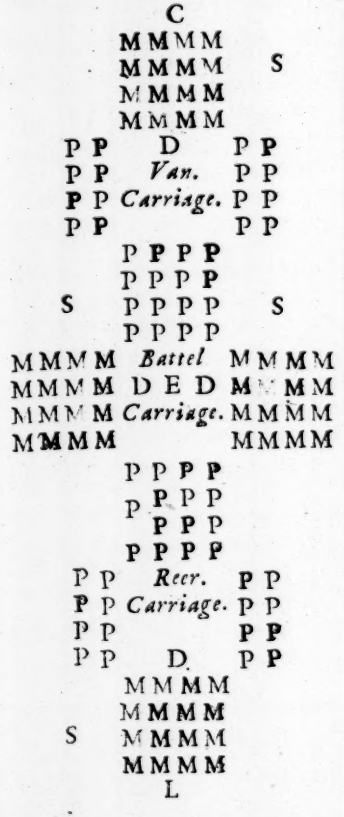
That done, *face* them as before, and the *Musquettiers* will be in *Front*, *Midst*, and *Reer*.

Next, *open* the *Musquettiers* in the *midst* to the *right* and *left*, and cause them to *double* their *Ranks* to the *left*. *The direction to make this figure with a private Company.*

Then cause the *Front-half files* of the *Front-division* of *Pikes* to *open* to the *right* and *left*; and the *Reer-half files* of *the reer division of Pikes* to do the like.

Then, having *evened* their *Ranks*, and *straightned* their *Files*, and being *faced* to their *Leader*, the *Body* will stand in *form* like this ensuing *Figure*.

The hollow Hearse and Cross.

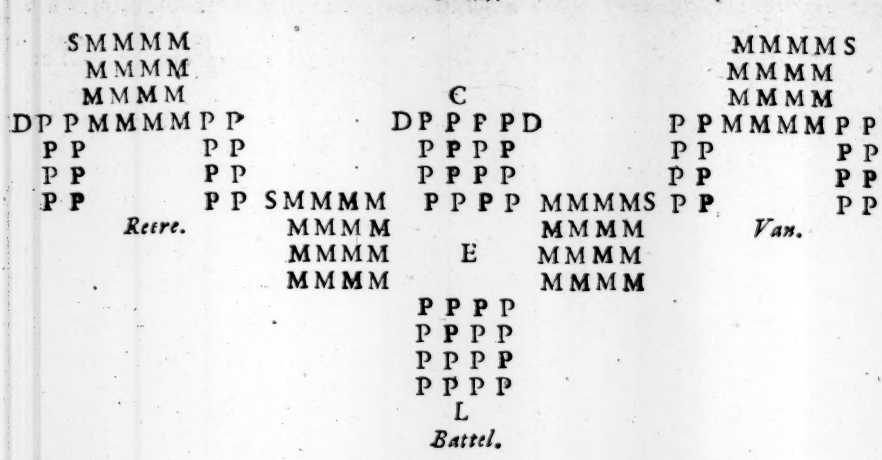


If so be you will *give fire* upon this *Figure*, you may do it any way, or every way. If you *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*, then let your *Musquettiers wheel* all *off* to the *right*, and *place* themselves in the *Reere* of their owne *divisions*. If you would still preserve the *Figure*, then let every *Rank* (before they give fire) *martch up* into their *leaders ground*. *The direction to this fiting.*

Having either *martched* or *skirmished* in this *form*, before I come to the *Reducement*, I will draw one other *Figure* from it; the which I conceive, with some small *addition*, would prove very *serviceable*, even for a *pitcht Field*, were the *number proportionable*. The *Directions* to make this *Figure*, are as followeth.

Frst, command the *Van to make Alt*. Secondly, command the *Cross* (being the *Battel*) *to sleeve up on the left*. Thirdly, command the *Reer to sleeve-up to the left of the Battel*; the *Musquettiers* of the *Reer* still *moving forwards*, until they *stand even ranged* with the *Musquettiers* of the *Van*. This being rightly performed, produce this following *Figure*. *The direction to make the ensuing Figure.*

Front.



This *Figure*, although here demonstrated by the *number* of a single *Company*, yet carrieth the *port* of a * *Regiment*; borrowing the denominations of *Van*, *Battel*, and *Reere*: and may, at the direction of the *Captain* (or other *Commander*) be so *ordered*, and the *Firing performed* accordingly. The *Van* and *Reere*, making the *Wings*, may send forth [a] *loose files* to begin the *Skirmish*. Secondly, they may [b] *give fire even-a-breast*. Thirdly, the *Battel*, *slowly advancing*, may *give fire* at discretion. Upon all these *Firings*, the *Musquettiers* are to *wheel-off* to the *Right*, or to the *Right* and *Left*, taking their places according as direction shall be given. Lastly, to come to the [c] *Reducement*: First, *march forth the Van*; the *Battel*, and the *Reere*, falling successively in their [d] *places*. Secondly, command the *Pikes of the Van and Reere to face inwards, and close their Divisions*. This being performed, cause the *Musquettiers of the Battel to double the files to their right*, and in like manner *to face and close their Divisions*. Lastly, *wheel Front and Reer into the Right-flank*. Which being done, and the *whole Body* again *faced* to the *Front-proper*, all will be *reduced*, as at the first.

* *This Figure especially proper to a Regiment.*

[a] *Note in Cha. 73. the directions of firings by forlorn files*

[b] *The loose disbanded files being returned, the Wings being to give Fire even-a-breast.*

[c] *The reducement.*

[d] *Making again the hollow Hearse and Crosse.*

CHAP. CV.

Of the hollow Square, girdled with shot.

THe *hollow Square, girdled with shot*, is a *Figure* to be used in times of necessity, when as the *Commander*, well fore-seeing he shall be enforced to *fight* (with great disproportion of *number*) he therefore wisely and timely takes the benefit of some * *advantagious ground*, thereon speedily drawing forth, and *imbattelling* his *Army* into this *form*. And that nothing may be wanting, or through neglect exposed to *danger*, the which by any means may be *secured*, all the *Carriage* (which otherwise would not prove *serviceable* and *available*, for the better *strengthening* and *fortifying* some part or other of the *Battel*) should be safely placed in the *midst*. And lest the adverse part taking advantage to breake in at any the spaces between the *Angles*, should thereby breed confusion, or *break their array*, they are suddenly to *impale* those *parts* which offer themselves as *weakest*, (and least *defensible*) with sharp-pointed *Pallisadoes*: A weapon, which hath some-

* *Vneven, rough, bushy and hilly grounds, are all lets and impediments to the Horse.*

some times been used by our [i] *English Bowmen*, with good *success against the French*; and now of late, in our [k] own time, by that worthy *Hero, and Prince of matchlesse memory*, Gustavus Adolphus *King of Sweden, in his warrs of Pole, and Germany, joyning the swines-feather with the Musquet, as a reasonable defence against the incursions of the Horse.* The use of which weapon is now practised and taught here amongst us: by that *worthy Gentleman, and expert Souldier, Captain* Henry Tillier.

But to returne: those parts which lye most open to the *fury* of the *Enemies Horse*, ought to be impaled with *Pallisados (or swines-feathers)* as aforesaid: or if those kind of weapons be wanting, then supply that defect, by speedy casting up a *rampart or brest-work* of earth in each needful place. Nevertheless if time permit not, or that the ground be not *feaseable*, then the *Wagons, Carts*, and other *Carriages*, may be so orderly placed, that of themselves they may be sufficient to *fortifie*, and *defend* those *places*, which otherwise would lye *too open* to the invasion of the *Cavalry*.

This *Figure* may ba as well made with the *Pikes* for-most: but because that the *Musquettiers* may more commodiously *fight* before their *Pikes*, and with lesse danger to their own *body*: therefore I conceive it fittest at first to place them in *front* of their *Pikes*. And if the *enemy* shall too *hotly press* them with his *Horse*, then at the discretion of the *Commander*, they may safely *retire* behind their *Pikes*; the *Pikemen making good the ground of the Musquettiers*. For better satisfaction, observe the *direction* to make the following *Figure*. First, *command a Serjeant to draw forth* all the [l] *odd files* of the *right-flank*, (both *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) and *wheel* them to the *left*, *cross the front*; That being done, *command* the odde *files* of the *left flank*, (as well *Musquettiers* as *Pikes*) to *face* to the *reer*, and let them in like manner be *wheeled* to the *left*, *cross* the *reer*, following their *bringers-up*.

[i] *At Agincourt.*

[k] *Pallisados have likewise been used of late in the Eastern warrs by the name of Swines-feathers.*

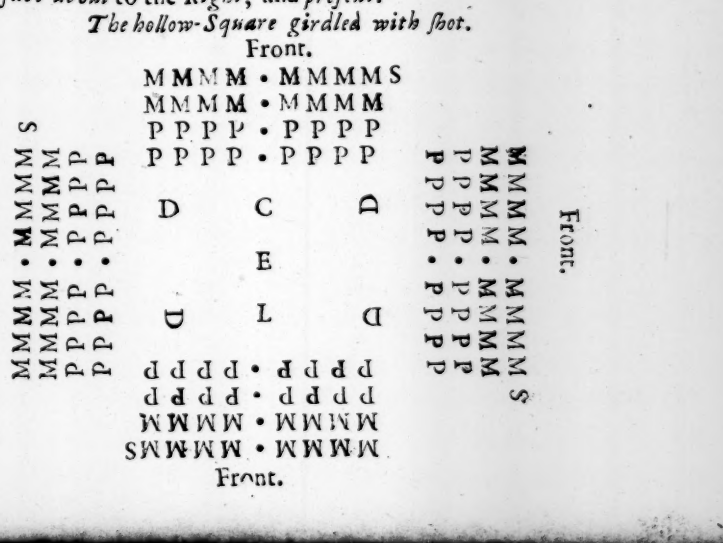
The Musquettiers well experienced in the use of the half-pike either in streight or campania will be too hard for the Horse.

[l] Note that the *odde* files on the *right-flank*, are the *out-most files* to the *right*, the *third file*, the *fifth* file the *seventh*, and so forward (for the rest, if the *Body* be larger) beginning your account from the *outer most file* to the *right*. Note, that the *odd files* on the *left-flank*, are the *left hand-file*: the third, the fifth, the seventh, &c. so still accounting the *odde-files*, beginning with the *out-most file* to the *left*. These directions are for a private Company; a Regiment or larger Body must be otherwise ordered.

For the rest of the *body*, that remains undrawn forth: let them *close* to the *right* and *left outward*; until the *Reer-angles* of each *division*, stand *diagonally opposite* to each other. Then let them be all *commanded* to *face* to the *Center*, or midst of the *hollow-square*, where the *Commander* is to give them such *incouragements* and *directions*, as shall be meet.

Lastly, let all *face-about* to the *Right*, and *present*.

The hollow-Square girdled with shot.



For the manner of *firing* upon this *Figure*, it is as followeth, [a] The *first rank* of *Muſquettiers* (to each *Front*) having *preſented* and *given fire*, they are to wheel all off to the *right*. And becauſe that eight or ten men, are too many to *wheel down* one *Interval* (for that they will be ſo long, before they can clear the *Front*) therefore you may cauſe *Intervals* to be made, between the midſt of each *diviſion*, as you may perceive in the *Figure*. The *firſt rank* having *fired*, and *wheeled-off*, the *next-ranks* are to *move forwards* into their *ground*, they which *wheeled-off*, in the mean time placing themſelves in the *reer* of their *own diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*. The next *rank* of *Muſquettiers* having *fired* in like manner, are to *wheel-off*, and to place themſelves as aforeſaid, the [b] *reſt of the ranks* of *Muſquettiers*, (ſucceſſively) are to do the like, until they have all *given fire*, (once or oftner over) that way, according to the occaſion. And in this *interim* may the [c] *Bow-pike-men* be bountiful in beſtowing their *ſhowrs* of arrows, amongſt the thickeſt of their *Enemies*.

[a] *The direction for this firing.*

[b] *If there be more ranks of Muſquettiers then is repreſented in this Figure.*

[c] *The Bow-Pike men (if at any time uſeful) have in this figure good means to imploy their dexterity.*

If the *Horſe* prevail ſo much, that the *Muſquettiers* may not endure to bear the *brunt* of them: then let the [d] *Muſquettiers* (after they have *fired*) *wheel off*, and place themſelves in the *reer* of their following *diviſions* of *Pikes*: they *moving forwards*, and *maintaining* the *Muſquettiers ground*; *charging* with their *Pikes* (as they ſee occaſion) for *ſecuring* the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*. This notwithſtanding, if the *enemies horſe* ſhall ſtill *preſſe forwards*; and with their *ſhot* ſhall continue to *annoy the Body* (the *Pikes* on this *figure* being eſpecially *defenſive*:) then cauſe the *Pike-men* to *charge* at the *foot*, and your *Muſquettiers*, to *give fire* over them: according to former *directions* on the *Convex half-moon*. After this manner, the *battel* may be continued to the *laſt rank*. When you have *given fire* in this order, your *Muſquettiers* being all in the *reer* of your *Pikes*; if you be minded to *reduce* them into the firſt *orderly ſquare*, this is one way for it. *Paſs through* your *Muſquettiers* before your *front* of *Pikes*, as they were before the *firing*: that being done, let the *Commander face* the whole *body* to the *left-angle* of the *front-diviſion*, by which means he ſhal there find the *half* of his *file-leaders*. This being performed, let them *march*: and ſo *even* their *Ranks* and *ſtraighten* their *files*; the *reer-diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*, orderly following after the *front-diviſion* of the like *Armes*. After this let the *half-files* which then are (which indeed are the *reſidue* of the *file-leaders*) *double* their *ranks forwards* to the *left*: which being performed, the *men* are *reduced* as at firſt.

[d] *The ſecond way of placing the Muſquettiers.*

A third way of firing on this figure

The reducement.

If you would *reduce* them ſome other way, without *paſing through* your *Muſquettiers* (as I have formerly ſaid) then firſt let the *whole body face* to the *left-angle* of the *front-diviſion* and *march*, *evening* the *ranks* and *files*, as foreſaid. Which being done, cauſe the *half-files* (which then are) to *double* their *front* to the *left*; which being in like manner performed, all your *Muſquettiers* are ſtill in *midſt*. Your next work is, to cauſe your *Muſquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left-outward*: and your *Pikes* contrariwiſe, to *face inward*; and ſo to paſſe through, and interchange ground. Thus being *faced* to their *front-proper*, they will be *reduced*, as at firſt.

A ſecond way of reducement.

If any will be practiſing of this form of *Battel*, with a ſmaller number of men (as with 64. or fewer) whereby they will be conſtrained to double their *half-files*, then they wil be *reduced* the ſame way; onely they ſhall not need to *double* their *half-files* again in their *reducement*: as they muſt needs do, were the number larger.

CHAP. CVI.

Of the ſolid Square, with Muſquettiers in Center and Angles. The way to make the Figure with a private Company: how to fire upon it, and to reduce it.

INfinite are the forms and Figures of Battel which may be made: yet all differing either in circumſtance or matter. Some of them are Solid, others Hollow: ſome of them, being *Trines*, *Squares*, *Hearſes*, *Cirtes*, *Creſſents*, *Croſſes*, *Diamonds*, *Plinthyums*, *Pleſiums*, *Paramekes*,

Paramekes, and *infinite* others, Some of them taking their denomination from the nature of their *numbers*. Others according to the *placing* of each *Arms*. A third sort, taking their names from things they most resemble, all of them being necessary to be known, to such which would be accounted skilful [e] *Serjeant Majors*: that so with all *numbers*, upon all occasions, they may readily bring their *Souldiers* into any form or figure of Battel (according as the time, the number, and place will give them leave) for opposition either of horse or foot, or of both conjoyned.

[e] *Majors* ought to be of singular skill and experience that so they may at all times be able (having observed the situation and place) to draw their men into formsmost advantagious to themselves and offensive to their enemies.

Excellent was the Custom of that worthy *Philopemon* the *Achaian*, who when he walked or travelled abroad with his friends and familiars, would mark and peruse the situation of the Country about him: and so contrive and discourse to his companions, that if it so happened an army to *martch* that way, then he supposing to have under his [f] *command* such a number of *Souldiers*, ordered and appointed in such a manner, and *martching* towards such a place; where being upon such a ground encountered, by the great and better prepared Army: Then would he put the question, whether it were fit for him to hold on his way, *retire*, or *make an Alt*; what *peece of ground*, were meetest for him to *seize on*, and in what *manner* best to do it; in what *form to order his men*, and how and in what numbers to place *each Arms*, where to *bestow his carriage*, & under what *guard to leave them*. Next would he propound, if that the *enemy* were for the present *beat-off*; then how with the most *convenience to encamp that night*, which way, and in *what manner* were his *best to martch the next day*, by these and such like continual discourses and meditations, he was grown so *exact* and *perfect*, that he never met with any difficulty, whence he could not explicate himself and followers.

[f] *This kind of practise and meditation, an excellent means to make men expert in this Military trade. Our debosht roaring rabble, (who assume onely the habit of Souldiers to make them seem to be such) never spend their times after this worthy and vertuous manner. Nor indeed hath any attained to be eminent in this Military way, whose ends and aims have bin base and covetous; But such, and onely such, whom love of vertue hath indeared to imp their wings with the plumes of honour.*

Now after so large a digression, return we back to our *single Company*; the work of this *Chapter*, being to shew the *Plesium* or *long square*. In which the *Musquettiers* are *half* in the *midst* of the *Pikes*, and the other *half equally divided*, and *placed* on the *four angles* of the *battel*: the *Pikes* making *four divisions*; as being *placed* upon the *front*, *reer*, and *flanks*. But not to hold you with longer *circumstance*, take these *words* of *command* and *direction*, which produce the following *Figure*.

The Command is, *Four middle-most ranks of Musquettiers & Pikes, interchange ground.*

For further direction, cause the *four middle ranks of Musquettiers to face to the right and left inward.*

That done, cause the *four middle-ranks of Pikes* to *face to the right and left outward*; then let them *move* and *interchange their places*. This done, and *faced* to the *first-front*, produceth the issuing Figure.

The Plesium.

E C

S M M M M D P P P P P P P P P D M M M M S
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
S M M M M D P P P P P P P P D M M M M S

L

S

If you would *give fire* upon this *figure*, it may be performed either to the *front* and *reer*, to the *right* and *left*, or to all *four* together. But which way soever the *firing* be, let the *aspect* of the *Musquettiers* in the midst be turned the same way; and cause the *Pikes* which stand before them, to *charge* at the *foot*, and the * *Musquettiers* in the *Center* to *give fire* over them. The *first-rank* having *fired*, let them kneel (or couch low) upon the ground, *making ready* again, whilest the next *ranks* behind them *give fire*, and do the like: and so forwards for the rest. Having all *fired* once over this way, let them rise up, (and if need be) *give fire* over again, after the same manner. The *Musquettiers* on the *Angles* (in the interim) *giving fire* after the ordinary way, *wheeling-off*, and falling in the *Reer* of the *Musquettiers* of their own *divisions*; the others in the mean time *moving forwards*, and making good their *leaders ground*. This being done, and the *Pikes* having *charged*, the *figure* will still continue to be the same, without alteration; and that as well in *men*, as *matter*, if so be the *firing* be performed according to the former *direction*, either in the Book, or Margin.

* *The Musquettiers in the midst of the Battell may give fire by Extraduction, which will be a better way then to give fire over the Pike mens heads.*

The Reducement.

For *Reducement*, command the *four middle-most ranks of Musquettiers and Pikes to interchange ground*, and they will be *reduced* as at first.

If this be not plain enough, observe these following *directions*: *Musquettiers of the middle-division, face to the right and left outward*; *Pikes of the flank-divisions, face to the Right and Left inwards*: this done, let them *move into each others places*, and *face to the Front-proper*, and they are rightly *reduced*.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the double Crosse-Battell, and severall other forms from thence proceeding.

I Shall now proceed to shew some *forms*, for the *imbattelling* of larger numbers: It being one of the most principall parts of the *Art Military*, to *arrange* your *Battells* into such *forms* as may bring most *hands to fight*, with conveniency, so that one part of your *Battell* do not *cumber* or *hinder* the other; but by their orderly placing, they may be *aiding* and *assisting* to each other: appointing to every *part*, *maniple*, or *division*, their due number, what order they have to keep, *when* and *how* they shall *fall-on*; that so there may be no disturbance in time of *fight*. Therefore, in the *ordering* of your *Battells*, you ought to be carefull of what may happen by *casualty*, or *chance of fortune*; that so by a timely fore-sight you may provide *remedies*.

Especially take notice, that you alwayes have *Reserves* ready, both of *horse* and *foot*, (if you have them in the field) that so by their *timely assistance*, the *broken* and *distressed parts* of the *Battell* may be *upheld* and *relieved*. For many times it so * happeneth, that such a *Reserve* may be an especiall cause to gain a *Victory*; the want thereof (to the contrary) may be a means to *hazard the losse of all*. Of this you may read examples enough in all *Histories*, both *ancient* and *modern*. But I forbear to wade further into these discourses, and therefore return to the work of the Chapter.

* Witnesse *Cæsars* Reserve at the Battell of *Pharsalia*, and infinite others since. And indeed, no good Commander drawing forth his Battalions into what form soever, but he will also provide and place convenient Reserves, both of Horse and Foot.

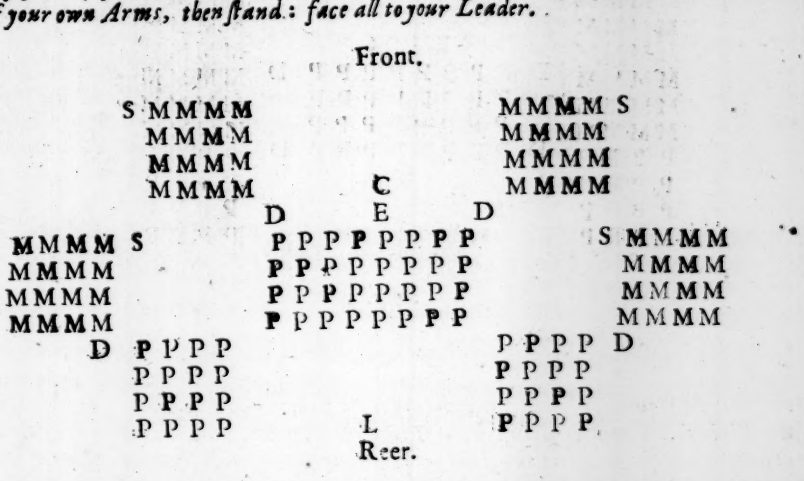
Some *Commanders* have *ranged* their *Armies* into one onely *Battell*, without either *Wing* or *Reserve*: some into two; others into three; some into four; some into five; some six, seven, eight, nine; and some into more. Now although that this small number that I have pitched on, be not sufficient to demonstrate the *Figures* so perfectly (when they are divided into many parts) as large numbers would make them appeare, yet accept of them as they be; for I have purposely chosen so small a number, that such *Captains and Gentlemen as please*, *may make use of them in their practice*. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure*, followeth.

The

The Command is, *Muſquettiers march, until your half-files range even with the Front of Pikes, then ſtand.*

Half-files (of each Arms) face-outward, and march until you are clear of the Angles of your own Arms, then ſtand: face all to your Leader.

Front.



Reer.

If this Firing were to the Front and Reere, then the two laſt diviſions of Pikes may be muſquettiers, the Pikes placed even with the Reer angles of the muſquettiers in Front.

Your *Body* being drawn into this *form*, it ſtands aptly for *Firings* in *Front*; but may very fitly ſerve for to *give fire* to the *Front* and both *Flanks*. If you would *fire* to the *Front*, and preſerve your *Figure*, then the *Muſquettiers* muſt move forwards into their *leaders ground*. If you pleaſe, you may move forwards your *Reer-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*, and make *wings* of them, to begin the *Skirmiſh*. Having *fired* once or twice over, they may *retreit* into their places; and then the *Front-diviſions* may entertain the *Skirmiſh*, and *fire* two or three times over. The *Reer-diviſions* may alſo *give fire* with them, at diſcretion of the *Commander*. The *Pikes*, in the mean time, are to *advance*, *move forwards*, *port*, *charge*, *ſtand*, *retreit*, all according to the *direction* of their *Command*, or *beat* of the *Drum*.

This figure fits to fire to the Front and both Flanks.

Skirmiſhing in front with wings

If you would *give fire* to the *Front* and both *Flanks*, at one and the ſame time, then the *Front-diviſions*, both of *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*, keep their *aſpects*, and *give fire* to the *Front*: the [a] *Reer-diviſions*, as well *Muſquettiers* as *Pikes*, *face to the right and left*, *firing* to the *Flanks*. If they *give fire* moving forwards into their *leaders ground*, then they continue the *figure*. And if the *Commander* think fit, the [b] *front-diviſions* may move forwards, and maintain their *leaders ground*; the *reer-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers giving fire* upon the ground they ſtand, *wheeling-off* to the *right*, (or to the *right and left*) placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquets*; the *Pikes* may *port*, and *charge*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. If this be obſerved, it produceth this following *Figure*.

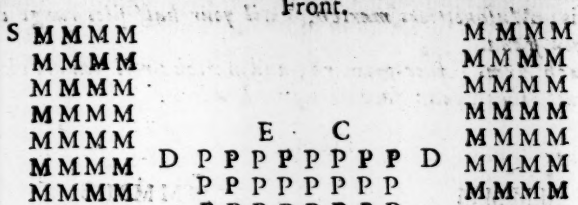
Directions for firing to the Front and flanks.

[a] *Reer diviſions are the half-file-leaders.*

[b] *This Firing altering the place of the Figure.*

Muſquettiers in Flank, varieth the former form to this inſuing Figure.

Front.



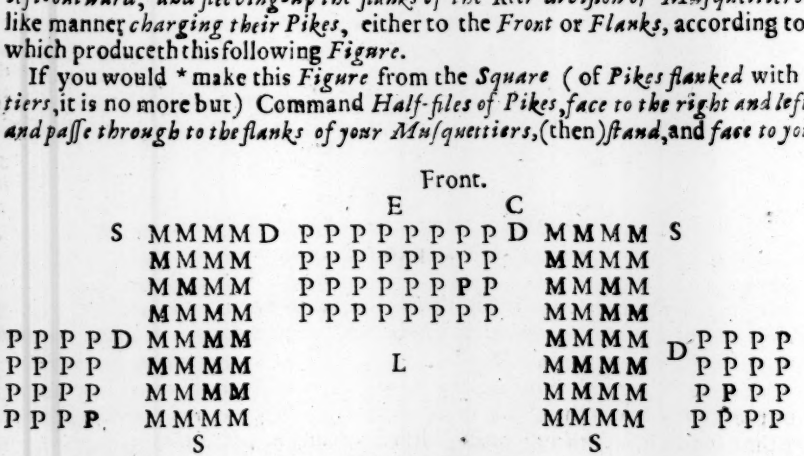
Reer.

If you will *give fire* on this *Figure*, it is to the *Front*; having *fired* once or twice over, the *Front-division* of *Pikes* may move forwards, *porting*, until they *range-even* with the *Front* of the *Musquettiers*, and there *charge* their *Pikes*: The *Musquettiers* still continuing their *Firing*. The *Reer-divisions* of *Pikes*, in the mean time, *facing to the right and left-ontward, and sleeving-up the flanks of the Reer-division of Musquettiers*; there in like manner *charging their Pikes*, either to the *Front* or *Flanks*, according to *direction*; which produceth this following *Figure*.

* *A second way to make this Figure.*

If you would * make this *Figure* from the *Square* (of *Pikes flanked* with *Musquettiers*, it is no more but) Command *Half-files of Pikes, face to the right and left-ontward, and passe through to the flanks of your Musquettiers*, (then) *stand*, and *face to your Leader*.

Front.



Reer.

I cannot stand to enlarge my self upon every *Figure*, to shew the several *Firings* that may be produced from them; let it now suffice that I demonstrate the *Figure*, and give directions how to *make* and *reduce* them: any ingerious Reader that hath well perused my Book, must needs (by this time) be able to conceive the several wayes and *Firings* that each *Figure* may produce, almost at first sight. And therefore I will spare the pains, and come to the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, lest the Chapter prove too long. Having *given fire* upon this *Figure*, either to the *Front* or *Reer*, or to both together, and the whole *Body* again *faced* to the *proper Front*, * Command the *ont-most divisions of Pikes to face to the right*

* *Reducement.*

right and left inward, and passe through the Musquettiers into their places: then *face to the front*, and all is *reduced*.

CHAP. CVIII.

Why it is necessary to know variety of forms: *the way to make four severall figures, demonstrated in this Chapter, with their Reducements.*

HE that will *Range his Battalions* alwayes into one *form*, may be likened to that *Physitian*, or *Chirurgion*, that for all *sicknesses* or sores, hath the self-same *potion* or *plaister*. Not considering, that *time, number, place, quality of arms*, and many other like *respects*, will be great sticklers in the ordering of *Armies*. Moreover the number of the *enemy*, his exceeding either in *horse*, or *foot*, the placing of his *Ordinance*, the *order of his array*; any of these or other such like, may induce the *politick* and wise Commander sometimes to alter, and vary his form, as may be most advantagious for himself, and *prejudicial* to his *Enemy*. But proceed we to the *figures* of this *Chapter*, the which may be done, either by a *single Company*, *Regiment*, or *Army*.* Nevertheless, although I have no more *divisions* of *shot* in my *Figures*, yet if you have numbers sufficient to imbattel, then place more divisions of *Musquettiers* in the *wings*, *front*, *flanks*, *reer*, or any other needful part, as I have demonstrated by little *printed squares*: So much for the general, come we now to the particular directions for this following *Figure*.

* *He that shall alwaies accustome himself unto one form of battell, give the enemy too much advantage.*

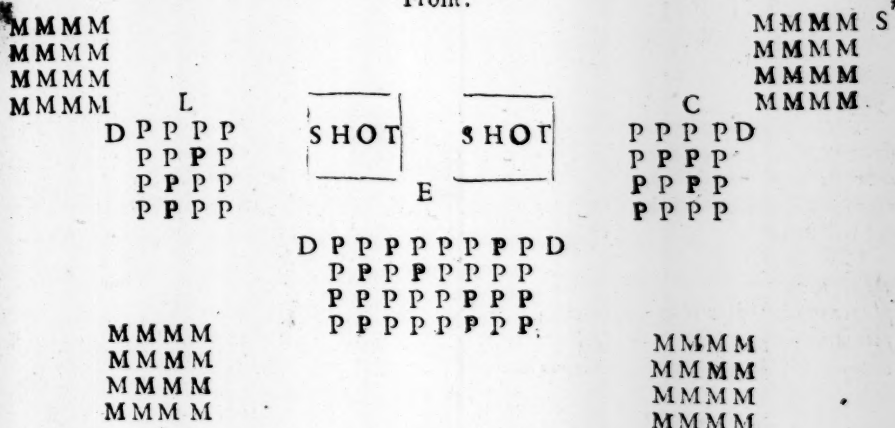
* *Every Company ought to be two parts shot the third part Pikes.*

Front-half-files, face to the right and left, martch till your *Pikes* range even with the *Musquets* of the *Reer-half-files*, then, *stand, and face to your Leader*.

Half-files of Musquettiers face to the Reer (that done) *Musquettiers* (*both of front and reer-division,*) *martch to the Angles of your Pikes* (then) *stand*, and *face all to your Leader*, or *proper Front*.

The direction to make this form with a single Company.

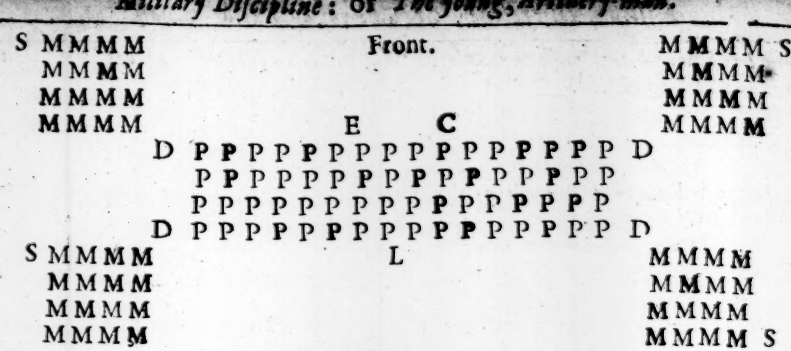
Front.



Reer.

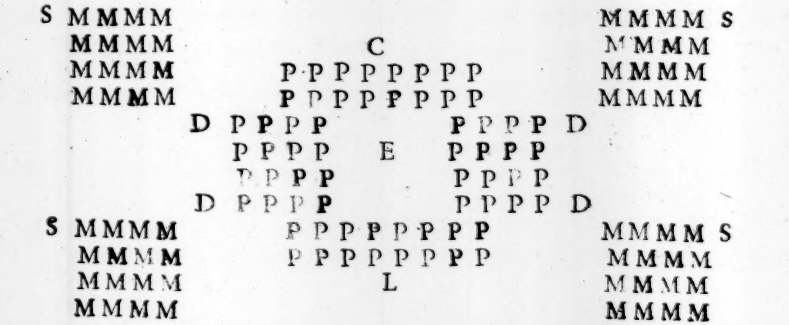
In this *form* you may *give fire*, to the *front* or *reer*, or both together. You may *give fire*, and still continue your *form*, or if you please, the *Battel* of *Pikes*, may move forwards and *Range* with the *flank divisions* of *Pikes*: the *Reer-divisions* of *Musquettiers facing outward*, and moving after the *Front-divisions* of *Musquets*, even with the *Reer-angles* of *Pikes*, which produceth this ensuing *Figure*.

The way to fire and alter the form.



If you cause the *two first ranks* of the* *Battel of Pikes* to move forwards, and the *two last Ranks* of the *Battel of Pikes* to move towards the *Reer*: it will produce this ensuing *Figure.*

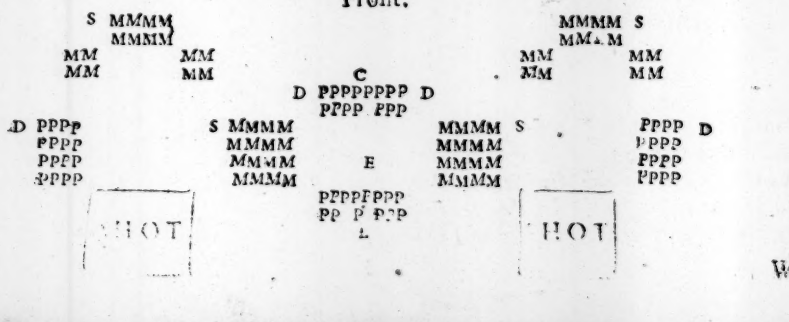
* The battell of pikes are those under E in the first figure of this chapter.



If you would *skirmish* on this figure, the *Musquettiers* are so placed, that they may *give fire* any way, the *divisions* of *Pikes* in like manner, either in single *bodies*, or three of them *a-brest*, may move forwards into the *Front*, or if occasion be into the *Reer*, *porting*, and *charging* at discretion. Having *marched* or *fired*, (or both) in this form: if you please we will proceed to another. The words of Command, and Direction, are as followeth.

* Direction to make this figure with a single Company.

* *The two flank-divisions of Pikes, open to the right and left, till you stand clear of your Musquettiers.* (Secondly,) *two Reer-divisions of Musquettiers, move forwards into the places of the Pikes that removed.* (Thirdly,) *two front-Divisions of Musquettiers, move forward till you be clear of the Front of Pikes.* This done, *open the two last Ranks of the first divisions of Musquettiers to the right and left,* which presents this following *Figure.*



When

When you peruſe this *Figure*, ſleight it not becauſe of the *thinneſſe* of the numbers in each part; but conceive that where two *Ranks* are placed *ſingle*, there for ſervice, peradventure two *Companies* (or more) may be drawn-up; and ſo anſwerable for each other part, according to the *number* and *ground*. When you *give fire* upon this *Figure*, whether with a *ſingle Company*, or more conjoyned, it muſt be in a *Regimentall* way. The *Pikes* ſtand ready ordered, if need be, to *relieve the Muſquettiers*. But come we now to the *Reducement* of our *Company* again to their *firſt-order*; wherewith wee will conclude this Chapter.

Two laſt ranks (of the Wings) *of Muſquets, cloſe your diviſions. Reer-diviſions of Muſquettiers, move forwards, and cloſe your diviſions, after the Muſquettiers in the Front. Two firſt ranks of Pikes, cloſe-back to the two ranks in the Reer. Flank-diviſions of Pikes, face inward, and cloſe your diviſions.* Laſtly Command, *Pikes, move forwards and even your Front of* Muſquettiers. If there be any *Intervalls* (or *Diviſions*) in the *Flanks*, Cloſe them, and all is *reduced* as at the firſt. The reducement.

CHAP. CIX.

The Trained Bands one of the three main ſtrengths of this Land: the wayes to make them perfect Souldiers in the handling their Armes: The Checker Battell; with ſeverall other Formes, either for a Company or Regiment.

IT was the *Spartan glory*, being demanded of her *walls*, to preſent a groſſe of *Military bodies*: wherewith they not only for many Ages defended themſelves; but raiſed their fame to ſo high a pitch, that they became *terrible* to others. Our *In-land*, with *Sparta*, hath no other *Forts, Faſtneſs*, or *Fortifications*, to withſtand the Enemy, ſave our (I would I might have ſaid *experimented*) *Souldiers breſts*. Take a ſurvey of the whole, and you ſhall ſee, that the ſtrength of our Land (like the *Roman Legions*) conſiſts of our [a] *Haſtati, Principi*, and *Triarii*. [a] Tooke's Legend of Britain-mart.

Our *Sea-men* in their *wooden Forts*, and *Caſtles*: our *Rocks, Shelves*, and *Sirtes*, that *lie-a-long our Coaſts*: and our *Trained Bands* on the *Land*; our *laſt refuge*, and *chiefe Bulwark* of Defence. Now conſidering the *facility* of the two *former*, how carefully ought we to look to the *latter*? That our *Souldiers* be often *practiſed*, and taught their *Poſtures*, and well-handling of their Armes: That there be places provided for the [b] *Muſquettiers* to *ſhoot Bullets* at the *mark*; (and *Prizes* for them that do beſt:) That there be places appointed for ſome *Squadrons*, and *diviſions* of each *Armes*, to meet but one hour or two in the week (at times moſt convenient) to be inſtructed in *Motions* and *Firings*, by the ſeverall *Officers* of each *Company*: That there might be ſome *Immunity, Priviledges*, or *Allowance*, to the *Officers* of the *Trained Bands*, towards their expence of *time* and *charges*: That there ſhould be countenance and incouragement given to thoſe that are diligent in the practice of *Armes*, and the ſtudy of the *Art Military*. Theſe, and ſuch like *honey dewes*, would water the parched barrenneſſe of our *Militia*, and fatten the root, to a fragrancy of *experiment*: initiating, and ſupplying the nerves and joynts, to an activeneſſe of *motion*. The want hereof, leaves us *dull* and *ſnoring* in the lap of *ſtupid ſecurity*; and renders us *ridiculous* in the *eyes* of our *Enemies*. [b] *Many of the Trained Bands dare not ſhoot a Bullet for want of practice. And very few know what proportion of powder to uſe to give the due charge.*

But pardon my digreſion, *the zeale of my Countries good had almoſt intricated my intentions; caſting me a-ſhore where I had not the leaſt intent to ſee the Land.* Now, with your good leave, I return to the work of this Chapter: in the which, and the former, I (for the more delight of ſuch Captains and other Gentlemen, that love to practice *numerous*

rous forms and *Figures* of *Battel*, have fitted and ſtored them with *variety*; ſome for the *curious* and *quainter Souldier*; ſome for the *ſolid* and *experimented Souldier*; and ſome to direct the *unskilful* and *ignorant Souldier*; that ſo either may come and feed according to his own fancy, and not be *cloyed* with a continual intercourſe to one and the ſelf-ſame *diſh*. The *Command* and *Direction* for the firſt *Figure* followeth:

The Cômmand is, *Two firſt and laſt ranks of Muſquettiers and Pikes, interchange ground.*

That done, *Muſquettiers move till you all ſtand clear of your Pikes.*

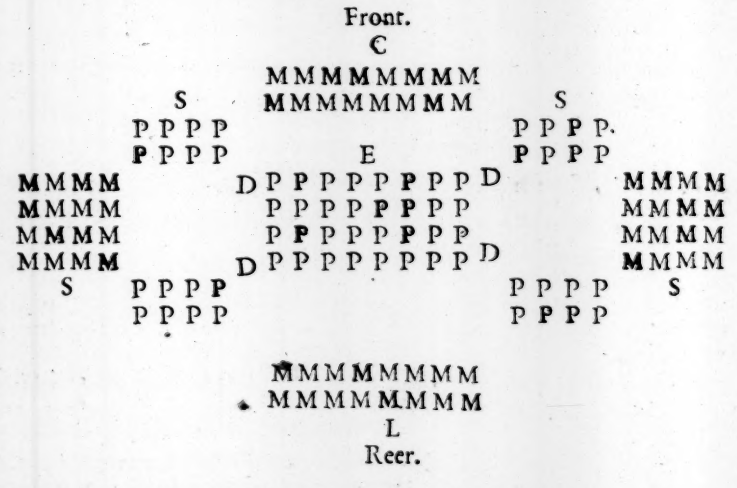
The Direction is, *Two firſt and laſt ranks of Pikes, face to the right and left-outward.*

Two firſt and laſt ranks of Muſquettiers, face to the right and left-inward.

That done, *Interchange ground, and face as before.*

Laſtly, *Let the Muſquettiers of the Front, Reer, and Flanks, move to the Angles of the Pikes, and face all to the firſt-front.*

With larger numbers, where theſe are but two deep, make them 6. or 10. deep. This is a very good form for the Muſquettiers with half-pikes.



In this *form*, the *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, or *Flanks*; any way, or every way. If you *fire* to the *Front*, the *Muſquettiers* of the *Front-diviſion* having *fired* two or three times over, the two *diviſions* of *Pikes* on their *Angles* may *advance*, and *charge*, whileſt the *Muſquettiers* that laſt *fired*, *face to the right and left by diviſion, and place themſelves behind their Pikes*; the *Muſquettiers* of the *Flanks*, in the interim, *moving forwards*, and *firing* at diſcretion: The *Reſerve*, or *Reer-diviſion* of *Muſquets*, may in like manner be brought-up to *fire*, as you ſee fit; each *diviſion* may be *ſheltred* by their *Pikes*. From this take a ſecond *Figure*, with a little alteration. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure* followeth.

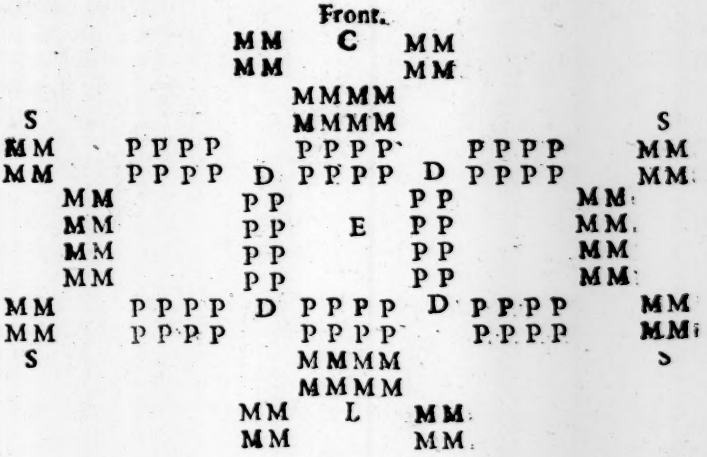
Two out-moſt files of each Flank of the Front-*diviſion of* Muſquets, *move forward to the Angles of your own Diviſion.*

Two out-moſt files of the reer-diviſion of Muſquets, *move to the* Reer-*angles of your own Diviſion of* Muſquets.

By two out-moſt files, under ſtand the two outer-moſt files on each part, as well of Front and Reer, as Flanks. And although two deep cannot properly be tearmed a file, yet let it produce no Criticiſme, ſeeing it could not be avoided, conſidering my number.

Two

Two last Ranks, of the two outer-most files of the Flank-divisions of Musquets, face to the Reer; and move to the Reer-angles of your own divisions.
Two first Ranks of the two out-most files (of the flank-divisions) of Musquets: move forwards to the front-angles, of your own divisions.
Four inmost files of the Battel of Pikes: face to the front and reer: (then) move to the Angles of your own division of Pikes.
The whole Body face to the Front.



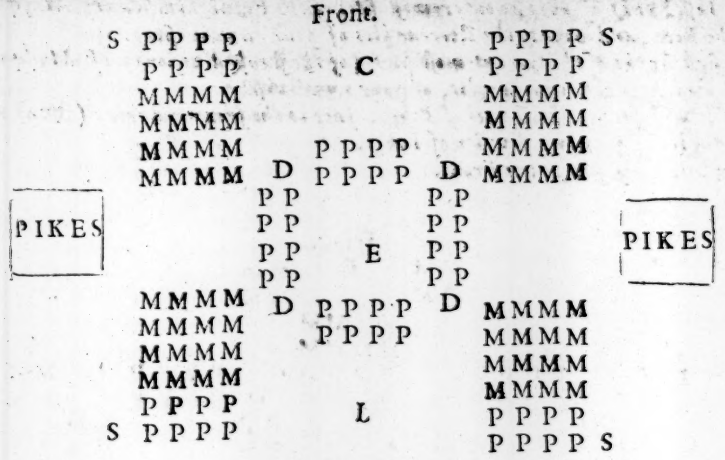
This is a very good form for the Musquetiers with half pikes.

Although this *Figure* be here demonstrated by such smal *divisions* of men, let it not perplex the opinion of its worth, rather cast your eyes on the *several divisions of each Arme*, and supervise their *orderly placing*. How *offensive* to the *enemie*, how *defensive to themselves*. To demonstrate the several wayes of *firing* upon it, would prove as *tedious* as needless; Let it suffice that they may *fire, advance, retire, pow on their shot, and retreat behind their Pikes, inlarge their intervals*, or *joyn into one grosse*, any of them, or all of them, at discretion. Come we now to a* *firing*, that shall produce another *figure*. Let the *firing* be directed to the *Front* and *Reer*, and to that end command *half the Body to face about*; the out-most *files* of *Musquettiers* (which were advanced) begin the *firing*; doing their execution on the same ground (without moving forwards at all) by which means they become even in *Rank* with the *Musquettiers* from whence they were drawn: and so *give fire* together, once or twice over.

* *A firing to produce another Figure.*

You are further to observe, that the *Divisions of Pikes* on the *Wings*, are in the interim to advance (forwards) beyond the *Musquettiers*, there *charging their Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* then having *fired again*, are to *face to the right and left outward*, moving and placing themselves, behind the divisions of *Pikes*. The *Flank-division* of *Musquettiers*, in the interim of the *Pikes charging*, are to *give fire* after the same manner, as the others did before them: and lastly, place themselves behind the *shot* that began the *firing*. The *Bodies* of *Pikes* in the midst of the *Battel* (if occasion be) may move forwards and *charge*: if they keep their standing, and *face to the first front*, this ensuing *Figure* will be produced, &c.

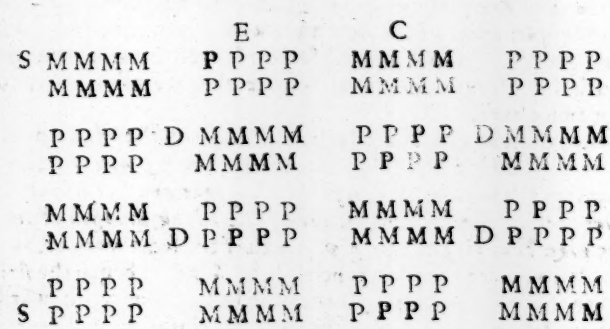
Front.



Reere.

This *Figure* according as the *Muſquettiers* ſtand now placed, is moſt fit for *firings* by *Extraduction*, but may by drawing forth of the *Muſquettiers* be varied into ſeveral other *forms*, as the occaſion and diſcretion of the Commander ſhall think meet, as the *Quadruple Horn-Battel*, to *Front* and *Reer*, and many others. Nevertheleſſe, becauſe I would not be tedious, I will next form the *Checker-Battel*. * Therefore to that end, cauſe *the Pikes in the midſt to cloſe their diviſions.* (That done) *let the Battel of the Pikes face to the right and left outward, and place themſelves even between the diviſions of Muſquettiers, and all face to the front.* This being done, the Body ſtands divided into two deep *Hearſes*. Next command, *firſt four Ranks (of each Hearſe) ſtand, the reſt by four ranks in a diviſion, move forward, and range even with the front.* This being performed, your Body ſtands in a long *Checker-Battel* 4. deep, and 32. a-breſt. If you will make them 8. deep, with diviſions (four of each Arms) checker-wiſe; Command one of the *flanks* to double the other by *diviſion*. If you pleaſe to make 16. *diviſions checker-wiſe*, and 8. deep (which is the Figure now intended) command, *left-flank, double the depth of your right-flank intire*, the which produceth this following *Figure*.

* *The direction to make the Checker-Battel, either with 16. diviſions of each Armes, or with 8. diviſions.*

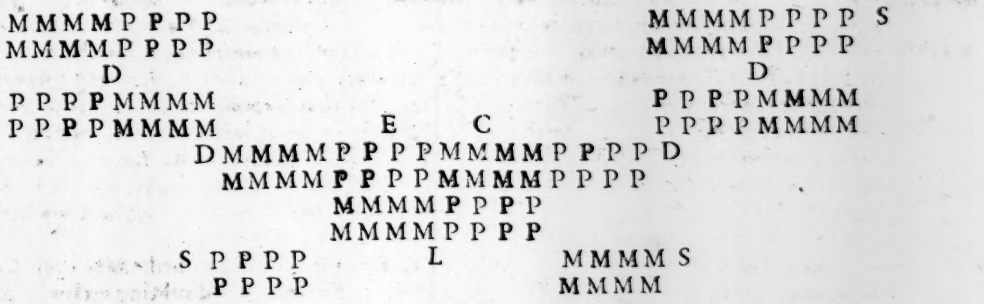


I ſhould

I should be much too tedious, should I enlarge my self upon the several *Firings*, and *Figures* of *Battel*, that might be drawn from this *Checker Form*. I shall demonstrate one, and so draw towards a conclusion of this Chapter. For the which, command the * *Front-half of the Body to face to the right and left-outward*; (then) *move to the Angles of the standing part of the Body*: That being done, *Stand, and face to the Front again*: Next, command the *two Reer-angle-divisions, face-about, and move to the Angles of the standing part of the Reer*; (then) *face to the Front again*; and it produceth this following *Figure*.

* By front-half, is to be understood, that half of the Body next to the front.

Front.



Reer.

Any ingenious *Souldier*, at first sight, may contrive several wayes, and *Firings*, upon this *Figure*: And therefore, not to discourse what may be done, nor with what varieties to be done, I will come to the *Reducement*.

The reducement.

To which end, in the first place, *close your divisions* again into the *Checker-Battel*.

2. Command the *Front-half of the Body*, *face to the right*, and *move* until they are *clear of the standing part*: then *face as before*.

3. Command the *four out-most files, to the right of each division, stand*; the rest of the *Body*, *by four files in a division, invert after the right divisions*. Now your *Body* stands in two *Hearse-Battels*: Let the *hindermost* move forwards even-a-breast with the *foremost*, keeping the *Interval* open between them.

4. Command *all the Pikes of both divisions*, *face-inward*, *and close their divisions*.

Lastly, command *Musquettiers and Pikes*, *both of Front and Reer*, *close their divisions to the Battel of Pikes*. This being done, and all *faced* to the *proper-front*, they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first.

CHAP. CX.

How a Captain, or superiour Commander, ought to be qualified: What is requisite to every common Souldier. The use of variety of Forms and Figures of Battel, with several Regimental Forms, that may be practised with a single Company, and the Reducement.

Politick Stratagems having many times procured great victories.

NExt after our *Prayers*, for blessings from above, *Policy* and *Stratagems* of *War* have been found most prevalent; as more *availing* than numerous *strength*: seldome failing, most time gaining the wreath of *Honour*. Yea, perhaps, by some mean and ordinary *wile*, the which being once known, grows despicable; as falling within the capacity

of the meaneſt judgements. Of this, *holy Writ*, as well as *prophane Hiſtory*, is ſtored with ſufficient examples.

A ſecond *means*, conducing towards the *advance of Victory*, is the **love of our General, Captain, or Commander*; a *Jem* more prizable and eſtimable, then the beſt *armours of proof*; as being of ſuch force with the *Souldier*, that he will never *ſhun danger*, nor refuſe to hazzard the greateſt difficulties; (the further) thereby to *ingratiate* himſelf into the favour of his *worthy Chieftain*, whom for his *vertues* he *really affecteth*. For the attaining or gaining this *love of the Souldiers*, it were neceſſary, in the firſt place, that ſuch *Commanders* were known to be *well-qualified with skil*, having good [a] *experience* of the *Warrs*: for the *Souldiers* will not eaſily flinch or fly from ſuch a *Commander*, whoſe *wiſdom*, *skill*, and *experience*, they are well-aſſured of. Secondly, the [b] *Valour* of our *Chieftain* is not of leaſt *importance* to confirm the minds of the *multitude*: for the *courage* and *skill* of the *Commanders* makes even a *cowardly people hardy*: the want thereof, works the contrary effects. Thirdly, [c] *Juſtice*; for that *Captain* which with equity and juſtice can rule his *Souldiers*, neither ſuffering them to do injury to others, nor receive wrong to themſelves, ſhall gain the love of his *Souldiers*, and fear of his *Enemies*. Fourthly, [d] *Temperance*: and fifthly, [e] *Liberality*. Theſe together, build-up a man fit for the imployment of his *Prince and Country*. But whither am I ſoaring? let me check my flight and return to the common *Souldier*.

* *The Souldier is to love his General, a matter very conſiderable.*

a *Experimented skil*

b *Valour.*

c *Juſtice.*

d *Temperance, and* e *Liberality*

" *Xenophon* declareth, that ſuch *Souldiers* as ſerve *God*, and are obedient to their *Captains*, may boldly and couragiouſly fight with their *Enemies*, not doubting victory. Add theſe three other pertinent neceſſaries to every *Souldier*: Firſt, to [f] *harden the body*, that ſo it may be *inured*, and made *capable to endure pains*, *want*, *and travel*, with patience. Secondly, to *handle our Arms with facility and ſafety* Thirdly, to learn to keep our *orders*, in *martching*, *encamping*, and *fighting*: The which, as it cannot alwayes be in one and the ſelf-ſame *form*; neither ought the *Arms* to be alwayes placed after one and the ſame manner; but be varied according to the occaſion, and the wiſe fore-ſight of the *politick Commander*. Therefore whoſoever would be perfect in this part of the *Art military*, muſt often accuſtom [g] himſelf to the contriving and *drawing forth* of many and ſeveral *forms* of *Battel*, conſulting their ſeveral *uſes*: As ſome againſt *Horſe*, others againſt *Foot*; ſome againſt *Horſe* and *Foot*: ſome for *ſtraits*, ſome for *Campania*, ſome for *Hilly and Mountainous places*, other for *Valleys and watry places*; ſome for *boggy and rotten ground*, ſome for *woody and bushy grounds*; ſome for *night*, and ſome for *day*. Theſe notwithſtanding, *time*, *number*, and *place*, will thruſt-in *accidents*, and often cauſe alteration of the moſt ſetled and ſelected *form*. Nevertheleſs, the *Captain* thus ſorted for all occaſions (*like the skilful Chirurgion, having ſalves for every ſore*) may with more *boldneſſe* addreſſe himſelf to ſuch enterpriſes, as by *command*, or *chance*, ſhall be caſt upon him.

f *Souldier ſhou'd inure their bodies to hardſhip.* *Hannibal effeminated his Souldiers by once wintering them in Capua.*

g *Excellent Commanders do oftentimes accuſtom themſelves to contrive and imbattel ſeveral forms.*

Theſe conſiderations prompt me to proceed; queſtioning the length of my diſcourſe, that hath ſo long detained you from the *Figures* of this Chapter. The which that I may timely remedy, take the *h Command* and *Direction* for this following *Figure*. Command the *Muſquettiers of the two firſt and laſt ranks face-inward*, the *Pikes of the ſame ranks face-outward, and interchange ground with the Muſquettiers*. Secondly, Command the *Reer-half of the* 8. *inner-moſt files face about*: That done, Laſtly, let the 8. *files, ſo faced to the* Front *and Rier, move to the inner moſt* Front *and Reer-angles, then ſtand, and face all to the proper-front*; by which this *Figure* is produced.

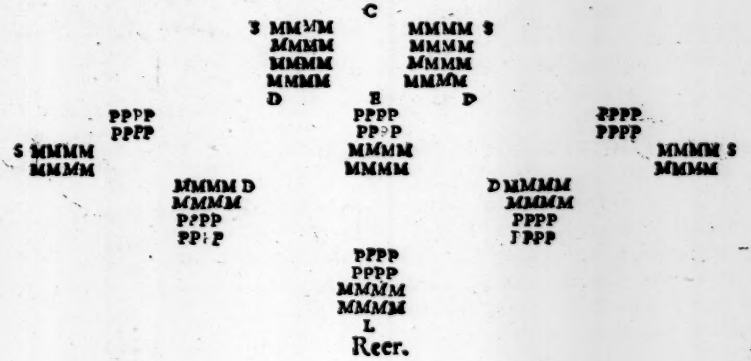
h *The Command and Direction to make the following Figure.*

Front.



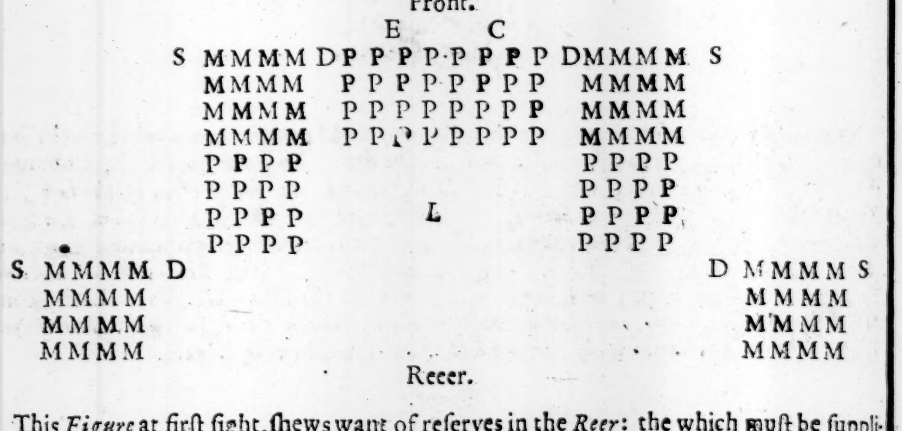
The Musquettiers of the flank divisions may be drawn forth clear of their Pikes, and fire any way according to direction or they may give fire by extraduction.

Having *fired* at discretion upon this *Figure*, and brought them again into the same *Order*. Observe a second form drawn from the first. To make the which, Command the *first four ranks of the flank divisions face outward, and move clear of the last four Ranks*: then stand, and *face as before*. Secondly, command the *front-division open to the right and left* (until they have made a *sufficient Interval* to receive another *division*;) then stand. Thirdly, command the *left-flank*, (or *half-ranks*) of the *Reer-division advance forwards and place themselves behind the Interval, of the* Front-*divisions*. Lastly, command the *Musquettiers, on the outer-most divisions, face outward, and move clear of their Pikes*. These Commands *duely executed*, renders this following *Figure*.



This *Figure* ſtands very apt for *fight*, each *Armes* being ſo placed, that they may be aiding and aſſiſting to the other. The *Diviſions*, *Maniples*, or *Battels* are ſo orderly contrived, that they may *advance*, *retreat*, or *relieve* one another, without any let, impediment, or incumbrance. When you have *given fire* at diſcretion upon this *Figure*, if you would come to a *Reducement*, cloſe the *Diviſion* back into their places from whence you drew them; and cauſe the *Pikes* of the two firſt and laſt *Ranks*, to interchange ground again with the *Muſquettiers*. This done, all is reduced as at firſt. But before we come to the concluſion of this Chapter, proceed we to ſome other *forms*, to ſatisfie the deſirous. The *Commands*, *Directions*, and *Figure* follow. * *Half-files* (of each Arms) *Face to the right and left outward, and move* (until the *Pikes* ſtand right) *after the Muſquettiers of the Front-half-files* (then) *ſtand and face as before*. Secondly, command *half-files of Muſquettiers face about, and move down even with the Reer-angles of Pikes*, then *ſtand and face to the front*. By the execution of theſe Commands, this *Figure* is produced from the ordinary ſquare of *Pikes* flanked with *Muſquettiers*.

The direction to make the following Figure.



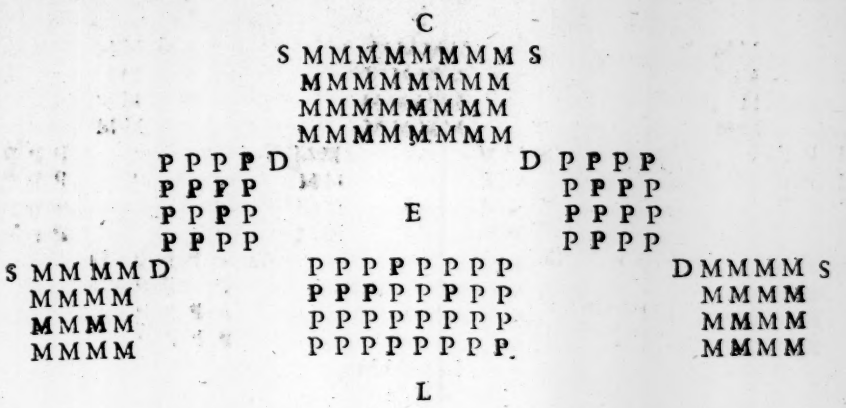
This *Figure* at firſt ſight, ſhews want of reſerves in the *Reer*: the which muſt be ſupplied either by *number*, by *nature*, or by *art*, If number be wanting, the * *Natural ſcituation* of the place affording either *Ditch*, *Wood*, or *River*, may ſuffice as a *reſonable defence*. If *number* and *nature* be both nigardly in their aſſiſtance: then let *Art* ſupply the defect, by *impalling the Reer*, with the *Wagons*, *Carts*, and *Baggage* of the *Army*. Having *given fire* on this *figure*, as you may ſeveral wayes, ſometimes placing the *Muſquettiers* in the *Reer* of their own *Diviſions*; and ſometimes in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*: The *Pikes* in the mean time ſometimes *porting*, ſometimes *charging*, ſometimes *advancing* forwards, and ſometimes *retreating*. From this take another *Figure*, the which is thus to be made: *Face the whole Body about*, and command the *Muſquettiers* (the which then are in the * *Front*) *to cloſe their diviſions*. Laſtly, Cauſe the *two reer-diviſions of Muſquettiers*, *face to the right and left outward, and move clear of the Pikes*, the which ſtood before them, (this done,) peruſe the *Figure*.

** Natural ſcituation availes much for the defence of a battel.*

** This facing about hath made the reer the front.*

Front

Front.



Reer.

When you *give fire* on this *Figure*, the *Muſquettiers* of the *Front-diviſion* are to *wheel-off* to the *right and left*: Nevertheleſs, if you would have them *wheel* all *off* to the *right*, then open the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*, and make them an *Interval*. Having practiſed and tryed your *Souldiers* ſufficiently on this *Figure*, we will come to another: but firſt, * *face your Body about again after their proper File-leaders.* Secondly, Command the *Front-diviſion of Pikes, face to the right and left*, then *move*, and place themſelves *before the two other diviſions of Pikes.* Thirdly, Command the *two Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers move forwards, until their Reer be even with the Front of Pikes*; then, *face inwards, cloſe their diviſions, and face to the* Front. This produceth a *hollow Square*, the *Muſquettiers* being in the *Front and Reer-diviſions*, the *Pikes* on the *Flank-diviſions*. I forbear the *Figure*, being the ſame with that in Chapter 103. proceed we to our next *Figure*; to make the which, firſt Command.

* The Body re-faced about after the proper File-leaders

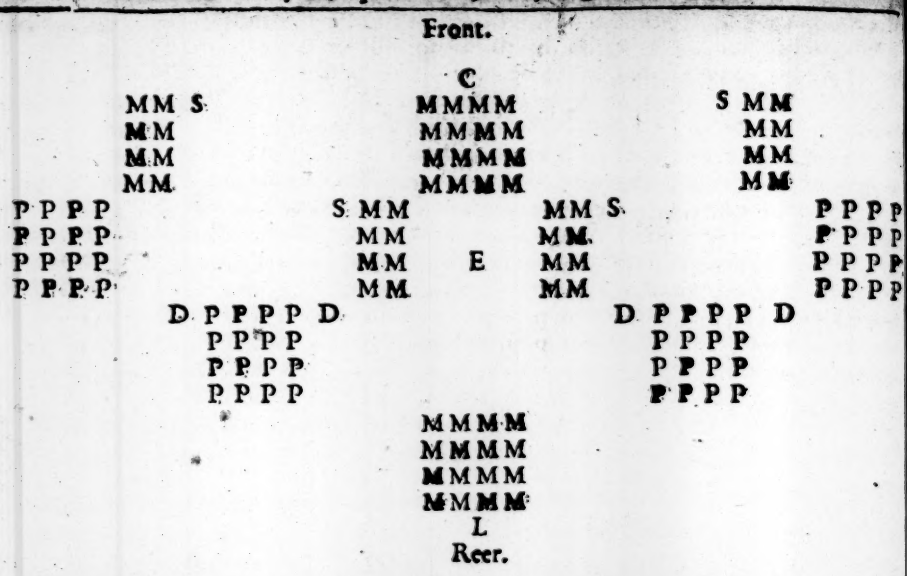
Two out-moſt files (of each Flank) of the Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers, face to the right and left; then, *move to the out-moſt Angles of your Pikes.*

The direction to make this following Figure.

Secondly, Command the *two out-moſt files of each Flank of the Reer-diviſion of Muſquettiers, ſleeve-up on the inſide of the Front-diviſion of Pikes.*

Thirdly, Cauſe the *Front-half-files, of each diviſion of Pikes, face-outward, and move to the out-moſt Angles of your Wings of ſhot. Face all to the Front.*

Front.



It were needleſſe to tell you, that this *Figure* is moſt eſpecially uſeful for *Firings* in *Front*: Nevertheleſſe, it may in like manner very fitly ſerve for *Firings* in the *Reer*, provided, that you *face them about*, and then *move forwards your ſmall diviſions of Muſquettiers into the Front*: By which means, in like manner, it might be made a ſerviceable *Firing*. But not deſiring to be tedious, I will come to the *Reducement*, and ſo conclude this Chapter. First, Command the *two out-moſt files (or wings) of Muſquettiers face-inward, and cloſe their diviſions*. Secondly, Cauſe the *Muſquettiers in the Reere to move forwards into the Interval ſtraight before them*. Thirdly, Command the *outer-moſt diviſions of Pikes face-inward, and cloſe before the Reer-diviſions of Pikes*: then, *face as before, move forwards, and even the Front of Muſquettiers*. (This done, your *Muſquets* are all in the *midſt*, the *Pikes* on the *Flanks*.) Laſtly, Command, *Muſquettiers and Pikes, interchange ground*. This brings all into the firſt order.

The reducements.

CHAP. CII.

Of the Muſquet and half-pike, with the ſeveral ways that have been tried to make the Muſquettier defenſible againſt the Horſe. As alſo, ten Queries objected, to the Half-pike and Muſquet.

WHen I firſt began this Edition, I had not the leaſt intent to ſpeak any thing of the uſe of the *Half-pike* and *Muſquet*, but have wholly reſerved it until another time; yet at the importunity of ſome of my familiar friends, though it were late, yet they were not willing it ſhould be left out. Nevertheleſſe, when I conſidered that it had been the unhappy fate, even of the *greateſt* and *beſt inventions*, to be embaſed and vilified, yea, and to be accounted of but as idle fancies or dreams, before they were publiſhed; and being once made known, ſuffering too much embaſement, as being often under-valued, and accounted of but as a thing that every one could have well performed. And hereof I might

might demonſtrate many examples. Wherefore, if the * *paſſion* of *Envy* have in it any thing *allowable* and *natural*, as having *anger*, *fear*; and other like *affections*, it is in ſome ſuch caſe as this; and ſerveth againſt thoſe which would uſurp, and take to themſelves the *knowledge* and *invention* wherewith *God* hath denied to indue them. *Rawleigh Hiſt. mundi

Therefore, were it not for the common good, and the great affection that every one ought to bear to his Country, it would appear more commendable in wiſe men to conceale their ſtudies, making their *funerals* in their own *boſomes* (whence they had their firſt *births*) rather then to expoſe them to the publick, where *vertuous ſtudies are too often cruciated* by the *darts of envy*, which *malignant ſpirits too frequently pour upon them.* Notwithſtanding, I will not altogether diſcourage my ſelf, although I know by ſufficient triall, that *Cynnicks will bark at thoſe they know not*; and *others*, *of as bad a nature*, *will accompany their clamours*: For ſo it is with the inconſiderate multitude, who wanting that *vertue* which we call *honeſty*, and that *ſpeciall grace* which we call *charity*, *condemne* without *hearing*, and *wound* without any *offence given.* This I can ſpeak, with *pitty* to my ſelf, as having too frequent and familiar *experience* thereof. But of theſe *Natures*, that *lie as it were in* * *ambuſh*, *to carp and find fault*, endeavouring to wreſt *good intentions* to their *evill conſtructions*: ſeeing the *Wiſe-man* complained of ſuch long ſince, and that *Nature* hath not been wanting to thruſt-off the ſame *brood* daily into the World, as bad, and perhaps more malicious; I will leave them to their eaſie wayes of reprehenſion, then which there is nothing of more facilty, and return to the work of this Chapter. *Eccleſ. 13.

Having often conſidered with my ſelf the danger of the *Muſquettier*, and how unable he is to *reſiſt the Horſe*, after he hath *ponred forth his ſhot*, without he be *ſheltered* either by ſome *naturall* or *artificiall defence*; and withall having know'edge, that in ſeverall parts of *Chriſtendome* divers *Captains and Souldiers* have oft been trying concluſions, to make the *Muſquettiers* as well *defenſive* as *offenſive*; ſome by *unſcrewing the heads of their Reſts*, *and then ſcrewing the ſtaffe of their Reſts into the muzzel of the Muſquet*, with the *arming of a Pike at the lower-end*; by which meanes, they would uſe the *Muſquet* and *Reſt* together, in the nature of a whole *Pike*. But this proved ſo tedious and troubleſome, that it fell without profit. Another ſort had made *Reſts*, with the one end of the *fork* (or *head*) being like a *ſpike*, about 12. inches in length: This alſo proved extream troubleſome to themſelves, *dangerous* to their *fellowes*, and of no *validity* againſt the *Enemy*. A third ſort had *Half-pikes* of about 7. or 8. foot in length, uſing it after the manner of a *Reſt*; but all the while the *Muſquettier* was *charging* (his *Muſquet*) one of them was enough to trouble a *whole file* beſide the danger in the *recovery*. A fourth ſort there was (yet better then the former) that with a *hook was faſtened to the girdle*, *the while the Muſquettier was making ready*; but this had his defects alſo, as being both *tedious* and *troubleſome*. Many other wayes and concluſions have alſo been tried, with ſucceſſe like the former, which I forbear to demonſtrate; for as their conceits proved uſeleſſe, ſo the diſcourſe would prove as fruitleſſe. Laſtly, my *ſelf*, with another * *Gentleman* of *our ground*, (both well-affecting the uſe of the *Muſquet*) found out a way to uſe the *Half-pike* and *Muſquet*, with ſo much *facility* and *eaſe*, that it is *farre leſſe troubleſome then the Reſt*; and yet of a *greater length* than any of the former *Reſts*, or *Half-pikes*; as being compleat 10. foot in *length*, with the *arming*. *Mr. John Davies of Blackfriers.

All the former *devices*, if they could have been brought to any *maturity*, yet would have falne farre ſhort of this, for the *triple uſe thereof*: As being a *Reſt*, if there be no further occaſion: As being a * *Palliſado* (if there be occaſion) to *defend the Muſquettier from the Horſe*: As being a *Half-pike to uſe in Trenches*; as alſo when our *ſhot* have *poured out a feather.* *Or ſwelling

great volly or shower of *Lead* on the adverse *Musquettiers*, they may then *nimbly* with their *half-pikes fall in amongst them.* And lastly, for the *pursuit* of an *enemy*, it being of all others the *best weapon.*

† *Musquettiers with half-pikes fittest for to be sent in parties.*

If a *party* of *Musquettiers* were to be sent out, those using the *half-pike* of all others are the fittest, for that they are able to *offend their enemies*, and best able to *defend* themselves. If after they have *given fire*, they should be *overtaken* before they have *made ready again*, and *charged by the Horse*; Yet they are able to defend themselves with their *half-pikes*, even in the time they are *charging*: for the *front-half-files* may couch with their *half-pikes charged brest-high, and swords drawn to keep off the Horse*, while the *Reere-half-files give fire* over them, whereby they will be sufficiently able to *defend* themselves, and *annoy their enemies.* In a word, the *half-pike* and *Musquet* for them that know how to manage it, is of so *excellent use*, that the worth thereof cannot, nor ought not to be confined to the poor demonstration of an unskillfull Writer, that will not take the liberty of a Hen to keckle over her own Egg: but leave it to the wide world to vindicate its own reputation. Therefore now let us come somewhat neerer, and examine *what queries* or *objections*, have been made against it, and you shall find these *tenne* following, *viz.*

1. *If Musquettiers with half-pikes be to encounter against Pikemen and Musquettiers with Rests (seeing there hath been no triall) whether Armes in reason would have the advantage.*

2. *Whether the Musquet and half-pike be as serviceable against Horse, as the Musquettier with the Rest and whole Pikes.*

3. *Whether the Musquet and Half-pikes, can as conveniently be used in all respects as the Musquet and Rest.*

4. *Whether the Musquet and Half-pike be usefull in Trenches and Fortifications.*

5. *Whether the Musquets with* Half-pikes *can be used in woods, where ambushments are usually laid, if not, where those half-pikes are to be bestowed.*

6. *Whether the charge wherein the half-pike exceeds the Rest, will be countervailed by the services it hath beyond the Rest.*

7. *Whether in Company, or Regiment, it be convenient and necessary, to have whole Pikes, or no.*

8. *Whether Palisadoes or swines-feathers, be not as serviceable against the* Horse, *as the* Half-pikes.

9. *Whether if all these queries and objections have a satisfactory answer, it be necessary or convenient, that the use of the* Half-pike *and Musquet be knowne, before we have publique occasion for service.*

10. *Whether the weight of* Half-pike, *by which it exceedeth the Rest, be not more troublesome counter-poysing all the benefits it hath before the Rest.*

These *Queries* have been urged by men not of the meanest *Ranke*, nor *skill*, but even of such whose *opinions* were very *considerable*, and whose *judgments* could not *easily be misled*, unto which they received such satisfactory answers, as you may further peruse in the Chapter following.

CHAP. CXII.

The tenne Queries objected to the Musquet and half-pike fully answered. The Halfe-pike *joyned with the Musquet approved to be very usefull, as having received approbation from divers Souldiers of great Ranke and quality.*

HAving in the last Chapter shewed the queries objected to the *Half-pikes* and *Musquet*; Come we now without preamble, to give an answer to each of them successively.

ly. To the first we say, That * *Musquettiers* with *half-pikes* have the odds, against *Musquettiers with Rests* and *whole Pikes*, for these and such like reasons; for presuppose what number you please, the one half *whole Pikes, the other Musquettiers and Rests.* The *fight* being begun at *distance* (as must needs be conceived) *the half-pike-men pour on a great deal more shot, at least three to one:* by which means the adverse part must needs be *broken and spoiled*, before they can possibly come up to the *push of pike*. Secondly, they that escape death and wounds, if their hearts serve them to come up to the *push*, will be so *weary, wind-lesse*, and out of *order*, with their *hast*, that they will not be able to stand against their Adversaries, who *keeping their ground*, will neither be *weary nor out of order*. Thirdly, the *Musquettiers* that come up *a breast* even with their *Pikes*, will with them be sufferers of the like inconveniences; and now being come to *close fight*, are not possibly able with their *Rests*, to withstand the better armed *half-pike-men*. Fourthly, if there were any reasonable proportion of *whole Pikes joyned* with the *half-pikes* & *Musquets*, the advantage then would be unquestionable. † To the first.

To the second we say, That *Musquettiers with half-pikes, instead of Rests*, are more *serviceable against horse, than whole Pikes and Musquettiers with Rests*, for these reasons: First, *Whole Pikes alone are two weak*, because the *Horse-man* carries *fiery weapons*, & can *kill the Pike-man at distance*, they neither being able to *defend* themselves, nor *offend* their *enemies*. Secondly, *musquettiers with Rests*, are not able in open *Campania*, to withstand the *able and resolute Horse-men*, which will *break* them through & through. Thirdly, both conjoyned in one *body*, are too *weak* in *open* and *even Countries* to withstand the *Horse*: for if your *Pikes* be *flanked* with *Musquettiers* (according to the usual manner) then the *Horse-men kill the Pikes* at distance (as aforesaid) and *rout* and *plunder the Musquettiers on the flanks*, they having little possibility of aid from their *Pike-men*, when the *Horse* are entred *pell-mell* amongst the *Musquettiers, knocking* and treading them down. Fourthly, If they draw into any other form of *impalment*, then one armes becomes a trouble to the other, neither being able to performe their due *execution*. Fifthly, *Musquettiers* with *Half-pikes*, are able in any *forme* or *figure* of Battel, to defend themselves from being broken by the *Horse*, and by so much as their *fiery weapon* doth exceed the *Horse-mans in execution*; by so much they will be too strong for him in the *open field*: and farre more in a *straight* or place of *advantage*; where either *Nature* or *Art* hath secured the *flanks*.

To the third we say, That the *Half-pike joyned with the Musquet*, may as conveniently in all respects be used for * *ease*, and indeed is more accommodable than the *Rest*, being more *expedite* for *execution*; and far more safe for *defence*. † The *Rest* was devised only for to ease men when the *Musquets* were of 18 or 20. l. weight: but now the *Musquets* are made lighter (as not exceeding 10. l. or 10 l. and 12

To the fourth we say, That the *Rest* is of no use in *Trenches* and *Fortifications*, where men present upon a *breast-work* or *parapet*: the *half-pike* in such cases may be *useful*; as when it happens they come to *close fight*, where it proves advantagious.

To the fifth we say, Neither *Rests* nor *Half-pikes* are necessary or useful for the *Musquettier* to *carry* in *woods and thickets*: whether it be to lay *ambushments*, or to the contrary, to *search them out*, and *beat them off*. Yet in such cases they are farre more useful than *whole Pikes*, being more easily mannaged. Nevertheless if it be in great *timber woods and forrests*, there the *half-pike* may prove *useful* and *portable*. But if it shall be found inconvenient for such *service*, then they are to be disposed in the *Carts*, and *Wagons*, of *Ammunition* or else-where, as opportunity shall be offered.

in the Magazines) *the Rest is of small use: therefore no marvail the Souldiers throw them away: But the half-pike is an offensive weapon, yea so far exceeding the Rest, that it is many waies more serviceable than the sword it self, both for offence and defence.*

To the sixth we say, That the service considered of the *Half-pike*, the charge of it above the *Rest*, is not considerable: for a *serviceable Half-pike* may be had for 2.s.6.d. which exceeds not much the price of a *Rest*. Further, when it shall appear, that the *Half-pike* and *Musquet* will prove more advantagious to our Nation, in case of invasion, then it can be to any Enemy invading; then it may be presumed, were the charge farre greater then it is, yet it ought not to be neglected.

To the seventh we say, That *whole-Pikes* by no meanes are to be left, or neglected; because, for some services they are especially usefull: notwithstanding $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ part at the most is sufficient, either for *Company*, or *Regiment*; for the *Musquettiers* are easily transferred into *Pike-men*, by changing of their Armes when occasion requireth, but the *Pike-man* cannot so soon, nor so easily be made a *Musquettier*, when the suddenness of the occasion, or the quality of the Warres shall require it.

To the eighth we say, That *Half-Pikes* are equally usefull and serviceable against the Horse, as the *Pallisado*, when in the same kind they are used, *viz.* being struk or fastned into the ground; and hath these * advantages above the *Pallisado*. First, the *Pallisado* is alwayes troublesome to the *Musquettier* in the carrying, being never helpfull in the *Martch*: But the *Half-pike*, like the *Rest*, (and better) affordeth much ease to him that carrieth it, without trouble. Secondly, the *Musquettier*, while hee carrieth his *Pallisado* in his hand, cannot *give fire* upon occasion; but the *Half-pike* is then as *usefull* as the *Rest*. Thirdly, there can no use be made of the *Pallisado* against *Foot*: but the *half-pike* is then a serviceable weapon; and indeed is not only *half-pike*, but also hath all the accommodations both of *Rest* and *Pallisado*.

* *The half-pike may be sooner wounded than the Pallisado*

To the ninth we say, because *England* is ill-furnished with Horse, the benefit of the *Half-pike*, in defending the Charge of invading Horse, is more necessary for us to embrace than for others; and therefore it ought by us generally to be practised.

To the tenth we say, That which hath been already delivered, and continual practice will make manifest, First, that the weight the *Half-pike* hath above the *Rest* is *doubly recompensed* by other benefits. Secondly, Experience makes it appear, that the weight, though it be more than of the *Rest*, yet it is no way more troublesome.

Let me add one benefit more of the *Half-pike*, although it concern none of the Queries: The *Musquettier*, whether he use *Rest* or *Half-pike*, can do no *execution* at any great distance, if he want *powder*, *match*, or *bullet*, the which often are in the one or other found defective; then the *Half-pike* is useful. Secondly, grant the *Musquettiers* to be wel-accommodated with fix *Armes*, and well fitted with good *powder*, *match* and *bullet*, yet sometimes the extremity of weather, even in the joyning of the *Battel*, may make the fiery weapon of no use, by exces of haile, snow, rain, or the like: but then shall the *Half-pike* have great advantage above the *Rests*, it then being a serviceable weapon, either offensive or defensive.

Now although this might suffice to give satisfaction to any rational men, yet besides this, it hath had the *approbation* of many of the better sort of *Souldiers*, that have seen the use thereof: as Sir *Thomas Glenham* Colonel, a Gentleman of as serene a judgment, and as great a lover of *Arms*, as any I know in the *whole Kingdome*; as also Lievtenant Collonel *Chamberlain*, an approved *Souldier* in most of the *German* Warrs, the which have been in our time; who took such an especial liking to it, that he caused a *Swedish youth* that attended him, to learn the *use thereof*, and two of his *Serjeants*. Many others, both of skill and quality, that have seen it practised, have also given their approbation unto it. But I would not be tedious; therefore take this one for all, the which may serve to stop the mouths of the most malicious; it is a Letter sent by the Lord Viscount WIMBALDON.

DON, *to the President, and Gentlemen of the Artillery Garden, London,* the third of *March*, 1637. The Copy of which Letter I have inserted *verbatim*, as followeth.

The use of the Half-pike and Musquet together.

WHereas the *Half-pike* and *Musquet* being practised by some *Gentlemen* using *Armes* in the *Artillery Garden*, which are *Armes* both *offensive* and *defensive*, and, after consideration of them, being desired to give my opinion of their usefulness; These are to certifie, that having well considered of the usefulness of the Invention, my judgment is, that *these Armes may prove very serviceable, and advantagious to the defence of the Kingdome*; *and therefore I hold it fit that they should be practised*, for these Reasons following.

First, That in regard that the greatest danger of this Kingdome doth consist in being surprised, and that there is nothing can defend *a Landing-place better*, than *Horse* with *Musquettiers* behind them; So I hold the *Half-pike* the more serviceable, for that the *Horse* shall carry both *offence* and *defence* by those *Armes*, and in farr shorter time come to the *Landing-place*, then any *Foot*; the *Horse marching* further in a day, then the *foot* in three.

Secondly, They are better than *single Musquettiers to force a quarter*, being mounted-up behind *Horse-men*.

Thirdly, They are good in *Trenches*; for they will be able to defend themselves with their *Half-pikes*, after they have *discharged* their *Musquets*; for want of which, the *single Musquettier* is forced to retire, to a great confusion, and hindring those that are behind them.

Fourthly, And above all things in *Skirmishes*, when no *Pikes* are able to defend them, they are able to defend themselves; and when they do retire, as ordinarily they do, behind the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, being forced by a stronger *Enemy*, they are able to *gall the Enemy* upon the *Flanks*, and do great service without danger.

Fifthly, In *narrow straits and passages*, they can *defend* and *offend* more than any *Pikes* or *Musquettiers*; for where *Pikes* and *Musquettiers* cannot serve, they will do double service with single bodies.

For these and some other Reasons, I approve of the exercise of them in your several meetings; and do think it fit, *that all such Practitioners of these Armes* (which I could wish were more) *be not interrupted nor hindred in the use of them, but may receive good incouragements, for the better prosecution and finding out the compleat use and perfection of them*: And that the *Captain* and other *Commanders* of the *Company*, at their several times of *exercising*, *constantly put in practice the said Armes*; which I doubt not but will be found very advantagious to his Majesties service.

Cecill house, Martii 3. 1637. WIMBALDON.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of the Half-pike, how it may be serviceable on all formes: with several Figures, indifferently useful to Half-pike or Rest.

THe *Musquet and Half-pike*, having thus vindicated its reputation, it were needlesse to speak further to it; although much more might be said to good purpose, in the further *approbation* thereof. Nevertheless, being that as yet it hath not been seen by his Majesty, and his Councell of Warre; and till then it can receive no general allowance; the

use thereof for the present, being only for voluntary Companies, and such other Gentlemen, that practise the experiment for the good of the Kingdome; Therefore I must entreat my loving friends at present to accept of the *Postures* of the *Musquet* and *Half-pike*; and hold me excused that I do not enlarge my self in discoursing the *motions*, *formes*, and *figures* most proper to that weapon: Seeing, I hope, before it be long the use thereof being perceived, will be enjoyned by authority, and then, God willing, I will write something for the *Musquet* and *Half-pike* by it self. And now we will proceed to the *Postures* supposing our *Musquettiers* to come ready *charged* and *shouldred* into the *field*, and from thence make the entrance upon our *Postures* of the *Musquet* and *Half-pike*.

The *Carriage* of the *Half-pike* upon a *march*, may be useful these four several waies,

Viz. The *Musquets* being shouldered, the *Half-pikes*, { *Advanced.* / *Ordered.* / *Comported.* / *Trailed.* }

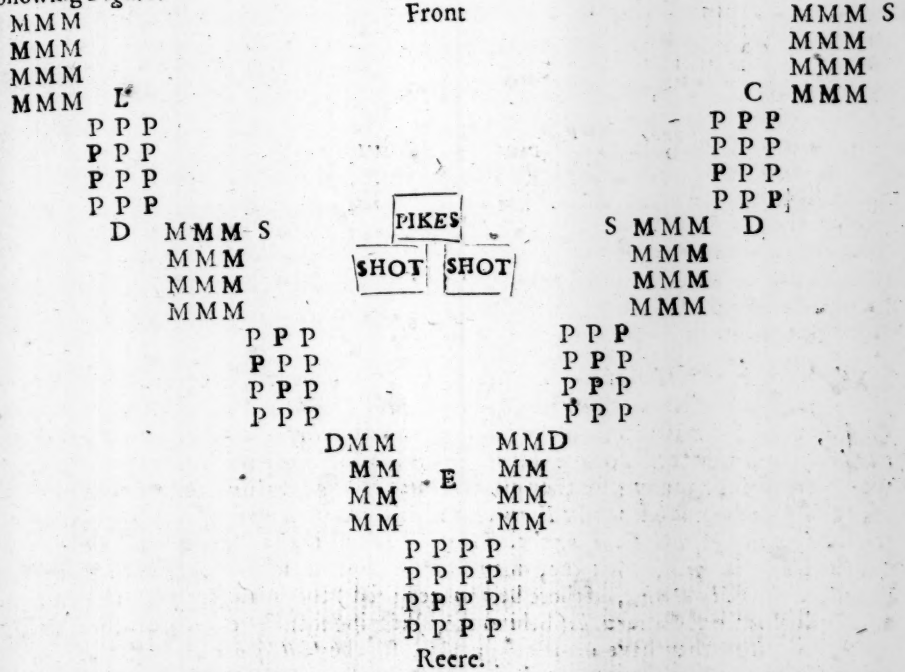
1. *A full Body of Musquettiers marching with half-pikes advanced, is glorious to behold to our Friends: Terrible to be seen of our Enemies.*
2. *Marching with Half-pikes ordered, is no other but as a staffe to ease you in your march; or as you use the Rest marching in the Right-hand.*
3. *Comporting your Half-pikes marching, is to be understood, when you march under Trees, or some such place where they cannot be ordered or advanced.*
4. *Treyling your Half-pikes is at such time as you march thorow low woods, and thickets, when the Half-pikes can neither be advanced, ordered, nor comported.*

Being come to the place where you mean to shew the *Postures* and *motions* of the *musquet*, joyned with the *Half-pike*. First, take the *half-pike* into the *left hand* with the *Musquet*. Then.

Unshoulder your Musquets and poise.
Joyne your half-pike to your Musquets.
Pitch your Armes.
If the wind be high, then
Sink your musquets down to your * *devise.* (*Which most call a Ketch.)
In case of showers or raine,
Reverse your Musquets.
Recover your Musquets and half-pikes.
Draw forth your match.
Blow your Coal.
Cocke your / *Fit your* } Match.
Guard your pan.
Blow the ash from your coale.
Open your pan.
Present upon your half-pike.
Give fire brest high.
Dismount, joyning your half-pike, to the out-side of your musquet.
Uncock and return your match.
Cleere / *Prime* / *Shut* } Your Pan.
Cast off your loose cornes.
Blow off your loose cornes, and bring about your musquets and half-pikes to your left sides.
Sink your musquets upon your half-pikes.
Charge with Powder.
Draw forth / *Shorten* } Your Scowring-stick.
Charge with bullet, and put your scouring-stick into your Musquet.
Ram home your charge.
With-draw / *Shorten* / *Returne* } Your Scouring-stick.
Bring forward your musquets and half-Pikes.
Raise your musquets into your Rests.
Ground your half-pikes for the Horse.
Draw forth / *Cock* } Your Match.
Blow, Open, and Present, either in single rank, 2. 3. or 4. ranks together.
Give fire altogether.

Now

Now having ended the *Poſtures*, for matter of *ſirings*, *formes*, and *figures of Battell*; there is none in all the booke, but is *uſefull* one way or other for the *Half-pike*: either in the way of a *Reſt*, of a *Half-pike*, or of a *Palliſado*, and ſo may be uſed accordingly; but I have too long held you in diſcourſe: proceed we now to demonſtrate ſome more *formes*, the which may be indifferently uſefull, either for *Half-pikes* or *Reſts*, &c. Firſt, Command, *Wheele your flanks into the front*, and then *face all as before*, this brings all the *Muſquettiers* into the *Front*. Secondly, Command the four *innermoſt-files* (as well *Muſquets* as *Pikes*) to ſtand, the reſt of the Body to *face* to the *right and left*, and more untill there be *Intervalls* made ſufficient to receive the *Muſquettiers* of the ſtanding part, then *ſtand, and face as before*. Thirdly, Command the *three outer-moſt Files of each flank* to *move*, and leave *Intervalls* as aforeſaid. Fourthly, Command the *middle-diviſion ſtand*, the other *diviſions move forwards*, till their *reere* be *advanced even* with the *front-angle* of the *ſtanding part*. Fiftly, Command the *two out-moſt diviſions move forwards*, placing their *Reere* as aforeſaid. Laſtly, Command the *Muſquettiers* to *face outwards*, and *move cleere of their whole Pikes*, then *face as before, and ground their Half-pikes*, as in the following *Figure*.



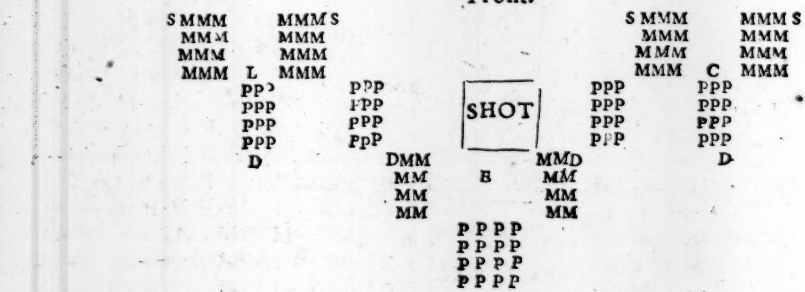
When this *Figure* is drawn, if your *Muſquettiers* be *Reſt-men*, then they may *fire*, and fall in the *Reere* of their own *diviſions*. Secondly, they may *give fire*, and *flanke* their *Pikes*. Thirdly, they may *give fire*, and place themſelves in the *Reere* of their *Pikes*, &c. If your *ſhot* be *Muſquettiers* with *Half-pikes*; Then if there be any feare of the *Horſe*, cauſe them to *ground* their *Half-pikes*, in the forme they now ſtand, the which being performed, they may *give fire* at diſcretion, either by *ſingle rankes*, by two, three, or foure *rankes together*: having *fired*, they may either *face-about*, and move out of the

Horſe-

Horſe-mans ſhot, untill they are ready again; or they may place themſelves *behind their Pikes*, according to the former directions for the *Reſt*, &c. If at any time the *Horſe* chance to find the *Muſquettier* unprovided, that is, take him in the time he is *charging*, before hee is *ready*, then *three or* * *foure of the former Ranks of ſhot may couch with their Half-pikes, (the one end againſt the ground, the other breſt-high) holding it Palliſado-wiſe in the left-hand, their Swords drawn in the right*; in this manner keeping-off the *Horſe*. The *Reer-half-files of Muſquettiers*, in the meane time having *made ready*, may ſecurely *poure-out their ſhot upon the Horſe*, either by *ſingle Ranke*, or by *two Ranks* together, which the *Horſe* are not able long to endure. Having *given fire* ſo often as you pleaſe on this *Figure*, Command the *fore-moſt diviſion of Muſquettiers on each Wing, to face-about and move, untill they range even with the next diviſions of Muſquets, then ſtand, and face as before.* Next, Command the *two fore-moſt diviſions of Pikes face-about, and move, untill their Front range even with the Reere angles of the two Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers*, then *face as before*, and it produceth this following *Figure*.

* *Four Ranks of Half-pikes being in this manner charged, are ſtronger then ſix Ranks of whole pikes charged over-hand.*

Front.



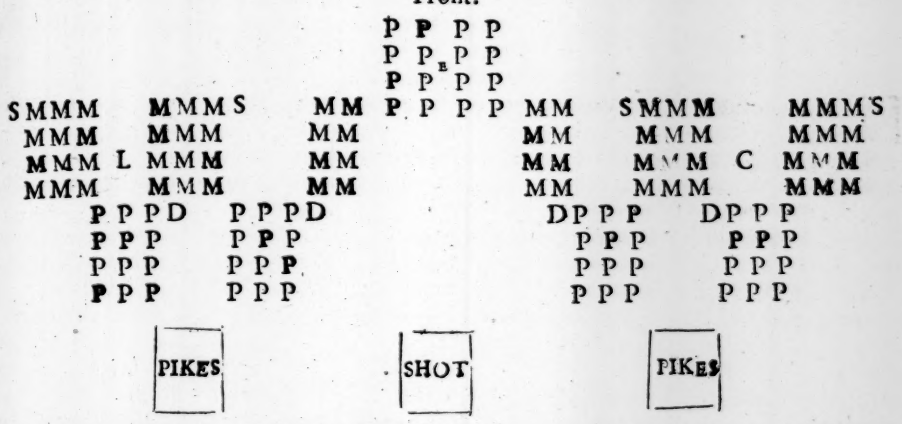
Reere.

When you have well peruſed this *Figure*, you will perceive that each *Battell, Manniple*, or *Diviſion*, ſtands well *ordered* and prepared for fight; if any *part* happen to be *diſtreſſed*, the other may readily move *forwards* to their *reliefe*; or they *retreit* without *incumbering* one another. For the wayes to *give fire* on this *form*, there are ſo many, that it were pitty to diſcribe any; for they may fire, *advancing, ſtanding*, or *retreiting*. They may alſo *give fire* and keep their *Figure*, the *Muſquettiers* moving forwards, and maintaining the ſame *ground, flanking* their *Pikes*, or falling in the *Reere* of the *Pikes*. If your *Shot* be *Half-pike-men*, then they may doe all this and more; for after that they have grounded their *Half-pikes*, (if there be any ſuch need) they may *give fire*, and *retreit*, by paſſing down into the *Intervalls* (behind them) keeping themſelves ſecure from the *Horſe-mans ſhot*, untill they have *made ready* again; for the *Half-pikes* ſticking in the ground (*Palliſado-wiſe*) *Rank* after *Rank*, the *Intervalls* are ſafely enough *blockt-up*. They may alſo, having *poured-on their ſhot*, fall behind their own *Diviſions* of *Pikes*: This being done, and the *Muſquettiers made ready* again, then they may *give fire* by * *Extraduction*, the *Pikes porting* over them, &c. Let not the *eaſineſſe* of the making, nor the *aptneſſe* of varying from one *form* into another, any way diſparage the work; for thoſe *Figures* that are beſt for *ſervice*, and *ordered* with moſt *facility*, are ever to be preferred. With ſome little alteration, proceed we to a third *Figure*: For the making whereof, Command the

* *Of Extraction, look into the Chap.*

two

two *Reer-divisions* of *Musquettiers* to *move forwards, and range even a-breast with the other divisions of Musquettiers.* Secondly, Command the *Reer-division (or Battell) of Pikes to move forwards, untill the* Reer *range-even with the Musquettiers that moved last before them.* The *figure* followeth.



Concerning *Firings*, what hath been said of the *former figures*, may in like manner be *performed* on this: therefore, not to spend more time about it, wee will come to the *Reducement*. And to that purpose, first command the *Front division of Pikes face about, and move even with the other divisions of Pikes*, then *stand, and face as before*. Secondly, command all the *Divisions (as well Musquettiers as Pikes) to face to the right and left inward, and to close together into one Body*. This done, next command them *wheele their Reer into the midst*, (or *Flanks into the Reer.*) Lastly, all being *faced* to the *proper-Front*, they are *reduced* as at first. I might have further inlarged my self upon this subject of *Firings*, *and Figures of Battell*; and have shewed variety enough of *formes*, either *Regimentall*, or for *private* and *single Companies*; as *Trine-battels*, *Round-Battels*, the *Crosse* and *Round* in one, the *Sollid-Square impaled*, with infinite others: But I have advanced further already, then I at first intended; though, well I hope, no further then will be freely, and lovingly accepted; Which if it be, I shall conceive my self to have received a *gratefull*, and most *ample satisfaction*. The hope whereof doth somewhat incourage me to proceed a little further: And as I have already shewed divers and severall *Motions*, with a large addition of *Formes, and Figures of Battell*; yea, and in all (or the most part of them) I have not only given the words of *Command* and *Direction*, to produce them from the ordinary *Square*; but also together with the demonstration of the *Figure*, and direction for the *Firing*, I have in like manner given them proper Directions, for their *Reducements* again: So now, for the satisfaction of some of the quainter sort of *Souldiers*, give me leave to adde one *Figure* unto another, untill that by *Firings I reduce Firings*. For the performance whereof, that I may observe some *method*, I will *digest* them into the way of *exercise*, &c. *Thereducement.*

Nevertheless, before I came to that, give me leave in one word to satisfie many, whose importunity would have prest me to have writ something for the exercise of the *Cavalry*. For my own part, I should think it a great deal of labour spent to little purpose therein;

ing such Gentlemen that are desirous of information that way, may buy that excellent Book intituled *Military instruction for the Cavalry*, set forth by that worthy, and well-knowing Gentleman, Captaine *John Cruso* of *Norwich*. Wherein the meanest *Cavalier* may gaine knowledge, and the best may review, and super-vise, the *Idea* of his own experiments.

CHAP. CXIV.

The First dayes Exercise.

HAving brought your *Company* into a place convenient, where you intend to *exercise them*; if you have time enough, you may cause the *File-leaders*, *Corporals*, or *Serjeants*, to instruct them in the [a] *Postures* and *true using* of their *Armes*. Wherein having spent some time to the benefit of the *Company*, upon the [b] *Summons* of the *Drum*, each *File-leader* with his *file*, is to *march* into his *place*. The *Captaine* (or other *Commander*) being at the head of his *Company*, *commands* them to *even their Ranks*, *and to straighten their Files*, and *stand to their* [c] *Order both in Rank and File*. If your *Ensigne* be not already in the field, but in some place neer at hand, then cause your *two innermost files* of *Pikes* to advance; commanding a *Serjeant* with a *Drum*, to *troope* them along to the place of *Rendezvouz* there to fetch their *Colours*. If the place be not nigh at hand, take as many *files* of *Musquettiers*. Having brought the *Ensigne* to the head of the *Pikes*, each *File* returns into his place; the *Officers* likewise withdrawing to their severall *stations*. [e] Silence being commanded, the *Captaine*, (or other *Commander*) begins first to instruct the *Souldiers* in the *severall* [f] *distances*, betwixt *Rank* and *File*, with the wayes to *open* and *close* to them. And if he think fit, to instruct them in the severall *uses* of each *distance*.

Next after *distance*, they are to be instructed in the [g] *Facings*, then in the *Doublings*; next in the *Counter martches*, and lastly, in *wheelings*. In each of which they are to be instructed, according to the opportunity of the *time* and *place*; but especially the capacity of the *Souldier* is to be observed. Wherein, the *Captaine* may doe very well, in each of the *motions* to lay down some speciall *rules* and *observations*; by which the *Souldier* may the better understand what he is to do, and how (the best way) to performe it.

After the *motions* ended, let them *prepare* for *skirmish*. And first you may cause them to *give fire* with *forlorne files*, *marching forth* twenty paces (or there-abouts) before the *Front*. Having all fired *over* that way, they may *give* fire once over, by *advancing two Ranks together*, ten paces before the *Front*. Then let them *give* fire, *even* with the *Front*, and then with the *half-files*: the *Pikes porting*, or *charging* according to discretion. The *Pikes* being *advanced*, and the *Musquettiers marched-up even* with their *Front*, you may either [h] *face-about*, *wheele-about*, or *Counter-march*, and so *give fire* in the *Reer*; your *Pikes* then being *shouldered*. After your *Musquettiers* have fired *over* in the *Reer*, you may (if you please) [i] *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Front*, and so *charge Pikes* to the *Reer*. Which done, *wheele* your *Front* into the *midst*, pass into your place, and *face* them to you. Then (if you will) you may passe your *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank*, through betweene the *Ranks* of *Pikes*, and place them next to the *right-flank* of *Pikes*, opening the *right-flank* of *Musquettiers* to give them way. Then let the [k] *Pikes shoulder*, and *Musquettiers* *It is very necessary, still so often as time will permit, to instruct the Souldiers in the postures & the well handling of their Armes.*

[b] Each File-leader to lead up his File upon the first Summons of the Drum.

[c] Ever to observe to be even in Rank, and straight in File and stand at the true distance.

[d] Fetching the Ensigne to the head of the Company.

[e] Souldiers ought to be very silent.

[f] First the Souldiers ought to have their due distance given them, with directions how most properly to performe.

[g] Facings, Doublings, Counter martches, Wheelings, wherein the Souldier ought treatably to be instructed, the Commander always observing, what his Souldiers are he hath to deale withall, and to give his directions accordingly. Never striving to put more into the bottel then it can conveniently hold. Observe to march between each firing and upon each figure as may be convenient.

[h] Face-about, or Wheel-about; for to Counter-march if any Enemy be neere, is very dangerous.

[i] Wheele your flanks into the front, if your Souldiers have time enough, or otherwise face to the Reer, and charge Pikes.

[k] When the Pikes shoulder, the Musquettiers must observe to ranke even with them.

giv

give fire to the *right* upon a *martch*, their *leaders* leading them up between the *Pikes* and their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. Having *fired* once over in this way, let them continue their *firing* to the *right*, each *leader* leading up his *file* on the *out-side* of the *left-flank* of *Pikes*. Then let the [l] *Pikes advance*, even whilst the last *file* is *giving* of *fire*: and so soon as the *Pikes* are clear of the *Musquettiers*, let them *face all* to the *right* and *charge*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and *faced* your *body* again to the *left*, you may then *wheel* your *battel about* to the *right*, and then *facing* the *whole body* to the *left*, the *Musquettiers* will be all in *Front*. Then let your *Musquettiers give fire*, and *wheel all off* to the *right*, the *Officers* to that end making an [m] *Interval* for the *left-flank*, or else let them *wheel-off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. Having given *fire* once (or oftner) *over* that way, let them *give fire* again, and *wheel-off by division* to the *ranking even* with their *Pikes*. That being done, cause the *Pikes* to *charge*, the *Musquettiers giving fire once over*, on that *figure*. The *Pikes* being *advanced*, *face* the whole *body* to the *right*, and cause the *Musquettiers* to *stand*, and the *Pikes* to *open* to the *right* and *left* and so to make the [n] *hollow square*. Then you may (if you please) *command* the *Ensign* to *display his Coulours* in the *midst* of the *hollow*, in signe of *triumph*, the *body* either *standing* or *martching*. After which, command the *Pikes* to *close their divisions*: which being performed command the *Reer-division* of *Musquettiers*, to double their *Front* of *Pikes* by *division*, and then they will stand in forme of [o] Captain *Wallers triple firing*: Let them *give fire* upon that *figure*, and *fall-off* again, according to the directions upon that *figure*. Which being performed, and the *Pikes charged*, and *re-advanced*, the *body* will be absolutely *reduced* as at the first it was before you began your *firings*. These *firings* may (with the *motions*) be sufficient for the *first dayes Exercise* Wherefore for this time, we will *lodge our Coulours*, until by the *Summons* of the *Drum*, we are *called forth* to the *second dayes practise*.

[l] Upon this firing advance *pikes* when there is but one file of *musquettiers* to give fire and close forwards to the distance of order.

[m] These kind of *Intervals* ought to contain six foot in distance, upon some other occasions, 12. foot is necessary.

[n] The hollow square with Musquets in Front and Reer, *Pikes* on the Flanks [o] Captain *Wallers* firing, as in ch. 93.

CHAP. CXV.

The second dayes Exercise.

HAving brought your *Souldiers* the second time into the *field*, the body being drawn up into the ordinary square, and every *Officer* vigilant in his place: the *Captain* commandeth [a] *silence*, with some other general termes of *observation*, both for the *leaders* and *right-hand-men*. Having thus commanded them (as before) to *even their* [b] *ranks*, and *streighten* their *files*, he proceeds to shew (as formerly) the *distances*, the *facings*, the *doublings*, the *Counter-martches*, and the *wheelings*: therewithal instructing them either in *all*, or so many of them as the time will permit, and he thinks convenient. Ever (by the way) observing that in the Proverb, *A thing once well done, is twice done*. That Commander, that *exerciseth* his *Souldiers* with [c] good *language*, and with *solid reasons*, shall make them better *proficients* than he that shall use rigid termes, and rough hands. After the *Postures*, *Distances*, and several *motions*; that which next followes for this dayes *Exercise*, are *firings* and *figures* of *Battel*. So soon, therefore, as the *Drum* begins to *beat to a preparative*, the *Musquettiers* are to begin to [d] *make ready*.

[a] *Silence.*

[b] *Upon all motions be sure that the Souldiers stand even in rank and file.*

[c] *Good words more available than blows in ill language.*

[d] *The musquettiers make ready to give fire.*

And first, you may cause them to *give fire* on the [e] *Horn-battel*, still *martching-up* into their *leaders ground*, by that means preserving their *Figure*.

[e] *Horn battel as in* chap 77.

Secondly, let the *Musquettiers close* their *divisions* before their *Pikes*, and then *give fire* upon the [f] *demy-Hearse-Battel*: *falling-off* presently, either all to the *right*, (the one half passing down an *Interval*) or to the *right* and *left* by *division*; and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*.

[f] *Demy-Herse* as in ch. 6 *Between each firing cause your Body to martch either in forme of Battalia, extended in length: or upon any other figure, so that it may conveniently be done without disorder.*

The third time of their *firing*, let them *wheel-off* by *division*, and *flank* their *Pikes*; and when they have *fired over* that way, let the *Pikes charge*.

For the fourth *firing*, let them *give fire even* with the *Front* of *Pikes wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*.

Then let them *fire even* with the *half files*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*. The *Pikes* (you are to understand) ought to *charge* all the time of the last *Firing*; who being *advanced*, *wheel* your *Battel* about to the *right* or *left*.

A firing in the Reer.

Then your *Musquettiers* being in the *Reer* of your *Pikes*, let your *sixth Firing* be to the *Reer*: the *Musquettiers wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves before the *Front* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*, next behind the *Reer* of *Pikes*. Having *fired once over* that way, let them *give fire* over again, and *flank their Pikes*: which being in like manner performed, command them to *wheel* their *flanks* into the *Front*, and then *face* to the *Reer*, and *charge Pikes* at the *in-side* of the *right-foot*, with their *Swords drawn* in their *right-hands*.

* *instead of giving fire over their Pike-men, they may give fire by Extraduction, as in Chap. 80.*

Let the *seventh Firing* be *discharged* * *over their Pike-men*, *wheeling* either all *off* to the *right* through *Intervals*; or else by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *files*. Otherwise (for want of room) the *first-rank* of *Musquettiers* having *given fire*, let them *kneel* or *crowch* low upon the ground, and *make ready* again; the *second-rank* in like manner *firing* and *kneeling*: and so for the rest. Having all *fired once over* in that manner, let the *Pikes advance*, and put up their *Swords*: the *Musquettiers*, in like manner, are to *rise*, then to *even* their *Ranks* and *streighten* their *Files*.

For the *eight firing*, you may face the *Body* to the *Reer*, (or if you will continue your *Firing*, the same way) then *wheel* your *Battel about*, and having opened your *Intervals*, your *form* will be the [a] *Broad-fronted phalang*, or *Broad-fronted Battel*. Let these *give fire*, the first time *falling* (or *wheeling*) all *off* to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Front* of the *Pikes*, and *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. The second time of *Firing*, let them *wheel all-off* to the *right*, (as before) and place themselves in the *reere* of the *Pikes*, which follow next after their *own divisions*. In the *interim* of the *last two Ranks firing*, cause your *Pikes* to *Port*; but when the *Musquettiers* are *cleared away*, the *Pikes may charge*.

[a] *This Figure is most commonly called the Broad fronted Battel But most properly the Long fronted Battel; for that the lengh is the extension between flank and flank, this is in ch. 80.*

When the *Pikes* are *advanced*, and that they have *closed* their *divisions*, for the *ninth Firing*, *face* them to one of the *Flanks*, and *wheel* them into a *Semi-circle* or [b] *Convex half-moon*; where the *Musquettiers* being *outer-most*, *give fire* upon that *Figure*: the first time falling behind the *Musquettiers* of their own *divisions*; the second time of *firing*, cause them to place themselves behind their *Pikes*. For further *directions* look back upon *Chap.* 79. which discourseth of the *Convex half-moon*. The *Pikes* may also *charge*, and the *Musquettiers give fire* over again, according to discretion. The *Pikes* being *re-advanced*, *face* the whole *body* to one of the *Flanks* and *march* them out *Herse-wise*: Then command them to *double their ranks to the right*: which being done, command that *Flank* which are *Musquettiers* to *double* the *contrary Flank* by *division*: which being performed, all the *Musquettiers* will be in *Front* and *Reer*: then cause the *Reer division* of *Musquettiers* to *double*, the *front* of *Pikes* by *division*. Then let them *give fire* on that *Figure*, as you may see further directions in *Chap.* 93. The *Pikes* having *charged*, and *advanced* again.

[b] *Convex-half moon, as in ch. 79*

For the *eleventh Firing*, first *face* the whole *body* to the *right*; then cause the *half-files* that then are, to *face* to the *Reer*; and so let the *Musquettiers give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. The *Pikes* may also *charge*

to

to the *Front* and *Reer*; which being performed, *face* them all again to their [c] *Leader*.

For the *twelfth Firing*, make the *Plinthyum* or *four-fronted battel*: the *Angles* where-of being filled with *Muſquettiers*. For further ſatisfaction, look upon *Chap.* 102. which gives *direction* both for the *motion* and *reducing* thereof. Next *face* the whole *body* to that part which was the *Front* before the *laſt firing* began. Then, if you would have your *Enſign* to *diſplay* in an *hollow ſquare*, cauſe your *Muſquettiers* to *ſtand* and *half-files* of *Pikes* to *face* to the *Reer*; and ſo both *diviſions* of *Pikes* to *march*, until their *laſt ranks* are *even* with the *front* and *reer* of *Muſquettiers*: Then *face* all to their *Leader*. If you pleaſe, the *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* upon this *hollow ſquare*, as they *march*, to both *Flanks*; ſtill *leading-up* their *files* on the *in ſide* of their own *diviſions*: and this will make the *thirteenth firing*.

The Leader is then conceived to ſtand on that part which was the right-flank the which was the front of the eleventh Firing.

But, by this time, our *powder* being *ſpent*, our *men weary*, and *night* approaching, we will come to the *Reducement*. Wherefore, firſt cauſe the *Pikes* to *cloſe* their *diviſions*, and the *Muſquettiers* to *march-up even* with their *Front* of *Pikes*. Then let the whole *Body wheel* their *Flanks* into the *Reer*; which being done, all the *Muſquettiers* will be in the *Reer*. Then (if you will) *face* to the *reer*, and *give fire*, cauſing your *Muſquettiers* to *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, and to *flank* their *Pikes*. Or elſe, cauſe your *Muſquettiers* to *open* to the *right* and *left*, and *double* your *Front* of *Pikes* by *diviſion*. Which being done, *double files* to the *left*, and they will be all *reduced* as at firſt. Wherefore, we will now *lodge our Colours*, and conclude our *ſecond dayes Exerciſe*.

CHAP. CXVI.

The third dayes Exerciſe.

HAving the third time (as formerly) brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, it is very neceſſary, in the firſt place, that they be taught the *Poſtures* of each *Arms*; either by the *file-leaders*, or ſome other of the *Officers*. Wherein, they muſt be careful to inſtruct them in the *Firings*, both to *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: As to *give fire* to the *front advancing* to *give fire* to the *Front*, upon a *ſtand*, to *give fire* to the *reer* upon a *March*: to *fire* to *either flank*, *marching* or *ſtanding*. As alſo to inſtruct them in *Diſtances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings*; that ſo they may be the more *apt* and *capable*, when they ſhall be brought into a *Body*. Having ſpent ſome time in the *exerciſing* of *files*, let the *Drumm ſummon* each *file-leader* to his place; the *Enſigne* be fetch to the *head* of the *Company*; the *Captain* command *ſilence*; and the *Souldiers* tender *obedience*. The *Ranks* being *evened* and the *Files ſtraightened*, the *Captain* (according to his accuſtomed manner) begins to inſtruct them in the *Diſtances* and *Motions*: And after the performance of ſo many of them as he ſhall think fit for the preſent *Exerciſe*, he commands the *Drumms* to *beat*, and *Muſquettiers* to *make ready*; and ſo cauſeth them to *give fire* * three or four ſeveral wayes, after the ordinary manner of *firing* in the *Front*.

Whoſoever it be that teacheth the Poſtures of the Muſquet, ought to be very diligent in his inſtruction, concerning the well-manneging of their arms; that they may not only fire to the Front, Reer and Flank, but that they obſerve order in their motion, which will better their execution. The

Then cauſe your *Muſquettiers* of the *left-flank* to *give fire* to the *Reer*; and the *Muſquettiers* of the *right-flank*, to *give fire* to the *Right*. This *firing* is to be performed upon a *march*, the *Pike ſhouldred*.

For the *ſecond firing*, let them *give fire* to both *flanks*. The [a] *gathering firing*.

For the *third*, let them *fire* to both *flanks*, *drawing them up* between the *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*.

File leader, if he have time, may inſtruct his File in the Diſtances, and the ſeveral motions. * *By drawing forth of looſe Files or otherwiſe.* [a] *The gathering firing, as in* Chap. 83.

For the *fourth Firing*, let them *give fire* again to both *Flanks*, *leading them up*, after they have *fired*, between the [b] *midſt* of *Pikes*. When the *laſt files* are *firing*, *advance* your *Pikes*, and *cloſe* your *ranks* forwards to their *Order*. Then, *face* to the *right* & *left*, & *charge* your *Pikes*. Your *Pikes* being *advanced*, and *faced* again to the *Front-proper*, all your *Muſquettiers* will be in the *midſt*.

b *Drawing up the Muſquettiers between the Pikes, as in* Chap. 87.

Then open them ſome *Intervals*, and let the *fifth firing* be to the *Front wheeling* all *off* to the [c] *right*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*. Then cauſe the *Pikes* to *charge*, & when your *Pikes* are *advanced* again, let your *half-files face-about* to the *right*.

c *As in* Ch. 101.

And ſo the *ſixth firing* may be to the *front* and *Reer*; the *Muſquettiers* of the *front-diviſion*, *wheeling-off* to the *right*; thoſe of the *Reer-diviſion*, *wheeling-off* to the *left*; either of them placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*. The *Muſquettiers* having *fired once* or *twice over*, *wheel* your *Flanks* into the Front and *Reere*, and cauſe your *Pikes* to *charge* to the *Front* and *Reer*. The *Pikes* being again *advanced*, and all *faced* to their former *Front*, *wheel Front* and *Reer* into both *Flanks*, and *face* as before.

For the *ſeventh firing*, make the [d] *Plinthyum*, or *four-fronted Battel*; the *Angles* being filled with *Pikes*: and let them *give fire*, and *charge* their *Pikes*, according to *directions* for that *Figure*. As likewiſe, the *firing* being ended, *reduce* the men back into their places, as they were before this *firing* began. Then, *wheel-off* your *Front* by *diviſion*; which brings your *Muſquettiers* upon the *Flanks*, but doth not *reduce* your men juſtly into their places, if your *number* be any thing great.

d *The plinthyum is in* Chap: 102.

From thence make them a perfect [e] *Croſſe-battel*, and let your *Muſquettiers give fire*, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*.

e *The croſſe Battel as in* Chap: 99

For the *ninth firing*, let them *give fire* as before; but place themſelves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*; the *Pikes* moving forwards into their *ground*, and *charging*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, command your *Flank-diviſions* to *face-about* to the *right*, and to *cloſe* their *diviſions*. Then command the *Front* and *Reer-diviſions* to *wheel* their *Flanks* into the *Reer*: which being done, *face* them to the *Front-proper*, (that is) after the *right File-leaders*.

For the *tenth Firing*, (your *Muſquettiers* being ſtill in the *midſt*) let them *give fire* by [f] *Introduction* twice over, (ſtill beginning with the *ſecond-rank*) the *Pikes* moving ſoftly forward.

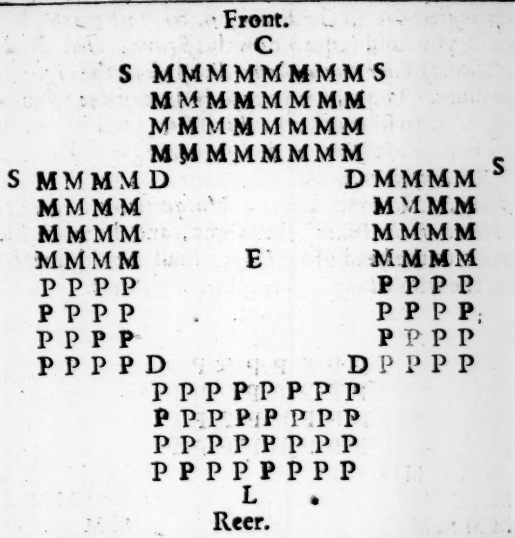
f *Introduction, as in* Chap. 77.

For the *eleventh* Firing, let them *give fire* by *Introduction*, (beginning with the *Bringers-up*.) The *Pikes* may *charge* at diſcretion: Then let the *Muſquettiers ſtand*, and the *Pikes march forwards*, *cloſing* their *diviſions* before the *Muſquettiers*.

And ſo let the *twelfth* Firing be by way of *Extraduction*. Let the *Pikes charge*; which being performed, command the *firſt* and *laſt* four *ranks* to *ſtand*, and the reſt of the *Body* to *face* to the *right* and *left*; and ſo to move, until they are clear of the *ſtanding ranks*. Then let the whole *Body face-about* to the *right*, and let the *Enſign* diſplay his *Colours* in the *midſt*, the *Body* ſtanding in this following *forme*.

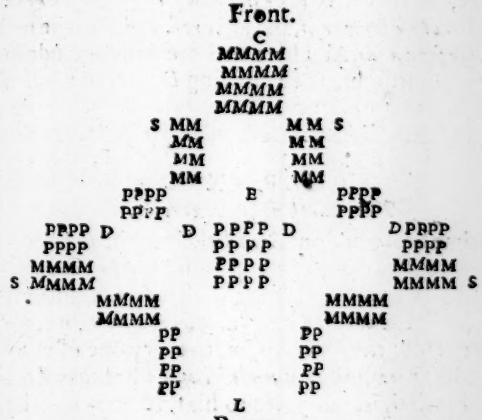
This firing is demonſtrated in Chap. 80.

Front



The *Muſquettiers* now being fore-moſt, let the thirteenth be a *triple firing* to the *front*, having *fired*, let them *wheel-off* to the *right* and *left*, the *front-diviſions* falling in the *reere* of themſelves: the *flank-diviſions* in the *reer of their Pikes*; they moving forwards, and *maintaining* the *Muſquettiers ground*. The *Pikes* on the *flanks* may *charge*: the *Muſquettiers* of the *front-diviſion* had need be *Half-pike-men*, that ſo they may defend themſelves from the *Horſe*.

For the fourteenth *firing* make the *Crowne-battell*: for the producing whereof obſerve theſe following *directions*. Firſt, command the *foure middle-moſt ranks, of the flanke-diviſions face to the right and left outward, and move clear of the ſtanding parts*. Secondly, command the *foure inner-moſt files of the front and reer-diviſions to move forwards untill they ſtand cleare of the ſame Arms*: This being rightly performed, this following *figure* will be produced.



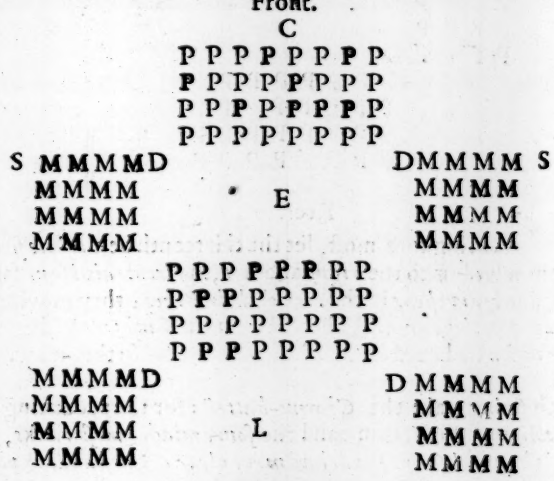
In

In this *forme* you may *give fire* to the *Front*, or to the *Front* and *Reere* at diſcretion: having performed what you hold requiſite on this *figure*; *cloſe* the *diviſions* back again into their *places*, (that done) *Face the two flank-diviſions* to the *right* and *left inward*, and let them *cloſe* in like manner. This makes your *body* ſixteen deep, four *ranks* of *Muſquets* and foure *ranks* of *Pikes*, then four other *ranks* of *ſhot*, and four of the contrary *Arms*. Next, *wheele off your Front by diviſion*, and *cloſe* them againe; this nothing altereth the *forme*; but only brings the *inſide outward*.

Or wheele your front inward to the Reer.

For the fifteenth *firing*, firſt command the *Muſquettiers* to *face to the right and left outward, and move cleere of the Pikes*, then ſtand, and the *whole body face-about to the right*, the *Captaine* going to the head of his *Pikes*, ſhall there find all his *proper file-leaders faced* towards him, and the whole *body* in this following forme.

Front.



Reere.

Let the *Muſquettiers give fire to the Reere*, and *both flanks martching*. They may *give fire* and keep their *Figure*, or they may *give fire* and *flank* their *Pikes*: If the latter, then command the *reer-diviſion cloſe forwards*, and all is *reduced* as at the firſt. If the former, then *all the diviſions are to cloſe forwards*. And here with we will conclude our *third dayes Exerciſe*, *and lodge our Colours*, untill that the bellowing *Drum* call us the fourth time into the *field*, to give an account of our proficiency. Till when, we will leave our *Souldiers* to repaire to their *quarters*, reſt their *limbs*, refreſh their *ſpirits*, and repleniſh their *bandiliers*.

The Reducement.

CHAP. CXVII.

The fourth dayes Exerciſe.

HAving the fourth time brought your *Souldiers* into the *field*, and (as formerly) cauſed them to be inſtructed in the *Poſtures* (both of *Muſquet* and *Pike*) that ſo they may be capable to uſe them both with *agility*, & with *ſafety*. As likewiſe taught them their divers wayes of *diſtance*, with the ſeverall and various *motions*; not forgetting particularly to inſtruct them with *rules* & *pertinent reaſons* to every one of them: that ſo they may not only learn to do, but like *rationall men underſtand* what they do. Which being deliberately performed, and each *Officer* diſpoſed to his ſeverall *place*, the *ranks* being *evened*

and

and the *files straightened*; the *Captain commands*, the *Drum beats*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* for *skirmish*, &c.

The *first firing*, being by drawing-forth the *inner-most files* of each *flank* of *Musquettiers*, to the *right* and *left*, obliquely before the *Front*; and so to *stand* and *give fire*. Having *given fire*, let the *Bringers-up lead* them back into their *places*. And, in the mean time, let the next *inner-most files lead-forth* and *fire*, after the same manner; and so likewise the rest, until all the *Musquettiers* have *fired once over* that way. *You may either draw forth the inner-most or outer-most as discretion.*

For the *second Firing*, let them *give fire* [a] *obliquely*, and *crosse* the *Front*, both at once. [a] *As in Chap. 99.*

For the *third*, let them *give fire obliquely*; the *Musquettiers* standing before the *Pikes*, in form of an *hollow wedge*. Upon this *Firing* the *Musquettiers fire outward*; whereas in the *other* they *fire inward*.

For the *fourth Firing*, let them *fire* upon the [b] *oblique* W. For the manner of these *Firings*, with the wayes both how to *make* them and *reduce* them, I refer you to their several places, where I have shewn them plainly. [b] *As in Chap. 97.*

For the *fifth Firing*, let them *give fire obliquely* on the *Fort-battell*; that is to say, to *Front*, *Reer*, or *Flanks*. These *oblique Firings*, howsoever that some of them may at some times be useful, yet here they are inserted but for variety of *exercise*, and no otherwise to be accounted of. In all these *oblique Firings* the *Pikes* never come to *charge*; but stand either in a *hollow* or *solid Square*, in danger of the *Enemies shot*; themselves neither being able to *offend the Enemy*, nor to defend themselves. And yet, if by frequent *practice* they were *inured* to the use of the *long-Bow* fastened to their *Pikes*, I make no question but that when they should become expert in the use of the [c] *Bow and Pike*, they would not only be a *terrour* to their *Enemies*, by the continual *showers* of *Arrows* which they would send amongst them; but also they would be a great means to *rout* their *Battalions*, and utterly *break* their *Order*. On the contrary, if men should be put to use the *Bow and Pike*, and have not first well learned the use of the *Pike* alone, they would be so *cumbersome* to themselves, and so *troublesome* to others, that instead of *spoyling* their *Enemies*, they would *rout themselves*. But pardon this digression, whilest I proceed to the rest of this *dayes Exercise*. [c] *Expert Bow-men may be very serviceable.*

The *sixth Firing*, being in form of a [d] *Romane* T, is to be made as followeth: Let the *Pikes stand*, and the *Flanks* of *Musquettiers wheel* into the *Front*: then let them *give fire*, making an *Interval* upon each *Flank*; the *Musquettiers* of the *Right-flank wheeling-off* to the *right*, the *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank* to the *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. When the *Musquettiers* have *fired once* or *twice over*, let the *Pikes passe thorough*, and *wheel* their *Front* into the *midst*; and then *facing* to the *Front*, let them *charge* their *Pikes*: and from thence having *advanced* their *Pikes*, let the *Commander passe* to the *right-flank*, and *face* the whole *Body* to the *right*. Then *wheele* the *Battell about* to the *left*, until the *Body* be brought into a *round Battell*: from whence we will begin the *seventh Firing*. [d] *In this form if the Musquets ground their half pikes, and the Pikes open to the right and left to the utmost Angle, then the musketiers after that they have fired may retreat to the Reer of the Pikes whilest they charge to the Flanks.*

The *Figure* being made, *face* the whole *Body* to the *Center*, and give them their *directions*, what they have to do. When they have received their *instructions*, let them all *face-about* to the *right*, *present*, and *give fire*. The *first time* of their *firing* placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *Musquettiers*: The *second firing*, *counter-martching* to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*: The *Pikes* at the same time are to move forwards into the *Musquettiers ground*; where they may *charge over hand*, and (if need be) at the *foot*; the *Musquettiers giving fire* over them, as in the *Convex half-moon*. The *firing* being ended, and the *Pikes advanced*, let the *Commander martch-forth* of the *round Battell*, at that part where he shall find all his *proper File-leaders*: [e] *A quaint Reducements for a knowing Company; but not for a larg or ignorant number.*

Then

Then let the whole *Body* be *faced* to that part, and the *File-leaders* cauſed to *march-forth even-a-breſt*, the *Muſquettiers* and *Pike-men* following their *leaders* and *marching* until the *Body* have attained their *orderly Square* again. But note, that all your *Muſquettiers* are in the *midſt* of the *Battel*.

The eighth firing is the impaled ſolid ſquare.

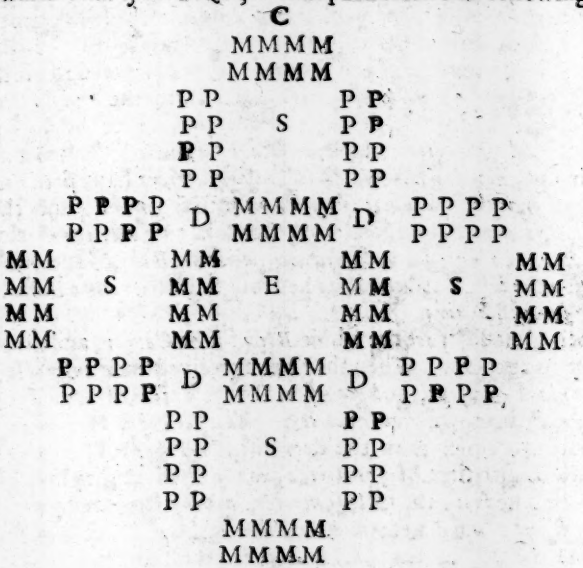
For the *Eighth Firing*, make the *impaled ſolid Square*: the way to perform it is as followeth.

Your *Pikes* being now the *Flankers*, *draw-forth the moity* of the *files* of *Pike-men* from the *right-flank*, croſs the *front* of the *Body*, (taking the *out-moſt files*) let half the *files* of *Pike-men* of the *left-flank* be *drawn croſſe* the *Reer*, following their *Bringers-up*.

Then *face* all your *Muſquettiers* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: The *Pikes* may *charge* all *over-hand*, and (if need be) at the *foot* with their *Swords drawn*; the *Muſquettiers firing* over them. Having *fired*, *charged*, and *advanced* their *Pikes*, *draw-off* the *Pikes* again, from the *Front* and *Reer*, into their *places*.

The hollow fronted Croſſe, the Muſquets making the hollow, is demonſtraced In *chap.* 100.

For the *ninth Firing*, (the *Muſquettiers* being ſtill in the *middle*) make the *hollow-fronted Croſſe-battel*; the *Pike-men* making the *hollow*, upon the *Flanks* of the *Muſquettiers*. For the making whereof, *wheel* the *Front* of the *two firſt Ranks* into the *midſt*: That being done, *wheel* the *Reer* of the *two laſt Ranks* after the ſame manner; and then *face* the reſt of the *Body* to the *right* and *left*, and cauſe them to *march* until there be a *Square hollow in the midſt* of the *Battel*. Then command them to *face* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: which being in like manner performed, cauſe the *Pikes* (who are now in the *Front* of the *Muſquettiers*) to *open* to the *right* and *left*; the *laſt rank* of *Pikes ranking-even* with the *firſt rank* of *Muſquettiers*. The *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* upon this *Figure*, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*. If need be, the *Pikes* may *charge* to the *Angle*, whilſt the *Muſquettiers give fire* ſtraight forwards. This being done, and the *Pikes* again *advanced*, for the *tenth Figure* make the *quintipled-hollow-ſquare*, by commanding the *two firſt ranks of each diviſion*, *move forwards clear of the Pikes*; which produceth this following *Figure*.



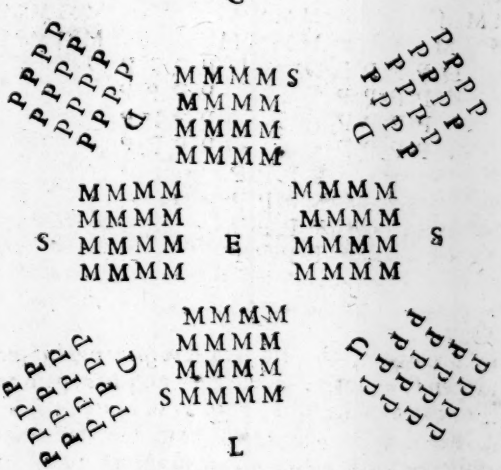
When

When you would come to *firing*, cauſe the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt* to *cloſe to the Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*; and ſo they may *give* fire accordingly. The *firſt firing* the *Muſquettiers* may make good their *ground*: the *ſecond* time of *firing-over*, they are to *rank-even* with the *Pikes*: the *third* time of *firing*, the *Pikes* move a little forward, and the *Muſquettiers* loſe ground; which brings them again into the *hollow-fronted Croſſe*: all the while the *Muſquettiers* are *giving fire*, the *Pikes* are to *port* and *charge* to the *Angles*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, Command them to *cloſe their diviſions before the Muſquettiers*: that done, Command all the *Pikes* to *face to the right*, *and move into the ſpace between the Angles of the Muſquettiers*; which produceth this following *Figure*; from whence we will make our *eleventh* Firing.

When the Muſquettiers firſt give fire, they will ſtand in the form of a hollow diamond. I forbear the figure, it may eaſily bee conceived.

Front-proper.

C



L

On this *double Croſſe-battell* you may, if you pleaſe, *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: it is an excellent *Figure* for *Muſquettiers* with *Half-pikes*; for that they may move forwards and ground their *Half-pikes*, and then *give fire*, *one*, *two*, *three*, or *foure Ranks* together, *wheeling-off*, & maintaining the place where their *Half-pikes are grounded* (*Palliſado-wiſe*:) or they may fire, and *retreit* into their *Figure*, and there *make ready* and *fire* again: the *Pikes* may *charge*, &c.

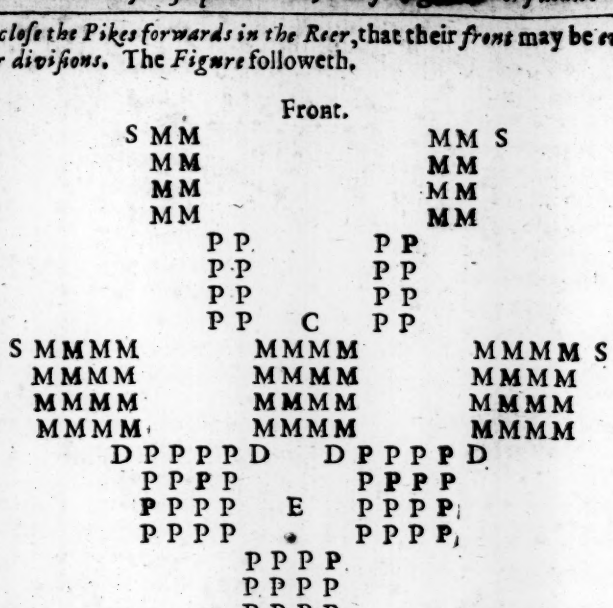
The eleventh firing.

When the *Pikes* are again *advanced*, let them move to the *left* into their places before the *Muſquettiers*, and the whole *Body face* to the *Front*.

To make the *twelfth Figure*, firſt, Command the *Muſquettiers of the Flank-diviſions to interchange ground with their Pikes*, *and then to move forwards*, *untill the Reere be advanced even with the Front-angle of their owne Pikes*. Secondly, Command the *Muſquettiers of the Front-diviſion to ſleeve-up to the right and left of their Pikes*, *untill the Reere be advanced even with the Front of Pikes*. Thirdly, Command the *Muſquets of the Reere to move forwards*, *and range-even with the Muſquettiers of the flank-diviſions*. Fourthly, Command the *Front-diviſion* (*as well Muſquets as Pikes*) *to open to the right and left*, *leaving an Intervall for the Muſquettiers behind them*.

And when they be opened, let the muſquettiers move forwards as in the Figure.

them. Lastly, *close the Pikes forwards in the Reer*, that their *front* may be *even with the reer of the two other divisions.* The *Figure* followeth.



The *Body* standing in this Figure, the two *front-divisions* of *Musquettiers* may *give fire* once or twice over, and then *flank* their *Pikes*: They may fire again and fall in the *reer* of their *Pikes*. One, two, or three of the other *divisions* of *Musquettiers* may *move* forwards and *give fire*, the two *front-divisions* of *Pikes* in the meane time *charging*. Having *fired* twice or thrice over at discretion, the two *middle divisions* of *Pikes* are to *move forwards* to *port* and *charge*, the *Musquettiers* in the meane time *firing* and *losing ground*. By which meanes the *flank-division* of *Musquettiers* will againe *flank* their *Pikes*. Then, because we will come to *reducement*, First, command the *middle division* of *Musquettiers* (the which pertaine to the *reere*) to *move back into their places*. Secondly, command the *two front-divisions to close together*. Thirdly, command the *Musquettiers and Pikes* of the *flank-divisions* to *interchange ground*, and then *close their divisions*. Fourthly, command the *front* and *reer-divisions* to *wheele their Musquettiers* into the *midst*. Lastly, *wheel-off your battell by division*, after which having *closed* their *divisions*, they are perfectly *reduced* as at first. And herewith we will conclude this dayes *Exercise*, and leave our *Souldiers* to rest, untill that the *morrows Sun*, and the *thundering Drum* shall call us forth againe into the *Field*.

CHAP. CXVIII.

The fifth dayes Exercise.

**The Postures cannot be too often practised by young Souldiers.*

HAving the fit time brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, if you have leisure, it will not be amisse for to cause them to be instructed (in the first place) in the *Postures* of the *Pike* and *Musquet*. For those *Souldiers* which by often practise of their * *Postures* are growne

grown *perfect*, will mannage their *Armes* with *ease*, *surety*, and *celerity*, when on the contrary, the *unpractised Souldier*, will be a trouble to himself, a danger to his *fellowes*, and a dormant to his *Enemies*.

After the *Postures*, each *file* being drawn into his place; and the *Ensigne* (according to the former directions) brought to the head of the *Pikes*; the *ranks evened*, and the *files straitned*, the *Captaine* having commanded *silence*, and delivered himself in such termes as the present occasion doth require, (ever preferring the *industrious* and *painfull*, and on the contrary, blaming the *careless* and the *slothfull*) he next proceeds to instruct them in their *severall distances*; and these indeed are the *ground* of all *motion*: seeing that without *distance*, the *motions* cannot be *executed*. Next to the *distances*, they are to be instructed in the *motions*, ever observing to each *motion*, its due *distance*.

Distance & *the ground of motion, because no motion can properly be performed without its due distance*

Next after *postures*, *distance*, and *motions*; let the rest of the *dayes Exercise* be spent in *firings* and *figures* of *Battell*. Each *Officer* having now received his severall *Charge*; The *Captain commands*, the *Drums beat*, and the *Musquettiers make ready*.

Let the *first firing* be performed by *leading-forth* the *outermost file* of each *flanke*, twenty or thirty *paces* before the *front*. When being come to the place of *firing*, (where they may surely do *execution*) let them *rank four*. That is to say, the three men next behind the *right-hand-file-leader*, shall *rank* inward to the *left*, even with their *file-leaders*: the three next *men* after the *left-hand file-leader ranking* inwards to the *right*, even *a breast* with the *leader* of their *file*, the residue of each *file*, keeping themselves in *file*, and closing forwards to the *distance* of *order*, just after their *file-leaders*. The first four of each *file*, having *presented*, *fired*, and *wheeled-away*; the *last four men* (being the *Reer-half-files*) in the *interim* of their *wheeling-off*, *rank* to the *right* and *left* inward: *presenting*, *firing*, and *wheeling-off*, (as aforesaid) and placing themselves in the *reer* of the former part of their *files*, which *wheeled-away* before them. The second *files* are then to *lead forth* and to do the like, and so successively, the *rest*, untill they have all *fired over*, this way.

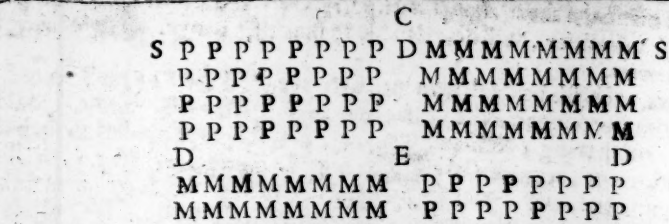
For further direction to this firing turne to cap. 73.

For the second *Firing*, let the *outer-most files* lead forth to the same *distance* before the *Front*, whither being come, as to the *place* wherein to do their *execution*, let the *files ranke* to the *right* and *left inward*; and so fire *altogether*: *wheeling-off*, and placing themselves as in the former *firings*. The residue of the other *files* of *Musquettiers*, at the same time *marching forth*, *giving* fire, and still placing themselves *file-wise*, on the *innermost part* of *Asin* c. 92. their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*, and next to the *out-side* of *Pikes*.

For the third *firing*, send forth the four *first ranks* about *ten paces* before the *front*, Let the two first *ranks present* together, the second *rank closing forwards*, and *presenting* between the *Intervals* (or spaces) of the *first rank* & so pour out their *shot* together. When they have *given* fire, let the *first ranks first wheele away*, the second *ranks* following them. The other *firing*, *closing*, *presenting*, *firing*, and *wheeling-away*, as aforesaid, falling in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. The next four *ranks moving forward*, and doing the like, &c.

Let the fourth *firing* be performed to both *flanks* upon a stand: *facing* the whole *body* to the *right* and *left*, there *firing*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. Whilst the two last *Ranks* are *giving* fire, let the *Pikes part*, and when the *Musquettiers* have *fired*, and *wheeled-off*, let them *charge*.

Having *advanced their Pikes*, *face* the whole *body* to that part where you shall find your *file-leaders* of *Musquettiers*; then will all your *Musquettiers* be in *front* and *reer*. Next command your *half-files* that then are, to double your *front* to the *left intire*, which being done, this following *Figure* will be produced.



The *Musquettiers* may *give* fire on this *Figure*, to the *Front and Reere*, or to the *right and left*: The *Firing* by me intended, is to both *Flanks*; to which purpose, *face the Body to the right and left by division.* Let the *Drumme beat*, the *Musquettiers make ready, present*, and *give* fire, all *wheeling-off* to the *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer of their own divisions.* The *Pikes* may also *port*, and *charge* as they see occasion. The *Musquettiers* having all *fired*, the *Pikes* again *advanced*, and the whole *Company faced* to their *former-Front*, command the *half-ranks* of the *right* (both *Musquettiers* & *Pikes*) to *march*, and the *half-ranks* of the *left-flank*, to follow in the *Reer.*

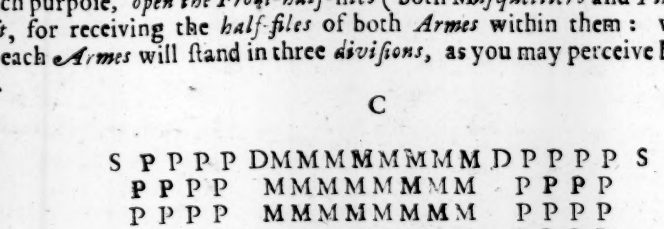
This is the fifth firing Half-ranks of the right or left-flank both intend the same thing.

Having given them some time of breathing, then for the *sixth firing* cause the *half-files* that then are (*Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) to *face to to Reer.* Which being done, let the *Musquettiers give fire to the Front and Reer*, upon a stand, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*; they *moving forwards*, and maintaining the *Musquettiers ground.* The *Pikes* are then to *charge*, when they are cleared of their *Musquettiers.* Which being done, and they again *advanced, face them all to their former Front.*

The sixth firing.

For the *seventh firing*, Command *Half-files to double the Front inward, Entire.* To which purpose, *open the Front-half-files* (both *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) *to the right and left*, for receiving the *half-files* of both *Armes* within them: which being executed, each *Armes* will stand in three *divisions*, as you may perceive by the following *Figure.*

The seventh firing.



When you intend to *give fire*, Command the *half-files to face-about*, and performe the *firing* to the *front and reer*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of

of their own divisions. The *Pikes* may *charge* at discretion. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and *faced the whole body* to you, let your *eighth Firing* be upon the *Checker-Battell* (of eight *divisions*.) To make the which, Command *Left-flank double the Right-flank by division*. This Command being executed, the *Checker-Battell* is finished; you may *give fire* upon it to the *Front, Reer and Flanks*, either *standing*, or *martching*: the *Musquettiers* still placing themselves either *after*, or *within their own divisions of like Arms*. The *Pikes* may also *charge*, as you see occasion, &c. Many *forms* might be made from this *Checker-Figure*, the which for the present I omit: Therefore, Command the *first and last four Ranks to face to the left, and martch*; being moved clear of the *standing part of the Body*, let them *close their division*, and *face to the front again*: this brings them into *six divisions*. Next, Command the *eight inner-most files to face-about*, and *martch into their places*. The *half-files* being *faced-about*, and *martched clear-off*, then are the *Front-half-files* to *close their division*: this being performed, and all rightly *faced*, the *Musquettieres* will be in the *midst*, and the *Pikes* on the *Front* and *Reer*. Let your *ninth Firing* be to the *Reer* and *Right-flank* together. And to that purpose, First, Command *half-files double your Front to the right entire*: that being done, let the *half-files that doubled, wheel their Battell to the right*; and then being *faced to the Front*, they will stand as in this following *Figure*.

These 8, in most files, are the half files of musquets and Pikes which doubled the front inward intire

E C

S P P P P P P P P D P P P P D M M M M S
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
S M M M M M M M M D P P P P D M M M M S

L

As the *Body* now stands *faced*, you may conceive a *Firing* to the *Reer* and *Right-flank*, *martching*; the which may be performed these two several wayes: * The *Musquettiers* of the *Reer* having *fired*, may *wheel-off to the right*, and place themselves next after the *Pikes*, in the *Front of their own divisions*. The *Musquettiers* of the *Right-flank* having at the same instant *fired*, may place themselves in the *in-side* of their *own divisions next the Pikes*. A second way to place themselves, after that they have *given fire*, is this: The *Musquettiers*, which fire in the *Reer*, are to place themselves before the *Front of Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* of the *Flank* place themselves on the *in-side* of the *Right-flank of Pikes*. The whole *body* may stand, and *Pikes charge to the Reer and right-flank*. If on this *Figure* you would *give fire* standing, then *face the right-flank to the right, and left-flank to the Reer*; and open an *Interval* in the *middle* of the *left-flank* for the *Musquettiers* to move thorow. The first time of their *firing* the *Musquettiers may place themselves in the Reer of their own division of shot*. The second time, *they may flank their Pikes whilest they port*. The third time, *they may fall in the reer of their Pikes*; they in the mean time *charging*. Let the *tenth Firing* be performed by way of *Extraduction*: the which being done, the *Pikes* having *charged*, and being again *advanced*, First Cause those that stand *faced* to the *right*, to *wheel their Battell back again to the left*. Secondly, Command the *Left-flank*

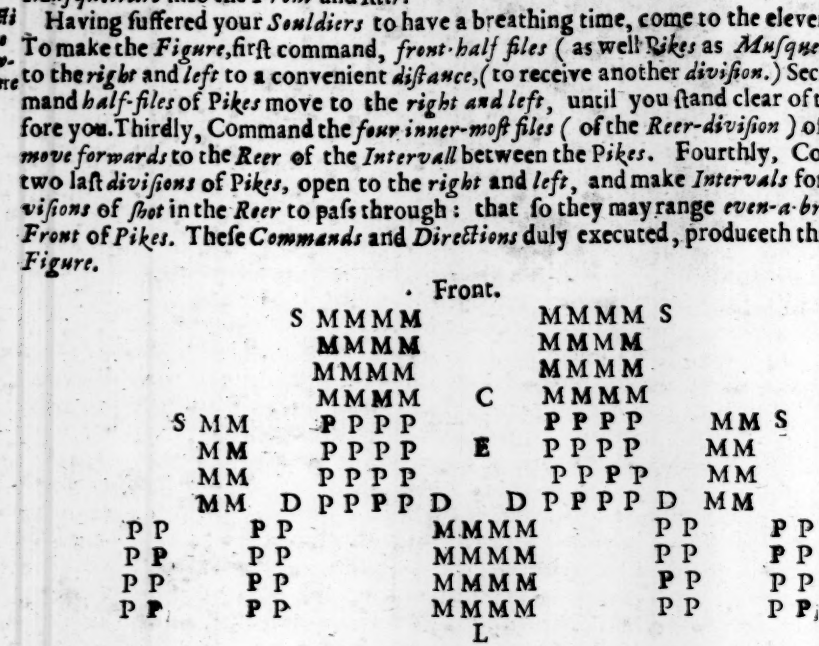
* Note that there must a division be made between the midst of the Musquettiers and Pikes of the left-flank for the musquets to move through.

Extraduction, as in cap. 80.

Left-flank to march, and the *Right-flank to follow on the Reer*. This brings all your *Musquettiers* into the *Front* and *Reer*.

The direction to make the following Figure

Having suffered your *Souldiers* to have a breathing time, come to the eleventh *Firing*. To make the *Figure*, first command, *front-half files* (as well Pikes as *Musquettiers*) *open* to the *right* and *left* to a convenient *distance*, (to receive another *division*.) Secondly, command *half-files* of Pikes move to the *right and left*, until you stand clear of the Pikes before you. Thirdly, Command the *four inner-most files* (of the *Reer-division*) of *Musquets move forwards* to the *Reer* of the *Intervall* between the Pikes. Fourthly, Command the two last *divisions* of Pikes, open to the *right* and *left*, and make *Intervals* for the *two divisions* of *shot* in the *Reer* to pass through: that so they may range *even-a-breast* with the *Front* of *Pikes*. These *Commands* and *Directions* duly executed, produceth this following *Figure*.



On this *Figure* we will *give fire* to the *Front*; the two first *divisions* may begin the *Firing*, and the first time fall in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the second time of their *firing-over*, they may place themselves in the *Reer of the Pikes*: the *Pikes may charge*, and *the Reer-division of Musquettiers may move forwards*; being *advanced* into convenient ground, they may *present and give fire* together with the *two divisions of Shot, on the wings*. Let them *fire* and *gain ground*, let them *fire* and *maintain ground*, let them *fire* and *lose ground*, falling back into the *Reer*, behind the *Intervals* of their *Pikes*. All the *Pikes* having *charged*, may *advance*. By this time sable night begins to appear, and therefore we will come to * *Reducement*. First, Command all the *Musquettiers to close their divisions*. Secondly, Cause the *two reer-divisions of Pikes to close to the right and left inward*, and the *two Front-divisions of Pikes close to the right and left outward*, *just before the other divisions of Pikes*. Thirdly, Command the *Musquettiers to move forwards*, and *even their Front of Pikes*. All this being done, your *Musquettiers* are in the *midst*, and the Pikes on their *Flanks*. Now if you please to open the *Musquettiers* to the *Front* and *Reer*, it will make a *hollow square* for the *Ensign* to display his *Colours*. If you will come presently to *Reducement*, Command your *Musquettiers* and Pikes to *interchange ground*, and all will be perfectly *reduced* as at first. Therefore now let us *lodge our colours* with our accustomed *Bene vale*, and conclude our *fifth dayes exercise*; suffering our *Souldiers* to depart to their several habitations. There leaving them to *cleanse their Arms*, and to *refresh their Bodies*, until the morrows *clamouring Drum* invite again into the Field.

* *The reducements.*

The Musquettiers may soon close their divisions by reason they stand near all toge her being so left in this Fixing.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXIX.

The sixth dayes Exercise.

HAving the sixth time brought your *Souldiers* into the *field*, according to the accustomed manner: let each *file-leaders* exercise his *file*, in the *Postures* of such *Armes* as they carry. Which being performed, and the *files* againe re-joyned into one *Body*, the *Ensigne* being at the head of the *Pikes*, and the rest of the *Officers* in their severall places. The *Captaine* having commanded *silence*, *attention*, and *obedience*, (three especiall properties, most necessarily requisite to every *Common Souldier*) he proceeds to the severall *distances*; instructing them in the *uses* of each of them. Next after the *distances*, he teaches them the *Facings*, the *Doublings*, the *Counter-martches*, and the *Wheelings*, with severall observations upon each of the *motions*. After which (having so *commanded*) the *Drummes beat*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* for *Skirmish*. Then (if you please) you may cause three or four of the *first firings* to be performed by *light skirmishing* before the *front*, and that which *loose ranks* or *files*, or both: either some of those, (or such like) as I have formerly spoken of in the preceding *Exercises*. After which, for your *next firing*, cause your *half files* to open to the *right* and *left* by *equall divisions*, untill the *Reere-divisions* of *Pikes*, stand right after the *Musquettiers* of the *front-division*. Now the *Musquettiers* standing in *four divisions*, let them all *present* and *give fire* to the *Front*: *wheeling* all off to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of like *Armes*, each *Rank* still making good the *leaders ground*. Having *given fire*, *once*, *or twice* over on this *figure*: For the second *firing*, cause the *Front-division* to *give fire* to the *front*; & the two *Reer-divisions* to each *flank* in a *martch*. The *front-division* which fires in *rank*, *wheele all off* to the *right*; *placing* themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*, the other *Divisions* which fire in *flank*, leading up their *files* between their own *Divisions* of *Musquettiers* and the *Pikes*.

The first firing by four divisions to the Front.

The second firing is to the front & both flankes marching.

Having *given fire once or oftner over*, according to discretion this way, let the third *firing* be performed upon a *stand*. For the which, cause your *Reer-divisions* to *face* to the *right* & *left ont-ward*: the *Front-division*, still to continue the same *aspect*.

The third firing is to the front & both flanks standing.

Then, Let the *Musquettiers give fire*, those of the *right-flank*, *wheeling-off* to the *right*: and the contrary *flanke*, to the contrary hand; the *Musquettiers* of the *Front-division*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquets*, The *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-divisions*, *placing* themselves in the *Reere* (of the *Reer-divisions*) of *Pikes*. When they have *fired* all over, let the *Pikes charge*, to *front* and both *flanks*.

Having advanced your *Pikes* againe, and *faced* your *Body* to the *Front proper*, each *Armes* still standing in three *divisions*. Then let the fourth *firing* be to the *Reere* and both *flanks* upon a *martch*. And to that end, open your *Front-divisions* of *Musquettiers* to the *right* and *left*, untill they are cleare of the *Reer-divisions* of *Pikes*: that so they be not troublesome unto them in their *martch*. Then let your *Pikes shoulder*; and the *Musquettiers give fire*: the *Front-divisions* of *Musquettiers*, *firing* in *flanke*, and *leading up* on the inside of their owne *divisions*. The *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-divisions* giving *fire* in the *Reere*, in *rank wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Front* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. Having *fired once over*, and the *Pikes charged*, let your fifth *firing* be to the *Reer*, and both *flanks* upon a stand. In the which, let the *half-files* (both of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) *face to the reer*; the *front-division* to the *right* and *left*, and so *give fire* on each part: those that *fire* to the *flanks wheeling-off*, and placing themselves in the *reer* of their *divisions* of *Pikes*, and the *Musquets* of the *Reer-divisions*, *wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*

The fourth firing is to the reer & both flanks marching.

The fifth firing is to the reer and both flankes standing.

of *Musquettiers*; each *Rank* moving forwards into their *leaders ground*. Having *fired over*, let the *Pikes charge*. The *Pikes* being again *advanced*, *face* the whole *Body* to the *proper-front*; and then all the *Musquettiers* will be in the *mid*[illegible], and the *Pike-men* on the *Flanks*.

The sixth is a firing tripartitees in Cap. 64.

For the *sixth Firing*, Cause your *half-ranks* of the *left*, *double* your *right-flank* by *division*. For further *directions*, look back to the *Tripartite Firing*: which you shall find *Chap.* 94. Having *fired-over* that way, *charged*, and *re-advanced* your *Pikes*, *face* the whole *Body* to their *former Front*.

The seventh is a firing to both flanks in three divisions.

For your *seventh Firing*, Cause the *Front* and *Reer-divisions* of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* to *face* to the *right*; the rest of the *Body* (both *Musquets* and *Pikes*) to the *left*. Let the *Musquettiers give fire*, and *wheele* all *off*, either to the *right* or *left*, and place themselves in the *Reere* of their following *divisions* of *Pikes*; each *Rank* still moving up into their *leaders ground*. When there rest but *two Ranks* of each *division* to *fire*, let the *Pikes port*. Having all *fired* and *wheeled-away*, let the *Pikes charge*. Then *face* the whole *Body* to their *first-front*; and command the *first* and *last four Ranks* to *face* to the *left*, and to *march*, untill they are clear of the *standing part* of the *Body*. Then, Cause the *Front-half files* to *face* to the *left*, the *Reer-half-files* to the *right*, and so to *close their divisions*; and after that to *face* towards their *Leaders*.

This perfectly reduceth the whole body; every man to his place.

The eighth firing is the solid square girdled with shot.

For the *eight Firing*, make the *sollid Square girdled with Musquettiers*. For the which, draw half the *files* of the *right-flank* of *Musquettiers* crosse the *Front*, and halfe the *files* of *Musquettiers* from the *left-flank* crosse the *Reere*. Then *face* the whole *Body* (both *Musquets* and *Pikes*) to the *Front*, *Reere*, and *Flanks*. This done, let the *Musquettiers give fire*, and *wheel-off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*.

The ninth firing is to the front & reer up on Captaine Wallers double figure.

All the time of this *Firing*, the *Pike-men* being in the *middle* of the *Musquettiers*, have good opportunity (if the *Enemy* be neare) to *gall* them with their thick showers of *feathered shot*. The *Musquettiers*, in the mean time, having *fired once*, *twice*, or *oftner over*, on this *Figure*, draw your *files* of *Musquettiere* back again into their places.

The tenth firing to both flanks standing. The bringers-up being now the file-leaders.

Then having *faced* the whole *Body* to the *proper-front*, let your *ninth Firing* be (Captain *Wallers double firing*) *to the Front and Reer*, after this manner:

First, *Wheele Front* and *Reere* into the *right-flank*: then *face* them all the same way they were before: which done, cause the *half files* to *face* to the *Reere*, and command the *Musquettiers* which are in the *Reere* of each *division* of *Pikes*, to *double* their *Front* of *Pikes* by *division*. Then, let them *face-about* and *close* their *divisions*: and so having *refaced* them as they were, let them *give fire*, *wheel-off*, and *charge*, according to directions on Captain *Wallers Figure*.

The eleventh firing is on the diamond figure. As in c. 78

For the *tenth firing*, let them *face* to the *right* and *left*, and *give fire* to both *Flanks* upon a *stand*; *wheeling-off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*.

When the *Pikes* have *charged*, and are again *advanced*, let the *Captain* passe to the *Front-accidentall* of the *left-flank*, and face the rest of the *Body* to him; and in the next place, *wheele* their *Flanks* into the *Front*, and so all the *Musquettiers* will be in the *Front*: and by *facing* the whole *Body* to the *left*, all the *Musquettiers* will be on the *right flank*.

The Body again reduced.

Let the *eleventh Figure* be the *Diamond Battell*. Having *given fire* two or three severall wayes, according to the *directions* upon that *Figure*, *charged Pikes*, and *reduced* them again into the *Square*, *face* the *Body about* to the *right*; and *passe* the *Musquettiers* which belong to the *right-flank* between the *Ranks* of *Pikes* into their places. Then the *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank* being *closed* to their *Pikes*, the *Body* will stand at their *first Order*.

For

For the *twelfth* fi... *hollow square girdled with shot*: Let them *give fire* upon that *Figure* (bo... *thousand within*) according to the *directions* for that *Firing*. Let the *Pik*... *reduce* them in the same manner as I have discoursed upon that *Figure*. The 12 firing is the hollow square girdled with shot as in Chap. 105.

For the *thirteenth firing*, make the *Plesium*; as you shall find *directions* in the 106 *Chapter*. The 13. firing as is in Cap. 100.

Having made it, *give fire* upon it, and *reduced* it as at first, Let the *fourteenth* and *last firing* for this *Exercise* be the *hollow Hearse and Cross*. Turn back to *Chap.* 104. where you may find ample instructions for the *making*, *firing*, and *reducing* of it. And lastly, that you may conclude with *triumph*, cause your *Ensign* to be displayed in the *middle* of the *hollow Cross*: and then having *fired*, *charged Pikes*, and *reduced* your *men*, according to the directions on that *Figure*, your *men* will be as at first. And therefore, seeing that by this time night is come, and our *powder* gone, we will here give conclusion to our *sixth dayes Exercise*. The 14. firing as in Cap. 104.

Wherefore, that you may observe some form in the *lodging* of our *Colours*, cause your *Musquettiers* to *martch* in the *Front* of your *Pikes*. Then, as they *martch*, let them *invert* to the *right* and *left*: which is, when the *Ranks file* to the *right* and *left* by *division*. Then, cause all your *Musquettiers* to *face in oppesition*, to *cock* their *matches*, *guard* their *pans*, and *rest* their *Musquets*. In the mean time, let the *Pikes advance*, and *close* their *Ranks* and *Files* to their *Order*. Which being done, the *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Ensigne*, and *Drumms beating* a *troop* at the *head* of the *Pikes*, *passe through* this *guard* into the appointed place for the *allodgment* of the *Ensigne*. Then, the *Serjeants* cause the *Musquettiers* to *face* all *about* to the *right*, and *present*; and upon the first *beat* of the *Drum* they all *give fire* in one *volley*. And now having performed our *sixth dayes exercise*, the *Drum beats a Call*, and makes *proclamation*, that *every man depart unto his several home until his next summons into the Field*. A direction to lodge the Colours. The Ranks of Musquettiers are to file to the right and left outwards.

CHAP. CXX.

Of the Brigade: the number and way of drawing up a Squadron. Next, the composing three Squadrons into one Brigade. And lastly, of embattelling three Brigades, after the manner of the King of Sweden.

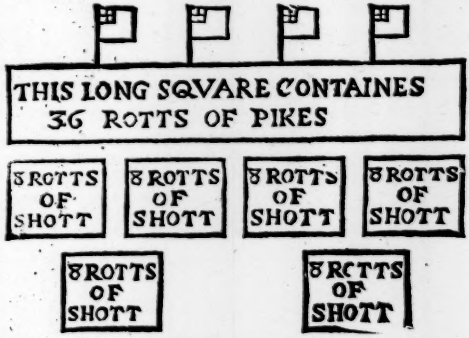
FOr as much as that *Military mirrour* of our times, *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, was found not only able to wage a *Warr* with the *Imperial Austrian bird*; but that he *soared* even to admiration, *pluming* and *tearing* the best *feathers* from his *back* and *wings*, none of his *Commanders* nor *Generalissimo's* being able to withstand the *torrent* of his *victories*: It cannot be denied, but that (next under *God*) his *Discipline* and new manner of *Imbattelling* was a great (if not the greatest) means for the atchievement of the height of his designs. And therefore, as in all the former part of my Book I have explicated and set forth the *Postures*, *Motions*, *Firings*, and *Figures* of *Battel*; to be practised by *Files*, *Corporalships*, *Divisions*, *Companies*, *Squadrons*, and some for larger *Bodies*: So have I delivered and demonstrated them all by the number of an hundred twenty eight men. Whereby all such as have a fancy or delight in the exercise of the *Infantry* may be so enabled to the work, that they need not continually pore upon two or three *Firings*, thereby breeding *satiety*; but with delectation to themselves, and profit to their *Souldiers*, may exercise their *bodies* with more *variety*. Unto which purpose, I have also added for the close of this my Book, the number, and manner of *Imbattelling* into that *form* of the *Swedish Brigade*, which hath proved so fatal a *Figure* to the House of *Austria*. Philips new discipline raised the Macedonian glory. All the Figures in my Book are shewn with the number of 128 men.

The knowledge whereof, as I assume not particul... ne, but a collection: So the *Figure* shall be drawn-up according to its own ... and *Words of Direction*. And therefore, for the better satisfaction of the de... will begin with a *file*, and so proceed untill we have formed a perfect *Brigade*. ... note that

* File. *six men* make a * *Rot*: *Three Rots* of *Pikes* makes a *Corporalship*, ... the *Musquettiers* have *foure Files* to a *Corporalship*: The *Corporalships* of each *Armes* makes a compleat *Company*, that is to say, *nine Rots of Pikes*, and *twelve Rots* of *Musquettiers*, twenty one *Rots* together; which amounts to the number of one hundred twenty six men, besides all *Officers*, *Muster-youngs*, and *Pasvolants*: *foure* of these *Companies* make a *Squadron*; and *three* such *Squadrons* formes a perfect *Brigade*. The *Squadrons* are sometimes drawn-up as this following *Figure*.

One of these squadrons containes 504. men whereof 408. are sometimes draw-up as in this Figure. Sometimes they are arranged all a best four corporalships being alwayes left in the rear as a reserve. Of this more in the Intelligencer.

A Squadron or third part of a Swedish Brigade.



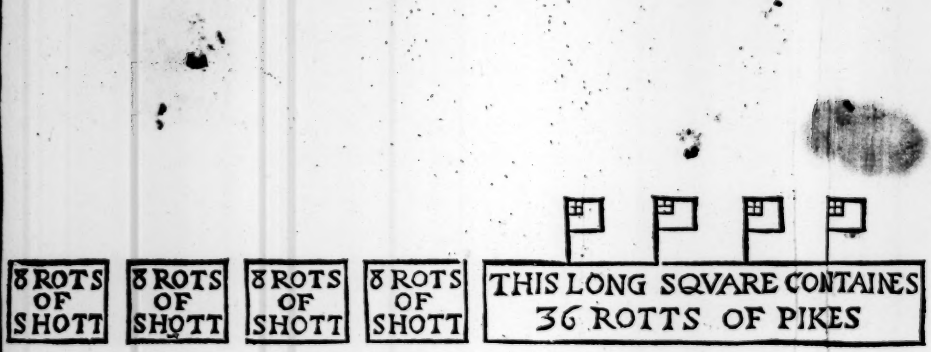
By the standing of this *Squadron*, or third part of a *Brigade*, you may easily perceive how apt and ready they are to be *Imbattelled* into any *form*, either *offensive* or *defensive*. But because I in this Chapter intend no other variety, but only to shew the drawing-up of the *Brigade* it self, therefore proceed we to the demonstration thereof, as it is set forth and expressed in words, by Collonel *Robert Monro*, in his Book, entituled, *Monro his Expeditions and Observations*. His *directions*, in effect, are as followeth.

" Twelve compleat *Companies* make up three *Squadrons*: every *Squadron* of *Pikes* and
" *Musquets* being drawn-up severall a-part; the *Pikes* and *Colours* on the *right-hand*, the
" *Musquettiers* on the *left*. Three *Squadrons* thus drawn-up, compleats a *Brigade* of *Foot*,
" to be divided as followeth: (*viz.*) Eight *Corporalships* of *Musquettiers*, being thirty
" two *Rots*, divided into foure *Plottons*, every *Plotton* being eight in *Front*, led-off by a
" *Captaine*, and every *Division* after him led-up by a sufficient *Officer*; till coming to a
" *hault* all are drawn in *even-Front*. Next after these, the thirty six *Rots* of *Pikes* are to
" follow (being twelve *Corporalships*) with their *Colours*; a *Captaine* leading-off the
" first five *Rots*, before the foure *Colours* should stirre: then the *Ensignes* should lead-off
" the next *Division*, their *Furers* with their *Colours* following them, till they are drawn-
" up even in *Front* with the thirty two *Rots* of *Musquettiers*. This makes the *right-*
" *wing* of the *Brigade*. Secondly, The *Battell* of *Pikes* moveth forwards in *Divisions*,
" doing in all respects as the former, untill they *range-even* in *Front* with the *Pikes* of the
" *right-wing*. Then the other thirty two *Rots* of *Musquettiers* belonging to the *middle-*
" *Squadron*, (who are appointed to make the *Battell* of the *Brigade*) are to be led-up as
" the

224. Men a compleat Company.

Plottons, are smal divisions.

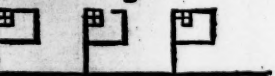
Even with the front but on the left flank.



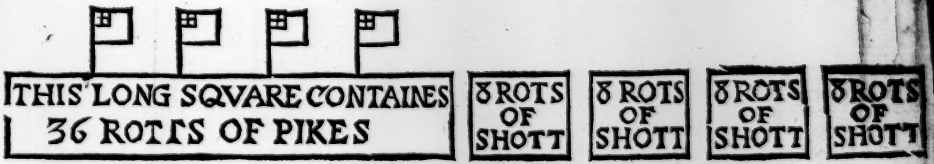
Place this between *Follio* 172 and 173.



Swedish Brigade.









" the first Musquettiers [illegible] ut to be drawn up at a reasonable distance, behind
" the Pikes of their own Squad[illegible] irdly, The last Squadron of Pikes marcheth up,
" in all respects observing the former order: moving forwards, untill they have attained
" to range even in Front with the other Pikes. After them marcheth forwards the thirty
" two Rots of Musquettiers (in four divisions) observing the former directions, untill
" they are equall in Front with the whole Pikes, which maketh up the left wing.

" This being done, the Battell (or middle Squadron) of Pikes and Muskets are to advance
" forwards in one body, till they are cleare of the *Pikes* and *Musquettiers* of the wings.
" Lastly, the surplus of the three Squadrons, being forty eight Rots of *Musquettiers*, are
" drawn up behinde the Brigade; where they are to attend the Commands of their Offi-
" cers, either to guard the Baggage, or Canon, to be Convoyes to bring Ammunition or Vi-
" ctuals to the rest; or to continue a reserve to wait upon all occasions. Observe the Fi-
" gure of the Brigade, in this place.

Even with the left flank.

The surplus of each squadron is 16. Rots, which together makes 48. Rots.

A compleat *Brigade* (saith Collonel *Monro*) consists of twelve companies, each *Company* containing 126 men. The which is to be understood of full and compleat *Companies*. Otherwise, and most usually of two Regiments, eight *Companies* making a *Regiment*, consisting of one thousand and eight men. So that one Regiment and a half, of whole and full companies, would perfect a *Brigade*: or two Regiments of torne and broken Companies, the overplus being alwayes added to the *Reserve*. Notwithstanding it so happened, at the *Battell of Lutzen*, that *Mitzlaff*, *Gerstorfs*, and *Rosses*, [illegible] razed Regiments, made up but one *Brigade*, being the outmost *Brigade* to the left [illegible] ge. And towards night in the same forenamed *Battell*, going to *rally up* the two b[illegible]en and shattered *Brigades* of *yellow* and *blew*, belonging to *Grave Neeles*, and Collonel *Winkle*, there were not men enough left unhurt and killed, wherewith to make one Squadron (or third of a *Brigade*) to make another charge. Let this suffice both for the number and order for the drawing up and making the *Swedish Brigade*. If any be desirous to know the place of the *Commanders* and Officers of the *Brigade*, there is a draught communicated by my Lord of *Reay*, and set forth in the *Swedish Intelligencer*.

The Swedes have but 8. Companies in a Regiment.

Look the Swedish Intelligences.

The discription of the Battell of Lutzen pa. 168. The Intelligencer

I should now shew you the manner how the *Musquettiers* performe their firings on this *Figure*. The which by all *information* that hitherto I could gather, have been these two: namely by **advancing* or gaining ground; or by *Salves*, powring on showers of Lead, by firing two or three Ranks together. I might here adde how usefull a Weapon our halfe Pikes would prove in this *Figure*: especially, if the adverse party had any Horse in the midst, or between his *Regiments*, as it happened *Tilly* to have in his Battell of *Leipsich*. But I willingly forbeare, that so I might demonstrate the standing of three *Brigades* together in order of *Battell*, according to the usuall & accustomed manner of *Imbattelling* by that *Invincible King of Sweden*, of never dying memory; who placed them as in this *Figure* may be seen. The Battell of the following *Brigade* being alwayes placed directly behind the *Intervall Division*, *or space of ground* between the two wings of the former *Brigades*.

*Introduction.

A salve is when 2. or more ranks power out all their shot together in one usually doe with our half Pike.

This paines, *Gentle Reader*, have I taken to ... which if it find a kindly and courteous *Acceptance*, shall be to me a *guerdon* ... sufficient for my labour and patience. As for the *Envious*, *who (like the dog in the manger) will neither eat himself, nor willingly suffer them that would*, It must be imputed to their *Cinicall* dispositions: who *square* other mens *endeavours* according to the *crookedline* of their own *conceits*. Condemning things *commendable in others*; but neither saying nor doing any thing considerable themselves. Another sort there be, that would seem to carry the *Port of knowledge* about them, yet infected with so much *malignity*; that being requested of their *opinions*, they will answer with an *Italian shrug*, or some such like *mimick gesture*: thereby insinuating a kind of doubtfulnes of things amiss, when themselves are not able to *render a reason* of their *distast*. I have been toucht with the venom'd teeth of a *third sort*. Who have rendred themselves so *irrational*, and *stupidly bestial*; that their *tongues* serve them but as *instruments to wound and goar the Reputations of men, then themselves much more deserving*. But seeing that to *display their follies*, were but to *soile the purity of my subject*: I will leave them to the amendment of their *errors*. Desiring once more of the *Courteous* (and well-knowing *Readers*) that they will put a *fair* construction on mine, and the Printers *oversights*: by which they will not only *demonstrate* the *goodnes* of their own *dispositions*; but put a further *Obligation* upon him, that will ever be ready to serve them.

The Glory be to God.

FINIS.

The CONTENTS of every CHAPTER contained in this Book.

Chap. 1. Page 1.

Concerning Postures and handling of Armes. 1

The Postures of the Musquet, 2

2 Of the Postures of the Pike. 3

3 Of the Drumme. 4

4 Of Ranks and Files, their places and Dignities. 5

5 Reasons for precedency of dignity in Ranks and Files 6

6 Of severall Distances. 10

7 Of marching a Company in divisions, order, and places of the Officers. 12

8 Of drawing the Divisions up into a square 13

9 What is facing, and the use of the Word, whether to be used or refused. 14

10 Of facing square, and how to perform it, the usefulnesse of Facing, and the severall parts thereof. 15

11 Of doubling the use and parts. 17

12 Of Inversion and conversion, and of doubling Ranks: 19

13 Of doublings of files. ib.

14 Of doublings by Bringers up 20

15 Of doublings of files outward and inward 21

16 Of doubling by half-files 22

17 Of doubling the Reer by Front half-files. 23

18 Of doubling the Reere by Countermarch. ib.

19 Of doubling flanks by way of countermarch 24

20 Of doubling half-files to the right to accommodate the doubling of half-ranks. 25

21 The difference between Intire and divisionall doubling, and of doubling half intire 27

22 Of doubling the Front inward intire. 28

23 Of half files doubling the Front by division. 29

24 Of doubling the Reere by division. 30

Chap. Page.

25 Of doubling in Reere intire, by the front half-files. 31

29 Of doubling by halfe Ranks intire. 32

27 Of doubling of flanks by division. 33

28 Of doubling Ranks intire 34

29 Of doubling files intire, advancing. 35

30 Of files doubling their depth. 36

31 Of conversion and inversion, with their words of command, and reducements 38

32 Of Files filing in sequence 39

33 Of inverting ranks, or ranks filing. ib.

34 Of ranks filing by division, and how usefull 41

35 Of the severall parts of Conversion, and how they are to be understood 42

36 Of Ranks wheeling by Conversion. 43

37 Of Files ranking in equall parts 45

38 The conclusion of Doublings 46

39 Of Countermarches, Their antiquity and words of direction. 47

40 Of the Cheream Countermarch: and the way to perform it 48

41 Of Countermarching to lose ground. 49

42 Of Countermarches to gain ground, or the Macedonian Countermarch 50

43 Of the Bastard Countermarch. 51

44 Of Countermarching Ranks to maintain ground ib.

45 Of Countermarching Ranks to lose ground 52

46 Of the Macedonian Countermarch by Ranke 52

47 Of Countermarching Front & reer into the middest 53

48 Of bringing Front and Reere together into the middest by the Bastard Countermarch 54

49 A divisionall Countermarch to make a large Intervall, between the first and last Rank 55

Chap. Page.

50 Of making a Large Intervall between the first and last Ranks, by the Macedonian Countermarch ib.

51 Of interchanging the ground 56

52 Of Countermarching the flanks (or wings) into the midst of the Battell 57

53 Of Countermarching to take the ground before be flanks. 58

54 Of Countermarching to take the ground on the outside of the flanks, and to direct their aspects inwards 59

55 Of taking the ground on the outside of the flanks, and bringing the Aspects [illegible] 60

56 Of interchanging ground by the flanks, and bringing the innermost files of Pikes, to become the outermost Rankes 61

57 Of wheelings, their kinds, and uses, with their severall words of Command. 62

58 Of wheeling Angular 63

59 Of wheeling on the Center 64

60 Of wheeling off by Division 65

61 Of wheeling the Front inward toward the Reere ib.

62 Of bringing the Flanks into the Front of the Battell 66

63 Of wheeling the Reere into the midst of the Battell 67

64 Of wheeling the right flank into the midst of the Battell 68

65 Of wheeling the left flank into the midst of the Battell 70

66 Of wheeling front & reere into the midst of the Battell 71

67 Of wheeling the flanks into the midst of the Battell 72

68 Of making men file leaders successively the files being eight deep. 73

69 Of making men file-leaders successively, the files being but six deep, 75

70 Of making men file-leaders successively according to their precedency & dignity in file. 77

Chap. Page.

71 Of making men file-leaders by dignity, the files being but six deep. 78

72 Of drawing the files again into a body and preparing them for skirmish. 79

73 Of firing by forlorn files, the manner, and the use 81

74 Of firing by two ranks, ten paces advanced before the front: next even with the front; and lastly, even with the half files. 82

75 Of the Horn-Battell how to make it, and to reduce it by firing. 85

76 Of the Demy Hearse battell: the use of the figure, how to make it, and to reduce it by firing 86

77 Of giving fire advancing, by way of Introduction, with the beneficiall use of the Bow and Pike. 87

78 The way to make the Diamond battel, several wayes to fire upon it, with divers other figures and firings which are thereby produced. 88

79 Of the Convex half Moon; the use of the Figure, and of the several wayes of firing upon it. 91

80 Of Extraduction, with severall uses, firings, and reducements 93

81 Of the broad fronted battell, with the wayes of firing upon it. 94

82 Of countermarching or firing in the Reere, the several wayes, and how they ought to be performed. 96

83 Of firing in flank in general, and more particularly of the gathering firing. 98

84 The second manner of giving fire to the flanke. 99

85 A firing in flank led off by the bringers-up. 100

86 The differences between firings in flank marching, and of bringing the Musquettiers on the outside of the Pikes. 101

87 Of firing in flank, and placing the Musquettiers in the midst of the battel of Pikes: with other firings from thence proceeding. 0.

88 Of firing to the front and reer upon a march. 104

Chap. Page.

89 A second way of firing to the front and reer 105

90 Firing to the Reer and right-flank marching. 106

91 Firing to both flanks marching. 108

92 A firing to both flankes standing. 109

93 Captain Wallers triple firing to the Front. 110

94 A firing Tripartite, doing execution to the front, reer, and right-flanke. 111

95 Of the Sconce Battell. 112

96 Of firing by three files at once; two of them standing oblique, the other direct. 113

97 A firing oblique, by four files together in forme of a W. 114

98 Of the front Battell; the way to make it, and to reduce it. 115

99 Of the Crosse-battell how to make it with a private Company: the way to fire upon it, with other discourses, concerning the necessity inforcing that figure: with the meanes to make it more defensive, and serviceable; and lastly, the way to reduce it. 116

100 Of the hollow fronted Crosse-battell how to make it with a private Company; and the way to fire upon it. 119

101 Of firing upon the square Battell, flanked with Pikes, 120

102 Of the ancient manner of imbattelling the Plinthium: the placing of each Armes, and the use of the figure. 121

103 Another hollow square for march. 122

104 Of the hearse Battell, and of the hollow Hearse and Crosse. 124

105 Of the hollow square girdled with shot. 126

106 Of the solid square, with Musquettiers in the Centire and Angles, the way to make the Figure with a private Company: how to fire upon it, and to reduce it. 128

107 Of the double Crosse-battell, and several other formes from thence proceeding. 130

108 Why it is necessary to know variety of formes, the way to make four several figures demonstrated in this Chapter, with their reducement. 133

109 The Trained Bands one of the three main strengths of this Land, the wayes to make them perfect Souldiers in handling of their Armes: The Checker battell, with severall other formes, either for a Company or Regiment. 135

110 How a Captain of superiour Commander ought to be qualified, what is requisite to every common Souldier; the use of variety of formes and figures of battell, with severall Regimentall formes that may be practised with a single Company, and the reducements. 139

111 Of the Musquet and half-Pike, with the severall wayes that have been tried to make the Musquettiers defensible against the Horse: as also ten queries objected to the Half pike and Musquets. 144

112 The ten queries objected to the Musquet and half-Pike fully answered. The half Pike joyned with the Musket approved to be very usefull, as having received approbation from divers souldiers of great rank and quality. 146

113 Of the half-Pike, how it may be serviceable on all formes: with severall figures indifferently usefull to the half-Pike or Rest, with the postures of the half-Pike and Musquet. 149

114 The first dayes Exercise. 154

115 The second dayes Exercise. 155

116 The third dayes Exercise. 157

117 The fourth dayes Exercise. 160

118 The fifth dayes Exercise. 164

119 The sixth dayes Exercise. 169

120 Of the Brigade, the number and way of drawing up a Squadron. Next the comprising three Squadrons into one Brigade. And lastly, of imbattelling three Brigades, after the manner of the King of Sweden.

FINIS.

MARS HIS TRIUMPH:

OR,

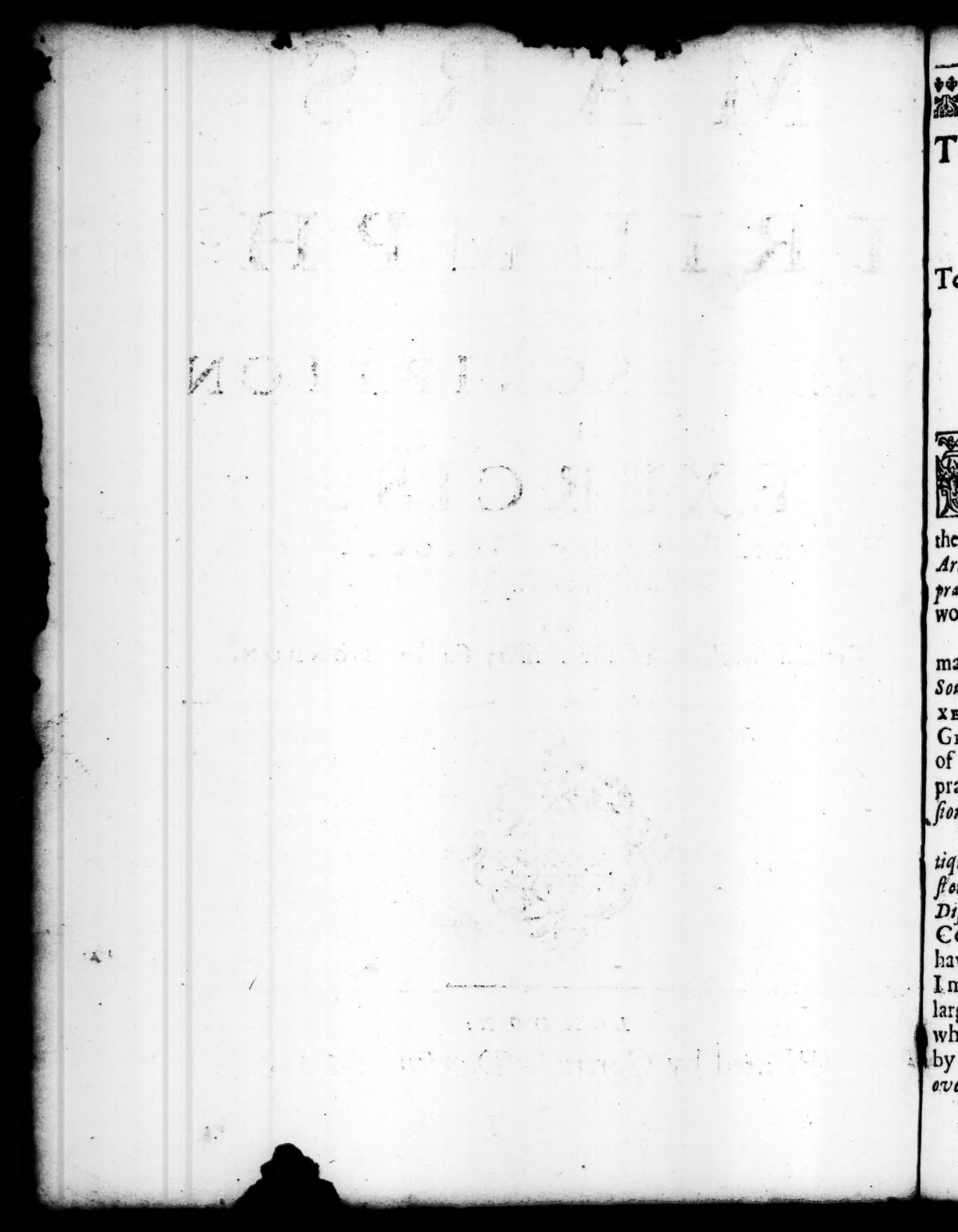
THE DESCRIPTION OF AN EXERCISE

Performed the XVIII. of OCTOBER, 1638.
in Merchant-Taylors Hall,

BY

Certain *Gentlemen* of the *Artillery Garden*, LONDON.

LONDON:
Printed by *Gartrude Dawson*, 1661.



To the Right Worſhipfull Alderman, THOMAS SOAME, one of the Colonels of the City, and Preſident of the *Artillery Garden*, *London*.

As alſo,

To Captain JOHN VEN, Vice-Preſident; Mr. WILLIAM MANBY, Treaſurer; And all other the worthy Captains of the City, and Gentlemen of the Court of Aſſiſtants.

Much Honoured Sir,
and
Right worthy Souldiers;

THE GRECIANS were the firſt that out of *variety* of *action*, and long experience of *War*, reduced the knowledge of *Arms* into an *Art*; giving Precepts for the *ordering of Arms*, and the *embattelling of Armies*. The ROMANES, who were their *Succeſſours in time*, ſo were they alſo of their *Precepts*; breeding and inuring their *youth* to *hardſhip*, the uſe of *Arms*, and the ſtudies of the *Art Military*. So that by their countenance and *practiſe* therein, they not only became *powerful* and *terrible* to others; but, in a word, *reigned* as ſole *Monarchs* of this *Mundane glory*.

* LICURGUS the Law-giver to SPARTA, ordered, that no *Epitaph* ſhould be made, nor mans *Name* remembred on his *Tombe*, except of him who had been a *Souldier*; as eſteeming them only worthy of *memory*. The *Perſian* ARTAXERXES preferred † PELOPIDAS, and the *Thebane* friendſhip before the reſt of GREECE, becauſe they were the *beſt Souldiers*. PHILIP of MACEDON, *King* of a poor Country, by *teaching* his *people* exactly the *exerciſe of Arms*; and practiſing a new *Diſcipline*, not only freed himſelf and Country from the *oppreſſion* of his *enemies*, but alſo laid the *foundation* of the MACEDONIAN *glory*.

* *Plut in Licur.*

† *Plut. in Pelopida.*

By this, Right Worſhipful, you may in part diſcern the great eſteem that *Antiquity* made of thoſe *ſtudious* in this *Art*. And ſo pleaſe you to compare the *Hiſtories* of the *paſſed times*, you may (as in an *Index*) behold how that the well *Diſciplin'd* have alwayes been the very *Bulwarks* and *Impalements* of their Countries. Where to the contrary, neglect of *Diſcipline*, and the *Art Military*, have been alwayes the fore-runners of *deſtruction* both to *Province* and *People*. I might be infinite in *examples* of this *nature*, but then I ſhould make my *Porch* larger than my *Houſe*. Therefore let ROMES remiſſneſs be a *warning* to *poſterity*; who as it had a ſlow *gradation* in its *ariſe* by *vertue*, ſo had it *degrees* of *falling*, by neglecting *Diſcipline*, and the *Art Military*; ſuffering it ſelf to be *cruſhed* and *over-trodden* by every *Barbarous Nation*.

This, as it *reflects* upon us a *neceſsity*, ſo it demonſtrates of how *neceſſary conſe-*

quence.

quence the *practise of Arms* is: inducing and inviting all *generous spirits* to endeavour the attainment of this *Military skill*. To acquire the which, the GRECIANS had their *Tactick* Masters, the ROMANES their *Tribunes*, and other inferiour *Tutors*, which taught them in *Campus Martius*; and we our *Academies* and *Military Schooles* of *War*; witnesse our ARTILLERY GARDEN, with the MILITARY and MARTIAL grounds, wherein the *choice* and *best-affected Citizens* (and Gentry) are practised and taught the *Rudiments* of our *Militia*. In times of *peace* so fitting them, that they may be able to *stand* in the day of *battel*, to *Gods glory*, their *own honours*, and their *Countries good*. But leaving these to your more *retyred* and *serious* Considerations, be pleased to take notice that the GRECIANS, ROMANES, PERSIANS, and other *Nations*, had not only their *traynings* abroad, but they had also their *triumphs* at home, in *Martial and Warlick-wise, all armed, treading out stately measures to their Instruments of War*. Such *Military exercises* as these, have you formerly performed, which induced a * *judicious Writer*, long since, to set forth your *praises in elegant verse*, as followeth:

*Rich Nicolls, Oxon. his *Londons Artillery*, pag. 27. *Printed in* Anno 1616

Behold how Londons armed Infantry,
Through practice *in true* Rules of Souldiery,
By the Drums martial musick *often led*,
The Pyrrhic dance *do now* distinctly tread:
Which if industriously *they do pursue*,
And use that timely Custome that is due,
To Warlike practice, *in despight of hate*,
Which evermore upon desert *doth wait*,
Times Finger *may* engrave *their* Industry,
Upon Fames Pillars *to* Posterity.

And such as this, right *worthy Souldiers*, was our last *Exercise* in *Merchant-Taylors Hall*, which is the *subject* of this Book: the *well contriving* and *exact performance* whereof, induced many of the *judicious Spectators* to desire Copies; which through several *transcriptions* became so imperfect, that I was requested (by many) to bring it to the *Press*, so to preserve its *native purity*. This I was the more willing to suffer, by reason no more were to passe the *Print* then barely might serve such *Gentlemen* who are desirous of them, being *members* of our own *Company*: as not being willing that so *rough* and *unpolisht* a *draught* should be exposed to the *publick view*. Therefore hoping your wonted Favours, and not doubting of your kind Acceptance, withal desiring that as I have *freely* bestowed my *Pains*, so you will as *lovingly* pass by my *errors*; whereby you will put a further obligation upon him that is already

Yours,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

MARS HIS TRIUMPH.

THe number of *Gentlemen* employed in this *Exerciſe* were *fourſcore*; that is to ſay, *eighteen* with *Morions*, *Swords*, and *Targets*; which encountred *nine* againſt *nine*. Secondly, 22 *Saracens*; that is to ſay, a *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Enſign*, one *Serjeant*, *Pipe*, a *Turkey-Drum*, and 16 ſelect *Saracens*. Thirdly, 40 of the *modern Arms*; *viz.* A *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Enſign*, 2 *Serjeants*, 1 *Phiſe*, and 2 *Drums*, 16 *Muſquettiers* in Buffe-coats and Beaver Morions, and 16 *Pike-men*, compleatly Armed in white Corſlets, whole Pikes and Morions.

Targettiers.

The Cornets having once play'd over, the *Targettiers*, nine in a company, *marched* into the *Hall*, and without delay oppoſed each other; drawing into *Figures*, *nine* againſt *nine*, performing *ten* ſeveral *forms*, making their *encounters* and varying their *Figures*, all according to the diſtinct *ſounds* of their *Muſick*. Having performed their ſeveral *Encounters* upon each *Figure*, they ſhook hands, and ſaluted each other; then joyntly together they did their *obeyſance* to the *Nobility*, *Aldermen*, and *Gentry*; And laſtly, fell off in the nature of a *Sillabans*, and ſo quit the *Hall*.

Next *marched* into the *Hall*, Captain *Mulli-Aben-Achmat* with his *Saracens* in great ſtate; their Muſick was a *Turkey-Drum*, and a hidious-noiſe-making *Pipe*, (made of a *Buffolas* horn:) The one half of the *Saracens* were armed with ſhort *Barbary Guns* and *Cymiters*; the other half with *ſteel Targets* and *Cymiters* on their thighs: ſome of the chiefeſt of them had broad *Turkey-Daggers* at their girdles, and all of them habited after the *Perſian* and *Turconian* manner. Their Names in their places as they *marched* (for the better underſtanding of the *Reader*) are put into the *Engliſh tongue*.

THOMAS WHITLEY, Captain.

RICHARD COOPER, Enſign.

Serjeant Tooly.	*Stephen Fawcet* C.	*John Sparkes* C.	*Richard Bayly* C.	*William Caw* C.
	John Robottom C.	*Thomas Lock* C.	*John Jenkenſon* C.	*Thomas Piper* C.
	Abraham Shewell T.	*Robert Holland* T.	*John Sweeting* T.	*John Melton* T.
	William Rogers T.	*Henry Slayde* T.	*William Sparks* T.	*Simon Hacket* T.

George Lawes Lievtenant.

Ruſſell, Pipe. *Beebe*, Drum.

The

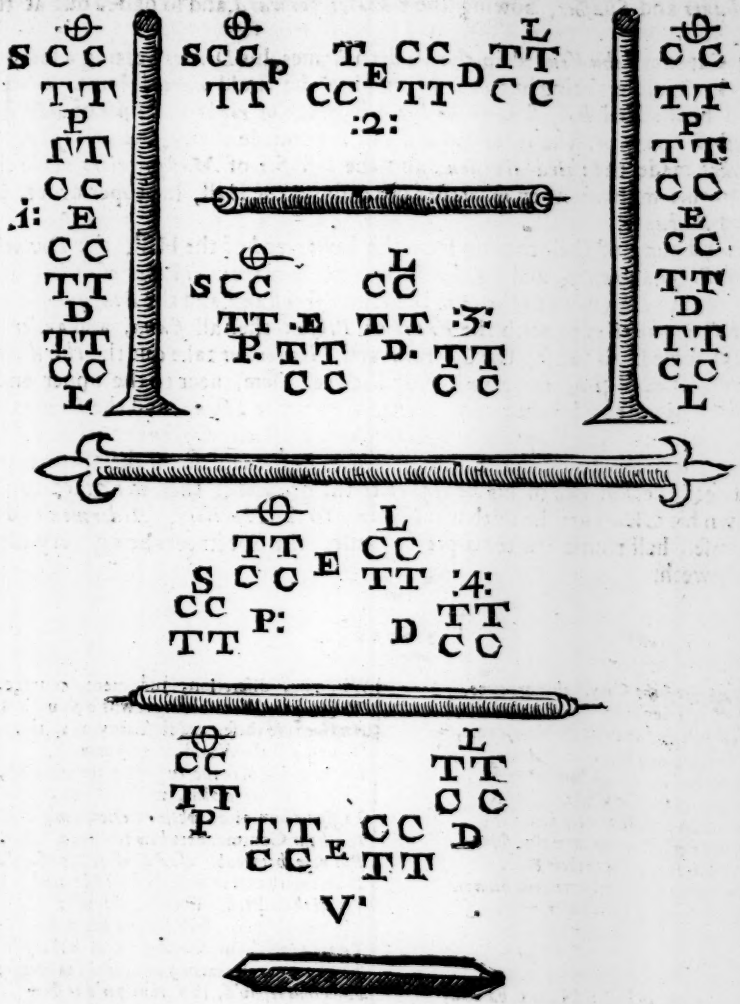
The *Captain* and *Lievtenant martched* with large *Pole-axes* in their hands, *Cymitters* on their thighs, *Battle-axes* hanging on their arms, and *broad Daggers* at their girdles, after the manner of the Country. The *Enſigne* with his *Colours* on a ſtaffe *ten* foot long, armed with a *ſteel Half-Moon* on the upper-end. The *Enſigne* (as in the Margin) is a *Pennon Azure charged with an Increſſant Argent on the dexter Angle: From the ſiniſter Bend-wayes, a Motto in the* Arabian *tongue and Characters, BISMI-ALLI VAL MAHOMET:* The Engliſh: *In the Name of* Alli *and* Mahomet.



Theſe *Saracens martched* into the *Hall* in Form of a *Hearſe*, as in the *Figure* 1. entring in at the Skreen, and ſo *martching* about the *Hall:* And being again come to the lower-end thereof, they there made an *Alt*; and without any *directions* drew-up their *Diviſions* to the *right* of each other, Forming a *Grecian Phalanx*, as in *Figure* 2. In this *Form* he moved them ſome few paces, and then *faced-about* again, ſuper-viſing them with a ſtately Survey; they, in the interim, moving into an *uneven-fronted Battel*, as in *Figure* 3. This done, he moved forwards ſome few paces, and again made *Alt:* and his *Saracens* without any preſent *directions* (although according to his former order) drew-up into the *Form* of a *Decreſſant*, as in *Figure* 4. In like manner obſerving a ſtately garb in his *martch*, he made the *Creſſant Form*, as in *Figure* 5. ſtill keeping the ſame order, as well in the *making* as in the *martching*, on them all ſucceſſively.

C ſtands for *Captain*, L for *Lievtenant*, E for *Enſigne*, S for *Serjeant*, P for *Pipe*, D for *Drumme*, C for *Carbines* (or *Barbary Guns*,) and T for *Targettiers*.

Having



Having *made* and *marched* upon all these *Figures*, on each of them demonstrating the dexterity of his men, the *Captain* by a *signe* drew them into the *second Figure*. They then being at the upper-end of the *Hall*, made an *Alt*; the *Captain* then *drawing-off his Divisions from the Left, wheeled-about the Front of his Body to the Right*, the rest of the *Divisions* falling into their places successively: which *Reduced* them into the *first Figure* again; in which *form* he *marched* about the *Hall*: And being come to the upper-end, the *Captain* first, and the rest by *Ranks* successively, made their *obeysance* to the *Nobility* and *Aldermen*, after the *Persian* manner; putting their *left-hands* upon the *tops of*

their

their Turbants and *Shashes*, bowing their *bodies forward*, and so passed out at the Garden door.

Lastly, Captain *John Venled*-in the Modern Armes, his *Drums* beating a lofty *English Martch*; his Souldiers being but 32. in number, he could *martch* but 2. a-breast: and to that end he *doubled half files to the left*; so that the *right-hand file* of *Musquettiers* made the *first-Division*, the *right hand file* of *Pikes* made the *second-Division*, the *left-file* of *Pikes* made the *third-division*, and the *left-file* of *Musquettiers* made the *Reer-division*. In this manner they *martched* once about the Hall, in proper order, both for *Posture* and *Distance*.

The second time of their coming from the lower-end of the Hall, the *Drums beat a Troop*, the *Pikes advance*, and *Ranks close forwards to their distance of order*. This done the *Divisions* are drawn-up to the *left*, then the *Pikes stand*, and the *Musquettiers martch* until their *Reer range-even* with the *Front* of *Pikes*: then all *stand*, and *order Arms*. When after some small pause, the *Captain* and *Lievtenant* take out the *third Musquettier* of the *right-hand-file*, *trooping* him up between them, neer to the upper-end of the Hall; where being at a distance convenient, they make a *stand*, and the *Drums* strike an *Alt*, and are silent. The *Captain* and *Lievtenant* do their *obeysance* to the *Nobility* and *Aldermen*; then *martch-off*. The *Musquettier*, in the interim of their Salute, *unshoulders*, and sets the *But-end* of his *Musquet* to the ground; then in a grace-full manner laying down his *Musquet*, he doth his *obeysance* to the *Nobility*, *Aldermen* and *Gentry*, turning himself half round: after a pretty pause, the Spectators being very silent, begins as followeth.

The Speech.

Grave Fathers of the City, *that are come,*
Like the fam'd Senators *of ancient* Rome,
From Seats of Justice, *and the* Publike cause,
To hear Bellona's *Drum beat loud applause,*
To War *and* Victory; *Much honour'd men,*
Behold the Souldier *and the* Citizen,
Make but one man: *these to Mars end line;*
And though like fiery Comets *now they shine,*
Threatning prodigious ruine to their Foes,
Each man can gain a Conquest *without blowes.*
For these are Starrs *of milder temper, when*
In their own spheare *they do appear to men.*
Not one of these but can instruct *a Band,*
But each Commander, *discipline a Land.*
These were not made in haste: Nature *has lent,*
To each just mixture *of each* Element.
And such are made for Souldiers, *else they are,*
But several Instruments, ordain'd for Warr.
The truly valiant *must be* all, *if not,*
T'were happy that such valour were forgot.
Who only fights, is but a Sword *or* Gun
Which only executes, *and so has done.*
Wisdome, discretion, judgment, courage, art,
Makes up the Wreath *that* crowns *a* Souldiers heart.
And such are these, and these are yours, *that can*
Govern a little World *in every man.*
The time has been the rugged main *was* croft,
To both the Germains, *with care and cost*
To find a Souldier; *whose experience might*
Teach our Commanders *how to* form a Fight.
But now that trouble's sav'd, these are asham'd
That so much cost *or* dulness *should be nam'd*
To soil their Predecessors fair Repute:
These would deny, *should such a one make* suit
To give his labour, *scorning t'have it thought*
They have not all that may be learn'd *or* bought.
And thus resolv'd, they are prepar'd to show
To your lov'd Honours *what they have or know.*
Not doubting when your judgments *shall descry*
Their love, *their* care, *their* skill, *their* industry,
The Kings *lent* honours, *that your* merits crown'd,
Will give your Souldiers *one small piece of* ground,
To shew their Armes *in: else, in* heaps *of* dust
Their glories *will be hid*; *their* bright Armes rust.

Captain

Captain *John Ven.*
Ensigne *Richard Gould.*

Front.
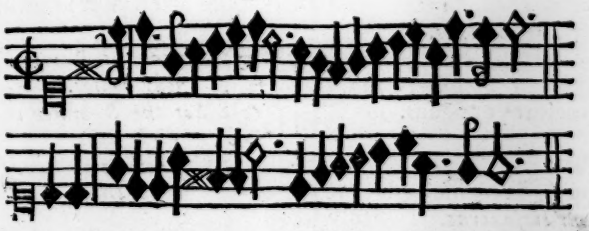
Serjeant *Salter.*	*Lievten. Gooday*	*Lievten. Hacket.*	*Lievtenant Allen*	*Lievten. Barriffe*	Serjeant *Perkins*
	Lievt. Wollefton	*Walter Bofvile*	*John Birkenhead*	*Tho. Levingfton*	
	Richard Bennet	*Thomas Head*	*Thomas Hart*	*Ric. Lacy, Speaker*	
Left-flank.	*George Simcocks*	*Richard Finch*	*William Colefon*	*Edward Wallis*	Right-flank.
	Lievtenant Gwin	*John Alford*	*John Bowker*	*John Davies*	
	Thomas Wardley	*Samuel Clerrige*	*Ralph Long*	*Thomas Clarke*	
	Liev Stackhouse	*John Smart*	*Matt. Andrews*	*John Povey*	
	Charles Fowke	*L. Drinkwater*	*John Smart feni.*	*John Afhley*	

Lievtenant *Matthew Shepheard.*

The *Speech* being ended, *obeyfance* done, his *Armes* recovered and *fhouldred*, the *Captain* and *Lievtenant* on each fide of him, for his *more honour*, (the *Drummes beating a Troop*) move down with him to his place, and fo leave him. This done, the *Musquettiers face in oppofition*, and *clofe their divifions before the Pikes*. After fome fmall refpite, the *Captain* and other *Officers* quit the Body, and the *Phife* and *Drum* play the *Poflure* tune once over. When the Mufick began the fecond time, the *Musquettiers* in the *Front*, and *Pikes* in the *Reer*, begun the *Poftures* as followeth.

The *Musquettiers* ftand *refted*, and *Pikes ordered.*

The Poflure Tune.



The *Poftures* divided into 3. to make them fit to keep time with the *Drum* and *Phife*.

1

Poyfe your Mufquets.

1 *Turn the but-ends of your Musquets to the right.*
2 *Raife up your Musquets with the help of your Refts.*
3 *Sever Musquets and Refts and Poyfe.*

2

Shoulder your Mufquets.

1 *Slip your left-hands down from the heads of your Refts.*
2 *Bring Musquets and Refts before you, placing your Refts croffe the ftocks of your Musquets.*
3 *Lay your Musquets properly on your fhoulders.*

3
Unshoulder your Musquets.

3 { 1 Slip and turne.
2 Place your right-hands behind the Scutcheons of your Musquets.
3 Sever your Musquets and Rests and Poyse.

4
Joyne your Rests to the out-side of your Musquets.

4 { 1 Slip your left-hands up to the head of your Rests.
2 Joyne your Rests to your Musquets.
3 Sinke your Musquets and Rests by your right-sides.

5.
Open your Pans and cleer.

5 { 1 Open your Pans.
2 Raise your Musquets.
3 Clear your Pans, by blowing.

6
Prime your Pans.

6 { 1 Take your Primers into your right-hand.
2 Put Powder into your Pans.
3 Return your Touch-boxes.

7
Shut and clear your Pans.

7 { 1 Shut your Pans.
2 Cast-off your loose corns.
3 Blow-off your loose corns.

8
Bring-about your Musquets to charge.

8 { 1 Step forwards with your right-legs, and poyse by your left-side.
2 Trail your Rests between your bodies and your Musquets.
3 Ballance your Musquets in your left-hands.

9
Charge with Powder.

9 { 1 Take your Charges into your right-hands, and slip-off the caps with your thumbs.
2 Put Powder into your Musquets.
3 Returne back your Charges.

10
Charge with Bullet.

10 { 1 Take your bullets, out of your mouths.
2 Slip-up your hands by the barrels of your Musquets, and put in your bullets.
3 Clap your hands on your Musquets to shake them down.

11
Draw forth your Scouring-sticks.

11 { 1 Lay hands on your Scouring-sticks and draw them a little.
2 Take lower hold, and draw them past the middle.
3 Draw them forth, and hold up the Rammer ends.

12
Shorten your Scouring-sticks.

12 { 1 Turne the Rammer ends towards your bodies.
2 Set the Rammer ends under your right paps.
3 Slip down your hands within an inch of the ends.

13
Put your sticks into your Musquets,

10 { 1 Put the Rammer ends into your Musquets.
2 Take higher hold, and put them further in.
3 Take higher hold, and put them home.

Ram-

14.

Ram home your Charges.

14 { 1 *Ram home*
2 *With three*
3 *Strokes.*

15

With-draw your Scouring-sticks.

15 { 1 *Draw forth your sticks a little.*
2 *Take lower hold and draw them further.*
3 *Draw them forth and hold up the screw-ends.*

16

Shorten your Scouring-sticks.

16 { 1 *Turne the screw-ends towards your bodies.*
2 *Set the ends under your right paps.*
3 *Shorten your sticks to an handful.*

17

Return your Scouring-sticks.

17 { 1 *Put their ends into the grooves, sliding them a little down with your thumbs.*
2 *Take higher hold and thrust them further in.*
3 *Lay your middle fingers on their ends and thrust them home.*

18

Recover your Musquets and Rests.

18 { 1 *Bring forwards your Musquets with your left-hands.*
2 *Poyse your Musquets in your right-hands.*
3 *Recover your Rests.*

19

Joyne your Rests to the out-side of your Musquets.

19 { 1 *Slip your left hands to the heads of your Rests.*
2 *Joyne your Rests to your Musquets, before you.*
3 *Sink your Musquets and Rests by your right-sides.*

20

Cock your Matches.

20 { 1 *Draw forth one of the ends of your Matches.*
2 *Blow your coals together.*
3 *Place your matches in your Cocks.*

21

Try your Matches, and guard your Pans.

21 { 1 *Draw down your Cocks, and fit your Matches.*
2 *Let your Cocks flie back.*
3 *Guard your Pans.*

22

Present upon your Rests.

22 { 1 *Blow your Coals.*
2 *Open your Pans.*
3 *Present, keeping the muzles of your Musquets mounted.*

23

Give fire brest-high.

23 { 1 *Level your Musquets on your Rests.*
2 *Set the but-ends to your shoulders.*
3 *Draw your Trickers and give fire.*

24
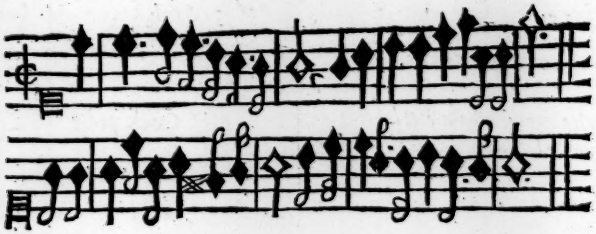
Uncock your Matches.

24 { 1 *Mount the muzles of your Musquets.*
2 *Uncock and return your matches.*
3 *Shut your Pans.*

Having thus performed their *Postures*, the *Phife* and *Drum* play the *falling-off Tune*: in the interim whereof, the *Musquettiers* perform their *Saluting Postures*, and *wheel-off* by *division*, two to the *right*, and two to the *left*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*.

After this manner the Tune is plaid *once over* to every *Rank*.

The Falling-off Tune.



	3	*Advance*		3	*Shoulder*		3	*Comport*
	3	*Shoulder*		3	*Advance*		3	*Shoulder*
	3	*Order*		3	*Shoulder*		3	*Comport*
At	3	*Advance*	*At*	3	*Charge to Front*	*At*	3	*Charge to Front*
	3	*Charge to Front*		3	*Shoulder*		3	*Comport*
	3	*Advance*		3	*Charge to Reer*		3	*Charge to Reer*
	3	*Charge to Reer*		3	*Shoulder*		3	*Comport*
	3	*Order*		3	*Order.*		3	*Order*

The *Postures*, as afore-faid, were firft done with the *Musquettiers* in the *Front*, the *Pikes* at the fame inftant performing their *Postures* in the *Reer* of the *Musquettiers*; the *Body* then ftanding as the *Figure* under A. When the *Musquettiers gave fire* they ftood as *Figure* under B. When the *Pikes* did their *Postures* in the *Van*, then the *Body* ftood as *Figure* under C.

A

M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M

P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P

B

M M M M
M M M M M M
M M M M
W W W W

C

P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P

M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M

The *Musquettiers* having performed their *Postures*, and *wheeled-off* as above-faid, then the *Captain* and *Enfigne* (the *Drums beating a Troop*) lead-up the *Pikes* towards the *upper-end* of the *Hall*, into the place where formerly the *Musquettiers* ftood; then the *Drums* ftrike an *Alt*. The *Captain* and other *Officers* (as formerly) quit the *Body*: and the fecond time that the *Posture Almain* is plaid over, the *Pikes* begun their *Postures*.

The

The *Muſquettiers* at the ſame time doing their *Poſtures* in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, as formerly in the *Front*.
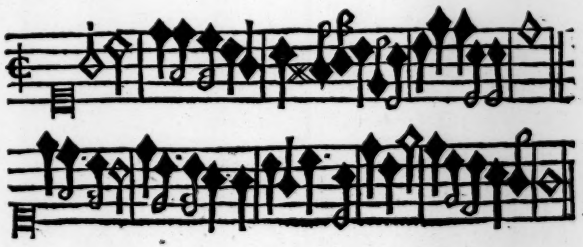
Note that the *firſt ſtrein* of the *Poſture Almain* was playd *twice over*; and the *laſt ſtrein twice over*: after this manner, the whole tune was doubly plaid *twice over*; wherewith conſorted and ended both the *Poſtures* of *Muſquets* and *Pikes* together. The *Pikemen* having performed their *Poſtures*, the *Captain* and *Enſigne* move to the head of the *Pikes* the *Lievtenant* to the *Reer* of the *Muſquettiers*, the other *Officers* to their ſeveral places: the *Drums beat a Troop*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Muſquettiers face* to the *right* and *left outward*, and *march* to the *Angles* of their *Pikes*, than *face* as before. The *Pikemen* in the *interim* doing their *obeyſance*, and *counter-marching* to the *right*, every *Rank ſaluting* as they come into the *Front*, and *counter-march* to the *right*, until the *File-leaders* of the *Pikes* are come *even in rank* with the *Front of Muſquettiers*; then they again *re-counter-march* to the *left*, and *march-up even-a-breaſt* with the *Muſquettiers* in one *Body*, and make a ſtand near the upper-end of the Hall. Which done, the *Body* will ſtand as the *Figure* under D.

The *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Enſign*, and other *Officers*, having again quitted the *Body*, the *Phiſe* and *Drumme* begin the *Almain* Tune for the *Motions*: and the ſecond time the Tune is played over, they begun their *Motions* as followeth.

D

M M P P P P M M
M M P P P P M M
M M P P P P M M
M M P P P P M M

The Tune for the Motions,



FACINGS.

Face all to the right, and march ſix paces.
With the end of the firſt ſtreyn, all face to the Front again, and order Armes.
Face all to the left, and march four paces.
This is to bring you into the midſt of the Hall: then face to the Front, and order as before with the cloſe of the ſecond ſtreyn.

1
The figures of number in the margent declare how many times the Exerciſe.

The whole Tune is played over throughout

Face all to the right-about, and march ſix paces.
In this Motion you are to keep your Aſpects to the Reer, and order Armes with the cloſe of the firſt ſtreyn.

2
Theſe four Facings intire.

Reducement.
Face all about to the left, move ſix paces.

This done, order Arms (as before) with the end of the Tune.

Left-flank, face-about to the right, and the whole Body martch.

3. *With the first streyn of the Musick the left-flank faceth to the Reer, and the whole Body moveth the way of their Aspects, ordering Arms with the end of the streyn.*

The continuance of the Tune numbred by the figurs in the margent:

Reducement.

Face all about to the Left and Martch.

Upon this motion all are to move slowly, until the proper File-leaders be even in rank, then face all to the Front together, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

Two first Ranks, face to the Right and Left outward; two last Ranks, face-about to the right; move all four paces.

4. *With the first streyn of the Musick they are to face to the Right, Left, and Reer, and to move four paces; then order Arms with the end of the first streyn, keeping their Aspects the way of their Motion.*

Reducement.

Divisional facings.

Face all about to the right, and close your Divisions.

With the beginning of the second streyn, all are to face-about to the right, and to move slowly, and close their Divisions; then lastly to face all to the Front, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

Musquettiers, face to the Right and Left; Pikes, face to the Front and Reer; move all.

5. *With the beginning of the first streyn, the Musquettiers face to the Right and Left outwards, and the two last Ranks of Pikes face-about to the Right, then all move four paces ordering their Arms with the end of the first streyn, and keeping their Aspects the way of their Motion.*

Reducement.

Face all about to the Right, and close your Divisions.

With the beginning of the second streyn, all are to face-about to the Right, and to close their Divisions; then to face all to the proper Front, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

Doublings

File to the Right-hand double.

6. *Because the Motion of this Doubling is short, it must be performed so slow and gracefully that all may take their places, and order their Arms with the close of the first streyn.*

For Reducement:

Ranks to the Left-hand double.

With the beginning of the second streyn, the even Ranks who are to perform this Doubling first face to the left, then together at three steps double their Ranks to the Left, ordering their Arms with the end of the Tune.

Files to the Left-hand double,

7. *This Doubling is to be performed as the other doubling of Files, observing the former directions; only varying in the hand.*

For Reducement.

Ranks to the right-hand double.

These four Doublings are to be performed very leisurely, because the Motion is so short that so they may still end the Doubling, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

Double your files to the right intire advancing.

8. *With the beginning of the Tune, the odde Files (accounting from the right) advance their Arms, move forwards, and perform the Doubling, ordering Arms with the close of*

of the first streyne, This Doubling requires something a quicker Motion in the Movers, by reason that it is a Doubling both of number and place; the last foure being only Doublings of number. The continuance of the musicks playing over:

For Reducement.

Front half-files, as you were.

With the beginning of the second streyne, the files that doubled face-about to the right, and move back into their places, face to the Front, and order Armes with the end of the Almaine.

Right-flank, double the Left-flank by division.

With the beginning of the first streyne of the Almaine, the Right-flank divideth; the Reere-half facing-about, and then both the Front and Reer-half moving forwards untill they are cleare of the standing part of the Body, (being the Left-flank) they are to keep the Aspects the way of their Motion, but not to order Armes with the close of the first part of the Tune; because the Doubling was not perfected. 9.

With the beginning of the second streyne, the Front-division faceth to the Left, the Reere-division to the Right; both moving slowly, untill the doubling be performed; then face all to the Front, and order Armes with the end of the Almaine.

For reducement.

Right-flanks that doubled, martch into your places.

With the first streyne, they that doubled advance their Armes, face to the Right, and move cleare of the standing part of the Body. 10.

With the second streyne they face in opposition, and martch into their places; facing to the Front, and ordering Armes with the close of the Musick.

Files, double your depth to the Right.

This Doubling requireth a little more quickneſſe in the Movers, being they are to double, face to the Front, and order Armes, concluding all with the first streyne of the Musick. 11. This Doubling the depth reduced the Body: closing to the right, made room for (12) the next doubling.

With the beginning of the second streyne, the whole Body faceth to the Right, and closeth to the Right-sides of the Hall, to the distance of Order: then face all to the Front, and order Armes with the end of the Tune.

Half-files, double your Front to the Left intire.

In the first streyne of the Almaine, the half-files advance their Armes, face to the Left, and move cleare of the standing part of the Body (but not ordering Arms.)

With the beginning of the second streyne, the half files face to the Right, and move up even with the Front; and then order Armes with the end of the Tune.

For Reducement.

Half-files that doubled, face-about to the Right, martch forth into your places.

In the first part of the Tune, the half files advance Arms, face-about to the Right, and move down clear-off the standing part of the Body. 13.

With the beginning of the second streyne, the Front-half-files face to the Left, and meet the Reer-half-files in the midst of the Hall, (being even) all face to the Front together, and order Armes with the end of the Tune.

Half-files, double your Front by division.

In the first streyne of the Tune, the half-files advance their Arms, face to the Right and Left, moving untill they are cleare-off the standing part of the Body. 14.

With the beginning of the second streyne, they face all to the Front, and martch forwards untill they have evened the Front, then order Armes with the end of the Tune.

For

For Reducement.

Half-files, face-about inward, and marteh into your places.

15. The continuance of the muficke playing over.

With the beginning of the first ſtreyne, the half-files face-about, and move down to the Reer of the Front-half-fils.

In the ſecond part of the Tune, the Front-half-files open to the Right and Left to their open order, the Reer-half-files in the meane time placing themſelves directly after their Leaders; all facing to the Front, and ordering Armes with the end of the Tune.

COVNTER-MARTCHES.

Files to the right-hand Counter-martch.

16. Counter-martches.

At the cloſe of the firſt ſtreyne of the Tune, the File-leaders muſt be even in Rank with the Bringers-up; the reſt of the Ranks even one with another.

With the beginning of the ſecond ſtreyne, they all move forwards and finiſh the Counter-martch, keeping their Aſpects to the Reer, and order Armes with the end of the Tune.

Files to the Left-hand Counter-martch.

17. *In this Counter-martching Files to the left, they are to obſerve the former directions both for time and Poſture.*

Ranks to the right-hand Counter-martch.

18 *With the beginning of the firſt ſtreyne, the whole Body faceth to the Right, the right-hand-file turning-off together, and moving even-a-breſt towards the Left, untill the right-hand-file of Muſquettiers be all met even-in-rank with the left-hand-file; the Pikes in like manner being inſerted one file within the other, wherewith ends the firſt ſtreyne of the Tune.*

With the beginning of the ſecond ſtreyne the Counter-martch is continued and perfected, all facing to the Front, and ordering Armes with the end of the Tune.

For Reducement.

Ranks to the left-hand Counter-martch.

19. *With the beginning of the firſt ſtreyne the whole Body faceth to the Left, and performs the Counter-martch according to the formes directions, only differing in the hand.*

Front and Reer-half-files, interchange ground.

20. *With the firſt ſtreyne of the Muſick the whole Body advanceth their Armes, the Front-half-files facing-about to the Right, each Diviſion paſſing forwards to the Right, between each other Intervalls (or Files) untill the File-leaders become even with the Reer-ranks, then ſtand with the cloſe of the firſt ſtreyne.*

With the beginning of the ſecond ſtreyne, the Diviſions moves forwards; that Diviſion that moveth towards the bottome of the Hall muſt have an eye to their followers, that ſo they may face all about to the left together, and order their Armes with the cloſe of the Muſick.

For Reducement.

Front and Reer-half-files, interchange ground.

21. *This ſecond interchanging of ground is for the Reducement of the former, wherein you are punctually to obſerve the former directions.*

Half-files double your Front to the Left.

22. *With the beginning of the firſt ſtreyne, the Reere-half-files advance their Armes, moving*

ving forwards into the Front-half-files, until the Half-file-leaders are even in rank with the File-leaders, the other Ranks being even one with another, then all order Armes with the close of the first streyn.

The continuance of the musiks playing over.

With the beginning of the second streyn, the whole Body advance their Arms, and face-about to the Right, martching down towards the Skreen, until the proper File-leaders be in the middle of the Hall: then all face-about to the right, and order arms with the end of the Tune.

This last Doubling by half-files (after the Counter-martches) was to Inlerge the Front of the Body, that so the wheelings might the more properly and commodiously be performed: Facing about to the Right, and martching into the midst of the Hall, was to gain roem for the Body to Wheel upon.

VVHEELINGS.

Wheele your Battell to the right upon the same ground.

23. *This Wheeling is to be performed on the first streyne of the Tune; and in the Motion the Right-flank is to face to the Left, using a reasonable quick motion: The Left-flank wheele slowly to the Right; being come to their ground, all order Armes with the end of the first streyne.*

For Reducement.

Wheele your Battell to the Left on the same ground.

Now the Left-flank is to face to the Right: the rest to performe in like manner according to the former directions. This Wheeling is but the Reducement of the other, and to be done to the second streyne of the Tune.

Wheele your Front into the midst.

24. *With the beginning of the Musick the two middle-most File-leaders are to move very slowly; the Musquettiers on the Wings must use a swifter motion: Being wheeled together, all are to face to the proper-Front, and order their Armes with the close of the first streyne.*

For Reducement.

Wheele your Reer into the midst.

25. *With the beginning of the second streyne of the Musick, all face-about to the Right, then wheele together as before: Lastly, face all to the proper-Front, and order Armes with the end of the first streyne.*

Wheele Front and Reer into both Flanks.

With the begenning of the Tune the Body faceth to the right and left-outward, and then wheele together as formerly, facing to the proper-Front, and ordering Arms with the end of the first streyne.

With the second streyne advance Arms, face in opposition, close your divisions, face to the Front, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

Reducement.

Wheele both flanks into the Front and Reer.

26. *With the beginning of the Musick all advance Arms, and the half-pikes face-about to the Right, then wheele together, as formerly. Lastly, face all to the proper-Front, and order Arms with the close of the first streyne.*

With the second streyn, face all in opposition, close your divisions, face to your proper-front, and order your Arms with the end of the Musick.

The continuance of themusicks playing, over.

The end of the Motions.

THe *Motions* of the *Body* thus ended, the *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Ensigne*, and other *Officers*, take their several places, the *Drums trooping* them thither.

The *Captain* having saluted his Company, the *Drums beat* a lofty *English Martch*, and the *Captain* leads the Company forth in *Divisions* once about the Hall, each *Officer marching* in his due place, being at the lower end by the Skreen, the *Drums beat a troop*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Ranks* close forwards to their *Order*, and each *Officer* leads-up his *Division* to the *left*. Then all together in a *fair brest* they *troop* forwards into the middle of the Hall, and there make an *Alt*, all ordering their *Arms*. This being done, the *Captain*, *Lievtenant*, *Serjeant*, *Phife* and *Drums* quit the *Body* again; the *Ensigne* only remaining with the company.

27. After some small pause, the *Phife* and *Drum* begin the *Almain* once over both streyns, the *Body* standing as the *Figure* under E.

Here begin the Firings.

To make the first Figure.

E

28.

M M	P P P P	M M
M M	P P P P	M M
M M	P P P P	M M
M M	P P P P	M M

Upon the second time of the Musicks playing over, with the beginning of the first streyn, the *Musquettiers* move forwards slowly, until the *third rank of Musquettiers rank-even* with the *Front* of *Pikes*; then all stand, and *order Arms* with the end of the first streyn. With the beginning of the second streyn the *two first Ranks of Musquettiers face in opposition*, close their *divisions*, *face* to the *proper-front*, and *order* their *Arms*; the *two last Ranks* of *Musquets*, in the interim, opening to the *right* and *left*, leaving *Intervals* between themselves and the *Pikes*, and so end with the close of the second streyn; which produceth the *Figure* under F.

This firing reduceth the Musquets to both flanks again.

F

M M M M

M M M M

E

M M	P P P P	M M
M M	P P P P	M M
	P P P P	
	P P P P	

The *Figure* under F being made, the *Drums beat a Preparative*; the *Musquettiers* in the interim *cock their Matches*, & *presens*: the *Pikes* at the same time first *advancing*, then *Porting*: The *Drums beat a charge*, the *Musquets give fire*, falling-off after the usual way of this *Firing*: the *Drums* continue *beating*, the *Pikes charge*, & the *Musquettiers make ready* again; which being done the *Drums* strike an *Alt*, and the *Pikes advance*.

To make the second Figure.

29. When the *Almain* begins again, the *two first ranks of Musquettiers unshoulder* and *poyse*, *marching* to the *Front-angles* of the *Pikes*, there *ordering* their *Arms* with the close of the first streyn of the Tune.

With

With the second streyne, the *two last Ranks of Musquettiers advance* their *Arms*, and *face-about* to the *right*, moving as before to the *Reer-angles* of the *Pikes*; all *face* to the *Front*, and then *order Arms* with the end of the Tune; which produceth *Figure* G. The continuance of the musicks playing over.

The *Figure* G thus made, the *Drums beat a preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, and the *two last Ranks* (as well *Pikes* as *Musquettiers*) *face-about*; the *Musquettiers cock* and *present* to the *Front* and *Reer*, the *Drums beat a charge*, the *Musquettiers give fire*, the *Pikes port*: The *Shot* having *fired*, *wheel-off* to the *right* and *left*, placing themselves in the Reere of their own *Divisions*, still preserving the *Figure*: The *Pikes charge*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* again; then all *face* to the *Front*, and the *Drums* striking an *Alt*, all *order Arms*, &c.

G

M M M M
M M M M
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
M M M M
M M M M

To make the third Figure.

After some small pause, the *Phife* and *Drums* begin the *Almain* again: with which the *Musquettiers poyse* their *Musquets*, and the *two first Ranks face-about to the Right*, the *Musquettiers* both of *Front* and *Reer* moving and closing their *Divisions*; then *face* all to the *Front*, and *order Arms* with the end of the first streyn. 30.

With the beginning of the second streyn the *Pikes advance*, and the *two last Ranks* of them *face-about* to the *Right*; then all the *Pikes march* untill they are cleare of the *Front* and Reere of the *Musquettiers*: Lastly, all *face* to the *Front*, and *order Arms* with the end of the Tune; which produceth *Figure* H.

The *Figure* H thus made, the *Drums beat a preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Musquettiers make ready*, the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left*, the *Musquets present*, the *Pikes port*: the *Drums beat a charge*, the *Musquettiers give fire*, *wheeling-off* by *divisions*, & placing themselves behind their followers. The next *Ranks* move forwards, *give fire*, & *wheel-off* as before, still reserving the *Figure*: The *Drums* continue the *Charge* untill the *Musquettiers* have *made ready* again. The *Drums* strike an *Alt*, the *Pikes advance*, all *face* to the *Front*, and *order Arms*.

H

P P P P
P P P P
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
P P P P
P P P P

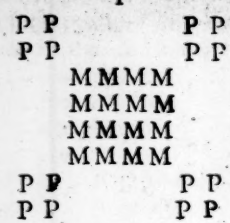
To make the fourth Figure.

With the beginning of the first streyne of the *Almaine* the *Musquettiers face in opposition*, and close their *Divisions*; then *face* to the *Front*, and *order Arms* with the close of the first part of the Tune. 31.

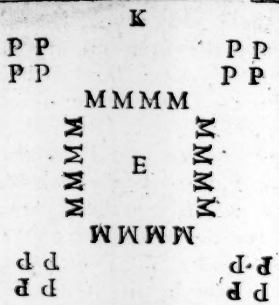
With the beginning of the second streyne the *Pikemen advance* their *Pikes*, *face* to the *right* and *left-outwards*, and *march* to the four *Angles* of the *Musquettiers*: then all *face* to the *Front*, and *order Arms* with the end of the Tune; which maketh the *Figure* I.

The continuance of th' Musicks playing over.

I



K



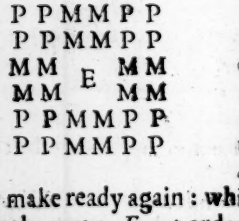
The *Figure* I, being thus made, the *Drums beat a preparative*, the *Pikes advance, facing* to the *Front* and *Rear*, *porting* their *Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* in the interim *cock* their *Matches*, and *present* to the *Front*, *Rear*, and *Flanks*, (by *inverting* the four inner-most *Musquettiers* to the *Right* and *Left*) the which produceth the *Figure* under K. In which Form they *gave fire* all together, moving again into their places as under I, the *Drums* and *Pikes* continuing the *Charge*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* again. Which being done, the *Drums* strike an *Alt*, the *Pikes advance*, and all *face* to the *Front* and *order Armes*.

To make the fifth figure.

32. With the beginning of the *Almain* the *two last Ranks of Musquettiers face to the right and left*, and quickly move between the *divisions* of *Pikes* on the *Flanks*: the *Left-half-ranks* of *Musquettiers* in the *Front*, at the same time *facing-about* to the *Right*, *marching* down between the *divisions* of *Pikes* in the *Rear*, just after the *Musquettiers* in the *Front*, then *face* all to the *Front*, and *order Armes* with the close of the first streyne.

With the beginning of the second streyne, the two *Front-divisions* of *Pikes face-about* to the *Right*, and move down untill they stand even with the *Front* of *Musquettiers*; then *face* to the *Front*: this done, the *two Left-hand-files* of the *Body face* to the *Right*, and close to their *distance* of *Order*: then all *face* to the *Front*, and *order Armes* with the end of the Tune; which produceth the *Figure* L.

L



The *Figure* L thus made, the *Drums beat a preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Musquettiers face* to the *Front*, *Rear*, and *Flanks*: The *Pikes* upon the *Right* of each *division* of *Musquettiers face* the same way with their *Musquets*, and *port*; the *Drums beat a Charge*, the *Musquettiers give* fire, *wheeling-off* to the Right, and placing themselves in the *Rear* of their *own divisions*. The *Musquettiers* having *given fire*, the *Pikes charge*, and the *Musquettiers* make ready again: which done, the *Drums* strike an *Alt*, the *Pikes advance*, and all *face* to the *proper-Front*, ordering their *Armes*.

This Figure is reduced again as followeth.

33. With the beginning of the *Almaine*, the *Rear-division* of *Musquets* move forwards into

into the *Front*, the two *left-hand-files* opening to the left (in the mean time) to give them way, the *two Flank-divisions* of *Musquettiers* are also to close to the *right* and *left* inwards, and all *order Arms* with the end of the first streyne. The continuance of th'Musicks playing over.

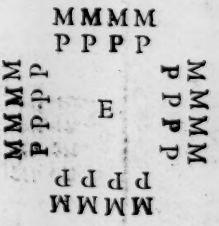
With the beginning of the second streyne the *Pikes* in the *Reer* close forwards to *Open Order*; the *Musquettiers* in the mean time *face* to the *right* and *left* outwards; the *Pikemen face* to the *right* and *left* inwards; then all move and *interchange ground*: which being done, *all face to the Front*, and order Arms with the end of the Tune.

To make the sixth Figure.

34. When the *Almaine* begins, the *Right-hand-file-leaders* of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes advance Arms*, and *wheele* to the *left*, *cross the Front of the Battell*; then *face* to the *Front*, and order Arms with the end of the first streyne.

With the second part of the Tune, the *half-files* of each *Arme* (of the *left-flank*) *face-about* to the *right*. The *Bringers-up* (being the *Leaders of the motion*) *wheele* to the *left*, *cross the Reer of the Battell*: the other four *Files* are also in the *interim* to *open* to the *right* and *left*, that so they may stand even with the *in-most Angles* of the *Front* and *Reer-divisions*. Lastly, all *face* to the *Front*, and *order Arms* with the end of the Tune, which produceth the *Figure* M.

M



The *Figure* M thus made, ths *Drums beat a preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Musquettiers* make ready, all *facing* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*, and accordingly do *present*. The *Drums beat a Charge*, the *Musquettiers give* fire, (the *Pikes* in the mean time *porting*) having *fired*, the *Pikes* move a little forwards, and the *Musquettiers* pass to the *right*, every man behind his *Pike-man*. The *Drums* continue beating, the *Pikes* Charge, and *Musquettiers* make ready again. Which being done, the *Pikes advance*, and the whole *Body faceth* to the *Left-angle* of the *Front*.

At this instant the *Beacon is fired*, and the *Captain* and other *Officers* leave their places where they stood to see the *Exercise*, and repaire to the Company. The *Captain* coming to the *Left-angle* of the *Front*, (to which part the *Body* stands *faced*) *marcheth* them a little, and *wheeleth* them about to the *right*. Now the *Sentinell gives fire* without in the Yard: Whereupon the *Captain* having *trooped* them towards the Skreen of the Hall, presently *reduceth* his *Souldiers*, by *wheeling the Front inwards to the Reer*, and then *Counter-marcheth* his *files* to the *right*. By this time one comes crying into the Hall, *Arme, Arme, the Saracens are landed*. And by this time the *Captain* had intelligence that their *Battels marched* fast towards him: Whereupon he *wheeleth* his *Battell* about to the Right, and *doubled half-files* to the Left; that done, having taken a ground of some advantage, he *advanced* his *Musquettiers* before his *Pikes*, and made the *Horn-battell*, as under *Figure* N. In which form he attended the coming-on of the *Infidels*.

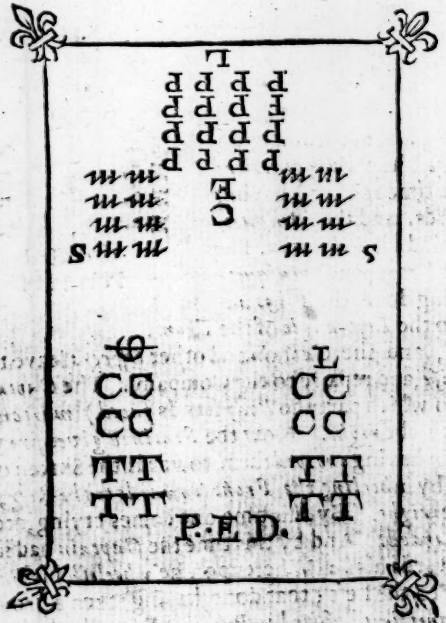
Now

N

Salt. S MM MM S *Perk.*
MM MM
MM C MM
MM E MM
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
P P P P
L

Now the *Saracens* are entering into the Hall at the Garden-door; by reason of the narrowneſſe of which paſſage, *Mulley Achmat* had drawn his *Body* into the form of a *Hearſe*.

But ſo ſoon as he was entred the Hall, and ſaw in what form the *Chriſtians* were *arranged*, (as you may perceive by the Figure under N.) he immediately divided his *Body* into two *diviſions*, himſelf leading the *Front-diviſion* againſt the *Right-Wing* of *Captain Ven*, his Lievtenant *Mulley-ſheck* leading the *Reere-diviſion* againſt the *Left-Wing*; as you may perceive by the Figure oppoſed to the *Horn-Baſtell*.

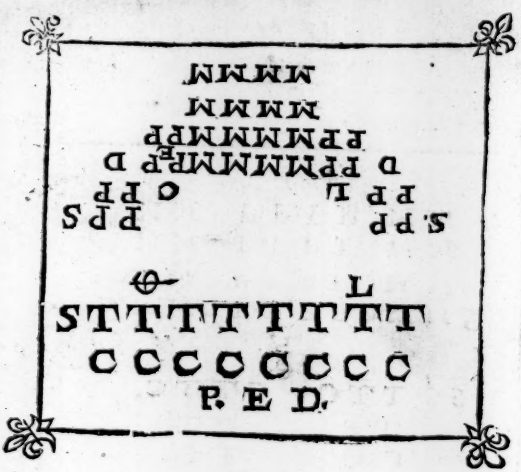


They *gave fire* in this forme one *Body* againſt another, each *Firing* with their *fallings-off*, varying and altering as you may perceive by the ſeverall Figures oppoſed to each other.

The *Fight* continued with much dexterity and reſolution on either ſide; ſometimes the one prevailing, and ſometimes the other: and that with much variety, as it often happeneth in like occaſions.

The

M M M M
M M M M
M M M M
M M M M D
S p p D
p p
p p
p p



The *Commanders* shewed good proofe of their *skills* and *experimented judgements*, by the politique and various alteration of their *forms*.

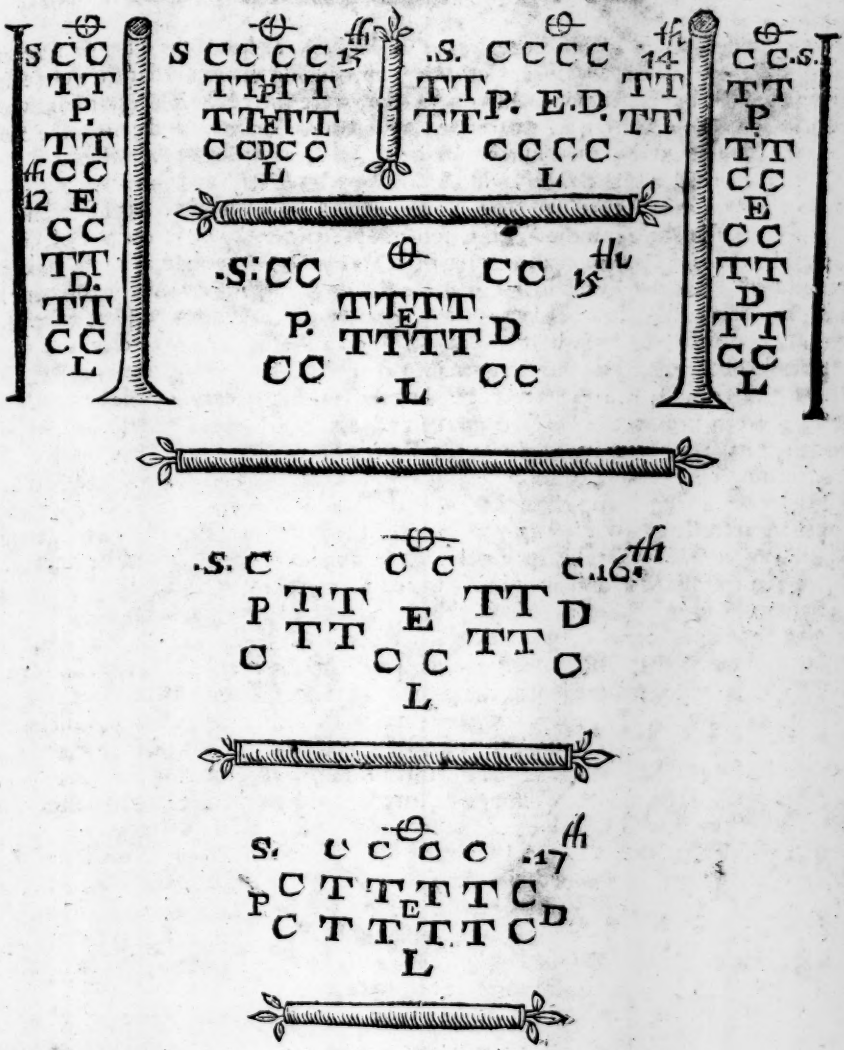
The *Souldiers* also shewed themselves to be no *younglings* in the *Art Military*, by their ready *obedience*, and *active motion* on each variety. The *Fight* contained a long time with great obstinacy on either side, untill at length the advantage of the *Christians Arms* and number of their *Souldiers* prevailing, MULLEY ACHMAT with the *Saracens* were forced to give ground. The which the *Christian Captain* perceiving, he caused his *Musquettiers* to move-up between his *Pikes* and *present*, pouring out his *shot* by two *Ranks* together; the *Pikes* also at the same time *charging* them home: Which the *Turcomen* poople no longer able to endure, they quit the Hall (the same way they entred) MULLEY ACHMAT and his *Lievtenant* making good the Retreit with their *Cymiters* in their hands.

The *Saracens* thus forced out of the Hall, the *two last Ranks* of Captain *Vens* Company *face-about*, and are privately led away by Lievtenant *Sheppard*, either to lie in *ambush*, or to attend upon the *Saracens* designe; as opportunity should best offer it self.

The Captain in the mean time *facing* the *Musquettiers* to the Right and Left outward, the *Pikes* to the Right and Left inwards, causeth them to *interchange ground*. (This brings the *Musquettiers* again to the *Flanks*.) Then the Drums beating a *Martch*, the Captain leads the Company in *divisions* once about the Hall, and *martcheth* out at the lower-end by the Skreen into the Yard.

Mulley Achmat having again ordered his *Body* in the Garden, sends a Spie to see what the Christians are doing; and finding them all gone out of the Hall, surmised they were fled: And thereupon, *Mully Achmat* returns with great Triumph, and with much vaunting insolence *martcheth* round about the Hall, with his Souldiers in fomt of a *Hearse*; as you may perceive by the Figure numbred with 12. Now being at the lower-end of the Hall, he made an *Alt*; when immediately upon a sign given, the *Turks doubled* their *half-files to the Right intire*; the which produced Figure 13. On which form he *martched*, and with a stately survay beholding the Order of his Souldiers, and the countenance of the Spectators, he again made *Alt*, observing his former Order, in making and martching on these ensuing Figures.

After



After that *Mulley-Aben-Achmat* had made and martched on all these several *Figures*, at last with great Insolence, he *Wheeled* his *Battel* about to the *Left*, his *Body* being in Form of the 17*th* Figure: He with a carless garbe viewing the Spectators, and with eyes darting forth disdain, demonstrating a kind of haughty scorn (by the gesture of his body)

againſt the ſuppoſed *temerity* of the Chriſtians, whom he believed to have been *fled*. But they to the contrary, all this time kept good *eſpial* upon him, ſuffering him to ſwell rather by *opinion* than *fortune*.

For even now when his inſolence was at the higheſt, he heard the Chriſtians *Drums* beating a *Martch*; Captain *Vens* Company approaching ſo near, that they were now entring the Hall by the Skreen. Aſſoon as they were entred the Chriſtians drew into *Battalia*, the *Drums* beating a Preparative, they advance forwards and *charge* the *Saracens*; and they perceiving their numbers to be ſo ſmall, as willingly meet them.

Captain *Ven* had all his *Muſquets* in the *Front* of his *Pikes*, and the Enemy his *Battels* were *ranged* as in Figure 17. The *ſhot* playd thick on both ſides, as ſometimes being in *Front*, ſometimes on the *Flanks*, ſometimes again in the *Reer*, otherwhiles in the *midſt*. The *Politick Captains* ſtill varying of their *forms* on either ſide, as might make beſt for their own *advantages*, each ſtriving for the *Garland of Victory*. But by this time the *Ambuſh* (under the conduct of Lievtenant *Sheppard*) was ready to fall on: and therefore Captain *Ven* cauſed his *Drums* beat a Retreit *firing*, and *charging Pikes* retreiting; thereby to draw the *Turks* from their ſtrength into *diſorder*. The *Turks* perceiving the Chriſtians to give ground, *charge* fiercely on: but the Chriſtian *Captain* made but a politick Retreit, thereby to draw the *Turks* from their advantage of ground, that ſo the *Ambuſhment* might have opportunity to *charge* them in the *Reer*. This, as it was contrived, fell out accordingly: For the *Lievtenant*, who all this while had kept himſelf and Souldiers cloſe, now perceiving his opportunity, *ranged all his Muſquettiers in Front*, and with all poſſible ſecrecie drew *cloſe up to the Reer* of the Enemy: Then all on a ſudden *pouring out a great ſalue of ſhot*, he therewith even rent and tore the Order of the Enemy.

Now the Chriſtians *charge* both in *Front* and *Reer*; the *Turcoman Lievtenant* with an undaunted courage *faced* his *half-files* about, & with an unparalleld reſolution ſingled out the Chriſtian *Lievtenant*, with his wel-tempered *Cymiter* laying about him like a *Turke*. Inſomuch that *Lievtenant Sheppard* with his *Partizan* had much ado with all his skill and dexterity to keep him at the point. The other ſtriving to hew out away before him, even through *ſteel*, *fire*, and *flame*; with his well-cutting *Fauchion* ſlicing and paring the Chriſtian *Lievtenants* Partizan, as if it had been a woodden dagger, and not a compoſure of ſteel. Nevertheleſs, the Chriſtian *Lievtenant* perceiving the *Turcoman* to be a proper perſonage, and not willing to deſtroy ſo goodly a preſence, he therefore ſtood politickly on the defenſive, whileſt the other tired himſelf by his own fury.

All this while the Souldiers are likewiſe at it with their *ſhort Guns*, *Swords* and *Targets*, againſt the Chriſtians with their *Muſquets* and *whole Pikes*; where we will leave them a while, ſtriving like contrary elements, and return into the *Front* to ſee how *Mulley Achmat* behaved himſelf againſt the Chriſtian *Captain*; who, as I fore-ſhewed, had given back purpoſely to draw the *Turke* from his advantage of ground, that ſo his *Lievtenant* might the more commodiouſly give on in the *Reer*.

The which accordingly taking effect, he gave a *freſh charge in the Front*; at which the *Saracens* began to ſtaggar, perceiving themſelves to be *doubly charged* in *Front* and *Reer*.

Mulley Aben ſeeing his people began to waver, meant to do ſomething in perſon, ſo to *re-inforce his Battell*; and therewithal caſting away his *Pole-axe*, betook himſelf to his *Battel-axe* and *Targer*; and therewith working wonders, forcing the heads of the beſt armed *Pikes* to give him way, that ſo he might encounter the Chriſtian *Captain*. Who at the ſame time ſuperviſing his *Battels*, (as being careful to prevent all croſſe accidents of Warr) he ſaw what havock the *Turke* made in perſon; whereupon ſingling him out, between them two began a fierce fight

The

The *Turk* at the first Encounter receiving a Wound in the Hand from the Christian *Captain*, wherewithal being so much the more enraged, he endeavoured to get within him, intending to have *stabd him with a* poysoned Creese* (which he continually wore at his side) hoping with his Fall to conclude the *victory*. But the wary Christian perceiving his fury, held him close to it, still keeping the *point* of his *weapon* at his brest.

* *This Creese is a dagger with a waved blade poysoned, according to the custome of that Country. It was given him by the great King of Maccassar, for a Present, for saving his life when they were Hunting & killing the wild Boar, who had else killed the King.*

Inraged *Achmat* even foming with anger that he could not work his Design, Resolved for his last Refuge, with the remains of his *over-wearied Turks*, to break through the *Battel* of the *Christians*. But the *vigilant Captain* having drawn all his *Pikes* in the *front* closely *ferried* together, kept them so close up, that they could not make the least penetration. Whereupon, being quite out of heart, with joynt Consent they cryed for *quarter*, after the *Turkey* manner, casting their *weapons* on the ground, and laying their *left hands* on their *heads*, with a loud voice crying, *Saybe-Sallam*.

The *Christian Captain* remembring how valiantly they had behaved themselves in fight, took compassion on them, and *disarming* them, commanded them to pass through between his *files* into the *Reer*. *Lievtenant Shepheard* in like manner with his *Soulaiers* following them, placing his *Souldiers* in the *Reer* of the *Turks*: So that the *Christians* had four *Ranks*, two *Ranks* in the *Front*, and two *Ranks* in the *Reer* of the *captive Turks*: They being in two *Ranks* in the midst of the *Conquerors*. Then the *Christian Captain* caused the first *Rank* of *Turks* to move between the first and second *Ranks* in the *Front*. The second *Rank* of *Turks* between the third and fourth *Ranks* in the *Reer*. Being content himself to have gained the *victory*, he took only the Captain, *Mulley-Aben-Achmat*, for his Prisoner. *Mulley-sheck* the *Turkey* Lievtenant, being Lievtenant *Shepheards* Prisoner. *Aben-Abdella* the *Turkey* Enfign, being Prisoner to Enfign *Gould*. The rest of the *Turks* being equally divided amongst the *Souldiers*; every *two Souldiers* having *one Turkey Prisoner* between them: the *Captain* thus bountifully rewarding his skilful and Conquering *Souldiers*.

This being performed, the *Captain* led forth his *Company* again in *divisions* (the *Turks* being *pinioned with peeces of Match*.) After the *Captain*, martched dejected *Mulley Achmat*: Then a *Division* of *Musquettiers*, being but two in *Rank*, and a *Turkey Prisoner* between them, every *Rank* having one in like manner. Then *martched* Enfign *Gould* at the head of the *first-division* of *Pikes*, displaying his *Ensign* in token of *victory*; *Aben-Abdella* being led, and the *Saracen Ensign* being carried after him. Lastly, after the *Reer-division* of *Musquets* martched Lievtenant *Shepheard*, leading with him his Prisoner bold *Mulley-sheck*. In this triumphing manner, Captain *Ven* led his *Company* thrice about the *Hall*, the *Drums beating a Martch*; where it was a goodly sight to see how every *Souldier* was enriched with one Spoyl or other; the which they carried in Triumphing manner, some having *Cymiters*, some *Barbary Guns*, others having *Targets*, but all something: Besides this, the *Souldiers* were mightily enriched by the *Jewels* that they found about them; for these were not of those *poor roving Saracens*, but a select Company that had enriched themselves by the *spoils* of many others. Thus having *martched* about the *Hall* the third time, being come to the Skreen, the *Captain* made a sign, the *Drums beat a Troop*, the *Pikes advance*, and the *Ranks close forward to their Order*: This done, the *Divisions* are drawn up in *Battalia*, then the *Pikes stand*, and the *Musquettiers advance into a Horn Bastel*. Lastly, being in this *Form*, the *Drums* continuing their *Troop*, the whole *Body advanceth forward* into the middle of the *Hall*; then the *Drums* striking an *Alt*, the whole *Body* makes a stand, *ordering* their *Arms*. Then the *Captain* and *Lievtenant*, as at the first, take forth Mr. *Richard Lacy* (the third man from the *Front* of Lievtenant *Barriffe* his *File*) *trooping* him between them into the *Van*

before the *midſt* of the *Front* of *Muſquettiers*, there doing their ſeveral Duties to the *Nobility*, as formerly; The *Souldier* began this enſuing Speech:

The Speech.

UNbrace your Drums, *and let the* Warlike Phife,
No more diſtinguiſh 'twixt pale Death *and* Life:
Furle-up your Enſignes, *let the* Cannon *ceaſe,*
And re-aſſume your (bravely purchaſt) Peace.
Here are the knowing, *that with* Judgements eye
Look through your Actions; *can at firſt diſcry*
Your wel-weigh'd Reſolutions, *and can give*
That ſweet Reward, that makes a Souldier *live,*
Encouragement: *which from you is* Praiſe,
Welcome as Triumph, *or th'* unblaſt Bayes:
Give us but that, we can diſpence with Coſt,
With Time *more* precious, *and with what is moſt*
In the eſteem of men; we want but Ground,
Which had, you Conquer; *yet our* Hopes *are* Crown'd.
This from your Bounties *if we ſhall obtain,*
Vollies *of* Shot *ſhall* Thank *it back again.*

After the *Speech* thus ended, *Duty* being done, and the *Souldier* returned to his place, the *Captain* cauſed the *Drums* to beat a *Troop*, and the *Pikes* to move forwards, even with the *Front* of *Muſquettiers*. Then the *Captain* makes a Sign, the *Drums* beat a *Martch*, and the *Company martcheth* again in *Diviſions*; the *Captain* firſt, and the *Ranks* of *Souldiers* following; doing a ſhort *Souldier-like Obeyſance* to the *Nobility* as they paſt by them: The *Enſign* only *baſing his Point*. In this Order *martching* forth of the *Hall*: where the *Turks* found ſo good *quarter*, and kind *uſage*, that now they are all turned *Chriſtians*; leaving that courſe of life, and are now either *Merchants* or *Shop-keepers* for the moſt part.

FINIS.

SOME BRIEF
INSTRUCTIONS
For the Exercising of the
CAVALRY,
OR,
Horse-Troopes.

Wherein is set forth
An *Abstract* of the *Duty* of all the OFFICERS belonging to the *Cavalry*, with the Duty and Exercise of the TROOPES, from their entring upon that SERVICE, to the time of their DISBANDING.

As also is Included their *Postures*, *Motions*, and *Stipends*, both according to the *Antient* and *Modern* Discipline and Practise.

By J. B.

Prov. 21. 31. *The Horse is prepared against the day of Battel, but safety (or victory) is of the Lord.*

Licensed and Entered according to Order.

LONDON:
Printed by *Gartrude Dawson*, 1661.

TO THE READER.



His Abstract *of* Military Discipline (*chiefly relating to the* Cavalry) *is not presented to thy view in regard of any Want of* Books *composed by* Eminent Authors, *on this* Subject; *but because they are Large, and Chargeable, which may discourage many: I have therefore brought it to a narrow Compass, that none may plead that for an Excuse, in not having some Rudiments of Knowledge in* Horse-Service, *upon that Account. And finding an* Eminent Author, Colonel *William Barriff.* *to have bestowed much Time and Pains, to instruct* Persons *in this* Discipline, *relating to the* Infantry, *I did apprehend that Reading on that* Subject *continually, might cause some Weariness, as well as walking continually on Foot; therefore according to the* proverb (*its good walking with a* Horse *in ones hand*) *I have presented thee with a little Discourse of the* Cavalry, *for thy* Recreation; *and* (*if Moderate*) *may procure some ease, if not Advantage: the Knowledge of both, will support* Thee *with two* Legs, *and strengthen* Thee *with two* Arms; *Its true, that this* Leg *of mine is* lame, (*being short*) *and* Arm *weak, compared with the annexed* Authors *work: yet we know its better to have some help of two such useful* Members (*although but* Stumps *comparatively*) *then to be altogether deficient of them: And*

therefore have given Thee *but a* hint *of that use that might be made of this* Knowledge, *if it were Compleat; hoping that some* eminent *and* experienced Person, *will be stirred up, to make a perfect Cure of the defects of this* Subject, *that Future* Generations *may say of him, as* Solomons *Mother*
Prov. 31 29. *of a* Good Wife, (Many Daughters have done vertuously, but thou excellest them all:) *And if any* Age *hath produced any Perfection in this* Science, *surely this may challenge it; which if* gifted *Persons hide their* Talents *in a* Napkin, *they will become unprofitable. There is one* Objection *that may dishearten Persons as to undertake this* Work, *that is, they shall thereby teach their Enemies as well as their Friends, and so their* Country *beaten with such* Weapons *as they provided for their own Defence; Its possible if their* Science *Communicated to their* Country-men, *should advantage their Enemies, no more then* Archimedes engins (*which he made for the Defence of his own* City Syracusa) *did the* Roman Consul (Marcellus) *after his Death, that then it might be, that they would be free herein. Yet some Answer may be given to the* Objection; *For had former* Authors, *upon this and other useful* Subjects, *been backward upon such an accompt, we should have wanted that their* necessary helps, *which at first seemed to be little, yet not to be attained unto, but with much* difficulty: *Therefore if this be found* advantagious *to the* Reader, *I have my Desire, hoping that the* Improvement *thereof, will tend to the* Glory *of the* great God (the Fountain of all Knowledge) *and the good of our* Country.

J. B.

SOME

SOME BRIEF INSTRUCTIONS For the Exerciſing of the Horſe-Troopes.

THe precedent Subject of the before-going *Book*, being chiefly a Tract of the *Art Military* concerning the *Infantry*, as to the Exerciſing of them in their ſeveral *Poſtures* and *Motions*, with divers and ſeveral *Forms* for the *Imbattelling* of Small or Greater Bodies; The enſuiug Subject, being a brief *Compendium* of the ſame Exerciſiug of the *Cavalry*, both as to the *Ancient and Modern Diſcipline.*

The word *Cavalry*, being derived (as other Authors affirm) from *Cavallo* (a *Horſe* in the *Italian* and *Spaniſh Language*) implyes an Exercise of another Nature than that of *Infantry*; the laſt having relation to Inſtruct, Teach and Exercise a *Rational Creature* only, the Firſt both a *rational* and a *ſenſitive*; both being to be made uſe of together (inſomuch that when that *Noble Spaniard* at the firſt Encountered with the *Mexicans* in *America*, having ſome few Horſe-men with him, the *Indians* did imagine that both Horſe and Man was but one Creature, which ſtruck the greater Terror amongſt them, and gave him the means of the eaſier Conqueſt of that large extent of Land, now poſſeſt by the Subjects of his then Sovereign's Predeceſſors) And therefore the true underſtanding, with the Practical part thereof, is, and ought to be eſteemed a moſt Noble and Excellent, as well as a Neceſſary Part of the *Military Profeſſion*; the which may be Reduced to theſe few enſuing Heads, which as ſome that have Writ of this Subject (before, and in the beginning of the late unhappy *Civil Wars* in this *poor* divided Nation of *England*, by reaſon of thoſe unhappy Differences between the then *KING* and *Parliament*, which occaſioned ſo much precious *Bloud* to be ſpilt, and a vaſt *Treaſure* to be waſted) I ſhall in ſome brief meaſure follow, as to the *Method* thereof. *Hernando Cortez.*

1. As to the *Levying* of Men, in the *Election both of Officers and Souldiers*, both in *General* and *Particular.*
2. Their *Martching.*
3. Their *Encamping.*
4. Their *Embattelling.*

} These *Two Particulars* being much Altered in the *Practical part* thereof in the late *Wars*, as my *Guide* for my *Method*, Capt. *John Cruſoe* hath laid down in his *Military Inſtructions* for the *Cavalry.*

Of Officers in General.

THe corrupt *nature* of Man, throw our firſt Parents ambitious tranſgreſſion, (the Seed of wch accurſed *fruit* being brought with us into the World) being grown from bad

to worse (even as all things do after their maturity) through the *deadly Envy* and *cunning Craftiness* of our old Adversary the *Devil*, makes him to esteem of himself above that which he ought to do; For instance, *Youth* and *Young-men* (in reference to their years so called) not only think, but Practise (chiefly if they have great *Means* and freed from the *Awe* of their Desceased *Parents*) the *Commanding part*, before they know any thing, what was the *first Principles of Obedience*, which as it is (too often seen) a sign of Ruine to themselves and Families; so (as *Corporations* and *Common-Weales* are Compounded of *Families*) in time, may be the occasion in a great measure of the ruine of any *Kingdom* or *Common-wealth*: Witness the fatal Ruine of that once eminent People of *Lycaonia*, whose Head City was *Sparta*, which stood un-Walled for many Ages, so long as they observed those Excellent and Necessary strict Rules of *Obedience* of all sorts of People (especially of *Youth*) prescribed by their Eminent *Law-giver*, LYCURGUS; but when once they degenerated from his *Precepts*, how did their *Power* and *Policy* decline, till from being the Eminentest of the *Grecians* for Command, they fell into Subjection as soon as others; little of their being Reigners to this day, only as some *Historians* have Recorded something in Memorial of them, which is left for the Benefit of Succeeding Ages and Governments to make use of, that they bring not themselves into the same miserable state and Condition, through the same default, of aspiring to *Command* before they know how to *Obey*. And as this *Epidemical* Disease hath seized on the *Politick* or *Civil Government*; so by woful Experience, hath eminent *Common-wealths*, *Kingdoms* and *Empires* found the same to be too true in their *Military Governments*, when as particular Persons, through Favour and Flattery, have Crept up into Eminent Commands in *Armies* (who never knew, or understood, but less practised, the true Rules of that absolute Necessary Duty of *Obedience*) As witness some Persons of Note amongst the *Romans*, in their Second *Punick War* against the *Carthaginians*. Therefore as to the Choice of *Officers* (especially the *Eminent Ones*) this ought chiefly to be looked after, That they be such as have been Exercised in this Duty of *Obedience*, as having been *Apprentices* to this *Military* Profession; which as in other *Arts* and *Sciences*, the mysterial Knowledge is not to be understood in a little time; and some part of Communicative Instructions; So in this *eminent Mystery* there ought to be allowed a larger time of *Apprentiship* and *Education* before the obtaining of *Eminent Commands*; Its true, that *History* gives us an account of the young years of two of the *Eminentest Commanders* that ever the *Roman* and *Carthiginian Common-wealths* enjoyed, *viz. Scipio Africanus* and *Hanibal*, when they entered upon those Great Designes of Invading and Delivering of the One and Others Country; but withal it informs us what *Education* they had in that *Profession*, both bred up in *Forreign Wars* (*viz.* in *Spain*) under their Parents and Relations, who had been Eminent for Command in *Military* Affairs in both *Common-weales*: Therefore as *Education* is necessary, whereby they may have attained unto this Knowledge and Practical part of this Duty of *Obedience*; so there are other *Qualifications* required, as *Knowledge* in the Duties of all Persons that take upon them this *Military Profession*, from the meanest *Souldier* to the highest *Officer*; For he that knoweth not the Duty of the highest place, before he hath obtained the same, is a Person altogether unfit for the same; also there is to be joyned herewith, *Experience*, *Valour*, and *Dexterity* in apprehending how to Surprise, and to avoid being Surprised upon all occasions and opportunities. But this must be attained unto by *degrees*, for after he hath learned his first Lesson of Practical *Obedience*, he is then fit for Preferment, yet so as he step up by the *Ladder* of *Vertue*, and then let him be as *Ambitious* as he will, alwayes avoyding those abominable *Vices* of *Covetousness*, *Lasciviousness* and *Gaming*, which as they

hey will be prejudicial to himself, so also to the Command, wherewith he is intrusted; For how can he justly Reprove or Correct a fault in an other, that his *Conscience* tells him he is guilty of himself?

But chiefly, let him have a *filial* Fear of the Most High *God*, the great *Creator* of Heaven and Earth, and be sure to have an Interest in him, through the *Lord Jesus Christ*, and then he need not fear to encounter with the Power of the greatest *Kings*, no not the King of *Fears and Terrors*, Death.

Of Officers in Particular.

Of the General of the Horse.

WHo ought to be a Person endowed with extraordinary *Experience* and *Valour*, as having obtained the first by good *Education*, under eminent Commanders: He having under his Command, the chief Strength of the *Army* used in these *modern times*. For rarely hath it been seen of late dayes, that the *Infantry* hath stood, when the *Horse* were Routed; only once in the late *Civil Wars* in this *Island*, at *Auborn Chase*, the *Parliaments* Foot in the *Army* under the Command of the *Earle of Essex*, stood in a Champion Country, when their *Horse* were forced to Retreat for shelter to their Foot, being thereunto driven by the *Kings Horse*, under that Noble Commander, *Col. Hurrey*, (who left the *Parliaments* Party and went to the *King's*) who, if he had had as good a Party of *Foot* (but he had none at all) as he had of *Horse*, in all probabillity, that day had put an end to the then *Wars*.

His Prehemineney

Concerning His *Prehemineuce*, it is disputable who shall have the *Precedence*, He or the *Major General* of the *Army*; but these late times (in the Civil Wars of *England*) in their *Military Discipline and Conduct*, hath manifested that the use of two *Eminent Officers* (in *Ancient* times, and in some *Forreign Countries* still used) *viz.* the *Lievtenant General of the Army*, and *General of the Horse*, is not so absolute necessary; whereby a considerable Charge hath been saved, and yet the *Service* performed, and that with good success; the Chief Officers having been a *General of the Army*, a *Lievetenant General* of the *Horse*, a *Major General* of the *Army*, and a *Commissary General* of the *Armies*, and a *Quartermaster General* of both; the higher *Officers* being only *Colloncls*: Some Titles of *Major Generals* have been, as *Coll. Edward Massey* (now Sir *Edward Massey*) had such a One, of the *West*, when he served under the *Parliament*; but when *General Fairfax* came into those Parts with his *Army*, then his Command and Power ceased, during his abode in those parts; and he exercised only the Command of a *Collonel*.

His Office.

It is his *Office* to take particular notice of all the *Officers* of every *Regiment* under his Command, (as all the *Horse* are) and not only of them, but also of those private *Souldiers*, which are careful and punctual in their Duties, Rewarding and Honouring them publickly, when they perform some eminent Service, and advancing them to *Offices* without partiallity, which is a great encouragement to them; but how this hath been performed, or rather neglected, the Complaints of many Deserving Persons in these late *Civil Wars*, hath made evident, and that in the ill Success of great Designes, possible to have been effected had such been Encouraged and Employed: *But kissing goes by Favour.*

As he ought to Reward and Prefer the *well Deserving*; so on the other-side, he must be careful that there be no neglect of Punishing *Offenders* according to their deserts, which will procure him Respect from the *Good*, and make the *Contrary* stand in *Awe*; it belongeth to his Care that the *Cavallry* be in a good *Equipage*, and that they be fitted with all Necessaries requisite; but whereas former *Authors* do mention it as appertaing to the

Generals Office, to have a Care that the *Troopes* that are to Martch, be provided of *Nags* to fetch in Forrage after their martch, whereby to preserve their Horses for Service, especially if they be to have the *Guard* in the *Army* or *Quarter*; In these Modern times the same is omitted generally, by reason it enlarges an Army (because of the Riders of these Nags) with unnecessary hands and mouths, as also of a great Charge, and many times are an occasion of great disorders and tumults, through their disorderly taking Provisions from the Peasant (although in an *Enemies Country*) or from their dis-agreeing amongst themselves, as to what they have taken, some not having found that which he went forth for, readily, finding another (weaker then himself in his own apprehension) possest with that he wanted, and presently *Seizes* on it; the other unwilling to part with it, a *Quarrel* is begot, and others comming in, (as *Acquaintance*, *Affection*, or Apprehensions of the *just ground* of the Difference is apprehended on either side) side with both, insomuch that like a little *Spark*, it hath occasioned a great *Fire*, which hath endanger many a brave *Army*'s ruine: It's true, that some *Countries* and *Kingdoms*, lying on a Continent, there may be somthing said for the use of such *Nags*, especially where the *Lanciers* are in use, and in an Army, and therefore I shall mention no more of that particular. As concerning what some do apprehend, that he is not to suffer the *Captains* either to make *Officers*, or to absent themselves from their *Commands*; without his leave: As to the latter part, there is no question but it is very requisite, because the want of *Officers* being with their *Troopes*, occasions many inconveniences, and the *General* may want the help of such on a sudden, whose absence (unknown to him) may occasion the miscarriage of some eminent Design: But as to the former, concerning his Choice of his *Officers* (after the first Choice at the Raising of the *Troope*) there may be much said for it, and against it; and it having been the subject of great Debates amongst *Military Officers*, But where that Priviledge is allowed to a Captain, and that he preferrs such as have been sometime under his Command, without partiallity according to their deserts, will in time make it evident that it will be advantagious to a *General* to allow him such a Priviledge, which if he be a deserving Person, will oblige him the more to his *General*; and his own *Souldiers* will stick the closer to him, and be more obedient to his Commands when they see he hath *Power* and *Will* to preferr the Worthiest. Further, The *General* hath his *Officers* apart, and in that which concerneth the *Cavallry*, neither the Lord *Marshall* (or *Major Generall* of the *Army*) nor *Lord Generall* himself useth to dispose of any thing without his Advice. If he pass through the *Quarters* of the *Cavallry*, or *Infantry*, his Trumpets are to Sound, but not where the *Lord Generall* Quartereth, or where he is in Person. When he Commandeth in the *Army* (in absence of the *Lord Generall*) if he Engage in a *Battell* against the *Enemy*, his place is then in the *Battle*, that he may be able to give *Orders* to all, as occasion shall require. Many other particulars there are, that several *Authors* do mention, to belong to this *Officer* in Chief of the *Cavallry*, the which the more inquisitive Persons, desirous of Knowledge in such things, may, with little pains taking, find out, amongst the said *Authors* that have written of this Subject, of the *Cavallry*.

The Lievtenant General.

His Command is of great importance, for what belongs to the *Generalls* Place, belongs to him, chiefly in the absense of the *Generall*, or where there is no *Generall*; and therefore in the *Parliaments Armies*, there was no *General of Horse* allowed, but only a *Lievtenant Generall*, which was not a little Charge saved to them: Some *Authors* mention several other Particulars that belong unto his *Place*, distinct from the *Generall*; but I shall forbear to mention them, that I may not make my *Epitomy* larger than others have done the Subject it self.

Their

Their *Office* is great, and in some *Armies* distinct one from the other, the *Preheminence* being *given* to the *Major General*; Their *Duties* both alike, they being not only the Eyes and Ears of the *General, and Lievtenant General,* but also the Hands and Leggs; for they formerly did (and in other Countries do still) distribute all *Orders* to the Inferiour *Officers*, and kept Records of the Lists of *Gaurds*, *Convoyes*, and other *Services*. They must be *vigillant* and *carefull* to appease Dissentions which grow amongst the Souldiers as they which deal much with them; They are to go every Evening to Receive the *Orders* and the *Word*, and having given it to the *Generall*, and *Lievtenant Generall*, they are to give it to the *Quarter-master-Generall*, that he may distribute it: But of late, their *Places* and *Duties* have been supplyed by two Persons, stilled *Adjutants Generall*, the *One* belonging to the *Horse*, the *Other* to the *Foot*; there having been no mention made of *Major Generall*, or *Commissary Generall* of the *Horse* in these late *Wars* in the *Parliaments Army*, but only of such as bore those Titles, in relation to both the *Cavallry* and *Infantry*.

The Major General, & the Comissary General supplied by Adjutant-Generals.

Ought to be a Person of solid *Knowledge* in *Military Discipline*, and well read in several of the *Liberall Sciences*, but especially in *Arithmetick* and *Geometry*, and to have an insight into the *Art of Surveying and Measuring of Grounds*; for it belongs to his *Office* to appoint *Lodgings* or *Quarterages*, either in the *Field, Towns* or *Cities*; Wherefore he ought to be well vers'd in *Mapps*, and to have good Intelligence of the Countries where through the *Cavalry* are to Martch, with the Villages and Places adjacent to their Quarters, whereby he may place his *Out-Gaurds* and *Sentinels*, and what *Avenues* there are, whereby the *Enemy* may come with least discovery to *Alarm* them, or beat up therr *Quarters*; as also what Wayes *Parties* are to be sent forth, whereby they may gain the better Intelligence of the *Enemies* Approches or *Designes*. He is to keep a List of the *Gaurds*, *Convoyes*, and *Cavalcadoes*, or *Exploits* of the *Horse*. He ought to visit the *Gaurds* and *Sentinels* by Day and Night; and shew the *Alarum* place to the particular *Quartermasters*, when they go to him in the Evening to Receive the *Word*. He must be Cautious of making any Reports, but what are truths: And if any *Order* for hast be given him by word of Mouth, himself must go and deliver it, and not trust it to others.

The Quartermaster-General.

Ought to be endowed with all those Noble Parts, which are to be expected in a *Foot Captain*, and rather in a fuller Measure, in regard he is to Govern *Man* and *Beast*; He must be a perfect and Compleat *Horse-man* himself, and endeavour to make his *Troop* good *Horse-men*; shewing them how to sit a *Horse* in a comely posture, carrying his *Body* upright, the Right Hand bearing his *Pistoll*, or *Carbine*, couch'd upon his Thigh; His Left Hand with the Bridle Reyns under the *gaurd* of the *Pummell* of the *Saddle*, and his Legs close and streight by his *Horses* sides, with his Toes turned a little inwards; his *Horse* so well manuaged, that he will stand constantly without Rage or Distemper. He is likewise to see his *Souldiers* well *Hors'd*, with compleat *Armour*, their Furniture sufficient, their *Bridles* well Reyned, and lined with a Wyre Chain, their *Pistolls* and *Carbines*, clean and well fixed; and he must endeavour to make all his *Souldiers*, as got shot or marks-men as himself, or else all his labour will be to little purpose. He must be *Vigilant, Sober, Continent, modest* in his Apparrel, *curious* to have good *Horses* and *Arms*, thereby to give Example to his *Souldiers*, and to see them punctual in their *Duty*, and exactly observant of *Discipline*: For their Incursions and Extortions cannot be remedied, unless the *Captain* keep them in Order; Wherein if he be negligent, he looseth his Reputation with his *Superiours*. If he be *Covetous*, or given to *Gaming*, he is ready to be drawn to lay hands (oftentimes) on the *Pay* due to the *Souldiers*, whereby he also over-

The Captain of a Troop of Horse.

overthroweth his *Reputation and Credit*. A *Covetous* desire of *Riches* should not enter into a *generous Heart*. He must diligently and punctually observe the *Orders* which shall be given him, or sent him from his *Superiors*, and be in the place at the appointed Hour with his *Troop*, and others under his Charge. On all occasions, he must be first on *Horse-back*, to give good example to his *Souldiers*, and keep his *Troop* compleat and full. He must be Cautious of over-slipping any Opportunity, which may be taken either in Offending the Enemy, or securing himself; For not to adventure when he should, is *cowardise* and not *prudence*; and to dare when he should not, is *rashness* and not *valour*: Wherefore he must frame his *Councels* and *Affections* upon the *mould* of necessary Circumstances. He must alwayes strive by desert, to advance himself to higher Places, by studying how to endamage his *Enemy*; to this end he ought often to Consult with his best experienced *Souldiers*, and to make it his work to know them all by their *Names*, that so he may distinctly call them by the same, upon any occasion; it being an encouragement to them to be known by Name of their *Captain*.

He is to take notice, that nothing snatches *Victory* out of the hand of the *Victor*, so soon as untimely falling to the *Spoil*; upon such *disorder*, the *victors* give place to the *vanquished*: Whatsoever should befal, he must take heed of discovering any *Fear*, on whose *Countenance*, and *Courage* the *Souldiers* depend; and must alwayes shew a good Resolution, in the *Orders* which he shall give, without confounding himself, knowing that there is no place for Counsel in him, whose reason is surpriz'd by Fears. He must cherish his well-deserving *Souldiers*, and Cashier the contrary; and it must be his Care to have one or more of them, knowing the *Wayes* of the *Country*, to serve him as his *Guides*, (because the *Bores* are neither alwayes at hand, nor alwayes to be trusted) and to such he is to give some Allowance extraordinary. Out of his *Troop* (if he can obtain that Favour of the *General*) he is to Chuse his Inferior *Officers*, weighing every ones *merit* without *partiallity*, whereby he shall give Content and Encouragement to his *Souldiers*, and shall be sure not to be denied by the *Generall*, in the Confirmation of the said *Officers*. Concerning his last particular, we find it mentioned by way of Complaint, in the Writings of *Melzo* and *Basta*, That the *Captains* places, being often disposed of by the *Prince* (as the *Captains* in *Flanders* are appointed at the *Court* in *Spain*) there do arise many Inconveniences thereby, especially these two; First, Young and Unexperienced Gentlemen are made Captains: And Secondly, Many good *Souldiers* are lost, who seeing their Hopes of Advancement (by degrees and Merit) cut off, abandon the *Service*.

In a Pitch'd *Battell* he must seldom or never seek to Charge the *Enemy* in the *Front*, especially if the two *Armies* are near joyning, fearing lest his *Horses* wrong his *Foot* Companies, by a disorderly Retreat, then possibly he can offend the *Enemy*; wherefore the best and safest place to Charge the *Enemy* upon, is the *Flanks* and *Rier*.

When the *Enemy* shall Charge him with one of his *Troopes*, let him not make much hast to meet him, and if the Ground be of Advantage (whereon he stood at the first view of them) keep it: if not, Advance softly forwards, until the *Enemy* be within an hundred paces of you, and then fall into your Carere; by this means your *Horse* will be in breath and good Order, whereas the *Enemy* will be to seek.

The *Captain* of the *Curiassiers* hath the priority of Command next the *Captain* of the *Harquebusiers*: The *Captain* of the *Carbines* hath the *Third* place; The *Dragoones* are of the meanest Account, although many times they do the best Service.

He

He ought to beare the true Image of his *Captain*, for he is employed upon many Services by him, more than any other *Inferior Officers* are; as *Guarding* some particular *Passages*, Riding out upon *Parties*, to give Intelligence (from the Country People) of the *Enemies motions*. *Of the Lieftenant of a Troop of Horse.*

In the *Captains* absence, he Commands the *Troop*; upon whom usually all difficulties do rest; Because oftentimes the *Troopes* are given to young *Gentlemen*, which want Experience. He is to Exercise his men Wisely and Orderly, using his Command over them, that he may be more beloved than feared: He must be strict in seeing them do their *Duty* with all fitting punctuallity, & that they have a Care of their *Horses* & *Armes*. His proper place for Martching is alwayes in the *Reer* (unless the *Captain* be absent, and then he is to Martch in the Head of the *Troop*, causing the *Souldiers* to Martch orderly after the *Captain*, and the *Colours*, (or *Cornet*) and not to suffer any to straggle from the *Troop*. It is requisite that he can *Read* and *Write* well, because he is to keep the List of the *Names* of every Person in his *Troop*; and by reason of *Orders* or *Letters* sent to him from his *Superiours*, which he must not shew to others. He must know the sufficiency of every *Souldier*, that upon any occasion he may employ them accordingly. When he is to passe upon any *Duty*, he is first to gain the best Instructions for the Advantage in managing the *Service* he is employed about the *Troop* Martching to the *Guard* in any place, and approaching near it, the *Lieutenant* (in these *late Wars* the *Quartermaster*) goeth before to take notice of the *Gaurd-place*, and to speak with the *Lieutenant* (or *Officer in Chief*) of the *Troop* which is to be Relieved, to inform himself of the place for the *Sentinels* for the *Day* and for the *Night*, and what wayes he is to send forth *Parties*, and how far, and how often; and of all other things requisite. He ought himself (but now often performed by the *Quartermaster*, or an honest or able *Corporall*) to go and place the *Centinells*, visiting them often, to see whether they keep their *Posts* and *Horses* back: He is, during the time of his being upon the *Gaurd*, to keep himself *Armed*, especially with *Back*, *Breast* and *Pott* (or *Casque*) and his *Horse* not unbridled.

The *Troop* being to *Quarter* in *Towns* or *Villages*, the *Quartermaster* (having been before to take up their Quarters, appointed by the *Quarter-master Generall*) is to bring the *Billetts* to the *Head* of the *Troop*, being drawn up before the place that the *Cornet* or *Colours* are lodged, the *Lieftenant* is there to see them delivered to the *Corporalls* of the several *Squadrons*, who are to divide them to the *Souldiers* accordingly, and there the *Lieftenant* is to give them notice, that upon any *Alarum*, or that the *Trumpets* sound to *Horse*, they are to repair thither.

If the *Troop* Quarter longer than one Night in a place, the *Lieftenant* is to visit the *Souldiers* Quarters, and to see what good *Orders* are kept by them, and to take notice of the *Names* of the *Souldiers*, and of their *Landlords Names*, and to keep a *Register* of them, that so upon Complaints of the *Landlord*, it may easily be discovered who are the Offenders, and punishment inflicted according to the offence.

When the *Troop* is to *Martch*, and the *Trumpets* Sound to *Horse*, the *Lieftenant* to give a good example to the *Souldiers*, ought to be the first on *Horse-back*, and to give *Orders* for the bringing forth of the *Colours*, the which will cause the *Souldiers* to hasten to the same; and if he find any lingring either of Neglect, or with an ill intent to *plunder* their *Landlords*, or others, he must cause severe punishments to be inflicted on them publickly, according as the Articles of War do require, whereby others may be deterred from committing the like Offence. If the *Troop* should accidentally, or otherwise, be Charged on a sudden, the *Lieftenant* is to give Order that his *Squadron* make a Halt,

(when

(when the rest of the *Troop* with the *Captain*, shall Charge the *Enemy*) that he with them, may be a *Reserve* upon all occasions, either to Second, Relieve, or make good the *Retreat*, if compelled thereunto.

Of the Cornet of a Troop of Horse.

He ought to be a Person of *Courage*, and of a singular *Behaviour*; For he is to Command the *Troop* in the absence of the *Captain*, and *Lieftenant*. Concerning the Place where he is to *Martch*, it is Controvertable: in other Countries it is observed by some eminent Authors, that he doth Martch in the *Front* before the first *Rank*, yet behind the *Captain*: But in our late *Civill Wars*, we have seen him Martch otherwise; the *Troop* being divided into three *Squadrons*, he hath Martched in the Head of the *Second Squadron* (commonly called the *Cornets Squadron*) just before the *Colours* or *Standard*.

And whereas in former times, and in Forreign parts, it hath been accounted an honour for the *Cornet* to break his *Standard* in a *Battell* upon the *Enemy*; yet in regard of the Place he was then to Martch in (*viz.* in the middle of the *Troop*, and that those that were placed before him, were to be of the ablest *Souldiers*, and best Armed) it could rarely be, that he should do so, because there were *Three Ranks* of *Horse* (if they Martched *six* deep) or *Two* ot the least (if they Martched *five* deep) which would cause the *Standard* to be of a great length, and so trouble some to Martch withal, but much more to Engage withal in a *Fight*, when the *Troop* was drawn up in its *Close Order*, and Serried close together for the strengthning of it; But in our late unhappy *English Wars*, it hath been observed, that the *Cornet*, when the *Troop* hath been drawn up, in a *Brigade* or *Regimental Way*, or singly (as occasion did require) for an Engagement with the *Enemy*, that then the *Cornet* took the *Standard* himself, and placed himself in the *Body* of the *Troop*, in the first *Rank* of his own *Squadron*; the *Troop* being drawn up but *Three* deep usually, seldom more; sometimes to make the *Front* to have the larger extent, or to make the *Body* of the *Cavalry* shew the greater, they have been drawn up but *Two* deep; which was some weakning of it, yet by that means the *Front* being the larger, and Martching to Charge the *Enemy*, and finding his *Front* not to extend so large, *Orders* have been given for some Divisions to martch off from the Right and Left, and Charge the *Enemy* on both his *Flanks*, which hath proved very prejudicial to him: But concerning this more hereafter.

He is to keep a *List* of the *Troop*, and *Gaurds*, and to send so many upon the *Gaurd* as the *Captain* or *Leivtenant* shall appoint: If the *Troop* be drawn up in a *Body*, and that the *Lord General* is to martch by, then the *Cornet* is to take his *Standard*, and stand in the *Body* of the *Troop* (where he is to place himself in a *Fight*) and once a day at the said *Lord Generals* passing by, to do *Obeysence* by the inclining his *Body* towards his *Horses* Head, and the Head of his *Standard* towards the Ground. For other *Duties* belonging to his place, they are not many; he being to take notice of the *Lievtenant*, because he oft-times supplies his place, and usually do succeed him (if a Removal or *Death* take the *Lievtenant* away) if his ill Carriage and Deportment hath not made him uncapable thereof.

The Quarter-Master of a Troop of Horse.

Ought to be a good *Souldier*, and well *quallified*, he being a *Commission Officer*, and hath attained to a good step of Perferment, and will not long rest there, especially if he be dilligent in the *Duty* of his Place, and of a good *Behaviour*, which he ought to have an especial Care of; For such Examples as the *Officers* are to the *Souldiers*, such commonly are the *Souldiers*; but its too often seen, that if the *Officers* be of a loose Deportment, the *Souldiers* are worse.

In the Absence of the Three Precedent *Commission Officers*, he is to Command the *Troop*. If the *Army* Martch together, then he is to attend on the *Quarter-master-General*

Generall for *Orders*, and a *Ticket* for the *Troopes* place of Quarter, if in *Towns* or *Villages*; If the *Troop* march with a *Brigade* or *Regiment*, then he is to attend the *Chief Officer* that Commands, both for *Orders* and *Quartering*.

He ought to be a *Person* of much *Fidelity*, in taking up of Quarters, and in distributing of the *Billets* to the *Souldiers*, but chiefly in the *Word*, which he commonly is entrusted, to take from the *Commander in Chief*, and to deliver it to his *Superiour Officers*.

When he is called forth to go for *Orders*, he is to have two or three *Souldiers* with him (appointed by the *Leivtenant*) and to send one back to the *Troop*, to Conduct them to their *Quarters*.

The Corporals

Duty, is to take the Charge of a *Squadron* of the *Troop*, there being three of them; if the *Troop* consists of above 70. If under 50, then commonly there is but two allowed: Therefore he ought to be an *experienced Souldier*, and a Person that may be Confided in; He being entrusted to make some Discovery of the *Enemy*, with a Party of his own *Squadron*, whose Intelligence ought to be of *Knowledge* and not of *Surmise*, least, a field of *Thistles*, or Garden of *Hop-poles*, be apprehended for a *Gresse*, or *Body* of the *Enemies Horse* or *Foot*, which some *Authors* mention, to have been the mistakes of some that have been employed in *Discoveries*. He ought to be able to Read and Write, that he may keep a List of his *Squadron*.

The Trumpeters.

Ought to be *Persons*, that do not only know what belongs to their *Office*, as to the Sounding the several *Points of War*, (as *Boutezzelle*, *Monte Chevall*, &c.) But they ought to be *discreet* and *judicious Persons*, as being oft sent upon Messages of several Natures to the *Enemy*, and at his return to give a good account of what he did observe (note worthy) amongst them, either by the Ear or Eye; although commonly as to the latter, it cannot be much, he being usually blinded (after he comes within the *Enemies Guards*) till he is brought to their *Commander in Chief* his Quarters, whether in *Field* or *Garrison*. One *Trumpeter* ought alwayes to Quarter where the *Cornet* or *Standard* is lodged, because of the *Orders* that are brought to that place, that so he may be in a readiness to perform his *Duty*, by giving notice to the *Troop*, by Sounding of his *Trumpet*, according as the nature of the Command given him, shall reqnire; and therefore ought alwayes to have his *Trumpet* about him, that he may be in a Condition so to do.

The Auditor or Fiscall.

Ought to be a Person of *Integrity*, well read in the *Civill Lawes*, and of grear experience by Practice. His *Office* is to hear and give Sentence in all Causes concerning the *Cavalry*; But as to what some Authors have written concerning their *Office* in *Antient and Forreign Wars*, I shall now give you an account of what hath been observed concerning them, in these late *English Wars*. The *Auditor's Office*, so understood by that *Name*, or *Title*, in these late *Wars*, is to keep an exact Accompt of the *Pay* due to every *Regiment* and *Captain*, either of *Horse* or *Foot*, and of what hath been *Paid* them; and hath nothing to do, in things of that Nature, belonging to the aboveside Forreign or Antient *Officers*, bearing the same Name or Title. But the Title given to the *Officer*, executing that Function, is *Judge Advocate*, there being but one such *Officer* allowed for both *Horse* and *Foot* in an *Army*, or *Garrison*: He hath his Deputy allowed him, in regard of many occasions that requires his absence. He is to take the Informations by Oath against the *Souldier* or *Officer* accused, in the *Court Marshal* (consisting of none but *Commission Officers*) where he gives no Sentence, till he hath taken the Suffrages of the *Court*, and the Person accused, having the nature of his Offence laid open to him, by the said *Judge-Advocate*, and the Punishment due, according to the *Articles of War*; then the said

Judge Or, Judge-Advocate.

Judge, as the mouth of the said *Court Marshal*, pronounceth Sentence, and according as the said *Court* shall *Order*, he is to draw and sign a *Warrant* for the Executing of the said Sentence. In many cases of Misdemeanor, a *Regiment* of *Horse* and *Foot* Quartering at a distance from the *Head Quarters*, have power to hear and judge of the same, unless there be some Appeal made to the *General*, before Sentence executed; but this Sentence of theirs, cannot extend either to *Life* or *Limb*, or *losse of Place*, if he be a *Commission Officer*; but for Offences deserving such penalties, they are to be determined at the *Court Marshal* at the *Head Quarters*.

The Provost Marshal.

His *Office* is branched out in several Particulars; therefore he ought to be a person well qualified, in regard he hath Power and Opportunity to do more unjust Actions, under pretence of his *Office*, than any other *Officer*. In Forreign parts, he is Deputy to the *High Marshal*; in these late *English Wars* he is under the immediate Command of the *General*; He is to keep in Custody all *Military* persons offending (both *Horse* and *Foot*) who are to be tryed at a *Court Marshal*: Every *Regiment* hath their *Marshal* belonging to it, who is also to secure Offenders, till they are tryed at a *Court Marshal* by their own *Commission Officers*, unless the nature of their offence, require Judgement of a *higher Tribunal*.

He is to see to the *Victuallers* (or *Suttlers*) as to their *Weights*, *Measures* and *Price*, for all sorts of *Provision*, and withal to see that they be not abused by the *Souldery*, they being so necessary both in *Field* and *Garrison*; and what Misdemeanors he finds in the *Suttlers* (as to their said *Weights*, *Measures* and *Prices*) he is to inform the *Commissary* and *Auditor* (or rather *Judge Advocate*.) He is to see the *Orders* strictly observed, that shall be published in the *Army* or *Head Quarters* thereof, where he is to have his Quarters allotted him. He is in the *Armies* Marching to carry his Staff or Truncheon (the *Badge* of his *Office*) And having the same, it is an high Offence for any *Souldier* to lay hands on him. They are to seize upon all *Souldiers* that are straggling from their *Colours* in their March, to prevent them from *Plundering*, a thing of great concernment, and very strictly observed by the *Turks* in their Armies March, it being *Death* to take away any thing by violence, if Complaint be made thereof.

If he be to take a *Prisoner*, he must not enter the *Quarter* without leave of the *Commander in Chief* present, unless in case the Offence be great, and suspicion be had of his Runing away; but must not carry him away without leave of the said *Commander in Chief*.

Mr. Robert Ward in his Animadversions of War.

And to Conclude this *Treatise* of the *Officers Duty*, with an *Author* of good Judgement, I would have all *Officers* of such a true temper of *Valour* and *Prudence*, and so constant in all their Proceedings, that *Honour* nor *Prosperity* should not make them imperious, nor the worst of Fortunes deject them. For that man that bears his Prosperity neither with *Moderation* nor *Prudence*, but is full blown like a *Bladder* with the wind of *Pride*, he seldom in *Adversity* shewes either *Constancy* or *Courage*; for one prick of Disaster will empty his swoln Heart of all Hopes, and will make him prove, like an unskilful and dejected *Sea-man*, upon every little *Storm* to cut his *Cables*, or his *Mast* by the Board; whereas a Noble Resolution would find a Remedy by slacking of some few Sayles to endure the Storm, and save all he hath in Charge.

Of Souldiers in general, and of the Corruption of the Cavalry.

The word *Souldier*, is derived from the Word *Soldi*, which in *English* is a piece of Silver called a *Shilling*; in other Countries, whose Coyn and Accompts differ from ours, it is of a lesse valew; in *Dutch* (as an eminent Author declares) the word *Soldy*, signifies *Pay* or *Stipend*; Profit being one of the chief ends, why men undertake the *Military* Profession, and *Honour*, not the only (though the chiefest) of their aims: And as some have

have observed, that the *Commanders* in *Flanders* took an ill Course, to reform their *Militia*, by adding to the *Souldiers Duty*, and lessoning of their *Pay*; So woful Experience hath made the same to be found a great *Error* amongst those that had the Managing of the late *Wars* and *Militia* in *England*, by so doing, or neglect of *Paying* what was promised: And as this was an Error of the one hand, utterly to dishearten the *Souldiery*; so, the too great *Indulgence* towards them, by an unseasonable increasing of their *Pay* (out of private ends) hath produced as sad effects, as several *Authors* have mentioned many particulars. But that which is a great encouragement to the *Souldiery*, is a due Proportion of the share of the *Booty* and *Spoil* taken from the *Enemy*; In the *Juditial* Law we find, how the *Spoil* or *Prey* taken from the *Enemy*, was to be divided between those that went forth to the *War*, and those that stayed at home. What hath been practised in after times by any Established *Law* in any *Dominion* we find not; only that the *Souldiery* amongst the *Romans* had a share of the *Spoils* or *Booty*, either in Kind or Money; besides for Extraordinary Rewards, they had often-times, Assignments of Lands of Inheritance and Houses, according to their Demerrit and Degree, as *Titus Livius* relates. For their shares in Money, we read of some to have had very large ones; As at the *Triumph* of *Pompey*, at his Return from the Conquest of a large Dominion in *Asia* (brought in subjection to the *Roman power*) there was a Divident of 1500 *Drachmaes*, (of *English Money*, 46.l.----3.s.----9.d.) to every private *Souldier*, and the *Officers* in proportion: And at the *Triumph* of *Julius Caesar*, every *Souldier* had 5000 *Drackmas*, (which is 156.l.----05.s.----00 d. *English*) They had Rewards, also of several kinds, amongst the rest, *Crowns*, (every one of which, did declare his particular Action) which were put upon their Heads in great State and Solemnity by the *General*; and these they wore upon all publick occasions, as in the *Theaters*, *Triumphs*, and places of *Judicature*, &c. For their *Military* profession made them the more capable (afterwards) of *Offices* in the Administration of the *Common wealth*, whilst under that Government. But we find such Encouragements to be rare (in these late Ages of the World) and *Offices* usually bestowed for Favour, which hath occasioned much lowness of Spirit in the *Souldiery*, in most Countries, the *English* at this day carrying the *Bell* away from all the Neighbor Nations, which if a Communicating of such Rewards were usual amongst them, they might justly challenge the Preheminence, both for *Art* and *Action*, from all *Nations*, that Exercise that Profession. Numb. 31 27

Societies and *Governments* are Supported by Reward and Punishment; so to reform this part of the Art *Military* (in reference to the *Cavalry*) it will be requisite that there be good *Pay*, seasonably distributed to them, and then good *Lawes* enacted, which none will be dissatisfied withal for strict execution of them, that they may be Exemplary: But where Maintenance and Subsistance is wanting to those (who may expect it as their Wages and Hire) how can *Justice* justly be inflicted on them for their neglect of *Obedience* and *Discipline*? And it were much better to lessen the Number of *Souldiers*, than their *profits*: For, what Assurance can any *General* have, of the *Valour* and *Fidelity* of his *Army*, who are ready to *Mutiny* upon all occasions (especially when they are going upon Service, crying out, *Gelt*, *Gelt*) through the want of their Pay? And surely that *Government* and *Common wealth*, that will be penurious and play the Good Husbands in cutting off the just deserved Sallary of the Souldiers, should do well to take Notice of the ill Success for some time that the *Carthaginians* had, (with the hazzard of their Ruine) by leaving an Example of such an unworthy Action. *Reformation of them.*

As for the *Lawes* and *Articles*, which are to be propounded unto you, they should comprise all that is to be observed in *Military* Discipline. In many *Armies*, under several

veral *Governments* (either *Regal* [or *Monarchical*] *Aristocratical*, or *Democratical*) we find several *Military Lawes* required to be observed; which to insert at large, would make this *Abstract* of the *Art Military* (in relation to the *Cavalry*) swell into no little *Volumne*; therefore we shall give you some few particulars that have chiefly relation to the *Cavalry*, as we shall find either in *Authors*, or lately used in the late *English Wars*, presupposing the Good *Lawes* and *Orders* as to the whole *Army*, for the *Worship of God* (according to the *Rule* of the *Word of God*) the severe punishing of *Blasphemers* that use Cursing and Swearing frequently; (Oh! the sad Age wherein we live, where this sin doth rage and *reign*, although the *King* hath been pleased to declare against the same, by several *Proclamations*) and the strict forbidding of *Gaming* (especially of *Dice*) and such like *Moral Institutions*.

Some *Orders* and *Articles of War*, that have been used in Antient and Modern Times, both in Forreign and our late CIVILL-WARS.

I. *That no* Captain *receive any* Souldiers *of any other* Troop, *or make any* Officers *without approbation of the* General, *to the end he may take notice of the quality of the Person.*

II. *That to avoid the trouble of much Baggage, which much slackneth the motion of the* Cavalry, *that no man carry a* Woman *into the Field, according to the Institutions of the Emperour* Frederick *the First: But in the late* Wars *of* Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, *&c. there was an allowance of the* Wife *of any* Officer *or* Souldier. *In the late* English Wars, *it was accounted a dishonour to any* Officer *to have any* Woman *march with the* Troop, *the* Souldiers *giving such the tittle of* Ammunition, *and sometime speaking plain* English, *by saying there marcht a* Whore, *and yet the* Souldier *never questioned for the same.*

Non erit in Nostris, nebiscum Fœmine Castris.

III. *That no* Souldier *have above one* Horse *of Service for his Baggage, unless some Person of Quality, with whom the* Commissary General *may dispense: And that no* Officer *of a* Troop *be allowed or permitted to have a* Waggon, *but only the* Captain, *and he to have but one: In the late* Civil Wars in England, *the* Captains, *nor higher* Officers, *were not allowed any* Waggons, *but their Baggage was carried on their* Sumpter, *or Led*-Horses.

IV. *That Rewards and honourable Recompences be Established for* Souldiers *of special desert (too much omitted) and Punishment for the negligent, and in particular about attending the Colours, and obedience to the sound of the Trumpet: And that such as forsake the* Standard, *or* Colours, *whilst it is Advanced, be punished with Death. That in Fight when the* Trumpet *soundeth a Retreat, whosoever presently retireth not, be punished with severity. And that the* Captain *as often as the* Colours, *or* Cornet *entereth upon the* Guard (*in Forreign parts called the* Corps

du

du Guard) himself entereth it, unless hindred by sickness, or Commanded another way by his Superiours.

V. That the Captains and Officers of every Troop, endeavour to keep their Souldiers from straggling, that they may have their Troops entire upon all occasions: And no Officer to absent himself without leave of his Superiour; and if any Souldier depart without license, he to be punished with Death.

VI. That Good Order be observed about distribution of Booty, whereof more hereafter.

VII. That Mutinies be prevented; and that whosoever is found to have a hand in any, is to be proclaimed Infamous, and Cashiered the Army, without any Return.

VIII. That no Souldier or Officer, shall offer any wrong or abuse to his Superior Officer, either by Word or Action, or shall refuse any duty Commanded him, tending unto the publick Service of the Army, which if he doth, he shall be punished according to the Importance of the Fact.

IX. If any Souldier offer to strike his Officer, that shall command him any duty for the service of the Army; he is to lose his Hand, and then to be turned out of the Army: but if it be done either in Army, or Garrison, (especially in a Fort beleagured) after the Watch is set; he is to suffer death for it.

X. He that shall in anger draw his Sword, while his Colours are flying, either upon a Martch, or in a Battel, shall be shot to death; and if it be done in any Fortified place, he shall lose his Hand, and be turned out of the Quarter.

XI. He who shall presume to draw a Sword upon the Place where any Court of Justice is holden, while it is there holden; or shall hinder the Provost-Marshal-General, his Lievtenant, or Servants, when they are to Execute any thing that is for the service of the Army; such shall suffer Death.

XII. Whatsoever is to be published or made known, is to be proclaimed by beat of Drum, and sound of Trumpet, that no man may pretend ignorance in it; they who after that, shall be found disobedient, shall be punished according to the quality of the Fact.

XIII. None shall presume to make any Alarum in his Quarter, or to Discharge any Gun in the night, after the Watch is set, upon pain of Death.

XIV. He that, when Warning is given for the setting of the Watch by the sound of the Trumpet, shall absent himself, without some lawful Excuse, shall Ride the Wooden Horse: And he that Repairs not to his Colours at all times, upon the sound of the Trumpet for that end, shall be laid in Irons, neck and heels together.

XV. He that is taken a Sleep upon the Watch, or place of Sentinel, or he that comes off from his Watch where he is Commanded to keep his Guard, or be found Drunk there, shall be shot to Death.

XVI. Whoever runs from his Colours, and doth not defend them to the uttermost of his power, so long as they be in danger, shall suffer Death. And he that runs from his Colours in the Field, shall Die for it: And if any of his Commanders kill him, as he is so doing, he shall not be Punished, but rather Rewarded.

XVII. He

XVII. *He that shall give any private Intelligence to the* Enemy, *by Letter or otherwise, without acquainting the* General, *or* Commander in Chief, *shall Die for it.*

XVIII. *If any* Souldier *fall to* Pillage (*upon the Routing of the* Enemy) *before leave be given by his* Commander *so to do, any of his* Officers *may kill him: And if any misfortune ensue upon their greedines after the* Spoyl, *then shall all of them suffer* Death *for it, be it* Troop *or* Regiment.

XIX. *No* Colonel *or* Captain *shall lend any of their* Souldiers *one to another, upon the* Muster-dayes, *for the Compleating of their* Troopes; *He that thus makes a false* Muster, *shall Answer it at a* Court Marshal, *where being found Guilty, he shall be proclaimed a* Traytor; *after which, being put out of the* Quarters, *his* Colours *shall fly no more.*

XX. *If any* Souldier, *borroweth either* Horse, Armour, Pistols, Saddle, Sword *or* Harness *to pass* Muster *withal; so much as is Borrowed shall be forfeited, and himself, after that, turned out of the* Leaguer; *as likewise he shall that lent it him.*

XXI. *Every* Souldier (*of what Condition soever he be*) *shall forthwith and before the Evening, bring all such of the* Enemy *as are taken* Prisoners, *before him which Commandeth in Chief in that* Quarter, *upon pain of losing his* Prisoner, *and being punished with* Death.

XXII. *And if any should take some Eminent* Officer *or* Commander *of the* Enemy Prisoner, *or other Person of Quality, they are to present the same, presently to the* Lords, the States General, *or the* Council of State, *receiving for them* (*as also for other Prisoners which the* States *shall take to themselves*) *some reasonable Recompence, according to the Quality or Ability of the said* Prisoners; *yet not exceeding the sum of* 500.l. *whereby the said* Prisoner *shall remain at the disposing of the said* States, *and they which took him, ought to have no further pretence to him.*

XXIII. *It shall not be lawful for any Man to cause a* Prisoner *to be killed, or set at Ransome; nor after Ransom be paid, to suffer him to depart without leave of the* General, *or of him that Commandeth in the* Quarter, *on pain of being Disarmed and Banished.*

XXIV. *If any* Prisoner *be found to walk about the* Leaguer, *or place of* Garrison, *without leave of the* General, *or* Commander *in that* Quarter *or* Garrison, *the Party which had taken him, shall forfeit his said* Prisoner, *to the benefit of him, who shall first apprehend the said* Prisoner.

Of the Distribution of the Booty, *or* Spoil.

ALl *Booties* (whether it be taken by defeating of the *Enemy* in the Field, or going out upon Parties, &c.) is free to them that take it, whether they be *Prisoners*, or any thing else, the *Lord General* being in the Field: But otherwise it is to be shared amongst them that were employed in the Action; *One* part to the *Infantry*, and *Two* for the *Cavalry*:

Cavalry: And it is *Death* for him that shall let go any *Prisoner*, or *Horse*, or other *Booty*, or shall use any fraud whatsoever; and they that shall not Discover it (knowing of any such deceit) shall lose their shares. The *Captains* being present at the taking of the *Booties*, use to have *five* shares, and *two* for two Pages or Servants: The *Lieutenants Three*, and the *Cornets two*; and either of them *one* for a Page: But of latter times, the *Captains* take *ten* parts, the *Lieutenants six*, and the *Cornets four*: But in these late *Civil Wars* in *England*, there hath been no Orders observed as to the taking and dividing of *Booties*; only at the taking of *Bridgwater*, some persons appointed by the *Parliament*, sold some Goods that belonged to the *King*'s Party, which were found in the *Town* at the taking of it; and the Monies was divided amongst the Souldiers only, amounting to about 5.s. a man.

The *Booty* being reparted, it hath been customarily observed, that the *Troop* allowed 10 *per Cent.* to their *Captain*, of what is gotten, although he were not present: To the *Chief* that Commanded, although but a private *Souldier*, 2 *per cent.* And so to the *Guides*.

All the *Booty* being brought together, they choose *Two* of the discreetest *Souldiers* to make sale thereof; these keep an Account of what is made of it, and certified the *Commander* as much, who ordereth to every man his due proportion. The *Trumpetters* must have leave of the *Chief Commander* of the place to sell the said *Booty*, and the *Buyer* is to give 1 of every 20 to the *Trumpeter* for his pains in the Sale: which Money is to be divided among the *Trumpeters*, which were employed in the taking of that *Booty*, they having no other share.

If *One* or more *Horses* were killed in the Engagement, or any *Souldier* wounded in that Fight, those *Horses* ought to be made good, and the *Souldier* to be recompenced at the discretion of the *Commander* in Chief, before the *Booty* be divided. Or if any *Souldiers Horse* fall Lame, Commanded out upon the Party, so as he be forced to Return back to his *Quarters*, yet shall that *Souldier* have his share of the *Booty* taken, as if he had been present at the taking thereof.

Of the Officers and Souldiers Pay.

BY what hath been Written in the precedent Discourse, it may easily be discerned, that the best Means that can be used to cause the *Souldiers* to observe good *Orders* and *Discipline*, is to give them their promised *Pay* in some competent measure, and due time; The *Proportion* that was allowed on the *King of Spain*'s side, with what the *States General* allowed, as also what I observed was allowed by the *Parliament* in the late *Civil Wars*, (which at the first was large, but afterwards reduced to a *medium*, such as they might be in a condition to raise) was as followeth, *viz.*

To the *General of the Horse*, 500 Crowns *per month*, besides 86 ⅔ for his *Troop*, and 40 places allowed as *General*, and 10 as *Captain*: By the *States General*, he was allowed about 4.l. *per diem*, English Money: By the *Parliament* 5.l. *per diem*, without any allowance of Places, or Provisions, only as *Colonels* and *Captains*. *The General Pay.*

To the *Lieutenant General*, 200 Crowns, and 86⅔ for his *Troop*, with 20 places allowed as *Lieutenant General*, and 10 as *Captain*: By the *States*, 2.l. *per diem*: By the *Parliament*, 2.l. *per diem*. *Lieutenant Gen. Pay.*

To the *Commissary General*, 80 Crowns, and the Pay of a *Captain* of *Harquebusiers* when he hath a *Troop*, with 10 places allowed as *Commissary General*, and 10 as *Captain*: By the *States*, 30.s. *per diem*: By the *Parliament*, 30.s. *Commissary Gen. Pay.*

To

Quarter-master-Generals Pay. To the *Quarter-master General*, 25 *Crowns* per month, and each of his *Assistants* 15 and 4 places allowed as *Quarter-master-General*, and 2 to each of his *Assistants*: By the *States General*, 6.s. 8.d. By the *Parliament*, 10.s. and 2 *Horses Carbines*, each 2.s. 6.d. *per diem*, is 5.s.

Provost-Marshals Pay. The *Provost Marshal*, 25 Crowns a month, and for every of his men (which was not to exceed 12) he had 5 Crowns, and 2 places allowed him as *Provost Marshal*, and 1 to each of his men: By the *States*, 5.s. a day: By the *Parliament*, 5 s. with 8 Horses *Carbines*, each 2.s. 6.d. is 1.l.

Auditor, or Judge-Advocates pay. The *Auditor General*, or *Judge Advocate*, 30 Crowns a month, and 18 for his Three *Officers*, and 6 places allowed to him as *Auditor*: By the *States*, I find no certain allowance mentioned by any Author: By the *Parliament*, 1.l. *per diem*.

Chaplains Pay. The Chief *Chaplain*, 30 Crowns a month, and 5 places allowed him as *Chaplain*: By the *States*, 4.s. *per diem*: And by the *Parliament* 8.s. *per diem*.

Chirurgions Pay. The Chief *Chirurgion*, 25 Crowns a month, without Allowance of any places: By the *States*, 4.s. the day: And by the *Parliament*, 4.s. and to two *Mates*, 2.s. 6.d. each by the day.

Captains of Lances. Curiassiers, & Harquebusiers Pay. The *Captain* of *Lances*, and *Curiassiers*, 80 Crowns a month, and 6½ Crowns for their Page. Of *Harquebusiers*, 70 Crowns a month, and 6 for a Page, with 10 places allowed as *Captain*, to every *Captain*: By the *States*, 8.s. the day to all the said *Captains*, with an allowance of Mustering 6 Horses each, at 2 s. each the day; The *Harquebusiers* 6 Horses at 1.s. 6.d. the day: By the *Parliament*, 24.s. the day both, and 6 Horses at 3.s. 6.d. each, to the *Curiasiers*, and as many to the *Captain* of *Harquebusiers*, at 2.s. 6.d. the day, each.

Their Lieftenants pay. Their *Lievtenants*, each 25 Crowns a month, and 6 for a Page, with 6 places allowed as *Lievtenant*: By the *States*, 5.s. the day, with an allowance of Mustering of 4 Horses all of them each, for the first at 2.s. each the day, the last at 18.d. the day: By the *Parliament*, the *Captain Lievtenant* of *Curiassiers*, 14.s. the day: The other *Lievtenants*, 8.s. and Mustering of 4 Horses at 3.s. 6.d. each. The *Lievtenant* of *Harquebusiers*, 8.s. and the Mustering of 4 Horses, each at 2.s. 6.d. by the day.

Their Coronets Pay. Their *Cornets*, each 15 Crowns a month, and 6 Crowns for a Page, with an allowance of 4 places to each: By the *States*, 4.s. the day, with an allowance to Muster 3 Horses each, the first at 2.s. and the last at 18.d. the day: By the *Parliament*, the *Generals Cornet* 7.s. the rest 6.s. the day, with the Mustering of 3 Horses each, the first at 3.s. 6.d. the last at 2.s. 6.d.

Their Quarter-masters pay. Their *Quarter-masters*, I do not find that the *Spaniards* allowed any such *Commission Officer* to a *Troop* of *Horse*; so there is neither allowance of Pay or Places mentioned, allowed to any such for the Executing of that *Office*: And by the *States*, I find but 2.s. 6.d. allowed by the day, without the mentioning of any Mustering of Horses, or a Horse: By the *Parliament*, 4.s. the day to each, and the Mustering of 2 Horses each, the first at 3.s. 6.d. the last at 2.s. 6.d. each, the day.

The Corporals, and Souldiers Pay. The *Souldiers* of *Lances* and *Curiassiers*, 6½ Crowns the month each; the *Harquebussiers* 6 Crowns; no *Corporals* Pay mentioned: The *States General*, allowed to the first 2.s. the day, and to the last 18.d. the day each, and 2.s. 6.d. to their *Corporals* each: By the *Parliament*, the *Corporals* of the first, 3.s. with the Mustering of 2 Horses at 3.s. 6.d. each; and 3.s. 6.d. to each of the *Souldiers*: The *Corporals* of the last, 3.s. without the Mustering of any Horse; and 2.s. 6.d. to every *Souldier*.

Besides these *Stipends* mentioned, the *Spaniards* allowed to every *Troop* 10 *per Cent.* (without the Advantages and Entertainments) which the *Captain* distributed amongst the

the best deserving *Souldiers*. And the *Captains* or other *Officers* which were *Reformadoes* amongst them (that is dismissed from the Service for Age, or otherwise) had their wonted Pay allowed them, with 1½ place allowed to each. The *Parliament* at the beginning of the *Wars* did allow half Pay to the *Reformado Officers*, but in a short time it was altogether taken off, without it were some few particular Persons, and that not long, only till they had some other Employment, *Military* or *Civil*. In the Winter time, the *Spanish Souldiers* when they were in *Garrison*, were usually paid by the Day, for the better keeping of their *Horses*.

Every place mentioned allowed to the several *Officers*, was valued at formerly about 13 Stivers (about 16 ½d. English) of those 13 Stivers, 10 are paid for Forrage, and 3 for Service. Half of the said Stivers is paid to the *Souldiers* in Money, the other half in sixteen pound of *Hay*, three small Measures of *Oates*, and two Bundles of *Straw*, which are sufficient to keep a *Horse* for a day. At the end of the Accounts, every *Souldier* is abated half a *Rial* (3.d. English) upon every place.

Thus having given you the best Account I can find extant at present, of the Allowances or Pay, given to the *Cavalry* both *Officers* and *Souldiers*, both by the *King of Spain* in the *Low Countries*, as also by the *States General*: I shall give you now a larger Account, as to the *Stipends* or *Pay* allowed by the *Parliament* (in the beginning of the late *Civil Wars*) to their whole *Army*, consisting both of *Horse*, *Foot* and *Trayn of Artillery*, with some Alterations that have been made in some particulars. If I could have found, or obtained a *List* of what *Pay* the late *King* CHARLES *the First*, had allowed to his *Army*, it should have been inserted; if I can ever procure the same, I shall not omit to make it Publick (if not prohibited:) In the interim, be content with this, until some better *Intelligencer*, supply what is wanting as to the last; The first followeth.

The *Pay* allowed to the *Parliaments* Army.

	lib.	s.	d.
Officers General of the Field.			
THe Lord General, *per diem*	10	00	00
Serjeant Major General,	2	00	00
*President of the *council of War*,	0	15	00
Quarter-master General,	1	00	00
Provost-marshal General,	0	06	08
*20 Horses allowed him, each 2.s. 6.d.	2	10	00
Waggon-master General,	0	10	00
2 Horses allowed him, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Officers General of the Trayn.			
Treasurer,	2	00	00
Muster-master General,	0	15	00
3 Deputies, each 5.s.	0	15	00
Judge Advocate of the Army,	1	00	00
2 Chaplains, each 8.s.	0	16	00
One *Physitian* for the Lord Generals Person,	0	06	08
One for the Army,	0	06	08
One Apothecary,	0	10	00
One Chyrurgion,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Captain of the Guard,	1	00	00
* 30 Men, each 1.s. 6.d.	2	05	00
Commissary General for Provision of Victuals for the Foot,	0	16	00
Four Men with Horses, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	10	00

The Pay of a Regiment of Foot.

	lib.	s.	d.
Colonel, (as Colonel)	1	10	00
Leivtenant Col. (as Leivt.Col.)	0	15	00
Serjeant Major, (as Major)	0	09	00
Quarter-master,	0	05	00
Provoſt-Marſhal,	0	05	00
Carriage Maſter,	0	03	00
Preacher,	0	08	00
Chirurgion,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2 s 6.d.	0	05	00
Captain, (ſince but 8.s.)	0	15	00
Lievtenant,	0	04	00
Enſign,	0	03	00
3 Serjeants, each 1.s. 6.d. ſometimes 1.s. 8.d. each.	0	04	06
1 Drum Major in the Col. Comp. the other Drums 1.s. ſometimes 21, and ſometimes but 11 to a Regiment.	0	01	06
3 Corporals, each 1.s.	0	03	00
Souldiers, each ſince 10.d. and now 9.d. each.	0	00	08

Horſe Officers of the Field.

* General,	5	00	00
Lievtenant General,	2	00	00
* Serjeant Major General,	1	10	00
Quarter-maſter General,	0	10	00
2 Horſes *Carbines*, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
* Commiſſary of the Proviſion,	0	16	00
4 Horſes and men, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	10	00
* Provoſt Marſhal, ſince but one Provoſt Marſhal.	0	05	00
8 Horſes *Carbines*, each 2.s. 6.d.	1	00	00
* Muſter-maſter General, ſince but *One* Commiſſary of the Muſters both for *Horſe* & *Foot*.	0	15	00
2 Deputies, each 5.s,	0	10	00
Preacher,	0	08	00
Chirurgion,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00

A Regiment of Curiaſſiers.

Colonel, (as Colonel)	1	10	00
Serjeant Major (as Major)	1	02	00
Captain,	1	04	00
6 Horſes, each 3.s 6.d.	1	01	00
Captain Lievtenant (beſides 4 men)	0	14	00
Lievtenant,	0	08	00
4 Horſes, each 3 s. 6.d.	0	14	00
Cornet, (the Generals 7.s.) the reſt	0	06	00
3 Horſes, each 3.s. 6.d.	0	10	06
Quarter-maſter,	0	04	00
2 Horſes, each 3.s. 6.d.	0	07	00
Three Corporals, each 3.s.	0	09	00
2 Horſes each, at 3.s. 6.d. each	1	01	00
Two Trumpetters, each 3.s.	0	06	00
A Farrier,	0	03	06
A Sadler,	0	03	06
Carriage-Maſter,	0	03	06
Preacher,	0	08	00
Chirurgion,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Preachers Man,	0	02	06
Marſhal,	0	05	00
Souldiers, each	0	03	06

[*Some few Troopes of* Curiaſſiers *were in uſe at the firſt, but afterwards Reduced and the Charge ſaved.*]

Harquebuſiers.

The Field Officers Pay as above.

Captain,	1	04	00
6 Horſes, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	15	00
The Captains Pay reduced ſince to 27.s. *and no Horſes Muſtered: lately to* 14.s. *and his Horſes for Service Muſtered.*			
Lievtenant,	0	08	00
4 Horſes, 2.s. 6.d.	0	10	00
Since Reduced to 10.s. *and his Horſes for Service only muſtered.*			
Cornet,	0	06	00
3 Horſes, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	07	06
Since reduced to 9.s. 4.d. *& his Horſes for Service muſtered.*			
Quarter-maſter,	0	04	00
2 Horſes, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Reduced to 8.s. *for all.*			
Three Corporals, each at 3 s.	0	09	00
Two Trumpetters, each 3.s.	0	06	00
A Sadler,	0	02	06
A Farrier,			

	lib.	s.	d.
A Farrier,	0	02	06
The Sadler & Farrier, do no Duty			
Preacher, Chirurgion and Provost Marshal as above.			
Souldiers, Harquebusiers, each	0	02	06
Dragoones.			
Colonel (as Colonel)	1	10	00
Serjeant Major (as Major)	0	09	00
Quarter-master,	0	05	00
Preacher,	0	04	00
Marshal,	0	05	00
Chirurgion,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Captain,	0	15	00
5 Horses, each 1.s.	0	05	00
Lievtenant,	0	04	00
3 Horses, each 1.s.	0	03	00
Cornet,	0	03	00
2 Horses, each 1.s.	0	02	00
Two Serjeants, each 1.s. 6.d.	0	03	00
1 Horse, each 1.s.	0	01	00
Three Corporals, each 1.s.	0	03	00
3 Horses (for each 1) each 1.s.	0	03	00
Two Drums, each 1.s.	0	02	00
2 Horses, each 1.s.	0	02	00
A Farrier 1.s. his Horse 1.s.	0	02	00
Souldiers, each	0	01	06
Officers, Artificers, and Attendants of the Trayn of Artillery, consisting of 36 Peeces.			
General of the Ordnance,	4	00	00
Leivtenant General,	1	10	00
Assistant,	0	06	00
2 Clerks, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
Surveyor, or Controuler.	0	10	00
2 Clerks, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
The Chief Engineer	0	10	00
A Clerk,	0	02	06
Six Engineers for ordering Trenches, Fortifications, and Approaches, each 6.s.	1	16	00
Six Clerks, each 2.s.	0	12	00
Fifteen Guides, or Conductors, each 2.s 6.d.	1	17	00

	lib.	s.	d.
A Pay-Master,	0	05	00
2 Clerks, each 2.s.	0	04	00
Two Commissaries of Ordnance, Matrosses, and Ammunition, each 5.s.	0	10	00
2 Clerks, each 2.s.	0	04	00
20 Gentlemen of the Ordnance, each 4.s.	4	00	00
A Commissary to distribute Victual,	0	06	00
Two Clerks attending him, each 2.s.	0	04	00
A Purveyor General for Munition, and all necessaries for the Ordnance.			
2 Horses to assist him, each 2.s 6.d.	0	05	00
A Waggon mast. for the Artillery,	0	05	00
2 Assistants, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	05	00
20 Conductors attending him, each 2.s.	2	00	00
A principal Conductor for the Artillery for draught Horses & Ammunition,	0	04	00
A Commissary for the Trayn of Artillery for the draught Horses,	0	04	00
Quarter Master for the Trayn of Artillery,	0	06	00
Master of the Miners,	0	04	00
25 other Miners, each 1.s.	1	05	00
3 Captains to 600 Pioneers, each 5.s.	0	15	00
3 Lievtenants, each 3.s.	0	09	00
3 Overseers of the Pioneers work, each 2.s.	0	06	00
2 Petardeers, or Fire-workers, each 4.s.	0	08	00
To each of them, 4 Attendants, each 2.s. 6.d.	1	00	00
One Master Gunner,	0	06	08
3 Master Gunners Mates, each 2.s. 6.d.	0	07	06
20 Gunners, each 2.s.	2	00	00
30 Gunners, each 18 d.	2	05	00
200 Labourers, each 1.s.	10	00	00
A Provost Marshal of the Artillery,	0	03	00
3 Under Jaylors, each 1.s.	0	03	00
A Battery Master,	0	05	00
A Bridge Master, with 100 Mattrosses to work about Rivers,	0	05	00

	lib.	s.	d.
An Assistant to him,	0	03	06
100 Mattrosses, each 1.s.	5	00	00
A Chaplain,	0	04	00
An Ensign,	0	05	00
A Drum,	0	01	06
A Trumpetter,	0	03	00
A Chirurgion,	0	04	00
2 Under Barber Chirurgions, each 18 d.	0	03	00
A Master Carpenter,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s.	0	04	00
24 Carpenters, each 18.d.	1	16	00
A Master Black-Smith,	0	04	00
2 Mates, each 2.s.	0	04	00
6 Servants under him, each 18.d.	0	09	00
A Master Wheelwright,	0	03	00
2 Mates, each 2.s.	0	04	00
8 Servants under him, each 18.d.	0	12	00
A Master Farrier,	0	03	00
6 Servants being Work-men, each 18.d.	0	09	00
600 Pioneers, each 1.s.	30	00	00
3 Tent Keepers, each 18.d.	0	04	06
9 Servants under them, each 1.s.	0	09	00
An Armourer,	0	03	00
4 Servants under him, each 2.s.	0	08	00
A Basket-maker, for Gabions, Hurdles and Baskets,	0	02	06
4 Servants, each 18.d.	0	06	00
A Collor-maker,	0	02	06
4 Servants, each 18.d.	0	06	00
A Gun-Smith,	0	03	06
2 Servants, each 2.s.	0	04	00
A Ladle-maker,	0	02	06
4 Servants, each 18.d.	0	06	00
A Cooper,	0	02	06
4 Servants, each 18.d.	0	06	00
A Rope-maker,	0	02	06
2 Servants, each 18.d.	0	03	00

Advance Money to the Officers of Horse.

To the Marshal for Irons,	07	00	00
Minister, for Provision and Necessaries,	20	00	00
Chirurgions Chest,	15	00	00
Minister, and Chirurgion for their Waggon,	40	00	00
To the Captain,	140	00	00
To the Lievtenant,	60	00	00
To the Cornet,	50	00	00
To the Quarter-master,	30	00	00
Three Corporals, each 19.l.	57	00	00
2 Trumpetters, 1 Farrier, 1 Sadler, each 8.l.	32	00	00

Every Waggon at 40.l. or 4.s.8.d. *per diem* for every Waggon.

The Captains of *Foot* have 40.l. for two of them, to a Waggon.

And 10.s. a Man to raise their Companies.

Thus having given some Account of the *Officers* in General, as also in Particular, and of the *Souldiers* also; both as to their *Corruption*, and *Reformation* by some good *Orders* and *Lawes*; with the distribution of *Booties*, and some Account of their *Pay*, both in *Forreign* parts, and in the late *Wars* in *England*: We shall proceed, as to the Consideration in the first place, for the Preservation of their *Horses*, whereby they may be in a readiness and fit for *Service*, whensoever Orders shall come for their *Martch*.

Therefore when the *Cavalry* are appointed to their several *Winter Quarters*, it were good that the *Officers* of each *Troop*, did take a view of all the *Horses* belonging thereunto; and such as are not Sound in their Bodies, or Lame; that then the particular Souldiers who own them, have warning given them to provide better, within some reasonable time, or otherwise they should be left out at the *Muster* following: And many times it falls out, that the most *disorderly Souldiers* (that use to straggle from their Colours) are they that have such bad (and sometimes no) *Horses*; and a Dis-mounted *Souldier* is fit for no *Service*; And commonly their ill Husbandry, makes them uncapable of Re-

mounting

mounting themselves in any reasonable time; which much reflects upon the *Captain* for entertaining of such, who therein cannot discharge his *Trust*, if he prefer his *Affection* or *Relation*, before his *Reputation*; as is too often seen in such Cases.

The Proportion of Horse and Foot in an Army.

WHat hath the Practise of *Forreign Princes* and *States*, as to the Contributing towards the Re-mounting of the *Souldiers* whose *Horses* were lost in Service, some *Authors* do mention: But the *Long Parliament* in the late *War*, were such good Husbands at last, that they not only lessened their Pay, but put them to supply themselves with good *Horses* at their own Charge, or else others were *Mustered* in their room.

Now when the *Cavalry* are in a fit Condition to take the *Field*, it will be fit to Consider, what Proportion of the *Cavalry*, there should be joyned to the *Infantry*, to make an *Army* Compleat and Useful; for a great Number of *Foot*, not having a Proportionable Number of *Horse*, are like unto a great *Body*, with weak Arms and Legs; the *Cavalry* being well compared to the last. Therefore, there is first to be Considered (after good Intelligence of the *Enemies* strength, both of *Horse* and *Foot*, and in which he is strongest in) the *Designe* it self, whether to *Invade* a Country and so to hazard a *Battel*, (and therein to Consider the Nature, and Scituation of the *Country*, whether *Woods*, *Inclosures*, *Champion*, *Hilly*, *Plain*, *Watry* or *Boggs*) or to *Beleaguer* some place of Importance that doth annoy the *Invader*, or will be of Concernment when Recovered, as to have a Passage into the Enemies Country, for the future; and accordingly thereto, order the Proportion of both.

What *Forreign Nations* have practised as to the Proportioning of the *Cavalry* with the *Infantry*, will be no certain Rule for those that come after, no more, than to make use of their *Arms*, or manner of Drawing up of their Forces in *Battalia*; because Circumstances of Times and Place, may make them both useless: However, you may take notice of the Proportion then used, mentioned by several Authors. The *Romans* in their *Infancy* of *Government*, had their *Legions* to consist of One *Horse*, to Ten *Foot*; Afterwards, in their *Consulary Government*, it is observed, that their *Legions* had some other Proportion, as 6100 *Foot* and 726 *Horse*; And when their *Auxiliaries* were added, their *Legion* consisted of 10000 *Foot* and 2000 *Horse*, there being but 5 *Foot* to 1 *Horse*. In the *History of Holy Writ*, although there be mention made of many *Battels*, yet there is no mention made of any *Horse*, as to what Proportion they had, or whether they had any; In *Solomon*'s time (who was a man of Peace) we find him making Provision for times of *War*, and causeth * 4000 *Stalls* to be made for his *Chariots* and *Horsemen*, the last being 12000; a small Proportion, to those exceeding great *Armies* that were brought into the *Field*, by his *Grand-Child* and Rebellious Servant *Jeroboam*; the first bringing * 400000, the last 800000, of which 500000 were slain in one *Battel*, and yet not any mention of any *Horse* amongst them. We read that when *Alexander* the Great (so called) when he had Formed his *Army* for the Invading of the *Persian* Empire, (where he could not but know, he was to Encounter with great multitudes) it consisted of 35000, whereof 5000 were *Horse*. But to come to our *Modern* times, as to the Compounding of *Armies*, we find the *States Army*, at the *Battel* of *Newport*, to Consist of 12000 *Foot* and 3000 *Horse*. And in our late *Civil English Wars*, there was no certain Rules laid down herein, but only as to make Provision for their Pay; otherwise in the several *Battels* fought during those *Wars*, (which its hoped, that we shall see no more

* 2 *Chron.* 1.14. 9.25.

* 2 *Chron.* 15.3.

such

such *dismal* Times, but rather that our *Weapons* should be turned another way) we read of no certain Proportions laid down as intended for a *Fight*; but that both the KING and the *Parliaments Armies*, made use of such proportions as they then had, for to Engage withal; Neither *Army* intending to *Fight*, but as they did suppose they had the advantage one of another; either as to time or place, &c.

And as to the several Kinds of *Cavalry*, in relation to their *Furniture*; We find that the *Lances* (which have been much in use formerly, both in this *Kingdom* and *Forreign* parts) are now generally laid aside, and not used at all in our late *Civil Wars*, only some few that *Duke Hamilton* had when he invaded *England* in the year, 1648. but their *Lances* were but *Half pikes*, and their Defensive *Armes* very mean, so that they were of no great use to them then; But surely they are useful if well ordered. *Melzo* and *Basta*, differ little, as to the proportion of the *Armature* of the *Cavalry*, viz. 1 of *Lances*, 2 of *Curiassiers*, and 1 of *Harquebusiers*.

Harquebusiers armed. But our late *English Wars* neglected the two first, making use of the last; Armed only with a *Breast*, *Back* and *Casque*, (or *Pott*) for defence, a Case of *Pistols*, short, and a *Carbine* (hanging by in a Belt and Swivel on his Right side) of 2 or 2½ Foot, the length of the Barrel, and a good *Sword*; Many *Troopes* and *Regiments*, only with *Sword* and *Pistols* Armed; their Encountering being not after the *Antient Manner* of *Firing* at a Distance and *Wheeling* off, (which hath been found to be of dangerous Consequence) but to Fire at a neer Distance, (their Swords [ready drawn] hanging at their Wrists by a string) and with their Swords points, charging through the adverse *Troopes*; which if the *Enemy* stand firm and well Serried together, they must then make their way with the Edge, for there is no *Wheeling off*, but with an utter ruine, unless a good *Reserve* be neer. Therefore it behoves the *Souldier* to have a good *Horse*, well *managed*, and used to *Pike* and *Shot*, that the better Creature (bearing the *Image* of the Creator) may not be carried away by the unruled Force of the Inferior, (a good *Item* to the *Rational Creature* to look into himself, to see that the *Reason* that is in him, accompanied with *Understanding* and *Judgement*, be not carried away with the unruled, *Corrupt Affections*, to its own ruine) whereby he may not only endanger himself, but others also: And he ought to wear the *Colours* of those he serves under; but chiefly in the time of *Fight*, to have a care he lose not that, which he ought to have for a *Sign*, (according as the Command is given of what and where to be worn) lest he suffer by some of his own Party.

Dragoones Armed. The other *Arming* of the *Cavalry*, used in these *Modern times*, known by the Name of *Dragoones*, (being only *Foot* Mounted) is a *Sword* (all) and some *Musquets*, and some *Pikes*, both having Leather Thongs fixed to them, whereby they may be the easier carried; his lighted Match and Bridle in his Left hand, having his Right hand at Liberty for the better ordering of his *Pike* or *Musket* in their *March*, and as occasion shall require. Yet in these *English Wars*, it was observed that the *Dragoones* seldom used any *Pikes*, and of late times most *Snap-hance Locks*; they being chiefly to secure Passes, and to Line Hedges, if occasion require, either to secure the other *Cavalry* with whom they Marched, or to offend the *Enemy*.

Exercising in General. Now having Written briefly of the *Arming* of the *Cavalry*, chiefly in use in these *Modern times*, we shall mention something of their *Exercising* only, (it being left to those that are desirous to be satisfied as to the other, to peruse *Authors* that have Writ on that Subject, mentioned by Mr. *John Cruse* in his first part of *Military Instructions*, *Chap.* 26. in the Margin) Without *Exercise*, no *Art* is to be obtained, especially as to be a right *Artist*: Indeed the *Theorique* part may be found in *Authors* of most *Arts*; but there is a vast difference between that and the *Practique*, especially as to this *Art Military*: And he

he that will obtain a good *Degree* in this Profession, must not content himself with the Knowledge that the *Campi Doctores* shall communicate to him, but go to the *School of Mars* (i.e.) a well Govern'd and Disciplin'd *Army*; *Holland* formerly, *England* lately, having produced such, where more Knowledge by Experience was to be obtained in one year (whilst the *Armies* were in Action) than amongst all your *Teachers*: Not but that the *Rudiments* of this *Art*, are very useful, for those that have a desire to attain some *degrees* in this Profession; as in your *Academies* or *Universities*, none that have not in their younger years, been brought up in the *Inferiour Schools*, to have the *Grounds* of *Grammar ad unguem*, will, or can ever attain unto any eminent *degree* in the *Liberal Sciences*: And therefore it is observed, That in *England*, the *Gentry* and many of the *Nobility*, will cause their *Sons* (according to their Ability) to be brought up in the Knowledge of the *Lawes* thereof, as *Students* in the several *Inns of Courts*, about the *City* of *London*, not with an intention to make them all *Lawyers* by Profession, yet to have so much knowledge of the *Law*, as in most *Cases* to satisfie themselves, as to the Preservation of their own *Estates*: So in this *Military* Profession, it were very good, that not only they, but the generality of all sorts of able persons, (*Rich or Poor*) were *Educated*, and often *Exercised*, whereby they might not only know how to defend themselves, when occasion requires, but also their *Country*, wherein not only their *Estates*, but their *Liberties* and *Lives* are included.

Therefore, we are to Consider what *Instructions* are fit to acquaint our *Cavallier* (Mounted on a Serviceable *Horse*, and *Armed* with those required of an *Harquebusier*) withal, as to the *Managing* both of his *Horse* and *Armes*.

First, For his *Horse*, He ought to be of a sufficient *Stature*, and *strong*; *clean Limb'd*, and *sure of Foot*; to be well *Exercised*, whereby he may be fit for *Service*, and ready at Command, to *Trot*, *Gallop*, or *Run* in a full Carreer, and that willingly (not forcedly) when occasion requires; as also to *Advance*, *Stop*, *Retire*, and *Turn* or *Wheel* to the Right and Left; a great help to bring him to this, will be to use him to the Riding of the *Ring* (concerning which, Mr. *Robert Ward* in his *Animadversions of War*, hath given many *Rules* and *Figures*, to which the more inquisitive *Reader*, or eager *Scholar* is referred) chiefly as to the *Figure* 8 first in a large Compass, and so by degrees in a less; first upon his *pace* (or *walk*) then on the *Trot*, and so to the *Gallop* and *Carreer*: These things he may be taught by the *Hand*, *Leg*, or *Voice*; but are best and chiefly to be done by the *two first*: And to teach him to go Side-wayes, that he may without disturbance of others, Open or Close to the Right or Left, according as *Orders* are given: Our *Souldier* also, ought to use his *Horse* to the Smell of *Gunpowder*, first by firing of some in the *pan*, and then some in the *Barrel*, but still to do this by degrees, whereby he may take no *Offence* at the first at any thing, that he is to be taught, and so to be used to a *Drum*, and to ride against any thing: alwayes observing to do these things by degrees.

Secondly for his *Armes*, (yet lets observe some *Rules* for a handsome *posture* in the *Mounting* of his *Horse*; As standing with a *full Body* [between the *Bolster* and the *Cantle* of the *Saddle*] to the Neer-side of the *Horse*, then taking the end of the *Reins*, above the Button, in his Right hand, and draw them gently to an even length, lest his sudden performance thereof, put his *Horse* from his *standing posture*; then putting the little *Finger* of his Left hand between both the *Reins* under the Button, with the other three *Fingers* (of the same hand) on the further *Rein*, and the *Thumb* on the neer side of the Button, so to hold both *Reins*; he may thereby have his *Horse* Head in an even Ballance: Then Grasping the Pummel of the Saddle (he being to have a care that the *Saddle* be fast girted) with his Left hand, with the help (or without) of his Right hand, he is to put his Left

Foot:

Foot into the *Stirrup*, and with his Right hand (taking fast hold on the highest part of the *Cantle* behind, he shall (with the help of both hands) gently, (yet strongly, and in an upright Posture) raise himself, until he may stand *perpendicular* upon his Left Foot, and then putting over his Right Legg, place himself in the *Saddle*: This Posture often practised, is not only *graceful*, but *useful*; the *Romans* exercised themselves much herein, using a *Wooden Horse*, and that on either side, armed with a *Sword* or *Lance* in their hands: Then when he is thus Mounted and Seated in his Saddle, the *Word* being given;

1. *Uncap your Pistoll.*

He is with his Right hand to turn down the *Caps* of his *Holsters* or *Pistoll Cases*.

2. *Draw your Pistoll.*

He is to draw the *Pistoll* out of the *Holster* with his Right hand, and to Mount the Muzzle of it; and alwayes the left *Pistoll* first.

3. *Order your Pistoll.*

He is to *Sink* his *Pistoll* into his *Bridle-hand*, and instantly to remove his Right hand towards the midst of it, and then rest the *Butt-end* of it upon the *Right-thigh*.

4. *Span your Pistoll.*

This is performed, by sinking the *Pistoll* into his Bridle-hand, and taking the *Spanner* into his Right hand to put it upon the *Axeltree*, and winding about the *Wheell* till it stick; and then to return the *Spanner* to his place, which most usually hangeth in a string about their Necks, or placed in the *Holster*, as hath been used in Forreign parts.

5. *Prime your Pan.*

The *Pistoll* being held in the Bridle-hand, not far above the *Lock*; he is to take his *priming Box* in his Right hand, and (pressing the *spring* with his Fore-finger to open the *Box*) to put Powder into the *pan*.

6. *Shut your Pan.*

He is to press in his *Pan Lid*, with his Right Thumbe, whereby it will easily close.

7. *Cast about your Pistoll.*

The *Pistoll* being still in his Bridle-hand, he is to cast it about, and to hold it on the left side, the Muzzel being erected.

8. *Gage your Flasque.*

He is to take the *Flasque* into his Right hand, and with the Fore-finger to put back the Spring, and turning the mouth of the *Flasque* downwards, he is to let go the Spring.

9. *Lade your Pistoll.*

Your *Flasque* being gaged, you are to press down the *Spring* (which openeth the *Flasque*) with your Fore-finger, then placing the mouth of it in your *Pistoll*, give it a shogg, and so Lade your *Pistoll*.

10. *Draw your Rammer.*

Which is to be done with the Right hand turned, and hold it with the head downwards.

11. *Lade with Bullet, and Ram home.*

Holding your *Rammer* in your Right hand as before, you are to take your *Bullet* out of your mouth (having put it there ready) with your Thumbe and Fore-finger, and so put it into the mouth of the *Pistoll*, and the *Rammer* after it, and so Ram it home.

12. *Return your Rammer.*

You are to draw forth your *Rammer* with your Right hand turned (as before) and return it to its place.

13. *Pull down your Cock.*

You are to bring back the *Pistoll* with your Bridle hand towards your Right side, and placeing the *Butt-end* upon your *Right-thigh*, you may pull down the *Cock*.

14. *Recover*

14. *Recover your Pistoll.*

You are to take your *Pistoll* into your Right hand again, the *muzzle* being mounted.

15. *Present and give Fire.*

Having your *Pistoll* in your Right hand, with your Fore-finger upon the *Tricker*, you are to incline the *muzzle* (with a steady eye) towards the mark you aim at, not suddenly but by degrees, according to the distance you ride, before a necessity of discharging shall be; you are not to give Fire directly towards the *Horses* head, but in a *diameter line*, by his Right-side, turning your right-hand so, as the *Lock* of the *Pistoll* may be upward; and having a true view of the Mark, draw the *Tricker* and let fly.

16. *Return your Pistoll.*

You are to *Return* your *Pistoll* into the *Holster*, and speedily draw out the other (if need require) making the same performances as before.

Now in regard the *Snap-hance Pistoll* hath been most in use of late, there are some *Postures*, wherein there are some differences as to that of the *Fire-lock*; which are as followeth: *viz.*

17. *Bend your Cock.*

You are to hold your *Pistoll* (as before was taught) in your Bridle-hand, and to place your two Fore-fingers of your Right hand upon the *Vice-pin* that skrews in the *Flint*, and by it to draw up the *Cock*.

18. *Gaurd your Cock.*

With your Right hand you are to pull down the *back Lock*, and then be careful in securing the *Cock* from falling down.

19. *Order your Hammer.*

You are gently to draw down your *Steel* upon the *Pan* with your Right-hand; provided alwayes there be a good *Flint*, and that it be evenly measured, lest it under or over-reacheth, which may hazzard the *Firing*.

20. *Free your Cock.*

You are to thrust your *back Lock* with your *Thumbe* and *Fore-finger* of your Right-hand, so as the *Cock* may be let down, without danger of staying it, from giving fire.

As concerning the use of *Cartouches*, in those late *Civil Wars* of *England*, the use of them hath been little; the *Spanner* that holds about 6 or 8 *Charges* for a *Pistoll*, hath been found very serviceable, it having been rarely known, that in any *Battel*, the *Cavalry* have had occasion to *Fire* their *Pistols* so often as to spend so much *powder*; Nevertheless it is requisite that the *Souldier* have a small *powder horn* full of good Powder, in his Pocket, for a Reserve.

Now when our *Souldier* hath *managed* his *Horse* well, and is Expert in his *Postures*, in the next place he must endeavour to be a good *Marks man*, and therefore must Exercise himself on *Horse-back* to shoot at some certain Mark: He is to take notice, that he is not to discharge his *Pistoll*, till he comes to his *Enemies Horses head*, or rather to keep his *Pistolls* for a *Reserve*, and *Charge his Enemy* with the *Swords point*, and so to endeavour to Charge throw and break his *Enemies Body*, and then his *Pistolls* will be of use in a Pursuite.

As concerning *Curiassiers*, most *Authors* mention their *order* and *manner* of *Fight*; but in these late *English Wars*, there hath been little use made of such heavy *Armour*, and therefore what is written concerning them, may well be applyed to the *Harquebusiers*, whose additional *Offensive Armes* is an *Harquebusse*; but now *Carbines* are most in use, which is carried on his Right side hanging at a *Belt*, or else with the *But-end* placed

on his *Right Thigh*: In *Fight*, he is to endeavour to gain the Right side of the *Enemy* (contrary to the *Curiassier*, who hath only *Pistolls*, and is therefore to endeavour to get the Left side) because that in *Presenting*, he is to rest his *Carbine*, on his Bridle-hand, placing the *But-end* upon the *Right-side* of his *Breast* near his *Shoulder*.

As for the *Postures* of the *Harquebusse* and *Carbine*, they are much the same with the *Pistoll*; yet in regard the *Carbines* with us are for the most part *Snap-hans Locks*, which differ from the *Fire-locks*, you shall find underneath, the *Order* of Handling them, with the words of *Command*, it being needless to dilate them.

Postures belonging to the *Snap-hans Carbine*.

1 *Order your Carbine,*
2 *Sink your Carbine into your*
3 *Bend your Cock,* (*Bridle-hand,*
4 *Guard your Pan,*
5 *Prime your Pan,*
6 *Shut your Pan,*
7 *Cast about your Carbine,*
8 *Gage your Flasque,*
9 *Lade your Carbine,*
10 *Draw your Rammer,*
11 *Shorten your Rammer,*
12 *Lade with bullet & ram home,*
13 *With-draw your Rammer,*
14 *Shorten your Rammer,*
15 *Return your Rammer,*
16 *Recover your Rammer,*
17 *Order your Hammer,*
18 *Free your Cock,*
19 *Present,*
20 *Give Fire.*

Of Exercising *the* Dragoones.

THeir *Postures* do much correspond with the *Infantry*, they being but *Infantry mounted*; yet it is requisite that they *Exercise* themselves to give *Fire* on *Horse-back*, as the *Carbines*. They were invented for special Services, to Assist the *Cavalry* as *Infantry*; there being many *Exploits* which cannot be effected by the *Cavalry* alone. Being come to *Guard a Passage*, or to do any other the like *Service*, they are to a-light and to demean themselves as *Infantry*: Being so a-lighted, every of them is to Cast his *Bridle* over the Neck of his Side-mans *Horse* in the same Order as they Marched; keeping them so together, by the help of such as are thereunto especially appointed.

Of Exercising *the Cavalry in their Motions*.

IN the Precedent *Discourse*, it hath been related how every *Horseman* is to be *Exercised* in the *managing* of his *Horse*, as also in the use of his particular *Armes*; the next thing he is to learn, is, How to demean himself, being joyned in a *Body*.

And here before we enter upon the *Motions*, it were fit to Explain the *Terms of Art* therein used, and to shew what is meant by a *File*, a *Rank*, *Half-Files*, and *Half-Ranks*,

Ranks, the *Front*, *Flanks*, and *Reere*, and the like. But (for Brevities sake) I shall pass them over, referring the *Reader* to the *Book of Military Discipline, Or, The young Artillery Man*, (Composed by Col. *William Barriffe*) hereunto this Annexed, wherein no question but he will find good satisfaction.

As concerning the *Exercise* of a *Troop* of *Horse*, which (saith several *Authors*) ought to be drawn up into a *Body*, not by *Ranks*, but by *Files*; and those of *Five deep* (as most affirm) or of *Six*, as others would have it, (and that because the Number of *Five* is not divideable by *two*, and so in Doubling of *Ranks* or *half-Files*, or the like, there is alwayes an odd *Rank*) Some would have them (especially the *Harquebusiers*, to be *Eight* in *File*, taking the *Troop* to consist of 64. But what those several *Authors* mention to be useful, and hath been practised in their times, hath not in our late *Civil Wars in England* been so accounted, as to the *Practical part* thereof; the *Chief Commanders* in their *Exercising* of an *Infant Troop* (such a One as hath been newly raised) did Customarily draw them forth by *Ranks*, that they might place the best *Men* and *Horse* in the *Front*; the second *sort* in the *Reer*, and the *third* in the *midle Rank*; and so instead of 8, 6, or 5 in a *File*, they had but *three*: and that for this *Reason*, (besides others that might be given) Because their *Front* extended larger, and brought more hands to *Fight*: For a *Troop* of 64 *Horse* of 8 in File, brought but 8 in *Front*; the same *Number* of 6 *deep* could not Compleat 11 in *Front*, there wanting 2: And that of 5 *deep*, did not afford 13 in *Front*, there wanting 1; Whereas this *Number*, drawn up 3 *deep*, affords a *Front* of 21, and *one* over; So that One *Troop* of 3 in *File*, was more serviceable, (in bringing hands to Fight) than two *Troopes* and an *half* was, that had 8 in *File*; or almost as good as two *Troopes* that had 6 in *File*; and two parts in *five* better than those of 5 *deep*.

Object. But some may *Object* and say, *That its true, your* Front *is large, by having but* 3 deep; *but your* Body *is weak, and not able to endure a* Shock?

Answ. It cannot be denied, but that the *Body* may seem to be weaker; but we say, what is a great and strong *Body* without useful *Members*, especially *Hands*? And therefore it is observed by *Authors*, That it was the *Wisdom* and *Policy* of Great *Commanders* in *Antient Times*, that when they were to Encounter with an *Enemy*, (whose *Forces* exceeded theirs in *Number*) that they would be sure to make Choice of their *Ground*, where the *Enemy* should bring no more *Hands* to *Fight* than themselves, and then let the most *valiant* wear the *Garland*: Examples we have of the *Athenians* (under the Conduct of *Miltiades*) who with 3000, opposed *Xerxes* (whose *Army* consisted of 1100000 (some *Authors* mention more) in his *Grecian Expedition*, but they chose a fit place for the same. And many Condemne the *Persian Commanders* (as well they deserved) for Encountring with the *Macedonians* (under the Conduct of *Alexander* the Great, in his *Asian Expedition*) with Great *Numbers*, in such places, where they could bring no more *Hands* to *Fight* than the *Macedonians*; which made *Alexander* so Confident, as afterwards to tell *Parmenio* (one of his *Chief Commanders*) [when the *Persians* came with a second Great *Army* against him, and that in a place where they might bring Five times more hands to Fight than *Alexander* had in his *Army*; and they thereupon advised him, to *set* upon the *Persians* by Night] *He would not steal a Victory*: But they were *Asiatiques*, not *Greeks*; otherwise *Alexander* might have been as *Exemplary* to *Posterity*, as he was *Eminent* for *Success*.

A *Troop* drawn up in *Battalia* (or, according to the late Modern term, into a *Body*) either 8, 6, 5, or 3 *deep*, (as the General *Figures*, hereafter will discover) and *Silence* strictly Commanded, (the principle thing in all *Souldiers*, to be observed;) The First thing to be taught them, is *Distance*: And herein *Authors* disagree among themselves,

and our *Modern practise* from them: Some make *Close Order* to be two *paces*; *Open Order*, four *paces*; and so for *double*, *treble*, and *quadruple Distance* proportionable. Others make but 2 kinds of *Distances*; *Close Order*, which is 3 *foot*; and *Open Order*, which is 6 *foot*: Others (more plain) would have the *distance* between *Rank* and *Rank* (both for the length of the *Horse*, as also the space between *Horse* and *Horse*) to be 6 *paces*; and 1 *pace* between *File* and *File*: Yet if we take every *pace* for 5 *foot* (as that is the usual *dimention*) by this Rule, they should be at a very large Distance. Others would have them Exercised in their *Motions* of *Open Order*, both *Rank* and *File*, at the *distance* of 6 *foot*, standing right in their *Ranks* and *Files*. And this Order, comes neareſt to our Modern Practise, there having been somewhat more allowed to the *distance* between *Rank* and *Rank*, and less between *File* and *File*; and therefore 4 *foot* between *File* and *File*, whereby a *Horse* may Martch up between, is, supposed sufficient, and 8 *foot* between *Rank* and *Rank*, for the *Officers* to Ride between, to observe their *Postures*, or give *Directions*.

For the *Motions*, they are of *Four* Kinds.

1. *Facings*,
2. *Doublings*,
3. *Counter-Martches*,
4. *Wheelings*.

1. The use of *Facings*, is to make the *Troop* perfect, to be suddenly prepared for a *Charge*, on either of the Flanks or the Reer.

2. *Doubling* of *Ranks*, or *Doubling* by *Half Files*, or *Bringers-up*, is used upon occasion of Strengthning (or Enlarging) the *Front*, and *Doubling* of *Files*, or *doubling* by *half Ranks*, serveth to *strengthen* the *Flanks*.

3. *Counter-Martches* serve, either to *reduce* the *File-leaders* into the place of the *Bringers-up*, and so to have the best *Men* ready to receive the *Charge* of an *Enemy* in the *Reer*; or to bring one *Flank* into the place of th'other, or *Front* or *Reer*, or either *Flank* in the *middle* of the *Body*.

4. The use of *Wheeling*, is to bring the *Front* (which is alwayes supposed to Consist of the *ableſt Men*) to be ready to receive the *Charge* of the *Enemy*, on either *Flank* or *Reer*.

These *Motions* (for the more easie Apprehension of the *un-tutored Souldier*) are represented in several *Figures*, by a *Troop* of *Harquebusiers* of 64 *Men*; drawn up 8 *deep* (or *File*,) which in Mr. *John Cruſoe*'s *Military Instructions for the Cavalry*, you may find at large: And the like *Figures* of 6 *deep* (or *File*) in a *Troop* of 120 *Men*, which you may also *view* at your leisure, in Mr. *Robert Ward*'s *Animadversions of War*, Printed by *John Dawson*, and sold by *Francis Eaglsfield* at the *Marigold* in *Pauls Church-yard*, all which are omitted for *brevities* sake; so that now you shall find only some few *Figures*, as such as hath been observed to have been the *practical Motions*, for Exercising of a *Troop* of *Horse*, of 60; that (in the beginning of the late *Civil Wars* amongst us) having been the usual *Number* allowed in a *Troop*, which afterwards were *enlarged*, or *lessened*, according as the then *Powers* did suppose most Convenient, for the Carrying on of their *Designs*. Every of such *Troop*, being then furnished with these following *Officers*, *viz.*

A Captain,	*Commission Officers.*	Three Corporals,	*non-Commission Officers.*
A Lievtenant,		Two Trumpetters,	
A Corner,		A Farrier,	
A Quarter-master,		A Sadler.	

When

When this *Troop* is to *Martch*, they are to be *divided* into 3 *equal parts*, (and each of these is called a *Squadron*) according to the *Number* of the *Corporals*; and those are distinguished by the *Names* of the *Captains*, *Lievtenants*, and *Cornets Squadron*; The *First Squadron* to be led by the *Captain*; the *Second* by the *Cornet*; and the *Third* by the *Lievtenant's* (or *second*) *Corporal*. Others say by the *eldest Corporal*, but that would breed *disorder*, as in our following *Figure*; and therefore have placed the *Quarter-master* there; The *Lievtenant* to *Martch* in the *Reer*: The *Figure* followeth.

The manner how a Commander of a Troop of 60 Horse, besides Officers, should Martch into the Field, to be Exercised.

2 *Trumpetters.*

Captain.

H H H H H H H Eldest Corporal.
h h h h h h h
h h h h h h h

Cornet.

H H H H H H H Youngest Corporal.
h h h h h h h
h h h h h h h

Quarter-master.

H H H H H H H Second Corporal.
h h h h h h h
h h h h h h h

Lievtenant.

That the Troop may move Orderly, and keep their distances truly, let the whole Troop move all at an instant, viz. When the Front moves, the Reer to be ready, so shall they seldom erre.

In martching through a Town, forget not to have your Pieces spann'd, or Cockt, and hold them in your Right-hand, with their Muzzles mounted, and the But-end resting on your Thigh.

The 2d. Corporal, in the absence of the Quarter-master, leads the Lievtenants Division.

How a Commander should draw his Troop of Horse into a Body, at their Open Order, or Distance of Six Foot.

YOur *Troop* of *Horse*, being drawn into the *Field*; before you can *Exercise* them, you must draw up the several *Divisions*, into an even *Body*, in manner of a *Battalia*, *viz.* The first *Division*, led by the *Captain*; being come to a Convenient place for *Exercise*, is to stand firm: Then the *Cornet* is to Martch up with his *Division* upon the *Left-side* of the former, fronting even, and keeping even Distances both in *Rank* and *File*: Lastly, the *second Corporal* (in the absence of the *Quarter-master*) leads up the *Third Division*, on the *Left-side* of the *Cornets*, (the *Corporal* before the close of this last *Division*, puts himself in his place, being the Right-hand Man of the first *Rank*) although to observe their due Orders and Proportions both in *Ranks* and *Files*. And being thus drawn into a *Battalia*, there will be in the *Front*, the *Captain* on the Head of his own *Division*, (and some distance between him, and the two *Trumpetters*) the *Cornet* in the Head of his *Division*, before his *Standard*; and the *Quarter-master* on the Head of the *Lievtenants Division*, if he be there; if not, then there is none to be on the Head of that *Division*; (the *Corporals* being in the *Body* of the *Troop*, and the *Lievtenant* only in the *Reer*; as in the *Figure* following.

This & the Precedent Figure differs much from the Practise in Forreigne parts, as you may find in Mr. Robert Wards Animadversions of War. These having been the Modern practise in England in the late Wars.

2 *Trumpetters.*

2 *Trumpetters.*

Quarter-master. *Cornet.* *Captain.*

The letter C standeth for Corporal

H H H H H H C: H H H H H H C: H H H H H H C:
h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h:
h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h:

Lieutenant.

The Facing of a Troop of 60 *Horse, in* 3 *Divisions.*

Facings.

Lieutenant.
H H H H H C
h h h h h h
h h h h h h
h h h h h h*

Cornet.
H H H H H H C
h h h h h h h
*h h h h h h h†

Captain.
†h h h h h h h
h h h h h h h
H H H H H H C

The Use of this *Figure* is to prevent the *Enemy* from Falling upon the *Flanks*, if they divide themselves into many *Bodies*; And as for the *Reer*, any of the *Flanks* are in a readiness to prevent any danger there: This being only laid down as a *Model*, to Exercise the *Ingennity* of an *Officer*.

The Doubling of a Troop of 60 *Horse.*

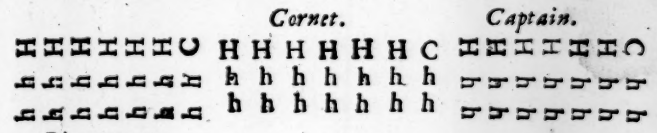
Doublings: 21H20H19H18H17H16H15C: 14H13H12H11H10H9H8C: 7H6H5H4H3H2H1C:
h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h: h h h h h h h:
21 20 19 18 17 16 15: 14 13 12 11 10 9 8: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1:

The *Troop* being drawn up in a full *Body*, and at *Open Order*; the Word being given, *Reer Rank, double the Front* (to the Right or Left) *to the Left*; which may be suddenly done, and may be of great use upon any occasion: The *middle Rank* is to keep in their *Open Order*, when the *Front* (by the addition of the *Reer*) is in its *close Order*.

The

The Counter-Martchings.

FOr *Counter-Martches* of a *Troop of* 60 *Horſe*, it hath been of little uſe in theſe late *English Wars*, becauſe there being but 3 *deep*; If *Order* be given to *Counter-martch* either to the *Right* or *Left*, there will be but 6 in *Front*, which can be of no uſe for any *Service*, as to an *Engaging*; But inſtead thereof (the *Diviſions* being drawn up) to Order the *Right* and *Left Diviſions* to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and ſo to *Martch* off may be of ſome uſe; as in the following *Figure*. *Counter-Marches.*



Counter-martches for *Horſe*, are very troubleſome, becauſe *Horſes* cannot be brought to perform the *Orders* with any Expedition, by reaſon his *Body* requires more room, and time, for the performance thereof, then a *Man* only.

Wheelings.

THere needs no *Figure* for this, the uſe thereof being only to bring the *Front*, to be in a readineſs to Receive the *Charge* from the *Enemy*, when he ſhall endeavour to *Charge* you, either in the *Flanks* or *Reer*, as formerly hath been mentioned. *Wheelings.*

Theſe and the like *Motions* are directed and Commanded by the *Voice* of the *Commander* in time of *Exerciſing*, when its the *Souldiers duty* to obſerve *Silence*, whereby he may underſtand the *Orders* the better.

But when *Troopes* are drawn up in *groſſe Bodies*, the *Commanders Voice* being not to be heard, (or at leaſt underſtood) by reaſon of the claſhing of *Armour*, trampling or Neying of *Horſes*, &c. eſpecially in *Fight*. Therefore we find two other *Signes*, or *Military Directions*, which are of uſe, whereby the *Souldiers* may underſtand their *Commanders* Intentions, *Viz.*

1. The *Trumpet*, which is termed *Semivocal*, which is directed to the *Ear*.

2. The *Standard* (or *Colours*) uſually, (yet ſometimes a *Staff*, or *Piſtoll*, is made uſe of) and that by Ordering it in ſeveral *Poſtures*, as occaſion ſhall require; which the *Souldiers* being acquainted withal, is as good a *Direction* as the *Vocal*; and this is only to the *Eye*.

Therefore it behoves the *Commander*, to Exerciſe his *Souldiers* much in theſe *two* laſt *Signs*; eſpecially as to the ſeveral *ſounds* of the *Trumpet*: As *Firſt*, When to put on their *Saddles*; and this is termed, *Butte Sella*. 2. When to *Mount*; which is called, *Monte Cavallo*. 3. When to *Repair* to their *Colours*. 4. When to *Martch*; and that is called, a *Tucquet*. 5. When to give a *Charge*; and that is termed, *Carga, Carga*. 6. When to *Retreat*; which is called, (*Ala Standardo*;) that is, To *Repair* to their *Colours*. And the *Laſt* is, When to *prepare* for their going upon the *Guard*; which is called, *Auquet*.

Thus

Thus having gone through, (with as much *Brevity* as possible might be) with the *First Part* of our *Method* (in the Exercise of the *Cavalry*) as Concerning the *Levying* of *Men* and *Horse*, with some particulars relating to the *Duty* and *Office* of the several *Officers*, from the *General of the Horse*, to the *Corporal of a Troop*; As also, of the *Souldiers Duty*, *Exercise*, and *Stipend*: We shall (with the same *Brevity*) give you some Account of the *Second Part* of our *Method*, as to the Order of their *Martching*.

Rules to be Observed by a General, *in Martching his* Army; *And in some Particulars, relating to the* Cavalry.

Martching of the Cavalry.

WIthout due *Observations*, and judicious *Care*, a good *Army* may be ruined, before they can put themselves into a *Posture*, to receive the *Enemies* unexpected *Charge*; Therefore I shall lay down several *Rules*, Observed by Eminent *Commanders*, both in *Antient* and *Modern* times, as also in *Forreign* parts, and *Domestique*.

Before the *Army* is to *Martch*, there ought to be a good *Intelligence* gained of the *Enemy*, (how *Quartered*, at what *distance*, or whether in *Motion*, *&c.*) either by *Scouts* or *Parties*, thereby to take some of the *Enemy* Prisoners; or *Spies* sent amongst them.

Having gained some *Intelligence*, as that the *Enemy* is before us, and our *Army* in a good Condition to Engage them, (if time, place, and other advantages present) then some *Scouts* are to be sent out; after them some *Parties* of *Commanded Horse*, (that is 3 or 6 out of a *Troop*, as occasion shall require, or as may be thought meet by the *General*) and so some *single Troopes* or *Regiments*: If the *Enemy* be in the *Reer*, and that the *Army* is Retreating, either to some place of Advantage, or to joyn with some other *Forces*, then the same *Rules* are to be observed in the *Reer*, as before in the *Van*, whereby the *Retreat* may be the safer. Therefore is great Care to be had as to gain *Intelligence* of the Wayes the *Army* is to *Martch* in, whether to or from the *Enemy*, that so the *Army* may Martch accordingly, either in great or small *Bodies*.

The several *Regiments* (and *Brigades*) of *Horse*, are to Martch according to the Antiquity of the particular *Colonels*, or of those that have the Command of the *Brigades*: If the *Horse* be put into *Brigades*, (as our late *King* CHARLES his *Horse* were, in those unhappy *Wars* between *Him* and the *Parliament*) then that *Brigade* which Marched in the *Van*, ought to come into their *Quarters* betimes, and the next day, is to Martch in the *Reer*, and so to take their turns: The same Order to be Observed in the *Regiments* of every *Brigade*, beginning with the *Eldest Colonel*. If the *Enemy* be near, either in the *Van*, or *Reer*, then no *Quarters* are allotted, but some *Ground Assigned*, according as the *General* or *Commander in Chief* shall appoint, as necessity shall require, or opportunity present. We are to Consider of *Orders*, whether to *Martch* in the *Day*, or in the *Night*, and accordingly to demean our selves.

When the *Army* is *Quartered*, great *care* ought to be had in placing the *Horse Guards* (and those are to be the *Out-Guards*) upon such *Avenues* as are most likely for the *Enemy* to make his Approach by, (not forgetting to have a due regard to the least suspected *Avenues*) and to place the *Sentinels* a good distance from the *Guard*, that they may the better Discover, and give warning of the *Enemies* approaches, in giving the *Guard* an *Alarum*, by the discharge of their *Pistols*, so that the whole *Army* may presently be in a readiness;

readineſs; yet the *Sentinels* ought to be very Cautious what *Alarums* they *give* or *take*: There ſhould be two *Sentinels* at one place, that if there be any Approches of the *Enemy*, one of them may give notice to the *Out-Guards*, and they to the *Main-Guard*; the other *Sentinel* to ſtay as long as he can (for a fuller diſcovery of the *Enemies* approach) before he Retreat to his *Gaurd*, from whence he was ſent upon that *duty*. But withal, there ought continually to be ſent out ſmall *Parties* ſeveral Wayes to gain *Intelligence*, whether the *Enemy* is in *Motion*, or what *Parties* he hath out: Theſe ſmall *Parties* are a great ſecuring of an *Army* from having any damage from the *Enemy*, eſpecially in the *Night*; not that an *Army* ſhould be ſecure at all, although they have certain *Intelligence* of the *Enemies* being at a diſtance; for a * vigillant *Enemy* will make Choice of ſuch opportunities, to fall upon his *Opponents Quarters*, which are much ſooner annoyed, then they were in Antient times, in their *Camp*.

* Hannibal often uſed it with good ſucceſs, and Scipio in Africk, deſtroyed two Armies of the Carthaginians in a Night.

Therefore there ought to be a Certain place appointed in the *Camp*, or *Head-Quarters*, where, (upon any *Alarum*) the *Forces* there ſhould draw together (or *Randez-vouz*) and put themſelves into ſuch a *Poſture*, as to be in a readineſs to receive the *Enemies Charge*, if he ſhall adventure, after he perceives that you have taken the *Alarum*: But the *Modern practiſe* in ſuch *Exploits*, is, to follow the *Scouts* and *Sentinels* cloſe, and drive the *Guards in*, and ſo to fall on whilſt all is out of Order, whereby a good *Army* is endangered.

When the *Horſe* Martch with the *Foot*, then every *Regiment* (as often as they can find a Convenient *Grounnd*) is to draw up into a *Battalia*, *Troop* after *Troop*; And when they are to come into Narrower Wayes, they are to draw off in the ſame manner, the Right-hand *Troopes* to Martch off firſt: But if the *Enemy* be in the *Reer*, with his *Army*, or any Conſiderable *Parties* †; there ought to be great Care and Courage uſed: A victorious *Army* having often received a *Foyle* from the *Enemy*, upon ſuch an advantage. Therefore at ſuch a time, it behoves the *General*, or *Commander in Chief*, to be Circumſpect in drawing off his *Forces*, and that there do *Martch* but a *Guard* with moſt of the *Train* and *Baggage* in the *Van*; the reſt of the *Army* to draw up in certain *Incloſures*, both upon the Right and Left of every ſuch Way, (with ſome ſmall *Field Pieces*) in conſiderable *Bodies*, (at leaſt 3 or 4 *Bodies*) in the *Reer* one of another, that as one *Body* that faceth the *Enemy* draweth off into the Way, another *Body* at a ſmall diſtance, may be ready to Charge the *Enemy*, if he ſhould adventure to fall upon that *Body* that is drawn off; And that *Body* that is ſo drawn off, is to *Martch* to the *Reer* of the other *Bodies*, and there at ſome convenient *diſtance* to draw up again, to be in a readineſs to Relieve others, and ſecure their Retreat; and this to be done ſo long as the *Enemy* follows you in your *Reer*; and if you perceive that he doth not, yet be not ſecure, leſt his not following of you, prove a greater diſadvantage, by his endeavouring to fall upon either of your *flanks*, or to *Martch* in ſome *by-wayes*, and ſo hazzard your *Train* in the *Van*.

† As Colonel Hurry, with a Party of Horſe, did to the Earle of Eſſex his Army, the next day after the firſt Newbery Fight, upon ſuch an advantage.

There muſt be great Care had, as to keep the *Army* cloſe together, that none ſtraggle from their *Colours* at any time, the diſadvantage being much; *Firſt*, Such as do ſo, (without *Orders*) do it generally to *Plunder* and *Pillage*, which will loſe the *Hearts* of the *Country People*, (although before *Friends*.) And *Secondly*, The *Enemy* taking ſome of them, gaineth *Intelligence* of the ſtate of the *Army*. Therefore ſtrict *Diſcipline* ought to be uſed, and the *Provoſt Marſhal* to do ſpeedy execution upon ſuch, by hanging them up, on ſome Tree, that the *Army* may take notice of them, as they *Martch*.

If the *Army* Martch through an *Enemies Country*, then it is good *Policy* to *ruine* and *deſtroy* whatſoever may be advantagious to the *Enemies* ſubſiſtance; Providing alwayes ſufficiently for your own *Army*.

If there be any suspition of the *Enemies* endeavour to disturb you in your *Martch*, (as there is no question to be made but he will) then you are to gain good *intelligence* of the *Country* how it lyes, as also how the *Enemy* lodgeth, or what *Passes* that he hath gained, that you were to *Martch* by, or thorow; and either to remove him by *Force* or *Policy*; or else to *Martch* some other way, (if not more advantagious than that) at least to make shew thereof; and finding the *Enemy* to neglect those *Passes* that he had possest before, then to send (*Covertly*) some considerable *Forces* to gain the same, and them to secure, that the *Army* may pass on, with the more safety in its intended Design.

If the *Enemy* be in the *Reer* of you, waiting for an opportunity to enforce you to *Fight*, then be sure to *Martch* so, as that there be some *River*, *Wood*, *Boggs* or great *Ditches*, &c. in one of your *Flanks* or *Reer*, or both; that the *Enemy* may see you have some advantage thereby, who will not be so ready to hazzard his *Forces* upon such disadvantages, unless he have gained *intelligence* of the state of your *Army*, and so knowing the Temper of your *Souldiers* (as being much disheartened and dejected) he be encouraged; therefore in such *Cases* it may not be amiss to *intrench* your *Army*, and there to wait for some better opportunity to get away; giving it out in your *Army*, that your present so doing is out of some *design* you have in hand, which will also amuse your *Enemy*. But why is all this expressed, seeing there is none that will take upon them such a *Command* as the *General* of an *Army*, (or of the *Cavalry*) who is not better verst in things of this *nature*, both by Reading and Experience, than any *Author* can be; and therefore lest I might justly incurr the like *censure*, as that *Philosopher* did, who would needs Read a *Military Lecture* to *Alexander* the Great, (who was *Chief* in that *Profession*) shall Conclude this *Part*, (if not too much already) and proceed to the other remaining Parts of our *Method*; leaving the *Reader* to peruse other * *Authors*, for his further satisfaction as to this particular.

* *As Mr. Rob. Ward in his Animadversions of War, and Mr. John Cruso in his Military Instructions for the Cavalry.*

Of Encamping.

Of Encamping.

SEveral *Authors* have their various *Methods* in laying down *Rules* for this part of the *Art Military*; as also *Figures* after the *Antient* and *Modern* manner in *Forrign* parts, to which the *Reader* is refer'd: That which is mentioned in the following *lines*, being only some General *Rules*, with some few *Observations*, extracted out of some late *Authors*, and from Discourse of *Military* Persons, who were Observers of things of this Nature.

General Rules for a Campe.

First, It hath been observed that the *Quartering* of an *Army* doth belong to the *Commissary General* and *Lord Marshal*, from whom directions are given to the *Quart. mast. General*, who allots the *Quarters* accordingly. They are to have a care of two things principally (especially in an *Enemies Country*, and more especially if he be neer with any considerable *Force*) First, For *Scituation*, that it be able to defend (with little hazzard) the *Army*. And Second, For the *Accommodations*, chiefly for *Water* and *Shelter* (in relation to the *Cavalry*,) as also for all other *Provisions*.

When the *Army* is drawn up in *Battalia*, upon the place chosen by the aforesaid *Officers* for their *Encamping*; the *Quarter-master General* (having received Directions from the said *Officers*) allots the *stations* of Ground for every particular *Regiment*; and the *Quarter-master* of each *Regiment*, is to *line* out every particular *Troopes station* in that *Regiment*, every *Troop* after the *Field Officers*, according to their *Seniority*. Whilst this is doing, the *Lord Marshal*, with the *Serjeant Majors* and *Scout-masters*, are (upon their view) to take notice of what *Avenues* there are, whereby the *Enemy* may make his Approches to the *Camp*, & where the most suspected places are, there to appoint *double Guards* both of *Horse* and *Foot*, for the securing of the *Army*, whilst the *Intrenckments* are making. Before the principal

principal Works of the *Camp* are to be raised, there must be *Redouts* speedily made upon all such *Avenues*, to lodge those *Out-guards* in; and for the same purpose, the *Pioneers* and *Souldiers*, are to make what speed possibly may be: These *Redouts* are to be made in Greatness, as the place may require either a great or lesser *Guard*, or according to the danger that that place may be suspected to afford. But upon the chiefest *Passage* of all, there ought to be a *Sconce*, or two *Redouts* raised, the which may be either 4 *square*, or *Triangular*; the *one* being raised upon one side of the Way, the *other* somewhat wide on the other side of the Way, with the *point* or *corner* of the Work towards the *Enemies Approches*, by reason more hands may be brought for the defence thereof, by giving Fire upon the *Enemy*, from the 2 sides which make the *Angle* or *point*. Whilst these *fortifications* are raising, and before the *Camp* is *intrenched*, the *front* of the *Army* is to be *Palizadoed*, with *stakes* headed with *iron* at both ends, about 5 *foot* long, and to be stuck slope-wise into the Ground, the upper end not above brest-high, and within a foot one of another; these will keep off both *Horse* and *Foot*, if they should break through the *Guards*. As soon as the *intrenchment* of the *Camp* is raised and finished, those *Palizadoes* are to be pulled up and reserved for future *service*. Sometimes *Redouts* have been raised within the *Camp* within *Musquet* shot one of another, for the better securing of it. The *Horse Guards* are within the out-most *Redouts*, but their *Sentinels* are placed beyond the farthest Works, and beyond the *Foot Sentinels*; which last, are alwayes placed some distance from the Works upon the *Avenues*, that they may give the *Alarum* upon all occasions, and so to Retreat into the *works*, if followed by the *enemy*.

If an *Army* have such an *advantage* to be *quartered* neer some great *River*, that may be of defence sufficient to protect the *rear* of the said *quarters*, then the *intrenchment* would be soon finished, and much the stronger, in regard the whole power of the *Army* is but to make resistance one way. But if an *Enemy* should happen to be *incamped* upon a *plain*, so as the *Enemy* may make his *approches* upon any *side* thereof, the *Form* of it must be far otherwise, and the strength of it the greater. When an *Enemy* can gain no *advantage*, but to come upon the *face* of the *Camp* only, then a small *ditch* of 8 or 9 *foot* broad, and 6 or 7 *foot deep*, the *Rampier* or *Brest-work* accordingly, will serve; for there will need no better *defence*, but to keep off their *Horse*, and to damp their Bullets, the *Army* being more then sufficient to defend the *Works* from *scaling*. The highest part of the Ground in the *Camp*, is most fittest to plant the *Ordnance* upon to scour the *plains* before the *Trenches*. Sometimes *Armies* have been Fortified in a *Wood* neer some great *River*, and instead of *intrenching* of it, they have cut down the great *Trees* and made sufficient *Barricadoes* both against *Horse* and *Foot*, being a very speedy and cheap way, and wonderful secure.

But what hath been spoken concerning the *Scituation* and *Accommodation* of a *Camp*, is not sufficient, unless there be a good *Consideration* had, how to have *Supplies* of *Ammunition* and *Provisions* both for *Horse* and *Foot*, as also of *Recruits* if need be; and how those may be brought to the *Camp* without damage from the *Enemy*, who will not be wanting to use his uttermost endeavour to hinder the same. Therefore one thing is absolutely necessary, that is, to leave no *Enemies Garrison* in your *rear*, for if any such be, and the *Enemy* in the *Van*, then no *Provisions* can securely be brought; and if you be not in a Condition to make good your *Retreat*, or to *Fight*, or to compel your *enemy* to an Engagement (who will avoid it as much as may be, especially if he have *intelligence* of the state and Condition of your *Army*) then is the *Army*, through this *over-sight*, brought into a *Trap*, for its own Confusion, which once had like to have been the *Fate* of the famous *Hanibal* (whilst he was in the *Roman Territories*) who through the misunderstanding of the Name of the place given to his *Guides*, he was brought into such a *Trap*, that had not his *Head* been better then his *Hands*, the *War* there had been at an end, and all his *Glory* and *Conquests* buried in such an *Over-sight*.

Thus far, concerning *Antient* and *Forreign Encampings*, of which you may receive farther satisfaction in Mr. *Wards Animadversions of War*, where are several *Figures* also for *Encamping*: Now we shall mention something in relation to *Quartering*, as hath been observed to have been practised in our late *English Wars*.

The *Orders* for *Quartering*, hath been by Command of the *General* (with the Advice of the General Officers) given to the *Quarter-master General*, and from him have the *Quarter-masters* of the *Regiments* received them, which if they were to *quarter* at large, (no *Enemy* being neer) then the *Horse* quarter in the *Van* and *Flanks* of the *Army*, in the adjacent *Villages*, and there kept *Guards* and *Scouts*, whereby to gain timely *Intelligence*, that they might not be surprized by the *Enemy* in their *Quarters*. For it hath been observed, that there hath been little or no *Intrenchments* made by either the *King* or *Parliaments Armies*, during these *Wars*, as to their *Head Quarters*, although some of their *Armies* have quartered long in a place *; unless it were before some *Besieged* place: The *English* not having patience to under-go such a work, but rather be upon *Action*; both *Armies* having been industrious that way, insomuch that it was a matter of *Admiration* in *Forreign Nations*, that there should be two *Battels* Fought in *One Year* amongst us, and yet both sides so be in a Condition to take the *Field* again as soon as the season required, (after good Advice taken, and Concluded of what *Designes* to be managed) So that the Care and Labour (antienly used) about *Encampings*, hath been altogether neglected: One *Reason* its supposed, was, because both *Armies* Quartered still in a plentiful *Country* for *Provisions*) so that although they had *Suttlers* amongst them, yet the *Provisions* furnished by them, was not sufficient for an *Army* one day, insomuch that sometimes a pound of *Bread* hath not been to be had amongst them for so much *Silver*; and the reason hath been, because the *Armies* seldom Quartered in the *Fields*, but in *Towns* and *Villages*, where the *Souldiers* wanted no Provisions: And when the *Armies* did *Quarter* in the *Fields*, it hath been accidental; so that the *Sutlers* having no Notice thereof, *Provisions* could not be made by them, and some want there hath been.

* *The Earl of Essex Quartered near two Months at Tame in Oxfordshier, without any Intrenchments where his Army by Sickness mouldred to nothing.*

But one principal thing hath been observed to have been much practised amongst both *Armies* and *Parties*, and that was an industrious endeavour to gain *Intelligence* of the state and Condition of each *Army*, and accordingly to have managed their *Designs*; and that *Party* that was the most industrious that way, and was vigillant to prevent all his adverse *Designes*, was for the most part, the most fortunate.

Concerning *Military Lawes*, it hath been observed, that those *States* and *Kingdoms* that have raised *Armies*, have alwayes appointed such for the better Governing of them: and when their *Camps* were *Intrenched*, they were then very useful (because of idleness comes no goodness) and are so still, although there be no such *Intrenchments*; some of what hath been the General or Chief *Heads* of the said *Lawes*, you will find in the First Part, in the *Levying of Men*.

Thus having given you in brief, the Heads of this Particular concerning *Encampings*, or *Quartering*, I shall leave you to some other *Authors* to be satisfied more fully, especially to Mr. *John Cruso* in his *Military Instructions for the Cavalry*.

Of Embattelling.

Of Embattelling.

THe Ordering or *Embattelling* an *Army* for to *Fight*, is the Chiefest of all *Military Actions*; and therefore before we come to Treat thereof, let us take Notice of some *Observations* mentioned in some Eminent *Authors*, that have been observed and Practised by *Generals* of *Armies*, before the Pitching of a *Battel*.

First,

First, To Consider the strength of the *Army* (under their *Command*) both of *Horse* and *Foot*, and whether the *Souldiers* be *Novices* or *Experienced*; and then to compare your *Enemies* to it, according to the best *Intelligence* that can be gained of it.

2. The *Country* wherein you are to *March* and *Encamp* or *Quarter*, and so to *Embattel* in, if occasion require, Whether it be *Champane* or *Inclosed*, *Hilly* or *Plain*: The *Soyl*; *Rocks*, *Stony*, or without: Whether *Woody*, *Boggs*, or plenty or scarcity of *Rivers*, and whether great and *Navigable*, or small and *Fordable*.

3. The extent of the *Ground* you are necessitated to *Embattle* in, and what distances you can have for the same, whereby you may proportion the same accordingly.

4. If your *Enemy* surmount you in *Horse*, then endeavour to gain the *Inclosures*; if you exceed him therein, then make Choice of the *Champane*; and endeavour withal to gain the *Advantage* both of *Sun* and *Wind*, which whosoever gets, hath much the odds of the other; but the *Wind* is the Chief, because of the Smoke that is made by both Sides, will annoy them much, who have not the benefit of the *Wind*.

5. Gain the Advantage of the *Hills*, either *Natural* or *Artificial*, for the Planting your *Ordnance* upon, to *Flanke* your *Army* and to annoy the *Enemy*; the which must be strongly *Guarded* and *Intrenched*, if possibly it may be: For its the first thing the *Enemy* will seek to surprise, if he can, knowing the Consequence thereof; or will be made to know it, if he make his *Army* to approch within their reach.

6. Care must be taken that all *impediments* of the *Army* (as *Carts*, *Waggons*, *Carriages*, *&c.*) be placed in the *Reer*; and yet with some advantage, as to make some use of them for the *imploying* of the same, which will be a great strengthning to the *Battel*. Or if there be any *Natural* Strength, as *Rivers*, *Woods*, *Hedges*, *Ditches*, *&c.* for to Defend the *Reer*; then those *Carriages*, *&c.* to be placed on the *Flanks*. But if there be no Commodious place to be found to safe-guard your *Army*, then with as much speed as may be, imploy your *Pioneers* to intrench the *Reer* and *Flanks*, and *line* the *Trenches* with *Musquets* and *Pikes*; or if you have not time to do that, then be sure there be a good *Reer-Guard* of *Musquets* and *Pikes*, that may *impale* both the *Flanks* and *Reer*, and serve for a Reserve, if well Ordered.

7. Order your *Battel* in sundry *Divisions*, and in such a manner as that one *Division* or *Battalia* may Releeve another, that may be over-powred by the *Enemy*; There having been apparent great *Errors* in those that have been wanting herein, both to the loss of their *Army* and *Honour*. Many have used to Frame their *Battels* of one entire *Front*, which if once broken, (they having no Reserves) they have been *Routed* and *vanquished*; but this is accounted a madness by most. Others have not only apprehended, but also by *Experience* have found it to be safe, to Range *Three* several *Battels*; the *first* that Fronts the *Enemy*, to be the largest; the *second*, less then that, ordered at some distance from the *first*, with some *spaces* between, for the *first* to fall into (if disordered) and there to *range* themselves in *Order* again, or else to *imbody* themselves in the *second*. The *third Battel* in the *Reer* of all, and to be some of the best men, who if the *two first* should be broken and put into disorder, may find a place to Retreat unto (there being *spaces* left to fall into) and draw up again in the *Reer* of the *Third Battel*, who being fresh men, will put the *Enemy* to a stand; and possible they may find the *Enemy* in some disorder upon the *Pursuit* of the *two* former *Battels*, whereby they have an opportunity to wrest the *Victory* out of the hands of the *Conquerors*. It is observed of the *Turks*, that they never put their *Janizaries* (which are their best Souldiers) in the *Front*, but make use of them for *Reserves*, by which practise, they have been very successful.

8. Concerning

8. Concerning the Enlarging or Strengthning your *Front*, much muſt be left to the diſcretion of the *General*, who muſt be guided by Opportunity, both of time, place, and perſons.

9. There is no ſmall *Diſputes* among *Authors* (and hath been amongſt *Commanders*) concerning the placing of *Battels*, whether upon low or high Grounds: Somewhat might be ſaid on both ſides; For the high Grounds to ſhoot from thence, it hath been obſerved by many, to be with great uncertainty; on the other-ſide, what is ſent from thence, hath the more force: More Reaſons on either ſide may be found amongſt *Authors*.

10. *Judgement* and *Policy* muſt be uſed in the Ordering of your *Battel*, that the *Enemy* may find ſome ſudden and unexpected *Stratagem*, which will not only keep him from purſuing of an Advantage, but many times cauſe the *Scale* to turn; for by that means ſome diſorder will be found amongſt his *Forces*, which if the opportunity be not let ſlip, will make him ſee his Error when it is too late. Some have Compounded the *Wings* of their *Battel*, of their ableſt Men, and the *Battel* it ſelf of the Meaneſt, with ordering the laſt to Charge their *Enemy*, and if they were over-powred, then to make their Retreat to the Reſt of the other *Diviſions*, through the *ſpaces* appointed for that end, which the *Enemy* perceiving, followes, (not perceiving the drift thereof) and is found in diſorder, and that between the two *Wings* (where your beſt men were) ſome of which Charging them on both the *Flanks*, puts that *Battalia* in danger. Thus *Scipio* Ordered his *Forces* againſt *Asdrubal*, after he had tranſported the *War* from the *Roman*, to the *Carthaginian* Territories.

11. Proviſion muſt be made of ſuch *Inſtruments*, as may hinder the *Enemies Horſe*, and annoy his *Foot Forces*; but withal great Care and Circumſpection muſt be uſed, as to the uſing of them: The *Swines Pike*, an Inſtrument of about 4 foot long, about the bigneſs of a *Pike*, headed with a ſharp Spear at both ends, hath been antiently uſed by our King *Henry* the 5th in his *Wars* in *France* at the *Battel* of *Agin-Court*, which his *Archers* then made uſe of; and ſince revived by the King of *Sweden* in the late *German Wars*, which his *Muſqueteers* uſed, carrying them at their *Girdles*, and as ſoon as they had Fired on the *Enemy*, they ſtuck them down ſlope-wiſe, and ſo wheel'd off, which prevented the *Horſe* from falling in amongſt them. There are alſo other *Inſtruments* to be made uſe of, as the *Caltrope* and *Powder-potts*, &c.

There are divers ſmall *Field-pieces*, which are to be placed before the *Front Diviſions*, which after once or twice diſcharging, are to be drawn within the *Diviſions* of the *Main Battel*, and are to be placed before the *Battel* of Succour; ſo that if the formoſt *Battel* be driven to Retreat into the ſpaces of the *Battel* of Succour, then are they ready to give Fire upon the *Enemy* at his next approches. Theſe *Field-pieces* being there placed, may be drawn upon the *Flanks*, ready to give Fire upon the *Enemy*, when he ſhall Charge the *Flanks* either with *Horſe* or *Foot*. And as your *Field-pieces* may annoy your *Enemy*, you cannot but expect the like from them, it being an unavoidable evil, therefore you are to make choice of the beſt and ſafeſt way of prevention; The firſt is, by ordering of your *Files* thin (either *Horſe* or *Foot*:) The ſecond is, to ſend forth with all ſpeed, a *Party* of *Horſe*, with ſome *Dragoones*, or *Shot*, to ſeize upon their *Ordnance*; and this they are to do with Celerity, by which the *Enemy* will be hindred from Shooting more than once; for they being in Contention, for the gaining and defending the *Ordnance*, will hinder their Execution.

As for the *Forlorn Hope*, when they are wearied and beaten back by the *Enemy*, they are to Retreat through the ſpaces left betwixt the *Battalions*, & there they are to order themſelves in a readineſs to iſſue out at the *Flanks*, and aſſault the *Enemy* when they are at *puſh*

of

of *Pike*, upon one of their *Flanks*. There would be some selected *persons* appointed with *Hand Granadoes* and *Fire-pots*, to cast them amongst the *Enemy*. There may be divers *Monster-pieces* so placed, that they may shoot *Granadoes* and *Fire-balls*, from the Space between the *Main Battel*, and *Battel* of Succour; and convoy them over the Heads of your Foremost *Battel*, amongst the *Enemies* that are approching to Charge you.

If your *Army* be Compounded of divers *Nations*, so that some of them are not to be Trusted, those whose Fidelities are questionable, must alwayes be placed foremost against the *Enemy*, and your most Confiding men behind them, next unto them; so that having the *Enemy* before, and a strong *Battalia* behind, they must of necessity either *Fight* or *perish*. But if your *Army* consists of divers *Nations*, that you were confident of their *Valour* and *Fidelity*, the best way were to order them all in one *Front*, so that the *Jealousie* of one anothers forwardness and Valour, might breed such an *emulation* in them, that they would do their best to exceed one the other in *prowesse*. The King of *Sweden* made use of his Policy many times, and it stood him in great stead: The same did *Mounsieur de Lautree* against the *Emperours Army* in the *Kingdom* of *Naples*; his *Army* consisting of divers *Nations* (as *French*, *Gascoignes*, *Almanes*, *Switzers* and *Italians*) because none of them should be disparaged, he placed them all in one *Front*; for he knew of their great Emulation, that one *Nation* desired to be thought more Valiant than the other.

Thus having Discoursed something, relating in *General* to the whole *Army*, we shall now mention a few things, relating in *Particular* to the *Cavalry*, how they ought to be placed, as several *Authors* mention: And in this they conclude, That there ought to be great care and circumspection had, First, in ordering them into convenient *Battaliaes*, or proportionable *Divisions*, that they be neither too big, nor too small: Then in the Second place, they are to be Ranged upon each *Wing* of the *Foot divisions*, 50 or 60 paces distant from the *Flanks* of the *Army*, left by their unrulines, or disorderly Retreating, they press upon your *Foot Divisions*, and disorder them.

Many times the *Horse Troopes* are divided into Six *Battaliaes*, whereof Three placed upon one *Wing*, and Three upon the other; The Foremost *Battaliaes* are to consist of as many more as the Second, and the Third is to be the least of all: As, suppose the Number to be 4000 *Horse*, the two foremost *Battels* or *Divisions*, upon each *Wing*, are to consist of 1000; the two Second *Battels* of 500 each; and the two last, or *Reer*, to consist of 300 each; the other 400 to be placed where they may be ready to perform any sudden *Command* of the *General*: There ought to be a good distance betwixt each of these *Battels*.

If your *Horse Troopes* should be too weak for the *Enemy*, you must *line* their *Files* with *Shot*, and also have in a readiness, certain extraordinary *Pikes*, to assist the *Horse* and *Shot*, if they should be over-powred. The *Horse* are to shelter themselves in the *Reer* of the *Foot Battaliaes*, until such time as the *Enemies Ordnance* are surprized; For the *Horse* are subject to more danger thereof, then the *Foot* can be, in regard they are lower, and a *Cannon-shot* is subject to Mount: The surest way to disorder the *Enemies Forces* in a *Fight*, is to Charge their *Battaliaes* either with *Horse* or *Foot*, (or both) on the *Flanks* and *Reer*; and then to have certain *Troopes* of *Horse* ready Formed in manner of a *Wedge Battel*, that shall endeavour to enter the Point of the *Enemies Battel*, and so disorder their *Ranks*.

Note, That upon disordering of the *Enemy*, the *Main Battle* is not to follow the *Pursuite*; but certain *Troopes* of each *Wing* (some of whose *Officers* are to have a *Sign* given them, when to perform the same) both of *Horse* and *Foot*, are to pursue the *Victory*, so, as the *Enemy* may not *Ralley* again.

If the *Enemy* have any Peeces of *Ordnance* in the *Reer* of their *Army*; if their *Battaliaes* suddenly divide themselves, you are to do the like, for be sure that they intend to discharge upon

upon you: If the *Enemy* should endanger the taking of your *Baggage*, by no means suffer any of your *Troopes*, either *Horse* or *Foot*, (confusedly) to run to Relieve the same; but advisedly send a sufficient strength to perform that Service, when the *Enemy* shall be most busie in ransacking the *Waggons*, whereby they may be easily vanquished. And where the *Enemy* comes most potently, and furiously upon any part of your *Army*, be sure to Discharge your *Ordnance* at the thickest of them, and being thereby disperst, let some *Troopes* of *Horse* Charge them, taking the Advantage of their *disorders*. And if the *Enemies Horse* Charge any of your *Foot Battalias* in the midst of it, be ready to give way to them, by *opening* to the Right and Left; and as they pass thorow, Charge them upon either *Flank*, by which means they will have the worst of it.

Thus having briefly related something concerning the *Exercise* of the *Cavalry*, from the first entring into this useful and necessary *Profession*, to the *Close* of a *Battel*, which possibly may decide the Controversie, for the present; which if so, then the *Souldiers* (as *victors*) ought to submit themselves to those whom they *Served*, whether as to their *Continuance* or *Disbanding*; if the last be required, let them Content themselves with their *Arreares*, and take to some honest *Employment*, which will make them as *Eminent* in *Fame*, as the greatest *Victory* they ever obtained. As for the *Figures* of *Instruments of War*, and *Forms* of *Battels*, I have omitted for the present, for several *Reasons* best known to my self, leaving the *Reader* to the *Authors* mentioned in this *Tract*, (and others) for satisfaction therein; for no one *Book*'s Reading will make a *Scholler* fit for the *University*; nor for the *Inns of Court*, to be a Professed *Lawyer*: The *Art Military* being the Highest *Profession*, as to the Preservation of our *Countries* (*non nobis nati Sumus*) wherein our *Estates*, *Liberties*, and *Lives* are included, we ought to be more studious thereof, and Exercised therein; which hath *eminently* and *worthily* advanced the Practitioners thereof (especially such as have been strict *Observers* of all the *Rules* belonging thereunto) And therefore shall Conclude this *Abstract*, being but an *A.B.C.* or at the most a *Primmer*; hoping that what is herein contained, may be somewayes advantagious to the *Reader*; which if so, I have my

FINIS.

MILITARIE DISCIPLINE:

OR THE YOUNG

ARTILLERY-MAN.

VVherein is discourſed and Shown

the *Poſtures* both of *Musket* and *Pike*, the Exacteſt way, &c.

Together with the Exerciſe of the Foot in their *Motions*, with much variety: As alſo, diverſe and ſeveral *Formes* for the *Imbatteling* ſmall or greater *Bodies*, demonſtrated by the Number of a ſingle *Company*, with the *Reducements*: Very neceſſary for all ſuch as are Studious in the *Art Military*.

Whereunto is alſo added, the *Poſtures* and *Beneficial Vſe* of the *Half-Pike*, joyned with the *Musket*. With the way to draw-up the *Swediſh Brigade*.

As alſo, MARS *his Triumph*.

And in this laſt *Edition* is added,

ſome brief Inſtructions *for the Exerciſing of the* Cavalry, *or* Horſe-Troopes.

The Sixth Edition, Newly Reviſed and Enlarged,

By

Colonel *William Barriffe*.

Pſal. 144. 1.

Bleſſed be the Lord my ſtrength, which teacheth my hands to War, and my Fingers to Fight.

London, Printed by *Gartrude Dawſon*, 1661.

34.
11. 30
122.




ARMA PACIS FVLCRA

TO THE

RIGHT HONORABLE, *ALGERNON*,

Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord of the *Honours* of *Cockermouth*, and *Petworth*, Lord *Percy*, *Lucy*, *Poynings*, *Fitzpaine*, *Bryan*, and *Latimer*, Knight of the Noble Order of the *Garter*, Lord High Admirall of *England*, *Ireland*, and *Wales*, and of the *Dominions* and *Iles* of the ſame, of the Town of *Calis*, and the *Marches* of the ſame; of *Normandy*, *Gaſcoigne*, and *Aquitaine*, Lord General of the Navy, and Seas, of the ſaid Kingdoms of *England* and *Ireland*, one of the Lords of his *Majeſties* moſt Honourable Privie Counſel, and Lord Lievtenant of *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, and *Weſtmerland*.

Right Honourable,

THe *Glory* of the *Meridian Sun* is the more reſplendently ſet off by the *foile* and *darkneſſe* of a *Shadow*; which is a perpetual *follower* of his *light*: as my *ambition* in all humble Service, is devoted to your Lordſhip. The memory of ſo many *Heroical Anceſtors*, as (in all *Ages*) have enobliz'd your *potent Family*; together with their *Martial* and *Renowned Atchievements*, do for ever ſtand recorded in the *Book* of *Honour* and *Fame*. And that (were occaſion fairly offered) your Honour hath *Spirit* and *Bravery* enough, in a *Military emulation*, to arrive up to the height of their *glory*: Your conſtant and noble *Deportments* (as well in your private *carriage*, as of late in your publick *Triumph*, when you were *inſtalled* into that moſt *Noble Order* of the *Garter*) do moſt evidently preſage of you. This as it hath attracted all eyes and expectations; So hath it encouraged my *low ambition* (amongſt the reſt) to eſteem your Honour a fit Patron for a Book of this Nature. Your *innate* and *inbred Vertues*, together with that *Courteſie*, *Nobleneſs* and *Affability*, (the inſeparable *companions* of *anciently deſcended Honour*) ſpeak you ſo eaſie of acceſs, that my *Young Artillery-man* deſpaireth not of acceptance and admiſſion to kiſs the hands of your *Great Lordſhip*. The *firſt Fruits* it is of my weak *endeavours*, and the experiments of my private obſervations. Such as it is, my humble Requeſt to your good *Lordſhip*, that out of the accuſtomed *freedom* and *goodneſs* of your *nature*, you would be pleaſed to daign *acceptance* of it: Even the *acceptance* and *patronage* of this Sixth *Edition*, as you pleaſed to do of the Five former. Which as it may be an ample teſtimony of the continuance of your *Honourable Favours* to the *Authour*, So this my *Dedication* ſhall give *aſſurance* to the World of the continuance and redoubling of my former *devotions* and *obligations*; and how well I was pleaſed that ſo great a *Peer* vouchſafed the *Patronage* of the former. And I withal beſeech your *Honour*, to give *pardon* unto that *preſumption*, which hath proceeded from *devotion*. I confeſs it an *ambition* in me, to *ſoar ſo loftily* in my *Dedication*; But as *Alexander*, ſometimes, refuſed not a mean *Preſent* of *Fruit* from the hands of a ſimple *Gardner*; ſo my hope is, your *Honour* will hold me excuſed for offering ſo *worthleſs* and *mean* a *Mite* to ſo *Great* and *Honourable* a *Perſonage*. Eſpecially, conſidering that the *ſubject* of my *Diſcourſe* is intended for the *bettering of the Souldiers knowledge of the Trained Bands*; and that your *Lordſhip* is one of his Majeſties *Lievtenants*, it may prove a good *inducement* to your *Honours* liking (who are known to be ſo great a *lover* of your *Country*) to *vouchſafe* the *Protection* and *Patronage* of theſe my endeavours, whereby I ſhall for ever ſtand *obliged* in all *humility*, and remain,

Your Honours moſt humble and devoted Servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To the Right VVorſhipful, Sir *Ralph Boſvile*, Knight: Captain of a Select Company of *Foot*, in the County of KENT.

You may be pleaſed to remember (*Noble* Sir) *how often you have* importun'd *me to write* ſomething (*by way of inſtruction*) *for the* bettering of the Judgements of ſuch young Gentlemen and Souldiers, whoſe minds ſtand this way affected. *And although* (*for my own part*) *I can better mannage the* Pike *than the* Pen; *yet that I might not be wanting in all acknowledgement, I have taken upon me to ſatisfie your Requeſt, which ſhall ever carry the* Authority *of a* Command with it. *Expect not* (*I beſeech you* Sir) *to find my* Book *ſet forth with* fine Phraſes, *nor to be dekt with* Hiſtorical Diſcourſes *of* Forreign Fought Battels, *this being the only thing by me intended in it, to ſet forth the* Exact Grounds *of this our* Modern Diſcipline, *for the* Exerciſing of a Foot Company. *Nor is it to be eſteemed a* ſmall Advancement *to the Knowledge of the* Art Military; *even to have taught this* little, *ſeeing it muſt be confeſſed to have been one of the chiefeſt* Means, *to make* Philip *from a* poor Prince, *to become a* powerful Monarch; *and his Son* Alexander, a mighty Conqueror. *I mean his* exact obſervance *of the* true Grounds of Military Diſcipline, *which beginneth with the* Inſtruction *of a* private Company.

Adde hereunto (*which I have alſo touch'd upon*) *his frequent* Practiſe, *and inuring of his* Souldiers to the Uſe of Armes; *together with* his well ordering *and* contriving *the ſeveral* Forms *and* Figures *of his* Battels. *Alwayes* (*by the way*) *obſerving how to make his* advantage, *either from the* Time, *the* Number, *or the* Place, *or ſome other ſuch like* opportunity. *But not to cloy your* quainter Ears *with* impertinent Diſcourſes, *who are not only a* Maſter of Armes, *but of* Arts; *alſo a Gentleman that hath been* Captain *either over* Horſe *or* Foot, *for the ſpace of theſe laſt* forty years; *and from your very* infancy brought *up in the very* boſome *of the* Muſes; *So that now you are become a* Neſtor *for* Counſel, *an* Apollo *for* Muſick, *and a* Mars *for the* Field. *But leſt by Acknowledging your* worthy parts (*your* native modeſty *being ſuch, that you never love to hear your own* due deſerved praiſes) *I purchaſe a* Frown *for a* Recompence; *I forbear. My humble Deſire now is, That your* Worſhip *will be pleaſed to Accept of my* well meaning: *And although I be wanting in* Artful Expreſſions, *yet to reſt aſſured that I am yours in all* humble *and* hearty Affection, *and ſhall ſtill continue*

Yours,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To all the VVorthy Colonels, Lievtenant Colonels, Majors, and Captains of the City of LONDON.

Especially unto those that are, and continue Members of the *Artillery-Garden*.

The Right Worshipful, PHILIP SKIPPON, Esquire, Serjeant Major General of all the Forces of *London*, and Captain of that Ancient and Worthy Society Exercising Armsin the *Artillery-Garden*.

Red Regiment.
Colonel *Thomas Atkins*, Alderman.
Lievtenant Colonel *Rand. Mainwaring*.
Serjeant Major *William Tucker*.
1. Capt. *William Tompson*.
2. Capt. *Edward Hooker*.
3. Capt. *Laurence Bromfield*.
4. Capt *Rich. Hunt*.
Col. Captain, *George Mosse*.

White Regiment.
Colonel *Isaac Pennington*, Lord Major of *London*.
Lievt. Colonel, *Robert Davis*.
Serjeant Major, *Thomas Chamberlaine*.
1. Cap. *Thomas Player*.
2. Cap. *Christopher Whichcott*.
3. Cap. *William Mimbie*.
4. Cap. *Joseph Vaughan*.
Col. Cap. *Richard Venner*.

Yellow Regiment.
Colonel *John Wollaston*, Knight and Alderman.
Lievt. Colonel. *Ralph Harrison*.
Serjeant Major, *Richard Cuthbert*.
1 Cap *Robert Tichbourne*.
2. Cap. *Walter Lee*.
3. Cap *William Huchcock*.
Col. Cap. *John Brett*.

Blew Regiment.
Colonel *Thomas Adams*, Alderman.
Lievt. Colonel, *Francis West*.
Serjeant Major *William Underwood*.
1. Cap. *Edward Bellamie*.
2 Cap. *John Booker*.
3. Cap. *George Dipford*.
4. Cap *VVilliam Coleson*.
Col. Cap. *Edward Clegatt*.

Green Regiment.
Colonel *John VVarner*, Alderman.
Lievt. Col. *Matthew Foster*.
Serjeant Major, *Owen Roe*.
1. Capt. *Matthew Shepyard*.
2. Capt. *Francis Roe*.
3. Capt. *Robert Mainwaring*.
Col. Capt. *Thomas Juxon*.

Orange Regiment.
Colonel *John Towse*, Alderman.
Lievt. Col. *Rowland VVilson*.
Serjeant Major, *Nathaniel Camfield*.
1. Capt. *Thomas Gower*.
2. Capt. *Richard VVollaston*.
3 Capt. *Miles Pettie*.
Colonel Captain,

Right worthy *Colonels*, and *Captains*:

ALthough it is commonly found, that every man by a kind of Affection, love to magnifie and most to extol those things, whereunto he finds his mind most naturally inclined. Yet all such partiality and private affection laid apart, the love to my Country gave the first heat unto this Work: And the rather I was induced thereunto, because I held my self obliged, that my small Rivolet ought to make an Acknowledgment, or Retribution to the Ocean, whence my poor Streames were first dirived. And therefore in the first place to your selves, who are the *Colonels*, *Lievtenant Colonels*, *Majors*, and *Captains* over the *Trained Bands*, and are not only the choicest Flowers of our City, but also of the *Artillery-Garden*, unto whom I was first beholding for the *rules* and *rudiments* of my *Military instruction*. And therefore, Right worthy *Commanders* & *Captains* accept of this my acknowledgement; neither suffer any misconstruction to pass upon it, or to impute it otherwise than to my *gratitude*. For this *Sixth* publishing of my worthless *Work*, I hope I shall give none of you offence, by reason I know it is your *earnest desire* that (if it might be) *all his Majesties faithful Souldiers* and loving Subjects, might be made perfect, both in the *Practick* and *Theorie*, and all other *necessary requisites* pertinant to the *Art Military*. This is daily manifested unto us, by your *frequent* bearing of *Arms* on *General dayes*, whereby you not only give a *powerful* and *good example* to others, warming the *sterility* of the *coldest affections*; but like so many *studs of imbellishment*, you garnish and adorn the *body of our Militia*. Persist then, *worthy Captains*, in so brave an intendment, and *immortalize your Posterities*, by ingraving your *Names* in the *Book of Honour*, who neither want *Skill* nor *Courage*, to *merit* with those, whose *legions* have filled the *Trumps* of *Fame*. But I have soared beyond the modest bounds of your *Deportments*, for which I crave your pardons: by which you will further endear

Yours, WILL. BARRIFFE.

TO THE READER:

Courteous Reader,

ALthough I have set forth this small *Treatise*, principally aiming at the benefit of my *Country*, yet I know that some will not be *wanting*, to disparage both the *Workman* and the *Work*, the matter and manner: For such is the *misery* of the *times*, and the malice of men, that the frothy Depraver, shall *find* (in some men) an opinion of his *worth*, by detracting from other mens merits: For mine own part I ingeniously confess, that amongst many in our own *Ground*, I was the meanest, both for Skill and Scholler-ship, to have undertaken a Work of this Nature; but being continually prest by my Acquaintance, some for the *Postures*, others for the *Motions*, and by some again for *Figures*, I being alwayes willing to further men this way affected; granted, and gave to some men Copies, and suffered others to peruse my Notes, which I had placed in an old waste Paper Book. But at length, Time, and mens Tongues together, had begot an opinion, that I had writ a *Book*. Which was so freely divulged, that I was questioned by some to know when it would come forth of the *Presse*, when as yet I had not the least *conceit* to put *Pen* to *Paper* tending to this purpose: So that being engaged something in my Credit, and withal requested by a Right Worthy *Knight*, then my *Captain*, who had power to *Command*: And lastly, being thrust on by the importunity of some of my familiar Friends; I have put my *Card* amongst the rest into the *bunch* to be shuffled, not much caring where it be *dealt*, so it be not mixt with the ——— If any Carp at the *plainnesse* of the *stile*, I conceive that it fits best with the Subject; works of this Nature chiefly requiring it: If such, whom opinion hath made proud, and custom captious, shall happen to be my Supervisors, to them I say, That it is easier to find faults than mend them; and to mend *Books* than to *make* them. But to the *Courteous* and *Skilful*, whose better parts will yield better Fruits, I shall request their favourable Censure, and that with their Judgements they will mend what by over-sight I have mist. For which their *loves*, I shall ever stand *engaged*: And remain,

Their thankful Friend and Servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFFE.

To my worthy Friend the Author.

HE that commends, too poorly doth dispraise,
And those good parts he so commends, betrayes:
A silent admiration is the best,
When words fall short, whereby should be expreſt,
What we conceive; for faint and bare Commends
Meant for a praiſe, miſs utterly their ends.

Ralph Boſvile, Knight.

Ad Amicum ſuum ingenioſum, *Gulielmum Barriffe*, Authorem.

Zoilo venenatæ jaculari cuſpide Linguæ,
Nil valet; hic veniunt Pallas *&* Arma *ſimul.*
O quàm ſecurus Liber hic, qui Martis *&* Artis
Palladiæ *ſacro Numine tutus erit!*

To his much deſerving Friend the Author.

A Souldier? and a Scholler? who did ſee,
Mars and *Minerva* both in one agree?
Why come and ſee, loe here is one hath ſpent,
His time in *Mars*'s, and the *Muſes* Tent:
Both Say, and Do, how few can? but here (lo)
He that doth Say ſo much, can much more Do.
By's Practiſe, and his Precepts thou maiſt ſee,
And learn to know, and do as much as He.
What others get with pains, charge, hazard, harms,
Here may be learn'd with eaſe, the uſe of Armes.
Zoilus may catch and carp, now here, now there,
But thou't beyond his Tongue-ſhot, never fear;
Thou that doſt dread nor pikes, nor guns, nor ſwords,
Dread not the blaſts of barking *Momus* words.
Go on my Friend, and let there ſpring from our *Artillery Garden*, many ſuch a Flower.

Samuel Carleton,
Lievt, Colonel.

To my loving Friend the Author.

HOmer *eterniz'd is for Writing, what*
Achilles *and his* Myrmidons *did at*
The Siege of Troy, *I envy not his Fame,*
But needs muſt future Ages greatly blame,
If they forget to Memoriſe thee too,
That ſhow'ſt not what was done, but how to do.

Another of the ſame.

OUr *Author* now the Sixth time treads the *Stage,*
Of *Mars*, wherein he merits equipage
With any he, that Characteriz'd with Pen,
The neat'ſt Contrivements to Imbattle men.
Woe's me, or him, or that State that ſhall miſs,
A Brother, Friend, a *Man of War* like this.
This *Gardner*, that's adorned with more *flowers*
Of Diſcipline; then is the year with *hours.*

Rowland Gwin,
Lievtenant.

On his much Honored Friend the Author.

AS London (Englands *far-fam'd Emporie*)
In her brave Garden of Artillery;
With reaſon Glory may, becauſe therein
Is Exercis'd exacter Diſcipline,
By Motions and apt Firings, than is done
In any other place of Chriſtendom;
So may that Garden as deſervedly,
(Accompliſt Barriffe) *joy and boaſt of thee,*
Although here ſtil'd, The young Artillery Man,
Of thy abounding modeſty, yet can
Thy skill or courage thereby vailed be,
No more, than Sun-beams by a Tyffanie:
Why young? *Is't 'cauſe thou'lt ſtill a Learner be*
Even ſo muſt all that aim at Excellency;
New accidents, and expert mens direction,
Brings th' Art of War ſtill nearer to perfection.
'Tis ſaid great Alexander *wept, for that*
He no more Worlds could find to ſubjugate;
And yet if he before Oſtend *had been,*
He might have eaſier wept, than entred in;
Becauſe by late Experiments he'd find,
That Art, grown Univerſal, and refin'd.
The Art of Arts, which claims the Diadem,
As the prime means, to gain bright honours Gem.
And ſuch whereby the Romans *Sword acquir'd,*
The World its Monarchy, and ſo admir'd.
And fear'd, it made them known to be, that all
(*Beſides themſelves*) *they did* Barbarians *call.*
All which adds to thy worth, for tutering men
Therein by Poſtures, Motions, Voice, and Pen:
And in a way ſo plain, yet exquiſite,
And all compriſing that is requiſite.

For forming of Choice Squadrons, that thy merit,
Will to the end of time, renown inherit;
Because the skilful'st Leader can no more
Then teach men how to Fight (and march before)
With best advantage; yet saw I thee do
A Captains Office, and a Souldiers too,
In first Commanding what thou woula'st do; And
Being first in executing such Command
With such exact dexterity, as none
Could say thou cam'st short in perfection
To Forrign Disciplines, near or far,
Though daily train'd up in the Schooles of War.
Yet as th'art modest in thy Title, so
Th'art in displaying what thou treat'st of too,
For thou adorn'st not thy Book's Frontispiece
With glorious Titles *to endear its Price,*
As th' Art of War, *or* Souldiers Academy:
Nor more pretendest than a Company,
Or Squadrons exercise: *and yet a way*
To see a greater Body in Array
Thereby discover'st. Onwards then, and stead
Thy Nation, by supplying (at her need)
Thy Country with large Troopes *well disciplin'd.*
For which Occasion *will hereafter find*
A mean to Crown thy merit. *Whilst thy Friends*
Wish thy Designes *acquire their hop'd for ends.*

Ja: Haward, ex hospitio Graiensi, *Arm.*

To his much esteemed Friend, and fellow Souldier, the Author.

CRitick, Observe thy Distance, censure not,
Nor spend thy judgement like an Ideot
That nothing knows; If knowing, know thou then
Thou must be rank't amongst the envious men
If once thou dost attempt to contradict
The matter that this Book contains in it:
The Method's plain, not deckt with Complements,
Those frivolous, idle, needless supplements:
The substance ponderous is; no fond conceit
Affronts thee friend. With shame they shall retreat;
And so retreat, as not to Charge again
In Front, in Reer, or Flanks. Thou shalt disdain
All Formalists, that fain would Souldiers seem,
Who much expressive are; in Judgment green.

Andrew Wheatley. Ex hospitio Grai.

Ad Amicum Gulielmum Barriff.

YOung, and so old in *Marshal Discipline*?
Distrust will say, This work is none of thine.
But I that know it, will aver the same
To be thine own, and not anothers Fame.
A Noble *Souldier* scorns to be so base,
By others Worth to purchase his own Grace.
And such is *Barriffe*: What his *Book* doth speak,
It is his own: let Envie swell and break.

Amicus H. Peter.

An *Anagram* and *Acrostick* on his loving Friend, *Colonel*

Anagramma. } WILLIAM BARRYFFE.
I fill fame by War.

If Lilly, Campden, *and Learn'd* Udall's *Name*
Finds memory still, and fills the trump of Fame
In framing Rules for Youth, that might them teach
Learn'd Arts in tongues above the common reach:
Let then Wars rudiments, *that here are brought*
For England's *good, by none be set at nought*
And scorn'd: for they in time will make renown'd
Men studious in this Art, and their Acts crown'd
Endure: He that in War *will seek to gain,*
Be perfect must in all, and that retain.
Young though our Barriffe *be, yet this his* Book
Will speak him old, if well thereon you look;
All Postures *for the* Musket, *and the* Pike
Reformed are by him, and eke the like
Resin'd in Motion *all, they there do stand*
With Forms *and* Firings *framed to your hand.*
In Band *or in a* Regimental *way:*
Look here, and soon a Figure Form *you may:*
Love to his Country, and our Gardens *Fame,*
In time prevail'd with him, to let This same
Again to Press *be brought; O let not then*
Mad rage, rash censure of proud ignorant men
Be prevalent: but let the learn'd, the just,
And eke the noble: yea all those that must
Renowned be, and will gain Fame *by* War.
Regard what's good, forbear harsh doom: then far
Your Fame will flye, and we encourag'd shall
From Barriffs Young Artillery Man *seek all*
For honours Wreath: and to fill Fame *by* War,
Even here in England, *and abroad full far.*

Thomas Whitley, *Lievt.*

MILITARY DISCIPLINE:

OR,

The Young ARTILLERY Man.

CHAP. I.

Concerning Postures, and handling of Armes.

THE first Rudiments of education, wherewithall to enter young *Souldiers*, which desire to be instructed in that part of the *Art Military*, which concerneth the *Infantry*, (or *Foot-Souldiers*) ought to be *the well-managing and handling of their Armes*: which may easily be attained by frequent *Practice*, and the *Souldiers* thereby be brought to use them with *ease*, *safety*, and *delight*: where on the contrary (without *exercise*) the *easiest Armes* become not only troublesome burthens unto the *unskilful bearers*, but too often prove dangerous and hurtfull, both to themselves, and fellowes, that *ranke* and *file* with them. Neither need any be *disheartened*, for no man is born a *Souldier*, nor can attain to any excellency in the *Art Military* without *practice*: But by *practice* is gained *knowledge*; *knowledge* begets *courage* and *confidence*; few or none being *fearful* to *execute* what by *frequent practice* they have throughly *learned*.

And therefore it will be necessary for every one that intends any *proficiency* in this part of the *Art Military*, first to be *instructed* in the *Postures* and wel-*handling* of their *Arms*; (a thing much to be desired in our *Trained bands*, though small hope of amendment, seeing that our *Souldiers* are scarce called *forth* to *exercise* either *Posture* or *Motion* once in four or five yeares. Whose the fault is, I know not; *only I pray God that it may be amended, lest shame and infamy be the least of evils which our careless security may bring upon us*: Yet pardon this digression, for my zeal to my Countries good had almost transported me beyond the bounds of my intent; but of this no more. I will now come to the *Postures* of the *Musket* and *Pike*:) which some conceive, are fittest to *begin* from the *taking up* of their *Armes* and *arming* the *Souldiers*, concluding them with the *laying down* of their *Armes*, or *disarming* them. Nevertheless, because that some (especially such as have been in the parts beyond the Seas) have not accustomed themselves to any strict observance of *Posture*, for the *arming* and *disarming* of the *Musket-tier*, but, after the manner of the *field*, come *ready charged* and *shouldred*, and so from thence making the entrance or beginning to the *Postures*; by which meanes others have been emboldened too censoriously to object against the rest, as superfluous: which they themselves, at some time or other, cannot avoid. Therefore to the end that they also may have satisfaction, I have so placed the *Postures* of the *Musket*, that they may make use of so many of them as they shall thinke necessary, and leave the rest to such as require a more exact and ample satisfaction. But before I expose the *Postures* to the publike survay, me thinks I hear some already enquiring, What is *Posture*? Wherefore, that I may satisfie them, and not be troublesome to others, in briefe thus.

Posture in a Souldier is, the garbe or figure that he useth in the handling of his Armes, the definition consisting of severall Motions for atchieving of each Posture. The Motion being the work-tion of Posing part; the Posture, the alteration or act, either in circumstance or matter: As, to rest your Musket being one Posture, to shoulder your Musket another; so likewise for the rest.

Howbeit, some perchance will object (as formerly hath been to one of *Athens*, making a long Oration in the praise of *Hercules* his valour) and say, Who ever doubted of it? So to me, Who ever questioned these for *Postures*? Yet I have known them not only questi-

oned, but written against; peremptorily concluding, that there are but three *Postures* to be used for the *Musket*: whose errors I shall easily confute. But more of this after the *Postures* of the *Musket*. Wherefore for the more orderly proceeding, conceive their *Arms* to *lie before them on the ground*, and then the first *command* will be, to *stand to their Arms*.

The manner of *Arming* the *Musketier*, and *Postures* of the *Musket*.

Take up your } *Bandeliers.*
Put on your }

Take up your } *Match.*
Place your }

Take up your Musket and Rest.

Rest your Musket.

Now, if you please, you may performe your saluting *Posture*.

Poyse your
Shoulder your } *Musket.*

Take your rest into your right hand, and you are armed ready to March.

Thus being *armed*; with *Muskets shouldred*, some account their *Postures* to begin from this place; which may be done either *standing* or *mooving*, as they successively follow.

Take your Match between the fingers of your right hand.

Put your rest string about your left wrist, and carry your rest in your left hand.

* *Set the But-end of your Musket on the grownd (though improperly) call, Ordering the Musket.*

Return your Match between the fingers of your left hand.

Unshoulder your Musket & Poyse.

Joyne your rest to the outside of your Musket.

Open
Clear
Prime } *your Pan.*
Shut

Cast off your loose Cornes.

Blow off your loose Cornes, and bring about your Musket to the left side.

Trail your Rest, and ballance your Musket in your left hand.

Charge with Powder.

Draw forth } *your Scouring Stick.*
Shorten }

Charge with Bullet.

Put your Scouring Stick into your Musket.

Ram home your Charge.

Withdraw
Shorten } *your Scouring Stick.*
Return

Bring forward your Musket and Rest.

Poyse your Musket, and recover your Rest.

Thus having *charged*, some men will *shoulder*, and so from thence *make ready*; beginning their *Postures* from the *unshouldering* of the *Musket*: accounting of those past, as *Motions of Posture*: But they do but tangle themselves in their owne snares: therefore I proceed.

Joyne your Rest to the outside of your Musket.

Draw forth your Match.

Blow your Coal.

Cock } *your Match.*
Fit }

Guard your Pan.

Blow the Ashes from your Coal.

Open your Pan.

Present upon your Rest.

Give fire brest-high.

Dismount your Musket, joyning your rest to the outside of your Musket.

Uncock, and return your Match.

Clear } *your Pan.*
Shut }

Poyse
Shoulder } *your Musket.*

Take your Match between the fingers of the right hand.

Take your Rest into your right hand, clearing your string from your wrist.

Return your Rest into the left hand, the string loose.

Return your match into your left hand.

Unshoulder your Musket, & poyse.

Rest your Musket.

* *Set the But-end of your Musket on the ground.*

Lay down } *Musk. & Rest.*
your } *Match.*

Take off } *your Bandeliers*
Lay down }

March from your Armes.

2 *The Sentinell Posture.*

There is likewise the a *Sentinell Posture*, which is, The *Musketier* having his *Musket charged* with *bullet* his *Match cocked*, his *Pan guarded*, *stands* with his *Musket rested*, ready to perform such *duty* as shall be *commanded*, or given him in *charge*. Some have likewise taught to *make ready* on, or from the *Sentinell Posture*. But note, that as none comes to *stand Sentinell*, but comes ready *charged*; so if any occasion happen that he must

give

give fire in the time of his *ſtanding Sentinell*, it cauſeth an *Alarm* to the *Quarter*, or *Corps du guard*, from whence he is ſet out; ſo that he will have no fit time to *make ready upon his Reſt*. Wherefore I conceive it ſuperfluous; but will ever conform to better judgement.

[a] *The Funeral Poſture*

We have alſo the [a] *Funeral Poſture*, which from the *Reſt* is to be performed at three *Motions*, but cannot ſo well be expreſt in *writing*, as it will expreſſe it ſelfin *action*. Wherefore ſeeing that it is rather an Ornament to Obſequies, than truly neceſſary for *Armies*, I will not ſpend more time about it, but come to the *Poſtures* of the *Pike*. Yet before I paſſe upon them, give me leave to anſwer ſome, which out of a critical humour, will alwayes be carping at others, condemning theſe *Poſtures*, ſaying, there are more by halfe, then are either good or uſefull: and that there are no more *Poſtures* to be uſed, but *Make ready*, *Preſent*, *Give fire*. The which we will not deny, that in *Service* there are any other Commands *uſeful*: notwithſtanding I would have them to know, that [b] *Make ready* is no *Poſture*, but a word of *command*, including all *Poſtures* from the firſt *arming* of the *Soul-dier*, to the *Preſent*: or, if the *Muskettier* be *charged*, *ſhouldred*, or *both*, then the word (*Make ready*) *commands* the proſecution of the reſt of the *Poſtures*, which are between the *Poſture* you then immediatly are at, when the *word* is given, and the other *Poſture*, *Preſent*: For which reaſon, when we teach *Muskettiers* at firſt, it is moſt neceſſary to inſtruct them punctually, from *Poſture* to *Poſture*; which being once attained, they will *manage their Arms* more *ſurely*, more *comely*, with more *celerity*, and with better *execution*; and at the firſt may eaſily be taught the beſt way. [c] But if they have once got an habit of being ill, there will be as much or more paines ſpent in reclaiming their errors, as at firſt to teach them the beſt, ſafeſt, and readieſt way.

[b] *Make ready, no Poſture, but a word of Command.*

[c] *Ill cuſtome hardly reclaimed.*

CHAP. II.

Of the Poſtures *of the* Pike.

THat which followeth next of courſe, is the Poſture of the *Pike*: Wherefore, that we may obſerve *Order* in our proceeding, we will likewiſe conceive their *Pikes* to lie in like manner before them on the ground: And then, as before, the *firſt command* will be, to *Stand to* their Armes.

Hande / *Order* } *your Pikes.* | *To your* { (d) *Open* / (e) *Cloſe* } *Order.*

[d] *Open Order. in reſpect of Poſture for the Pike, is when the files ſtand at double diſtance, or open Order at the leaſt; then the Pikemen are to extend their right arms and place their Pikes about a foot to the right of their*

Charge from the Foot.

Which is to *charge* with the *But-end* of your *Pike* at the *inſide* of your *right foot*, your *Pike* in the *left hand*, drawing your *Sword* over the *left arm*.

Charge to the { *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.*

Order your Pikes, and put up your Swords.

Note that theſe *Charges at the Foot*, are to *receive a deſperate enemy on Horſe*, upon a *ſtand* in ſome *ſtrait*, or other *place of advantage*, the *Muskettiers to give fire over the Pikemens heads*, or *elſewhere*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*.

From Order { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheek* / *Traile.* } { *your Pikes.* } Order as you were.

Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Order as you were.

Shoulder your Pikes.

right legs: it is uſefull only to make a gallant ſhew. [e] *Cloſe order is to place the But-end of the Pike on the inſide of the foot, and is only uſefull upon a ſtand, to receive and abate the fury of the Horſe, upon a deſperate charge.* [f] *Charges to the reer is to be underſtood always to be left-about, becauſe it is ſometimes ancerer way then charging to the right about.*

Advance your Pikes.

From Advance { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheeke* / *Traile* } *your Pikes.* Advance as you were.

Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Advance as you were.

Shoulder your Pikes.

From the Shoulder { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheek* / *Traile* } *your Pikes.* Shoulder as you were.

Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.* } Shoulder as you were.

From *Comport*, *Cheeke*, or *Traile*, the *Pike-man* may, at the discretion of the *Commander*, *charge* either to the *Front*, *Reere*, or *Flanks*, as shall be necessary, or thought expedient. I will do it only once over; for the *Charges* will be all alike, whether you *Comport*, from *Order*, from *Advance*, or *Shoulder*. And so likwise for *Cheek* and *Traile*, &c.

From Comport Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.* } Comport as you were.

Traile your Pikes.

From the Traile Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Traile as you were.

Cheek your Pikes.

From the Cheeke Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Cheek as you were.

Order / *Lay down* } *your Pikes.*

I shall undergoe the censure of some, for that they will find more *Postures* of the *Pike* here then formerly they knew of, and so by their conclusion more then there is any need of; for now-adays there are such, that will limit the *Discipline* of the *Militia* to the verge of their own knowledge; and whatsoever else they shall see either *acted* or *written* by others, that is without the lists of their *kenning*, they will peremptorily conclude for superfluous, and improper; howsoever, I shall alwayes referre my self to the judgement of the more judicious.

The use of the Pike.

The *Charges* of the *Pike* are *twofold*, either for *Defence*, or *Offence*: *Charges underhand*, or *over-hand*: but divers and different they are from their several *wayes* and *Postures*, from which they are, or may be done, although they are not always *useful*, yet at some times they may be *useful*; and therefore very requisite to be known of all such as either are, or at least would be accounted for *good Souldiers*.

As I have set down the *Postures* themselves both of *Musket* and *Pike*, so it were not amisse, if that the *Motions of Posture* were likewise here expresst. But because they will take up too much time, and fill too much paper, and the subject it self not pleasing unto many, I will spare my labour, and my book the lines, rather suffering the censure of curtaild brevity, then tedious prolixity.

CHAP. III.

Of the Drum.

OUr *Souldiers* being sufficiently *instructed* in the *Postures* of such *Arms* as they *carry*, (or are appointed to use;) the next thing they are to *learn* is the *knowledge* of the *several beats* of the *Drum*, which is requisite to be *learnt* of the *Souldier*, as any thing else in this *way*. For the *Drum* is the *voyce* of the *Commander*, the *spurre* of the *valiant*, and the *heart* of the *coward*; and by it *they* must receive their *directions*, when the *roaring Canon*, the *clashing* of *Armes*, the *neighing* of *Horses*, and other *confused noise* causeth that

that neither *Captain*, nor other *Officer* can be *heard*. Therefore it will be necessary that every Souldier should learn these six several Beats, *viz.*

1 A Call. 2 A Troop. 3 A March. 4 A Preparative. 5 A Battaile. 6 *A* Retreat.

1 By a *Call*, you must *understand* to *prepare* to hear present *Proclamation*, or else to repaire to your *Ensigne*. *A Cal.*

2 By a *Troop*, *understand* to *shoulder* your *Musket*, to *advance* your *Pike*, to *close* your *Ranks* & *Files* to their *Order*, and to *Troop along* with (or *follow*) your *Officer* to the *place* of *Randezvous*, or else-where. *A Troop.*

3 By a *March* you are to *understand* to *take* your *open order* in *rank*, to *shoulder* both *Musket* and *Pikes*, and to direct your *March* either *quicker* or *slower*, according to the *beat* of the *Drum*. *A March.*

4 By a *Preparative* you are to *understand* to close to your *due distance*, for *skirmish* both in *rank* and *file*, and to *make ready*, that so you may *execute* upon the *first command*. *A Preparative.*

5 By the *Battail* or *charge*, *understand* the *continuation* or *pressing forward* in *order* of *battaile* without *lagging behind*, rather boldly stepping *forward* in the *place* of *him* that *falls dead* or *wounded*, before thee. *A Battail.*

6 By a *Retreat*, *understand* an *orderly retiring backward*, either for *relief*, for *advantage* of *ground*, or for some other *political end*, as to *draw* the *enemy* into some *ambushment*, or such like. Much more might be written concerning the *Drum*, but this may suffice for the present. *A Retreat.*

CHAP. IV.

Of Ranks and Files, their places and dignities.

NOw that our *Souldiers* are somewhat *skilful* in *managing* of their *Armes*, and no lesse capable of the several *beats* of the *Drum*, it is high time for them to know the difference *between a Rank and a File*. Wherefore know, that *a Rank is a row of men sometimes more, sometimes fewer, standing, moving, or marching even a breast*, or (as some write) *pouldron to pouldron*, or *shoulder to shoulder*. *A file is a sequence of men, standing one behind another, back to belly, in a straight line from Front to Reere*, consisting sometimes of 6. 8. or 10. men, on some occasions the *Spaniards* make them 12. *deep*. But when any one would shew much *variety* of *exercise*, then 8. will be the more *pliant* and *dividual number*, yet for *service* in the *Feild*, where men are not altogether so *expert* (as I could wish our Country-men were) 10. men is a fit number, not only for the cause aforesaid, but also because that 10. is the *square Root* of a 100. and is a convenient number to draw *Companies* into *grosser bodies*.

What is a Ranke. *What is a File.* *Where men are expert.* *8 is a sufficient depth, and may better keep their order then when they are deeper.*

And now I think it would not be much amisse, if I should insert the severall *places* of *dignity* & *precedency* in *Rank*, as also in *File*. Wherefore because that * *Files* are first to be *drawn forth*, and that by *adding* or *joyning* of *Files together* Ranks, are *made*, we will begin *first* with the precedence of *Files*. Therefore conceive their *dignities* according to the *Figures* (or *Numbers*) hereunder *placed*, first in *File*, then of *Rank*, lastly of *both conjoyned*.

**In placing your men, first draw your Souldier forth in files, and not in ranks, as some have foolly used.*

Front.

Front.	Number of dignity.							
1. P	1.	2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1
2. P	5.	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P
3. P	8.	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
4. P	4.	Number of place.							
5. P	3.								
6. P	7.								
7. P	6.								
8. P	2.								

Number of place. Number of dignity. Reere.

Number of dignity.									
2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	0	
P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	1	
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	P	5	
Number of place.							3	P	8
							4	P	4
							5	P	3
							6	P	7
							7	P	9
							8	P	2

Number of dignity. Number of place.

Advance your Pikes.

From Advance { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheeke* / *Traile* } *your Pikes.* Advance as you were.

Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Advance as you were.

Shoulder your Pikes.

From the Shoulder { *Port* / *Comport* / *Cheek* / *Traile* } *your Pikes.* Shoulder as you were.

Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.* } Shoulder as you were.

From *Comport*, *Cheeke*, or *Traile*, the *Pike-man* may, at the discretion of the *Commander*, *charge* either to the *Front*, *Reere*, or *Flanks*, as shall be necessary, or thought expedient. I will do it only once over; for the *Charges* will be all alike, whether you *Comport*, from *Order*, from *Advance*, or *Shoulder*. And so likwise for *Cheek* and *Traile*, &c.

From Comport Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reere.* } Comport as you were.

Traile your Pikes.

From the Traile Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Traile as you were.

Cheek your Pikes.

From the Cheeke Charge to the { *Front.* / *Right.* / *Left.* / *Reer.* } Cheek as you were.

Order / *Lay down* } *your Pikes.*

I shall undergoe the censure of some, for that they will find more *Postures* of the *Pike* here then formerly they knew of, and so by their conclusion more then there is any need of; for now-adays there are such, that will limit the *Discipline* of the *Militia* to the ve ge of their own knowledge; and whatsoever else they shall see either *acted* or *written* by others, that is without the lists of their *kenning*, they will peremptorily conclude for superfluous, and improper; howsoever, I shall alwayes referre my self to the judgement of the more judicious.

The *Charges* of the *Pike* are *twofold*, either for *Defence*, or *Offence*: *Charges under hand*, or *over-hand*: but divers and different they are from their several *wayes* and *Postures*, from which they are, or may be done, although they are not always *useful*, yet at some times they may be *useful*; and therefore very requisite to be known of all such as either are, or at least would be accounted for *good Souldiers*.

The use of the Pike.

As I have set down the *Postures* themselves both of *Musket* and *Pike*, so it were not amisse, if that the *Motions of Posture* were likewise here expresst. But because they will take up too much time, and fill too much paper, and the subject it self not pleasing unto many, I will spare my labour, and my book the lines, rather suffering the censure of curtaild brevity, then tedious prolixity.

CHAP. III.

Of the Drum.

OUr *Souldiers* being sufficiently *instructed* in the *Postures* of such *Arms* as they *carry*, (or are appointed to use;) the next thing they are to *learn* is the *knowledge* of the *several beats* of the *Drum*, which is requisite to be *learnt* of the *Souldier*, as any thing else in this *way*. For the *Drum* is the *voyce* of the *Commander*, the *spurre* of the *valiant*, and the *heart* of the *coward*; and by it *they* must receive their *directions*, when the *roaring Canon*, the *clashing* of *Armes*, the *neighing* of *Horses*, and other *confused noise* causeth

tha

that neither *Captain*, nor other *Officer* can be *heard*. Therefore it wil be necessary that every Souldier should learn these six several Beats, *viz.*

1 A Call. 2 A Troop. 3 A March. 4 A Preparative. 5 A Battaile. 6 *A* Retreat.

1 By a *Call*, you must *understand* to *prepare* to hear present *Proclamation*, or else to repaire to your *Ensigne*. *A Cal.*

2 By a *Troop*, *understand* to *shoulder* your *Musket*, to *advance* your *Pike*, to *close* your *Ranks* & *Files* to their *Order*, and to *Troop along* with (or *follow*) your *Officer* to the *place* of *Randezvous*, or else-where. *A Troop.*

3 By a *March* you are to *understand* to *take* your *open order* in *rank*, to *shoulder* both *Musket* and *Pikes*, and to direct your *March* either *quicker* or *slower*, according to the *beat* of the *Drum*. *A March.*

4 By a *Preparative* you are to *understand* to close to your *due distance*, for *skirmish* both in *rank* and *file*, and to *make ready*, that so you may *execute* upon the *first command*. *A Preparative.*

5 By the *Battail* or *charge*, *understand* the *continuation* or *pressing forward* in *order* of *battaile* without *lagging behind*, rather boldly stepping *forward* in the *place* of *him* that *falls dead* or *wounded*, before thee. *A Battail.*

6 By a *Retreat*, *understand* an *orderly retiring backward*, either for *relief*, for *advantage* of *ground*, or for some other *political end*, as to *draw* the *enemy* into some *ambushment*, or such like. Much more might be written concerning the *Drum*, but this may suffice for the present. *A Retreat.*

CHAP. IV.

Of Ranks and Files, their places and dignities.

NOw that our *Souldiers* are somewhat *skilful* in *managing* of their *Armes*, and no lesse capable of the several *beats* of the *Drum*, it is high time for them to know the difference *between a Rank and a File*. Wherefore know, that *a Rank is a row of men sometimes more, sometimes fewer, standing, moving, or marching even a breft*, or (as some write) *pouldron to pouldron*, or *shoulder to shoulder*. *A file is a sequence of men, standing one behind another, back to belly, in a straight line from Front to Reere*, consisting sometimes of 6. 8. or 10. men, on some occasions the *Spaniards* make them 12. *deep*. But when any one would shew much *variety* of *exercise*, then 8. wil be the more *pliant* and *dividual number*, yet for *service* in the *Feild*, where men are not altogether so *expert* (as I could wish our Country-men were) 10. men is a fit number, not only for the cause aforesaid, but also becaus that 10. is the *square Root* of a 100. and is a convenient number to draw *Companies* into *grosser bodies*. *What is a Ranke.* *What is a File.* *Where men are expert.* *8 is a sufficient depth, and may better keep their order then when they are deeper.*

And now I think it would not be much amisse, if I should insert the severall *places* of *dignity* & *precedency* in *Rank*, as also in *File*. Wherefore becaus that * *Files* are first to be *drawn forth*, and that by *adding* or *joyning* of *Files together* *Ranks*, are *made*, we will begin *first* with the precedence of *Files*. Therefore conceive their *dignities* according to the *Figures* (or *Numbers*) hereunder *placed*, first in *File*, then of *Rank*, lastly of *both conjoyned*. **In placing your men, first draw your Souldier forth in files, and not in ranks, as some have foolishly used.*

Front.

Front.	Number of dignity.
1. P 1.	2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1
2. P 5.	P P P P P P P P
3. P 8.	8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
4. P 4.	Number of place.
5. P 3.	
6. P 7.	
7. P 6.	
8. P 2.	
Reere.	

Number of dignity. Number of place.

Number of dignity.

2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	0	Number of dignity.
P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	1	
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	P	5	
Number of place.							3	P	8
							4	P	4
							5	P	3
							6	P	7
							7	P	9
							8	P	2

Number of place.

It will not be (of it self) sufficient that I have here both *marked* and *figured* each single *worth*, thereby pointing out the several *places* and *dignity*, *proper* to each *particular man*, in his *file* and *rank*: but it will be expected of some, that I should back my *Conclusions*, either with sound & solid reasons of mine own, or at the least with the concurring opinions of others. But as for such, who have employed themselves upon this *Subject*, either for want of due consideration, or a rational understanding the *parts of a File*, they have voted their *judgements* as divers as their *number*; each man having a fancy to his own *way*. And if it were much *material*, I might here demonstrate unto you the several opinions of *Leo*, *Robertellus*, *Count* Mansfield*, Sir *Tho. Kellie*, and many others: but their works being extant, I will spare the labour. Nevertheless I will say thus much, that *Cap. John Bingham*, although somewhat *obscurely*, yet in my judgement hath best delivered himself concerning this particular: which although he hath expreest by way of *Tetrarchies* & *Mirarchies*, the same may be understood as well by *Ranks* and *Files*. His words are these: "* *Every* "*Tetrarch is over four Files, in all which the Comander that hath the right, hath the first* "*place; he that hath the point of the left, the second place; he that standeth on the right hand* "*next to him, the third place. The last place is his, that standeth next to the Commander of* "*the right point on the left hand: He demonstrates it by way of figure thus.*

* *A Book set out in his name but none of his.*

* *In the Tactisks of Ælion, lib 1. the notes of the 1 comb Chapter.*

	PMM.	MMP.	PMM.	MMP.	
Right wing	1 5 1	4 8 4	3 7 3	2 6 2	Left wing.

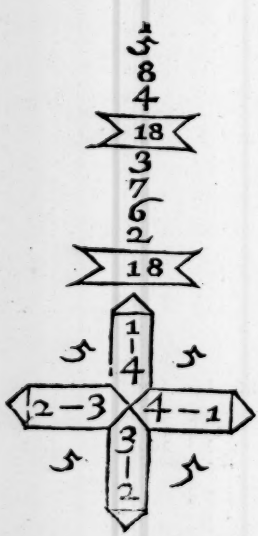
The Middle.

CHAP. V.

Reasons for precedency of dignity in Ranks and Files.

I Shall now endeavour to give some reasons for these *severall places* of *dignity* in *Ranke* and *File*. And first, for that Geometricall proportion gives both *life* and *being*, to *orderly discipline*, consider that all *parts* of the *body* ought to be *answerable*. Wherefore seeing that the *joyning* of *Files* & *Ranks* produceth *greater bodies*; it is necessary that a true proportion should be kept from the *beginning*: and that in *drawing forth* of *Files*, they observe to make the *reer-halfe-file* answerable in *skill* and *worth* to the *front-half-file*: and that the *file-leaders*, & *half-ranks* of the *left-flank* should be equivalent in *worth*, *skill*, and *valour*, to the *right-flank*; that the *reere division* hold like proportion with the *front division*, and that all parts of the *body* be *ballanced* with true proportion, so near as the knowledge of the *Souldiers*, and the *number* of the *men* will give you *leave*; and that there may be correspondency in their *worth*, *place*, and *dignity*, you may observe by adding the *figures* of *number* together which are in the *margent*, where you shal find, that the *dignity* being added together of the *front-half-file*, makes the number of 18; and the worth of the *reer-half* being in like manner added makes the like *number*. So also shall you find the *dignity* and *worth* of the *file-leaders* of the *left-flank* to parallel the *worth* of those on the *right-flank* by the same rule. if you will have it yet more cleare, observe, that the *file-leader* is the *chiefe* in his *file*, the *bringer-up* the *second*, the *half-file leader* the *third*, the last man of the *front half file* the

Front.



the *fourth*. Now note, that as the *worth* of the *first precedes* the *second*, so the *worth* of the *third exceeds* the *fourth*: Add the *first worth* to the *fourth worth*, and that makes *five*; adde the *second Worth* to the *third*, and it makes the same *number*: so that there is *equality* throughout the *battel*, both in *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*: for it were unreasonable, that all the *chief men* should be on the *right-flank*, and all the *worst* on the *left*; for the *left* must be *opposed* to the *enemies right*. The *file-leader* ought to be the *worthiest* because he hath the *Command* of his *file*, and *marcheth first against* his *enemy*. The *bringer-up* ought to be the *second*, because his *place* of *march* is in the *reer*, and is in most danger, should the *enemy charge* on that *part*: the *half-file-leader*, is the *third* in *honour*, because that when the *halfe-file is taken off* upon any *occasion*, he is the *leader*. (unlesse they be *commanded* to *face about*) The *last man* of the *front-half-file* is the *fourth* in *dignity*, for when the *reere-division* is *taken off*, then he is the *bringer-up*, or the *file* being faced about, he is the *half-file-leader to the reer*: the next *man* to the *file-leader* hath the *fift place* of *honour*, for that one *doubling brings him into the front*: the next *man before* the *bringer-up*, hath the *sixt place* of *honour*, for that if the *body* be *faced about*, one *doubling brings him into the front accidental*, or keeping the *proper front* by once *doubling* of *ranks* he becomes *bringer-up* to his *file-leader*: the *seventh place* of *honour* is his, that *marcheth* next after the *half-file-leader*, for that when the *half-files double the front*, or *marcheth forth* then one *doubling*, *ranks him even* with the *front*: the *eighth* & *last place* of *honour* is *his*, that is the *third* from the *front*, the *file* being but eight *deep*, which may also be *made a file-leader* though with more trouble than the rest; for by *countermarching front* & *reer into the midst*, and then *facing* to the *former front*, and after *doubling* of *ranks* makes him likewise a *file-leader*. Now as *every mans dignity is more or lesse in his file*, *so is all his rank with him*. Wherefore this that hath already been said, may suffice to inform those which as yet are ignorant of the several *places of dignity*, both in *rank and file*. Nevertheless for the clearer *demonstration* of these *rules of dignity*, *and for that they are of more concernment*, *than at first every man can imagine*, I have drawn forth *three tables*. The first of *six deep*, and *six* a breast: the second of *eight deep*, and *eight* a breast: the third of *ten deep*, and *ten* a breast: which will shew the particular *dignities* due to each man in *rank* & *file*. I have also added *three other square tables*: the first of *thirty six men*, the second of *sixty foure*, the third of *one hundred*. And in *each table* I have shewed every *mans place* of *dignity* in *file* and *rank*, as also in the *joyned body*, from the *first* and *chief* to the *last* and *least* in *dignity* by figures of number, with an addition of their sums together; to shew their *uniformity*, and proportion to each other.

The Places of Dignity of 10. *in Rank.*

| 2 | 6 | 0 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 9 | 5 | 1 |

The Places of Dignity of 8. *in Rank*

| 2 | 6 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 5 | 1 |

Places of dignity of 6 *in Rank*

| 2 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 1 |

Rules of Dignity ought not to be regulated by ill customes conceited opinions, and false grounds; but by truth and reason.

The Places of Dignity of 10. *in File*

| 5 | 9 | 8 | 4 | 2 | 7 | 1 | 6 | 3 | 0 |

The places of dignity of 8 *in file.*

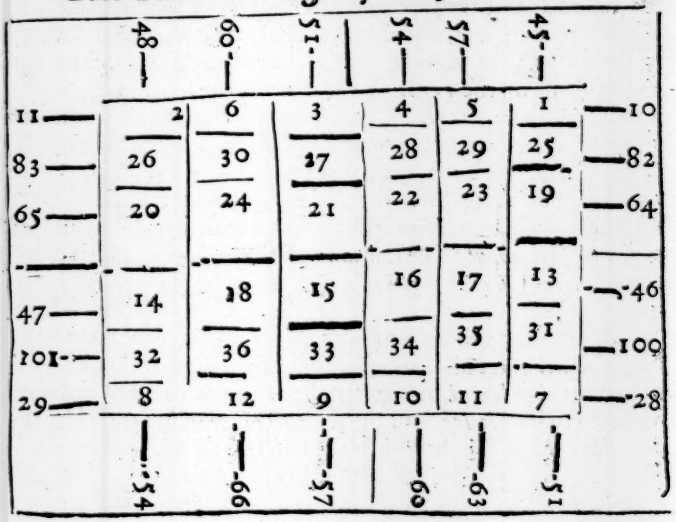
| 5 | 7 | 3 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 8 |

Places of dignity in file

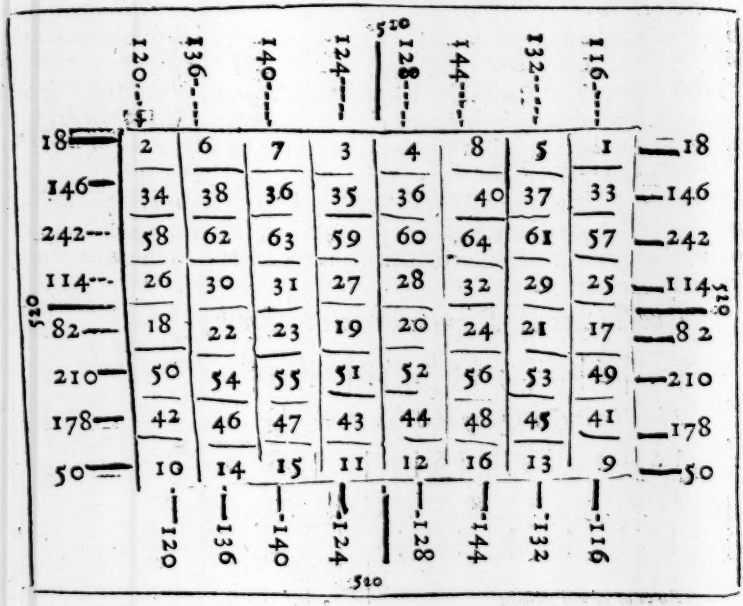
| 5 | 3 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 1 |

The

The Table of Dignity for 36. Men.



The Table of Dignity for 64. Men.



The

The Table of dignity for 100. men.

230	250	270	255	235	240	260	265	245	225	
28--- 2	6	10	7	3	4	8	9	5	1	---27
228--- 42	46	50	47	43	44	48	49	45	41	---227
428--- 82	86	90	87	83	84	88	82	85	81	---427
378--- 72	76	80	77	73	74	7	79	75	71	---377
178--- 32	36	40	37	33	34	38	39	35	31	---177
128--- 22	26	30	27	23	24	28	29	25	21	---127
328--- 62	66	70	67	63	64	68	69	65	61	---327
478--- 92	96	100	97	93	94	98	99	95	91	---477
278--- 52	56	60	57	53	54	58	59	55	51	---277
78--- 12	16	20	17	13	14	18	19	15	11	---77
---240	---260	---280	---265	---245	---250	---270	---275	---255	---235	

If you pleaſe to make an experiment of the *uniformity* and *proportion* that one *file* or *rank* holdeth with another, and would firſt make tryal of a *file*, then *add the number of one file together*; (which done) *add the numbers* together of the next *file in dignity*, into one ſumm; then *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall alwayes find, that *one file precedes the other* no more then there are particular *places in a file*: as 6. in *files* of 6. *deep*, 8. in *files* of 8. *deep*, and 10. in *files* of 10. *deep*; the which makes no diſproportion, but are only *numbers of diſtinctions*.

Would you make an experiment *between the dignity of rank and rank*? then, as before, add the *ſimple numbers* together of *one rank*, the which being found, add the *ſimple numbers* togethe of the next *rank* in *dignity*; the which in like manner being performed, *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall find the remainder alwayes to be the *compleat number of the ſquare body*. * As for example, in the Table of *thirty ſix*, *add the numbers of the firſt* rank (or *file-leaders*) together, and you ſhall find by addition twenty one; add the numbers of the ſecond *rank* in *dignity* (which are the Bringers up) together, and you ſhall find fifty ſeven: then *ſubſtract* the number of the *firſt rank* from the *ſecond* in *dignity*, & the remainder wil be thirty ſix, the juſt *number of the whole ſquare* and ſo in like manner is the number of difference between every two next *ranks of dignity* in that Table. The other Tables, in like nature, having the ſame difference, according to the number of the body; either of thirty ſix, ſixty four, b or one hundred. But I doubt I ſhal be blamed for tedious curioſity, becauſe I have inſiſted longer upon this *Subject* then at firſt I intended; which makes me the more willing (though ſomewhat abruptly) to break from it and come to ſhew the manner of *joyning* or *drawing up of files into Battalia*. To which purpoſe, the *Serjeants* are firſt *to draw forth their files*, & after *to lead them up into order*, according to every mans *worth* and *honour*; as firſt *the right hand file*, then *the left hand file*, and ſo *the other files* ſucceſſively *within them*, according to their ſeveral *worths* and *places*, as by the following *form*, and the *figures* of number, you may plainly perceive.

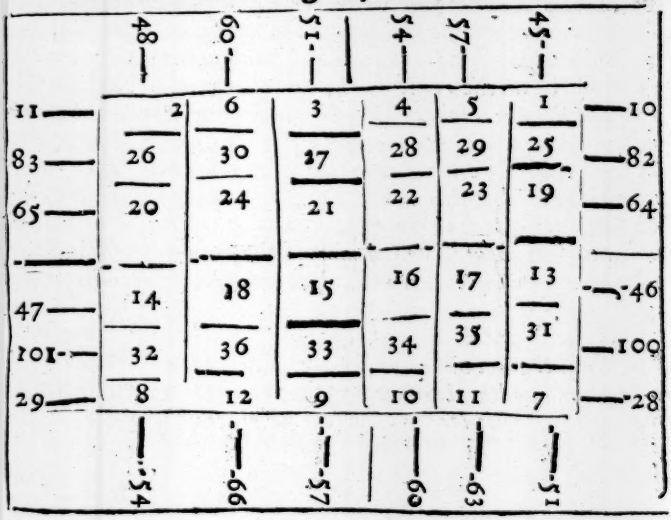
* Files precede eachother in dignity according to their places. Each man in the right hand file preceding him of the ſame place in the left hand file, which makes the difference of number between them 6 at 6. deep 8. at 8. deep &c.

* The differences between every next rank of dignity in the table of 36. is the ſame number.

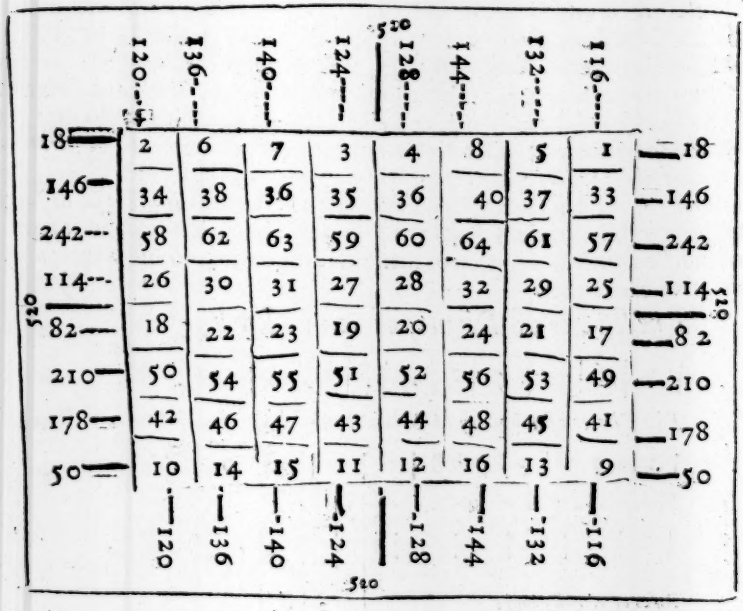
b In the table of 64 the difference between the next ranks of dignity is 64.

In the table of 100. the difference is the like number of 100 &c.

The Table of Dignity for 36. Men.



The Table of Dignity for 64. Men.



The

The Table of dignity for 100. men.

	230	250	270	255	235	240	260	265	245	225	
28---	2	6	10	7	3	4	8	9	5	1	---27
228---	42	46	50	47	43	44	48	49	45	41	---227
428---	82	86	90	87	83	84	88	82	85	81	---427
378---	72	76	80	77	73	74	7	79	75	71	---377
178---	32	36	40	37	33	34	38	39	35	31	---177
128---	22	26	30	27	23	24	28	29	25	21	---127
328---	62	66	70	67	63	64	68	69	65	61	---327
478---	92	96	100	97	93	94	98	99	95	91	---477
278---	52	56	60	57	53	54	58	59	55	51	---277
78---	12	16	20	17	13	14	18	19	15	11	---77
	--240	--260	--280	--265	--245	--250	--270	--275	--255	--235	

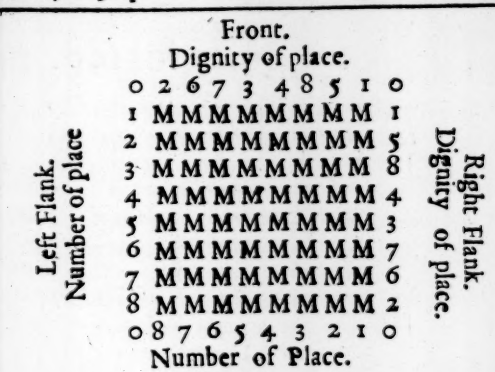
If you pleaſe to make an experiment of the *uniformity* and *proportion* that one *file* or *rank* holdeth with another, and would firſt make tryal of a *file*, then *add the number of one file together*; (which done) *add the numbers* together of the next *file in dignity*, into one ſumm; then *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall alwayes find, that *one file precedes the other* no more then there are particular *places in a file*: as 6. in *files* of 6. *deep*, 8. in *files* of 8. *deep*, and 10. in *files* of 10. *deep*; the which makes no diſproportion, but are only *numbers of diſtinctions*.

Would you make an experiment *between the dignity of rank and rank*? then, as before, add the *ſimple numbers* together of *one rank*, the which being found, add the *ſimple numbers* togethe of the next *rank* in *dignity*; the which in like manner being performed, *ſubſtract the leſſer number out of the greater*, and you ſhall find the remainder alwayes to be the *compleat number of the ſquare body*. * As for example, in the Table of *thirty ſix*, *add the numbers of the firſt* rank (or *file-leaders*) together, and you ſhall find by addition twenty one; add the numbers of the ſecond *rank* in *dignity* (which are the Bringers up) together, and you ſhall find fifty ſeven: then *ſubſtract* the number of the *firſt rank* from the *ſecond* in *dignity*, & the remainder wil be thirty ſix, the juſt *number of the whole ſquare* and ſo in like manner is the number of difference between every two next *ranks of dignity* in that Table. The other Tables, in like nature, having the ſame difference, according to the number of the body; either of thirty ſix, ſixty four, b or one hundred. But I doubt I ſhal be blamed for tedious curioſity, becauſe I have inſiſted longer upon this *Subject* then at firſt I intended; which makes me the more willing (though ſomewhat abruptly) to break from it and come to ſhew the manner of *joyning* or *drawing up of files into Battalia*. To which purpoſe, the *Serjeants* are firſt *to draw forth their files*, & after *to lead them up into order*, according to every mans *worth* and *honour*; as firſt *the right hand file*, then *the left hand file*, and ſo *the other files* ſucceſſively *within hem*, according to their ſeveral *worths* and *places*, as by the following *form*, and the *figures* of number, you may plainly perceive.

a Files precede each-other in dignity according to their places. Each man in the right hand file preceding him of the ſame place in the left hand file, which makes the difference of number between them 6 at 6. deep 8. at 8. deep &c.

* The differences between every next rank of dignity in the table of 36. is the ſame number.

b In the table of 64 the difference between the next ranks of dignity is 64. In the table of 100. the difference is the like number of 100 &c.



If there be *any* that shall say, These are *niceties*, and of no *repute* amongst *Souldiers*: I dare say, they have been well *reputed* of by good *Souldiers*; no disparagement unto the *fault-finders*, (if there happen to be any such.) As for the *noble, worthy*, and *well-knowing Souldiers*, I am almost *confident*, that out of their true-speaking *judgments*, they will either conclude that it is so *used*, or at the least, that it *ought* so to be; but if this can *work* no *effect* with the---I leave every man freely to his own *judgment*, desiring the *judicious* alwayes to hold a favourable opinion of my well-meaning.

Ignorant Souldiers most ambitious.

CHAP. VI.

Of several Distances.

NOw that our *Souldiers* have attained some small knowledge in the use of their *Arms*, (me thinks, like some of our [a] *little knowing Souldiers* of the *Trained Bands*) they already begin to be ambitious of *File-leaders* places; therefore, that their own *weaknesses* may light them to read their own *follies*, we will see how they will behave themselves in the exercise of the Company. Where the first thing we are to instruct them in, is their *distances*. But because it is disputable, whether *distance* be one of the *Motions* or no; we will first declare what *distance* is. To which I say, that indeed [b] *distance* it self is no *motion* but there is *motion* in producing such *distance*; for, *Distance is the space of ground between man and man, either in file or rank, having relation only to the place between each party*: All the rest of the *motions* having not only relation to the one, but to the other. Wherefore, not to spend more time in a matter so apparent, we will say, that the *Discipline of a foot Company consists chiefly in distance and motion.* And therefore seeing that *distance* is the fore-runner of *motion*, & that [c] no *motion* can be performed without *distance*, we will leave to discourse it, and fall to the matter it self, and shew how many sorts of *distance* is ordinarily used in our *modern discipline*; which are these *four* hereunder named, *viz.*

Close Order, *Order*, *Open Order*, *Double Distance*, both in Ranks and File, which is *One foot and a half.* *Three foot.* *Six foot.* *Twelve foot.*

[b] Distance it self no motion.

[c] Without distance no motion can be performed.

Distance of rank is to be understood between rank and rank.

Distance of file is to be understood between file and file.

The exact place from whence to measure your distance is from the center of your men, whether it be rank or file.

It hath been the opinion of some ancient Commanders, that the *distance of rank* was alwayes *double the distance of file*, although they went both under one and the same denomination: As that, *Order* in *file* was *three foot*, *Order* in *rank six foot*, *Open Order* in *file six foot*, *Open Order* in *rank twelve foot*; and so of other *distances*. But the best received opinions hold them to be alike both in *rank* & *file*. There is to be considered in *distance* these [*] *three* especially, that is, *distance* for *march*, *distance* for *motion*, & *distance* for *skirmish*.

[*] These 3. distances especially remarkable.

You

You are to observe, that your *distance for march* is to be *three foot between file and file, and six foot between ranke and rank*: *distance for motion six foot both in ranke and file*; *distance for intire doublings, wheelings, and skirmish, three foot in rank and file. Close order is useful* for your *files of Pike-men*, when they are to receive a *Charge* from the *horse*: that so they may *stand* the *stronger*, by so much as they are the *closer ferried together*: as also for the ranks of *Muskittiers*, when they are to poure on a salute of shot.

It next followes, that I shew the *divers words of command*, and direction; for the several *openings* and *closings* of *ranks* nnd *files*. But I shall first recommend to the care of the *curious discipliner*; that in the first place he *command his Souldiers* to *even* their *ranks*, and *streighten* their *files*: to be *silent*, and *attentive* to their *words of command*, and *directions*, which being performed, the *words of command* for *distance*, are as followeth.

Rankes and files to your close order.
Files open to the right — *to your order.*
Ranks open forward
Files open to the right — *to your open order.*
Ranks open forward
Files open to the right — *to your double distance.*
Ranks open forward.
Files close to the right — *to your open order.*
Ranks close forward
Files close to the right — *to your order.*
Ranks close forward.
Files close to the right — *to your close order.*
Ranks close forward.
Files open to the left — *to your order.*
Ranks open backward.
Files open to the left — *to your open order.*
Ranks open backward.

Files open to the left — *to your double distance.*
Ranks open backward.
Files close to the left — *to your open order.*
Ranks close backward.
Files close to the left — *to your order.*
Ranks close backward.

In motion of files you are to observe your Leader.

Files close to the left — *to your close order.*
Ranks close backward.

In motion of ranks you are to observe your right-hand man.

Files open to the right and left — *to your order.*
Ranks to the front and reer
Files open to the right and left — *to your open order.*
Ranks to the front and reer
Files open to the right and left — *to your double distance.*
Ranks to the front and reer
Files close to the right & left inward — *to your open order.*
Ranks to the middest — ———

Note that when *files open* to the *right*, the *left-hand file* must stand *fast*, every *file* taking his *distance* from the *file* next his *left hand*; And when they *open* to the *left*, then the *right-hand-file stands*, every *file* taking his *distance* from the *file* next his *right hand*. Observe also that when *ranks open forward*, then the *last rank* stands, every *rank* taking his *distance* from the *ranke* next behind him: And when they open *backward*, then the *first rank is to stand*, every *ranke* to take his *distance* from the *rank* next before him. You are likewise to take notice in the *action*, that you are either to *face* to the *right*, or to the *right about*.

Observations for the opening of ranks and files.

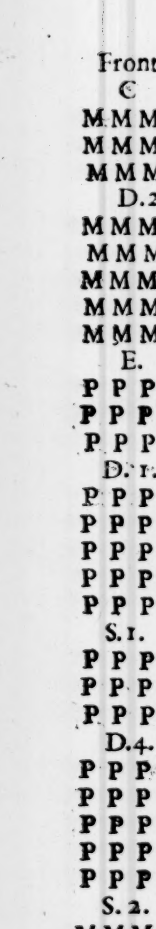
Note also, that in *closing* of *files*, if it be to the *right*, then contrary to *the opening*, the *right-hand-file stands*, the rest *closing* to the *right*, taking their *distance* from their *next right-hand-file*. If you *close* to the *left*, then the *left-hand-file stands*, the rest of the *files closing* to the *left*, taking their *distance* in like manner. When *files close to the right and left*, then they *close inward*, taking their *distance* from the *files* within them, nearer to the *middest of the body*. Also note, that when *files* are commanded to *open* to the *right*, & *left*, (or by *division*) it must be *outward*. If *ranks close to the front and reer*, then the *first* & *last rank* stand, the other taking their *distances* from them. If they *close ranks* towards the *center* or *midst*, then they *close* towards their *two midlemost ranks*.

Observations for the closing of ranks and files.

It is not required that every *Captain* or other *Officer* that shal *exercise* a *Company*, shal use all these severall *openings* and *closings* which are here expresst, but rather, that he shal make use of so many of them, as he shall think fit for his present occasion or *exercise*; although they al may be useful, at some time or other: I may spare examples, for it must needs be apparent to the meanest capacity.

CHAP. VII.

Of Marching the Company in Divisions, with the order and places of the Officers and Drums.



OUr *Souldiers* now being somewhat *expert* in their *Distances*, we will next draw them forth into a *deep March*. Wherefore note, that our *Files* must be at *Order*, and our *Ranks* at *Open Order*: the *Musket tiers* of the *right Flank* are to make the *Van*, and to *March* next after the Captaine: The *Pikes* are to make the *Battell*, and to *march* after the *Ensigne*, either in one or two *Divisions*, according to their number. The *Musket tiers* of the *left Flank* (sometimes called the *second Division of Muskets*) make the *Reer-Guard*; which is *led* commonly by the *second Serjeant*. Howbeit, if there be but one *Division* of *Pikes*, then the *eldest* (or chiefest) *Serjeant leads* the *second Division of Musket tiers*. If the *Company* be but small, then it is best to make but two *Divisions*, one of the *Musket tiers*, another of the *Pikes*. For the *placing* of the rest of the *Officers*, you may perceive by the *Figure* in the Margent: Wherefore note, that M. stands for *Muskets*, P. for *Pikes*, D. for *Drums*, S. for *Serjeants*, E. for *Ensigne*, L. for *Lievtenant*, and C. for *Captain*.

Note, If you have but three *Drums*, then let the *Drum* in the second *Division* of *Pikes* be wanting: If only two, then upon a *march* the first between the third and fourth *Rank* of the *Front Division of Musket tiers*. The second between the third and fourth *Rank* of the second *Division of Pikes*.

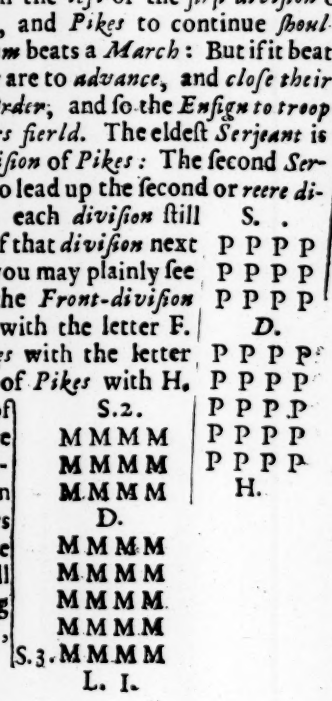
Note, that between each *Division* in *march* there ought to be *twelve foot distance*, six *foot* before the *Officer*, and six *foot* behind him.

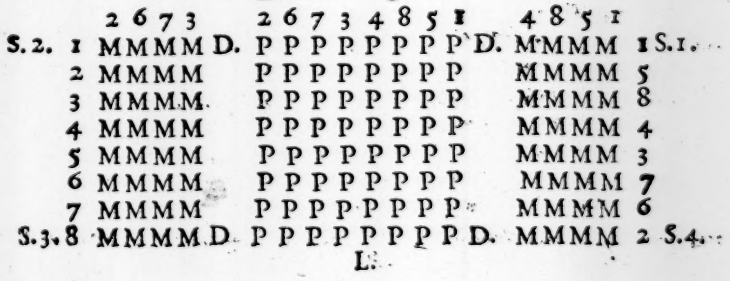
CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of drawing the Divisions up into a square.

WHen you would bring your *Body* again into *Battalia*, command your *Front-division* to make *Alt* or *Stand*; then give order to your *Ensign*, either by a *Serjeant* or by some *sign*, to lead up the *first-division* of *Pikes* on the *left* of the *first division* of *Muskettiers*, with his *Colours flying*, and *Pikes* to continue *shouldred* so long as the *Drum* beats a *March*: But if it beat a *Troop*, then the *Pikes* are to *advance*, and *close their Ranks forward to their Order*, and so the *Ensign to troop them up with his Colours fierld.* The eldest *Serjeant* is to lead up the *second division* of *Pikes*: The second *Serjeant*, in like manner, is to lead up the second or *reere division* of *Muskettiers*; each *division* still *marching* up to the *left* of that *division* next before it. The manner you may plainly see in the *Figure*; where the *Front-division* is marked in the *Reere* with the letter F. The *first-division* of *Pikes* with the letter G. The *second-division* of *Pikes* with H. The *second-division* of *Muskettiers* hath in the *Reere* the letter I. The other *Figure* following, in forme of a *square*, shewes their standing, after the *Divisions* are led up. All the *file-leaders* standing even in *Front* together, making one *Rank*.





Distance of *place*, and *motions* of the *body*, are a part of the Art *Military*, used for the *instructing* and *disciplining foot souldiers*, whereby to fit and enable them to the *quicke*, *true*, and *orderly* performance of all *formes* and *figures* of *Battaile*, as may best suit with the *time*, *number*, *place*, and *discretion* of the *Commander*. And may rightly be divided into these *five* generall heads, (viz.) *Distance*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-marches*, and *Wheelings*, which have (not unaptly) been compared to the *five Vowels*; for as without one or more of the Vowels, no word can be spelled; so without one or more of these, neither *form*, nor *action* can be performed.

CHAP. IX.

What is meant by Facing, with the use of the word, whether to be used or refused.

BEfore we come to shew the variety of *Facings* in the action, I think it will not be amisse to speak a word or two in the way of *definition*: What is meant by *Facing*? To which I answer, that, *Facing is a particular turning of the Aspect from one part to another, whereby the Front-proper becomes a Front-accidentall: and a Front-accidental may be reduced to his proper Front.* There are some so seemingly curious, that by no means they will allow of the word *Face*; concluding it altogether unnecessary: and no other word must be given but, *To the Right*, *To the Left*, &c. Yet I wonder that men will *stumble* at so small a *straw*, which cannot choose but be better used than refused: For the word *Face* is but one sillable, and quickly pronounced, and gives so clear an expression of the intent of the *Commander*, that it concludes it necessary. As for example, Should you command a *Company* to *Double Ranks to the Right*, and then command them *as* they *were*, and then say, *To the Left*, it might *puzzle* a good *Souldier* at the first to discerne whether he should *face* or *double*. The like mistake might be among *Counter-marches*: Wherefore I conceive that none can justly tax it for superfluous, [a] seeing the easiest expression hath always been accounted for the best. Yet spare me, for my intent is not to over-sway any man in his opinion, but rather to diliver mine; leaving all men freely to their own likings.

The word Face necessary to be used.

[a] *The easiest & plainest instructions are always to be preferred in the teaching your Souldiers.*

If my intent were to make a great book with a little matter, I might then here insert *figures* for every particular *Facing*, and their *Reducements* to their first *Posture*; which would take up divers sheets of paper, and to little purpose: For I suppose that every man, that knowes any thing, may easily conceive the *Idea* of any ordinary *Facing* in his mind. Wherefore I will shew but one or two of the hardest. You are to observe, that for the true performance of [b] *Facings*, every man is to turn upon the *ball* or *center* of the *left-foot*, & to move from the ground onely with the *right*: The *left-foot* being the keeper of *rank* & *file*.

[b] *In the exercise of the motion of Facing you are to be at open order, in rank and file.*

When you face to any hand, in the reducement you are to return by the contrary.

Face to the { Right. / Left. / Right and Left. / Right about. / Left about. / Right and Left inward. / Right, Left } Angle. / Foure Angles. } *Face as you were.*

The *Front-half-files* standing, it will be requisite for the *halfe-files* to the Reer to do as much by themselves; whereby they will the more aptly perceive, how that the *Subdivision* goeth under the denomination of the *half-files*, &c.

Halfe-

Half-files face to the { Right. / Left. / Right and Left. / Right / Left } about. / Right and Left inward. } *As you were.*

There is a word which is ordinarily used, and proper, for *reducements* of *Facings*, which is, *To your Leader.* *Face to your Leader a word of reducement.*

There is another *Facing* also sometimes *commanded*, which is, *Face to the Center*; and is most proper when the *body stands* in some *circular form*, or *hollow square*. We have also a *Facing* which causeth the body to *face* to the *Front*, *Reere*, and *Flanks*, which some call *Facing square*.

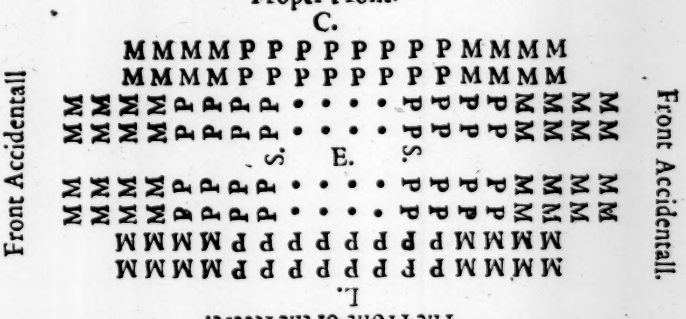
CHAP. X.

Of Facing square, and how to perform it; the usefulness of Facings, and the several parts thereof.

WHen we instruct our *Souldiers* how to *face square*, (if the *Body* be but 8. *deep*) command the *two first Ranks stand fast*, the *two last Ranks face about*, *the rest of the Body face to the right and left*. If the *Body* be *deeper*, we command more *Ranks* to the *Front*, and so likewise to the *Reer*. It will be very necessary for *young Souldiers* to move 10. or 12. *paces* upon every *motion* of *Facings*, whether they are *entire* or *divisional*. I wil now prick two several *figures* of *facing*, which will be sufficient to demonstrate all the rest.

The Command is, *Face square and March.*
The Direction is, *Two first Ranks stand.*
Two last Ranks face about.
The rest of the Body, face to the right and left.
(then) *March all.*

Proper Front.



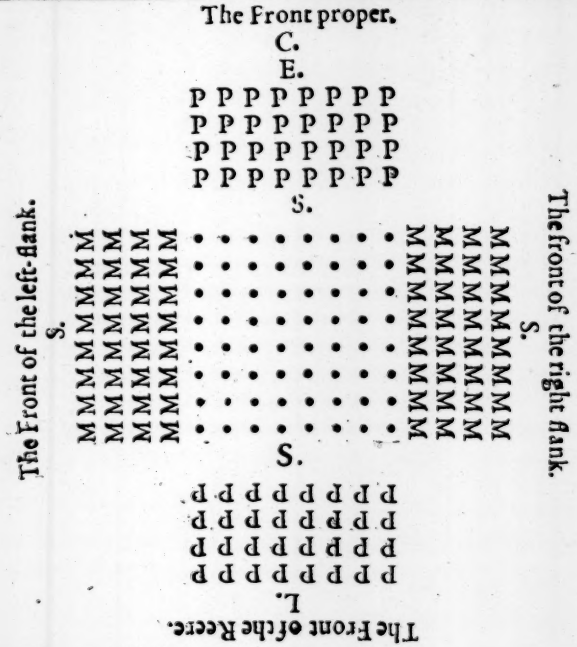
When your *Souldiers* begin any *motion*, let them *advance* their *Pikes*, and *shoulder* their *Musquets*. When they come to a *stand* (and have performed their *direction*) let them *order* their *Armes*; that is, to *rest their Musquets*, and *order their Pikes*.

To reduce them to their first order.

Face all about to the Right, March and close your divisions.
Face all to your Leader, (who then stands at his *Front-proper*,)
Facing square, another way, and *Marching* upon it.

The Command is, *Face square, and March.*
The Direction is, *Musquettiers face to the right and left.*
(Next) *Half-files of Pikes, face about to the right.*
(Last) *March all.*

The



To reduce this *Figure* to its former *order*.

Face all about to the Right, March and close your Divisions.

Face all to your Leader, and then they are reduced.

The necessity of Facings, and how usefull.

Facings are so *useful* and *necessary* that you may as well dispense with any one of the *grounds* of this *Art*, as with them; for they are *usefull* almost upon all occasions, & not only sooner *executed* than any other of the *motions*, but may be *needfull* when *Wheelings* and *Counter-marches* cannot be used, as in a *strait*. There are no more than *four Facings intire*, besides *angular*; but *divisional* there be divers: and indeed very necessary many of them be, as occasion may offer it self for their several *uses*; howsoever, peremptorily to say, there be so many and no more, were too restrictive, & I conceive hath been concluded by none; but it still rests at the *discretion* of the *Commander, to exercise more or fewer of them*, as he best liketh, and the necessity requireth, either for *action* or *exercise*.

Intire. *Intire Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *whole company* are directed one way.

Divisionall. *Divisional Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *souldiers* are at one and the same time *directed divers and several wayes*; as, to the *front* and *reere*, the *right* and *left*, or to all *four* at once, &c.

Angular. *Angular Facings* are so called, when the *aspect* of the *Company* is directed to the *right corner* man, which is the *right-angle*, or to the *left corner* man, which is the *left-angle*; or to the *four corner* men, which are the *four angles*.

The use of Angular Facings. *Angular Facings* were of great repute among the Ancients, for their *figures* called the *Diamond*, the *Wedge*, the *Sheers*, the *Saw*, and such like, when they made such *formes* of *Battell*: But in our *modern discipline* I conceive them to be of little or no use, onely thus we honour the memory of the Ancients, in their practice. And some say they are very fit for *exercise*; for that by their use the *souldier* is made more *apt* and *perfect* in the other. Therefore let this suffice to be spoken concerning *Facings*, and now be pleased to turn your *aspect*, and take a *view* how our *young souldiers* will behave themselves in the performance of the *doublings*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of Doublings, their use and parts.

Doublings are to most excellent and singular good use for the *strengthening* of any part of the *Battell*, according to the occasion, or discretion of the Commander; and *consists* of these *two generalls*, *Doublings of length*, and *Doublings of depth*, all times in *quantity of number*, sometimes both in *number* and *place*; both having this *restriction*, to be *doublings* of *ranks* or *flanks*: every particular *doubling* pointing at one of these, although there be *sundry* and *divers wayes* for the doing of them, each of them being to very good purpose, for some consideration or other. *Doublings* of [a] *ranks*, from what *forme* soever it be done, doth make the *number double* so much as it was before; and sometimes doth *extend* the *length* of the *Battell* to *double* the *proportion* of *ground* as well as *number*.

[a] *Doublings of Ranks alwayes extending the length, either in number, or place or both.*

Doublings of [b] *files* (or *flanks*) do also *double* the *number* in *depth*, and sometimes becomes a *doubling* both of *number* and *place*. Wherefore for the better understanding of *doublings*, observe with me these *six* usuall wayes following.

[b] *Doublings of files (or flanks) alwayes extending the depth, either in number or place, or both.*

The several parts or branches of Doublings,

Doublings of	Ranks.	1.	Doublings of	The Reere.	4.
	Halfe-files.	2.		Files.	5.
	Bringers-up.	3.		Halfe-ranks.	7.

Note, that the distance for particle and divisional doubling is open order in ranke and file. Note also, that the ordinary doublings of ranks and files is or ought to be performed by three steps, first stepping forth with that foot which is next unto the place named, and in the reducement returns by the contrary hand.

The first is the *doubling of ranks*, and is when every *even rank doubleth into the odde*. The second is, when the *halfe-files double their ranks forwards into the front*. The third, when the *Bringers-up double their ranks forwards into the front*. The forth, when the *front-halfe-files double the reere*. These first foure being *doublings* of *Ranks*, the *length* of the *Battell* being by them *extended* either *simply* in *number*, or both in *number* and *place*, The next two are *doublings* of *flanks*; the first whereof is the ordinary *doublings of files*, every one of the *even files* being inserted into the *odd files*, accounting from the hand named. The next is, the *doubling* of *halfe-ranks*, which is to be understood when one *flank doubleth the other*, either by *passing through*, *counter-march*, *doubling entire*, or *divisionall*.

You are to note in this *motion* of *doubling*, that as there is one part of the *body stands*, so the other part *moves*: the *standing part* is to be *doubled*, the *part moving* are those that *double*, as you may perceive by the *Figures*, which shew the manner of each *doubling*. That which next follows are the words of *command*, and *direction* for *doublings*, with the several *reducements* following next after them.

The words of Command for Doublings, with the reducements.

Ranks to the {Right / Left} double. { *Ranks as you were.* | Files to the {Right / Left} double. } *Files as you were.*

Bringers-up, double your Ranks forward to the right.
Bringers-up, face about to the left, march forth into your places.
Bringers-up, double your ranks forward to the left.
Bringers-up, face about to the right, march forth into your places.
Files to the right and left double { outward. / inward. } *Files as you were.*
Halfe-files, double your ranks forward to the right.
Halfe-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.
Halfe-files, double your Ranks forward to the left.
Halfe-files, face about to the right, march forth into your places.
Front-half files, face-about to the left, { and double the Reere to the right. / *March forth into your places.* }

Note that in doubling of ranks and files, if you double ranks to either hand, doub-

ing of files to the contrary, reduceth them. Or in doubling of files to any hand doubling of ranks to the contrary will reduce them

Front-halfe-files face about to the right. } and double the reere to the left. *March forth into your places.*

Front-half-files counter-march to the right. Front-haif-files counter-march to the left. } and double the Reere.

The word of reducement for either, is, *Front-half-files, as you were.*

Note that upon all motions of doublings, that they who are to double, before they move from their places, are to advance their Pikes, and shoulder their Muskets.

Half-ranks to the right, by counter-march double your left-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.*

Half-ranks to the left, by counter-march double your right-flank. *Half, ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth into your places.*

Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.*

Half-ranks of the left, double your right-flank. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth into your places.*

Half-files double your Front to the right intire. *Half-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.*

Half-files double your front to the left intire. *Half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*

Half-files double your front inward intire. *Half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*

When they have performed their doubling, they are to conform to the posture of those whom they double, whether it be Order, Advance, or shoulder.

Half-files double your front by division. *Half-files face about to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.*

Front-half-files double your reere by division. *Front-half-files face about to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.*

Front-half-files double your reere to the right intire. *Front-half-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.*

Front-half-filees double your reere to the left intire. *Front-half-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.*

Note that all intire doubings are to be performed at order in both ranke and file.

Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank intire, advancing. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth and take your places.*

Half-ranks of the left, double your right-flank intire, advancing. *Half-ranks that doubled, face to the left, march forth and take your places.*

Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank by division. *Half-ranks that doubled, face about to the right, march forth into your places.*

Double your ranks to the right intire. *Ranks that doubled, face to the left,* and *march into your places.*

Double your ranks to the left intire. *Ranks that doubled, face to the right, and march into your places.*

*Or it may be reduced by halfe-files (that now are) double your ranks forwards to the contrary hand

Double your ranks by division. *Ranks that doubled face to the right and left inward, and march into your places.*

Double your files to the right intire, advancing. *Files that doubled face about to the left, march down into your places.*

Double your files to the left intire, advancing. *Files that doubled, face about to the right, march down into your places.*

Files, double your depth intire to the { right. left. } * *Files that doubled, as you were.*

Files

Files, double your depth to the right, every man falling behind his bringer-up.
Files that doubled, as you were.
Files, double your depth to the left, every man falling behind his bringer-up.
Files that doubled, as you were.

CHAP XII.

Of Inverſion, and Converſion, and of doubling ranks.

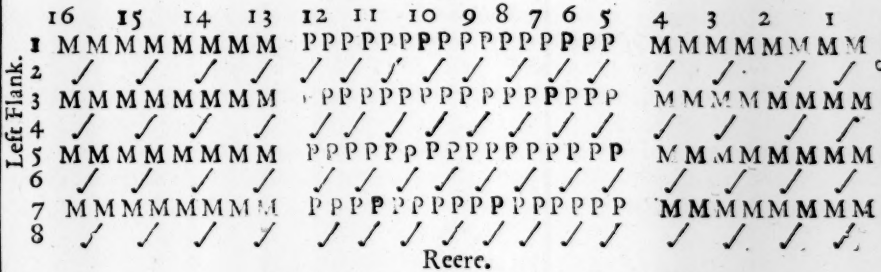
THere is yet another *doubling* of the *depth*, which is called *Inverſion*. But becauſe ſome out of their ignorance make little or no difference betwixt *Inverſion* and *Converſion*, give me leave for the cleering of the doubt, to place *Converſion* & *Inverſion* together, that by their contrary *effects* the difference may be the more *perſpicuous*, to ſuch as ſhall be deſirous to know them. Yet before I either enter upon *figure* or *command*, for *inverſion* or *converſion*, I hold it neceſſary to ſhew ſome of the *figures* of thoſe *doublings*, for which I have already given the words of *Command* and *Reducements*. And then next after them, I will place both the *words* of *Command*, and the *Figures* belonging to *Inverſion* and *Converſion*.

This *Figure* next following is a *doubling* of *ranks* to the *right*, where you may perceive how the *even ranks* are *inſerted* into the *odde ranks*: the *pricks denoting* the *places* they *ſtood in* before the *doubling* began, the *little line* or *ſtroke* drawn from the *pricks*, ſhewing the manner of the *doubling*: I think it would be needleſs to make another *figure*, to ſhew the *doubling* of *ranks* to the left; for the meaneſt judgment may by this *figure* eaſily apprehend what the other would be.

Note that in the doubling of ranks, the even ranks are to double into the odde, beginning always to reckon from the firſt rank.

The Command is, *Ranks to the right double.*
The Direction is, *Every even rank move at three ſteps into the odde.*

Front.



Reere.

Ranks as you were, or, *Files to the left double.*

CHAP. XIII.

Doubling of Files.

IN *doubling* of *files* ever obſerve this *rule*, that the *even files* are to be *inſerted* into the *odde files*: always beginning from the *hand named*: as for example, in this preſent *doubling* of *files*, the *left-hand-file ſtands faſt*, the ſecond *file doubleth* into it, the *fourth file* into the *third*, and ſo for the reſt. If your command be to *double* your *files* to the *right*, then contrariwiſe the *right-hand-file ſtands faſt*, the reſt of the *even files doubling* into the *odde*, accounting from the *right*, as before from the *left*. Thus much may ſuffice for the *doubling* of *files*: only take this by way of admonition, that as in *doubling* of *ranks* any way, you are to obſerve your *right-hand-leader*: ſo in *doubling* of *files*, you are to obſerve your *file-leader*; ſo that as neer as poſſibly may be, you may either in *rank* or *file* be altogether in one *motion*. If you pleaſe further to obſerve with me, that this *doubling* is a *doubling* of *number*, and not of *place*, the *depth* of the *battel* not being thereby *extended*, for further ſatisfaction obſerve this *Figure*.

In doubling of files, note if the doubling be to the left, as in this figure, then every man of the even files ſteps behind his left-hand man, at

three steps, every even file doubling into the odd files, always beginning to account with the outmost file to the hand named; as I have formerly said.

The Command is *Files to the left, double.*
The Direction is, *Every even file from the left, at three steps move into the odd.*

Front

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
1	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
2	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
3	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
4	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
5	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
6	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
7	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		
8	M	/	M	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	P	/	M	/	M	/	
	M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M		

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

The Reducement, *Files, as you were:* or *Ranks to the right, double*

CHAP. XIV.

Of Doubling by Bringers-up.

In this doubling of rank by bringers-up, as likewise in all other of like nature, they that are to move, are to advance their pikes. But if the Commander please, it will be best for the ease of the musketiers to be shouldred And upon all doubling of ranks whatsoever, let them be sure to observe their right-hand men.

THe *Doubling* which next followeth, shall be a *doubling* by *bringers-up*; of which sort, one *Figure* will be sufficient; which I hold most necessary to demonstrate in manner of *Motion*: the *Command* and *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *Bringers-up, double your Ranks forward to the right.*
The Direction is, *The last Rank pass forward to the right, and rank even with the* Front, *the rest following successively.*

Front.

	2	6	7	3	2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	4	8	5	1	
1	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	1
2	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	5
3	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	8
4	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	2 4
	8	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
5	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	6 3
	7	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
6	M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	7
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

The Reducement, *Bringers-up, Face-about to the left, March forth into your places.*
This *doubling of Ranks by Bringers-up*, differeth from the other *doubling of Ranks* which I first shewed, not only in regard of the *distance* between the *Ranks* and *quantity of ground*, but also in the *dignity* of the *Doublers*.

First,

First, it differeth in *place*, the former leaving *larger distance* between *rank* & *rank*, being *double that distance* they formerly *stood at*: this, to the contrary, continuing and preserving the *distance* they first had between each *rank*, and leaving all that ground the *half-files formerly occupied*; as you may in part perceive by the *little pricks* at the bottome of the *Figure*.

It differeth also in *dignity*, bringing the *best* and *second sort of Souldiers* together into the *front*: the other producing the *fifth rank in dignity to be doubled into the first*. *&c.* The manner of the *doubling* you may plainly perceive by the *figure*; the *motion* of this *doubling*, and way to perform it, is as followeth: The *eighth* or *last rank*, which are the *Bringers-up*, passe forwards *even in ranks*, through or between the *intervals*, to the *right* of them that stand before them, until they come *even in rank* with the *Front*: the *seventh rank* following those which *marched* from behind them, placing themselves in the *second ranke*; the *sixth* in the *third*; the *fifth rank*, or *half-file*, in the *fourth* or *reer* of the *front-half file*. This *doubling* maketh a very able *front*, in bringing all the best *Souldiers* together. And although it hath *diminished* the *number* in regard of the *depth*, yet it hath *doubled* the *number* in the *length*. This *doubling* is in *quantity* of *number*, not of *ground*. When you *reduce* them into their *places*, remember this, that the *rank* which last took his *place* in the execution of this *motion*, must first *march* into his *place* in the way of *reducement*: for as they are led on by their *bringers-up*, contrariwise they are led off by their *half-file-leaders*

This doubling is a great strengthning to the Front.

In the *doubling* of the *Front* to the *left* by *bringers-up*, it is the same; only differing in the hand: Wherefore let this suffice for *doublings* by *Bringers-up*.

CHAP XV.

Doublings of files outward and inward.

THe next *doubling* is a *doubling of files outward*; which works the same effect as to *double files* to the *right and left*: for the *right flank* is to *double to the right*, the *left flank* to the *left*. As you may plainly perceive by the following *Figure*.

The Command is, *Files, to the right and left double outward.*

The Direction is, *The out-most files of each flank stand, the even files from each flank double into the odde.*

Front.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
1	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
2	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
3	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
4	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
5	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
6	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
7	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		
8	M	M	M	P	P	P	P			P	P	P	M	M	M	M	
	M		M	P		P				P		P	M		M		

Left Flank. Right Flank.

Reere.

Files as you were.

This

This *doubling* of *files* to the *right* and *left outward*, ſtrengthneth *both* the *flanks* at *once*, by *doubling* their *numbers* in *depth*: But it *weakneth* the *inward part*, where it taketh *two files* clean away leaving a *large intervale* in the *midſt*. Some ſay, it is good when a *Commander* will grace any, to bring them through the *center* or *midſt* of the *Battalia*, But you muſt note, if you have an odde *file* you cannot ſo punctually performe it, as when the *number* of your *files* be *even*. The manner of the *doubling* you may perceive by the *figure*, the *motion* by the *little lines* drawn from the pricks, the performance is as followeth.

Doubling files to the right and left inwards

The *outmoſt file* of each *flank ſtands*, the ſecond *file double into them*; the third *file* from each *flank ſtands*, the fourth *file double* into the third. the ſixth into the fifth, and ſo likewiſe for the reſt.

If you would *double files* to the right and *left inward*, it is to be done the contrary way; for whereas in this *figure* of doubling laſt performed, the *outmoſt files* ſtand, the other *doubling outward* into them: contrariwiſe the two *inmoſt files* ſhould ſtand, the reſt *doubling* to them *inward*: and whereas in this there is a *larger diſtance* in the *midſt*, than is in any other part, the other part *contra* would be *cloſeſt* in that part. Some men do not approve of either of theſe *doublings*. I leave every man to his own choice. The *Practice* tends to *perfection*, and he that can do much, may do leſs when he liſteth.

CHAP. XVI.

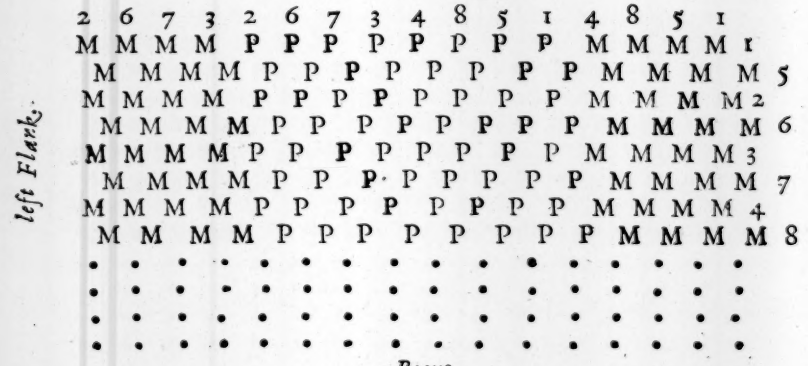
Of doubling by half-files

THe next doubling is a *doubling* by *half-files*, whereby the *length* of the *battel* is extended to *double* the former proportion of *number*, the *depth* being extenuated both in *number* and *place*. The *Figure* will demonſtrate unto you the manner of the *motion*, which is as followeth.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your ranks forward to the right.*

The Direction is, *Half-file-leaders paſs forwards to the right into the Front, the reſt of the ranks following ſucceſſively.*

Front.



Reere.

Half files face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Doubling by half-file by the Grecks called parembole. or inſertion Tact Æliam. 3. &c.

This *doubling of ranks forward* by the *half-files*, *is a Motion* generally approved of by all for ſerviceable, if it be done with conveniency. It differeth from the other *doubling* by *bringers-up* in *quality* not *in quantity*, (for therein they keep one proportion:) In *quality* it differeth thus: *The doubling by bringers-up* brought the *beſt* and *ſecond* ſort of *ſouldiers* together into the *front*, the *fourth* and *third* ſort into the *reere*: ſo that the *reer* was worſe then the *front*: this doubling by *half-files* brings the *beſt* and the *third* toge-

together into the *front*, and leaves the *second* and fourth in the *reere*: so that the *front* is made more able then the *reere* by ½. It differeth likewise in *motion*; For whereas in the other doubling by *bringers-up*, the *Motion* was begun by the last *ranke*, every *Ranke* following the *ranke* which came from behind them: this contrariwise is directly led forth by the *fifth ranke* from the *front* (if they be but *eight deep*) and so is executed more surely and suddenly; the *fifth ranke* passing into the *first*; the *sixth ranke* into the *second*; the *seventh* into the *third*, and so for the rest. For the **reducement*, when they are commanded to *face about to the left, and march forth into their places*, then as the motion was led on by the *halfe-file-leaders*, so in the *reducement* they are led off by the *Bringers-up*: *Doubling* of *halfe-files* to the *left* produceth the same effect, only the contrary hand.

Doubling by halfe files makes the front supreede the reere byone third.

* *In the reducement of this doubling the bringers-up are the leaders of the motion.*

CHAP. XVII.

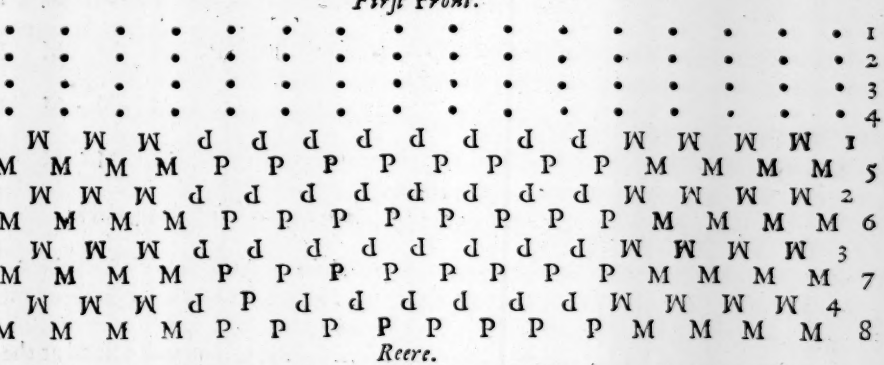
Of doubling the Reere by front-halfe-files.

THe *doubling* of the *reere* by *front-halfe files* is differing from the *doubling* last shewn, more in *manner* then *matter*; both concurring in substance, although differing in circumstance. To say more of it were more then needed, only peruse the *figure*, which presents it self unto you (as it is in *Motion*.)

The Command is, *Front-half-files, double your reere to the right.*

The Direction is, *Fron-half-files, face to the reere, and march down even to the last rank.*

First Front.



Reere.

Front-halfe-files, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

This *doubling* of the *Reere*, by the *front-half-files*, is to be performed after this manner. The *command* being first given) the *front-half-files face about to the left* (the *pikes* being all *advanced*, the *musquets* all either *poysed* or *shouldered*) and so being *led* by the *halfe-file-leaders* to the *reere*, which are those that hold the fourth place of *honour*, they *march directly forwards* to the *left* of the other part of the *body*, which stod *faced* in *opposition*, until the *leaders* of the *doubling* have *ranked* even in *rank* with the *bringers-up*, the rest *ranking even* with the other *standing ranks*, according to their *places*: If it be for *service* that this *doubling* is used, then the whole *Body* is to *face about* to the *reere*, being the *part* to be *doubled*: If only for *exercise*, then the *Commander* may (if he please) keep his *place*, and the *doubling* being performed, *face* the *whole body* to the *Leader*, and *command* for the *reducement*, *Files to the right, double intire advancing*, which *reduceth* each man to his first *place*.

The Rank which holds the fourth place of honour are the leaders of the motion.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of doubling the reere by Counter-march.

THere is another manner of doubling of the reer, by the front-half-files, contrary to that shewn in the precedent chapter, which is done by the way of the *Lacedemon counter-*

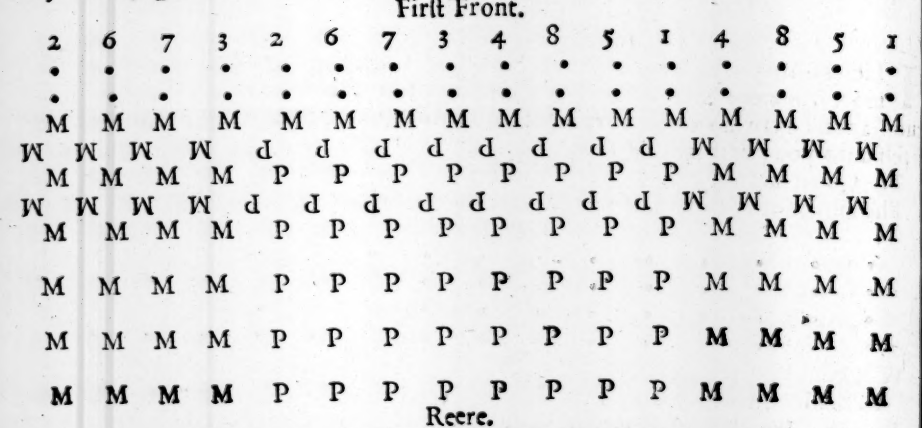
march,

march, which some would rank amongst the *Counter-marches*; because (say they) the *motion* is a *Counter-march*: But the *act intended*, or thing wrought, is a *doubling*; and if it were to have the denomination of a *Counter-march*, then it ought not to mix with any other part of the *Body*, onely to *counter-march the front into the midst*, and there to stand, without passing forward to the *Reere*, (which makes it a *doubling*) and then it might be accounted for a* *part-counter-march*. But as it is here commanded, and performed, it is a *doubling*. Observe the Command, and Figure following.

*A part-counter-march is when one moyor part of the Body counter-marcheth thereby not altering the number of the length or depth of the figure, but onely transferring one part into another, It is at the discretion of the Commander to face the Company which way he pleaseth, either for motion, or reducement of any motion formerly performed.

The Command is, *Front-half-files, counter-march to the left, and double the Reere.*

The Direction is, *Reere-halfe-files, face to the Reere and stand, the rest counter-march to the left and lose ground.*



Front-halfe-files, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

This *doubling* of the *Reere* by *counter-march*, produceth the same effect to the *Reere*, as *doubling the Front* by *Bringers-up* doth unto the *Front*: The *Counter-march* by which it is performed, is *a Counter-march of losse of ground*; we will speak more of it amongst the *Counter-marches*. The Command to reduce it is, (if the Commander stand at the hand of that part that is doubled) *Front-halfe-files, face-about to the left, march forth into your places.* If hee keep his first stand, having faced them to him, then, *Front-halfe-files, march forth into your places.* To double the *Reere* to the *left* by *Counter-march*, is the same, differing onely in the hand. I will next shew a *doubling* of the *left-flank* by way of *Counter-march.*

CHAP. XIX.

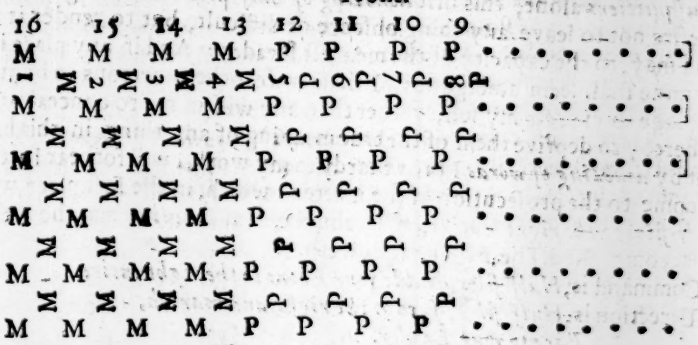
Of doubling Flanks by way of Counter-martch.

HAlfe-*Ranks* (or *Flanks*) are then said to be *doubled, when the depth of your Battalia is increased to double their former proportion of Number or place,* (or both;) which may be done divers wayes. But this Chapter and Figure is only to demonstrate unto you *the doubling of the Left-flank by way of Counter-martch.* The Figure followeth, as the *doubling* is in *motion.*

The Command is, *Halfe-ranks to the right, by Counter-martch double your Left-flank.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right, and counter-martch to lose ground.*

Front.



Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, March forth into your places.

This *Doubling of half-ranks by counter-march* is a *doubling of Number*, not of *place*; for the *depth* still retains the same proportion in *quantity of ground*, only augmented by one man, the *length of your Battalia* being diminished both in *number and place*; the *right-flank being wholly inserted into the left-flank*: as you may perceive by the figure. The motion is to be performed on this manner: *The half-ranks of the right face to the right, and then even in rank together counter-march between the Intervals*, until the out-most *file* to the *right*, which is marked with the figure 1, become into the out-most *file* of the *left-flank*, which is marked with the number 16; the second into the fifteenth; the third into the fourteenth; the fourth into the thirteenth; and the rest in like manner. The use of this *doubling* is, to strengthen one of the *flanks*, by bringing more hands to do present execution, the other *flank* being in more surety. The way for the Reducement of this motion is after this manner: *The half-ranks, that doubled being faced to the right*, then they which were the last in taking their *places* in the *motion*, now are the first which take their places in the *reducement*, orderly *marching in rank together*, until they come to their places; then *facing* to their *Leader* they become *files* again. The *left-flank* may in like manner *double the right by counter-march*; the difference is this: the *right-flank stands*, the *left-flank is inserted into the right*, as before the *right was into the left*. To shew another *Figure* for it would be altogether needless.

The use of this doubling.

Observe the manner of the reducement.

CHAP. XX.

Doubling half-files to the right entire, to accommodate the doubling of half-ranks.

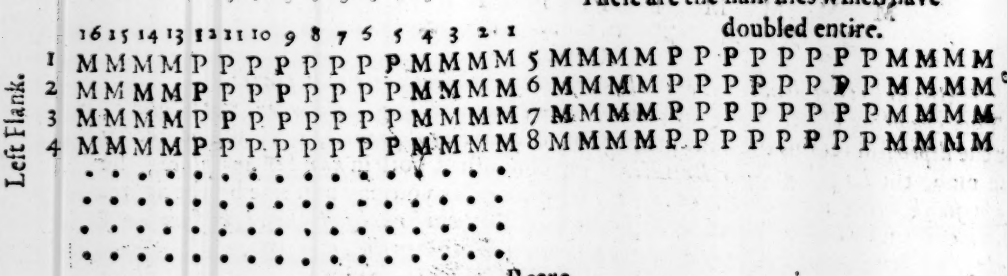
I Should now come to shew another manner of *doubling of flanks*, by *inserting the one flank* into the other, a different way from the last shewn: but if I should perform it as the Body stands in the ordinary *Square*, *flanked with Musquettiers*, then it would produce a mixture of Armes. To avoid which, before you enter upon this *doubling* of *passing in, through*, or *between your half-ranks*, cause your *half-files to double the Front to the right entire*; which being performed, you may then proceed to the *doubling* of your *flanks* any [illegible] without mixture of Armes. If I should have shewen this motion with

Pikes or *Musquettiers* alone, this first *doubling of half-files entire* might have been spared; but I desire not to leave any thing obscure or difficult, but to render it as easie and apparant as I may, to the capacity of the meanest Reader: And if any place in this small Treatise of mine shall seem ambiguous, I shall intreat the courteous to impute it to my lack of language to express my self, rather than any will in me to conceal or obnubilate the sense, whereby to deprive them of the true meaning of any thing in this book contained. But, lest by *doubling of words* I prove tardy in my work, I will forbear further circumstance, and come to the prosecution of the matter: which, in the first place, will be a *doubling of half-files to the right entire*, whereby the next *doubling* may be the more commodiously accomplished. The *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your Front to the right entire.*
The Direction is, *Half-files, face to the right and march,*
Face to your Leader.
March up and even your Front.

Front

These are the half-files which have doubled entire.



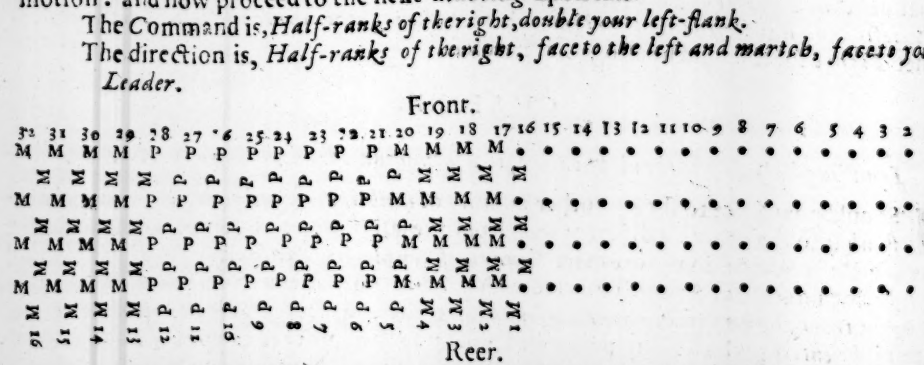
Reere.

This *doubling of half-files to the right entire.* I have fully expresst in the *Figure*, as the Body stands, the motion being ended; because we are to adde another *doubling* before we reduce them. This figure next following will be best shewn in the motion (or action) not fully performed: that thereby the manner may be the more easily discerned. But by the way observe, that this *doubling of half-files, is a doubling both of number and place*; for the *length* of the *Battalia* is not only *double so many a breast as they were before*, but they also have *extended* their *length* to *double* their proportion of *ground*, which formerly they did occupy. I forbear to speak more of this *doubling* until we come to shew it in motion: and now proceed to the next *doubling* upon this.

All entire Doublings are Doublings both of number and place:

The Command is, *Half-ranks of the right, double your left-flank.*
The direction is, *Half-ranks of the right, face to the left and march, face to your Leader.*

Front.



Reer.

Half-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your place

This

This *doubling* of *halfe-ranks* is a more speedy and sure *doubling* than the *doubling* of *half-ranks* by *counter-martch*: notwithstanding, it is most commonly used when the Body consists but of one sort of Armes, being either all *Musquettiers* or all *Pikes*. Nevertheless, because in my Figures I have as well *Musquettiers* as *Pikes*, I have made use of a *doubling by half-files intire*, and from that have *doubled my left-flank*, so to prevent the *mixture* of *Armes*. However, [a] *mixture* of *Armes* upon some occasion may be *necessary*. The manner to performe the motion is this, *The left-flank stands, the halfe-ranks of the right face to the left*, and then the *inmost file of the right-flank* (all the files of the right-flank being by this facing become ranks) *is the leader of this motion*, martching forth directly to their *left-hands, between the intervales of the ranks of the left-flank, untill that the sixteenth file, which now is become a rank, hath placed it self orderly in the two and thirtieth file*, (which is the out-most file of the left-flank;) *the fifteenth in the one and thirtieth, the fourteenth in the thirtieth, the thirteenth in the nine and twentieth, and so likewise of all the rest*. The place may be perceived by the Figure. The *doubling* is of *number*, and not of *place*. For [b] reducement to both these *doublings*, first cause the *halfe-ranks which last doubled*, to face to the *right*, and so to [c] *martch into their places*: They that *last* took their *places* in the *motion*, are the *first* that take their *places* in the *reducement*. The *doubling* of *half-ranks* being thus reduced; next for the reducing of the [d] *half-files*, (which were *doubled* before, for the accommodating of the *doubling of halfe-ranks*) command the *half-files to face-about to the left*, and *to martch forth into their places*: Where with I will conclude these sorts of *Doublings*, which require *open Order in rank and file*, and come next to shew *intire doublings*, which claime a closer distance for their true performance. And therefore, conceive them closed to their [e] *Order* both in *ranke* and *file*.

[a] *Mixture of Armes at some time may be necessary.*

[b] *The reducements to both these doublings, and first to reduce the doubling of the Left-flank.*

[c] *The doubling of half-files to the right intire reduced.*

[d] *Order both in rank and file the true distance required for intire doublings.*

CHAP. XXI.

The difference between intire and divisionall Doublings, and of doubling half-files intire.

HAving closed our Souldiers to their due distance, I will next proceed to shew *doublings intire*. But me thinks I heare some already enquiring, What is meant by *intire doublings?* and therefore, without offence to the curious, give me leave to be so curteous to tell them, That all *doublings* are either *intire* or *divisionall*. *Intire doublings* being these, or such like, as when the *files* or *half-files*, *ranks* or *half-ranks*, (according as the Command shall be given) doe *martch forth joyntly together, without division or dissipation, to double the part commanded*. *Particle* and *divisionall doublings* being such as I have formerly shewen: as when the *files* or *half-files*, *ranks* or *half-ranks*, are *dis-ranked* and *divided* into more *parts* of *places* than one. This may serve for way of distinction: I will now shew *intire doublings*, as they are in action; and first begin with *doubling half-files*. The Figure followeth.

What intire Doublings are.

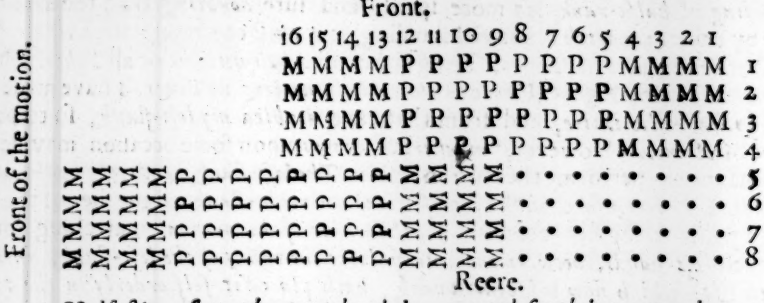
What is meant by Particle & Dividuall Doublings.

The Command is,

Half-files, double you front to the left intire.

The Direction is.

Half files, face to the left and Martch.
Face to your Leader.
Martch up and even your front.



Half-files, face-about to the right, march forth into your places.

This *doubling of half-files intire*, hath been held a better *doubling* then either the ordinary *doubling* of *ranks*, or the usefull way of *doubling* by *half-files* or *Bringers-up*; some of the causes are these: First, it makes no disturbance to the other part of the *Battalia*; but that it may either be executed in the time of *motion*, *exercise*, or *skirmish*. Secondly, it appeares another *solid Body*, to the great disheartening of any enemy. Thirdly, it is very apt for *ever-fronting*, being a *doubling* both of *number* and *place*. That it hath been used by *Antiquity*, take one example out of *Polybius*; Philopemen *the* Achaian *Generall having ranged his Battalias in form of* Plagiophalanx, *the* Lacedemonia Machanidas *being to confront him, march up directly opposite to his right wing, in form of a Herse* (*by them called* Orthophalanx) *but being come within convenient distance, he suddenly causeth the Reer-half files to double the front to the right intire, thereby equallizing the left wing of the* Achaians. The manner or way to performe the Motion is this; *The half files face to the left, and march till they are quite clear of that part of the Body which stands; then they face to the* Leader *and so march up, untill they are become even in rank with those which stand upon the right flank*: and then the Figure will be perfect. For the reducement, the word of command is, *Half files, face about to the right, march forth into your places*: Having faced-about, they march straight forth, untill they be clear of the *front-half files*; then they *face to the left*, and march straight forth, untill every man hath his right place, and then face right after their Leaders. The *doubling* of *half files to the right intire*, is performed after the same manner, onely differing in the hand.

Doubling by half-files intire, a serviceable doubling.

Polybius lib. 1 p. 64 1. B. *Salse & Elian* in his Tacticks the notes of the 32. Chap.

The direction for this doubling of half-files.

The word of Command and reducement of this doubling.

CHAP. XXII.

Of doubling the Front inward intire,

DOubling of the *Front inward intire*, hath been a Doubling as usefull as ancient: notwithstanding, most commonly used by great Bodies; as when one *Regiment*, *Division*, or *Maniple*, *moveth forward between two others*, thereby *seconding* or *relieving them*: whereby the *Front* of all the *three divisions* become *ranged* in an *even line*; but I have only taken upon me to shew the motion in a private Company. The Figure whereof followeth, as it is in the execution.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your Front inward intire,*

The Direction is, *Front-half-files, face to the right and left, and march, Stand, and face to your Leader. Reere-half-files, march up and even your front.*

Front

Front.

16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M M

The halfe-files.

M M M M P P P P P P M M M M 5
M M M M P P P P P P M M M M 6
M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 7
M M M M P P P P P P M M M M 8

Reere.

Halfe-files, face-about and martch: Front-half files, cloſe your Diviſion: Face all to your Leader.

It hath been the cuſtome amongſt ancient Souldiers and great Commanders, that in the matter of *Exerciſe* they ſhew ſome things which are moſt apt for a *private Company*; ſome for a *Regiment*, other ſome moſt uſefull for compleat *Armies*: ſo in like manner it muſt be the diſcretion of every Reader, (whether hee read for *apprehenſion* or *reprehenſion*) to ſuit and fit each Motion to his true end and purpoſe; and with the wiſe man, *rather read twice, than judge once*: and then perhaps, when the intent of the Author is *perceived*, his opinions may be *received*. Yet, what need I, or any other Apologiz ought in the behalfe of this *Form*, or any other ſuch like; ſith they are but the expreſſions of the *various Figures*, which proceed of the words of Command, uſed (almoſt) by every ordinary *Exerciſer of a Foot-Company*? Nevertheleſs, if *Æſops* long-ear'd beaſt paſſing by ſhould peep into this *Druggiſts-ſhop*, and quarell with the Compounds, I ſhall not ſtudy for a further anſwer then that, *The excellent and skilfull Phyſician can convert that into an antidote, which the unlearned Foole will make his Poyſon.* But leſt I be tax'd for digreſſion, the Motion of this Doubling is thus performed: *The half-files of the Front* face to the Right and Left, and martch till they have left a diſtance between them ſufficient to receive the *half-files* of the *Reere*, then *ſtand*, and *face to their Leader*. That done, the *half-files martch up and even their Front*. For the reducement of this Figure, thereare (as for all the reſt) divers wayes. But becauſe that it is neceſſary to ſhew one, let the *half-files* face-about to the *Reere*, and martch untill they are cleare of the *Front-half-files*, then cauſe them to *ſtand*, and *face to their Leader*: that being performed, command the *Front-half files* to *cloſe their diviſions*, and they are rightly reduced as at firſt.

The manner or way how this dobling ought to be performed.

The Reducement.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Halfe files doubling the Front by diviſion.

THis Doubling hath been very well approved of by Count *Manſfield*, Sir *Thomas Kelly*, Captain *Bingham*, and divers other moderne *Souldiers* of good eſteeme, who preferre theſe ſorts of Doublings before any other; becauſe theſe Doublings may be uſed in time of fight, without diſturbance to the other part of the Battell. The Figure ſtands as it is in motion.

The Command is, *Half-files, double your front by diviſion.*

The Direction is, *Half files, face to the right and left, and martch; Stand; Face to your Leader; Martch up and even your front.*

Front.

16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 1

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 2

Halfe-files of the left-flank. M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 3 Half-files of the right-flank.

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 4

M M M M P P P P • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M M M M M 5

M M M M P P P P • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M M M M M 6

M M M M P P P P • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M M M M M 7

M M M M P P P P • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M M M M M 8

Reere.

Halfe-files, face-about inward. Martch forth into your places

Themanner how this doubling ought to be performed. Thereduce-ment.

The way to performe this motion, is as followeth: the *half-files* are to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and to martch untill they are cleere of the Reere-part of the *front-division*, then they face to their Leader, and martch up, untill they be come even in rank with the *front*, & so ſtand: which perfects this *doubling*. The way to reduce them is as followeth. The *half-files* are to *face-about* to the *Reere*, and to martch forth-right, untill they are cleare of the *front-half-files*, and then they are to *face* to the *right* and *left* inward; and ſo to martch and cloſe their *diviſion*: then being *faced* to their Leader, they are *reduced* as at firſt.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of doubling the Reere by Diviſion.

THis next doubling ſhall be a *doubling of the reere by the front-halfe-files*, which will work the ſame effect to the *Reere*, as the laſt *doubling* by *diviſion* did to the *front*. It may be uſefull in the paſſing of a River, when the enemy chargeth or purſueth in the Reere. *The front diviſion either opening*, as you may perceive by the figure (next following) and ſuffering the *Reere-half-files* to paſs through them, they *maintaining the skirmiſh*, untill the other have attained the further banke of the river; or elſe the *Front-half-files* being *opened* to the *right*, and *left*, and *faced* upon the *Enemy*, *Martch* gallantly up, and *receive* the *Charge*, whileſt the others provide for themſelves. This motion may alſo be uſefull, when you have gained ſome place of advantage, for then by this *doubling of the Reere*, your Battaile will be both *lengthened* and *ſtrengthened*. And ſo by the ſudden bringing of theſe ſupplies into the *Reere*, you may not onely relieve your own, but happily *over-front* your *enemy*. The figure followeth.

The Motion advantagious for the ſtrengthning of the Reere.

The Command is, *Front-half-files, double you Reere by diviſion.*

The Direction is, *Front half-files, Face to the right and left, and martch. When they are clear of the ſtanding part of the Body, face to the reere and move down even with the reere.*

This was the Front before the Motion begun.

M M M M • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M 1

M M M M • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M 2

M M M M • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M 3

M M M M • • • • • • • • P P P P M M M M 4

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 5

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 6

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 7

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M 8

Reere.

Front-halfe-files, face-about to the right and left inward, Martch forth into your places

Th

The motion may be thus performed: The *Front-half-files face* to the *right* & *left*, & *martch* until they are cleer of the other *half-files* of the *reer*; Then they *face* to the *reer* & *martch* on until they have attained to be even in *rank* with them, whom they had command to *double*; which perfects the *doubling*. The way to *reduce* them, is as followeth: If you keep your place of the first Front, then let your *Front-half-files face about*, (according to the former directions) & *martch until they are cleer of the reer-half-files*, which stand; Then *face* to the *right* and *left inward*, and close their *Divisions*; So being faced all to their leader, they are reduced. Sundry & divers wayes there are for *reducement*, both of this and most other *figures*. Nevertheless I conceive, if I give one *reducement* to each *figure*, it may suffice to those that know little; As for such which know better, they know more wayes to the wood than one: And surely, should I enlarge my self but half so much as I might, (and indeed in some things, no more than were needful) I should then bring my *Volume* into too great a *bulke*; and by the *price* hinder some of the profit: But I am willingly silent in many things, to the end, that others may thereby be the better encouraged by my weaknesses, to take notice of their own *worths*, which may induce them to put pen to paper, and thereby produce some *worthy work*, which may tend to their credits, and their Countries good.

Instructions how to perform this doubling.

The Reducement.

The curious may find many wayes of reducements:

CHAP. XXV.

Of Doubling the Reer intire, by the Front-half-files.

THis next *doubling* shal be a *doubling* of the *reer* to the *right intire*, by the *front-half files*: which I intend not fully to demonstrate, but to deliver the *figure*, as it will offer it self in the *motion*. And I conceive it will not be amiss (for the benefit of the *Learner*) to render some *formes* in their moving *posture*, rather than to shew them all as they would appear, the *motion* being perfected; for the way of the *working*, gives a great deale more light to the *Learner*, than to shew the thing absolutely wrought. Neither would I have any think, although I shew these variaties of *doublings*, and acknowledge them to be of singular good use for the extention of the *length* or *depth* of any Battail; but that the wise conduct and skil of the Commander must so order them, that the *extending* of the *length*, do not too much weaken the *depth*; nor that the *strengthening* of the *depth* be not too *great a weakning* to the *front* or *length* of your Battaile. I might give examples how divers great Commanders, either by good fore-sight, or ill over-sight, have gained to *themselves* and their Countries, *honour* and *victory*, or *loss* and *slavery*. But others have been very plentiful in examples of this nature, which makes me forbear: For my intent is not to write a History of the actions of others, but rather to shew to such as are not so skilful, the *Postures*, *Motions*, and some few *formes* or *figures* of *Battel* with their several *Reducements*, *thereby to indeare such as have generous and publique spirits, to endeavour the attainment of this Military skill*. The *figure* of this present *Doubling* followeth.

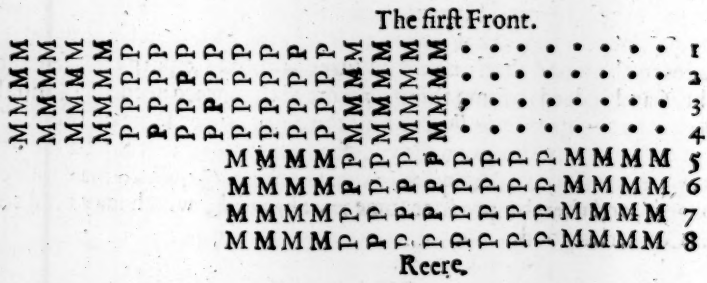
The

The Command is,

Front-half-files, double your Reer to the right, intire.

The Direction is,

Front-half-files, face to the left and martch: Stand, and face all to the Reer of the Battel. Martch, and rank even with the Reere.



Front-half-files, face-about to the left, martch forth into your places.

The way to perform this Motion, (or Doubling) is after this manner: The *Front-half-files* face to the Left, and martch until they are cleer of the *Reer-half-files*: then face again to the Left, (which is the *Reere*) and martch out-right until they *rank even* with the laſt *rank* of the *Reer-diviſion*; which gives concluſion to the Doubling.

Note the Motion.

Thereducements.

For the Reducement; Let your *Front-half-files* face-about to the Left, & martch right forth until they are cleer of the *Reer-half-files*: then face them to the Right, and let them martch into their places. That done, if the *Commander* goe to his *firſt front*, and face them all to him, they are reduced as at firſt. To *double* the *Reer* to the *left intire*, may be done after the ſame manner; only differing in the hand.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Doublings by flanks, or half-ranks intire.

A doubling of Number and Place.

HAving ſhewed the *Particle-doublings*, and the *doublings* of *Front* and *Reer intire* and by *diviſion*; I will next ſhew the *doublings* of *flanks* after the ſame manner. And will firſt begin with a *doubling* of the *left-flank*, by advancing the *right-flank*, and placing it before the leaders of the *left-flank*: which is a *doubling* both of Number and Place, and may ſerve to ſingular good uſe, for the *ſtrengthening* of any *flank* where it may be needful; for it makes the *Battail defenſible* on every part. The Figure, as it is in motion, followeth.

The Command is, *Double your left-flank intire, advancing.*
The Direction is, *Right-flank, Martch, Stand, Face to the left, and martch even with the left-flank; Face all to your leader.*

Front of the right-flank.

P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M

Right-flank.

Front.

M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .
M M M M P P P P . . . . . .

Left-flank.

Reere.

Right-flank that doubled, face-about to the left, martch forth into your places.

If you would have your *Musquettiers* to *double even* with the *Musquettiers* of the *contrary flank*, then it is no more but thus: Cause the *halfe-rankes* of the *right-flank* to *martch* forth-right, (as you may perceive by the Figure) untill the *Reere-rank* of the *right-flank* by *advanced* about *three foot* before the *front* of the *left-flank*; then cause that *flank* so *advanced*, to *counter-martch* their *Ranks* to the *right*; and then all your *Musquettiers* will be together on the *left-flank*: the *Pikes* likewise by themselves on the *right-flank*. If this be performed, then the *Reducement* must be answerable after the same manner.

This Reducement conceives the whole Body faced to the left-flank. If they face to the proper front, then Right flank that doubled, face to the right martch forth into your places. Or, Halfe-files that now are, double your front to the left intire. Either of these will do it.

For instruction how the *motion* of this *doubling* ought to be performed, (according to the words of Command and Direction formerly given) is as followeth. The *left-flank* (or *halfe-ranks* of the *left*) stands fast: the *right-flank*, both *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*, martch forth-right, untill the *Reer* of the *right-flank* be advanced before the *Front* of the *left flank*; as aforesaid. Then face them to the *left*, and cause them to martch untill the *Pikes* are *even* in *rank* with the *Musquettiers*; then face to the *Leader*, and the *doubling* is perfect.

For the *Reducement*, let the *right-flank* that *doubled face to the right*, and *martch* until they are cleare of the *left-flank* (or standing part of the Battalia:) Then cause them to face again to the *right*, and *martch* straight down into their places: Lastly, being *faced* to the first *front*, they are rightly *reduced*. The *right-flank* may also face about, and *double* the *left-flank* towards the *Reere*; both (for manner of Figure) work one and the same effect, differing onely in circumstance; the one being a *doubling advancing forwards before the Front*, the other a *doubling of the depth towards the Reere*, The *left-flank* may *double* the *right-flank intire*, either to the *Front* or *Reere*; but by this that hath already been shewn the others may be understood: wherefore I spare the Figures.

The Reducement.

CHAP. XXVII

Of doubling Flanks by Division.

THis next *doubling* is a *doubling* of *Flanks by division*: & without question, a serviceable *doubling*, and very usefull for some occasions. For, if you note the Figure, and conceive rightly what it will produce, (the *Motion* being ended) it makes a strong form of Battail, to give fire three severall wayes at once. The Figure followeth.

The Command is,

Left-flank, double your right-flank by division.

The Direction is,

Halfe-files of the left flank, face to the Reere: *Front and* Reere-*half-ranks, move cleare of the Body, and stand: Front-half-files, face to the right; and* Reere-*half-files, to the left; and move even with the right-flank.*



Halfe-ranks that doubled, face about inward; Martch forth into your places.

Note the instruction.

The *motion* of this *doubling* is thus to be performed: The *Reer-halfe-files* of the *left-flank* face-about to the *right*, and then both the *Front-halfe-files* and *Reer-halfe-files* martch forth-right, untill they are cleare of that part of the *Body* that *stands*; then each *division* faceth that way which they are to *double*, (which the *Front-halfe-files* must do to the *right*, the *Reer-halfe-files* to the *left*;) and so martch forth-right, untill the *Doubling* be performed. For the *Reducement*, you are to conceive, it may be diversly performed:

The reducement.

If the leader be at the *right-flank*, (which is the part that was *doubled*) then the *Reducement* is as followeth: The *halfe-ranks* that *doubled*, face-about inward, and martch forth-right, untill they are cleare of the *right-flank*, which *stands*; then the *Front-halfe-files* face to the *left*, the *Reer-halfe-files* to the *right*, and then *close* their *division*: the Leader going to his first *front*, and facing the whole *Body* to him, they are *reduced* as at first. If that the *right-flank* would *double* the *left-flank* by *division*, the matter is the same; differing onely in the hand.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of doubling Ranks *intire.*

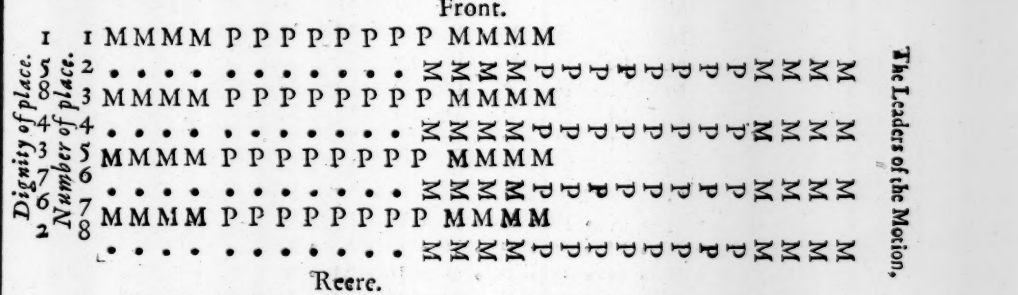
Note the difference of dignity in this doubling.

Differing from doubling by halfe-files in distance.

Doubling of ranks to the right intire, is a doubling both of Number and Place; and in some sort worketh the same effect as the doubling of halfe-files to the right intire: But differeth first in regard of the *parties*, which are the *Doublers*; and secondly, in the *distance* left after the *Doubling*. For the first, which is matter of *dignity*, the *fifth* and *first* in honour are ranked together in the *Front*, the *second* and *sixth* in dignity make the last *Ranke* in the *Reere*: So that the *Front* precedes the *Reere* $\frac{1}{4}$ in worth; whereas in the *doubling* by *halfe-files*, the *Front* exceeded the *Reere* by $\frac{1}{3}$. Secondly, it differeth for the *distance*, by leaving *Open Order*, at the least, between all the *ranks*. For further satisfaction, observe this Figure following.

The

The Command is, *Double your Ranks to the right Entire.*
The Direction is, *Even ranks face to the right, and Martch: face to your Leader; and rank even with the odde.*



Ranks that doubled, face to the left. Martch forth into your places.

The *motion* of this *doubling*, ought to be performed, as followeth; namely, if the *doubling* be to the *right*, as is above expressed by this figure: Every *even ranke*, *faceth to the right*. The *right-hand-man* of each *rank*, becomming the *leader* of his *rank file-wise*: leading them forth, and in their *martch* or moving forwards, a little bending to the *left*: that when the *left-hand-man* of each Rank, (which are the *bringers-up* of the *motion*) are cleer of the standing part of the *body*, by onely *facing* to the *front*, they may stand even in *rank* with the rest of the *company*. For *reducement* of this *doubling*, it may be as followeth. Command the ranks that *doubled*, to *face* to the *left*, and martch forth-right into their places. Or for variety, command *halfe-ranks* of the *right*, to *face* to the *left*, and *double* the *left-flank*. Both which, as the *Company* now stand, work one and the same effect. The *left-hand-man* of *each ranke*, being the *leaders* of the *motion* in the *reducement*. To *double ranks* to the *left Intire*, is to be done after the same manner; onely observing the *differences* of the *hand*. This *doubling* may also be done by *division*. But I spare the Figures.

Instructions for the Doubling.

Note that the left-hand-men, are the Leaders of the motion, in the reducement.

CHAP. XXIX.
Of doubling Files intire, advancing.

Doubling of *Files* to the *right intire*, advancing, is (also) a *doubling* both of *number* & *place*: for it increaseth the *depth*, to double their former *proportion* of number: as from *eight*, to *sixteen*; from *ten* to *twenty*; &c.

It also gaineth so much more *ground* before the *Front*, as formerly the *Battell* did contain: by *transferring* the *even Files* of the *body*, into the *ground*, before the *Front* of the *odde Files*: but this *doubling diminisheth* the number of the *length* of your *Battell*, although it preserves their *place*. I spare to speak further of it, only thus. Let the antiquity of this *doubling* plead for its excellency, and if that may hold for a rule, then this may be ranked amongst the best. For further directions, observe the following Figure.

The Command is, *Double your Files to the right intire, advancing.*
The Direction is, *Even Files advance forwards, and place your selves before the odde files to the right.*

Front.

	16	14	12	10	8	6	4	2	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
Left Flank.	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	Right Flank.
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	M	M	P	P	P	P	M	M	
	16 M	14 M	12 P	10 P	8 P	6 P	4 M	2 M	1
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	2
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	3
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	4
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	5
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	6
	• M	• M	• P	• •	• P	• P	• M	• M	7
	• M	• M	• P	• P	• P	• P	• M	• M	8

Reere.

Files that doubled, face-about to the left. Marteh forth into your places.

Inſtructions to perform the doubling. The *motion* of this *doubling* ought to be performed after this manner. The *odde files* are to *ſtand*, beginning your account from the *outmoſt file* to the *hand* named. The *Muſketiers* and *Pikes* of the *even files*, are to *advance* their *Armes*, and follow their *file-leaders*, every *file-leader* leading his *file* forth-right, before his next *file* to the right, untill the *bringers-up* of the *even files*, are orderly placed, before the *leaders* of the *odde files*: as you may perceive by the *Figure*. *The reduce ment.* For *reducement*; let the *files* that *doubled, face-about* to the *left*; the *bringers-up* of each *file* leading them forth-right, down the *Intervals*, which are on the *left-hand*, untill they are come *even* with the *Reere*: and then *ſtand*, and *face* to their *leader*, and they are reduced, as at firſt. The *doubling* of *files* to the *left Intire*, advancing, is after the ſame manner: it onely differeth in the *hand*: therefore I ſpare the *figure*. They that love to be curious, may likewiſe *double files*, by *diviſion*, *advancing*.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Files doubling their depth.

THis next *doubling* is a *doubling to the depth of the right Intire*: and is likewiſe a *doubling of* Files, as the other laſt ſhewn in the precedent Chapter; Being alike both for *number* and place: notwithſtanding it *differeth* from the *other*, both in *manner* of executing, and in ſome ſort of the *matter* executed. For whereas the other *doubling* by *advancing* of *files*, did *transferre* all the *even files* into the ground before the Front: Contrariwiſe, this *doubling* doth *transferre* them into the ground next behind the *Reere*. And as in the *other doubling*, you may perceive half the *file-leaders* to remain in the *front*, the other half to be *half-file-leaders*: This *doubling* hath half the *file-leaders* in the *front*, the other half being the laſt *ranke* of the *Reere*: *thoſe which were the former *bringers-up* being become the two *innermoſt* or *middlemoſt rankes*. The *Figure* followeth, being demonſtrated as the *Body ſtands*: the *Motion* being ended.

*By this doubling the bringers up become the two middlemoſt ranks.

The

The Command is, *Files, double your depth to the right intire, every man falling behind his Bringer-up.*

The Direction is, *Even files from the right face to the Reere, and every man place himself after his bringer-up,*

Front.

	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Left-Flank.	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	1
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	2
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	3
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	4
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	5
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	6
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	7
	•	M	•	M	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	P	•	M	•	M	8
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	8
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	7
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	6
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	5
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	4
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	3
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	2
		M		M		P		P		P		P		M		M	1

Reere.

Files, as you were: Or, *Bringers-up, double your Ranks forward to the left.*

The manner or way how this doubling ought to be performed.

The manner of the *motion* for this *doubling*, is as followeth: The Command being given, *Files, double your depth to the right intire, every man falling behind his Bringer-up*, then the *even files*, accounting from the *hand* named, immediately *face about* to the *right*, and the *Bringers-up* of each of the *even files* turn behind the *Bringers-up*, of the *odde files*, that *stand*; and so every man, as he cometh down to the *Reere*, turneth to the *left*, behind him that *marcheth* down the next before him, untill those that were the *Leaders* to the *even files* are become the *Bringers-up* to those which were the *odde files*. The *Reducement* is as followeth: *Bringers-up that now are, double your ranks forward to the left.* Which being performed, they are as at the first. If you would be instructed in the manner, turne back and see it, where the *Bringers-up double* their *ranks* forward into the *Front*: It is the fourteenth Chapter

The Reducement.

Some doublings omitted.

I have willingly past over another *doubling* of the *depth*, because it is much after the manner of that which is done by *advancing file upon file*; which is the *doubling* of the last Chapter. It differeth only thus: In the last Figure, the *even files marched* forth, placing themselves before the *odde files*: and in this which I have omitted, the *even files* are to *face-about*, and *march* forth-right towards the *Reere*, untill the *File-leaders* of the *even files* have placed themselves just behind the *Bringers-up* of the *odde files*; and then every man to *face* to his *Leader*. Some have a *doubling* of the *depth* by *Counter-march*; which I conceive scarce worth penning, yet willing to leave every man to his own liking; and as I do nothing in it, so I will say nothing of it. There are others that have written concerning *doubling* of *place*; nevertheless, because they are nothing but the *opening* of *ranks* and *files*, whereby the *length* or *depth* of your *Battell* is *extended*, and so *doubled* in *place*, and not in *number*, I forbear to write further of them; desiring not to treat of such things as are more *curious* than *necessary*.

Doubling the depth by Counter-march

Doublings of place.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Conversion and Inversion, with their words of Command, and Reducements.

ACcording to my promise, I will now shew the difference between *Inversion* and *Conversion*; whose very names are so intricate and troublesome (to many) that they are more puzled with the words then the work. Some are of opinion, that they are both one, differing in *letter*, not in *matter*. Others would have a difference, if they could tell how, or where. But generally they are so chopt and changed one for the other, that the *Souldier* cannot in truth tell which is either. But that you may not be deceived, take this for a *rule*, that *Inversion doth alwayes produce file* or *files*; and *Conversion*, *rank* or *ranks*. *Inversion* consists of *files filing*, or of *ranks filing*. *Conversion*, of *ranks ranking* to the *right* or *left*: or by *increase* of *files*, *ranking* by *even* or *uneven parts*: and of *ranks wheeling* to the *right* or *left*. I shall speak further of them in their several places. But by the way you are to observe, that *Inversion* and *Conversion* require larger *distance* of *ground* than any other *motions*; which must be the *Officers* care to open the *ranks* or *files*, to such *distances* as shall be necessary to contain the *ranks* or *files* so to be *Inverted* or *converted*; whether it be *double-distance*, or twice *double-distance*, or any other lesser or larger quantity of ground. The words of *Command*, with their several *Reducements*, are as followeth.

Inversion.

Inversion.

Files, file to the { Right. / Left. } — *File-leaders, lead up your files as you were.* — Ranks, file to the { Right. / Left. / Right & Left. } — *Files, ranks as you were.*

Files, file to the Right and Left by division.

Conversion.

Conversion.

Ranks rank { 3. 5. 7. or 9. to the Right. / 4. 6. 8. or 10. to the Left. / By increase 2. 4. 6. 8, &c. to the Right. / By increase 1. 3. 5. 7, &c. to the Left. / Intire to the Right into the Front. / Intire to the Left into the Front. / By division into the Front. } *Ranks, rank as you were.*

Ranks, wheele to the { Right. / Left. / Right & Left. } — *For reducements, Face-about to the* { Right / Left / Right & Left. } — *And wheel into your places. Then face to your Leader.*

Files, rank { 3. 5. 7. or 9. to the Right. / 4. 6. 8. or 10. to the Left. / By increase (to the Right) 1. 3. 5. 7, &c. / By increase (to the Left) 2. 4. 6. 8, &c. / To the Right / To the Left } into the Front. — *Ranks, file as you were*

To avoid the words of *Inversion* and *Conversion*, I have delivered the directions without naming either of them: onely I have expreſt the *six* first words of *Command* to be *Inversion*, and the last *sixteen* to be *Conversion*. For I conceive it altogether unnecessary to add to every word of *Command*, *Inversion* or *Conversion*; for by so doing, the unlearned and ignorant *Souldier* will be so confused with the strangeness of the word, that he will scarce by any meanes be made capable of the *matter*. For mine own part, I have ever held this opinion, that the easiest *expressions* are ever to be preferred, in the way of *instruction*, to *young Souldiers*. I might have much inlarged my self, in the words of *direction*, concerning

cerning this Subject, and have written concerning *ranks* and *files*, *ranking* by *decrease*; but these already expresst may suffice to demonstrate to any the grounds of all: and if any will be curious, by the practice of these, the rest will be found. I also at first intended to have drawn a Figure, the more lively to have expresst thereby each several word of *Command*; but, upon better consideration, I perceived that some of them would require much room, and not be so apt to print, without their Figures were cut, and were facile enough to the meanest capacity, by their words of *Command* and *Direction*; therefore, I conceive, the paines and cost may be spared, delivering the Figures of some few of them, that are *most necessary*, and for the rest, expresse by word what they will produce in Figure.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Files *filing in sequence.*

The command is, *Files, file to the right.*

TO perform this *word* of *Command*, The *right-hand-file martcheth away single*, the *second file* from the *right* falleth into the *reer* of the *first*, the *third* behind the *second*, the *fourth* behind the *third*; and so consequently all the rest of the *files* fall into the *reer* of their next *right-hand-files*, until all the whole *Company* become one *file*. It may be usefull to passe some narrow bridge, or thicket, or else-where, where but one at once can passe; the *Commander* being willing to preserve his *files* intire and whole. The way for the *reducement* may be after this manner: The place being convenient, every *file-leader* is to *lead* up his *file* to the *left* of him that *martcheth* before him, untill all the *file-leaders* are *even* in *rank* together; their *files* orderly following them. The *word* for the *reducement* is, *File-leader, lead up your files as you were.* For *files* to *file* on in *sequence* to the *left*, may be performed after the same manner, it onely differeth in the *hand*, but works the same *effect*: onely, the *right-hand-file-leader* led the other, and the *left-hand-file* fell last of all into the *Reere*; this contrariwise, is led forth by the *left-hand-file*, and the *right-hand-file* is the last that taketh place in the *Reere* of the *extended file.* *Inversion.*

Files, file to the right and left by Division.

Files filing by *division*, is wrought after the same manner; but differeth in this, *That the right-hand-file of the Company, and the left-hand-file of the same, begin to lead forth at one and the same time, in their several places: The files of the right-flank falling file-wise behind the right-hand file; the files of the left flank falling in like manner behind the left-hand file.* So that if the *Body* be *flanked* with *Musket tiers*, then this *filing* by *division* bringeth all the *Musket tiers* into the *Front-Division*, and the *Pikes* in the *Reere* of them. If there be an *odde file*, it most commonly falleth to the *right*. The *word* for *reducement* is, *File-leaders, lead up your files as you were.* This sort of *Inversion* is called, *Filing in sequence.* I will now shew another sort of *Inversion*, which is by *Ranks filing*: The which I will demonstrate unto you by two Figures, which will be sufficient to instruct the desirous.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of inverting Ranks; or *Ranks filing.*

THis following Figure of *Inversion*, is of *Ranks filing to the right*; *where all the Ranks are to be inverted to the out-most file to the right*: For the doing whereof, let all your *files* be *closed* to their *Order*, or *Close-order*, as shall be thought most necessary; the *ranks opened*, either *forward* or *backward*, to *double-distance*, or twice *double-distance*, (more or lesse) as the *Commander* shall see most convenient, according to his number. Having *closed* your *files*, and *opened* your *ranks* unto their due *distance*, then let every *rank* move after his.

his *right-hand-man*, untill every *ranke* ſtand right in *File*, after the *right-hand-leader* of his rank. In this Figure I have only *opened* the *four firſt ranks* to their diſtance, and *inverted* but *two* of the *four*. By which it may eaſily be perceived, both the *manner* of the *work* & the *matter* which is to be *wrought*. But if the *Commander* will perform it upon a *March*; then they ſhall not need to *open* to any *diſtance*, but to take their *diſtance* in the *execution*; which is the eaſieſt way, and will be thus performed. The *right-hand-man* of the *firſt rank* *martcheth* forth-right; all his *rank facing* to the *right*, and *martching file-wiſe* after him. The *right-hand-man* of the ſecond *rank* falling immediately after the *left-hand-man* of the firſt *rank*, all his *rank* in like manner following of him. The *right-hand-man* of the third *rank*, after the *left-hand-man* of the ſecond; his *rank* likewiſe following of him. And ſo for all the reſt, untill they are all become one *file*.

This kind of Inverſion beſt performed marching.

Ranks file to the right.
Front.



This *Ranks filing*, is ſooner performed, and *reduced*, then *files filing*: and in the *reducement* will preſently be ready to make reſiſtance, againſt any oppoſition in the *front*. Whereas if *files file*, it wil be a great while before the *file-leaders* will be able to make *good* the *front*: the manner of the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, is as followeth. If they were *eight* men before in *rank*, then the firſt eight men, *rank* to the *left*, into the *front*, The next *eight* men *rank* next after them, which makes the ſecond *rank*. The third *eight* men, *ranking* to the *left*, make the third *rank*. And ſo forward for the reſt, untill they are *reduced*, as at the firſt. But it may be, that ſome will object, that in this *Figure* there is *mixture* of *Armes*; which if they will avoid, they may either *martch* forwards their *Musquetiers* of each *diviſion*, and *cloſe* them before the *Pikes*; and *invert* them firſt. Or they may *martch* forwards their *Pikes* firſt, and leave their *Musquetiers* to come in the *Reer*. Or if they pleaſe, they may upon a deep *martch*, firſt *invert* the *front-diviſion* of *Musquetiers*, then their *Pikes*, and laſt the *reer-diviſion* of *Musquetiers*; which way ſoever it be done, the word for *Reducement* will be, *Files*, *Rank as you were*.

The reducement.

Mixture of Armes hath many times proved advantagious.

By this deep Martch is to be underſtood aright induction according to Ælian.

M M P P P P M M	4
M M P P P P M M	5
M M P P P P M M	6
M M P P P P M M	7
M M P P P P M M	8

Reer.

Files, rank as you were.

Ranks, Files to the left.

Ranks file to the Left, is performed after the ſame manner. It *differeth* from this laſt done, but onely in the *hand*. And whereas the *right-hand-file-leader*, was the *leader* of the laſt, this would be led by the *left-hand file-leader*: The *left-hand-leader* of each *rank*, leading forth his *Rank file-wiſe*, as before it was performed, but to the *contrary hand*; I ſpare the *Figure*.

CHAP.

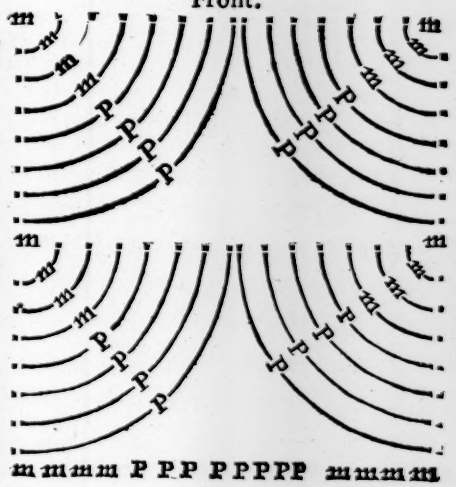
CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Ranks filing by diviſion; *and how uſefull.*

THis next *Figure* of *Inverſion* is, of *Ranks* filing *by diviſion*; and is a *doubling of the depth, by unequall proportion*: For whereas in moſt of all other *doublings* the number of the Length or Depth is augmented but to double their former proportion of number, this *doubling* of *Inverſion* makes their Depth ſo many times more in number as there are *Files* to *double*; or half ſo many times, if it be done by *Diviſion*; as in the next following *Figure*. It hath been of ancient uſe amongſt the *Grecians*, and in theſe our latter times it hath been held of ſpeciall uſe, to avoid the ſhot of the great Ordnance, when of neceſſity we are to *martch* againſt any *Battery*. It hath alſo been held good, to prevent the imminent danger of ſome great *ſhowre* of *ſmall ſhot*, likly to be poured out upon the *Front* of your *Battalia* It may alſo ſerve for a *guard*, honourable *paſſage*, large *intervaile*, *ſtreet*, or *gallery* (as ſome call it) for any great *Perſonage* or *Commander* to paſſe through. It is alſo of common uſe for *lodging* of the *Colours* or *Enſigne*: And many other ſuch like.

Ranks, file to the right and left by diviſion.

Front.



Tactick. Ælian. Chap. 30. pag. 6. line the laſt.

m m m m P P P P P P P P m m m m

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M

Reer.

Files, rank as you were.

For instruction how to perform this *motion*, It is the same with the last *Figure*; differing onely in this, that as in the other *Figure* all the whole *ranks* turned to the *right*, behind their *right-hand-men*; in this *motion*, the *left-flank*, (or *halfe-rank* to the *left*) fall into the out-most *file* to the *left*; the *halfe-ranks* to the *right*, behind their severall *right-hand men*: as you may perceive in part by the *Figure*. I have shewn the *Figure*, in the manner of the *action*, not fully performed. The *pricks rank-wise*, denoting the places from whence they came: The quarter-circles, shewing the way of the *motion*: the *pricks file-wise*, directing or shewing their places they are going to.

Reducement by Conversion.

For *reducement* to the *Figure*, it is no more than this: The *Ranks* which before *inverted* into *files*, now again *convert* into *ranks*, as they were. The *word* of Command for it, is, *Files, rank to the right and left inward, as you were.*

Military Discipline so much slighted by middle sort of Citizens.

I hope this that hath already been shewn, will be sufficient (at least in some small measure) to give satisfaction to those, which as yet have not known what is meant by *Inversion*: Yet I could wish, that such as exercise the Companies of the Trained Bands of this Kingdome, would rather make use of the plainer *word* of *demonstration*; which is, *Ranks, file*; or *Files, file*; and leave out the word *Inversion*, as a word not sutable with the capacity of divers of our Souldiers of the Trained-Bands, especially of this City, where Porters, Colliars, Water-bearers, & Broom-men, are thrust into the rooms of men of better quality, as though they themselves were too good to do the King and their Country service.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the severall parts of Conversion: and how they are to be understood.

THe next branch of *Discipline*, which I offer to your view, shall be of *Conversion*; & of its severall parts: Wherein, if there be any that think me tedious, let them turn it over, and settle on some other part, which may be to them more delectable; whilest I, in the mean time, shall endeavour to give content to all: neither stuffing out my book with *needlesse discourses*, nor yet too much abbreviating the matter, whereby to render it too obscure to the commonest capacity. Wherefore take their parts as they hereafter follow.

Conversion consists of these parts, *viz.* Of

- Ranks ranking
  - *In equall parts.* 1
  - *In unequall parts.* 2
  - *Intire into the Front.* 3
  - *By division into the Front.* 4
  - *By wheeling to the Flanks.* 5
- Files ranking
  - *By equall parts.* 6
  - *By unequall parts.* 7
  - *Intire into the Front.* 8

Ranking in equall parts. This manner used both by Greeks and Romans; and is the best for a strait.

First, of *Ranks ranking* in *even* or *equall parts*: Which is to be understood, *when there are twelve, or twenty, (more or lesse) martching abreast, and the Commander (either for the narrownesse of a passage, or for some other intent (causeth his ranks to rank three, or six abreast, or five, ten, or any other number, either according to the place, or occasion; every rank holding equality of number.*

Ranking in unequall parts.

Secondly, *Ranks* then *rank* by *unequall parts*, when they *rank by increase*, or *decrease*: As when the first *rank* shall be *three*, the next *five*, then *seven, nine*, &c. which is commonly used, for the making of *Diamond* and *Triangular Figures.*

Rank-ranking intire into the Front.

Thirdly, *Ranks* then *rank intire into the Front*, when the *first rank stands*, the *second rank placeth it self on the right or left of the first*, the *third by the second*, the *fourth by*

the

the third, and ſo forward for all the reſt, untill *all the ranks*, (either to the *right* or *left*) according to direction, *are become one Ranke in the front.*

Ranks ranking by diviſion into the Front.

Fourthly, *ranks* then *rank by diviſion into the front*, when the *ſecond Ranke*, and all the reſt of the ranks behind, open to the *right* and *left*: the one part going to the *right*, the other to the *left*; *ranking even* with the *firſt*, as before, and all together making one *Rank*.

Ranks ranking to the flanks by wheeling.

Fifthly, *Ranks* then *rank* to the *flanke*, or *flanks*, when either the *right-hand-man* of *each rank*, or the *left-hand-man* (or both together) *are as it were the Hindge of the motion, the reſt of each rank wheeling about them, to the right or left*, or each hand by diviſion, *untill that every rank be brought into the diſtance which was before the Ranke*; *between the right-hand-man of the rank next before, and the right-hand-man of the ſame rank you ſtand in.* If it be to the *left*, then they *wheele* into the *diſtance* between the *left-hand-leaders* of each Rank. If it be by *diviſion*, then *half* the rank wheeleth to the *right*: the other *half* to the *left*, and produceth two Ranks.

Files ranking in equal parts.

Sixthly, *Files* then *rank by equall parts*, when they rank three, foure, or five abreſt, (more or leſſe) ſtill keeping the number of men in ranke, of due proportion. If you rank three abreſt (either to the *right* or *left*) and your *File* be but eight deep, then the firſt ſix men make two ranks, the third rank muſt be made up by the leader of the ſecond *file*. And ſo for all the reſt. If you rank four, and the *files* be eight *deep*, then every file makes two ranks. If you rank five, the *files* being eight *deep*, the the firſt five men make a rank; and the firſt two men of the ſecond *file* from the hand named, make up the *ſecond* rank. Five of the other ſix, make up the *third* rank. And ſo forward for the reſt. If the *depth* of the *file* were ten men, then it would make two *even* ranks.

Files ranking by unequall parts.

Seventhly, *Files* then rank by unequall parts, when they either rank by progreſſionall increaſe or by decreaſe: As when every rank exceeds the rank before it, by two, three, or four, be it more or leſſe. Or elſe that each rank decreaſeth, after the ſame manner.

Files ranking intire into the Front.

Eighthly, *Files* then rank intire into the *front*; when there is *ſo much diſtance between file and file, as will contain each file, rank-wiſe: Every man in the file marching forward to the right or left, as ſhall be commanded, untill he ſtand even in rank with the leader of his file, which brings the Body into one rank.*

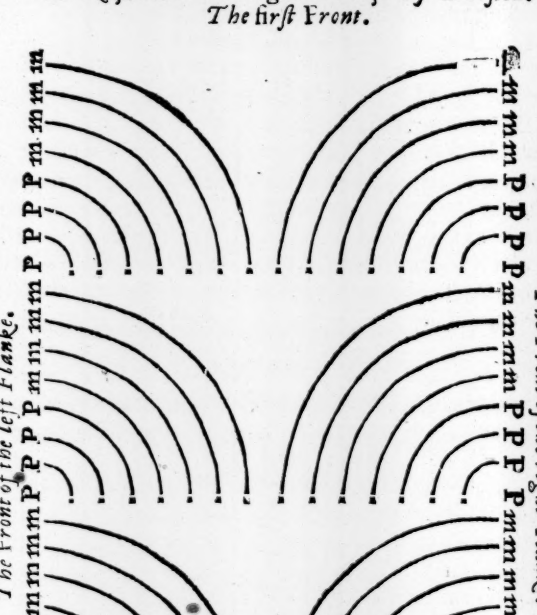
CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Ranks wheeling by converſion.

IF I would ſtrive to be *curious*, I ſhould need no other *ſubject* to lengthen my diſcourſe, but onely this of *Inverſion* and *Converſion*; which of it ſelf would yeeld matter ſufficient to make a book. But I have taken a larger taske: And therefore like the Artiſts in *Geography*, who ſometimes by a *ſpot* preſent a *Towne*, and by a *wrinckled line* a large River; ſo muſt I crave of the favourable Reader, that in this ſmall Treatiſe of *Diſcipline*, he will not expect that I ſhould inlarge my ſelf ſo amply, as I might upon every part. For then my book would grow beyond his bounds, and I beyond my promiſe. But leſt I be taxed for digreſſion, this that hath already been ſhewn may ſuffice for *converſion*. But becauſe it may be expected, that I ſhould ſhew *converſion* in *Figure*, as well as the other *Motions*, therefore to ſatisfie ſuch, I ſhal demonſtate two *Figures* unto them, which may ſerve for all the reſt. The one ſhall be of ranks *wheeling by converſion*: the other of *files ranking four to the left*. The word of *Command* for the firſt ſtands placed right over the *Figure*.

This *figure* of *Conversion* is of *rankes wheeling to the right and left*: or *rankes ranking to each flank by wheeling*. It differeth from *ranks filing*, both in manner and matter. In the manner thus, Whereas in *ranks filing* to the right and left, the *right* and *left-hand-file-leaders* preserve and continue their places; and with that, their honours: In this *wheeling by conversion* to the *right* and *left*, contrariwise the *innermost file-leaders* become the *outmost* men in that part where the *front* stood; the other *file-leaders ranking even* within them. Some men have called this, *Ranks filing by Conversion to the right and left*, But corruptly. For *conversion* alwaies produceth *ranks*, as I formerly said: and *Inversion*, *files*. But their mistake groweth from this, that when *Ranks wheel to the right*, or *right* and *left*, then (say they) they by *wheeling* become *file*, or *files*, which is a palpable mistake. For when we have any *command* for *wheeling*. It is a *maxime* for us to *wheele our aspects unto the hand or part named*. By which doing, we either become rank or ranks; and not files, as some have fought formerly to maintain. One use, among many, for this *motion* is. It is the speediest way for a great *Body* (if they have their due distance) to *give fire to one or both flanks* that as yet I know of. The way to perform this *motion*, is as followeth. The *right* and *left hand-men* of every rank become the *Hinges* of the *motion*: the rest of each rank *wheeling by equall division* to the right and left about, and above their right & left-hand-Leaders, untill they become ranks to the flanks; as you may perceive by the *Figure*, where the *pricks* denote unto you the places they stood in before the *motion*: the *quarter circles*, shewing the *way* of their motion, themselves being converted into two ranks, sheweth the motion executed, I have onely *converted* three of the ranks; for it would have taken too much room, to have *wheeled* all the *ranks*. And it is easie by this that is shewn to conceive the rest. If you would avoid *mixture of Armes*, then place all your *Musketiirs*, either in *front* or *reer*; or else *wheel* only your *Musketiers*, and leave your *Pikes* standing; Or it may be done, the *body matching* at *length*, the *Musketiers* being in the *front* and *reer divisions*. The *word* for the *reducement is*, *Ranks, rank as you were*.

Ranks, wheel to the right and left by division.
The first Front.



P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P

P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
Reer.

The easiest way for the *Reducement*, will be first for to *face* about to the *Reer*, and then to *wheel back* into their *Rankes*. Then *face* to their *Leader*; and they will be reduced as at first. Now we will come to shew the next *figure* of *conversion*, which is of *files* converted into *Ranks* by *equall proportion*.

CHAP

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Files *ranking in equall parts.*

IN this *Chapter* I intend to ſhew the *manner*, of *files ranking by Converſion in equall parts*; which *motion* I have ſeen uſed by ſome *Commanders*, at ſuch times as their *Companies* have been but ſmall, having not had above two or three *files* of *Muſquettiers* upon a *flank*, and being willing to *martch forth* their *Companies* in *diviſions*. And this, becauſe that two *a-breſt* would be ſomewhat improper (unleſſe it were upon neceſſity, in ſome narrow *paſſage*(& that three *a-breſt* is alſo ſomewhat with the thinneſt; therefore to augment the *Front* of their *martch*, they have *ſhortned* ſomewhat of their *depths*, in each *diviſion*, by cauſing their *files* to *rank* four or five, according as their *depth* may be, when the *Command* ſhall be given. This *motion* of *Converſion* may alſo be uſefull for *larger Bodies*; for if upon a *martch* you are to paſſe thorow ſome *ſtrait*, where not above four or five can *martch a-breſt*, and that being paſt thorow, you are to direct your courſe to the *right* or *left*: If your way be to the *right*, then cauſe your *files* to *rank* to the *left*: If to the *left*, then let the *files rank* to the contrary hand. For by ſo doing, having paſt the *ſtrait*, and faced your *Body* that way which you intend your *Martch*, by commanding the *File-leaders* to *martch*, and the *half-files* to *ſtand* and take their places, your *Body* will be led again by their *proper File-leaders*, all *a-breſt*: the *Muſquettiers* becomming again the *flankers*, which in the paſſage of the *ſtrait* were in the *Front* and *Reere*. For the better underſtanding the manner of the *motion*, obſerve the following *Figure*.

Files, rank four to the left,

Front.

This was the

1 File	M	M	M	M	*f*		
	M	M	M	M	*h*		
2 File	M	M	M	M	*f*		
	M	M	M	M	*h*		
3 File	M	M	M	M	*f*		
	M	M	M	M	*h*		
4 File	M	M	M	M	*f*		
	M	M	M	M	*h*		
5 File	P	P	P	P	*f*		
	P	P	P	P	*h*		
6 File	P	P	P	P	*f*		
	P	P	P	P	*h*		
7 File	P	P	P	P	*f*		
	P	P	P	P	*h*		
8 File	P	P	P	P	*f*		
	P	P	P	P	*h*		

9
P *f*
P
P
P P *h*
P.

16 15 14 13 12 11 10

M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P
M M M M P P P

The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *Command* being firſt given (as above-ſaid) the *right-hand-file-leaders* leadeth forth his *file*, and the *three next men* behind him move forwards to the *left* of each other, until they *rank* even *a-breſt* with their *file-leader*. The next *four* in like manner *ranking* to the *left*, make the ſecond *rank*. The *file-leader* of the ſecond *file* placeth himſelf next after him that was the *halfe-file-leader* of the firſt, which now is become the *right-hand-man* of the ſecond *rank*, the *three next men* behind him making up of his *rank* in like manner: And ſo forward for all the reſt, untill the *Motion* be fully perfected. This *converts* each *file* into two *ranks*, and brings all the proper *file-leaders* and *halfe-file-leaders* to make the *out-moſt file* to the *right*; the *bringers-up* both of the *Front* and *Reer-half-files* make the *outer-moſt file* to the *left*. The figures of number which are on the *left-flank* of the *Figure*, in which the word *file* added to each of them,

Direction for files ranking to the left.

them, demonstrates the *places* of the *first, second, third,* and *fourth file*; and so consequently for all the rest, according to their *former standing*, and the *places* they now occupy, being *converted* into *ranks*. The letters *f* and *h*, which are placed on the *right-flank*, shews the *places* of those which were the *file-leaders* and *half-file-leaders*; each of the proper *file-leaders* having now his *half-file leader* next after him. I have shewen this *Figure* partly *performed*, partly *performing*, and partly *standing* as before the *Motion* began.

The Reducement. For *reducement* of this *Motion* of *files ranking foure to the left*, one way is, to cause your *ranks* to *file* (or *invert*) *to the right*: which being done, *Command every File-leader to lead up his file to the left*; and so every man will have his *place*. For another way, *Face the whole Body to the right, and command the file-leader to martch, and half-files to stand, and take their places*; and then they are all *reduced*, onely the *File-leaders* of the *right-flank* are on the *left*, and the *File-leaders* of the *left-flank* are on the *right*; which is *reduced* by any *intire Counter-martch of rank or file.*

A second way of Reducement.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

The conclusion of Doublings.

THere are yet another sort of *Doublings*, both of *length* and *depth*, which are performed by *divisionall wheelings*: which because they have ever been accounted for *wheelings*, I will not displace them; but still rank them in their former places, although in truth they are *Doublings*: The *working part* indeed is *wheeling*; but the *intent*, or *thing wrought*, is *Doubling*. I will speak further of them, when I come to shew them in their several places. And here I mean to set a *Period* to our *Doublings*: Concluding, that those *Souldiers* who can put every one of these to his right use, as also give to each his right *reducement*, must needs be skilful and expert in this part of the *Art Military*. And contrariwise, they that are ignorant in these *Doublings*, can never truly attain to the right-managing of a *Foot-company*, either for *exercise* or *service*. For *Doublings*, indeed, are the onely *Motions* for *variety* and *alteration* of *Figures*, or *formes* of *Battaile*; no other *Motions* doing the like: And therefore, *Doublings* must needs be accounted the most *excellent* amongst all the *Motions*.

You that have eyes to read, and skill to judge,
And have perus'd these Doublings *I have done,*
Though I have tedious been, yet do not grudge;
For you know well, I have skipt over some:
But marvell not, the cause I do not shew them;
It is not much materiall for to know them.

Those that are skilfull in the Art *of* Warre,
And take delight to exercise their Men,
Shall find more pleasure in these Doublings *farre,*
If that they intermix them now and then:
And so contrive their Doublings *in these cases;*
And lastly, one word brings them to their places.

Why in our Country *do we Captains chuse,*
That have no skill, nor art-full inclination?
They do themselves and Country much abuse,
Thus to deceive them in their expectation.
I think the Cause of this fault in our Nation
Is, that our Gentry holds not Armes in fashion.

But some, perhaps, will say I am too bold,
There's no such need for Captains to have skill;
The Muster-masters *have enough (some hold)*
The Captains and the Counties for to fill.
So whilst the Muster-master *doth the* labour,
The Officers *may play upon a* Tabour.

But fy, me thinks, one pulls me by the sleeve,
And tells me that I have my selfe forgot:
Wherefore of Doublings *here I take my leave;*
Intreating those that read, misstake me not:
Let Muster-masters take their money, then,
But let the Captains exercise their men.

CHAP

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Counter-martches: Their Antiquity, and words of direction.

THe next branch of *Discipline* which offers it selfe to your perusall, are *Counter-martchs*: which are of three kinds. To wit, *Chorean*, *Lacedemonian*, *Macedonian*: which is, Maintaining, Losing, and Gaining. Each of them are to be performed two manner of wayes. One by *File*: the other by *Rank*.

There are also *Counter-martches*, *Intire*, and *Divisionall*. But divers men are as divers in their opinions concerning the *Macedonian* and *Lacedemonian Counter-martches*. Some will have the *Macedonian*, a *Counter-martch* of gaining ground; because that it transfers the *Battalia* into the ground before the *Front*. Others will have it, a *Counter-martch* of losse; because (say they) the *Enemy* being in the *Reer*, it makes a semblance of flying. Some will have the *Lacedemonian*, a *Counter-martch* of gaining ground; because the *Enemy* appearing in the *Reer*, it makes a semblance of charging or falling on. Others call it, a *Counter-martch* to lose ground; because it loseth al that ground the *Battalia* stood upon; taking in stead thereof the ground behind the *Reer*. There are others of opinion, that there are *Counter-martches* of losse and gain, in either of them. All these are furnished with *reasons*, to back their *opinions*. But if I should stand to shew their many & severall reasons, I might well be thought to be without reason my self. My opinion is, that taking the ground before the *Front*, is gaining ground: and that to leave the ground we stood on, to take the ground next behind the *Reere*, is losse of ground: And yet to take either, whereby there is advantage gotten, must needs be gaining. But where the matter it self is so indifferent, it were fondnes to spend longer time about it. Wherefore note, that *Counter-martches* were of ancient use amongst the Greeks many hundred of years since, & from them learned, & practised by many other *Nations*; and so still continued unto this day. But as the *Snow-ball* by much rowling becomes the greater: So, in like manner these *Counter-martches* have received *addition* in all ages. So that the three originall ones are now become more then thirty, accounting those *divisionall*; and yet are all of them fathered upon one or other, of the three kinds. Though some of them will scarcely be owned or acknowledged; as you shall perceive, when I come to shew them in their severall places. But amongst all the *Motions*, this might be the best spared: as being least beneficiall to this our *moderne Discipline*. But because that *knowledge is no burthen*, and that at sometimes they may be usefull; therefore first take the *words* of *Command* or *Direction*, which are as followeth.

Diversities of opinions concerning losing and gaining of ground.

To go back unto the ground we have formerly past, is losse of ground.

Counter-marches of great antiquity.

Counter-marches least usefull of all other parts of the Art Military.

Intire Counter-martches by File.

Files to the { *Right* / *Left* } *hand, Count-martch.* — Chorean:

Files to the { *Right* / *Left* } *Counter-martch, every man turning on the ground he stands.* — Lacedemo:

File-leader, face about to the { *Right* / *Left* } *the rest passe through to the* { *Right* / *Left* } *and place your selves behind your leader.* — Macedonian:

File-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the { *Right* / *Left* } *placing your selves before your leaders.* — Bast: Counter march.

File-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the { *Right* / *Left* } *placing your selves before your Leaders; following your bringers up.* — Bast: Coun.

Bringers-up face about to the { *Right* / *Left* } *the rest passe through to the* { *Right* / *Left* } *and place your selves before your Bringers-up.* — Lacedemo.

Bringers

Lacedemo *Bringers-up, stand: the rest of* {Right / Left} *passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves behind your Bringers-up.*

Intire Counter-martches, by Ranks.

Cretan or Chorean: *Ranks to the* {Right / Left} *Counter-martch.*

Lacedemo: *Ranks to the* {Right / Left} *Counter-martch, every man turning on the ground he stands.*

Macadoni *Right-hand-File, face to the left: the rest passe through to the right: placing your selves behind your right-hand-men.*

Left-hand-file may face to the right, and do as much.

Basil: Counter-martch *Right / Left hand-file stand; the rest passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves on the out-side of your* {Right / Left} *hand-men.*

Lacedemo. *Right / Left hand-file Face to the* {Right / Left} *the rest passe through to the* {Right / Left} *placing your selves before your* {Right / Left} *hand-men.*

Divisionall Counter-martches, by Files.

Cretan, or Chorean. *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst.*

Basil: Coun Lacedemo, *File-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.*

File-leaders, and bringers-up stand; the rest passe through to the right: and place your selves before your Leaders and Bringers-up.

Macedoni. *File-leaders, face about; Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right; and place your selves behind your leaders and bringers-up.*

Basil. Coun *Front-half-files, interchange ground with the reer.*

Divisionall Counter-martches, by Ranks.

Chorean or Cretan Lacedemo. *Counter-martch your wings (or flanks) into the midst (or Center.)*

The out-most file of each Flank, face outward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selves before your out-side men.

Macedoni. *The out-most file of each Flanke, face inward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selves behind your out-side men.*

Basil. Counter-martch. *The out-most file of each Flanke, stand: the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selves on the out-side of your out-side men.*

Interchange your Flanks.

Note what is done by the *out-most Files*, may be *reduced* by controverting the *command* to the *innermost Files*; but must be done before they have closed their *divisions*, &c.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Chorean Counter-martch: and the way to perform it.

The distance for Counter-martch is six foot, or open order in rank and file.

I Could willingly have prickt a *Figure* for each of these *Counter-martches*, but that they will take up too much room. And therefore I will onely prick some few of the hardest of them; and for the rest, I will endeavour by words to make them as *facile* as I may: that so they may be apprehended by the meanest capacity. And first I wil begin with the (*Persian, Cretan*, or) *Chorean counter-martch*. The *word* of *Command*, or *Direction* is,

Files to the right-hand, Counter-martch.

[a] *Note that when there is a Counter-martch comman-*

[a] This *Chorean Counter-martch*, is by some called the *Modern Counter-martch*. I conceive their reason to be, because that it is more inuse then any of the other: Or else, for antiquity, it might claim many Ages. It is a *Counter-martch maintaining ground*: for it worketh its effect on the same *ground it stands*; neither *losing* nor *gaining*. But it *transfers* the file

file-leaders into the *place* of the *Bringers-up*: and the *bringers-up* into the *place* of the *file-leaders*: withall turning the *aſpect* of the *Body*, or *Battalia*, to the *Reer*. The way to performe this *motion* is as followeth: As ſoon as the [b] *Word of Command* is given, if it be to the *right*, then all the *file-leaders* ſtep forwards with their right legs, and *face-about to the right*; every *file-leader* with his *file* following him, paſſing down towards the, *Reer*, through the *Intervall* on his right-hand, ſtill obſerving to keep *even* in *rank* with his *right-hand-man*. But by the way, note that no man muſt *turn* untill hee come to the *ground* where at firſt his *file-leader* began the *Counter-martch*. This *Motion* is then performed, when the *Bringers-up* have attained unto the *place* where before their *file-leaders* ſtood; being *faced* right after them.

ded without any other addition, then it is alwayes intended a Chorean Counter-martch.

[b] Obſerve the direction for the Chorean Counter-martch.

Files to the left-hand, Counter-martch.

To *counter-martch* to the *left*, worketh the ſame effect, and is done after the ſame manner; onely *differing* in the *hand*.

For *reducement*: If you *counter-martch* to the *right*, do as much to the *left*, and they will be as they were. For any *intire Counter-martch* of *files* will be *reduced* (of what kind ſoever) by making another *intire Counter-martch*, to what *hand* ſoever.

But if any deſire to be ſo *curious*, as to have them not onely *reduced* to the ſame *aſpect*, but alſo *preciſely* to the ſame *place*; then, if the *Counter-martch* were to the *right*, *counter-martch* again to the *right*; if to the *left*, accordingly to the *left*.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Counter-martching to loſe ground.

The Command is, *Files to the right, counter-martch; every man turning after his Leader on the ground he ſtands.*

THis Lacedemonian *Counter-martch*, is a *Counter-motion of loſſe of ground*; *for that it leaves all the ground the Battalia formerly did containe, and takes up place thereof take the ground behind it.* This *Counter-martch* is to be performed when the *Body* is upon a *ſtand*: And (as the Chorean) it turnes the *Aſpect towards the Reere*. The *Greeks* were wont with this *Counter-martch* to bring their *file-leaders* to oppoſe any Enemy appearing to the *Reere*, thereby gallantly hearding their Enemies in the teeth neither politickly making ſhew of *flight*, whereby to bring the Enemy into *diſ-array*; nor over-providently carefull of the *advantage of ground*. The *Motion* of this *Counter-martch* is to be performed as followeth: The *file-leaders* of each *file* are to ſtep ſide-wayes to the *right*, and therewithall to *face-about* to the *Reere*, and ſo *martch* even in *rank* together down between the * *Intervalls*, no man advancing a *foot* forwards, but turning in like manner after their *Leaders*, when they are paſt by them; ſtill obſerving to keep their due diſtance: And ſo a whole *rank* together, ſtill turning off to the *right*, each *rank* ſucceſſively doing the like, untill the *Counter-martch* be fully performed. Any *intire Counter-martch* of *files* will *reduce* this. But, for order ſake, take one of the ſame ſort to the contrary *hand*; which is.

* *An Intervall* is the *ſpace of ground* between file and file, or ranke and rank; but in this place is intended the ſpace of ground between the *files*.

Files to the left, counter-martch; every man turning after his Leader, on the ground he ſtands.

I ſhall not need to ſpeak further concerning this *Counter-martch* of loſſe of ground to the *left*, ſeeing that it differs from the other onely in the alteration of the *hand*: the ſubſtance and effect of both being one and the ſame. Only I will now ſpeak of a ſecond ſort of *Counter-martch*, which is of the ſame kind: The Command is,

Bringers-up, face-about to the right; the reſt paſſe through to the Reere, and place your ſelves before your Bringers-up.

This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* doth alſo loſe the ground whereon it formerly
Lacedemo ſtood: and takes the ground behind the *Reere*. The manner of the *Motion* is as followeth: The laſt *rank* (or *Bringers-up*) *face about to the Reere, and ſtand*; the reſt of the *Body facing about* in like manner, and paſſing through or between their *Bringers-up*, and placing themſelves *even* in *rank* before them. The *Motion* is begun by the *rank* next the *Bringers-up*, and ſo continued ſucceſſively by the reſt, untill the *Counter-martch* be ended. It may be *reduced* by doing the ſame to the *contrary hand*. Nevertheleſs, for brevity ſake, I will make uſe of a ſprig from the ſame bough, and *reduce* this *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* by another of the ſame kind. The Command is,

Bringers-up, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Bringers-up.

Lacedemo This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch* is thus to be performed: The laſt *rank* (or *Bringers-up*) are to *ſtand*, and the reſt of the *Body* to *face* to the *Reere*, and paſe through to the *right*, and place themſelves behind their *Bringers-up*; contrary to the *Counter-martch* laſt ſhewen, where they placed themſelves before. The *Motion* is alſo begun by the ſecond *ranke* from the *Reere*, the reſt following ſucceſſively, untill the *File-leaders* are become the *Bringers-up*; then *face* them about after their proper *File-leaders*, and they are *reduced*.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Counter-martchet to gain ground; or, the Macedonian Counter-martch.

The Command is,

File-leaders, face about to the right; the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves behind your Leaders.

Macedoni. THis *Macedonian Counter-martch* is for *gaining ground*; for that it leaves the ground the *Battalia* formerly ſtood upon, taking in *lieu* thereof the ground next before the *Front*: It alſo turns the *aſpect* towards the *Reere*. The *motion* of this *Counter-martch* is from the *Reer* to the *Front*; contrary to the *Lacedemonian*, whoſe *motion* is from the *front* to the *Reere*. This *Macedemonian Counter-martch* makes ſemblance in the *Reere* of *flight*,
Macedon. *Counter-martch makes ſemblance of flight.* but preſently produceth an orderly ſetled *Front*, when perhaps the Enemy, with a two early purſuit, hath broken the order of their array.

The way to perform this *Counter-martch*, according to the directions formerly given, is as followeth: The *file-leaders* (or firſt *ranke*) *face-about to the right*; the reſt of the *body* paſs through between the *Intervalls* (or diſtances of files) to the *right*, and place themſelves behind their *Leaders*; every *rank* (beginning with that next the *file-leaders*) paſſing through ſucceſſively, and taking their places, untill the *Counter-martch* be fully executed. It may be *reduced* as the reſt, by doing the ſame to the *contrary hand*: or, as I have formerly ſaid, by any *intire Counter-martch* of *file*; and therefore I will *reduce* it by another *Macedonian Counter-martch*. The Command is as followeth:

File-leaders, face to the Reere; the reſt of the Body paſs through to the left, following your Bringers-up, placing your ſelves behind your Leaders.

Macedonl- This *Macedonian Counter-martch* is rather remembred for its antiquity than excellency, (as ſome more of them be;) Nevertheleſs, if any will be curious to obſerve the *Motion*, it may be performed as followeth: The *firſt ranke* (or *file-leaders*) *face* to the *Reere*, then the *laſt ranke* begin the *Counter-martch*, paſſing forward between the *Intervals*; the *ſeventh ranke* following the *eighth*, the *ſixth* following the *ſeventh*, and ſo likewiſe the reſt, untill the whole *Body* be transferred into the ground before the *Front*; and then joyntly together *facing to the right-about*, after their *Leaders*, the *Counter-martch* is ended. For *reducement*, obſerve this for all, that any *intire Counter-*

martch

martch of file, may be *reduced* by another *intire counter-martch by file*, of what *kind*, or to what *hand* soever.

These three last Chapters of *Counter-martches*, are the original grounds of all the rest; yet I shall shew one in the ensuing Chapter, which time hath begotten out of the latter *two*, which takes part with *either*, being absolute in *neither*.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Bastard Counter-martch.

The Command is, *File-leaders, stand; the rest pass through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.* Bast. counter-martch

THis passing through (or *Bastard counter-martch*) is partly *Macedonian*, and partly *Lacedemonian*; for first with the *Macedonian* it takes the ground before the *Front*, the *Motion* being from the *Reer* forward: it is partly *Lacedemonian*, for that they pass through, and place themselves before their *Leaders*, and for that it makes semblance of *falling on*, or *charging* the Enemy. Nevertheless, the *Macedonian* disclaims it, for that it alters not his *aspect*: The *Lacedemonian* refuseth it, for that it takes the ground *before the Front*, and not that *behind the Reer*, and with the *Chorean*, it holds no affinity. And, indeed, many there be that will not allow it for a *Counter-martch*; for certain, the word it self will not bear it: Notwithstanding, seeing that it hath been long ranged amongst them, I will not be he that shall displace it, but will pass forwards, to shew the manner of the *Motion*; which is to be performed as followeth: * The *File-leaders* stand, according to the former direction, the rest of the *Body* advance their *Arms*, the *second rank* first passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before the *first rank*, the *third rank* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*, and so forwards for the rest, until the *last* rank (or *Bringers-up*) are become the *fore-most*; which perfects the *Motion*. It may be d severally useful; as to *skirmish* against an *Enemy*, advancing by way of *introduction*, or upon occasion to bring the *Reer-men* to *martch* in *Front*, and such like. For the *Reducement*, you may do as much to the *contrary hand*; only, for order sake, I will *reduce* it by another like it self.

* *Instructions to forme the motions of this Counter-martch.*

d *This Bastard Counter-martch is the same with Introduction.*

The Command is, *File-leaders-stand; the rest pass through to the right, placing your selves before your Leaders, following your Bringers-up.* Bast. coun.

This *Motion* may be done either to the *right* or *left*, and is nothing differing from that *last* shewen, but that, whereas the *other* began with the *second rank*, this contrariwise begins with the *last rank*, (or *Bringers-up*) every *rank* successively following the *rank* which came from behind them, until they which were the *Leaders* are become the *last* in the *Reer*. If this *Counter-martch* be first done, it may be *reduced* by any of those formerly shewen, &c.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Counter-martching Ranks to maintain ground.

The Command is, *Ranks to the Right-hand counter-martch.*

THis *Chorean Counter-martch of ranks, is an altering or changing of one Flank for the other, the Battalia still keeping the same ground, only the right-flank becomes the left, and the left becomes the right.* The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *command* being given, then the whole *Body faceth* to the *hand* named, and every man in the *out-most file* to the *right*, (*files* by this *facing* being become *ranks*) turns down through the *Interval*, (or *distance* between *rank* and *rank*) *martching* forth-right unto the *part*, which was the *left-flank*, with their *ranks, file-wise*, following them: being come unto their ground, they *face* as before, and the *Counter-martch* is performed. Chorean.

For the *Reducement*, let *ranks counter-martch* to the *left*, after the ſame manner, differing only in the hand, and they are as at firſt.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Counter-martching, Ranks to loſe ground.

The Command is, *Ranks to the right hand counter-martch, every man turning after his right-hand-man, on the ground he ſtands.*

Lacedemo. *Ranks by this facing become files, and files to the contrary become ranks.*

THis *Lacedemonian Counter-martch of* Ranks, *is a falling on upon the left flank, the Motion being begun by the right*: It leaves all the ground the *Battalia* ſtood on, & takes in place thereof the *ground beſide the left-flank*, turning the *aſpect* to the *left*. The manner or way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The whole *Body faceth to the right*, and then the *right-hand-file*, being *faced*, (becomes a *rank*) begins the *Counter-martch*, turning down the *Intervals* of the Ranks, (which by this *facing* is made the *diſtance* between the *files*) and ſo *martcheth* forth-right, beyond that which was the *left-flank*, every man following him that was his *right hand-man*, (but not ſtepping forwards one foot of ground) until the *Counter martch* be performed. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, do as much to the *left*, and they will be as at firſt: Or (if you pleaſe) take another of the ſame kind: The word of *Command*, or *Direction*, is,

Right-hand-file, face to the right, the reſt paſs through to the right, and place your ſelves before your right-hand men.

Lacedemo. This *Lacedemonian Counter-martch of ranks, makes a falling on upon the right-flank*, the *Motion* being from the *left-flank* to the *right*, leaving all the ground whereon the *Battalia* ſtood, and taking in lieu thereof the *ground beſide the right-flank*. In thoſe dayes, when *Counter-martches* were more uſeful and accommodable to their *Military practices* and *diſcipline*, than now they are for ours, the *Lacedemonian Counter-martches* were of chief repute, as well amongſt the *Macedonians* as the *Spartans*, & others. The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *right-hand-file faceth* to the *right*, the reſt of the *Body facing* to the *right*, do paſs through the *Intervals*, or ſpaces, to the *right*, placing themſelves before their *right-hand-men*, until the *left-hand-file* become the *foremoſt rank*. If you do this *Counter-martch* by it ſelf, then for *Reducement*, firſt *face* them to their *Front-proper*, then let the *left-hand-files face* to to the *left*, and do as much to the *left*; & then they will be as at firſt.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the Macedonian *Counter-martch by rank.*

The Command is, *Right-hand-file, face to the left; the reſt paſs through to the right, placing your ſelves behind your right-hand-men.*

Macedoni. THis Macedonian *Counter-martch of ranks, contrary to the* Spartan, *diſmartcheth from the Enemy, upon that flank where he appears, and preſents the contrary flank to receive the Charge.* It is performed after this manner: The *out-moſt file to the right, faceth to the left*; the reſt of the *Body* (or *Battalia*) *faceth to the right*, every man paſſing through to the *right*, and placing themſelves behind their *right-hand-men*. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, as all the reſt, there are divers and ſeveral wayes; but, perform as much to the *left* as you have done to the *right*, and they will be as at firſt: Or, if you pleaſe, this following *Baſtard counter-martch* will do the ſame.

The word of *Command*, or *Direction*, is *Right-hand-file ſtand; the reſt paſs through to the right, placing your ſelves on the out-ſide of your right-hand-men.*

Baſt counter martch. This paſſing through, or *Baſtard Counter-martch*, of *Ranks*, doth alter both *ground* and *flank*: (ſtill reſerving the *aſpect* without *alteration*.) It is to be performed as followeth: The *out-moſt*, or *right-hand-file ſtands*; the reſt of the *Body*, *facing* to the *right*, paſſe through

through to the *right*, every man placing himself on the *right* side of his *right-hand-man*, and so standing even in *rank*, the *Motion* still continuing, until the *left-hand-file* is become the *right*; the *right* the *contrary*. If this *Counter-march* be done alone, for the *reducement*, let the *left-hand-file* stand, and do as much to the *left*, as before to the *right*, and they will be as at first.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Counter-marching Front and Reer into the midst.

FOr the *Intire counter-marches*, I have endeavoured to express them, as well as I could in words, but for the *divisional counter-marches*, I intend to demonstrate both in *word* and *figure*, whereby they may be the more easily apprehended by such as shall be desirous to know them: notwithstanding before I enter upon the *divisional counter-marches*, I would willingly clear one thing which by some will be carped at, which is the using of the word *Middest*, instead of the word *Center*: The word *Center* (I confess) hath been the more usual word amongst us: and yet it is not altogether so proper to our use as the other; wherefore give me leave, without offence, to use those words, which are not only more proper, but more significant. The *midst* of the *Battel* is to be understood, either from the *Front* and *reer*; or from both *Flanks* (or *Wings*): If between *Front* and *Reer*, the *Midst* must between the *half file leaders*, and the *Reer-rank* of the *Front-half-files*, extending it self from *Flank* to *Flank*: The *Midst* between the *Flanks* is between the two *innermost files*; continuing the whole *depth* from *Front* to *Reer*. The *Center* is truly the extreamest part, tittle, or point in the *midst* of a *circumference*, & therefore not so pertinent to express the intention and true understanding of the *Motion*, as the word *Middest*. Wherefore not to trifle time in matters so apparent, we will proceed to our first divisional *Counter-march*, which shall be *Chorean*.

Of divisional. Counter-marches.

Middest and Center. The midst is to be understood in a two fold sense, either between the Files, or between the Ranks.

The Command is, *Counter-march Front and Reer into the midst.*

The Direction is, *Half-files face to the Reer*: *Front-half-files turn off to the right Reer-half-files to the left.*

Front.

M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	2	
W	W	W	W	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	W	W	W	W	1	
M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	3	
M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	4	Chorean.
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
W	W	W	W	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	W	W	W	W	5	
W	W	W	W	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	W	W	W	W	6	
M	M	M	M	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	M	M	M	M	8	
W	W	W	W	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	W	W	W	W	7	

Reere.

This *divisional chorean Counter-march*, brings our *File-leaders*, and *bringers-up* together in the *midst*, and the *ranks* that were in the *midst* into the *Front* and *Reer*, It is a *counter-march* maintaining ground; for every man *marcheth up* into his *leaders* ground before he *facith* about to *counter-march*: The way to perform the *Motion*, is as followeth. The *command* being given to *counter-march*, either let the *Commander*, or some other of the *Officers*, command the *half-files* to *face-about*: then the *file-leaders* stepping

Note that for Counter-marching Front and Reer into the midst the Front half-files ever turn off to the right, the Reer-half-files to the left, which being truly observed, they will always meet even in the middle of the Battaile, where to the contrary if they turne both off to the right, they can never do the Counter-march but wrong.

ping forwards with the right leg, *face-about* to the *right*, passing down the *Intervals* on the *right-hand*, the rest of the *Front-half-files* following their *Leaders*, and not *turning* until they come to the ground where their *Leaders* turned down before them: The *bringers-up* with the *Reer-half-files*, at the same instant turning down their *Intervals* on the *left-hand*, the rest of their *division* following them, until the *file-leaders* & *bringers-up* meet together in the *midst* of the *Battel*, and then having *faced* all to their *leader*, the *Motion* is performed. For the *Reducement* of this *figure*, doing the same thing over again will *reduce* it; or any other *divisional Counter-march* of *file*.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of bringing Front and Reer together, into the midst, by the Bastard Counter-march.

The Command is, *File-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand, the rest pass through to the Right, and place your selves before your Leaders.*

Bast. counter-march

THis *Bastard Counter-march doth bring the leaders and bringers-up together into the midst, and saves two facings, and is quicklier performed, then the other last done, or any other in the precedent Chapters*: The way to perform the *motion*, is as followeth: The *first Rank* stands, and the *half-file-leaders* stand, then those of the *front-half-files* pass through their *intervals* to the *right*, placing themselves before their *file-leaders*: The *second rank* before the *first*, the *third* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*, the *reer-half-files* at the same instant doing the like, & placing themselves before their *half-file-leaders*, as the other did before their *file-leaders*: This *motion* may be either reduced by doing the same over again to the contrary hand, or else by *Counter-martching Front* and *Reer* in the *midst*, or by any other of the *divisional Counter-marches* of *Files*.

Note, that as the Front-half-files emptieth the space of ground between the leaders and Half file-leaders; placing themselves in the ground before the Front, so in the mean time their places are replenished by the Souldiers of the Reer half-files, which march up and supply their rooms.

Another way of bringing the front and reer into the midst, by the Chorean Counter-march.

The Command is, *Front and Reer-half-files, Counter-march to the right.*

Chorean.

THis *Chorean Counter-march*, doth also bring the *file-leaders* & *bringers-up* together into the *midst*, and turns the *aspect* towards the *reer*, making the *half-file-leaders*, the *file-leaders* accidental. The *Counter-march* is easie and quickly performed; the manner is as followeth; (The *command* being given as aforesaid) the *front-half-files counter-march* to the *right*, following their *file-leaders*. The *reer-half-files* in like manner, and at the same time *counter-march* to the *right*, following the *half-file-leaders*, every *file-leader* falling directly after his *bringer-up*.

The Reducement.

For *Reducement*, *counter-march front* and *reer* into the *midst*; then *face* to the *first front*, and they are as at first.

Part-counter-march.

Sometimes occasion may require a *part-counter-march*, as when the *front-half-files*, *reer-half-files*, *half-ranks* of the *right*, *half-ranks* of the *left*, or any other part of the *body* (more or less) doth *counter-march* to either hand, not intermixing with the standing part of the *body*: and these *part-counter-marches* may be performed after the *Chorean*, *Lacedemonian*, or *Macedonian* way: nevertheless, I willingly forbear to enlarge my self; rather with the dogs of *Nile* run and lap, giving only a touch of these things and away; leaving others more amply to proceed, that shall affect more curiosity; whilst I proceed to the next Chapter and *Counter-march*.

CHAP.

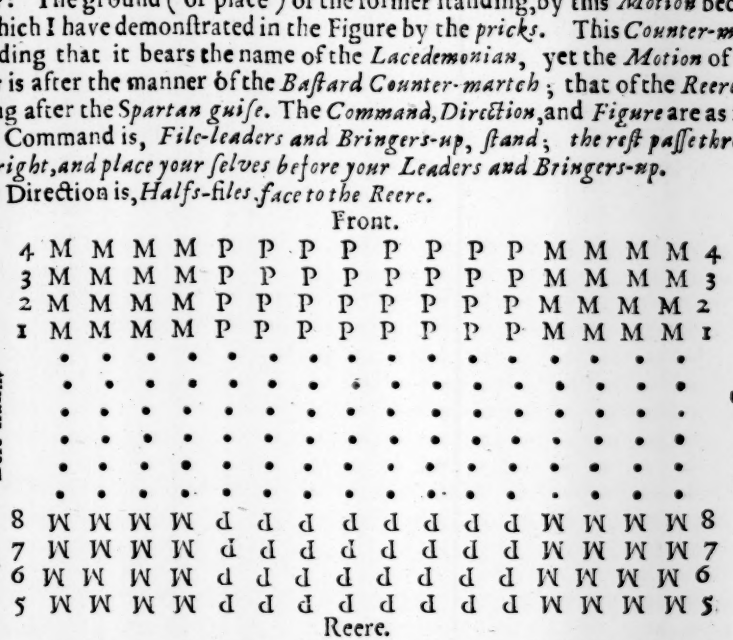
CAAP. XLIX.

A divisionall Counter-martch, to make a large Intervall between the first and last Ranks.

This *Divisionall* Lacedemonian *Counter-martch* makes semblance of *charging*, or *falling on* to the *Front* and *Reere*; leaving all the ground which was occupied by the Souldiers between *Front* and *Reere*, transferring them into the ground before the *Front*, and behind the *Reere*: The ground (or place) of the former standing, by this *Motion* becoming vacant; which I have demonstrated in the Figure by the *pricks*. This *Counter-martch*, notwithstanding that it bears the name of the *Lacedemonian*, yet the *Motion* of the *Front-half-files* is after the manner of the *Bastard Counter-martch*; that of the *Reere-half-files* only being after the *Spartan guise*. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure* are as followeth.

The Command is, *File-leaders and Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders and Bringers-up.* Lacedemo.

The Direction is, *Halfs-files face to the Reere.*



The way to performe this *Motion* is as followeth: The *halfe-files* are commanded to *face* to the *Reere*, and then the *Front-half-files* passe through to the *right*, placing themselves before their *Leaders*; the *second ranke* before the *first*, the *third* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*; the *Reere-half-files* at the same instant passing through to the *Reere*, after the same manner, and placing themselves before their *Bringers-up*. You may perceive by the figure of *Number*, placed on the *flanks* of the *Figure* of *Battell*, both how the men stood before the *Motion* began, as also how, and in what place they stand, the *Motion being ended*. For the *Reducement*, if you have not closed their *distance*, you may *face* them *about*, and so let them pass again into their places: Or else, by doing the same *Counter-martch* over again, or to the *contrary hand*, or any such like way, will *reduce* them. This next following *Counter-martch* will also *reduce* them; or this will *reduce* that. The *Command* and *Direction* is, as you shall find it placed over the *Front* of the *Figure*.

If youre-duce them by another Counter-martch first close your divisions.

CHAP. L.

Of making a large Intervall between the first and last ranks, by the Macedonian *Counter martch.*

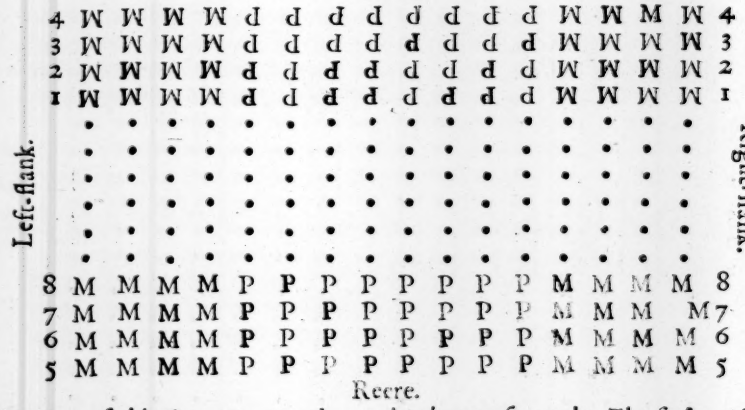
This *divisionall* Macedonian *Counter martch*, is little different from that next before it; onely the other turned the *aspect outward*, to the *Front* and *Reere*, this *Counter-* Macedoui-

martch

martch turnes the *aspect inwards, towards the midst.* It may be usefull, if the *Commander* would shew or publish ought before his best Souldiers, for that it not onely leaves a large *distance*, but that it bringes the best Souldiers into the *midst*, with their *aspects* directed *inwards*. It may also serve to conduct any great *Personage* crosse the length of your *Battell*, whereby to shew them the *bravery* of your Souldiers, &c. The *Figure* followeth.

The Command is, *File-leaders, face about; Bringers-up, stand; the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves behind your File-leaders and Bringers-up.*

The Direction is, *Halfe-files, face to the Reere.*



Note that when the Reer-half-files face-about, the last rank which are the bringers-up, are still to keep their standing.

The *Motion* of this *Counter-martch* may be thus performed: The *first ranke* (or *file-leaders*) *face-about*, the *last rank stands*, the *Reere-half-files face about*, and the *Front-division* pass forwards, and place themselves behind the *file-leaders*, the *Reere-half-files* behind the *bringers-up*. The manner you may perceive by the Figures of *number* which are placed on the *flanks* of the Figure, their *number* shewing the places they had from the *Front* before the *Motion* began. This *Figure* may be *reduced* either by the same word of *Command* which produced it, or else by any of the fore-going *Divisionall Counter-martches*. Our next shall be a *Counter martch* of *exchange of ground*. The words of *Command* and *Direction* follow in the next Chapter.

CHAP. LI.

Of Interchanging ground.

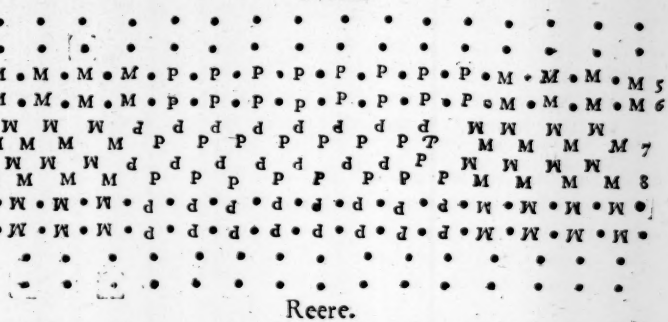
THis *Interchanging of ground*, or *Bastard Counter-martch*, may not rightly be said to be derived from any one of the particular grounds of *Counter-martch*; but rather participating of them all: And yet, considering it actually performed, it is different from them all. For whereas the other *Counter-martches* of *files* in *division*, although they bring the *Front* and *Reere* into the *middest*, yet the *Front-half-files* continue still on the same part, and the *Reere-half-files* do not alter into the places of the other: But this, contrary to any other of the *divisionall Counter-martches*, *transferres the Front-half-files into the ground or place of the Reere-half-files, and them in the contrary part, bringing the file-leaders and Bringers-up together into the midst.* The following *Figure* demonstrates the *body* in *motion*.

The Command is, *Front and Reer-half-files interchange ground.*

The Direction is, *Front-half-files, face to the Reere, then both divisions move straight forwards to the Right.*

Front

Front.



Baſt, counter-march in motion,

Reere.

The way to perform this *motion* is as followeth. The *Front-half-files face-about*, paſſing forward to the *right* (being led by the *bringers-up* of the *front-half-files*) between the *Intervals* toward the *reer*; The *reer-half-files* at the ſame inſtant in like manner *martching* forwards, betwren the *Intervals*, on their right hands into the *front*, until the *front-diviſion* have attained the places of the *reer*, and they contrariwiſe the *places* of the *Front*. For the *Reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, do as much back again: Or if you would *reduce* it ſome other way, you may firſt make an intire *counter-martch* of *files*, and then *counter-martch front* and *reer* into the *midſt*; for under two *counter-martches* it will not be *reduced*. Now I will paſſe to ſhew *diviſional counter-martches* of *ranks* or *flanks*, The firſt ſhall be *Chorean*, as in the *Chapter* following. *The Reducement.*

CHAP. LII.

Of Counter-martching the flanks (or wings) into the midſt of the Battel.

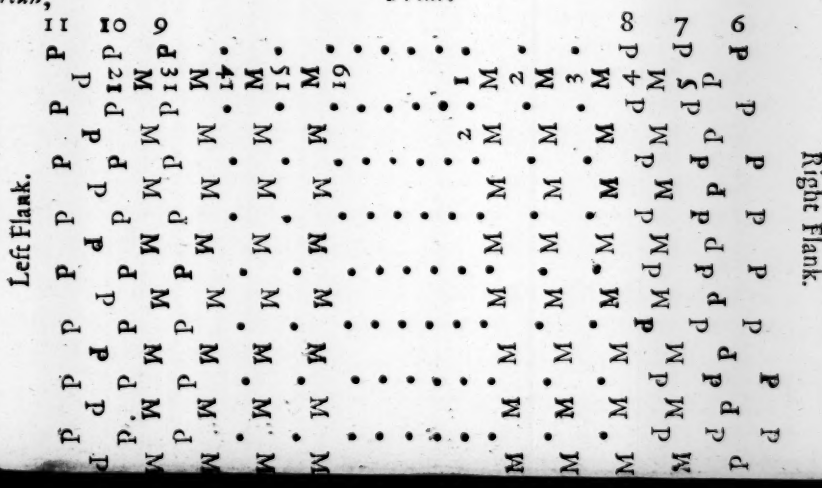
THis *Chorean counter-martch* of the *Wings* (or *flanks*) into the *midſt* is ordinarily uſed when the *Commander* would bring the light armed into the *midſt* of the *Battel*, to ſecure them from the incurſions of the *Horſe*. It is a *Motion* too dangerous to meddle withal in the eye of the Enemy, although the Souldiers be expert; but by no means to be thought upon in the field, amongſt the untrained and unskilful. This *counter-martch* performs the *Motion* on the ſame ground. The *Figure* followeth.

The command is, *Counter-martch your flanks into the midſt.*

The direction is, *Face to the right and left.*

Chorean,

Front.



The *Command* being given, *the whole body faceth to the right and left by division, the outtermost files by this facing becoming ranks, every man in the right-hand file, being a leader to his half-ranke file-wise, and so likewise in the left-hand-file the same, then they counter-martch the right-flank to the right, the left flank to the left*, which you must always observe to do, and your flankers will meet just in the *midst* of your *Battalia*. Lastly, having *faced* them to their *first-front*, the *Counter-martch* is ended.

Note that upon the Counter-martching of Flanks into the midst, the right-flank must always observe to turne to the right, the left-flank to the left: for if they should both turn off to the right, they will never meet right, if they turn off both to the left, it will be as bad.

To *Reduce* them, they may either use the same *Counter-martch* again, or any of these following *divisionall Counter-martches* of *Flanks*, (unless it be that of *interchanging ground.*) The next shall be *Lacedemonian*: The *Command* and words of *Direction* are as in the Chapter following.

CHAP. LIII.

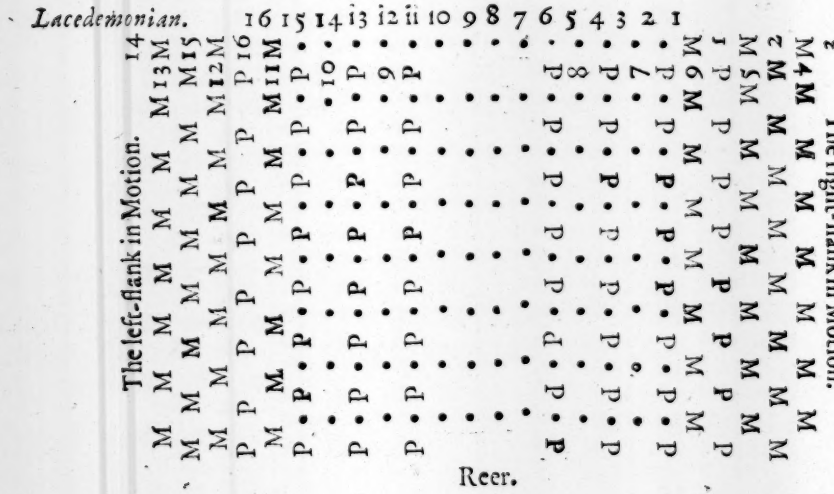
Of Counter-martching to take the ground on the out-side of the Flanks, the Aspects outward.

THis *Lacedemonian* Counter-martch *of half-flanks or ranks, makes semblance of changing on, and issuing forth upon both flanks, but leaves a large waste distance of ground un-occupied between the two out-most files, or midst of the Battaile.* The Command and Figure followeth.

The Command is, *The out-most file of each flank, face outward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves before your out-side men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*

Front.



The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *right-hand file faceth* to the *right*, the *left-hand-file* to the *left*; the rest of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left*, the *right-flank* passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before their *right-hand men*: The *second file* from the *right* begins the *Motion* on the *right-flank*: The *left-flan*

like manner passing through to the *left*, and placing themselves before their *left-hand-men*: The *second file*, accounting from the *left*, begins the *Motion* on the *left-flank*: But you must note, that the *files* become *ranks* with the *facing*.

For the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, if you will first *face* them to their *proper-Front*, you may then command *the two in-most files stand, the rest passe through to the right and left ward, and take their places*; Or, if you please, make use either of a *Chorean*, or a *Macedonian Counter-martch* of *Ranks* by *division*, and with a *facing* and *closing* their *divisions*, they will be perfectly *reduced*. *The Reducement.*

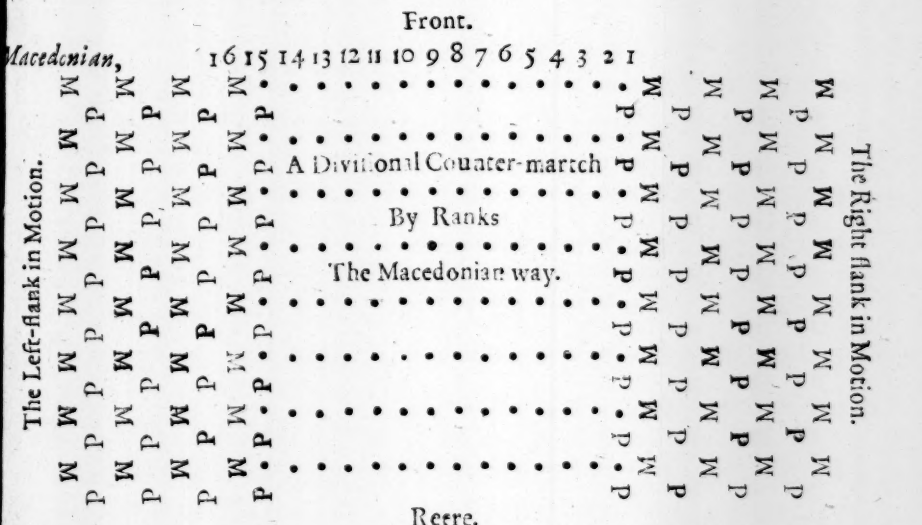
CHAP. LIV.

Of Counter-martching to take the ground on the out-side of the Flanks, and to digest their aspects inward.

THis *divisionall* Macedonian *Counter-martch*, differeth little from the *Counter-martch* of the last *Chapter*, except it be in the *alteration* of the *aspect*; for whereas the last *Counter-martch* turned the *Fronts* of each *flank* outward, this contrariwise directeth them inwards, causing each *flank* to confront the other in *opposition*. The Command and figure are as followeth,

The Command is, *The out-most file of each flank face inward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves behind your out-side men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The *Motion* is thus performed: The *outer-most file* of each *flank faceth inward*, the rest of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*; those of the *right flank* passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves behind their *right-hand-men*; those of the *left-flank* passing through to the *left*, and placing themselves behind their *left-hand-men*: The *Motion* is begun by the *second file*, from each *flank*. I might here shew these *Counter-martches*, beginning their *Motion* from their *middle-most files*; but I am willingly silent, hoping that these may suffice to the curteous, not much forcing my self to give satisfaction to the curious. For the *reducement* of this *Counter-martch*, having *faced* them to their *first front*, you may (if you please) command the *two inner-most files to face outward*, *The Reducement.*

The *Command* being given, *the whole body faceth to the right and left by division, the outtermost files by this facing becoming ranks, every man in the right-hand file, being a leader to his half-ranke file-wise, and so likewise in the left-hand-file the same, then they counter-martch the right-flank to the right, the left flank to the left*, which you must always observe to do, and your flankers will meet just in the *midst* of your *Battalia*. Lastly, having *faced* them to their *first-front*, the *Counter-martch* is ended.

Note that upon the Counter-martching of Flanks into the midst, the right-flank must alwais observe to turne to the right, the left-flank to the left: for if they should both turn off to the right, they will never meet right, if they turn off both to the left, it will be as bad.

To *Reduce* them, they may either use the same *Counter-martch* again, or any of the following *divisionall Counter-martches* of *Flanks*, (unless it be that of *interchanging ground.*) The next shall be *Lacedemonian*: The *Command* and words of *Direction* are as in the Chapter following.

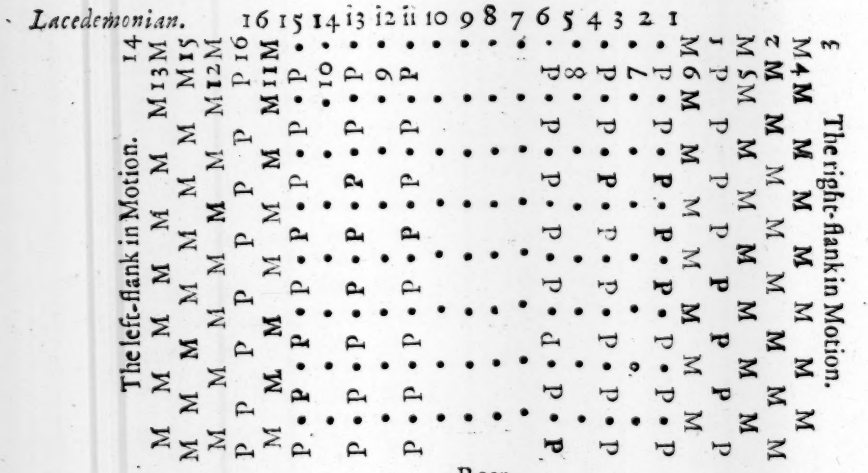
CHAP. LIII.

Of Counter-martching to take the ground on the out-side of the Flanks, the Aspects outward.

THis *Lacedemonian* Counter-martch *of half-flanks or ranks, makes semblance of changing on, and issuing forth upon both flanks, but leaves a large waste distance of ground un-occupied between the two out-most files, or midst of the Battaile.* The Command and Figure followeth.

The Command is, *The out-most file of each flank, face outward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves before your out-side men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The way to perform this *Motion* is as followeth: The *right-hand file faceth* to the *right*, the *left-hand-file* to the *left*; the rest of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left*, the *right-flank* passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before their *right-hand men*: The *second file* from the *right* begins the *Motion* on the *right-flank*: The *left-flan*

like manner paſſing through to the *left*, and placing themſelves before their *left-hand-men*: The *ſecond file*, accounting from the *left*, begins the *Motion* on the *left-flank*: But you muſt note, that the *files* become *ranks* with the *facing*.

For the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, if you will firſt *face* them to their *proper-Front*, you may then command *the two in-moſt files ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the right and left-ward, and take their places*; Or, if you pleaſe, make uſe either of a *Chorean*, or a *Macedonian Counter-march* of *Ranks* by *diviſion*, and with a *facing* and *cloſing* their *diviſions*, they will be perfectly *reduced*. *The Reducement.*

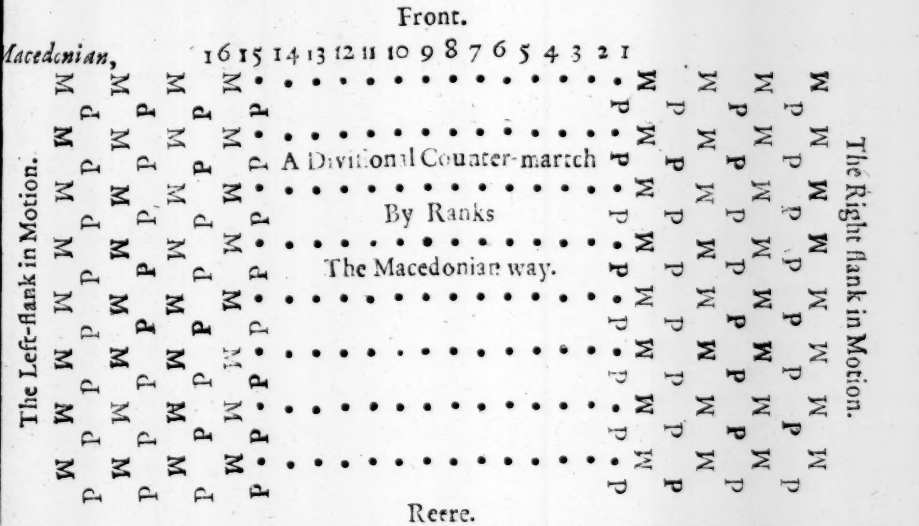
CHAP. LIV.

Of Counter-marching to take the ground on the out-ſide of the Flanks, and to digeſt their aſpects inward.

THis *diviſionall* Macedonian *Counter-march*, differeth little from the *Counter-march* of the laſt *Chapter*, except it be in the *alteration* of the *aſpect*; for whereas the laſt *Counter-march* turned the *Fronts* of each *flank* outward, this contrariwiſe directeth them inwards, cauſing each *flank* to confront the other in *oppoſition*. The Command and figure are as followeth,

The Command is, *The out-moſt file of each flank face inward, the reſt paſſe through to the right and left, placing your ſelves behind your out-ſide men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The *Motion* is thus performed: The *outer-moſt file* of each *flank faceth inward*, the reſt of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*; thoſe of the *right flank* paſſing through to the *right*, and placing themſelves behind their *right-hand-men*; thoſe of the *left-flank* paſſing through to the *left*, and placing themſelves behind their *left-hand-men*: The *Motion* is begun by the *ſecond file*, from each *flank*. I might here ſhew theſe *Counter-marches*, beginning their *Motion* from their *middle-moſt files*; but I am willingly ſilent, hoping that theſe may ſuffice to the curteous, not much forcing my ſelf to give ſatisfaction to the curious. For the *reducement* of this *Counter-march*, having *faced* them to their *firſt front*, you may (if you pleaſe) command the *two inner-moſt files to face outward*, *The Reducement.*

the reſt paſſe through to the right and left inward, placing themſelves behind their right and left-hand-men; which being done, the whole *Body* will ſtand *faced* to the *right* and *left outward*; then being *faced* to their *Leader*, they are *reduced*. If you would *reduce* it by ſome other way, you may make uſe either of the *Counter-martch* which is next before, or of that which next followeth, or of any other *Diviſional Counter-martch* of *Ranks* (which doth not *interchange grounds*:) Our next two which follow, will be *Baſtard Counter-martches*; with the which we will conclude this our *fourth branch of Diſcipline*

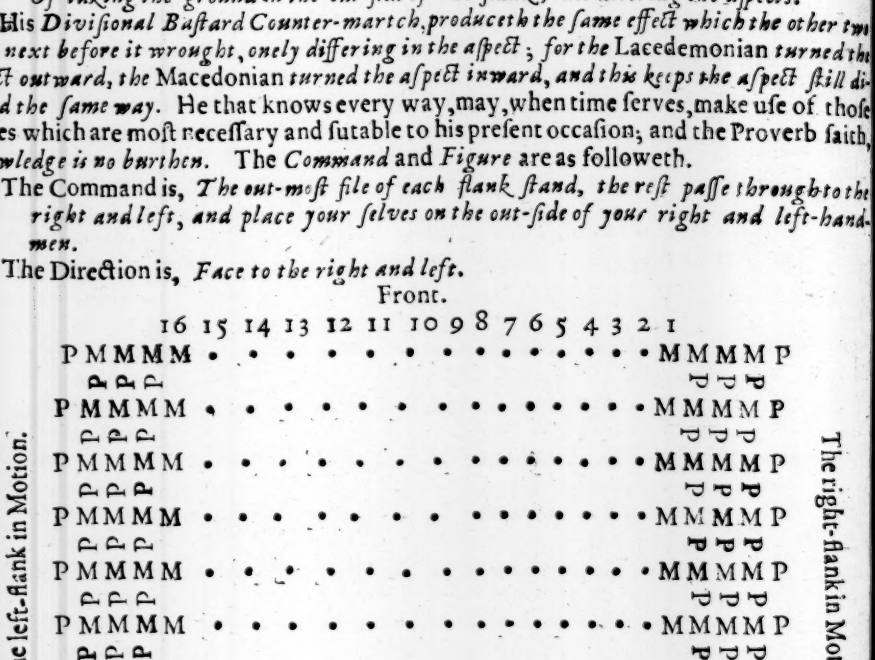
CHAP. LV.

Of taking the ground on the out-ſide of the flank, not altering the aſpects.

THis *Diviſional Baſtard Counter-martch, produceth the ſame effect which the other two next before it wrought, onely differing in the aſpect*; *for the* Lacedemonian *turned the aſpect outward, the* Macedonian *turned the aſpect inward, and this keeps the aſpect ſtill directed the ſame way*. He that knows every way, may, when time ſerves, make uſe of thoſe wayes which are moſt neceſſary and ſutable to his preſent occaſion; and the Proverb ſaith, *Knowledge is no burthen*. The *Command* and *Figure* are as followeth.

The Command is, *The out-moſt file of each flank ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the right and left, and place your ſelves on the out-ſide of your right and left-hand-men.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left.*



The way to perform this *Counter-martch* is as followeth: (According to the *Command*) the *out-moſt file* of each *flank ſtands*, the reſt of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*, the *right-flank* paſſing through to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*; thoſe of the *right-flank* placing themſelves on the *out-ſide* of their *right-hand-men*: in like manner, thoſe on the *left-flank* placing themſelves on the *out-ſide* of their *left-hand-men*.

The Reducement. It may be *reduced* either by any of the foregoing *Diviſional Counter-martches of Ranks*; or elſe, being *faced* to any of the *flanks*, then the *ranks* become *files*; and by *diviſional Counter-marthes* of *files*, you may *reduce diviſional Counter-martches* of *ranks*, or by *ranks files*; only you muſt obſerve ſome *facings*. Yet for this *Figure*, if you pleaſe,

command

command the two inner-most files stand, the rest face to the right and left inward, and so march into their places. The next shall be a *Counter-march* of *Interchanging of flanks.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of Interchanging ground by the Flanks, and bringing the inner-most files of Pikes, to become the out-most Ranks.

THis *Exchanging of Flanks*, is a *Bastard Counter-march*, but differing from all the other *Divisional Counter-marches* of *Ranks*; for this *transfers* the *right-flank* into the place of the *left*, and the *left* into the place of the *right*. It is very apt to receive a *Charge* from the *Horse*; for as soon as they shall be commanded to *interchange* their *flanks*, they *face* to the *right* and *left inward*, and then the *inner-most files* of *Pikes* begin the *Motion*, the rest of each *flank following orderly file-wise*, the *Pikes porting* so soon as they begin to *move*, and *charge* as they see occasion. If need be, the *Pikes* may *charge* at the *foot*, and the *Musquettiers give fire over them*. If any object, that the *Pikes* will have too *large a distance*, they may *close* at their own pleasure, so soon as they have *past through*. The *Command* and *Figure* are as followeth.

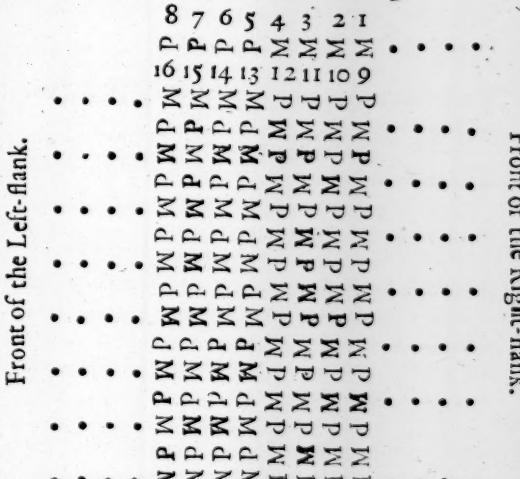
Note that if you please, you may passe the Pikes alone thorow, and let the Musquettiers stand; But then there will be a large distance between the Musquettiers in the midst.

The Command is, *Interchange Flanks.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left inward, and march.*

For the *Reducement*, you may, if you please, *interchange ground* again: nevertheless, if you would *reduce* it by some other way, *Counter-march* your *flanks* into the *middest*, & then an *intire Counter-march* either of *Rank* or *File* will *reduce* them.

Front *before the interchange.*



I might have further enlarged my self upon this subject, both in *Command* and *Figure*; but it may be that some will find fault with these which I have already pened, concluding them for *nicities*, and for no *service*; because they cannot presently apprehend for what use or service they may be fit. Notwithstanding, I would intreat such (if any such happen to be my over-lookers) that they would suspend their censures, until they have fully informed their judgements. Yet thus much I will conclude with them, that [a] *Counter-marches* might the best be spared of all the *Motions*, as being least beneficial to this our *Modern Discipline*: And yet, to very good use many of them might serve, if our Souldiers were well practised in them. Nevertheless, such is the wilful stupidity of the times, that many good and useful things are disreputed, and accounted of no use, because the Souldiers, wanting skil, cannot perform them as they ought; which, would the *Officers* take more pains, by often instructing their Souldiers, the hardest *Motions* would become facile and easie. And to say truth, the greatest fault is [b] want of skill in those which should give instruction to others: and yet they wil not stick to carp at such as shall shew more than they; concluding such things

[a] *Counter-marches less useful in the Modern Discipline. Practice brings perfection.*

[b] *The ignorant have been always the greatest oppugners and traducers of the skilful.*

for superfluous and improper, which they themselves do not rightly understand. But lest I be taxed for digression, I will conclude this Branch of *Discipline* with these few lines following.

Some burthened are with more command than skill,
Which had they power suting to their mind,
You then should see Reason in hral'd to Will,
Nor any 'bove their Knowledge should you find;
For rather than they'l study to learn better,
They wish all wanting, none to know a letter.

So be there many Officers in Bands,
That neither know themselves, nor care for those
That skilfull are in Postures, and Commands;
Nor are they careful which end fore most goes:
They think, to Dice, to Drab, to Swear and Swill,
Is skill enough for them, learn more that will.

And if that any man more forward be,
For to instruct the Souldier (as is fit)
With such a fellow they cannot agree;
He is vain-glorious, strives to shew his Wit:
They will be sure to quarrel, and deprave him,
And in their Cups, perhaps, they'——

Such honest Hearts as spend both Means and Time,
To practise others for their Countries good,
Why should this Good be counted for a Crime,
To those that for their Prince would spend their blood?
That Country sure will best be kept from Harms,
Whose Subjects pleasure take to practise Arms.

But on this subject I'l no longer bide,
Of Counter-marches *here I'l take my leave.*
To shew the Wheelings *next I shall provide,*
Which follows next of course, as I conceive.
And though with Verse my Counter-marches *close,*
Beginning Weelings, *I return to Prose.*

CHAP. LVII.

Of Wheelings, *their Kinds and Uses, with their several Words of Commands.*

THe next Branch springing from this *Military root*, is *Wheelings*, which are of *two kinds*, viz. *Wheelings Angular, and Wheelings on the Center.* Also be pleased to take notice that all of them are either *intire* or *divisionall*: The use of *intire Wheelings* is, to *turn the aspect of the Front-proper to the right, to the left, or reere; either for the gaining of the Wind, Sun, or some such like Advantage*; or to *confront the Enemy with their best Souldiers.* Most of the *divisionall Wheelings*, being indeed more properly *Doublings*, either *extending* the *length* or *depth* of the Battel. Notwithstanding, because I would not be taxed with *Innovation* or *Alteration*, I have, according to the usual received way, placed them amongst the *Wheelings*: And now I will shew their words of *Command* or *Direction.* But before I enter upon them, give me leave to lay down an Observation or two, for the better instruction of the Souldiers in their *Wheelings.* The first is, *That before you enter upon your Wheelings, you close both ranks and files to their Order; which is, Three foot both in rank and file.* The other, *That upon all Wheelings you must be sure to observe your Leader, and follow him, keeping your due distance; your Musquetiers being all either poysed or shouldred; your Pikes ought to be advanced.*

Most of the divisionall Wheelings are Doublings.

Note that the distance for Wheelings ought to be Three foot between rank and file.

Note, that upon the Exercise of the Motions, whether it be Distance, Facings, Doublings, Counter-marches, or Wheelings, the Musquetiers ought to be all upon one and the same Posture, either poysed or shouldred: The Pikes in like manner, either shouldred or advanced.

The words of *Command* are as followeth.

Wheele your Battel to the { *Right.* / *Left.* / *Right* / *Left* } *about.*

Wheele

Wheele your Battell to the { *Right* / *Left* / *Right* / *Left* } { *about* } *on the same ground.*

Wheele { *Off your Front by Division.* / *Your Front inward to the Reer.* / *Front and Reer into the* { *Right* / *Left* } *Flank.* }

Wheele { *Your Flanks into the* { *Front.* / *Reer.* } / *Both Flanks into the Front and Reere.* / *Your Front and Reer into both Flanks.* }

Observe that the first four *Wheelings* are *Angular*, the next four are *wheelings on the Center*, or more properly, on the midst of the *Front*: But all the first eight be *intire*; the latter eight are all *Divisionall*. You may also observe, that every following *Wheeling* is a *Reducement* unto that which is placed next before it; and the *Wheeling* next before may *reduce* that next following: As, to *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Front*; if you *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Reere*, it is *reduced*: or, to *wheele Front* and *Reere* into both *flanks*, if you *wheele* both *flanks* into the *Front* and *Reere*, they are likewise *reduced* as before. *Each following Wheeling reduceth the former.*

For the last eight *Wheelings*, which are *Divisionall*, I will prick for each of them his *Figure*. As for the first eight, which are *Intire*, I conceive them so easie to be understood, that I may spare the labour; yea I will endeavour to express them as well as I can in words. And first, I will begin with the *Wheelings Angular*, and then with the rest, according to their places. And therefore note, that when you are commanded to *wheele to the Right*, or *Left*, &c. and no other Command added, it is to be understood an *Angular Wheeling*, and so to be performed.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Wheelings Angular.

The Command is, *Wheele your Battell to the Right.*

THis is an *Angular Wheeling*, which transferrs the *aspect* or *countenance* of the *Front-proper*, into that part which was the *Right-flank*: It also removes the *Battalia* from the *ground* whereon formerly it stood, and placeth it on that part before the *Front*; the *hinge* or *axel-tree* of the *Motion* is the *Right corner-man*, or *right-hand-file-leader*, who with a small *motion* moveth to the *right*, every man, the more his place is remote from the *right-angle*, the more swift must be his *motion*; because his *arch-quadrant*, or *semi-circle*, is larger in proportion: wherefore it must be the discretion of the *Officers* so to instruct their Souldiers, that when they *wheel* to any *hand*, they may so moderate their *motion*, that they on the contrary *flank* be not forced to run; but so orderly to contain themselves, that they may still preserve an orderly and even *Front*. For the *Reducement*, *Wheele your Battell to the left*, in the like manner as it was *wheeled to the right*: nevertheless, you must then note, that it will not bring you back into the same ground you formerly stood on; for it hath *advanced* you the length of your *Battalia* before the place of your *first Front*. But if you would be *reduced* into the *same place*, or *plot* you first stood on, then *face your Battell to the right*, and being so *faced*, *wheele your Battel to the left*, which being performed, *face to the left*, and then they are compleatly *reduced*, both for *aspect* and *place*. The next *Command* is, 1. *Observe the Directions for Angular Wheelings.* 2. *Note the reducement to the first place and Aspect.*

Wheele Aspect.

3. *Wheel your Battel to the right-about.*

Note that wheeling to the right about, will not be reduced by wheeling back again to the left about, just into the same ground, if the wheeling be angular, but will be twice the length of the battel, removed to the right of your former standing.

This is also an *angular wheeling*, and *transfers* the *aspect* of the *front-proper*, towards the *reer*: It is to be performed in the same manner, as the *wheeling* to the *right* was, only the *motion* is twice so much: wherefore there ought to be the more care had, that so the *motion* may be orderly performed: for by so much as every man is nearer or further off, from the *right-corner-man*, by so much the more *swift* or slow, must he continue his *motion*, that so he may be sure to keep still, *even* in *Rank* with his *right-hand-man*. This *motion* being thus performed, your *Battel* will be removed from its former *station*, taking in lieu thereof the ground *Diagonally* opposite to the the *right Angle*.

* 4. *To *reduce* these to their former *Aspect*, *wheel* your *Battel* to the *left-about*, notwithstanding the ground you formerly did possesse, will be twice the *length* of your *Battel*, to the *left*, of your *left-flank*; if you would *reduce* them as well to their first *ground*, as their first *aspect*, *face* them to the *right*, and then *wheel* them to the *left-about*, which being done, face them to the *left*, and they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first. But the neerest reducement of *aspect* and *place* is; if you *wheel* to the *right-about*. Then *wheel* to the *right-about* again for *reducement*. If to the *left-about*, then to the *left-about* in like manner.

CHAP. LIX.

Of wheeling on the Center.

The Command is, *Wheel your Battel to the right, on the same ground.*

5. *Wheelings on the same ground quicklier performed then angular wheelings and in lesse room.*

THis *wheeling* is by some called, *a wheeling on the Center*; by others, *a wheeling on the same ground* I cannot absolutely maintain it to be either, for that it only *wheels about the midst of the first rank*. Neither may it rightly be termed a *wheeling on the same ground*, because it loseth ⅓ of the *ground* it formerly stood upon. This *wheeling* is quicker performed, then the *angular wheelings*, and may be done in far less ground. For the *left-flank* advanceth forward, still wheeling to the *right*, the *right flank* contrariwise *facing* to the *left*; and so falling backward. If you have an odd File, then the *middle file-leader* must be the *center* or *axel-tree* of the *motion*: if you have an even number of files, then the *middlemost file-leader* from the left. But if your *wheeling* be to the *left*, then the contary.

6. *The Reducement.*

This by some is called the *Prince of Oranges wheeling*. For the *reducement*, *wheel* your Battel to the *left*, on the same ground: and they are reduced as at first. Our next *Command* is to

Wheel your Battel to the right-about, on the same ground.

7. *The Reducement.*

This *wheeling*, is also a *wheeling on the Center*, or *midst of the front*: and *transfers* the aspect of the *front-proper* towards the *reer*, removing the Battel from the ground whereon it formerly stood, and placing it on the ground before the former *Front*. It is performed after the same manner as the last, only the *motion* is double so much as the other. In this *motion* on the *left flank*, every man is to observe his *right-hand-man*; and the *right-flank* must keep even after their *left-hand-men*, which become their *leaders*, *file-wise*, until they have attained their *ground*: after which, they face as before, making an *even front*. For the reducement, *wheel* your Battel to the *left-about* upon the same ground; and they will be reduced as at first. I will next shew the *divisional wheelings*, and intend to give to each of them his *figure*: whereby they may appear the more easie to such as do not yet rightly understand them. The first shall be a *wheeling-off by division*: as in the next Chapter.

CHAP. LX.

Wheeling-off the Battel by division.

THis *wheeling-off by division* in greater *Bodies*, may be useful to meet several enemies at one and the same time with the *Front of your Battalia*: and so consequently with your

your *best Souldiers*. By this *motion* also the *Musquetiers martching in Front*, may be *wheeled-off* by *division* to *flank* their *Pikes*, But if you would *wheele-off* your *Battell* by *division*; and again *conjoyn* them (when the *file-leaders* are come to the *reer*) then it brings all your *Musquetiers* from the *flanks* to the *midst* of your *Battalia*: and the *Pikes* on the *outside* or *flanks*. If any question the *depth* of the *number* of the *Figure*, I have *doubled files* to make the *Figure* more perfect, as you may perceive by the following *Figures*.

The Command is, *Wheele-off your Front by division.*

First-Front.



Reer.

The way to perform this *Motion* is easie, for all the *file-leaders* of the *right-flank wheel-about to the right*: the rest of each *file* following their *leaders*: the *file-leaders* also of the *left-flank*, *wheeling-about* to the *left* in the same manner; and then *joyn* or *close* their *divisions*. This being done, if you would then *reduce* them, *wheele* them off again by *division* after the same manner; and they will be as before. But if you would do it some other way, make use of this *Wheeling* next following: which will also bring them as they were. The word of *Command* or *Direction* followeth as in the next Chapter.

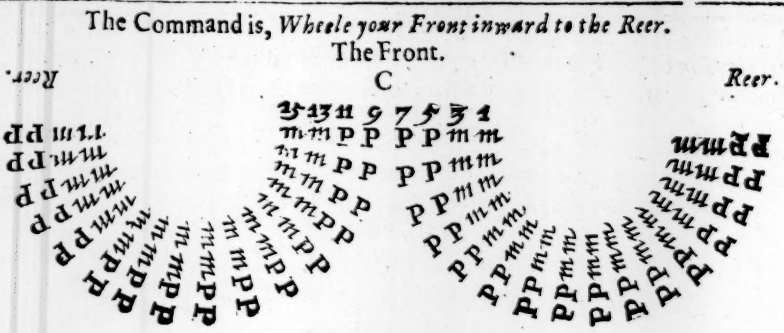
Note the direction, the wheeling is angular, the motion to be performed, wheeling-about the out-most file-leader on each flank.

CHAP. LXI.

Of wheeling the Front inward towards the Reer.

WHeeling your front inwards to the Reer, is here placed as a *Reducement* unto the preceding *wheeling*: and brings the *Musketiers* to the *flanks* again. Nevertheless if you would do it, the Company being first *reduced*; then it brings the *Pikes* to be the *flankers*. Some have conceived that it may prove usefull at any time, when your *Reer* shall be too much *over-laid by the enemies Caval'rie*: having first gained some *hill-side*, or other place of *advantage*, for then by this *wheeling* of your *front inward* to the *Reer*, (which to the *enemy* will make shew of *disbanding*, or *flight*: But to the contrary) your *Battell martcheth* towards *them* with a *setled* and *orderly body*, with all your *Musquetiers* in the *midst*. In that order *firing* upon the *enemy*; the *Pikes* being the *Flankers*: thereby *defending* the flanks of your *shot* from the *fury* of the *Horse*. The *Figure* as in motion followeth.

The Command is, *Wheele your Front inward to the Reer.*



This *Motion* will hardly be well done, if your *body* hold too large an extenſion of *length*. But at what *depth* ſoever it is eaſie. The *Motion* is to be performed as followeth. The *right-hand file-leader*, with all the *leaders* of the *right-flank advance forwards*, and ſo *wheele-about* to the *left*: every *file* ſtill keeping cloſe to their *right-hand file*. The *left-hand file-leader* likewiſe, with all the *leaders* of the *left flank advance forwards*, & *wheel-about* to the *right*; every *file* of the *left flank cloſing cloſe to the left*. Thus the *out-moſt files* of each flank, will meet and become the *innermoſt*: the *front* falling *perpendicularly* to the *reer*. For the *reducement* of this *figure*, you may if you pleaſe, either *wheel* them off to the *right* and *left* by *diviſion*: or elſe *wheel* your *front inward* again to the *reer*. Theſe two laſt *wheelings* have been demonſtrated with their *files doubled*, wherby the *figures* might be the more perfect, but with men it would have been needleſſe: wherefore *double ranks* to the contray *hand*, and they will be as at the firſt.

The Inſtruction how to performe the Motion.

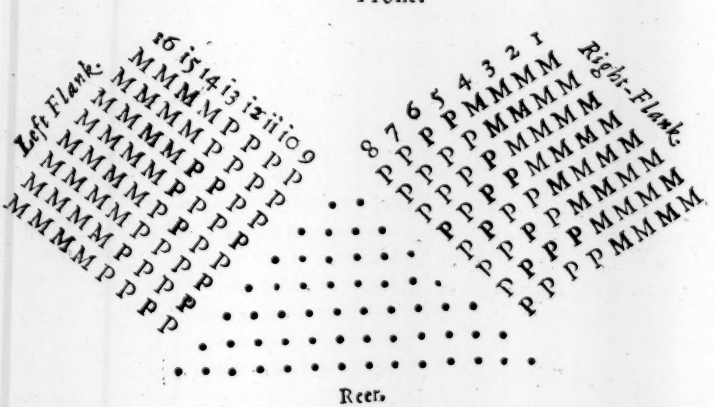
The reducement.

CHAP. LXII.

Of bringing the Flankes into the Front of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele your Flanks into the Front.*

The Direction is, *Follow your Leaders.*



Wheele your { Flanks / Wings / Front } into the { Front. / Front. / Battell. } Wheele your { Front / Front / Reere } into the { Midſt. / Center. / Flanks. }

This

THis *Diviſional Wheeling of the* Flanks *into the* Front, is properly a *Doubling*, perfor- *This Wheeling moſt properly a Doubling.*
med by *wheeling*. It brings all your *Muſquettiers* from the *Flanks* into the *Front*. So that whereas this *Body* before could do *execution* but with eight *Muſquettiers* at once, by this *Motion* they may pour on ſixteen *ſhot* together. If they were *deeper* before the *Motion* began, then it would bring the more hands to imployment. If upon ſome *paſſe* you ſhould be chaſed in the Reer by *Horſe*, by this *Motion* of *wheeling* your *flanks* into the *Front*, you not only ſecure your *Muſquettiers*, but alſo *barricado up* the *paſſage* with your *Pikes*; provided it be not above fifty foot over. Some call this a *wheeling on the Center*; becauſe they *wheele about* the *middle-men* of the *Front*. But I rather conceive it an *angular*; becauſe upon the firſt *motion* of *dividing*, every *Diviſion wheeleth about* his own *angle*, untill the *out-moſt file-leaders* of each flank meet together in the *midſt*. You may perceive how, by the figures of *number*, where the figure 1 meets the *number* 16. 2 with 15, 3 with 14, and ſo for all the reſt. Then, being *faced* to their *Leader*, every two *files* that meet, being now *joyned*, make one *rank*. There muſt be the like *order* and *decorum* kept in the *motion* of *wheeling* each *flank*, as I ſhewed in the inſtruction of *intire angular wheelings*. For *Reducement* of this *Motion*; *Wheele your flanks into the Reer*. Or elſe four times the ſame; as I have ſeen ſome do: although ſomewhat the further way about. *Sixteen a-breſt allowing to each man 3, foot ame unto 48 foot.* *The reducements.*

Divers men are diverſly opinionated, concerning the beſt *word* of *Command* or *Direction* for this *Motion*: Theſe I have known uſed, which I have placed at the bottome of the *Figure*. And if any man like one better then the other, be it at his own choice, either to uſe or refuſe, while I paſſe to ſhew the next *Wheeling*.

CHAP. LXIII.

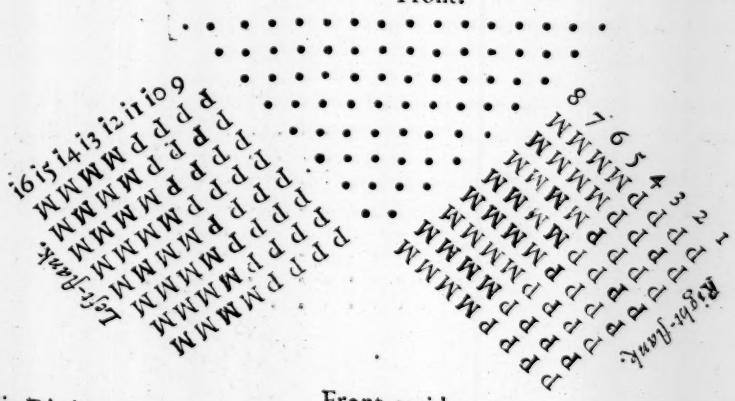
Of wheeling the Reer *into the midſt of the Battell.*

The Command is, *Wheele your Flanks into the Reer.*

The Direction is, *Face all about to the right, and follow your preſent leaders.*

Wheele your { Flanks / Wings / Reer } into the { Reere, / Reere, / Battell, } Wheele your { Reere / Reere / Front } Into the { Midſt / Center. / Flanks. }

Front.



Front-accidentall.

THis *Diviſional wheeling* of the *Flanks* into the *Reere*, is alſo a *Doubling*, and perfor- *Upon all wheelings you muſt obſerve to follow your leaders; which muſt be underſtood, as well of thoſe which become leaders accidentally (by reaſon of fixings) as of thoſe which be the firſt and proper leaders. As in this wheeling for example, where the bringers-up are become the leaders of the motion.*
med as the other. And whatſoever might be ſaid in behalfe of the *wheeling* of the

Front

Front into the *middeſt*, the ſame may be alſo ſpoken concerning the *wheeling* of the *Reer* into the *middeſt*: For this *Wheeling* brings your two *out-moſt files* to be the *firſt rank* to the *Reer*; the *Bringers-up* of the *right* and *left-hand-files* meeting together: the *Bringers-up* of the *right-flank* meeting *face* to *face* with the *Bringers-up* of the *left-flank*. And ſo being *faced* to their *Leader*, they which before were compleat *files*, are now become *half-ranks*, either to the *right* or *left*. But you muſt note, that before you begin to *wheel*, you muſt *face* your *Body about* to the *Reer*; and then the *action* will be all one as if you *wheeled* your *flanks* into the *Front*. Wherefore I ſhall not need further to explaine it, having ſpoken fully to it in the precedent Chapter.

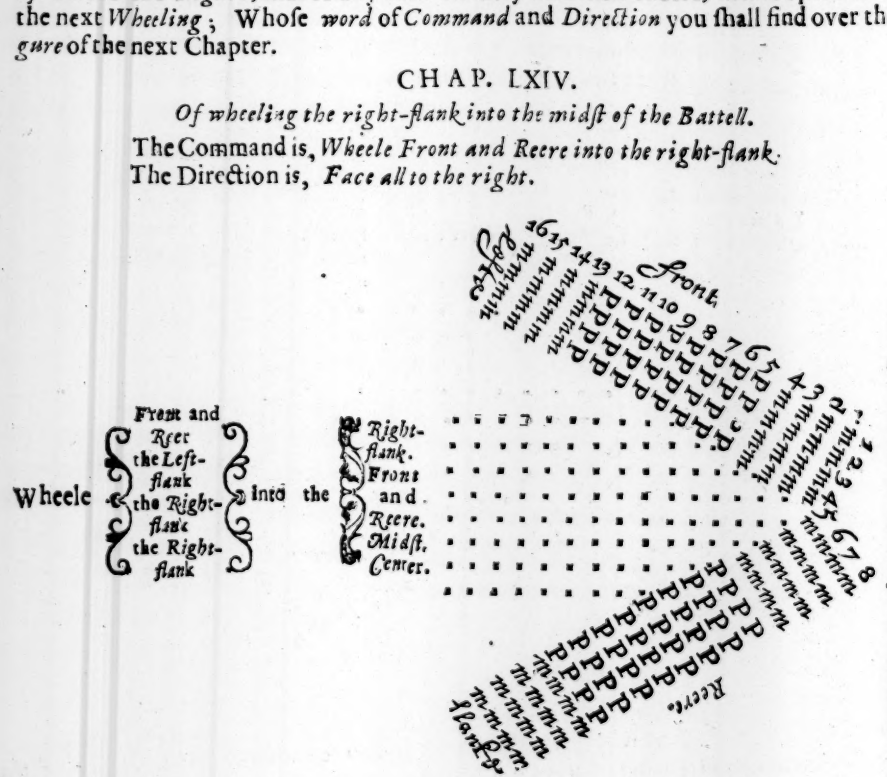
Note that the two middle-moſt Bringers-up are the bringers of this wheeling.

For the *Reducement* of this *Wheeling*; the *Commander* being at his *Front-accidentall*, may command them to *wheele* their *wings* into the *Reer*, and ſo paſſe through to that part where his *proper file-leaders* are; and then *face* them to him, and they are *reduced*. Or elſe, when he hath paſt through to the *Reer*, and *faced* this *Company* to him, then his *Pikes* being fore-moſt, let him *wheele* his *flanks* into the *Front*; when being *faced* to their *Leader*, they are *reduced*. For this *Motion* there are alſo divers and ſeveral *words* of *Command*; And becauſe it may be, that ſome will better approve of ſome of the other *words* of *Command*, then of this that I have made uſe of, therefore I have placed others immediatly before the *Figure*, that ſo any that will may take their choice, while I paſſe to ſhew the next *Wheeling*; Whoſe *word* of *Command* and *Direction* you ſhall find over the *Figure* of the next Chapter.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of wheeling the right-flank into the midſt of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele Front and Reere into the right-flank.*
The Direction is, *Face all to the right.*



This

THis *Diviſionall wheeling* of the *Front* and *Reer* into the *right-flank*, doth *quadruple* the *depth*; as may appeare by this *Figure*; which before the *Motion* began contained but 8. in *depth*, but this *wheeling* being perfected, makes them 32. namely, if you direct the *aſpect* of the *Body* either to the *right* or *left*, after the *Motion* is ended. If you obſerve this *Wheeling*, it doth divide the *Muſquettiers* on the *left flanke*; the one half of them *wheeling* to the *Front*, the other half to the *Reer*: all the *Muſquettiers* of the *right-flank wheeling* together into the *midſt*. The *Pikes* are likewiſe divided; thoſe that were the *Front-half ſiles* are in the *middeſt* of the *Front-diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*, and thoſe which were the *Reer-diviſion* of *Pikes* are in the *middeſt* of the *Reer-diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*. This *Wheeling* may be to ſingular good uſe for the making of ſome *formes* of *Battell*. But I forbear now to treat concerning *Figures* and *formes* of *Battell*, reſerving them to be ſpoken of in their due places; and come now to ſhew the way how to perform the *Motion*. The *Command* therefore being given to *wheele Front and Reer into the right-flank*, then the firſt thing the Souldiers are to do, is to *face* to the *right*; that done, they *wheele* together about the 4. and 5. men in the *right-hand-file*; which is the *half-file-leader* to the *Front*, and *half-file-leader* to the *Reer*. You may eaſily perceive how by the *Figure*; where the *Reer-diviſion wheeleth* to the *left*, and the *Front-diviſion* to the *right*, untill the *Bringer-up* of the *right-hand-file* meets in the *midſt* with his *file-leader*: the *ſecond* with the *ſeventh*; the *third* with the *ſixth*; the *fourth* with the *fifth*, &c.

Note that if the length of your Battell be double the number of your depth, as in this Figure, then this wheeling of Front and Reer into the Right or Left flank, doth quadruple their former depth. If the number were equall in length and depth, then by this wheeling they would be but doubled. If the number of your length exceed more then double your depth, by ſo much the more will the extenſion of the depth be beyond quadruple &c.

For the *Reducement* of this *Figure* of *Wheeling* there are many wayes, according as the *Body* may be *faced*: But firſt conceive them *faced* the ſame way as they were before this *Motion* began; and then the *wheeling* of *Front* and *Reer* into the *left-flank* will *reduce* them, when they are *faced* to their *Leader*. Or, if you will, *face* them that way which they *wheeled* in the *Motion*, which was to the *right*; then *wheele your flanks* into the *Reere*; when being *faced* to their *proper-front*, they are *reduced*. And ſo, in like manner, ſhould you *face* them to ſome other part, they might be otherwiſe *reduced*. The next *Wheeling* will be the ſame to the *left*, as this is to the *right*; where, notwithſtanding that the *Motion* be all one, yet it ſhall differ in the *placing* of the *men*. For before I begin the *Wheeling*, I will paſſe through all the *Muſquettiers*, from the *right-flank* to the *left*; by which meanes, the *Body* will ſtand as appeareth by the *ſquare Figure* following under *A*. From whence I will begin the next *Wheeling*.

The Reducement.

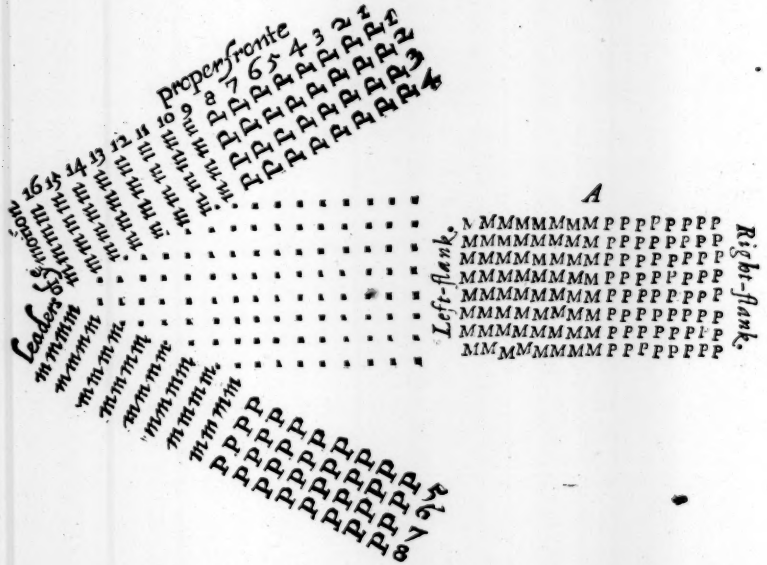
Wheelings may be diverſly reduced, at the diſcretion of the Commander.

CHAP. LXV.

Of wheeling the Left-flank into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele Front and reer in the Left-flank.*

The direction is, *Face all to the left, and move after your present leaders.*



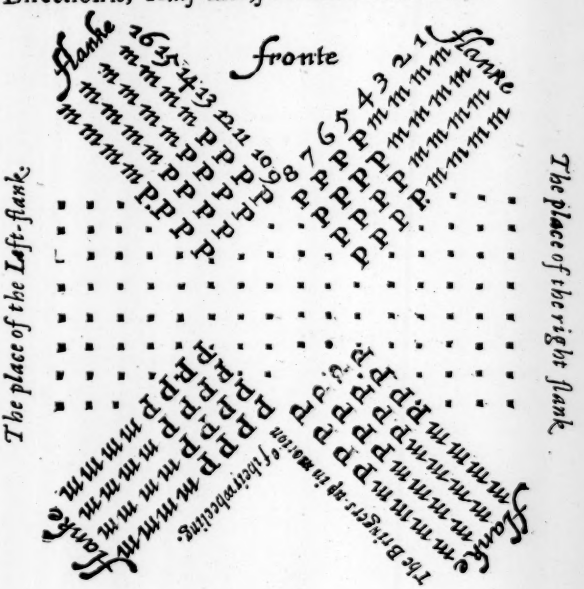
THis *Divisionall wheeling* of the *Front* and *Reer* into the *Left-flank*, is in like manner a *Doubling of the depth*. For the nature of the *Motion*, it is altogether like unto the *Wheeling* next before: differing onely in the *Flank*; and after that the *Body* is *faced* to the *left*, the *wheeling* is to be performed as *wheeling* the *Flanks* into the *Front*. But by reason that before the *Motion* began, all the *Pikes* were on the *right-flank*, by this *wheeling* they are brought to the *Front* and *Reer*. For the *aspect* being directed the same way it was before the *Command* was given, the *depth* will be 32. as in the other *Figure*.

The reducement. For *Reducement*, the ordinary way is to *wheele* the *Front* and *Reer* into the *right-flank*. Or if upon any occasion you have *faced* your *Body* to the same way they have *wheeled* (which was to the *left-flank*) and would give your *Command* from thence, then let them *wheele* their *flanks* into the *Reer*. This done, the *Commander* passing to his first *Front* and *facing* them to him, they are as before this last *Wheeling* began. Then cause the *foure files* of *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right*, and to passe through to their places. Lastly do but *close* them to their due *distance* in *rank* and *file*, and they are perfectly *reduced*.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of wheeling Front *and* Reer *into the midst of the Battell.*
The Command is, *Wheele both* Flanks *into the* Front *and* Reer.
The Direction is, *Half-files, face-about to the* Reer.



THis *divisionall wheeling* of both *flanks* into the *Front Reer*, doth *double* the *depth*; making them from 8. *deep*, 16. It doth likewise transferre the *Musquettiers* from the *flanks* into the *Front* and *Reere*; making a *division* between the *Front-halfe-files* and *Reer-half-files*: So that of one *Body flanke* with *Musquettiers*, it maketh two; each having their *Musquettiers* in *Front*.

This *Figure*, and most others, (as well *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-martches*, and *Wheelings* (are here set forth as the *motion* of each presents it self in the *execution*; few of them being shewn as they be when they are *executed*: And I conceive it the better way, not only for *direction*, but also for the *apprehension* of the Learner, to shew the work as it is in *doing*, rather then absolutly *performed*.

For the way how to perform this *wheeling*, take these directions following. The *Command* being first given, as afore-said, the first thing the Souldiers have to do is, for the *halfe-files to face-about*, and then the *Front-half-files* and *Reere-half-files wheele* at one and the same time; the *Front-division wheeling* about their two *inner-most file-leaders*, which are figured with the numbers of 8. & 9. unil the *file-leaders* of the *right-flank* meet together in the *midst* with the *file-leaders* of the *left-flank*; as you may easily perceive by the Figure shewing the *motion*; the rest of their *divisions* orderly following them. The *half-files* also being *faced about*, the *Bringers-up* in like manner *wheele* together; being now the *leaders* of the *motion*, in the *Reer*, as you may perceive. This being done, if you please, you may *face* them all to their *Leader*, (whom suppose to be at the *place* of his *first-Front*) and then command them to *close* their *Divisions*; which being performed, all your.

The direction to this wheeling.

your *file-leaders* are in the two *inner-most files* of the *front-division*, *file-wise*, and all the *bringers-up* in the *reer-division* of the same *files*.

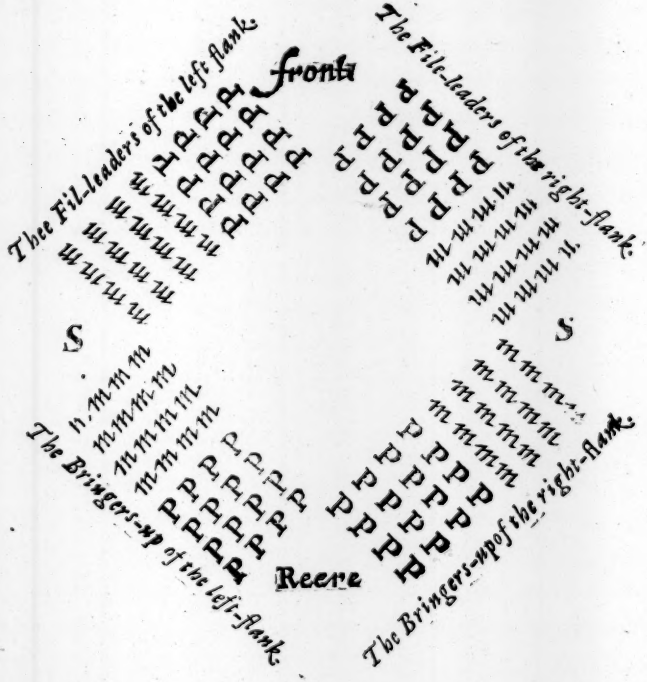
For the *reducement* of this *wheeling*, if you will, *face* them to either of the *flanks*, and command them to *wheel* both *flanks* into the *front* and *reer*, then *face* them again to their *proper-front*, and close their *divisions*, they will be as at first. But if you would make use of some other *wheeling*, to *reduce* it, then take this in the following Chapter.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of wheeling the flanks into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is, *Wheele front and reer into both flanks.*

The Direction is, *Face to the right and left, and wheel after your present leaders.*



THis *divisionall wheeling* of the *front* and *reer* into both *flanks*, may also be termed a *doubling of the depth*: by reason that from 8. *deep*, it *maketh double the former number*. By this *motion* also, the *Musketiers* which were before *flankers*, are now transferred into the *midst*, between the *front* and *reer* of the *Pikes*. And whereas in the other figure, the *wheeling* was about the two *middle-most file-leaders*, & *bringers-up*; this *wheeling* contrariwise, is about the two *halfe-file-leaders*, of the *out-most files* on each *flank*. In the other *wheeling*, the *file-leaders* and *bringers-up* made the *innermost files*, in this the

outermost

outer-moſt-file of each *flank*, as you may eaſily perceive by the *figure*. This *motion* being performed, leaves a large *Intervall* (or *diviſion*) from *front* to *reere*, between the *flanks*: if the Commander paſſe into the *midſt*, between each *diviſion*, and *face* them all to him; cauſing them to *cloſe* their *diviſions*, and martch forth into his firſt place, (directing their *aſpects* the ſame way) then will the *Pikes* be in the *front* and *reere*.

For the *reducement* of this *figure* (of *wheeling*) to its former *poſture*; you may *face* the *body* to one of the *flanks*. Which being done, command them again to *wheel front and reer into both flanks*, when being *faced* to their former *front*, & having *cloſed* their *diviſion*, they are reduced. Nevertheleſs if you would make uſe of ſome other *wheeling* to *reduce* them, then *wheele both flanks* into the *front* and *reere*, and they will be as at firſt, after that they have *faced* to their *Leader*, and *cloſed* their *diviſions*. Thus as briefly, & as plainly as I could, have I run through the ſeverall *motions* and *grounds*, for the *diſciplining* of a *foot-company*. And although I neither can, nor hope to give ſatisfaction to all; yet I ſhall intreat the better qualified, that where I am wanting, there they will ſupply my defects with their goodneſſe. Or if it ſo happen, that I undergoe the cenſure of needleſs ſuperfluity: I would have ſuch to make uſe of ſo much of it, as they ſhall think fit for their own turnes, and leave the reſidue unto ſuch as may have opportunity for to uſe it. *The Reductions.*

THus courteous Reader have I paſt the grounds,
And various motions of the Infantery,
Where thou maiſt gain the skill, coſt others wounds,
Though from a young one of th' Artillery.
Read and conſider, if thou nothing gain,
I aſk as little from thee for my paine.

If thou the Diſtances doſt well peruſe,
The ſeveral Facings, and the Doublings too,
The Counter-marches which of courſe enſues,
And then our Wheelings which we laſtly do:
Theſe being practis'd, learn'd and underſtood.
The benefit turnes to thy Countries good.

Theſe like the Vowels are in number five,
With which we ſpell all words that can be nam'd:
So with theſe motions we all formes contrive,
And from theſe grounds are all our Figures fram'd.
Then frame thou no ex uſe, but learne to know them,
And with as free an heart as I do ſhow them.

Now next of all I ſhould ſome firings ſhow,
But leſt perhaps I hold you over-long,
I think it fit ſome reſpite to beſtow,
For fear our Souldiers think I doe them wrong.
So pleaſe the Reader but to pauſe the whiles,
And ſee our Leaders exerciſe their files.

For now each Leader is ſo courteous growne;
He ſtrives to bring another to his place,
But they as modeſtly would keep their own,
And each prefers his follower to the grace.
So pleaſe you then but wink at the digreſſion,
And you ſhall ſee each Leader by ſucceſſion.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of making men file-leaders ſucceſſively, the files being eight deepe.

EVery Man may be made *file-leader* of his own *file ſucceſſively*, according to his *firſt ſtanding*, as well and eaſily in *great bodies*, as by *ſingle files*. Yea and with the ſame words of Command and Direction, as you may perceive by the following Table, where the Figures of *number* ſhew the ſucceſſion of each mans *leading*. The words of *Command* which produce each *leader*, being placed in the Columes of the following Table. In the firſt Colume, the *file* ſtands each man in his right place; with his *proper file-leader* in *front*. The reſt of the *files* demonſtrating the *places* of the men, according to their *ſtanding* upon the making of every ſeverall *file-leaders*. The *Commands* are *figured*: which produce the like *leaders*.

The Front of each file, as they come to be file-leaders successively, with the numbers and places of the men, figured according to their proper places they first stood in.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
7	8	5	6	3	4	1	2
6	5	8	7	2	1	4	3
5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4
4	3	2	1	8	7	6	5
3	4	1	2	7	8	5	6
2	1	4	3	6	5	8	7
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

The severall words of Command, which produce each File-leader.

2	Ranks } to the right double } makes the Files
3	File-leaders and half-file-leaders stand, the rest passe thorow to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders, } makes the
4	Ranks } to the Left double } makes the Files
5	First Rank stand, the rest passe through to the left, and place your selves before your leaders, } makes the
6	Ranks } to the Right double, makes the Files
7	Counter-march Front and Reere into the midst, and then face to the first Front, } makes the
8	Ranks, } to the Left double } makes the Files,
1	Then face-about, or counter-march the front into the Reere, and they are reduced.

The first are the *proper-leaders* of the *files*. For to make the second *leade*, if there be but one *file*, then, *file, rank two to the right*, if there be more *files*, then, *ranks to the right, double*, and *files to the right, double*. By which meanes the second man is become *leader* of his *file*; every man being disposed, as you may perceive by that *file*, whose *leader* is the *figure* of 2. To make him that was the third man, *leader*, let *file-leaders and half-file-leaders stand*, and *the rest pass through to the right, and place themselves before their leaders*. Thus will the *file* stand like that, led by the *figure* of 3. For to make him that was the fourth man *leader*;

leader; *Ranks to the left, double*; and *files to the left, double*: whereby the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 4. For to make him that was the fifth man *leader*, let the *first rank stand*; *the rest pass through to the right, and place themselves before their leaders*: by which means, the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 5. For to make him that was the sixth man *leader*, *Double your ranks to the left*, and, *Files to the left, double*: and then the *file* will stand like the *file* led by the figure of 6. For to make him that was the seventh man *leader* of the *file*, *Counter-march, front and rear into the middest*, and *face them to their former front*: whereby the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 7. For to make him that was the eighth man *lead* the *file*, *Ranks to the left double*, and, *Files to the left double*: and the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 8. For to *reduce* them, *Cause the first rank to stand, the rest to advance forwards to the right, placing themselves before their leaders.* The reducement.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of making men File-leaders successively, the Files being but six deep.

SOme will be inquisitive to know for what use the *making of File-leaders by succession* serveth; or whether it be not a meer curiosity? To which I thus answer: That it is not only *pleasant*, but *profitable*. *Pleasant* to the *leader* of a *file*, who having sufficiently exercised his *file* in *Postures*, to give some time of respite or delectation for the recreating of their (almost) tired spirits, brings each man, *successively*, to *lead* the *file*, by *proper words of Command*: And lastly, *reduceth* each man to his *former standing*. It must needs be profitable, and much available in *Discipline*, when the skilfull *Commander* can thereby (with much ease) *change* and *interchange*, bring what *ranks* he pleaseth to *lead in Front*, and *exchange* them afterwards for others; yea, and lastly, at his own pleasure bring the *proper File-leaders* again into their places. This following Table shews each mans several place, and how they stand upon every mans comming to be made *File leaders*, and suffering alteration, according to their various *leaders*; demonstrated here by the figures of *number* (which are placed at the bottome of those Columnes wherein are writ the *words of Command*:) Understand that those words over the figure of 2. are to make the second man *file leader*; those words over the figure of 3. make the third man *leader*: And so forwards to the rest, as in the Table.

The Front and standing of each File as they come to be Leaders.

6	5	4	3	2	1
5	6	5	2	1	2
4	3	1	6	4	3
3	4	6	1	3	4
2	1	2	5	6	5
1	2	3	4	5	6

The words of Command which produce each several Leader.

File-leaders stand; the rest pass thorow, and place your selves before your leaders.	Ranks, Files, to the right double.	Ranks to the left double, and Files double your depth to the Left.	File-leaders stand, the rest pass thorow to the right, and place your selves before your leaders.	Half-files double your front to the right, and files to the right double.	Ranks, Files, to the left double.
1	6	5	4	3	2

The *first man* is the *leader* of the *file*. For to make the *second man* leader, Command, *File, rank two to the left*. If there be more *files* than one, *Ranks to the left, double*; and *files to the left, double*: which makes the *second man* leader; every man in the *file* being disposed, as you may perceive by that *file* led by the figure of 2. For to make him that was the *third man* leader, Command, *Half files, double the front to the Right*; and *Files to the right, double*: by which means, the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 3. For to make him that was the *fourth man* leader; *Face to the Reer*, and then he leads. But if you will keep the same *Front*, command the *first rank to stand, the rest to pass through to the left, placing your selves before your leaders*: Thus will the *file* stand like that led by the figure of 4. For to make the *fifth man* leader, command, *Ranks to the right, double*: and *Files to double their depth to the right intire*: by which means, the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 5. For to make the *sixth man* file-leader, cause *Ranks to the left, double*; and *Files to the left, double*: and then the *file* will stand like that led by the figure of 6. For to *reduce* them, there needs no more but, *Face to the Reer*: Notwithstanding, if you would have *the* Front the same way, the Command is, *First-rank stand*; *the rest pass forwards to the right, placing your selves before your leaders.*

The reducement.

For to make six men successively Leaders, by six words of Command, besides Facings.

The first is *leader*: For the second file, *Rank two to the left*; and, *Files to the left, double.*

For

For the third, *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst, & face to to that part which was the Reer.* For the fourth, *Face about to the right.* For the fifth *Counter-martch Front and Reer into the midst, and face to that which was the Reer.* For the sixth, *Files, rank two to the right,* and, *files to the right, double.* Face them about, and they are *reduced.*

CHAP. LXX.

Of making men File-leaders successively, according to their precedency and dignity in file.

HAving already demonstrated two Tables, for the making of men *File-leaders successively*, let it not be held impertinent if I present two others unto you; wherein I shall deliver the way of making men *File-leaders, according to dignity.* Snarling Synicks, I know, will *carp* at my *curiosity*; but *studious Souldiers* will *praise* my *industry.* Men naturally are not inclined to practise any thing, wherein they find not either profit or delight: few men by the *practise* of *Armes* makes * profit. If then the *aimes* of *honour* may be first attracted, with the various delights which are found in the study and practice of the *Art Military*, why should any grutch the gilt to the wholsome Pill, (which makes it the more readily and willingly received?) Or, why should any hinder the means, whereby *Souldiers* may be built up with delight, seeing that the benefit redounds to the reputation and honour of our Country? Thus much upon mine own knowledge: I have seen some so prepostorous to all conceit of *Souldiery*, that they have shunned it with as much care as thrifty husbands do beggery; yet casually happening to see the *exercise of a single file*, have been so taken with some conceit or knack, that without any further aime, they have taken *Armes*: wherein, by their *practice* and *industry*, they have attained so much *proficiency*, that now they are known excellent in many parts of the *Art Military.* Nor hath their flowring buds been any way priviledged, or might escape those private & frosty nips from aspersionating tongues; a fault too common and customary in many, to despise the vertue of those, whom they have known raw novices in that *art* and *faculty*, wherein themselves have been noted any thing extraordinary. But lest I be censured to be over-tart or tedious, I return to the work of this Chapter: which is, *the making men file-leaders in dignity.*

* *What fortunate protits Souldiers have made by following this Art, read Rawleighs Hist. of the World, l. 5. c. 6. Sect. 2.*

Each mans *dignity* and *worth*, with the reasons thereof, are at large set forth in the *fourth* and *fifth* Chapters of this Book. The *Table* followeth, wherein is declared every mans *dignity*, and the words to make them *file-leaders* accordingly, &c.

File-leaders by Dignity.

The Pioneer file leader.	The bringer-up.	The half file-leader.	The Bringers up of the front half file.	The second man from the front.	The next after the half file-leader.	The third man from the front.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
5	6	7	3	6	2	3
8	7	6	8	1	3	2
4	3	2	7	2	7	6
3	4	1	2	4	5	8
6	8	5	5	3	1	4
7	5	8	6	8	4	1
2	1	4	1	7	8	5

A. 1. File-leader. B. 2. Bringer-up. C. 3. Half-file-leader. D. 4. Bringers up of the front half file. E. 5. The second man from the front. F. 6. The next before the bringer-up. G. 7. Next after the half file-leader. H. 8. The third man from the front.

The several words of command, which produce each File-leader.

2	3	4	5	6	7	8	0
File-leaders stand: the rest pass thorow to the right and place your selves before your leaders.	File-leaders and half-file leaders stand: the rest pass thorow to the left, and place your selves before your leaders	Bringers up, double your front to the right, and files to the right double	Front and Rear-half files interchange your ground.	Ranks to the left double, then, files double your depth to the left.	File leaders, & half file leaders stand; the rest pass thorow to the right; placing your selves before your leaders.	Half files, double your front to the left, then files to the left double.	The words of command to reduce them to their former places, are placed beneath this Table.

The Reducement.

1. Front and rear half files interchange ground.
2. Ranks to the right double.
3. Bringers up face about to the left, & march into your places.

The *file-leader* is the A. *chiefest man in dignity*, and *first leader of the file*. To make the B. *second man in dignity file leader*, (command) *file-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your leaders*. To make the C. *third man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file-leaders, & half-file-leaders, stand; the rest pass forwards to the left, and place your selves before your leaders*. To make the D. *fourth man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *bringers-up, double your front to the left*, and (that being done) *files to the left, double*. To make the E. *fifth man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *front and rear half-files interchange ground*, and then *face* as before. To make the F. *Sixt man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file, rank two to the left*, (if it be a *single file*: but if you have more files, then command *ranks to the left double*) and *files double your depth to the left*. To make the G. *Seventh man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *file-leaders, and half-file-leaders stand; the rest passe forwards to the right, placing your selves before you leaders*. To make the H. *Eighth and last man in dignity file-leader*, (command) *half-files double your front to the left*. (that done) *Files to the left double*. This being performed, every man hath successively been the *leader* of his own file, according to his *dignity* therein. The *reducement* is placed at the lower end of the *table*.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of making men file-leaders by dignity, the files being but six deep.

MAny wayes there be to make men *file-leaders*, either *successively*, or by *dignity* in one *single file*; which cannot so easily (nor so properly) be performed with a whole *company* (or *larger body*) and therefore neither proper nor *useful*. Such waies only being fit to be *practised*, as will suite with any number, the *depth* only *reserved*, which

which I have here under-taken for six *deep*. The following *Table* demonstrates their *Number of dignity*, and the *succession* of *each mans* comming to *lead in Front*; as also *each mans place* upon the *alteration* of every *leader*, and *severall words of Command*. Beneath each Columne is placed the *words of Command*, to produce the next *ensuing leader*. Last of all is the *Reducement*.

Succession of leading in Dignity.

Number of Dignity.					
6	5	4	3	2	1
2	4	5	9	6	5
1	3	1	2	3	4
3	1	3	4	1	3
4	2	6	5	5	6
5	6	2	1	4	2

The words of Command which produce each File-leader.

1	6	5	4	3	2
The words of command to reduce them are at the end of this Table.	File-leaders stand; the rest passe thorow to the left, and place your selves before your leaders.	Ranks to the right double; and Files to the right double.	Front and Reere-halfe files interchange ground.	File-leaders and halfe-file-leaders stand, the rest passe thorow to the left, and place your selves before your leaders.	Bringers-up, double your Front to the right, Files, double your depth to the right.

The Reducement.

Ranks to the Left } double.
Files to the Left }
Halfe-files, double your Front to the Right.
Bringers-up, face-about to the Right, and march forth into your places.

Although the *Table* it self were sufficient to instruct the desirous, yet for the clearer demonstration, take these further instructions.

A. The *first rank*, or the *file-leaders* of each *file* are the *first* and *chiefest men in dignity*; every one in his own *file*. To make the B. *second-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Bringers-up double your Front to the Right*; (and then) *Files, double your depth to the Right*. To make the C. *third-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *File-leaders and halfe-file-leaders, stand; the rest passe through to the left, and place your selves before your leaders*. To make the D. *fourth-rank in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Front and Reer-half files, interchange ground*. To make the F. *fifth-ranke in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *Ranks to the right double*, (and) *Files to the right double*. To make the F. *sixth and last-rank in dignity file-leaders*, (Command) *File-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the left, and place your selves before your leaders*. The *Reducement* is placed at the lower end of the *Table*.

A. The file-leaders.
B. Bringers up.
C. Halfe file leaders
D Bringers up of the Front halfe files.
E. The second man from the Front.
F. The sixth rank from the Reers.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of drawing the Files again into a Body, and preparing them for skirmish.

BY this time (me thinks) I hear the * *Drums beat a Call*; which summons each *File-leader* to his *place*: every man observing his *order*, both in *rank* and *file*. The *Officers* * *Upon the first summons of the drum, every File leader is to draw forth his file, (whether he be exercising them in Posture or Motion) and to repair to the Rendezvous or Colours.*

having

having taken their due *places*; the *Captain* and *Ensigne* in the *Front of Pikes*, the *Lievtenant* in the *Reere*; the *Serjeants* on the *flanks*; the *Drums* on the *Front* and *Reere-angles* of the *Pikes*: as you may perceive by the *square Figure* following.

Now the *Drums beat a Martch*, the *Ensigne* flying at the *head* of the *Pikes*, the *Pikes* and *Musquets shouldred*, *martching* at their *distance* of *Order*[a] in *File*, at *Open-Order* in *Ranke*: presently, by a[b] *signe* from the *Captain*, the *Drums beat a Preparative*, the *Pikes advance*, the *Ranks close forwards to their Order*, the *Musquittiers make ready*, and every man prepares himselfe for *Battell* or *Skirmish*. And here the eyes of the *Drum* must be very vigilant to observe his *Captain* or *Commander*, that by the least *signe*, either of hand, *leading-staffe*, or whatsoever else hee carries, he may either continue his *Charge*, *Retreit*, or else *Charge home*; and every *Souldier* ought to be so well *trayned* and *practised*, that in the time of *Battell* he may receive *ample instructions* from the *sound* of the *Drum*.

[a] *Distance in rank and file is to be understood betweene rank & file and not as some would fondly wrest it.*

[b] *That is, to advance his Keyn, Pike, or Leading-staffe.*

If the Captain sends out loose files or ranks to skirmish before the Front, the Ensigne continues standing at the head of the Pikes, his Colours flying: If the Captain prepare to give fire, either even with the Front of Pikes, or in the single horne Battell, then the Ensigne must furle-up his Colours, and retreit to the halfe-files. The Body drawn into a square with the Officers in their places.

Front.

E. C.

S.	M	M	M	M	D.	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	D.	M	M	M	M	S.
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	
S.	M	M	M	M	D.	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	D.	M	M	M	M	S.

L.

Reere.

Usual Companies have beyond the Seas but two Serjeants and two Drums.

Thus many *Officers* may serve for a large *Company*, if the *Souldiers* be expert and skilfull: and to the contrary, they are all too few, if they be raw and unexperienced. I have seen some *Companies* which have been so absolutely ignorant, that each man would have needed an *Officer* to have kept him orderly in his place: Nevertheless, I make no doubt but that by the carefull over-sight of the *Lord Lievtenants*, the good assistance of their *Deputies*, and the diligence of the *Captains* and their *Officers*, this fault will quickly be amended. And this might easily enough be done, if that those which are *owners* of *Armes* would meet one hour or two in a fortnight, (at their best leasures) and first practise the *Postures* of the *Pike* and *Musquet*, not omitting to *exercise* the *Motions* and *Firings* when they are grown more *expert*. If any shall Object, that however this may be done in *Towns* and *Cities*, yet it cannot be in the *Country Villages*: I answer, that if they meet not above foure, six, or eight in a place, although they have no *Officer* to instruct them, yet by conferring and trying, and often practising, they will begin to carry their *Armes* with more ease, and to use them with more delight. Neither need they to be altogether ignorant, seeing there are divers printed *pourtraitures* of the *Postures* of each *Armes*, as also *Bookes* whereby they may have very *ample instruction*: By which having attained some little skill, they will not be contented untill they have better improved it, by the instruction of the

The willing mind will find many wayes to learne.

their *Officers*; after which they will prove better *proficients* in one hour, then as they were before in a yeare.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of Firing by forlorne Files, three severall wayes.

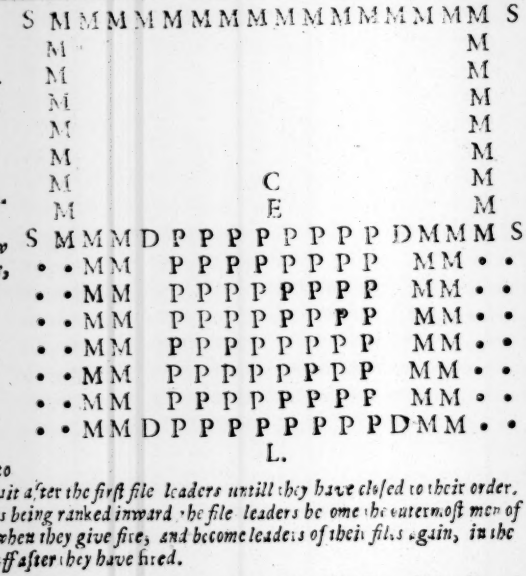
BEfore I enter upon *Formes* and *Figures* of *Battell*, be pleased to observe with me, that all *firings* are either *direct* or *oblique*: notwithstanding that the *formes* are full enough of *variety*, occasioned (most times) by the *situation* of the *place*, the *order* of the *Enemy*, and the *number* of *men*, with other *politicall observations* for the gaining of *wind* and *sun*. For the manner of *firings*, they are sometimes *advancing* against an *Enemy*, some times *receiving* the *Enemies charge* upon a *stand*, or else *retreiting*. Otherwhiles we give *fire* in the *Reere*, *marching* from the *Enemy*; or in *Flank*, *marching* by an *Enemy*; and it may so fall out, that the *Enemy* may *charge* in several places at once, as in *Front* and *Reer*; or in *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flank*; of which particulars, I will severally treat, desiring to give content to all, not making the least question, but that benefit may accrue unto some. And therefore hoping that the *courteous* & best *qualified* will accept of my good meaning, and not refuse my cates, although presented unto them in earthen vessels; whereby I shall be induced with more willingness to proceed in my intended discourses, so you be pleased to favour me with your better *opinions*; neither rashly condemning me of *prodigality*, for' enterprising a work of such *consequence* as this; nor too suddenly accusing my simplicity, for preferring my *rush-light* befor the *Sun*, when others suffer their *Torches* to burne out in dark Lanternes; whom I confess to be farre more able (were they but half so willing) to have imparted of their *Talents* to the benefit of their *Country*. But seeing that they will not vouchsafe it, and that I, like *bold Bayard*, have adventured thus farre, I shall (with your good favour) proceed: And first I will begin with *Firings in Front, advancing*, and *standing*; and so to the rest. And for the more clear expression of each *firing*, I will deliver them both in *Words* and *Figures*: The *first* whereof shall be a * *Firing by forlorne files*, which commonly is used in our *exercise* two manner of wayes: One way is, for the *two outer-most files* of each *flank* of *Musquettiers* to *martch* forth, being led on by the two *junior Serjeants*, so farre as by the superiour *Commander* shall be thought fit; who being there to *stand*, the *fore-most ranks* are to *give fire*, *wheeling off* both to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (if it be so commanded) and to place themselves in the *Reere* of their own *files*, the rest *firing*, and doing of the like, untill they have *fired* once or twice over, according to their directions. This done, the next *two out-most files* of each *flank* are to *martch* forwards into the *place* assigned, and to do the like: those *files* which formerly *gave fire* in the mean time *trooping* back, and placing themselves next the *Pikes*, on the *in-side* of the *divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the rest of the *Musquettiers* (in like manner) *martching up*, and *firing*; still placing themselves next the *Pikes*, as afore-said. When they have *fired* all over, and placed themselves according to these *directions*, they are *reduced* as at first. A second way of *Firing by forlorne files* may be after this manner: The *out-most files* of each *flank* are led forth by the *Serjeants* (according to their charge) untill they have brought them unto a *fit place* for *execution*; and then they *command* their *files* to *rank inward*, and to *present*, and fire all together; as you may plainly perceive by the *Figure* following.

All firings either to the Front, Reer or Flanks, whether marching or standing, are either direct or oblique.

† *Firing by forlorne files*

Another way of firing.

Note the distinction.



Note that the outermost file of each flanke being marcht forth, the next outermost files are to follow in the reere, until the two first files have ranked inwards. Then the leaders of the second files are to

marsh first after the first file leaders untill they have closed to their order.

† These files being ranked inward the file leaders become the outermost men of the ranks when they give fire, and become leaders of their files again, in the wheeling off after they have fired.

The first two *Files* having *ranked inward*, *presented* and *fired*, are to *wheele-off* to the *right* and *left*; following their * *leaders* in *single files*, and placing themselves on the *inside* of their *divisions* of *Musquettiers* next the *Pikes*; the next *outmost files* which followed the first in the *reere*, in the meane time, *ranking inward*, *firing*, and *wheeling-off*, as before, and placing themselves next the *Pikes*. And so forwards for all the rest of the *files*: still *marching up*, and doing the like, so long as the *Captaine* or *Commander* shall see fitting. These kinds of *firings* (and all such like) are either for the *beginning* of *skirmishes*, before the *Bodies* come within shot one of another, or to provoke the *Enemy* to *battell*, to draw them into some *ambushment* and other such politicall ends: the *number* of men which *marsh* forth upon such *designs*, nor the *manner*, are not alwayes certaine, but consist sometimes of more, sometimes of fewer, according to the *number*, *time*, and *place*. If the *Commander* please, *the outer-most file on each flank* may when they *move forwards*, *and are come to their ground for firing*; *rank the one half of each file inward into the front*: *the rest being led by their half file-leaders*, *move forwards to their Order*, *standing file-wise after the outer-most men* (*of the former ranke*) *who are the file leaders*; *having fired*, *they are to wheele-off*; *the others in the interim*, *ranking into their places*; *the next out-most Files to marsh forwards*, doing according to the former directions for the whole Files.

CHAP. LXXIV.

Of Firings by two ranks, ten paces advanced before the Front: Next, even with the Front: And lastly, even with the half files.

ADvancing of two *ranks* to *fire*, *ten paces* before the Front, is most commonly used, when one or both *Battells* marsh against each other; the *Musquettiers* being led forth by two ranks together ten or twenty *paces*, before the *front* of the *body*; that so they may come neare enough to do certaine *execution*. A *Serjeant* from each *flanke*, leading up the two *fore-most ranks*, (according as they shall have order) the first *ranks of each flanke* is to *present*, and *give fire*, *wheeling* either all *off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, as you may perceive by the following Figure.

Front.

Front.

S M M M M

W

W

W

S W M M M M D P P P P P P P D M M M M S

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

. . . . P P P P P P P . . . .

. . . . D P P P P P P P P D . . . .

E. C.

L.

Reere.

The first *ranke* having *presented, fired*, & *Wheeled-off* (as aforesaid) are to *march* close down in *single file*, within *three foot* of their own *flanks*, until they come to the *reer* of their own *divisions*; where every man is to place himself in the *reer* of his owne *file*. The second *ranke* being at the *distance* of *three foot* behind the first *ranke*; when the first took their *ground*: they likewise are to rest their *Musquets*, mounting their *muzzles* clear of their *leaders*; and so to stand with their *matches cockt*, and *pannes guarded*, that so they may *levell* and *fire* as soon as their *leaders are clear* of them, and *wheele-off*, in like manner *placing* themselves as they were before. The next two *ranks* are to begin to *advance forwards*, when they se the *last* of the *two former ranks*, *presented*, *ready* to *fire*. And they also having *fired*, *wheel-off* as the others did before them. And so successively, the rest of the *ranks advancing firing*, and *wheeling-off again placing themselves* according to former *directions*. This way they may *give fire*, *once* or *oftner* over, as the *enemy* doth *advance*, or the *commander* shall see fitting. All this while that the *Musquettiers advance* so farr before the *Front*, (if the *body* be upon *march*) the *Pikes* may be *shouldered*: but when the *bodies* come within *eight-score*, or less, (*if there be any doubt of the Enemies horse*) then it is fit that the *Musquettiers give fire* even with the *front* of the *Pikes*, and that the *Pikemen advance* their *Pikes*, and *close forwards* to their *distance* of *three foot*, that so they may be *even* in *rank* with their *musquettiers*, as you may perceive by the following *Figure*. If there be no fear of the *enemies horse*, then the *Pikes* may move *shouldred and close forward to their Order*; by that means saving their *Pikes* from being *shattered and broken* by the *bullets* that flie at *randome*.

The manner described how this fiting ought to be performed.

No Commander so precisely bound to any forme but that he may as occasion serveth alter this Figure at his pleasure.

Front.

E. C.

S. M M M M D P P P P P P P D M M M M S

W M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M W

W M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M W

W M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M W

W M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M W

M M M M P P P P P P P M M M M

S. . . . . D P P P P P P P D . . . . S

L.

Reere.

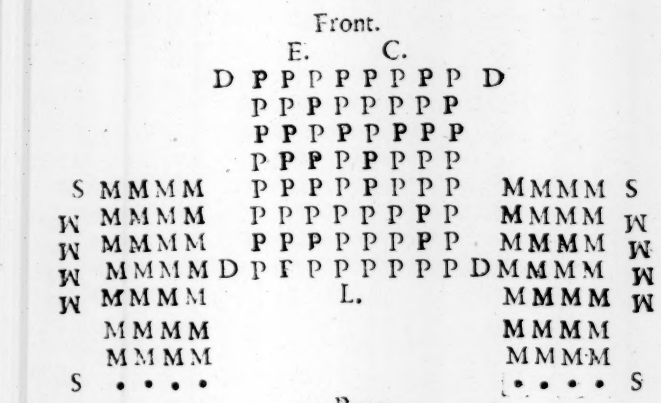
Now the *Pikes* being *advanced*, and the *ranks closed forwards* to their due *distance* of *Order*, the *musquettiers* are to *present*, *even* with the *front*, every *rank successively* moving forwards, until they come to be even in *rank* with the first *rank* of *Pikes*, there to *give fire*, and to *wheel-off* to the *right* and *left*, *trooping file-wise*, down close to their own divisions: and taking their places in the *Reere*, as in the former figures. The first *rank* of *musquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled* away, the next *ranks* are to *move* forwards at three * *motions* into their places, and there to *give fire* after the same manner, *wheeling* away again, and placing themselves according to former

The three Motions are, Blow your coal, Open your Pan, Present.

* *You are to blow your coal, stepping forwards with your left foot. Open your pan, stepping forwards with your right foot. Present, stepping forwards with your left foot. These Motions are to be performed hand and foot together, by every one that advanceth ground to give fire, without expecting any directions in time of Skirmish.*

mer *directions*, every *ranke* ſtill making good their *leaders ground*. In this ſort the *battell* may be continued, until they have fired once, twice, or ofner over: and that the *bodies* be come ſo cloſe together, that the *Pikes* begin to *port*, and ſo at length come to *puſh of pike*. Which done, the *Muſquettiers* are to *give fire*, either retreating, or elſe not to *advance* further than the *half-files* of *Pikes*. For in that place (the bodies being come ſo neer together) they will do as much *execution*, as if they were *even* with the *front*. The manner of the *ſtanding*, you may perceive by the following *Figure*.

The Pikes coming to the port and charge: the Muſquettiers either firing without advancing into their leaders ground, or even with the half files.



The *Pikes* being now *charged* & ready to come to the *puſh*, the *Muſquettiers* are to advance no further than the *Half-files* of *Pikes*: that ſo they may do execution with their *ſhot* and be out of danger of the Pikes. This having attained, they are there to *preſent* and *give fire*; every rank ſtill *moving forwards*, and maintaining his leaders *ground* After they have performed their *firing*, they are to *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, as in the former Figures: ſtill placing themſelves in the *reere* of their own *files*, alwayes taking their directions from the *Drum*, either for *charging* or *retreating*, &c.

The reducement. Note the ſeveral obſervations.

The *Batted* or charge being ended, the *Reducement* is eaſie. The *leader* of each *file*, being in his place at the *head* of his *file*, command the *Muſquettiers* to *martch* up, *even* with the *front* of *Pikes*, and then they will be as at firſt.

Obſerve withal, that when the *firing* is to be performed, *even* with the *Front*, then the *Muſquettiers* are ſtill to make good their *leaders ground*: the want to be in the place of moſt ſecurity, (which is the *Reer*) as you may perceive by the *pricks* which I have deſigned, for noting out the *empty rooms* of ſuch, who have *cloſed forwards* to make good the *ground* in the *Front*: the others that laſt *fired*, are *wheeled-off*, and *trooping* down into their places. When the firing is even with the half-files, they are to do the like, unleſs the *Drum beat a retreat*, for then the *Muſquettiers* neither *advance*, nor *retreat*: but every *Rank giving fire* on the ſame *ground* they *ſtand*: and then *wheel-off* again, that their fellowes may do as much. * Nevertheleſs when the *forlorne files marteh forth*, or that two ranks *marteh forth*, ten *paces* (or more) before the front: then they are to give *fire*, as upon a *retreit*: unleſs the *enemy* give ground or flie. I will now ſhew ſome other wayes of *firing in front* (before I ſhew the *firings* in the *reere*) The firſt whereof, ſhall be the *horne-battel*: as in the Chapter following.

** Note concerning forlorne files, and two ranks before the front.*

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Horne-battel, how to make it, and to reduce it by firing.

THe *Horne-battel* may be for the ſame occaſion and uſe, as the *firing* by *two ranks, ten paces advancing before the Front*, and is by ſome held more ſerviceable; becauſe that the *Muſquettiers* do their *execution* more roundly, without any intermiſſion of time, and keep themſelves without ſtragling from their *Bodies*. Beſides, the *Wings* of *Muſquettiers*, being ſo advanced, are more apt for *over-fronting*, and more eaſily to be *wheeled*, whereby to charge the Enemy in *flank*: each of theſe *Wings* or *Diviſions* are to be led up by a *Serjeant* (or ſome other ſuperiour *Officer*) unto the *place* appointed by the *Chiefe*. But becauſe it may be performed in time of *exerciſe*, by the intelligible *Souldier*, obſerve the *Command* which produceth this following *Figure*.

Pikes ſtand, Muſquettiers martch, until the bringers-up rank with the Front of Pikes.

The Horn-battel.



The *Figure* being perfect, the *firſt-rank of Muſquettiers preſent, and give fire, wheeling-off* either all to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (according as they ſhall have direction) and placing themſelves orderly, in the *Reere* of their own *files*. The *next rank* (after the ſame manner) *firing* and *wheeling-off*, and placing themſelves behind thoſe which were their *leaders*. Thus is every *ranke*, ſucceſſively, to do the like, until they have all *given fire*. If the *Commander* would ſtill preſerve and continue the ſame *Figure*, then let the *Muſquettiers* ſtill *move forwards*, into the ground (or place) of them that *fired* before them; and the *forme* will be the ſame. But if by the *Chiefe* it be found neceſſary, that after once or twice *firing over*, the *Shot* ſhould *flank* their *Pikes*, then the *Muſquettiers* muſt not advance into their *leaders ground*, but to the contrary, every *rank* is to *preſent and fire* on the ſame *ground* they ſtand, and that ſo ſoon as they are *clear* of their *leaders*. Or, if need be, the *Pikes* may advance and *martch up*, to make their *Front intire*: which being done, the *File-leaders* of *Muſquettiers* being in *Front*, they are reduced.

The firing deſcribed.

Note.

The reduce-ment.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Demie-hearſe Battel: The uſe of the Figure, how to make it, and to reduce it by firing.

The next *firing* in *Front*, which I preſent unto you, is the *Demie-hearſe*: which is a *Figure*, firme, ſolid, and ſtable; yea, and doth as much *execution* as any of the former, and that with half the danger. For the *Pikes* in the former *Figure*, they either *rank even* with the *Front* of *Muſquets*, or elſe the *diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* being open, they become liable to the danger of the Enemies *ſhot*, themſelves not being able to do any thing, either *offenſive* or *defenſive*. But, to the contrary, in this *Figure* they are ſecurely covered by their own *Muſquettiers*, until they approach nearer to the Enemy; whereby they may be able to do ſome ſervice, either by ſending their *ſhowers* of *arrowes* amongſt them, thereby breaking their order and array; or elſe, by *cloſing nearer*, come to the *ſhock*, and ſo try the fortune of the day. But not to hold you longer in *circumſtance*, take the words of *Command*, which produce the *Figure* as followeth:

The danger of the Demie-hearſe is fear of being over-fronted.

Pikes ſtand, Muſquettiers advance before your front of Pikes, and cloſe your Diviſions.

Front.



L.

The *firings* on this *Figure* may be divers; yet I ſhall content my ſelf only to ſhew two of them: The * *firſt* is, that the *Muſquettiers* may, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*, *give fire* in *Front*, and ſo *wheel-off* by *diviſion* (or all to the *right*, as ſhall beſt pleaſe him that *commands* in *chief*) placing themſelves in the *Reere* of their own *diviſions* and *files* of *ſhot*, which is juſt before the *Front* of *Pikes*. The *next ranks* then *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, are to *preſent*, *fire*, *wheel-off*, and place themſelves after the ſame manner; the reſt of the *Muſquettiers* doing the like, until they have all *given fire*: which *firing* doth nothing alter the *Form*, or *Figure* of *Battel*. Having *fired* once or twice over this way, the ſecond *Firing* ſhall ſerve for *Reducement*; which is indeed the *Firing* intended to be expreſt by this *Figure*. And that I may by *words* the more clearly explain the *Works*, take theſe *directions* following.

† *The firing on this figure:*

The ſecond firing on this figure ſerveth for the reducement.

The * *firſt-rank* having *given fire*, are to *wheele* equally *off* by *diviſion*, each part falling *file-wiſe down*, cloſe by their *flanks* of *Muſquettiers*, until the *leaders* of the *ranks* of *muſquets* come down as low as the *firſt-rank* of *Pikes*; which being performed, they are to

Note this Figure.

face

face outwards, and to move so far-forth in a *straight line*, untill they have *rank'd even* with the *first-ranke* of *Pikes*. But here-withall are they to observe, that they no[t] have an *intervall* between the *inner-most Musquet* of each *flank*, and the *outer-most File-leader* of the *Pikes*. So soon as the *first-rank* hath *given fire* and *wheeled-away*, the *second-rank* is to *give fire*, *wheeling-off* as before, and *passing down* between the *intervalls* on the *flanks*, placing themselves after their *leaders*. The same is every *rank* successively to do, untill all the *Musquettiers* are drawn from before the *Front*, and placed on the *flanks* of their *Pikes*. But when there are not above two *ranks* of *Musquettiers* to *give fire*, then the *Pikes* may *Port*; and the *Musquettiers* have *fired*, and are *wheeled-away*, they may *Charge*. And lastly, the *Pikes* being *re-advanced*, the *Body* stands *reduced* as at first. *The Pikes Port and Charge.*

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of giving fire, advancing by way of Introduction, with the beneficiall use of the Bow and Pike.

I Shall next offer to your perusall a *Figure* of *Introduction*; which is a *passing thorow* or *between*: being a *Firing*, *advancing* against the *Enemy*, and *gaining ground*, I will not dispute how usefull it is; but sure I am, it is over-ballanced with danger. As for such whom I have seen to *practise* it, they have rather used it for *variety*, in a wel-experienced *Company*, than for any known *excellency* it hath in it self. But if these *lines* happen to be over-lookt by any, that preserves a better opinion of this *Firing* by *Introduction* than I doe, I shall be willing to leave them to their own liking; while I in the mean time proceed to shew the manner of the *execution*, which is usually one of these two wayes. The first, when the *Motion is begun by the second-rank from the Front*. The other, when *it is begun by the Bringers-up*. Nevertheless you must note, that your *Files* of *Musquettiers* must be *opened* to their *Open-Order*, before the *Firing* begin, that so the *Musquettiers* may passe between the *intervalls* of each *File*, to *give fire* in the *Front*. And therefore take the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which will produce this *Figure* following. *Firing by Introduction ordinarily performed these two manner of wayes.*

Musquettiers, make ready to give fire by Introduction.

Files of Musquettiers, *open by division to your Open-Order.*



This *Firing* by *Introduction* may be thus performed: The *Pikes* being *flanks* with their *Musquettiers*, the *first-rank* of each *flank present* and *give fire*; having *fired*, they *stand* and *make ready* again in the same place; The *second rank* passing forwards before the *first*, doe *The direction for firing by Introduction.*

doe there *fire* and *stand*: The *third ranke* then passing forwards after the *second*, and standing *even in rank* with them that first *fired*, that so soon as the *second rank* hath *fired*, they may quickly step before them, & *fire* in like manner. In this *Firing*, still the *rank* which is next to *fire*, stands *even in rank* with them which last *fired*, untill those which *stand* prosented have likewise *given fire*; after which, they then passe before them: the *rank* which was their next *followers*, passing forwards, and *ranking* with those which last *fired*; every man following his *leader* successively, untill the *Bringers-up give fire*, and *stand*; and then the *Figure* will become a *Horn-Battell*. All the while that this *Firing* by *Introduction* is continued, the *Pikes* may be * *shouldred* (if there be no fear of *Horse*) or otherwise at discretion. If you continue this *Firing* twice over, the *Musquettiers* will have their right *places*: which being done, *martch-up* your *Pikes*, to *rank even* with your *Musquettiers* in *Front*, and they are *reduced*. For the [a] other way of *Firing* by *Introduction*, the *first-rank* (or *File leaders*) are to *give fire* as before, and to *stand*; the *last-rank* (or *bringers-up*) in the interim of their *Firing*, *martching-up*, and *ranking even* with the *second-rank*; the rest following their *Bringers-up*, as they doe when *Bringers-up double* their *Front*. The *first-rank* having *fired*, the *Bringers-up* step immediately before them, *present*, and *give fire*; the rest still successively doing the like, untill every *rank* have *given fire* once over. Observe withall, that the *File-leaders* are to *give fire* twice over, being the first and the last; and then to *stand*, the *Pikes martching-up even* with their *Front* of *Musquettiers*: And thus they are *reduced*, as at first. The *Pike-men* all the time of this *Firing* doe no service: notwithstanding, if one *halfe* of them had *Bowes* fastened unto their *Pikes* (being able and wel-practised men) they might, whilest the *Musquettiers* are in *Firing*, be dealing of their doles about; and although their *arrowes* did not happen to wound mortally, yet the whistling noyse, the terrour of the fight, and the severall hurts (which could not chuse but be many) would be a great abatement to the stoutest courages: And great pity it is to see the lusty *Pike-man* poorly to drop down by the *Musquet-shot*, himself not being able to hurt his Enemy at that distance, nor defend himself.

If there be no direction given, they are to passe thorow the right.

† *The Pikes may be shouldred, and still be moving slowly forwards, and so keep even with the Front of Musquettiers.*

[a] *A second way of Firing by Introduction.*

The Reducement.

The use of the Bow & Pike.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

The way to make the Diamond-Battell: severall wayes to Fire upon it: with divers other Figures and Firings, which are thereby produced.

THe *Diamond-Battell* is also a *Firing* in *Front*, though more for shew then *modern service*, yet because that some hold it in venerable respect, I thought fit to place it amongst the rest; leaving every man to his liking, either to use it or refuse it. It may be that some will look that I should make the *Shear-Battell*, the *Wedge*, the *Saw*, and many such like, which might be made either *hollow* or *solid*; but I shall intreat such to spare me, for I would not willingly spend time to so small purpose; chusing rather to insist on *Figures* more profitable for them, and commendable for me: Yet if any man have a mind to practise any of them, by observation of this *Diamond-Battell* hee may easily make them. But not to hold you longer with circumstance, the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which are for the making of this *Diamond-Battell*, are as followeth:

First, cause your Musquettiers of the right-flank to open to the right, to a sufficient distance, for receiving the Musquets of the left-flank.

Then Command the Musquettiers of the left-flank to passe thorow, into the space of ground on the right.

Or you may cause your Pikes to stand, and Musquettiers to move all into the Front, then joyn them before the Pikes; which is the better way. But whether your Musquettiers be all in Front, or on the Flank.

The

The Command is,

Files of Musquettiers, rank 1.3.5.7. *&c. by increase to the left.*
Files of Pikes, rank after your Musquettiers, accordingly by decrease,



The *Musquettiers* may *Fire* on this Figure, divers wayes: though I onely intend to speak unto two of them. The first is the most usual way: and that is the *giving fire in rank*; the fore-most man (or *point* of the *Diamond*) first *giving fire*: then *wheeling-off* to the *right*, and placing himself just behind the *single Pikeman* in the *rear*. Then the *next rank* being three men, *give fire wheeling-off* by *division:* and placing themselves in rank, behind the *single Musquettier*, as they were before the *Firing* began. This done, the rank of five *Musquettiers give fire*; *wheeling-off*, in like manner, by *division*: ever observing, that where the *number* is *odde*, and they *commanded* to *wheel-off* by *division*, there the greatest *number* alwayes goeth to the right. And so in like manner, the *Ranks give fire* successively; and place themselves after their *leaders*, as before. When all the *Musquettiers* have *given fire*, and are *wheeling-off*, then *charge Pikes*, which will be fifteen in the *first rank*, the rest *decreasing*. Having advanced your *Pikes*, your Figure will stand like two *wedges*, with their points joyned, as you may perceive by this Figure next following.

The way to fire on the Diamond Battell.

Front.

E C

S P P P P P P P P P P P P P P S
• P P P P P P P P P P P P P •
• P P P P P P P P P P P •
• D P P P P P P P P P D •
• P P P P P P P •
• P P P P P •
• P P P •
• P •
• M •
• M M M •
• M M M M M •
• M M M M M M M •
• D M M M M M M M M M D •
• M M M M M M M M M M •
• M M M M M M M M M M M •
S M M M M M M M M M M M M M S

L.

Reer.

Obſerve this way of reducement, by inter-changing of ground.

If you would reduce your men from this *figure*, without *firing*, (your men being ſufficiently expert) let the *Muſquettiers ſtand*, and *Pikes* face to the *Reer*, and ſo the *wedges* will ſtand faced in *oppoſition*; next, command them to *interchange ground*: the *Muſquetiers* advancing forwards, into the *ground* of the *Pikes*, & the *Pikes* moving into the *ground* of the *Muſquettiers*; then by facing the *Pikes* to the *former front*, the *body* will ſtand in form of a *Diamond* again.

If you would *reduce* this *Figure* again into the form of the Diamond, by firing your *Muſquettiers*, (being now all in the *reer*) the *body* muſt *face-about*: and ſo the *firing* will be contrary to the former. But if you *wheel them about*, they may *give fire* the ſame way. Howſoever after they have *given fire*, they are to *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, and to place themſelves in the *reer* of the *Pikes*, even in rank again, as they were when at firſt they *gave fire*. Thus having all *fired over*, and *wheeled-away*, the *Pikes* may charge: and being again *advanced*, the *body* will ſtand in form of a *Diamond*: and this I pray you to conceive, for I intend not to re-make the Figure.

An oblique firing from the Diamond, the Muſquettiers counter-marching & making a deep wedg. The diſcription for this firing.

The ſecond way of *firing* on the *Diamond figure*, is by way of *Counter-martch*: and is an *oblique firing*. For whereas in the other *firing* by *ranks* (in the *Diamond Battell*) each *ranke fired* by increaſe of two (*beginning* with one, and *ending* with fifteen in a *rank*) this *firing* contrariwiſe, *begins* with 15 & *ends* with 1. ſtill decreaſing 2. For this *firing*, your *files* muſt be at *open-order*, becauſe the *Muſquettiers* muſt *counter-martch* down between the *intervalls* of their own *files* to the *right*: every *Muſquettier* that finds himſelf without a *leader*, being to *preſent* and *give fire*, and then to *counter-martch* to the *right*, placing himſelf in the *reer* of his own *file*, behind the *Pikes*. When the firſt 15 have *fired*, then the next 13 *preſent*, *give fire*, and *counter martch*, ſtill placing themſelves in the *reer* of their own *files*. Next there *fireth* 11 then 9, &c. for ſtill there *fires* ſo many, as are clear from any *leaders*. And in this manner of *firing*, they that *fire together*, ſtand neither in *rank* nor file, but *obliquely*. When all the *Muſquettiers* have fired, and are *counter-martch* into the *reer* of their own *files*, let the *Pikes charge*: and then the *form* of your *Battell* will be like a *deep wedge*: as you may perceive by the following *Figure*, where your *Ranks* are become *two* and *three of a number*.

Front.

Front.

E C

S P P P P P P P P P P P P P S
D M P P P P P P P P P P P P M D
M P P P P P P P P P P M
M M P P P P P P P P M M
M M P P P P P P M M
M M M P P P P M M M
M M M P P P M M M
M M M M P M M M M
D M M M M M M M D
M M M M M M M
M M M M M
M M M M M
S M M M S
M M M
M
M
L.

Reere.

Your men ſtanding in this form of a *deep wedge*, if you pleaſe yet to be more [a] curious, *face* them all to the *Reer*, and command your *Muſquettiers* to *march* 10. or 12. paces, your *Pikes* to ſtand; which done, your *Muſquettiers* will preſent you with an *hollow wedge*, and your *Pikes* with a *ſolid wedge*. Laſtly to [b] *reduce* all theſe ſeverall forms into the *firſt*, *proper*, *ſquare-Battell*; firſt, let the *ſolid cloſe forward*, into the *hollow* of the other: then let the *Muſquettiers make ready*, *preſent*, and *fire*, as before: that is to ſay, Every *Muſquettier* that finds himſelf without a *leader* is to *give fire*, and to *counter-march* to the *Reere* of his own *File*, the reſt doing the like, ſucceſſively. When they have all fired, and are *counter-marcht* clear, let the *Pikes charge*, and then your *Body* will have the *form* of a *Diamond* again. Next, [c] *face* them all to the *Reere*, and command, *Ranks*, *file* 8 *to the right*: which being done, paſſe thorow the *Muſquettiers* which belong to the *left-flanke*, into their places; and cloſe the *Muſquettiers* of the *right-flank* to their due *diſtance*: This done, they will ſtand all properly *reduced* into the *Square*, as at firſt.

[a] *Curioſity ſometimes not to be neglected. becauſe ſome men being therewith delighted. may thereby be gained to affect the practice of Armes, and after ſome continuance thercin, may happily prove ſolid, and good Souldiers.* [b] *The reducemet.* [c] *This facing to the Reere, makes the Muſquettiers to be again in the Van.*

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the Convex half-Moon: The uſe of the Figure; and of ſeverall wayes of firing upon it.

THe *Convex half-Moon*, or *Semi-circular Battell*, is a *form* in it ſelf both good and uſefull; which the time, the number, and place (with other circumſtance) may make either beneficiall or prejudiciall: wiſe *Captains* and *Commanders* ever fore-ſeeing with providence, what *forms* or *Figures* may be moſt *profitable* and *available* for the preſent *ſervice*. * This *Convex Figure* may be uſefull, either at the *landing* of *Souldiers* in an Enemies *Countrey*, or for neceſſity (the Enemy being more able in *Horſe*) making uſe either of *hedge*, *ditch*, *wood*, *creeke*, or *river*, to ſecure the *Reer*. For the *Figure* it ſelf it may be made many wayes; either with the *Muſquettiers* outer-moſt, or inner-moſt, or lined, &c. at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. It may alſo be made in a *Regimentall* way, or after the way of a ſmall and prive *Company*: But becauſe I have only in this my ſmall *Treatiſe*, taken upon me to ſhew the *Poſtures*, *Motions*, and *Figures*, which are moſt uſu-

* *The uſefulneſſe of this Figure.*

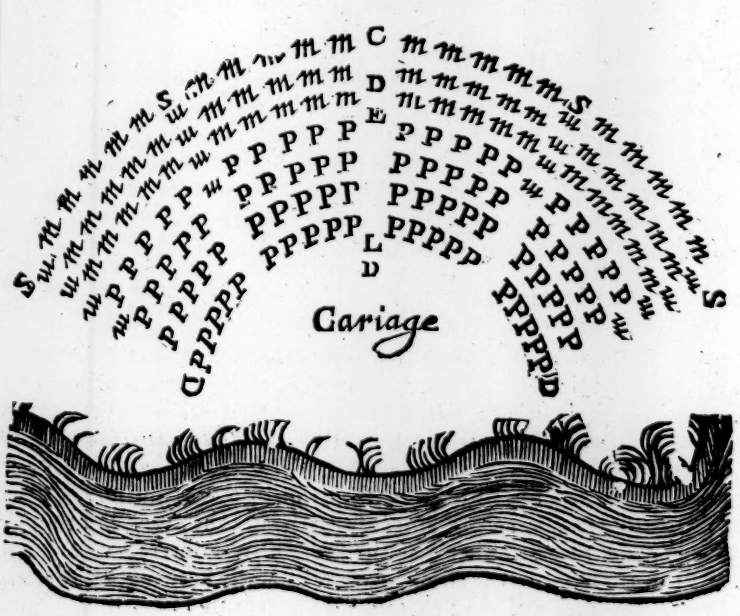
ally done in a ſmall *Company*, (although many of them, yea the more part, may be very fit for larger *Bodies*) I ſhall content my ſelf to *ſaile* in ſo ſmall a *Bottom*; not deſiring to put on more *ſaile*, than will ſuffice for the *bearing* of ſo ſmall a *burden*. Wherefore my requeſt ſhall be, that every *curteous* & *skilfull Pilot*, that ſhall *come-aboard* this ſmall *Bark*, will be pleaſed neiter to *lanch* it into the *main*, leſt it be *ſwallowed* in the *ſurges*; nor to *expoſe* it to the danger of *ſhelves*, *rocks*, and *ſands* leſt it ſuffer *ſhip-wrack* for want of good *guidance*; but ſo to *ſteere* it, that it may ſafely *arrive* at its deſired *Harbour*: wherein they will both honour themſelves, in expreſſing their virtues; and gratifie me, by applying each *Motion*, *Figure* and *Form*, to his right uſe, and true intention. I will now ſhew how the *Figure* is to be made, which is as followeth: If your *Battell* be in *form* of an *Hearſe*, then *wheele* them to the *right* or *left-about*, untill they have attained this *Figure*. But if in a *Square*, then obſerve theſe following *words*; which will produce the *Figure*:

The direction to make this Figure.

Wheel your Flanks into the Front; then face the Body to one of the Flanks; and wheel your Battell into a Convex half-Moon.

If your *Body* be *large*, then, in ſtead of *wheeling the Flank into the Front*, cauſe your *Muſquettiers* to *move forwards*, and place themſelves *before their Pikes*: Then command 5. or 6. of the *out-moſt Files* on each *Flank* (both *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) *to wheele*; thoſe on the *left-flank to the left*, thoſe on the *right-flank to the right*; the reſt of the *Body*, in the mean time, *moving forwards* to a convenient *diſtance*, and 5. 6. or more of the *outer-moſt Files* to *ſtand*, and then to *wheele to each hand*, as afore-ſaid; the reſt doing the like ſucceſſively, untill you have *formed* your *Figure*.

The Convex half-Moon.



Having

Having brought your *Soldiers* into this [a] *Convex form*, you may face them all *inward* for *speech*, or *outward* for fight. Then let the *Officers* make *Intervalls* for the *Musquettiers*, and let the *outter-most Arch*, or first rank of each division, *present* & *give* fire, those of the *right-flank wheeling-off* to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*; placing themselves in the *reer* of their own division of *Musquettiers*, still making good their *leaders* ground. The rest of the *ranks* are to do the same; untill they have all *given* fire. Never theleſſe, if your Enemy be too potent for you by reaſon of his *Horſe*, your [b] *Bow-Pikemen* need not ſtand idle, although they ſtand behind their *Muſquetiers*: for that they may ply them faſter with their ſhafts, then the others can with their ſhot; But if the [c] *Horſe* be ſo violent, that the *Muſquettiers* may not abide them, then let them *give* fire, and *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, as before; paſſing quite through their *Intervals*, and placing themſelves in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, every *rank* making good their *leaders* ground. Thus alſo are the reſt of the *Muſquettiers* to *give* fire, placing themſelves in the concave part of the body, as aforeſaid, following in the Reer of the Pikes, which now make good the *Muſquettiers* ground. If [d] need be the *Pikes*, may charge over-hand, or if occaſion ſerves at the foot, drawing forth their ſwords over their left arms, and couching down their heads: by which means the *Muſquettiers* may *give* fire over their ſhouldiers. For the *firſt ranke* having *fired*, may kneel down on the ground, and charge again, the ſecond *rank* may *give* fire, and kneel in like manner, making ready again. And ſo for the reſt, all *giving* fire, & kneeling on the ground, that ſo the next *rank* behind may *give* fire over them. Thus continuing the *firing*, untill all the *Muſquettiers* have *given* fire once over. Neverthleſſe, if the enemy ſhall ſtill continue his charge, and preſſe upon you, the *firſt rank* may riſe with the reſt, and *give* fire over again, as before. And ſo the battell may be continued; the *Pikes* ſtill keeping off the Horſe.

[a] *The ſeveral waies to fight upon this convex figure*

[b] *The bow and Pike very good and uſefull againſt the Horſe, in this figure of Battel.*

[c] *A good way in time of neceſſity, to beat off the inſolence of the Horſe.*

[d] *Another way to give fire by extraduction, as in the next Chapter.*

For the *reducement* of this figure, and to bring every man to his place, let your *Muſquettiers* (either *firing* or paſſing through) be brought into the *places* they were in, before they firſt *gave* fire, Then *face* the whole Body to one of the *flanks*, and martch them, untill they have evened their *ranks*, and ſtraitned their *files*. This done, if all your *Pikes* be on the *right-flank*, *wheele your right flank into the midſt*, if on the *left-flank*, *wheele front and reer into the left-flank*. This being done, let the *Commander* paſſe to his proper *file-leaders*, and *face* the whole Body to him, and they are reduced as at firſt. If you did not *wheel your flanks into the front*; But your Body being large enough, *you drew your Muſquettiers before your Pikes*: Then having ranged your Body even a-breſt: *Command your Muſquettiers to open to the right & left, untill they are cleer of the Pikes, then face to the firſt front, and martch up even a-breſt with the Pikes*, and they are *reduced* as at the firſt.

The reducement.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of Extraduction: the ſeveral uſes, Firings, and Reducement.

THe next *Firing* which I ſhall take upon me to demonſtrate, ſhall be by way of *Extraduction*: which is alſo a *firing* in *front*. It may be to ſingular good uſe in a *ſtraight*, or *paſſage* where your *Wings* and *Reer* may be ſecured; your Enemy being ſuppoſed too powerfull and potent for you. Alſo if the contrary ſide *abound in Horſe* or foot; I ſhould then adviſe to draw ſome of your *Muſquettiers* into the *Reer* of your *Pikemen*, who may *give* fire *under the ſhelter of their Pikes*, being either *ported* or *charged*: And indeed I ſhall give this *Firing* by *Extraduction* this teſtimony: That of all *firings* (defenſive or offenſive) (thoſe of the *Half-Pike* and *ſwines feather* excepted) it is the *beſt* and *ſafeſt againſt the Horſe* that yet I know of; each armes becomming the abſolute ſecurity of the other, and may be uſefull either in *ſmall* or *greater* Bodies. But this Chapter treats onely of a *party* or ſingle Company, and conceives it to be *chaſed* or *purſued* by *horſe*, but they having gotten into ſome *ſtraight*, there fill the mouth of the *paſſage* with your *Pikes*: and if the length

The uſe of this firing by Extraduction.

of your *Company* be not sufficient to do it, then double your *ranks* (as in this following Figure) and let your *Pikes* either *order*, *advance*, *port* or *charge*, according to the occasion; your *Musquettiers* being in the *reer*, may *march up* into the *front* and fire. But before I shew the *Firing*, observe these following *directions*, which produce the *Figure*.

Pikes stand, *Musquettiers face to the reer, and march, untill you are cleer of your body of Pikes.*

Then face inward, and close your division: that thing done, face to your Leader, and double your ranks.

This being performed, the *Pikes* are all in *front*, the *Musquettiers* in *Reer*.

A Firing by Extraduction.

Front.

The Musquettiers in this firing are to sleeve up file-wise to the front, and there give fire in rank, crosse the front of the Pikemen.

S MMMMMMMM MMMMMMMM S
P P P P P P P P C P P P P P P P M
P P P P P P P P D P P P P P P P M
P P P P P P P P E P P P P P P P M
D P P P P P P P P D P P P P P P P M D
. . . . ≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷≷
MMMMMMMM MMMMMMMM
S MMMMMMMM MMMMMMMM S

L.

Reere.

The direction for this firing.

Having ordered your *Battell* in this manner, let the first *rank* of *Musquettiers* (which are those that follow next after the *Pikes*) *face* to the *right*, and *march* forth (*file-wise*) up close by the *right-flank* of *Pikes*, until he that is the *leader* of them be come into the *front* of *Pikes*, then he is to lead them quite crosse the *front* of *Pikes*, untill he have attained the further part of the *front* to the *left*; which being done, they are all to *stand*, *present* & *give fire*. You must note withall, in this *firing*, that he which was the *right-hand-man*, of the *rank*, and was the *leader* of the *motion*, now becomes the *left-hand-man*, when he gives fire; and that having fired, they are to *wheel-off* to the *left*, close to the *left-flank* of *Pikes* and so to fall in the *reer* of the *Musquettiers*. In the *interim*, whilest that the *rank* which first fired is *wheeling-away*, the *second rank* is *marching* into their *places* to *give fire*. And in this manner they may maintain their *Battaile*, so long as they please: the *Pikes* either *porting* or *charging* all the whiles. The *Musquettiers* in the time of their *crossing the front*, are to couch or stoop under their *Pikes*; that so they may be no impediment to the *Pikes* in their *charge*. There is another way of *firing by Extraduction*, which is, that the *right-hand-leader* of *Musquettiers*, *placeth himself before the right file-leader* of *Pikes*: the rest all falling beyond him: nevertheless, because I conceive it not to be so good away as that already shewn, I will not trouble you with it: but come immediatly to the *reducement* of this, which is as followeth. Command your *Pikes* to stand, and your *Musquets* to *double* their *front* by *division*: but if you want room to do it, then first *double* your *files* to the *contrary hand* of that, which you *doubled* your *Ranks*; and so having *doubled* by *division*, as aforesaid, they will be *reduced*, as at first.

If the Pikes charge the Musquettiers must give fire kneeling on the ground.

Another way of placing the Musquettiers on this firing.

The reducement.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Broad or long-fronted-Battell, with the wayes of firing upon it.

THe *broad or long-fronted-Battell* must needs be of speciall use, for many occasions, either *offensive* or *defensive*. Which because it is so apparant to all, I shall not need to stand to reason with any; rather desiring to shew the manner of *making* and

reducing

reducing it; which is as followeth: Cause your *Pikes* to *stand*, and your *Musquettiers* to *march*, untill the *Reer-rank* of the *Musquettiers* be *advanced* a little before the *first-rank* of *Pikes*; then let the *Musquettiers face inward*, (or in *opposition*) and *close their divisions*; and then *face to their Leader*. And if you would bring more *hands* to *fight*, *double ranks* to any *hand*, and the *Body* (for *form*) will stand like the *Figure* here next following. But the *speediest way* (and I think the best, I am sure with *expert Souldiers*) is to * *wheele* both *flanks* into the *Front*, which is the *way* intended by this *Figure*. For the manner of the *Firing* it self, you may partly perceive that there are *Intervalls* made for each *division*, to *wheel off* to the *right*, that so they may either fall in the *Reer* of the *Musquettiers*, and there continue the *Firing*; or else fall in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*, and be thereby *secured* from the *Horse*. It may be done one or both wayes, according to the *occasion* or *discretion* of the *Commander*. Nevertheless, before I shew the *Firing*, observe these words of *Command*, which produce the *Figure*.

Direction to make the Broad-fronted Battel.

**Thiswheeling is intended but for a single Company; for if there be more Companies, then the way first shewn is farre the better.*

Wheele your Flanks into the Front. *Face to your Leader.*

The broad-fronted-Battell.

Front.

S	M	M	M	M	S	M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M	S	M	M	M	M	S
	M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M		M	M	M	M	
	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W	M	M	M	M	W
	D					D		E			C		D				D			
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W	P	P	P	P	W
	P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P		P	P	P	P	

L

The *first-rank* having *presented*, and *given* fire, let them *wheel-off* to the *right*; all passing down the *Intervalls* to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*: the next *Ranks* of *Musquettiers* making good their *leaders ground*, *firing*, *wheeling off*, and placing themselves as before. Having *fired* once or twice over this way, a second way may be to place themselves in the *Reer of their Pikes*, either *standing* or *advancing*: the *Pike-men*, in the men time, *clouding the cleare skie*, with their *airy Armory*. The *Musquettiers* having all *given* fire, and placed themselves in the *Reer*, if need be, the *Pikes* may *close* their *divisions*, and *charge over hand*: and if the Enemy shall still presse forwards, the *Pikes* may *charge at the foot*, the *Musquettiers giving* fire over them, or by *Extraduction*, as in the last Chapter.

The direction for the Firing.

A second way of placing the Musquettiers upon the Firing.

For *Reducement*, there are divers wayes by *Firing*; but because I would make every thing fop'ain & easie, that those that read for instruction, may perceive benefit, it hath caused me to *reduce* each *Figure* by it self, and not to multiply one upon another, whereby to make them too ambiguous: And therefore, if you make this *Figure* by *wheeling your Flanks into the Front*, and then fire, as afore-said, the *Reducement* may be, either to * *fire* them over again, and so to fall into their former places; and then to *wheel your Flanks into the Front again*: and lastly, *face about to the right*, and they will be as before. Or else if you would *reduce* them without *giving* fire over again, then command your *Musquettiers*,

The reducement.

**Note that the second Firing will cause the Body to face the Reer, which then becomes a Front-accidentall, and is the cause that the same command reduceth the Figure which first made it.*

tiers to *double your Front by division*; that done, *wheel both Flanks into the Reer*, then *face to your Leader*, and command your *Musquettiers* to *double your front by division again*, and they are as at first. If I should proceed to shew the many and sundry wayes of *Firings*, which may be done in *Front*, my Book had need to have as many *leaves* as *lines*; and yet all too little. But that I may keep my self to my *promise*, and my Book to its *compasse*, I will next come to shew some *Firings in the Reer*; and amongst my *Divisionall Firings* I shall insert some other sorts of *Front-Firings*, which here I have omitted.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of Dis-martching, or Firing in the Reer: *the severall wayes, and how they ought to be performed.*

* *The benefit and use of firing in the Reer.*

HAving so long maintained *Battell* in the *Front*, I will now *face* them *about*, and see how they will behave themselves upon their *Firings* in the *Reer*. Which kind of **Firings* may be very *beneficiall* and *serviceable*, many wayes. For by keeping an orderly *Martch*, and *Firing* in the *Reer*, the eager *Enemy*, by too hasty pursuit, may be disordered. Or, if it so happen, (as many times it doth) that you have a *disadvantageous* place to *imbattell* on, by this *Firing* you may *martch away*, still preserving your *order* and *aray*, until you have brought your *Adversary* into some *ambushment*, or such like *inconvenience*.

* *Wayes to some to firing in the Reer.*

For the * manner of coming to the *Firing*, it must either be by *facing-about*, *wheeling-about*, or *counter-martching*: The *Pikes* are to be *shouldered*. The *Figure* followeth:

A Firing in the Reer.

Reer.

L.

S MMMM D dddddddd D MMMM S
WWWWW ddddddd WWWWW
WWWWW ddddddd WWWWW
WWWWW ddddddd WWWWW
WWWWW ddddddd WWWWW
S WWWW ddddddd WWWWS
WWWW ddddddd WWWW
• • • • D ddddddd D • • • •

E. C.

Front.

The direction for this firing in the Reer.

The *Body* being upon a *martch*, if the *Enemy* appear in the *Reer*, let the *last-rank* of *Musquettiers face about*, and *give fire*; then *wheel-off* by *division*, *file-wise*, *martching up* toward the *Front*, and there placing themselves before the *fore most* Rank of *Musquettiers*, (the *two out-most men* of each Rank being the *leaders-up* of those which have fired (who are the first that take their places on the *out-side*, the rest *wheeling-about* them, and *ranking-even* with them on the *inside*; ever observing, that they *range-even* with the *second-rank* of *Pikes*. The rest of the *Musquettiers* also doing the like: and in this manner to continue the *Firing*, as occasion shall require. Nevertheless, of all the *Figures* and *Firings* that ever I have seen, this hath been the *worst* performed in all places: which might easily be amended, if the *Souldiers* would observe this following direction; namely, when the *last-rank* of *Musquettiers* have *presented* to the *Reere*, and are *giving of fire*, the *Rank* which *martched* next before them, do then * *blow*, *open*, and *present*, at three *motions*; still keeping along *even with the Body*, untill that last they *present* to the *Reer*; by which time, the Rank that *last fired* wil be *wheeled-away*. The next *Rank*, so soon as the other

Note upon all firings in the Reer, to blow your code st p-

ping forwards with your right foot. Open your pan stepping forwards with your left foot; (all the inclining to that hand to which you are to face about.) Present to the Reer stepping forwards with your right foot.

hath *presented*, is likewise at *three motions* to do the same: and so successively, for all the rest; every *ranke* observing, upon each *ranks firing*, to *lose* one; and to *march* one *ranke* neerer to the *reere* of the *battell*, that so that part may still be kept firme and absolute.

This *giving* of *fire* towards the *reere* for *service*, is to be continued according to the quality of the *place*, the *occasion* for fight, and the discretion of the *Commander*. In *exercise* we commonly do it but once over; & then (if you please) you may make *Alt*, and *face* your *body about*, *giving fire* over again: & charging your *Pikes* upon it, if need so require, or at discretion of the *Commander*. Notwithstanding, if the *Horse* still pursue you in the *reer*, you having gained some *strait*, or *place* of *advantage*, may* *wheel* your *flanks* in the *front*, then *face* to the *reer*, and with your *charged Pikes* defend your *Musquettiers*: which (the *body* being so *wheeled*) will be in the *reer*. The *body* standing in this *form*, the *Musquettiers* may *sleeve-up* by way of *Extraduction*. The *manner*, you may perceive in the *Chapter which treats of that *figure* If the *Horse* still press forwards, cause the *Pikes* to *charge* at the *foot*; the *Musquettiers giving fire over them*, as in the **Convex half-moon*. Lastly, to *reduce* them, having thus *fired*, *command* them to *wheel their flanks into the front*, and to *face-about*, after their proper *file-leaders*, and they are *reduced*. * Sometimes, we *give* fire in the *reer*, having all our *Musquettiers marching* in the *reer* of the *Pikes*. For the *manner* of the *motion*, it is as before: but for placing of the men, after they have *fired*, it may be different. As, to *wheele-off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *front* of the *Musquettiers*, next behind the *reer* of the *Pikes*. Or if the *body* be large, to *wheele all off to the right*, *through Intervalls*, and so to *march into the front of Pikes*. Or else they may *wheel of by division*, and *flank their Pikes*, and so *fire over again*, as before. If you have brought your *Musquettiers* (by *firing* to the *Reer*) before the *front* of *Pikes*, then to *reduce* them, you may either *wheel* the *body* about, and *give fire* in *front*, causing your *Musquettiers* to *fall-off by division*, and so *flank* their *Pikes*, as you may perceive by the figure of the **Demy-hearse*. Or else, if you will *reduce* them without a *firing*, cause your *Musquettiers to open to the right* and *left*, and the *Pikes to march up in the midst*: after which *facing* all to your *first-front*, they are as at first. I might have shewn a Figure for each of these several *firings* in the *Reer*, which would have delivered them with more variety: but I conceive that this here already expresst, may suffice: especially this being the ground of what may be spoken. Concerning *firings* in this nature, many men are of many minds, about this *firing* in the *Reer*. Some will have it, that the *last rank*, shall at one *motion*, *face* to the *reer*: and there *present*, and *give fire*. Others will have it at two *motions*, but either of them have their inconveniences. For however they pretend *sudden execution*, they are deceived: for would they make triall, by causing the *Musquettiers* of one of the *flanks* to *give fire* at one *motion*; and the *Musquettiers* of the other *flank*, at *three motions*, (as I have here set down) they should soon find that the *firing* upon *three motions* were the best: & that the other would be cast so far behind their *Body*, that they would be in some danger to be cut off. Besides this, they are longer in *clearing* themselves from their own men, which all the while must stay, untill they are *martched-off*: or else kill them, instead of the enemy, whereas in this other *firing* upon *three motions*, they still *keep along* with their *body*, doing their *execution* more suddenly and more safely. Nevertheless there be many so much wedded to their own wilfull opinions, that they will more willingly persist in a known errour, then be seen to alter what they have seemed to maintaine. But leaving such to steer by their own compass, I will here conclude my *firing* in the *reer*. And the next I shew, shall be *firings* in *flanks*: to which purpose, I pass all my *Musquettiers* to the *right-flank*. The words of direction for it are these.

Musquettiers of the right flank, open to the right (or face to the right, and martch.)
When they have opened to a sufficient distance, then stand.

*Wheeling of the flanks into the front or reere, is most useful for small bodies.

*Chap: 80.

*Chap: 79.

The reducement.

*A second order of firing in the Reere.

*Reduce-ment for this way of firing in the Reere.

*Ut cap 76:

*Many differing opinions concerning firings in the reere:

*Firing at three motions to the reere the best.

*There is no error which hath not some slippery and badfounda-tion, or some appearance of probability, resembling truth.

Musquettiers of the left-flanke, passe thorow between your ranks of Pikes, to the Intervall on the right-flanke: Then stand, and face all to your Leader.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Firings in flank, in generall, and more particularly, of the gathering firing.

THe *Musquetteiers* being all on the *right-flank*, (as in the last Chapter is directed) it would be needless to make a Figure, whereby to demonstrate the standing of the Body, seeing that none can be so ignorant, but must needs know that all the *Musquettiers* being upon the *right*, the *Pikes* must be upon the *left*. Nevertheless, I shall endeavour to shew what is meant by *firing in flanks*. (Which for the generall) are of these two kinds. The first is, when the *enemy skirmisheth with us in flank as we martch*, the other when as by some sudden attempt or ambushment, the *party*, *division*, or *whole Body* is ingaged, and so forced to *stand*, and *face* to the *right*, or *left*, or both: By which *facing*, the *flanks* become *fronts accidentall*, and their *firings* will be after the same manner of the *firings in front*. Wherfore seeing I have already spoken sufficiently of them, I will now shew *firings in flanks*, *martching*; the particulars whereof are as followeth.* The first is for the *outmost file* to *give fire*, and stand, untill the next *file* have *fired*, which by some is called, the *gathering* firing. Secondly, *Firings* in *flanke*, and leading them up between the *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*. *Firing* in *flanke*, being led off by the *bringers-up*. *Firings* in *flanke*, sleeving up on the contrary *flanke* of *Pikes*. *Firing* in *flanke*, and drawing them up between the *innermost files* of *Pikes*.* All these *firings in flank*, are to be performed upon a *martch*, the *Pikes* are to be *shouldred*. Our first *firing in flanke* followeth.

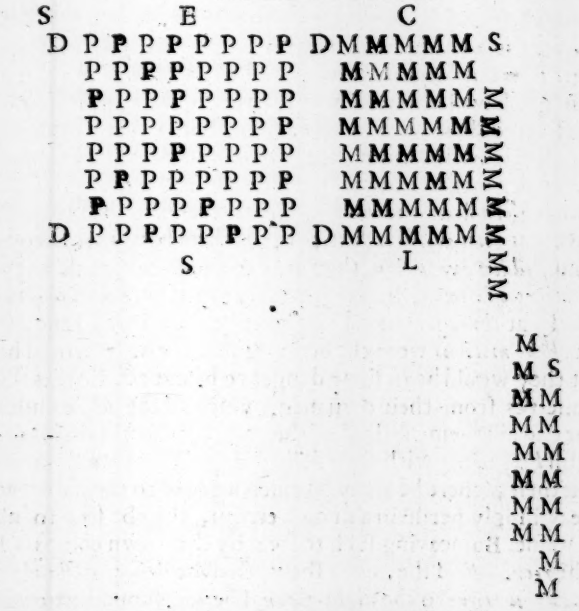
What is meant by firing in flanke.

*The divers & severall wayes of firing in flank martching.

*Upon all these firings in flanke martching, the Pikes are to bee shouldred.

The Command is, *Musquettiers, give fire to the right: and gather up your Files.*

Front of the Martch.



This *firing* on the *flank*, I have seen, and known used, by many good and able Souldiers. Nevertheless, in my opinion, the men stand in a great deale of danger, when having *given*

fire

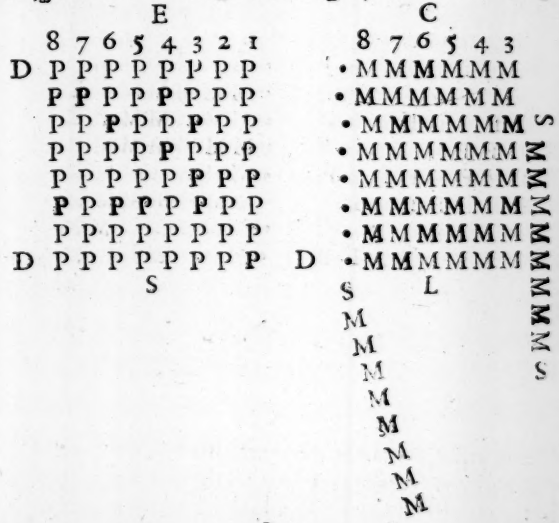
fire; they can do no good, but ſtand like ſo many marks for their *Enemies* ſhot. Notwithſtanding, it may be, that ſuch, whom I have frequently ſeen to uſe it in their practice, may be able to render good reaſons for the ſervice; though as yet I cannot conceive it. I will therefore forbear any farther to proſecute my opinions, and ſhew the manner of execution; which is to be performed as followeth: The *Command* being given to *Fire to the right marching*, preſently the *outer-moſt-file* to the *right faceth outward*, and *preſents*, the reſt of the *body* ſtill *marching* forwards: Then the *preſented File gives fire*, and ſtands, *facing* again to their *firſt-front*: by that time, the *Body* will be *marched* clear of the ſtanding *file*, then the next *outer-moſt file*, *Preſents* and *fires* in like manner, the *Body marching* as before: Having *fired*, they in like manner *face* to their *firſt-front*, and ſtand; a *Serjeant* leading-up the *File* that firſt *fired*, on the *out-ſide* of the *File* that laſt *fired*: then they ſtand both together, until the third *File* hath *given fire* after the ſame manner; & then the *Serjeant* leads-up the two *Files even* with the third, which laſt *fired*. After this manner the ſeveral *Files* of *Muſquettiers face* to the *flank*, *give fire* ſucceſſively, and ſtand, until the *Serjeant* leads-up the reſt of the *Files*, which formerly *fired*, *even* with the *Front* of the *File* which laſt *fired*. Thus having all *fired* over, they are to *march-up* again, *even* with the *Front* of *Pikes*, and this *reduceth* them, as at firſt. *The directi on for this figure.*

CHAP. LXXXIV.

The ſecond manner of giving fire to the flank.

IF you would *fire* in *flank*, a more ſecure way than that laſt ſhewn, take this way of *Firing*; the which ſhall be full as *ſerviceable* for matter of *execution*, and ſhall farre precede it in way of *preſervation*, both in *ſecuring the Muſquettiers* (after they have *fired*) from the danger of their *Enemies ſhot*, as alſo in continuing the *Body intire* without ſeparation. It is eſpecially uſeful, when two *Enemies* are *divided by a River*, or by ſome ſuch like means ſecured from the *incurſions* of the *Horſe*: For then, by this way of *drawing* the *Muſquettiers* up between the *inner-moſt-file* of *Muſquettiers*, and the *outer-moſt file* of *pikes* to the *right*, your *Battel* may be continued according to the occaſion, or the *Commanders* diſcretion. The *Figure* followeth: The *Command* is,

Muſquettiers, give fire *in flank, marching-up between the Pikes and Muſquets.*



The direction for this firing.

The way to perform this *Motion* of *Firing*, is as followeth: The *outer-moſt file* being commanded to *face to the right*, and *preſent*, the reſt of the *Body martcheth* away, as in the other *figure*, and the ſtanding *file gives fire*. This done, and that the *Body* is *martched* clear of the ſtanding *file*, the next *file preſents* to the *right*, and the *file* that firſt *gave fire faceth* to the *firſt-front*, and is led by a *Serjeant croſs the reer of the Muſquettiers*, and up between the *Muſquets* and *Pikes*; the *Muſquettiers* are ſtill to *open* to the *right*, as they *martch*, that ſo there may be *roome* for one *file* to *martch-up* between them and the *Pikes*. And ſo (ſucceſſively) each *File* having *fired*, *martcheth-up* next unto the *right-flank* of *Pikes*. When all your *Muſquettiers* have *given fire* once over, they are *reduced* as at the firſt. The *Battel* may be continued, at diſcretion. The next *Firing* in *Flank*, (for the manner of *execution*) will be all one with this; the difference will be in the *wheeling-off*, and *placing* the *Muſquettiers* after they have *fired*.

The firing being performed once over, they are reduced as at firſt.

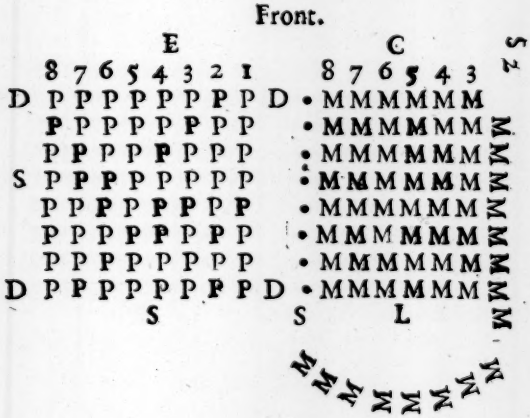
CHAP. LXXXV.

A Firing in Flank, led-off by the Bringers-up.

THe next *Firing* in *Flank*, which I propound to your peruſal, will be nothing differing for *manner* of *execution*, from the *Firings* in *flank* formerly ſhewed: The only *difference* ariſing between them, is, That the *other files* of *Muſquettiers*, after that they had *given fire*, were *led-off* by their *proper-file-leaders*; and this, to the contrary, muſt be *led-off* by their *Bringers-up*. And this indeed, if the *Body* be upon a *ſlow martch*, is the *readieſt* and *quickeſt* way; and doth more ſpeedily ſecure the *Muſquettiers*, after they have *given fire*. The words of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *Firing*, are as followeth.

The uſe of this firing in flank

Muſquettiers, give fire to the right, wheeling-off after your Bringers-up, and placing your ſelves between your Diviſions.



The direction for the Firing.

For the manner of *execution*, or way to perform this *Firing*, it is as followeth: The *Body* muſt be conceived to be *martching*, upon all theſe *Firings* in *Flank*, and that with their *Pikes ſhouldred*: This being preſuppoſed, the *Command* being given, the *outer-moſt file*

file preſents to the right, and *gives fire*; then *faceth to the right*, after their *Bringers-up*, who leadeath them off, croſſe the *Reer* of *Muſquettiers*, *martching them up* between the *diviſion* of *Pikes* and *Muſquettiers*, the *Bringers-up* ſupplying the *File-leaders* place, and *martching even* in *Rank* in the *Front* with the *File-leaders*; the *File-leader* of the ſame *file* becoming the *Bringer-up* in the *Reer*. The *files* of *Muſquettiers*, or *Pikes* (according as the *Command* ſhall be given) are, as they *martch*, to *open*; thereby giving way to the *Muſquettiers*, after they have *fired*, to *come up* between the *diviſions*; and ſo ſoon as the *firſt file* that *fired* is clear from the *right-flank*, the *ſecond file preſents*, and *fires*; in like manner *wheeling-off*, as before, and *martching-up* between the *Pikes* and *Muſquettiers*; every *file* ſucceſſively *giving fire*, and *wheeling-off* as aforeſaid. This *Firing* may be performed *once*, *twice*, or *oftner over*, according to the diſcretion of the *Commander*. Nevertheleſs, if it be *twice* performed, the men are *reduced* as at firſt; every man having his right *place*. If you *fire* them but *once*, or *thrice*, (or any odd number of *times*) over, then you muſt *counter-martch* your *Files* of *Muſquettiers* to *reduce* them. There is another way for the *Bringers-up* to *wheel-off*, and each of them to *lead-off* his *File*, until he comes to the *Reer* of the *diviſion* which is between the *Muſquets* and the *Pikes*; and there he is to *ſtand*, and *rank* with the *Bringers-up*, the reſt that follow, *paſſing-on forwards*, by way of *Introduction*, and every man *ranking* before him that was his *leader* in the *wheeling-off*, until the *proper-file-leader* be come into his *place* again. And after this *way*, they may *give fire*; each *Firing* being his own *Reducement*.

The firſt firing is reduced by doing the ſame over again.

Another way of placing the Muſquettiers, when they are led off by the Bingers-up

CHAP. LXXXVI.

The differences between Firings in Flank, martching; and of bringing the Muſquettiers on the out-ſide of the Pikes

ALL, or the moſt part of the *Firings* in *Flank*, which are performed *martching*, in point of *execution*, are the ſame: the eſpecial difference between them, being either in the *manner* of the *wheeling-off* after they have *fired*, or in the *material placing* them, whereby to make them more *offenſive* or *defenſive*. And this appeareth by the next following *Firing*; which is to be uſed at ſuch time and place when as there may be doubt of the *Enemies Horſe*. And therefore, for the more ſecurity of the *Muſquettiers*, after they have *fired*, they are to be *drawn-up* on the *outer-ſide* of the *left-flank*; if * haply there may be ſome *hedge*, *ditch*, *river*, *hill*, *marſh*, *wood*, or ſuch like convenient *ſafe-guard*, whereby to ſhroud them from the *fury* and *violence* of the *Horſe*; that ſo the *Pikes* making *Alt*, and *facing* to the *Enemy*, may *charge*, and with their *armed points* (ſtrongly and cloſely coucht) *receive* and *abate* the *fury* of the firſt *ſhock*. And, if need be, the *Pikes* may all *charge* at the *foot*, cloſely *ſtirred* together, with their *ſwords* drawn, and the *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* over them. But leſt I *anticipate* my ſelf in ſhewing the *uſe*, I will return to ſhew the *manner* of the *Firing*, intended by this following *Figure*: Only firſt take the *words* of *Command* and *Direction*, which are as followeth;

* *Situation of place, often affords good help in time of need to the artful and induſtrious Souldiers. Or elſe a better way is to give fire by extraduction; as in* Chap. 80.

Musquettiers, give fire to the right: placing your selves on the out-side of the left-flank of Pikes.

Front.

E. C.

1	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1		8	7	6	5	5	S.
S	M	D	P	P	**P**	P	P	P	**P**	P	D	M	M	M	M	M	3
	M		**P**	**P**	P	**P**	P	P	**P**	P		M	M	M	M	**M**	
	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		M	M	M	M	M	
	M		P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P		**M**	**M**	M	M	M	
	M		P	**P**	P	P	P	P	P	P		**M**	M	M	**M**	M	
	M		P	P	P	P	P	**P**	P	P		M	M	M	M	M	
	M		P	P	P	**P**	P	P	P	**P**		**M**	M	**M**	M	M	
	M	D	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	D	M	M	M	M	M	
S						L							S				
2						Reere.											

M
M
M
M
M
M
M
M

The *outmost files* having *presented* to the *right*; the rest of the *body* continueth the *martch*, whilest they in the mean time are *giving fire*. Which being done, and the *body clear*, the next *outermost file presents*: the *file* that *last fired*, in the interim, *facing to the left after their proper file-leaders*; who *leadeth* them cross the *Reer* (both of *Musquets* and *Pikes* a pretty round pace, *sleeving-up* on the out-side of the *left-flank* of *Pikes*. The next *file* having in like manner *fired*, doth also *troop-up* on the out-side of the *file*, led off before; every *file giving fire*, and doing the like. When all have *given fire*, & are *cleared away*, then the *Pikes* may charge; which is very necessary to accustome the *Souldiers* unto in time of *exercise*, both for *charging on*, & *retreiting*, as also to push with their *Pikes*, that so by practise they may be able to do it *orderly*, either way; still keeping their *order* & *array*. Having *given fire* upon the *right-flank*, and drawn all your *Musquettiers* in this manner to the *left-flank*, if you will cause them to *give fire* on the *left-flank*, and bring them back again to the *right-flank*, they will be *reduced*. Or if you would reduce them without a *firing*, then either pass your *Musquettiers* thorow between your *ranks* of *Pikes*, or else let your whole *division* of *Musquettiers* be drawn cross, either the *front* or *reere* of *Pikes*, into their places: or by *division* (if you please.) Your *Musquettiers* also may *give fire* in *flank*, the *first file sleeving up* on the *left-flank*; the rest of the *files*, still falling between the *Pikes* and the *Musquettiers* which *wheeled-off* the last before them. And this is also a very good *firing*, and may be *reduced* with doing the like back again, and many other waies they may also *fall-off* after the manner of the *Figure* last shewn: being *led* by their *bringers-up*, either into the *front*, or else after the manner as is discovered in the latter end of the last Chapter. But I endeavour all I may, to contract my matter, lest my *Volume* should exceed my intent. And therefore I shew but one *firing* more in *flank* upon a *martch* wherewith I will conclude these sorts of *Firings*.

The direction for this firing

It is good to accustome the Pikes to charge.

They may be reduced by interchanging of flanks.

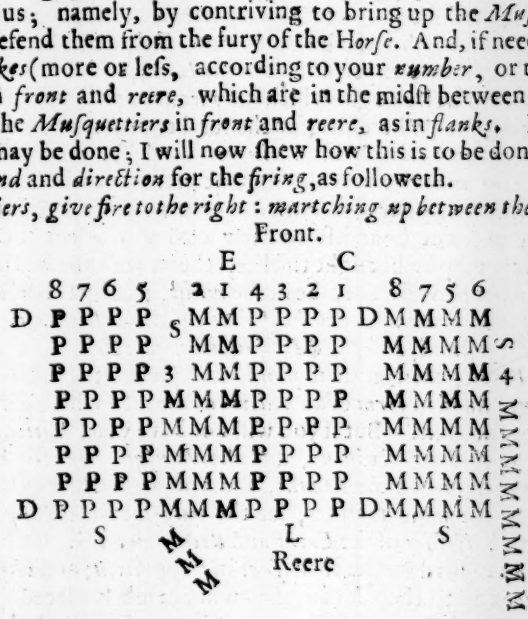
CHAP

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of Firing in flanke, and placing the Musquettiers in the midst of the Battell of Pikes: with other Firings from thence proceeding.

FIring in *flanke*, and bringing them *off* between the midst of *Pikes*, is to be used at such time, when as you would secure your *Musquettiers*. the place (otherwise) affording no *naturall convenience* of succour, such as I have formerly spoken of; and therefore by this manner of *falling-off*, where we want *naturall assistance* in the *scituation*, there *art* ought to supply us; namely, by contriving to bring up the *Musquettiers* between the *Pikes*, and so to defend them from the fury of the *Horse*. And, if need be, you may *draw* 3. or 4. *Files* of *Pikes* (more or less, according to your *number*, or the *danger*) *crosse* the *Musquets* both in *front* and *reere*, which are in the midst between the *Pikes*, which will as well preserve the *Musquettiers* in *front* and *reere*, as in *flanks*. But leaving further to discourse, what may be done; I will now shew how this is to be done. Only first take the *words* of *Command* and *direction* for the *firing*, as followeth. The use of this firing

Musquettiers, give fire to the right: martching up between the midst of Pikes.



The *Command* being given, for the *outer-most file* to *present* to the *right*, as (formerly in the other *firings* in *flank*) the rest of the *body* still *martcheth* on, untill that the *outer-most file* hath *fired*, and is *faced* to the *left* again, following their *leader*. He now leading them *off* to the *left*, *martcheth-up*, between the *middle-most files* of *Pikes*; who are then to *open* to the *right*, and *left*, so to give them roome to *martch-up* between them: In the mean time, the *next file* having *given fire*, *wheeleth-off* in like manner, *martching up* on the *left* of the *file*, which *fired* last before them. And so successively, for all the rest of the *files* of *Musquettiers*, all which are to *give* fire, and to *wheel-off*, as aforesaid, placing themselves still on the *left* of the *files* which *last fired*. Wherein is still to be noted, that the *files* of *Pikemen* are still to open to the *right* and *left*, and that for the receiving of the *Musquettiers*, after that they have *given* fire. This *Firing* (as all other the *Firings* in the *flanke*) may as well be *led-off* by their *bringers-up*, as by the *file-leaders*: and then the *reducements* will be answerable. The *Musquettiers* having all *fired*, the *Pikes*, may *charge* at discretion. The *Bow-Pikemen*, which are in the *reer* of the *Musquettiers*, in the meane time not sparing to send their *showers* of *Arrowes* amongst the thickest of their *Enemies*, and if need require, the *front* of *Pikes charging* at the *foot*, with their swords drawn; The *Musquettiers* may *give fire over them*, *ranke* after *ranke*; for the *foremost ranks* having *fired*, may kneele upon the ground; and there *make ready* again: untill the other *ranks* behind The direction for this firing.

Whilest the first division of Pikes charge, the reer, division of Pikes (having bowes) may doe good service against the horse.

hind them have likewise *given fire*. After this manner the *Battell* may be continued, according as occasion shall require. For *reducement*, and to bring the *Musquettiers* into both *Flanks* again, as they were before I began these *Firings* in *Flanke*; Command your *Pikes* to *face inward*, and your *Musquettiers* to the *right* and *left out-ward*, and so to passe thorow, and *interchange ground*; then *facing* them to their *Leader*, they will be *reduced* as at the first. I would have the ingenious *Reader* to conceive, that all these *Firings* in *Flank* may as easily be performed to the *left*, and with the same *words*: only, the *words* of *Right*, must be changed for *Left*; and *Left* for *Right*. I might have further inlarged my self upon *Firings in Flanke*, but these already expressed, may suffice for to instruct the ignorant. As for the skillfull and experter sort of *Souldiers*, I shall rather request their approbation, then presume to write ought which may seem to pass me with the least conceit tending to their instructions. Wherefore, for the further prosecution of my intended discourse, I will next shew some *Divisionall Firings*. And (for *method* sake) I will first begin with *Firings in front and reere*: which may be performed either *martching* or *standing*. And to that end, suppose your *Musquettiers* to *martch* all in *Front* and *Reere*. Nevertheless, because it will not be amisse to shew with what *words* of *Command* and *Direction* the *Musquettiers* may be brought thither, therefore take notice from what part of the *Body* they are taken: And if they be in the *midst*, (as by this last *Firing* in *Flanke* they were brought) then *command* the *half-files* of the *Musquettiers to face about*; which done, let the *Pikes stand*, and the *Musquettiers martch*, untill they are *cleare* both of *Front* and *Reere* of *Pikes*; then let them *stand*, and *face* to their *Leader*: which being done, your *Battell* will stand in *form* of an *hollow square*: In which *hollow*, may be conveyed any *carriage*, or such like. But if you will not have your *Battell hollow*, then *command* your *Pikes* to *close* their *divisions*, and the *Musquettiers* will be all in *Front* and *Reer*. If your *Musquettiers* be on the *Flanks*, and you would bring them into the *Front* and *Reer*; then, after the same manner, let the *half-files* of *Musquettiers face* to the *Reere*; and then, both *half-files* of the *Front* and *Reere*, *martch*, untill they are clear of the *Angular Pike-men*: This done, let them *face* in * *opposition*, and *close* their *divisions*; after which, having *faced* all to their *leader*, they will be rightly placed: namely, the *front-half-files* of *Musquettiers* before the *Front* of *Pikes*. Thus will the *Battell* be somewhat near the *form* of an *Hearse*, and the *Musquettiers* be ready to *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, either *martching* or *standing*. But before I begin my *Divisionall Firings*, I would inreat you not to expect, that I should *reduce* every particular *Firing* so soon as it is performed, as I have done by these hitherto shewed; but rather let it be sutable to your liking, that I *reduce Firings* by *Firings*; sometimes *giving fire* upon a *Martch*, sometimes upon a *stand*, sometimes to the *Front* and *Reere*, sometimes to both *Flanks*. I doe the rather desire to goe in this way, because thereby I may expresse far more matter in fewer lines, and shorter time.

The reducement.

The direction how to bring the Musquettiers to the Front and Reere; either from the midst or flanks.

* That is, *the Front, half-files of Musquets face inward, & the reer-half-files of Musquettiers face inward, then close together, before the Front and behind the Reere of Pikes.* Your Figure takes the denomination of a Hearse, *when the depth doth manifoldly exceed the length, which must be thrice at least.*

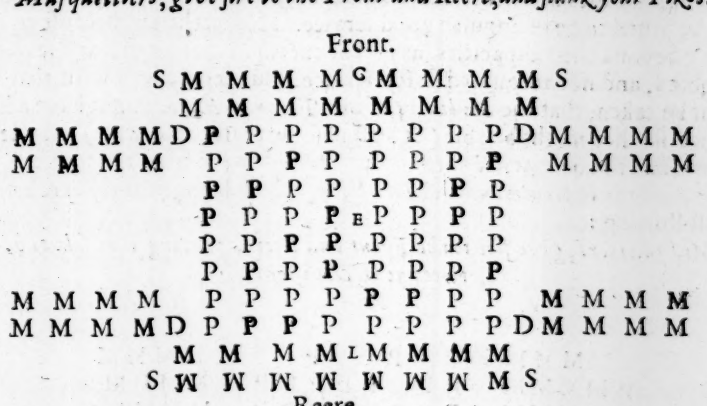
CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of Firing to the Front and Reere, upon a Martch.

THe *Musquettiers* being all placed in the *Front* and *Reer* (according to the directions in the last Chapter) I will now shew the manner of *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere*, upon a *Martch*. Which howsoever that it may be rare, and seldome usefull in service, yet it must needs be excellent for *practice*: For by the often using it, the *Souldiers* may be made capable of any *Firing*. The *Pikes* (you are to understand) are to be *shouldred*. The Command for the *Firing* is,

Musquettiers, give fire to the Front and Reere, and flank your Pikes.

Front.



Reere.

The *Command* being given (as above-said) the *first-rank presents*, the *last-rank faceth-about to the Reere*, and doth the like; and so both *giving fire* together, *wheel-off by division*; the one *half* of the *Rank* following after the *right-hand-man* of the same *rank*, the other *halfe* after the *left-hand-man*, who leads them close down by the *side* or *flank* of the *Musquettiers*, untill they come to the *Pikes*. The *first-rank of Musquettiers now ranking even with the first-rank of Pikes*; *the last rank of Musquets, with the last-rank of the Pikes*; leaving a sufficient *intervall* betwixt them and their *Pikes*, for the other *Musquettiers* to *martch* between. And here you must note, that he that was *outer-most* when they *gave fire*, must likewise be *outer-most* when they have taken their *places on the Flank*. The *first* and *last ranks* having *fired* and *wheeled off*, the next *Ranks* (*martching-on* as before, the *first-rank eight or ten paces before the Front*, the *last-rank* at *three steps to the Reer*) are in like manner to *present*, and *give-fire*, *wheeling-off* by *division*, and passing between the *divisions*, [a] there placing themselves, they of the *Front-division behind* those which *fired* last *before* them, and they of the *Reer-division before* them which *fired* last *behind* them; and so they may continue to *give fire*, untill they have all *fired* once over. Then may the [b] *Body make a stand*, and the *Pikes charge to the Front and Reere*, if need be. Or if the *Commander* would continue his *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere* still, upon the same *Figure*, then let the *Musquettiers* of the *Front* place themselves (after they have *given fire*) *behind the Musquettiers of their own division*; those of the *Reer-division*, placing themselves *betwixt the Reer of Pikes, and the Musquets of their owne division*, and so the *Body* moving but slowly forwards, they may continue the *Firing*. Having *given fire* to the *Front and Reere*, and *flanked their Pikes*, if the occasion offer, or the *Commander* be larg send please, they may *give fire* to the *Front and Reere* upon that *Figure*; which indeed I hold the better: as you may perceive in the ensuing Chapter.

The direction to the Firing: wherein you are to note, that the Musquettiers who are to fire in Front, are to move nimbly 8 or 10. paces before the rest of the Body, that so they may have fired and wheeled away before the rest of the body be so farre advanced. but if your body be larg send a division before, which will be the better way.

[a] *Note this direction.* [b] *If need be the Body may make Alt, and charge to the Front and Reere*

CAAP. LXXXIX.

A second way of Firing to the Front and Reere.

THis second way of *Firing* to the *Front* and *Reere* upon a *Martch*, may easily be performed, if the *Souldiers* be well and often instructed: Without which, all matters in the *Art Military* will seem difficult; and by which, all things will be made facile and easie. I could instance in divers *Motions* and *Figures*, by some reputed superfluous niceties;

which were the true uſes known to the *Commander*, and the way to execute to the *Souldier*, would be found to be of ſingular good ſervice. Nevertheleſs, becauſe to the * *Ignorant*, nothing beyond their capacities may ſeem excellent, many good and ſerviceable *Motions* are ſlighted, and not accounted fit for ſervice. But I could well wiſh, that ſome good courſe might be taken, that the *Souldiers* of our *Trained-Bands* might have a little oftner *practice*, that ſo they might be able (at leaſt in ſome reaſonable way) to underſtand and *exerciſe* what ſhall be commanded them. But I have ſtrayed from the matter; and therefore take theſe words of *Command* and *Direction*, which being orderly executed, produce this *Figure* following:

* *Ignorant Souldiers account thoſe things niceties which they underſtand not.*

Muſquettiers, give fire to the Front and Reere, placing your ſelves between your Diviſions.

Front.

E C

S MMMM D P P P P P P P P DMMMM S
WMMMM P P P P P P P MMMMW
WMMMM P P P P P P P MMMMW
WW P P P P P P P WW
MW P P P P P P P WM
MMMMM P P P P P P P MMMMM
MMMMM P P P P P P P MMMMM
S WWWW D P P P P P P P P D WWWW S

L

Reere.

The direction for this firing to the Front and Reere.

The way to performe this *Firing* is as followeth: (the Command being given) The *firſt-rank advanceth* 8. *or* 10. *paces before the Front of the body, there preſenting, and firing: the laſt rank of Muſquettiers, in the interim, preſenting at three motions to the Reer, and there in like manner firing:* which done, they are to *wheel-off to the right and left*, placing themſelves *between the Muſquettiers of their own diviſions.* Thoſe, namely, which were of the *Front-half-files*, falling into the *Reer* of their own *diviſion*; thoſe of the *Reer-half-files* (contrariwiſe) falling *before their half-file-leaders*, and *ranking-even* with the *half-file-leaders* of *Pikes*; the next *Ranks*, ſucceſſively, *firing* and *wheeling-off* after the ſame manner. *Having fired once over, they are reduced every man to his place.*

The reducement.

Theſe two laſt *Firings* to be performed upon a *Martch*, would ſeem very difficult to *unexperienced Souldiers*; but by often exerciſing they may be made capable of theſe, or of any other. Nevertheleſs, the *ſpeciall uſe of this Firing* is for ſmall *Bodies, being charged in Front* and *Reer* by *diſbanded Squadrons*, or *ſmall parties*: But if your *Body* be *large*, the beſt way will be to ſend out a *conſiderable number* of *Muſquets* and *Pikes* before, *to beat-off the Enemy*: or if they be not able to beat him off, then to *hold him up*, untill you have *made good your* Retreit, and can either *reinforce* them with a *new ſupply*, or *relieve them* by bringing of *freſh hands* to maintain the fight.

CHAP. XC.

Firing to the Reere and Right-flank martching.

The uſe of this firing.

HAving already ſhewen *Firings in Front, Reere, and Flanks*, (ſome *martching*, and ſome *ſtanding*) I will now ſhew one *Firing* to the *Reere* and *Right-flanke*, upon a *Martch*: The which, without all queſtion, muſt be very ſerviceable, at ſuch times as the obſequious and vigilant Enemy ſhal find ſome opportunity to *skirmiſh with the Body*, ſeeking to annoy them in their paſſage or *martch*, *charging* them in the *Reer* and *Flank* at one

and

and the ſame time. I ſhall not need with arguments to enforce the uſefulneſs of the *Firing*, for none that knowes any thing in the *Art Military*, but will ingeniouſly confeſs, that in time of *motion*, *either advancing, or retreiting out of an Enemies Country*, they ſhall be ſure upon all *advantages* to be waited upon by Enemies, *charging in this nature.*

I might be infinite in examples of this kind, both ancient and modern, but my intent is not to write a Hiſtory, every Houſe and Shop being ſufficiently ſtor'd with Works of that nature; and my task being only a few directions, for the better improvement of the exerciſe of *Foot-Companies*; the which I have hitherto endeavoured to keep my ſelf cloſe unto, and not flown out into extravagant and *forraign* Diſcourſes: although I cannot deny, but that the ſeaſonable recital and intermixture of *Hiſtory*, would much have *beautified* and *imbelliſhed* the *Worke*, as delivering it more fragrant to the ſenſe, and conducing with more delectation, to the benefit of the memory. But it is not my intent to raiſe my labours to ſo large a Volume; nor indeed can I ſpend ſo much time from my more neceſſary affairs; but ſhall reſt well contented, to leave ſuch large labours to the abilities of the Learned, who with their artful Inventions may be able to garniſh out their works with more attracting tearms; whileſt I, in the mean time, according to the meaſure of my talent proſecute my enſuing Diſcourſes.

You may (if you pleaſe) fire to the Flank and Reere, your Muſquettiers being in their ordinary places, on the flanks of their Pikes. Nevertheleſs, a *ſecurer way* for the *Pikes* will be, to draw the *Muſquettiers from that flank* which is in leaſt danger, *croſs the Reere of Pike-men.* And this ſhall be the way I'l obſerve in this *Firing*. The words of *Command* are as followeth. *Ways of firing to the Flank and Reere.*

Muſquettiers, give fire to the Right and Reer, placing your ſelves between the Pikes and your own diviſions.



The *Command* being given (*to fire to the Reer and Right-flank*) the *outer-moſt file of Muſquettiers preſent to the Right, and the laſt-rank of Muſquettiers preſent to the Reere*, *and both give fire*; the reſt of the *Body*, in the mean time, *martching* a reaſonable pace: *firing*, The *right-hand-file and laſt-rank* having *fired*, the *file faceth* to the *left*, after their *File-leader*, and ſo *martcheth-up* between the *Muſquettiers* of the ſame *diviſion*, and the *Pikes*; *The direction on for this*

If there be too many to wheel-off together, then make one interval, or more as the occasion requireth.

the *rank wheeling-off* to the *right*, and placing it self next after the *reer* of *Pikes*, and before the first *rank* of *Musquettiers* of the same *division*. If you please, you may make an *Intervall* between the *Musquettiers*: that so part may *wheel-off* to the *right*, on the *outside*, and the other part *wheel-off* to the *right*, and *march-up* between the *Intervall* into their places. The first *file* and *rank* that *presented*, have *given fire*, and *wheeled clear off the Body*, the next *file* and *rank present*, and *give fire*; after the same manner *wheeling-off*, and taking their *places*, as aforesaid: and so successively, the rest (both *files* and *ranks*) *give fire* observing the same order. And having *given fire*, *once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over, they are still *reduced* to the same they were before the *firing* began. Then *draw* your *Musquettiers* from the *Reer*, to the *left-flank* again; and they will have their places as at first.

The reducement.

CHAP. XCI.

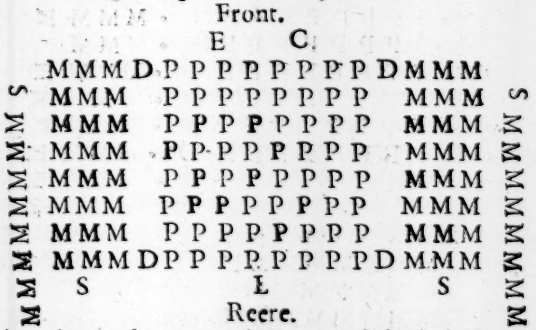
Of firing to both flanks, marching.

Firings, to *both flanks* and *marching*, without all peradventure are as requisite to be *practised* in times of *exercise*, as necessary to be *used* in times of *danger*: when the *politick* and *nimble enemy*, shall lie beating upon your *flanks*, thereby seeking to *distress* you in your *passage*, or *force* you to *Alt*, perhaps to your greater *disadvantage*. For the *manner* or *way* to perform the *firing*; it must have reference to the *time*, *number*, *place*, & strength of the *Enemy*: with other like circumstances considerable, by the *discreet* and *well-advised Captain*: and accordingly to *draw-off* his *Musquettiers*, either for *security*, or *advantage*: Sometimes placing them between their own divisions and the *Pikes* (as in this following *firing*) at other times, placing them * between the midst of their *Pikes*, the better to secure them.

**As in Ch. 87. which is a very good firing if the souldiers be well exercised.*

Divers other such like wayes there are to be used at the discretion of the *Commander*; & as the present occasion shall require. *But because I insisted somewhat largly upon the firings on the right-flank, I shall not need to shew them again, by division on both flanks*; but will conclude them all in this one. The words of *Command* which produce the *firing*, are as followeth.

Musquettiers give fire to both flanks and then place your selves between the Pikes and your own divisions.



The direction for this firing.

The *Command* being given, the *outermost file on each flank presents outward*, the rest of the body still continuing the *march*. The *presented files* (in the interim) *giving fire*; then *facing* after their *proper-file leaders*, who are to lead them up between the *Musquets* of their own *Divisions*, and the *Pikes*. In the time of their *wheeling-away*, the next *two files present*, *firing* after the same manner, and leading up as before. The rest (successively) doing the like, until they have *fired all over*; which brings them to their former places. The *Firing* may be continued at discretion, each *firing* being its own *Reducement*. Nevertheless,

heleſs, it may ſo fall out, that either through the *fury of the Enemy*, advantage or diſadvantage of the ground (or ſome ſuch like accident) the Body may be forced to make *Alt*, and to *face* to both *Flanks*; and ſo with *Fronts accidental*, to maintain the fight ſtanding. To which end, the *Firing* in the ſucceeding *Chapter*, ſhall be of that ſort. Therefore *ſuppoſe the Body faced to the right and left*, preparing to *give fire*.

The Muſquettiers having given fire all over, they are reduced to their places, as at firſt.

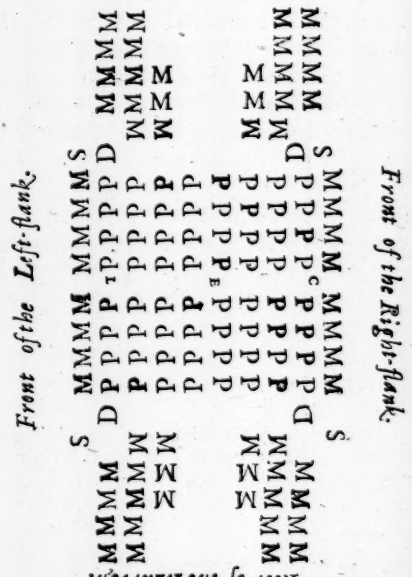
CHAP. XCII.

A Firing to both flanks ſtanding.

Firing to both flanks, upon a ſtand, is a good & ſerviceable *Firing*. And although it ſhew but thin in the Figure; yet it may be uſeful for the *Field*, eſpecially if there be a *larger proportion* of *number*, than I have made uſe of in my *Formes* and Figures of *Battel*. The words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produce the Figure, are as followeth.

Advance your Pikes and ſtand, Face to their Right and Left, Muſquettiers give fire and flank your Pikes.

Front of the March.



Reer of the March.

The direction for this firing.

The Body being *faced* to the *right* and *left*, the *formoſt ranks of Muſquettiers* (which were the *outermoſt Files*,) *preſent* and *give fire*, and then *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, *ranking even with the formoſt ranks of Pikes*, amd leaving ſufficient *Intervals for the* reſt of the *muſquettiers*, to *march* between them and the *Pikes*. The next rank *preſenting* and *firing* after the ſame manner but not advancing forwards; only *firing* upon the ſame ground, and *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, afterwards paſſing down *between* the *Intervals*, and ſo rank after their leaders. It is herewithal to be noted, that they that were out-moſt when they *gave fire*, are likewiſe to be ſo when they have taken their places. If theſe inſtructions be not ſufficient, turn back to the Figure of the *Demi-hearſe*, where the manner of execution is all one with this. All the ranks of *Muſquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled off*, as before; the *Pikes* if need be may *charge*, and the *Muſquettiers give fire* over again, *wheeling-off* outward, and placing themſelves in the *Reer of their own diviſions*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and

[a] *Upon ſome occaſions it will be neceſſary for the Muſquettiers and Pikemen to advance into the leaders ground, but then ſuch direction will be given.*

[b] *The Demi-hearſe, in* Chap. 76.

*faced

* This facing brings all the musquettiers to the Front and Reere; if you would bring your Musquets into their first place det them give fire and wheel off as before, which will reduce them again to the Flanks:

*faced your *Body* to the *first-front*, all your *Musquettiers* will be in *Front* and *Reer*: and then, if you *face your half-files-about*, and give *fire* after the same manner to the *Front* and *Reer*, having *faced* them again to their *first-front*, they will be *reduced*, as at first, into their ordinary *Square*. Nevertheless, I will *reduce* it by another *Firing*, which was first invented and shewed us by that worthy *Citizen*, and excellent *Souldier*, Captain *Henry Waller*, now deceased: it is a *Firing* in *Front*, the *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-division* opening to the *right and left*, and *sleeving-up on the Flanks of Pikes*, until the leaders of the *Reer-division* (who as then are the *half-file-leaders*) *rank even* with the *Front of Pikes*. The words of *direction*, that produce the *Figure*; following in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XCIII.

Captain Wallers *Triple Firing to the Front.*

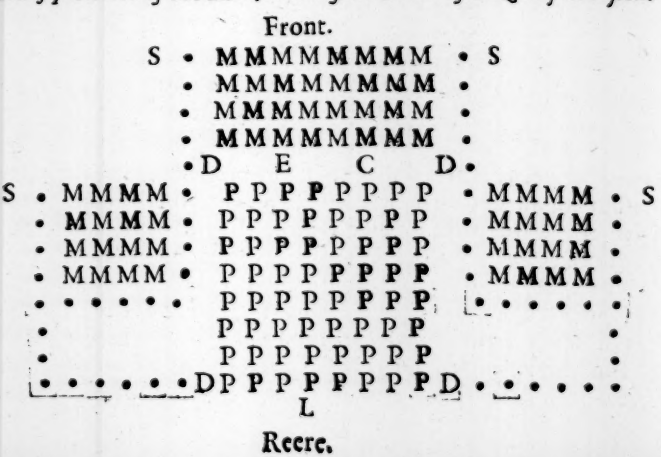
THis *Triple Firing* to the *Front*, hath had the approbation of good and wel-experienced *Souldiers*, who have all acknowledged it to be both *solid* and *serviceable*; bringing many hands to fight in very good order, the *Pikes* being securely covered by their *musquettiers* in *Front*; neither need they be idle in time of *Battel*, if they have any * *Bow-Pike-men* amongst them, for that they may send their *Whistling Archery* over their *Musquettiers* heads, without offence to their Friends, though not without dammage to their Enemies. If any carp at the depth of the *Musquettiers* (either in this *Figure*, or in any other in this Book) I shall request them to suspend their censures, and wisely to conceive by a little, what a great deal meaneth: my intent not being to make my Book *monstrous*, by having little leavs, and large *Figures*. Only I desire with this small number to shew the nature of several *forms* and *figures* of *Battel*, the manner of their *Firings* and *Wheelings*, *off*, their orderly *placings*, and several wayes of *Reducement*; not having the least conceit to induce any to believe, that men are able long to continue an orderly execution at 4. deep, although (some times for *stratagems*) they may be reduced into a lesser number. But lest by digression I too farr trespass upon your patience, I will return to shew the manner of the *Firing*. Only, first observe the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produceth the following *Figure*.

* The bow fastened to the Pike may do good service, where the Souldier is skilful, and the Enemy comes within their danger,

Note that in the foregoing *Chap.* the Musquettiers were left in the Front and Reer:

Musquettiers of the Reer, double your Front of Pikes by division.

The direction over the Figure, Commanding the Reer-Squadron of Musquettiers to march-up and range-even with the Front of Pikes, which perfects this Figure. Some have mistaken, supposing I had formed this Figure with them words, conceiving all the Musquettiers, before that Command, on the Flanks,



The Command being given, the *first-rank* of *Musquettiers* (both of *Front* and *Flanks*) *present* to the *Front*, and *give fire*, *wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left* by *division*: The *Musquettiers* of the *Front-division* being *wheeled-off* (as afore-said) *close by the Flanks of their own Musquettiers*, pass directly down *between the Intervalls*, and place themselves *even in Rank behind the Musquettiers of the Reer-division, which are upon the Flanks*. This you may perceive by the *pricks* that came down between the *Intervalls*. The *Musquettiers* also that *fired* the same time on the *Flanks*, *wheel-off* in like manner, (the *right-flank* to the *right*, the *left-flank* to the *left*) *martching* directly down, even with the *Reer-rank* of *Pikes*; and there place themselves again, even in *rank* with the *last-rank* of *Pikes*. This done, the rest of the *Ranks* (successively) *give fire*, and do the like; every *Ranke* taking his place after the *Rank* which *fired* last before them; the other *Rank* moving one *Rank* forwarder. The *Musquettiers* having *given fire* once over, and *falling-off* according to this direction, they will be *reduced* to the *Flanks* again, as they were at first, in the former Chapter. The *Firing* may be continued, or the *Pikes* may *charge*, at the discretion of the *Commander*.

The direction for this firing.

The Musquettiers having fired once over, they are reduced again to the flanke.

CHAP. XCIV

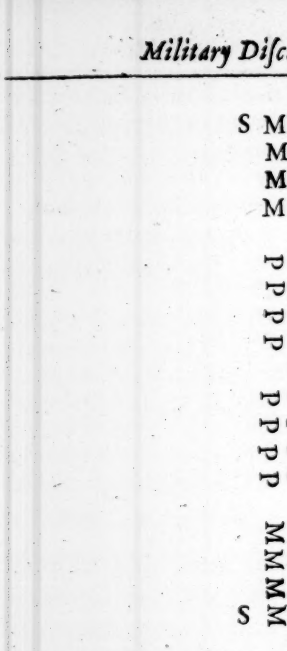
The Demie-Plinthium; being a Tripartite Firing, doing execution to the Front, Reere, and Right-Flank.

FIgures and *forms* of *Battell* may be infinite; according to the judgments of the *Commanders*, and the various workings of the divers *motions*: no *art* nor *science* yeelding more content unto the studious *Practitioners*; none more *honourable* and *beneficiall* for the good of our *Countrey*; none more *neglected*, and less *countenanced*, then the *Practisers* of the *Art Military*: nor none more *scorned-up*, in the places of their abiding, than those men this way affected. Our rich *gown-men* holding it as a Maxime, *That Souldiers* (*though Fortune hath been but sparing in their portions*) *yet they must be taxed in the Parish-Books like grounded Gentlemen.* Thus much incouragement wee have for spending our mony and time for our Countries good; and this (in good time) I hope will be amended. The next *Firing*, being a *Firing Tripartite*, doth *execution* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Right-flank*, at one and the same time. For the *use*, I shall referre it to the *judgment* of the *judicious*: For the instruction, how it is to be *made*, the words of *Command* and *Direction* shew it; which are as followeth,

The common speech being (oh let him pay) he hath money enough to spend upon his exercises of Souldiery.

Half-ranks of the left, double your Right-flank by division.

Front.



If this figure were double d, having ſo many more ordered in the ſame manner on the left-flank, it would be a compleat form to fire to Front, Reere, and Flanks,

The direction how to make this Figure in the 27 Chap.

For the *Diriction*, look back to to the Chapter which treats of this *Doubling*: Onely, remember to *face* the *Diviſions* that way which you intend they ſhall *give fire*.

For the manner of the *Firing*, it is ordinary: the *fore-moſt rank* of *Muſquettiers* (on each part) having *fired*, they *wheel-off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, (according as directions ſhall be given) *placing themſelves* in the *Reere* of their *own diviſions*: the *next rank*, in the mean time, *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*; there in like manner *firing*, *wheeling-off*, and placing themſelves as before: the reſt of the *ranks*, ſucceſſively, doing the like. This *Firing* may be continued at pleaſure of the *Commander*. The *Pike-men* (as advantage may be given) in the *interim*, either *porting*, *charging*, or ſending their fatall *ſhowers* amongſt the thickeſt of their *Enemies*. Laſtly, for *Reducement*, *face* them all to their *Front-proper*, then command, *half-ranks that doubled, to face to the left, and ſo to march into their places*. For further *directions*, turn back to *Chap.* 27. which ſhews the *Reducement* of the fore-going *Figure*.

The reducement.

CHAP. XCV.

Of the Sconce-Battell.

For if it were made with a Regiment, Brigade, or larger Body, it would require other words of direction, but be nothing more difficult.

THE *Sconce-Battell* is a *Figure* moſt properly fit for a whole *Regiment*; at leaſt, for a larger proportion of *number* then is here expreſt; it neither being *good* nor *ſafe* to divide a ſmall *Company* into ſo many *ſub-diviſions* and *Maniples*: yet, to give ſatisfaction unto ſome, I have placed it here amongſt my *Figures*, and ſhewn the way how to make it with a *private Company*. for the manner or way how to *fire* upon it, may be diverſe: the *Muſquettiers* being ſo placed, that they may *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reere*, to the *Right* and *Left*, to all *four* together, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. If your *Muſquettiers give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, (every *Rank* making good his *leaders ground*) then the *Figure* will ſtill continue the ſame. If they *give fire* without *advancing* into their *leaders ground*, then the *Muſquettiers* will *rank-even* again with their *Pikes*; and the *Figure* will become an *hollow Croſs*, the *Muſquettiers* making the *Angles*. The words of *Command* and *Direction*, which produce the *Figure* are as followeth.

Half

Half-files of Musquettiers, face to the Reer.

That being done, *Command all the Musquettiers to martch to the Angles of their Pikes.*

Next cause, *The two first and two last Ranks of Pikes to stand.*

The rest to face to the right and left, and martch until they are clear of the other Pikes, then stand.

Lastly, Command, *The two first and last ranks of Pikes, which did not move, to double their Files to the right.*

These words of *Command* and *direction* being *executed*, perfect the *Figure*, as followeth.

The Sconce Battel.



Many and several are the *Firings*, which (with some little *alteration*) may be drawn from this Figure. Nevertheless not to spin out time with discourse, the *Firing* now *intended* to be *shewn*, is to be performed to the *front* and *Reer*. To which purpose, the one *half* (both of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* are to *face-about to the right*; there *presenting* and *giving fire*: those of the *right-flank wheel-off* to the *right*; the *left flank* to the *left*, and *placing* themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. The next *rank* still *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*; the other *ranks*, successively do the like. After this manner, the *firing* may be continued, and the *Figure* still preserved. *By subdividing and new placing some of the divisions.*

For *reducement*. First, *face* them all after their proper *file-leaders*. Secondly, cause the *front* and *reer-divisions* of *Pikes* to *double* their *ranks* to the *left*. Thirdly, *command* the *Pikes* of the *flanks* to *face* in *opposition*, *close* their *divisions*, and then to *face* after their *leaders*. Next, *command* the *Musquettiers* of the *front-division* to *face* to the *reer*. Lastly, *command* the *Musquettiers* (both of *front* and *reer*) to *close* their *divisions*. And then being *faced* to their *leader*, they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first. *The reducement.*

CHAP. XCVI.

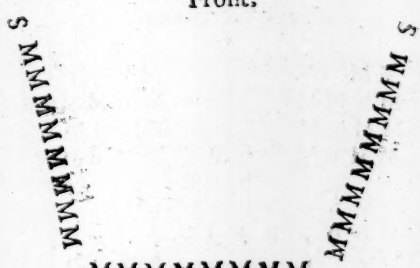
Of firing by three files at once; two of them standing oblique, the other direct.

WHen I began to treat of *Forms* and *Figures* of *Battel*, I noted all *Firing* to be either *oblique* or *direct*; and now for satisfaction to the curious, I shall insert two or

three *oblique forms* amongst the rest. The first whereof shall be a *Firing to the Front*, *by drawing forth the outer-most file on each Flank obliquely*, (or the *inner-most*, as shall seem best to the *Commander*) until the *bringers-up* of the *files*, *stand even* with the *right* and *left-angle-men*, over the *front* of *Pikes*. They may also lead a *file* of *Musquettiers* cross the *front* of *Pikes*; when having *placed* and *faced* them (as they ought) for *execution*, they will *stand* in manner of this following *Figure*.

The first making of direction to the Figure.

Front.



C

S MMM • D P P P P P P P P D • • MM S
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • P P P P P P P P • • MM
MMM • D P P P P P P P P D • • MM

L

The way to give fire obliquely demonstrated

The *two files* of *Musquettiers* which were *led forth*, *obliquely presented inwards*, & the *file drawn crosse* the *front of Pikes*, being *presented* direct *Rank-wise*: upon the first *command*, they are all to *give fire together*, & then to *face* after their *bringers-up*, who lead their *files* directly into their *places*. This done they *face* to their *proper-front* again; the other *files* (in the mean time) leading forth after the same manner. These having done their *execution*, are to return into their *places*: being *led-off* by their *bringers-up*, (as is aforesaid.) The rest of the *files*, after the same manner, *firing* and *returning* until they have all *given fire*; and then they will be all *reduced*, as at first.

CHAP. XCVII.

A Firing oblique, by four files together, in form of a W.

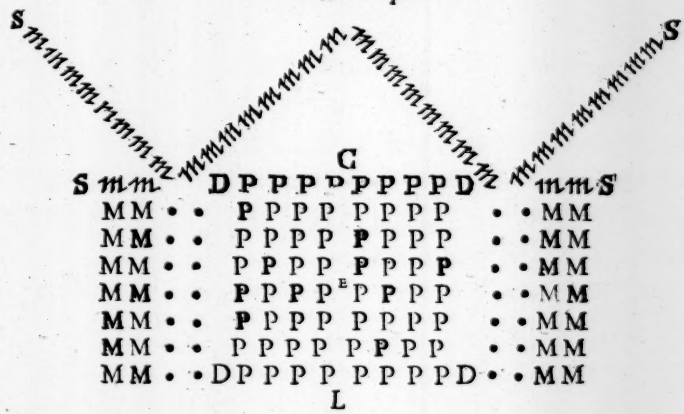
The direction to make this firing.

ALl the commendations that may be given of these *oblique Figures*, is, that they *pour out a great deal of shot at once, and may quickly be reduced to their places*. Notwithstanding they are a great weakning to the *Body*, if any sudden accident should happen before they are setled in their former *stations*. Nevertheless, I shall leave them to themselves and if they be found to hold out weight, I shall not grudg that I have given them room amongst the rest. But if they prove too light, let them be as lightly respected, yet bear somwhat with them for their *antiquity*. The way to make the *figure*, is as followeth. The two *inner-most files* of *Musquettiers* on each *flank* march forth (each of them being *led* by an *Officer*) until they have taken their *places*. Then the *Officers* that *led* forth the *two middle-*

most

moſt files, are to return to their *places* again; the *Serjeants* that led forth the *enter-moſt files*, ſtanding to ſee them do their *execution*. Yet before the *Muſquettiers* have order to *give fire*, obſerve the manner of their *ſtanding*, by the following *Figure*.

The W *oblique.*



The *Muſquettiers* having *preſented*, according to their directions, they *give fire* all together; and then ſuddenly *facing* after their *Bringers-up*, *martch* down into their places: the *next two files* of each *Flank*, in the *interim* of their *martching-away*, are to *move forwards* to their *ground*; where they are in like manner to *give fire*, and then to take their places, as aforeſaid. The reſt of the *files* of *Muſquettiers* (if you have more) muſt then *move forwards*, and do the like. And in this ſort may the *Muſquettiers give fire*, *once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over; each *Firing* being a *Reducement* to it ſelf. *The direction to give fire from this Figure.*

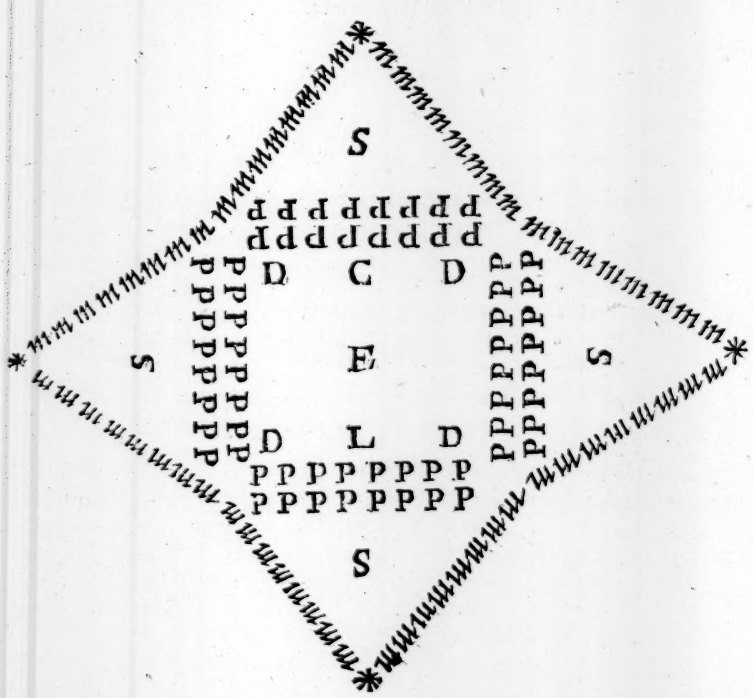
CHAP. XCVIII.

Of the Fort-battell; the way to make, and to reduce it.

THe *Figure* of the *Fort-Battell* is an *oblique* *Firing*, and taketh its *denomination* rather from the *ſimilitude*, then the *ſtrength* of a *Fort*. Its chiefe uſe is, for the *entertainment* of ſome great *Perſonage* or *Commander*, in the *Field*; who being received into the *midſt* of the *diviſion* of *Pikes*, the *Muſquettiers* may *preſent*, and *give fire* altogether, in one *volley*. Or if they would have the *Muſquettiers give fire* one after another, then the *volleys* by *ſucceſſion* (which ſome call the *Peal*) will be the beſt. If there be more *Muſquettiers* then will ſerve to make up the *Figure* ſingle, they may alſo *give fire* with the reſt, *preſenting obliquely*, between the *diſtance* of their *leaders*. The way to make this *Figure* is as followeth: Firſt, *draw forth the out-moſt files* (of *Muſquettiers*) on each *Flank*, in *form* of an *hollow wedge*, before the *Front* of *Pikes*: then cauſe the *next two out-moſt files* to *face-about*, and to follow their *Bringers-up*, in the ſame *forme*, to the *Reer*: Then let the *laſt two files* of *Muſquettiers* (on each *Flank*) be *drawn* after their *File-leaders*, in the ſame *manner* and *forme*, to the *Flanks*. The *Muſquettiers* being thus *ordered*, and all *preſented obliquely outwards*, command the *two firſt* and *two laſt rãnks* of *Pikes* to *ſtand*; the reſt of the *Pikes*, to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and ſo to *martch* untill they are *clear* of the other *Pikes* which *ſtand*: then command the *Pikes* which *moved*, to *double their files to the right*: Laſtly, command all the *Pike-men* to *face out-wards*; each *The uſe of the Fort-Battell.* *The direction to make this Figure.*

division of *Pikes*, after their *hollow wedge* of *Musquettiers*: Or else, let them *face* all *inward* to the *Center*; and then the *Body* will stand in *form* of the following *Figure*.

The Fort-Battell.


S
d d d d d d d
d d d d d d d
P P P

drawn out, the *groſſe* of their *Battels* into this *form*; and therewith both *ſuſtained*, and *re-charged* upon their *enemies*. Each *diviſion* being very *aptly placed* to relieve the other. If the *enemy* be like to *give on in front*, then the *Reer-diviſion* may *ſub-divide*, and *march up by each flank* making the *wings*. But if that part be ſupplyed by the *Cavalry*, then they may ſerve to *line*, or *mixe*, *between the Intervalls*, and *diviſions* of the *horſe*; or be *otherwiſe diſpoſed off*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. Nevertheleſs, if any object, that the *enemy* being in open *Campania*, may as well *charge* your *Battells* in *flank* or *Reer* as in *Front*. The anſwer may be eaſily given; that the *Body* being *faced*, the matter doth ſtill continue the ſame.

If it be re-objected, that the *enemy* having the *advantage* in *number*, may ſeek to *diſtreſs* you; by *charging on the ſeverall places at once*. To that may likewiſe be anſwered, that each *diviſion* may *readily face* to that part and *receive their charge*.

Notwithſtanding, diſcreet *Commanders* have ever been *cautious*, to *adventure* into the *even*, and [a] *open countries*, (when the *enemy* hath the *advantage* of *horſe*; or much the *greater number* of *foot*) whereby they may be forced to the [b] *hazard* of a *Battell*: The which without *manifeſt neceſſities*, or (to the contrary) ſome *known* and *extraordinary* advantages, ought neither to be given, or *accepted*: So *nice* and *tickliſh* is the *chance* of *warre*; where ſmall errours, oftentimes, are the *fore-runners* of great *over-throws*. But my intent is not to lanch forth into theſe laviſh diſcourſes, but timely to make my retreit unto my *private Company*, and without further circumſtances, of what hath, or may be done; come to ſhew what I intend concerning this *figure*: and ſhew the wayes to *fire upon it*; the which are ordinarly two, &c.

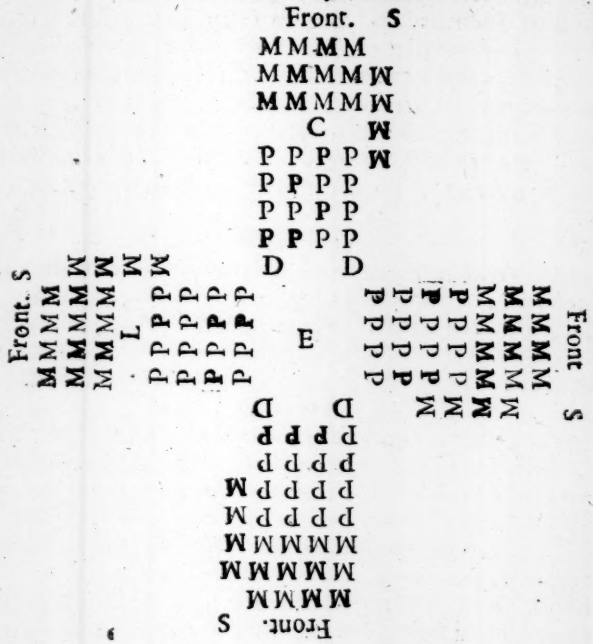
The [c] firſt, when the *Muſquettiers give fire*, and then place themſelves in the *reer* of their *own diviſions* of *Muſquets*. The [d] ſecond way is, after that they have *fired*, to place them in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, the *Pikes* maintaining the *Muſquettiers* ground. The words of *Command* which produce the *Figure*, are as followeth.

Two firſt Ranks, wheel your Front into the midſt.
Two laſt Ranks, wheel your Reer into the midſt.
The reſt of the Body, face to the right and left, and ſo march, untill the Reer *of the four diviſions make an even hollow ſquare.*
Then let the Commander go into the midſt, (or center) and face the whole Company to him: giving them ſuch direction as is meet.
Laſtly, being all faced about to the right, the body will ſtand like the following Figure.

a *Even and open Countries very dangerous for ſmall bodies where the enemy is ſuperiour in number, or horſe.*
b *The hazard of a Battell perilous.*
c *The firſt placing of the Muſquets.*
d *The ſecond way of placing the Muſquets.*

The direction to make the Croſſe-Battell with a private Company: alſo you may obſerve if that the Croſſe-Battell were to be made with a Brigace, or Regiment, then in ſtead of wheeling two Ranks, we ſhould perhaps wheel two or 3. Companies to either part, &c.

The Crosse Battell.



Note that as men stand in rank when they give fire, so they are to place themselves again, when they have fired. The outer-most man taking the out-side places: the rest in like manner, orderly placing themselves with in them.

[a] This *Crosse Battell* being *faced* to the *front*, *reer*, and *flanks*, and the *Musquettiers commanded* to *give* fire: one *way* of *placing* them is, in the *reer* of their *own divisions* of *Musquettiers*; for that hereby, the *Musquettiers* will still continue their *places*. For the second *way*, after that the *first ranks* have *given* fire, let them *wheel-off* to the *right*, (or to the *right* and *left*, if the number be *large*) and [b] *place* themselves in the *reer* of their *Pikes*, each *rank moving forwards*, and *maintaining* their *leaders ground*. The second *rank* in like manner is to fire, and to take their *places* after the *Musquettiers* which fired, and *wheeled-off* last before them. The rest successively, are to do the like, untill all the *shot have* fired, and are *wheeled-away*: then let the *Pikes charge*, &c. If any object, that it is *dangerous to have so large distance between the front of each* firing: I have already declared, that it must needs be occasioned by some great extremity, thrown upon us through *negligence*, or *necessity*, when we shall be forced to accept the *Battell*, with so evident signs of *disadvantage* where the *enemy* may surround and *charge* upon us in *front*, *reer*, and *flanks*. And therefore seeing that in such cases we are not alwayes afforded *meanes*, nor *time*, to *supply* all defects: we must be content, according to the suddennesse of the occasion to make so good *defence*, as for the present we may conveniently *provide*. And in such places which lie most *open* to the *enemy* (where through defect of *number*, [c] the danger must needs be *great*) there to place the *Wagons*, *Carts*, and other *Carriages* so *commodiously*, that they may serve for a *Rampart*, or defence against their *horse* or *foot*. Or if it may be found more *convenient*, to *inpale* those places (least *defensible*) with sharp [d] *Pallisadoes*; (the which hath been a *weapon of ancient use*, *and now again lately practised*, *by the Gentlemen of* Souldiers *are disheartned by some known and evident disadvantage.* [d] *Pallisadoes used by the Persian army of Xerxes against the Grecians, at the Battell of Michale in Asia, about 1800 years since, in modern service by the King of Swede against the Pole; as also in the Germane Warre.*

[a] *The direction to this firing.* [b] *When there is not above two or three ranks of Musquettiers to give fire, the Pikes may port, when all the Musquettiers are in the Reer of the Pikes, let them charge.* [c] *It is very dangerous to fight.*

the

the Military Yard;) and I conceive may prove very *useful*, to defend the *voyd* and *open spaces*, which want other defence, from the *fury* and *insolence* of the *haughty* and *over-daring Horse*. But if all these *helps* be *wanting*, then three or four *files* of each *arms* may be *drawn crosse*, from the *Angle* of one *Front* to the *other*; the which being well-ordered, may make reasonable good *defence* on those *parts*.

Having *given fire* upon the *Crosse-battel*, and brought your *Musquets* to the *Rear* of the *Pikes*, if you would *reduce* them, *passe* into the *midst* or *center* of the *Figure*, and *face* all (both *Musquettiers* and *Pike-men*) to you; and cause those *divisions* which were the *flankers*, to *close to their order*: Next, *wheel* the *Fronts* into the *midst* of the two other *divisions*, one after the other; then go to the *first-front*, and *face* the whole *body* to you, and so you shall have all your *Musquettiers* in the *midst*, *flanking* with *Pikes*. If you would *reduce* them into their right places, command the *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left-outward*, the *Pikes* to *face* to the *right* and *left-inward*; and so to *passe thorow*, and *inter-change ground*. This being rightly performed, and the *Body re-faced* to their *first-front*, they are *reduced* to their proper *order*. *The reducements.*

CHAP. C.

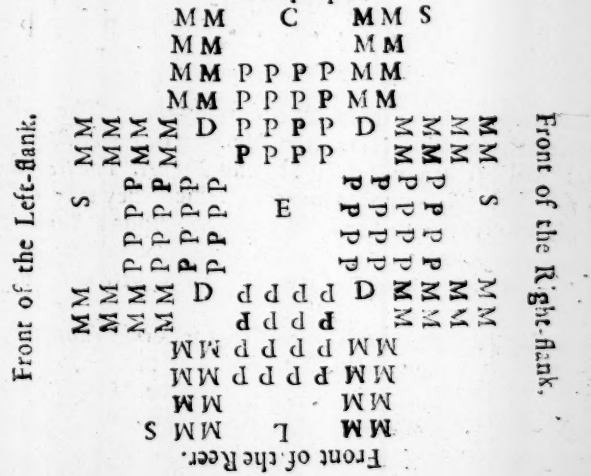
Of the hollow-fronted Crosse-battel: how to make it with a private Company; and the way to fire upon it, &c.

THis next *Figure* shall be of the *hollow-fronted Crosse*, which is a *stronger form* than that last shewn; and yet thus much let me warn you of, that there can be but little expectation of *strength* to be perceived, in *Battels* formed with so small a *number*. This notwithstanding, the * ingenious *Martialists* can easily discern those things, which in warr may prove most useful for their own, and their Countries benefit, although they are here expressed to the publike view in so *mean array*, and in such *thin numbers*. Wherefore, setting aside all Apologies and Excuses, I will briefly shew the words of *Command* and *Direction*, which will produce the following *Figure*.

* *Such and so great lovers of arms as* Philopæmen *the Achaian.* Rawleigh. *hist mun. c. 5 of the 5t Book 1 part*

Two first-ranks, wheel your front into the midst.
Two last-ranks, wheel your rear into the midst.
The rest face to the right and left, and march until they have made the perfect Crosse.
Lastly, cause the Musquettiers to flank their Pikes, according to this following Figure.

The hollow-fronted Crosse. *The directions to make the hollow-fronted Crosse. the files containing 8. men in depth.*



The

The direction for this firing. The ſeveral *directions* for *Firing* upon this *Figure*, may be divers; but to avoid *diſtraction*, I will ſhew only one way, and that *directed* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*. Nevertheleſs (for varieties ſake) you may cauſe them to *give fire* once over, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*; ſtill *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, thereby to preſerve the *Figure* in the ſame *order*.

At the ſecond time of *Firing*, cauſe the *Pikes* to move *ſoftly up*, *even* with the *Front* of *Muſquettiers*, *porting* as they *advance forwards*. The *Muſquettiers* having *fired* and *wheeled-off*, are to *place* themſelves in the *Reer* of their *diviſions* of *Pikes*, (whom before they *flanked*) every *Rank* of *Muſquettiers firing*, *wheeling-off*, and *placing* themſelves as afore-ſaid. Laſtly, the *Pikes* having *charged*, and again *re-advanced*, the *Body* will ſtand in the *figure* of a perfect *Croſſe*.

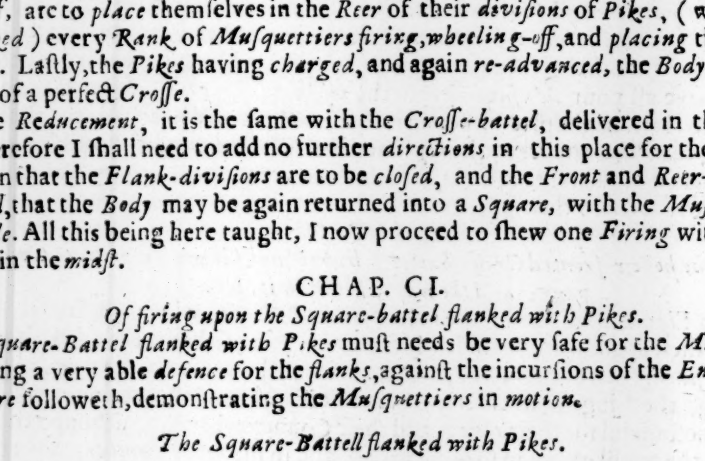
The reducement is the ſame with the Croſſe-Battell. For the *Reducement*, it is the ſame with the *Croſſe-battel*, delivered in the laſt Chapter: wherefore I ſhall need to add no further *directions* in this place for the ſaid *reducement*, then that the *Flank-diviſions* are to be *cloſed*, and the *Front* and *Reer-diviſions* to be *wheeled*, that the *Body* may be again returned into a *Square*, with the *Muſquettiers* in the *middle*. All this being here taught, I now proceed to ſhew one *Firing* with the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*.

CHAP. CI.

Of firing upon the Square-battel flanked with Pikes.

THe *Square-Battel flanked with Pikes* muſt needs be very ſafe for the *Muſquettiers*, as being a very able *defence* for the *flanks*, againſt the incurſions of the *Enemies horſe*. The *Figure* followeth, demonſtrating the *Muſquettiers* in *motion*.

The Square-Battell flanked with Pikes.



The ſeveral wayes of firing from this ſquare figure. The wayes of *Firing* upon this *Figure* are ordinarily *three*: The *firſt Firing* is, with the *aſpect* being directed to the *Front*; the *Muſquettiers wheeling* either all *off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, as you perceive by this *Figure*. The *ſecond* is, for the *Muſquettiers* to *give fire* to the *Reer* upon a *marteh*; which they may eaſily do, from this *Figure*. The *third* is, to *give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, upon a *ſtand*; the *half-files* being *faced-about*. A *fourth firing* may be, *to the Flanks by Extraduction*, if need be.

Note the firing to the front. If the *firing* be performed to the *front*, then every *Rank* is to *martch-up* into their *leaders ground*.

The firing to the reer. If the *Firing* be to the *Reer*, upon a *Martch*, then the *Ranks* (contrariwiſe) *cloſe backwards* towards the *Reer*, to make good the *Battell* on that part.

The firing to the front and reer. If it be to the *Front* and *Reer*, upon a *ſtand*, then the *Muſquettiers martch-up* into their *leaders ground*, and thoſe which have *fired* and are *wheeled off*, place themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*.

To

To write further of this *Firing*, were more than necessary; no one of these *Firings* any wayes altering the *Figure*, but the *aspect* onely. Nevertheless, if the *Commander* please, he may, after the *Firing* in *Front*, *wheel both Flanks into the Front*, and so *charge Pikes*; and from thence proceed to other *Firings*.

If the *Firing* were in the *Reer*, we may *wheel the Fanks into the Reer*, and cause his *Pikes* to *charge* that way.

If the *Firing* were to the *Front* and *Reer*, he may *wheel both Flanks into the Front and Reer*; and so *charge* with his *Pikes* both wayes: which by Captain *Bingham* is called *Amphistomus*.

These two wheelings are to be understood for single Companies, and not for larger bodies.

If the *Firing* were to one or both *Flanks* by *Extraduction*, then the *Pikes port* all the time the *Musquettiers are giving fire*, and after *charge*, at discretion of the *Commander*. You may further observe, that if the *Horse charge home*, then the *Pike men* must *charge*, and the *Musquettiers couch* very low, while they *move cross the Front*, and *give fire* on their knees. Before I come to *Reducement*, I shall proceed to the next *Firing* in the ensuing *Chapter*.

CHAP. CII.

Of the ancient manner of the imbattailing the Plinthyum: the placing of each Arms, and the use of the Figure.

THe *Plinthyum, anciently used amongst the* Grecians, *was an even, four-sided (or four-fronted) Battel; the middle-part thereof being commonly hollow: on the out-sides alwayes martched the heavie armed; the light and nimble armed Slingers, Darters, and Archers, being more securely placed in the midst.* Eudamus.

Notwithstanding, it took denomination from the *form*, and not from the *placing* of the *Arms*: (For example) *Eumenes* having sent for his *Elephants* to their *wintering stations*, *Antigonus* thought to take them by *surprise*; and to that purpose sent 2300 *Spear-men* and *Tarentines*, with all his *light-armed foot*; who overtaking them upon the way, &c. The *Commanders* of the *Elephants* ordered the *Beasts* into the *Plinthyum*, casting all their *Carriage* into the *midst*. And indeed, it was a *Figure* commonly taken up in the times of necessity, when the *adverse part* was much the abler in *Horse*. And to that purpose was it framed by *Timotheus* the *Athenian*, *Brisidas* the *Lacedemonian*, *Bardillis* the *Illirian*, *and many others*; being useful and necessary, as well in time of *Battel* as in *Martch*; at both times for the security of the *Carriage*, and the defence of the *sick* and *wounded*. Much like unto this, is our *hollow four-fronted Battel*; which may well retain the same name, although sometimes differing in the placing of our *Arms*. For if it should so happen (as it often doth) that a *Charge* be given in *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*, at one and the same time, then I conceive this ensuing *Figure* very apt for defence, for that the *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* are so placed, that each *Arms* may be aiding and assisting to the other. For seeing that neither * *Musquettiers* nor *Pike-men* alone, can be singly sufficient of themselves, to withstand the able and resolute *Horse-man*, (without great *advantage of ground*) on the contrary, the *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* being *conjoyned* into one *Body*, and being *well-ordered*, they are not onely able to defend themselves against their *fury*, but also to put them to the *worst*. Yet this must not be understood of *raw* and *unskilful Souldiers*, whose ignorance is cause of diffidence; but of *hardy*, *experienced*, and *well-exercised* men, such as know well how to demean themselves *couragiously* in time of *Fight*. The *words* of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *Figure*, are as followeth:

The Elephants were ordered into on hollow square by their Commander.

Eudamus.

Sir Walter Rawleighs hist. mundi lib. 4. cap 4. sect. 2. as also in the Tactics of Ælian, l. 2 the notes of the 24. chap Plinthyum is an hollow four fronted Battel, having direct angles.

**Yakes the Musquetiers had half files, and knew how to use them.*

Half-files of Pikes, face to the Reer, and martch until they are clear of the last-Rank of Musquettiers.

Note that all the Musquettiers must be in the midst, and the Pikes on the flanks, when you begin to make his Figure. If your Musquet be on the flank when you make it, then the Crosse will be Pikes, and the Angles Musquets, &c.

Secondly, Command.

Half-files of Muſquettiers, face to the right and left, (then) *march between the Diviſions of Pikes.*

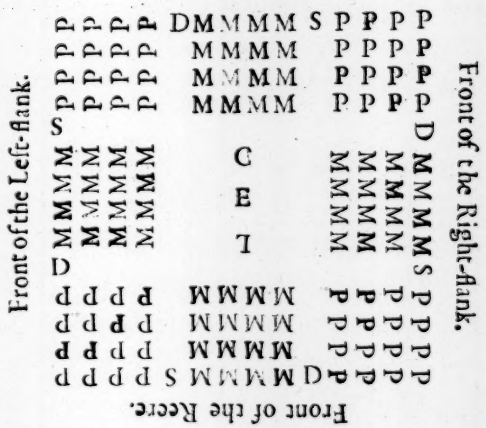
Thirdly, Command.

Left-half-ranks of the firſt-Diviſion of Muſquets, face to the Reere, and march between the Reere-diviſions of Pikes.

Laſtly, having *evened their Ranks, ſtraightned* their *Files*, and *cloſed* their *Diviſions* to an *equal diſtance*, and being rightly *faced*, the *Body* will ſtand like the following *Figure*.

The Plinthyum, or four-fronted Battel.

Front-proper.



The Plinthyum is an hollow ſquare-battel, fronted four wayes, the number equal in length and depth. Another kind of Plinthyum is to have the depth exceed the length, the light armes to be placed in the midſt of the hollow part. See the Tactick of Ælian, the ſecond book, the notes of the 14. chapter.

The manner of the *Firing* may eaſily be apprehended by the *Figure*; the *Muſquettiers giving fire* in *Rank*, and *wheeling* all *off* to the *Right*, do then paſſe down their *Intervalls* under the favour of their *Pikes*, placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *Diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*; the *Pikes charging* at diſcretion. Having *fired once, twice*, or *oftner* over, and ſtill maintaining the ſame ground, the *Figure* will continue to be the ſame.

If the *Reer-part* of the *Battel* was by any means ſecured, ſo that you need *give fire* but three wayes, then the *Front-half files* of *Muſquettiers* might have been preſerved intire.

This *Plinthyum*, or *four-fronted Battel*, may as well be made with the *Muſquettiers* in the *Angles*, the *Pikes* making the *Croſſe*: this kind of *Command*, alwayes making the *Croſſe* of the *Armes* in the *middeſt* of the *Battel*.

The reducement of the Plinthyum into the ſolid ſquare, flanked with Pikes.

After that you have *given fire*, at diſcretion, upon this *Figure*, and *charged* your *Pikes*, if you would *reduce* them to the firſt *Square*, command the whole *Body* to *face* to the *Front-proper*.

Secondly, command the *Muſquettiers* in the *Reer* to *march-up* on the *left* of the *Muſquettiers* in *Front*; the *Pikes* being firſt *opened*, to give them place.

Thirdly, cauſe the *Muſquettiers* in *flank* to *face-inward*, and to *cloſe* their *Diviſions*.

Laſtly, cauſe the *Pikes* to *march-up*, placing themſelves right after their *leaders*.

This being done, the *Body* will be brought again into a *ſolid Square, flanked* with *Pikes*. I forbear further to *reduce* them until I ſhew the next *Figure*. Yet, for further ſatisfaction to any that ſhall require it, command your *Muſquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left outward*

outward; the *Pikes* to *face-inward*, and so to *interchange ground*, and then being rightly *faced*, they are *reduced*. *The perfect reducement*

CHAP. CIII.

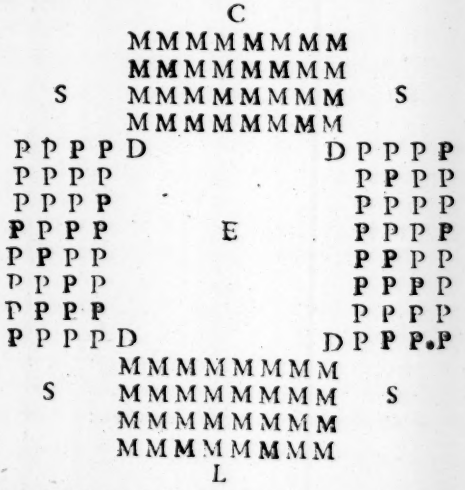
Another hollow Square for Martch.

SUndry *forms* there be which go under the denomination of the *hollow square*, and very diverslly they may be framed. Some are hollow, *impalled* with *Pikes*; the *Pikes* again, *girdled* with *shot*, and they *impalled* with *Pikes*. Some again, with divisions of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*: orderly mixt with an *hollow* in the midst. A fourth sort is when each *arms* are divided by themselves, as when the *Pikes* make the *front* and *reer*, and the *Musquettiers* the *wing*. A fifth way is, when the *Musquettiers* lead in *front* and *reer*, and the *Pikes* make both the *Flanks*. All these waies are very necessary and usefull, as the time, occasion, or place shall give cause; or the judgement of the *Commander* shall see fitting. Nevertheless the *hollow Battel*, which I now intend to demonstrate unto you is especially useful for a *martch*, whereby to secure the *carriage*, as likewise to preserve the sick and wounded; it may also serve for the *Commander* to consult with his Officers, or to make any *Speech* or *Oration* to the Souldiers. Or the *Ensigne* may in sign of triumph, display his *Coulors* in the midst upon a *martch* after *Skirmish*. *As it now is the custom after exercise.*

The way to make this *figure* (the *Musquettiers* being in the *midst*) is as followeth. First, to *command* the *half files* of *Musquettiers to face the Reer*:

Then command all the *Musquettiers to martch, and the Pikes to stand.*

When they are clear of the *front* and *reer* of the *Pikes*, let them stand, and *face* all to the *Front-proper*: and it produceth this following *Figure*.



If the *firing* be onely intended to the *front*; then *command* the *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-division*, to *open* to the *right* and *left*, and to sleeve-up on the *out-side* of the *Pikes*, there *presenting* and *firing* at the same instant, with the *Musquettiers* of the *Van*: each part *wheeling-off*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. This *firing* doth conceive the *reer* to be by some means secured. But if you presuppose a *Charge* to be given to the *front* and *reere martching*, it may be retaliated (or acquitted) still continuing *The direction on to this firing.*

nuing the *march*. Nevertheleſſe the inſolence of the *Enemy* will ſcarce be repelled, or abated, without an *Alt*, and *facing about* to the *Reer-half-files*; the which being performed, the *Muſquettiers* are to *preſent*, and *give fire*; *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *reer* in their own *diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*; each *rank* moving *forward* into their *leaders ground*: and doing the like. If you ſhould *give fire*, and not move forwards into your *leaders ground*, then the *Muſquettiers* would fill the hollow in the midſt betwen the *Pikes*. Nevertheleſs, ſuppoſe the *Figure* ſtill to continue to be the ſame, becauſe I will now come to the *reducement*, and the rather, for that I have not done it ſince I began with the *Hollow-fronted Croſs*. But now (ſo pleaſe you) I will *reduce* all by a *firing*. And to that end, firſt, cloſe your *diviſions* of *Pikes*; and then the *Muſquettiers* will be all in the *front* and *reer*.

The Reducement by a firing, be which is not expreſt in Figure in this place: it is in Chap. 88.

Secondly, cauſe the *half-files* (both *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) to *face* to the *Reer*. Then cauſe the *Muſquettiers* both of *Front* and *Reer*, to *give fire*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. When they have *fired* all over, the *Pikes* may *charge*: who being again advanced, and all *faced* to the *front proper*, they are all *reduced* (as at firſt) into the *ordinary ſquare, flanked with Muſquets*.

CHAP. CIV.

Of the Hearſe-Battel, and of the hollow Hearſe, and Croſſe.

Tacticks Chap. 30. The uſe of the Hearſe.

THe *Hearſe-Battel*, by the *Greeks* called *Orthophalanx*, as in *Elian*, *is when the depth doth manifold exceed the length, thrice at the leaſt. As when our Companies martch forth by right inductions* (or in *ſucceſſive diviſions.*) It is a *figure* eſpecially uſeful for *martch*, becauſe that upon thoſe occaſions, a *Body drawn out in length* would meet with many *lets* and *impediments*, by reaſon of the variety of ground, and other *accidents*, the which they muſt comply withal in their way. Sometimes incountering with *woods* and *buſhes*, ſometimetimes with *hills* and *ſtraights*, ſometimes with *rivers, bridges, ditches, pits, quagmires*, and many other the like inconveniences; which would quite break the *order*, and *array* of any other *figure*, having the *length* more *extended*. This *form* is alſo held the beſt for *martch* in the night; becauſe the *range* (or *breaſt*) not being long, the *order* may be the better *preſerved*, and the *martch performed* with more ſilence. But of all other, it is the *weakeſt, bringing but few hands to fight*; and hath ſeldom or never been *uſed* by any good *Commander*, unleſs it were upon neceſſity. It may be made either *ſolid* or *hollow*, and being conjoyned to the *croſſe*, may prove more ſerviceable, eſpecially for the ſecurity of the *Carriage*.

If it were nſr hſe impediments it were better to martch in form of battel, with the front & wings extended at length. The hearſe battel of all other, the weakeſt for fight.

True it is, that were the *form* far more *ſtrong*, yet being demonſtrated, by ſo ſmalla *number*, might well render it ſuſpected: ſeeing the worth thereof (by reaſon of the *thinneſt*) could not ſo evidently appear, as otherwiſe it would, were the *number larger*.

But I have onely taken upon me to ſhew the *ſeveral forms* and *figures* of *Battel*, which may be *formed* and *practiſed* by a *private Company*: as having *limited* my ſelf, not to exceed the number of 128 men. Wherefore my requeſt muſt be that the *courteous reader* when he ſhall find that any *figure* for want of *number* looks *thinne*, (or poor) he will there be pleaſed to *cloath* it in a larger *number*: for that thereby the *Battel* will appear the more *ſollid*, and the *beholder* become the better *ſatisfied*.

This figure fit for a convoy.

This *Figure* may in like manner be *uſeful* for a *Convoy*: the *hollow parts* thereof, being very *commodious* to *ſecure* the *carriage*: the men alſo are very well *diſpoſed* to *help* and *aſſiſt* each other, in whatſoever part it ſhould happen them to be *aſſailed*.

The words of *Command* and *Direction* which produce the *figure*, are as follows.

Wheele front and reer into the left-flank.

That

That done, *face* them as before, and the *Muſquettiers* will be in *Front*, *Midſt*, and *Reer*.

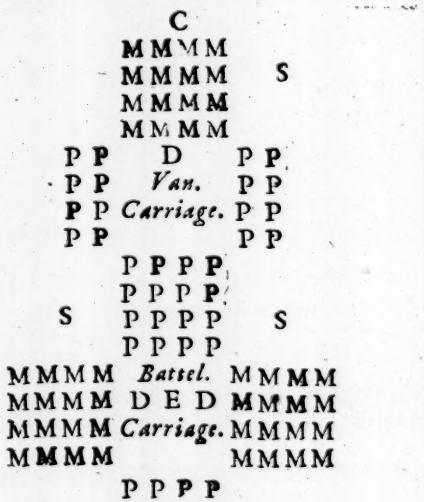
The direction to make this figure with a private Company.

Next, *open* the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt* to the *right* and *left*, and cauſe them to *double* their *Ranks* to the *left*.

Then cauſe the *Front-half-files* of the *Front-diviſion* of *Pikes* to *open* to the *right* and *left*; and the *Reer-half files* of *the reer diviſion of Pikes* to do the like.

Then, having *evened* their *Ranks*, and *ſtraightned* their *Files*, and being *faced* to their *Leader*, the *Body* will ſtand in *form* like this enſuing *Figure*.

The hollow Hearſe and Croſs.



The direction to this figure.

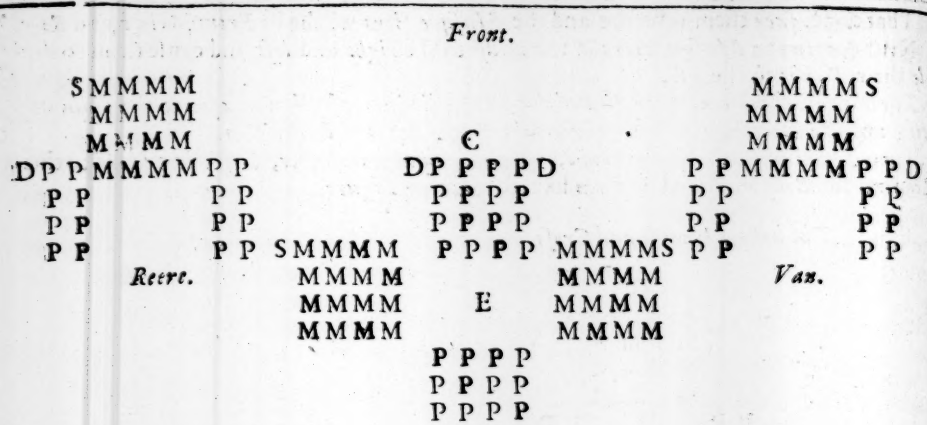
If ſo be you will *give fire* upon this *Figure*, you may do it any way, or every way. If you *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*, then let your *Muſquettiers wheel* all *off* to the *right*, and *place* themſelves in the *Reers* of their owne *diviſions*. If you would ſtill preſerve the *Figure*, then let every *Rank* (before they give fire) *martch-up* into their *leaders ground*.

Having either *martched* or *skirmiſhed* in this *form*, before I come to the *Reducement*, I will draw one other *Figure* from it; the which I conceive, with ſome ſmall *addition*, would prove very *ſerviceable*, even for a *pitcht Field*, were the *number proportionable*. The *Directions* to make this *Figure*, are as followeth.

The direction to make the enſuing Figure.

Firſt, command the *Van to make Alt*. Secondly, command the *Croſs* (being the *Battel*) *to ſleeve up on the left*. Thirdly, command the *Reer to ſleeve-up to the left of the Battel*; the *Muſquettiers* of the *Reer* ſtill *moving forwards*, until they *ſtand even ranked* with the *Muſquettiers* of the *Van*. This being rightly perfomed, produce this following *Figure*.

Front.



This *Figure*, although here demonstrated by the *number* of a single *Company*, yet carrieth the *port* of a * *Regiment*; borrowing the denominations of *Van*, *Battel*, and *Reere*: and may, at the direction of the *Captain* (or other *Commander*) be so *ordered*, and the *Firing performed* accordingly. The *Van* and *Reere*, making the *Wings*, may send forth a *loose files* to begin the *Skirmish*. Secondly, they may ᵇ *give fire even-a-breſt*. Thirdly, the *Battel*, *ſlowly advancing*, may *give fire* at diſcretion. Upon all theſe *Firings*, the *Muſquettiers* are to *wheel-off* to the *Right*, or to the *Right* and *Left*, taking their places according as direction ſhall be given. Laſtly, to come to the ᶜ *Reducement*: Firſt, *march forth the Van*; the *Battel*, and the *Reere*, falling ſucceſſively in their ᵈ *places*. Secondly, command the *Pikes of the Van and Retre to face inwards, and cloſe their Diviſions*. This being pertormed, cauſe the *Muſquettiers of the Battel to double the files to their right*, and in like manner *to face and cloſe their Diviſions*. Laſtly, *wheel Front and Reer into the Right-flank*. Which being done, and the *whole Body* again *faced* to the *Front-proper*, all will be *reduced*, as at the firſt.

* *This Figure eſpecially proper to a Regiment.*

ª *Note in Cha. 73. the directions of firings by forlorn files*

ᵇ *The loose disbanded files being returned, the Wings being to give Fire even-a-breſt.*

ᶜ *The reducement.*

ᵈ *Making again the hollow Hearſe and Croſſe.*

CHAP. CV.

Of the hollow Square, girdled with ſhot.

THe *hollow Square, girdled with ſhot*, is a *Figure* to be uſed in times of neceſſity, when as the *Commander*, well fore-ſeeing he ſhall be enforced to *fight* (with great diſproportion of *number*) he therefore wiſely and timely takes the benefit of ſome * *advantagious ground*, thereon ſpeedily drawing forth, and *imbattelling* his *Army* into this *form*. And that nothing may be wanting, or through neglect expoſed to *danger*, the which by any means may be *ſecured*, all the *Carriage* (which otherwiſe would not prove *ſerviceable* and *available*, for the better *ſtrengthening* and *fortifying* ſome part or other of the *Battel*) ſhould be ſafely placed in the *midſt*. And leſt the adverſe part taking advantage to breake in at any the ſpaces between the *Angles*, ſhould thereby breed confuſion, or *break their array*, they are ſuddenly to *impale* thoſe *parts* which offer themſelves as *weakeſt*, (and leaſt *defenſible*) with ſharp-pointed *Palliſadoes*: A weapon, which hath ſome

* *Uneven, rough buſhy and hilly grounds, are all lets and impediments to the Horſe.*

some times been used by our [i] *English Bowmen*, with good *success against the French*; and now of late, in our [k] own time, by that worthy *Hero, and Prince of matchlesse memory*, Gustavus Adolphus *King of Sweden, in his warrs of Pole, and Germany joyning the swines feather with the Musquet, as a reasonable defence against the incursions of the Horse.* The use of which weapon is now practised and taught here amongst us: by that *worthy Gentleman, and expert Souldier, Captain* Henry Tillier.

But to returne: those parts which lye most open to the *fury* of the *Enemies Horse*, ought to be impaled with *Pallisados (or swines-feathers)* as aforesaid: or if those kind of weapons be wanting, then supply that defect, by speedy casting up a *rampart or breast-work* of earth in each needful place. Nevertheless if time permit not, or that the ground be not *feaseable*, then the *Wagons, Carts*, and other *Carriages*, may be so orderly placed, that of themselves they may be sufficient to *fortifie*, and *defend* those *places*, which otherwise would lye *too open* to the invasion of the *Cavalry*.

This *Figure* may ba as well made with the *Pikes* for-most: but because that the *Musquettiers* may more commodiously *fight* before their *Pikes*, and with lesse danger to their own *body*: therefore I conceive it fittest at first to place them in *front* of their *Pikes*. And if the *enemy* shall too *hotly press* them with his *Horse*, then at the discretion of the *Commander*, they may safely *retire* behind their *Pikes*; the *Pikemen making good the ground of the Musquettiers*. For better satisfaction, observe the *direction* to make the following *Figure*. First, *command a Serjeant to draw forth* all the [l] *odd files* of the *right-flank*, (both *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) and *wheel* them to the *left*, *cross the front*; That being done, *command* the odde *files* of the *left flank*, (as well *Musquettiers* as *Pikes*) to *face* to the *reer*, and let them in like manner be *wheeled* to the *left*, *cross* the *reer*, following their *bringers-up*.

[i] *At Agincourt.*

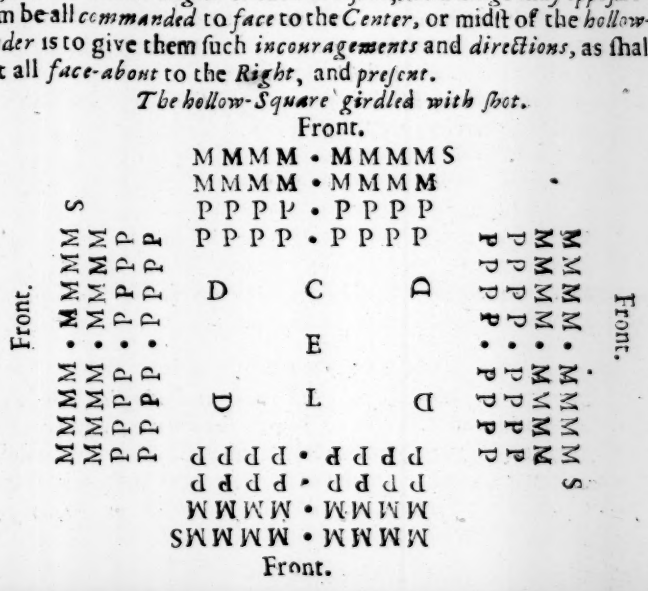
[k] *P. Illisados does have likewise been used of late in the Eastern warrs by the name of Swines-feathers. The Musquettiers well experienced in the use of the half-pike either in streight or campania will be too hard for the Horse.*

[l] Note that the *odde* files on the *right-flank*, are the *out-most file* to the *right*, the *third file*, the *fifth file* the *seventh*, and so forward (for the rest, if the Body be larger) beginning your account from the *outer-most file* to the *right*. Note, that the *odd files* on the *left flank*, are the *left hand-file*: the third, the fifth, the seventh, &c. so still accounting the *odde-files*, beginning with the *out-most file* to the *left*. These directions are for a private Company; a Regiment or larger Body must be otherwise ordered.

For the rest of the *body*, that remains undrawn forth: let them *close* to the *right* and *left outward*; until the *Reer-angles* of each *division*, stand *diagonally opposite* to each other. Then let them be all *commanded* to *face* to the *Center*, or midst of the *hollow-square*, where the *Commander* is to give them such *incouragements* and *directions*, as shall be meet.

Lastly, let all *face-about* to the *Right*, and *present*.

The hollow-Square girdled with shot.



For the manner of *firing* upon this *Figure*, it is as followeth, [a] The *first rank* of *Musquettiers* (to each *Front*) having *presented* and *given fire*, they are to wheel all off to the *right*. And because that eight or ten men, are too many to *wheel down* one *Interval* (for that they will be so long, before they can clear the *Front*) therefore you may cause *Intervals* to be made, between the midst of each *division*, as you may perceive in the *Figure*. The *first rank* having *fired*, and *wheeled-off*, the *next-ranks* are to *move forwards* into their [b] *ground*, they which *wheeled-off*, in the mean time placing themselves in the *reer* of their *own division* of *Musquettiers*. The next *rank* of *Musquettiers* having *fired* in like manner, are to *wheel-off*, and to place themselves as aforesaid, the [b] *rest of the ranks* of *Musquettiers*, (successively) are to do the like, until they have all *given fire*, (once or oftner over) that way, according to the occasion. And in this *interim* may the [c] *Bow-pike-men* be bountiful in bestowing their *showrs* of arrows, amongst the thickest of their *Enemies*.

[a] *The direction for this firing.*

[b] *If there be more ranks of Musquettiers then is represented in this Figure.*

If the *Horse* prevail so much, that the *Musquettiers* may not endure to bear the *brunt* of them: then let the [d] *Musquettiers* (after they have *fired*) *wheel off*, and place themselves in the *reer* of their following *divisions* of *Pikes*: they *moving forwards*, and *maintaining* the *Musquettiers ground*; *charging* with their *Pikes* (as they see occasion) for *securing* the *Musquettiers* in the *midst*. This notwithstanding, if the *enemies horse* shall still *presse forwards*; and with their *shot* shall continue to *annoy the Body* (the *Pikes* on this *figure* being especially *defensive*:) then cause the *Pike-men* to *charge* at the *foot*, and your *Musquettiers*, to *give fire* over them: according to former *directions* on the *Convex half-moon*. After this manner, the *battel* may be continued to the *last rank*. When you have *given fire* in this order, your *Musquettiers* being all in the *reer* of your *Pikes*; if you be minded to *reduce* them into the first *orderly square*, this is one way for it. *Pass through* your *Musquettiers* before your *front* of *Pikes*, as they were before the *firing*: that being done, let the *Commander face* the whole *body* to the *left-angle* of the *front-division*, by which means he shal there find the *half* of his *file-leaders*. This being performed, let them *march*: and so *even* their *Ranks* and *straighten* their *files*; the *reer-division* of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*, orderly following after the *front-division* of the like *Armes*. After this let the *half-files* which then are (which indeed are the *residue* of the *file-leaders*) *double* their *ranks forwards* to the *left*: which being performed, the *men* are *reduced* as at first.

[c] *The Bow-Pike men (if at any time useful) have in this figure good means to imploy their dexterity.*

[d] *The second way of placing the Musquettiers.*

A third way of firing on this figure.

The reducement.

If you would *reduce* them some other way, without *pasing through* your *Musquettiers* (as I have formerly said) then first let the *whole body face* to the *left-angle* of the *front-division* and *march*, *evening* the *ranks* and *files*, as foresaid. Which being done, cause the *half-files* (which then are) to *double* their *front* to the *left*; which being in like manner performed, all your *Musquettiers* are still in *midst*. Your next work is, to cause your *Musquettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left-outward*: and your *Pikes* contrariwise, to *face inward*; and so to passe through, and interchange ground. Thus being *faced* to their *front-proper*, they will be *reduced*, as at first.

A second way of reducement.

If any will be practising of this form of *Battel*, with a smaller number of men (as with 64. or fewer) whereby they will be constrained to double their *half-files*, then they wil be *reduced* the same way; onely they shall not need to *double* their *half-files* again in their *reducement*: as they must needs do, were the number larger.

CHAP. CVI.

Of the solid Square, with Musquettiers in Center and Angles. The way to make the Figure with a private Company: how to fire upon it, and to reduce it.

INfinite are the forms and Figures of Battel which may be made: yet all differing either in circumstance or matter. Some of them are Solid, others Hollow: some of them, being *Trines*, *Squares*, *Hearses*, *Cirtes*, *Cressents*, *Crosses*, *Diamonds*, *Plinthynms*, *Plesiums*, *Parameles*,

Paramekes, and *infinite* others, Some of them taking their denomination from the nature of their *numbers*. Others according to the *placing* of each *Arms*. A third sort, taking their names from things they most resemble, all of them being necessary to be known, to such which would be accounted skilful [e] *Serjeant Majors*: that so with all *numbers*, upon all occasions, they may readily bring their *Souldiers* into any form or figure of Battel (according as the time, the number, and place will give them leave) for opposition either of horse or foot, or of both conjoyned.

[e] *Majors* ought to be of singular skill and experience that so they may at all times be able (having observed the situation and place) to draw their men into forms most advantagious to themselves and offensive to their enemies.

Excellent was the Custom of that worthy *Philopemon* the *Achaian*, who when he walked or travelled abroad with his friends and familiars, would mark and peruse the situation of the Country about him: and so contrive and discourse to his companions, that if it so happened an army to *march* that way, then he supposing to have under his [f] *command* such a number of *Souldiers*, ordered and appointed in such a manner, and *marching* towards such a place; where being upon such a ground encountered, by the great and better prepared Army: Then would he put the question, whether it were fit for him to hold on his way, *retire*, or *make an Alt*; what *peece of ground*, were meetest for him to *seize on*, and in what *manner* best to do it; in what *form to order his men*, and how and in what numbers to place *each Arms*, where to *bestow his carriage*, & under what *guard to leave them*. Next would he propound, if that the *enemy* were for the present *beat-off*; then how with the most *convenience to encamp that night*, which way, and in *what manner* were his *best to march the next day*, by these and such like continual discourses and meditations, he was grown so *exact* and *perfect*, that he never met with any difficulty, whence he could not explicate himself and followers.

[f] *This kind of practise and meditation, an excellent means to make men expert in this Military trade. Our debosht roaring rabble, (who assume onely the habit of Souldiers to make them seem to be such) never spend their times after this worthy and vertuous manner. Nor indeed hath any attained to be eminent in this Military way, whose ends and aims have bin base and covetous; But such, and onely such, whom love of vertue hath indeared to imp their wings with the plumes of honour.*

Now after so large a digression, return we back to our *single Company*; the work of this *Chapter*, being to shew the *Plesium* or *long square*. In which the *Musquettiers* are *half* in the *midst* of the *Pikes*, and the other *half equally divided*, and *placed* on the *four angles* of the *battel*: the *Pikes* making *four divisions*; as being *placed* upon the *front*, *rear*, and *flanks*. But not to hold you with longer *circumstance*, take these *words* of *command* and *direction*, which produce the following *Figure*.

The Command is, *Four middle-most ranks of Musquettiers & Pikes interchange ground.*

For further direction, cause the *four middle ranks of Musquettiers to face to the right and left inward.*

That done, cause the *four middle-ranks of Pikes* to *face to the right and left outward*; then let them *move* and *interchange their places*. This done, and *faced* to the *first-front*, produceth the issuing Figure.

The Plesium.

E C

S M M M M D P P P P P P P P D M M M M S
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
P P P P M M M M M M M M P P P P
M M M M P P P P P P P P M M M M
S M M M M D P P P P P P P P D M M M M S

L S

If you would *give fire* upon this *figure*, it may be performed either to the *front* and *reer*, to the *right* and *left*, or to all *four* together. But which way ſoever the *firing* be, let the *aſpect* of the *Muſquettiers* in the midſt be turned the ſame way; and cauſe the *Pikes* which ſtand before them, to *charge* at the *foot*, and the * *Muſquettiers* in the *Center* to *give fire* over them. The *firſt-rank* having *fired*, let them kneel (or couch low) upon the ground, *making ready* again, whileſt the next *ranks* behind them *give fire*, and do the like: and ſo forwards for the reſt. Having all *fired* once over this way, let them riſe up, (and if need be) *give fire* over again, after the ſame manner. The *Muſquettiers* on the *Angles* (in the interim) *giving fire* after the ordinary way, *wheeling-off*, and falling in the *Reer* of the *Muſquettiers* of their own *diviſions*; the others in the mean time *moving forwards*, and making good their *leaders ground*. This being done, and the *Pikes* having *charged*, the *figure* will ſtill continue to be the ſame, without alteration; and that as well in *men*, as *matter*, if ſo be the *firing* be performed according to the former *direction*, either in the Book, or Margin.

* *The Muſquettiers in the midſt of the Battell may give fire by Extraduction, which will be a better way then to give fire over the Pike mens heads.*

The Reducement.

For *Reducement*, command the *four middle-moſt ranks of Muſquettiers and Pikes to interchange ground*, and they will be *reduced* as at firſt.

If this be not plain enough, obſerve theſe following *directions*: *Muſquettiers of the middle-diviſion, face to the right and left outward*; *Pikes of the flank-diviſions, face to the Right and Left inwards*: this done, let them *move into each others places*, and *face to the Front-proper*, and they are rightly *reduced*.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the double Croſſe-Battell, and ſeverall other forms from thence proceeding.

I Shall now proceed to ſhew ſome *forms*, for the *imbattelling* of larger numbers: It being one of the moſt principall parts of the *Art Military*, to *arrange* your *Battells* into ſuch *forms* as may bring moſt *hands to fight*, with conveniency, ſo that one part of your *Battell* do not *cumber* or *hinder* the other; but by their orderly placing, they may be *aiding* and *aſſiſting* to each other: appointing to every *part*, *maniple*, or *diviſion*, their due number, what order they have to keep, *when* and *how* they ſhall *fall-on*; that ſo there may be no diſturbance in time of *fight*. Therefore, in the *ordering* of your *Battells*, you ought to be carefull of what may happen by *caſualty*, *or chance of fortune*; that ſo by a timely fore-ſight you may provide *remedies*.

Eſpecially take notice, that you alwayes have *Reſerves* ready, both of *horſe* and *foot*, (if you have them in the field) that ſo by their *timely aſſiſtance*, the *broken* and *diſtreſſed parts* of the *Battell* may be *upheld* and *relieved*. For many times it ſo * happeneth, that ſuch a *Reſerve* may be an eſpeciall cauſe to gain a *Victory*; the want thereof (to the contrary) may be a means to *hazard the loſſe of all*. Of this you may read examples enough in all *Hiſtories*, both *ancient* and *modern*. But I forbear to wade furthtr into theſe diſcourſes, and therefore return to the work of the Chapter.

* Witneſſe *Cæſars* Reſerve at the Battell of *Pharſalia*, and infinite others ſince. And indeed, no good Commander drawing forth his Battalions into what form ſoever, but he will alſo provide and place convenient Reſerves, both of Horſe and Foot.

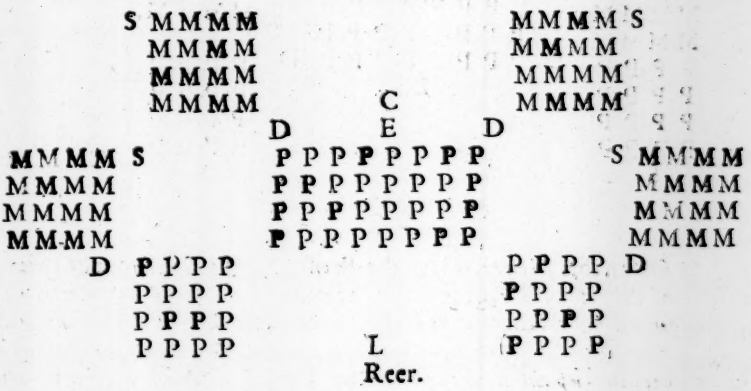
Some *Commanders* have *ranged* their *Armies* into one onely *Battell*, without either *Wing* or *Reſerve*: ſome into two; others into three; ſome into four; ſome into five; ſome ſix, ſeven, eight, nine; and ſome into more. Now although that this ſmall number that I have pitched on, be not ſufficient to demonſtrate the *Figures* ſo perfectly (when they are divided into many parts) as large numbers would make them appeare, yet accept of them as they be; for I have purpoſely choſen ſo ſmall a number, that ſuch *Captains and Gentlemen as pleaſe, may make uſe of them in their practice*. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure*, follow with

The

The Command is, *Muſquettiers march, until your half-files range even with the Front of Pikes, then ſtand.*

Half-files (of each Arms) face-outward, and march until you are clear of the Angles of your own Arms, then ſtand: face all to your Leader.

Front.



If this Firing were to the Front and Reere, then the two laſt diviſions of Pikes may be muſquettiers, the Pikes placed even with the Reer angles of the muſquettiers in Front.

Your *Body* being drawn into this *form*, it ſtands aptly for *Firings* in *Front*; but may very fitly ſerve for to *give fire* to the *Front* and both *Flanks*. If you would *fire* to the *Front*, and preſerve your *Figure*, then the *Muſquettiers* muſt move forwards into their *leaders ground*. If you pleaſe, you may move forwards your *Reer-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*, and make *wings* of them, to begin the *Skirmiſh*. Having *fired* once or twice over, they may *retreit* into their places; and then the *Front-diviſions* may entertain the *Skirmiſh*, and *fire* two or three times over. The *Reer-diviſions* may alſo *give fire* with them, at diſcretion of the *Commander*. The *Pikes*, in the mean time, are to *advance*, *move forwards*, *port*, *charge*, *ſtand*, *retreit*, all according to the *direction* of their *Command*, or *beat* of the *Drum*.

This figure fit to fire to the Front and both Flanks.

Skirmiſhing in front with wings

If you would *give fire* to the *Front* and both *Flanks*, at one and the ſame time, then the *Front-diviſions*, both of *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*, keep their *aſpects*, and *give fire* to the *Front*: the [a] *Reer-diviſions*, as well *Muſquettiers* as *Pikes*, *face to the right and left*, *firing* to the *Flanks*. If they *give fire* moving forwards into their *leaders ground*, then they continue the *figure*. And if the *Commander* think fit, the [b] *front-diviſions* may move forwards, and maintain their *leaders ground*; the *reer-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers giving fire* upon the ground they ſtand, *wheeling-off* to the *right*, (or to the *right* and *left*) placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquets*; the *Pikes* may *port*, and *charge*, at the diſcretion of the *Commander*. If this be obſerved, it produceth this following *Figure*.

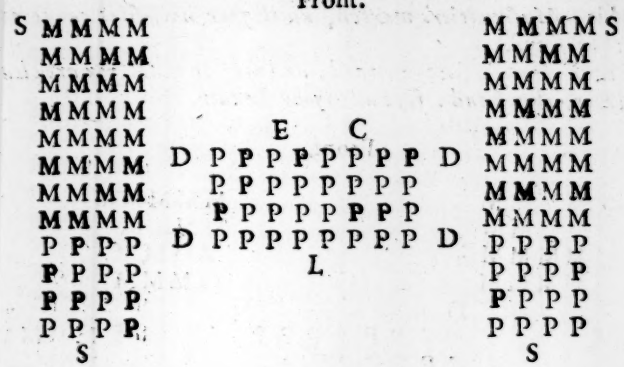
Directions for firing to the Front and flanks.

[a] *Reer diviſions are the half-file-leaders.*

[b] *This Firing altering the place of the Figure.*

Muſquettiers in Flank, varieth the former form to this inſuing Figure.

Front.



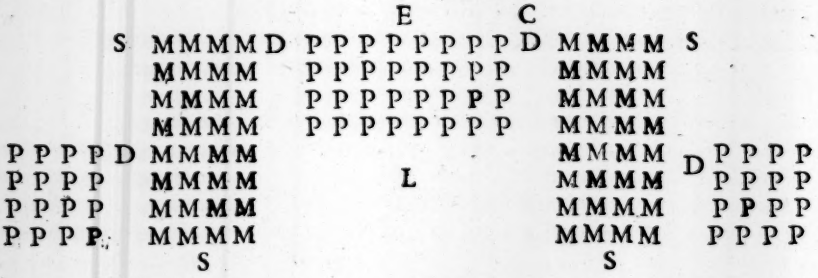
Reer.

If you will *give fire* on this *Figure*, it is to the *Front*; having *fired* once or twice over, the *Front-division* of *Pikes* may move forwards, *porting*, until they *range-even* with the *Front* of the *Musquettiers*, and there *charge* their *Pikes*: The *Musquettiers* still continuing their *Firing*. The *Reer-divisions* of *Pikes*, in the mean time, *facing to the right and left-outward*, *and sleeving-up the flanks of the Reer-division of Musquettiers*; there in like manner *charging their Pikes*, either to the *Front* or *Flanks*, according to *direction*; which produceth this following *Figure*.

* *A second may to make this Figure.*

If you would * make this *Figure* from the *Square* (of *Pikes flanked* with *Musquettiers*, it is no more but) Command *Half-files of Pikes*, *face to the right and left-outward*, *and passe through to the flanks of your Musquettiers*, (then) *stand*, and *face to your Leader*.

Front.



Reer.

I cannot stand to enlarge my self upon every *Figure*, to shew the several *Firings* that may be produced from them; let it now suffice that I demonstrate the *Figure*, and give directions how to *make* and *reduce* them: any ingenious Reader that hath well perused my Book, must needs (by this time) be able to conceive the several wayes and *Firings* that each *Figure* may produce, almost at first sight. And therefore I will spare the pains, and come to the *Reducement* of this *Figure*, lest the Chapter prove too long. Having *given fire* upon this *Figure*, either to the *Front* or *Reer*, or to both together, and the whole *Body* again *faced* to the *proper Front*, * Command the *out-most divisions of Pikes to face to the right*

* *Reducement.*

right and left inward, and passe through the Musquettiers into their places: then *face* to the *front*, and all is *reduced*.

CHAP. CVIII.

Why it is necessary to know variety of forms: the way to make four severall figures, demonstrated in this Chapter, with their Reducements.

HE that will *Range his Battalions* alwayes into one *forme*, may be likened to that *Physitian*, or *Chirurgion*, that for all *sicknesses* or sores, hath the self-same *potion* or *plaister*. Not considering, that *time, number, place, quality of arms*, and many other like *respects*, will be great sticklers in the ordering of *Armies*. Moreover the number of the *enemy*, his exceeding either in *horse*, or *foot*, the placing of his *Ordinance*, the *order of his array*; any of these or other such like, may induce the *politick* and wise Commander sometimes to alter, and vary his form, as may be most advantagious for himself, and *prejudicial* to his *Enemy*. But proceed we to the *figures* of this *Chapter*, the which may be done, either by a *single Company, Regiment*, or *Army*. * Nevertheless, although I have no more *divisions* of *shot* in my *Figures*, yet if you have numbers sufficient to imbattel, then place more divisions of *Musquettiers* in the *wings, front, flanks, reer*, or any other needful part, as I have demonstrated by little *printed squares*: So much for the general, come we now to the particular directions for this following *Figure*.

* *He that shall waies accustome himself unto one form of battell, give the enemy too much advantage.*

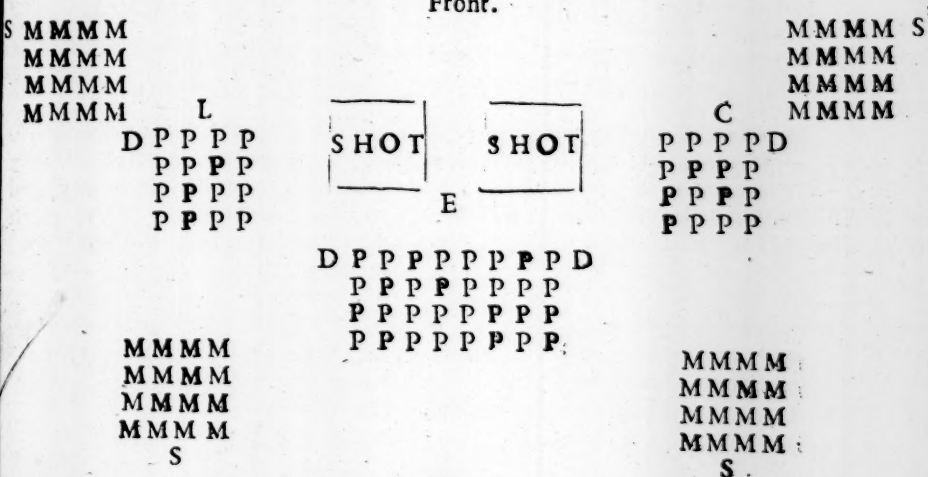
* *Every Company ought to be two parts shot the third part Pikes.*

Front-half-files, face to the right and left, martch till your *Pikes* range even with the *Musquets* of the *Reer-half-files*, then, *stand, and face to your Leader*.

Half-files of Musquettiers face to the Reer (that done) *Musquettiers* (*both of front and reer-division,*) *martch to the Angles of your Pikes* (then) *stand*, and *face all to your Leader*, or *proper Front*.

The direction to make this form with a single Company.

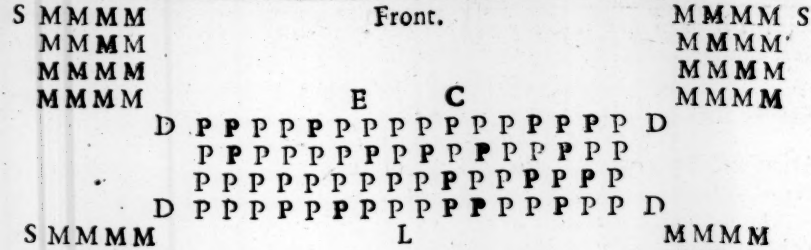
Front.



Reer.

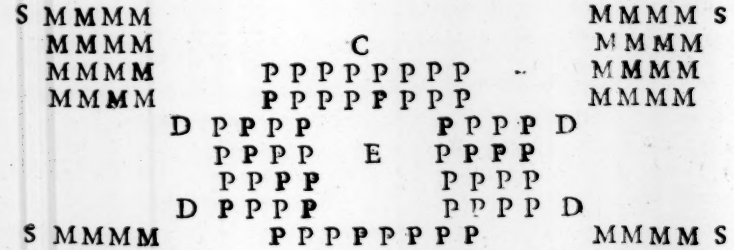
In this *form* you may *give fire*, to the *front* or *reer*, or both together. You may *give fire*, and still continue your *form*, or if you please, the *Battel* of *Pikes*, may move forwards *outward*, and moving after the *Front-divisions* of *Musquets*, even with the *Reer-angles* of *Pikes*, which produceth this ensuing *Figure*.

The way to fire and Range with the flank divisions of Pikes.



If you cause the *two first ranks* of the* *Battel of Pikes* to move forwards, and the *two last Ranks* of the *Battel of Pikes* to move towards the *Reer*: it will produce this ensuing *Figure.*

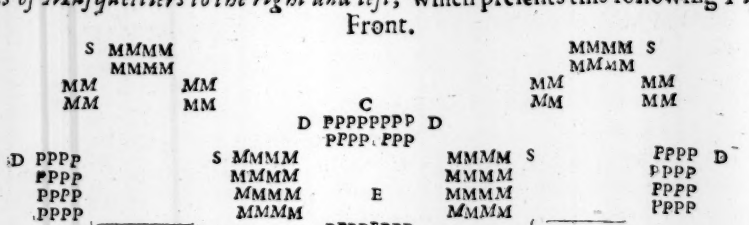
* *The battell of pikes are those under* E *in the first figure of this chapter.*



If you would *skirmish* on this figure, the *Musquettiers* are so placed, that they may *give fire* any way, the *divisions* of *Pikes* in like manner, either in single *bodies*, or three of them *a-breast*, may move forwards into the *Front*, or if occasion be into the *Reer*, *porting*, and *charging* at discretion. Having *marched* or *fired*, (or both) in this form: if you please we will proceed to another. The words of Command, and Direction, are as followeth.

* *Direction to make this figure with a single Company.*

**The two flank-divisions of Pikes, open to the right and left, till you stand clear of your Musquettiers.* (Secondly,) *two Reer-divisions of Musquettiers, move forwards into the places of the Pikes that removed.* (Thirdly,) *two front-Divisions of Musquettiers, move forward till you be clear of the Front of Pikes.* This done, *open the two last Ranks of the first divisions of Musquettiers to the right and left*, which presents this following *Figure.*



When

When you peruse this *Figure*, sleight it not because of the *thinnesse* of the numbers in each part; but conceive that where two *Ranks* are placed *single*, there for service, peradventure two *Companies* (or more) may be drawn up; and so answerable for each other part, according to the *number* and *ground*. When you *give fire* upon this *Figure*, whether with a *single Company*, or more conjoyned, it must be in a *Regimentall* way. The *Pikes stand ready ordered*, if need be, to *relieve the Musquettiers*. But come we now to the *Reducement* of our *Company* again to their *first-order*, wherewith wee will conclude this Chapter.

Two last ranks (of the Wings) *of Musquets, close your divisions. Reer-divisions of Musquettiers, move forwards, and close your divisions, after the Musquettiers in the Front. Two first ranks of Pikes, close back to the two ranks in the Reer. Flank-divisions of Pikes, face inward, and close your divisions.* Lastly, Command, *Pikes, move forwards and even your Front of Musquettiers.* If there be any *Intervalls* (or *Divisions*) in the *Flanks*, Close them, and all is *reduced* as at the first. The reducement.

CHAP. CIX.

The Trained Bands one of the three main strengths of this Land: the wayes to make them perfect Souldiers in the handling their Armes: The Checker Battell; with severall other Formes, either for a Company or Regiment.

IT was the *Spartan glory*, being demanded of her *walls*, to present a grosse of *Military bodies*: wherewith they not only for many Ages defended themselves; but raised their fame to so high a pitch, that they became *terrible* to others. Our *In-land*, with *Sparta*, hath no other *Forts*, *Fastnes*, or *Fortifications*, to withstand the Enemy, save our (I would I might have said *experimented*) *Souldiers brests*. Take a survey of the whole, and you shall see, that the strength of our Land (like the *Roman Legions*) consists of our [a] *Hastati*, *Principi*, and *Triarii*. [a] Took his Legion of British-mart.

Our *Sea-men* in their *wooden Forts*, and *Castles*: our *Rocks*, *Shelves*, and *Sirtes*, that *lie-a-long our Coasts*: and our *Trained Bands* on the *Land*; our *last refuge*, and *chiefe Bulwark* of Defence. Now considering the *facility* of the two *former*, how carefully ought we to look to the *latter*? That our *Souldiers* be often *practised*, and taught their *Postures*, and well-handling of their Armes: That there be places provided for the [b] *Musquettiers* to *shoot Bullets* at the *mark*; (and *Prizes* for them that do best:) That there be places appointed for some *Squadrons*, and *divisions* of each *Armes*, to meet but one hour or two in the week (at times most convenient) to be instructed in *Motions* and *Firings*, by the severall *Officers* of each *Company*: That there might be some *Immunity*, *Priviledges*, or *Allowance*, to the *Officers* of the *Trained Bands*, towards their expence of *time* and *charges*: That there should be countenance and incouragement given to those that are diligent in the practice of *Armes*, and the study of the *Art Military*. These, and such like *honey dewes*, would water the parched barrennesse of our *Militia*, and fatten the root, to a fragrancy of *experiment*: initiating, and supplying the nerves and joynts, to an activeness of *motion*. The want hereof, leaves us *dull* and *snoring* in the lap of *stupid security*; and renders us *ridiculous* in the *eyes* of our *Enemies*. [b] *Many of the Trained Bands dare not shoot a Bullet for want of practice. And very few know what proportion of powder to use to give the due charge.*

But pardon my digression, *the zeale of my Countries good had almost intricated my intentions; casting me a-shore where I had not the least intent to see the Land.* Now, with your good leave, I return to the work of this Chapter: in the which, and the former, I (for the more delight of such Captains and other Gentlemen, that love to practice *numerous*

rous forms and *Figures* of *Battel*, have fitted and stored them with *variety*; some for the *curious* and *quainter Souldier*; some for the *solid* and *experimented Souldier*; and some to direct the *unskilful* and *ignorant Souldier*; that so either may come and feed according to his own fancy, and not be *cloyed* with a continual intercourse to one and the self-same *dish*. The *Command* and *Direction* for the first *Figure* followeth:

The Command is, *Two first and last ranks of Musquettiers and Pikes, interchange ground.*

That done, *Musquettiers move till you all stand clear of your Pikes.*

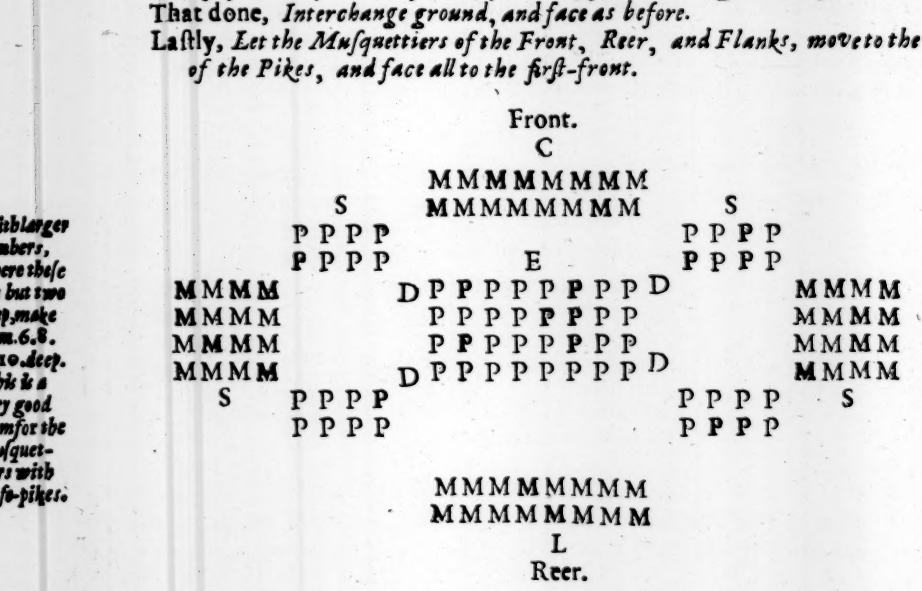
The Direction is, *Two first and last ranks of Pikes, face to the right and left outward.*

Two first and last ranks of Musquettiers, face to the right and left inward.

That done, *Interchange ground, and face as before.*

Lastly, *Let the Musquettiers of the Front, Reer, and Flanks, move to the Angles of the Pikes, and face all to the first-front.*

With larger numbers, where these are but two deep, make them 6. 8. or 10. deep. This is a very good form for the Musquetiers with half-pikes.



In this *form*, the *Musquettiers* may *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, or *Flanks*; any way, or every way. If you *fire* to the *Front*, the *Musquettiers* of the *Front-division* having *fired* two or three times over, the two *divisions* of *Pikes* on their *Angles* may *advance*, and *charge*, whilest the *Musquettiers* that last *fired*, *face to the right and left by division, and place themselves behind their Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* of the *Flanks*, in the interim, *moving forwards*, and *firing* at discretion: The *Reserve*, or *Reer-division* of *Musquets*, may in like manner be brought-up to *fire*, as you see fit; each *division* may be *sheltred* by their *Pikes*. From this take a second *Figure*, with a little alteration. The *Command*, *Direction*, and *Figure* followeth.

Two out-most files of each Flank of the Front-*division of* Musquets, *move forward to the Angles of your own Division.*

Two out-most files of the reer-division of Musquets, *move to the* Reer-*angles of your own Division of* Musquets.

By two out-most files, under stand the two outer-most files on each part, as well of Front and Reer, as Flanks. And although two deep cannot properly be tearmed a file, yet let it produce no Criticisme, seeing it could not be avoided, considering my number.

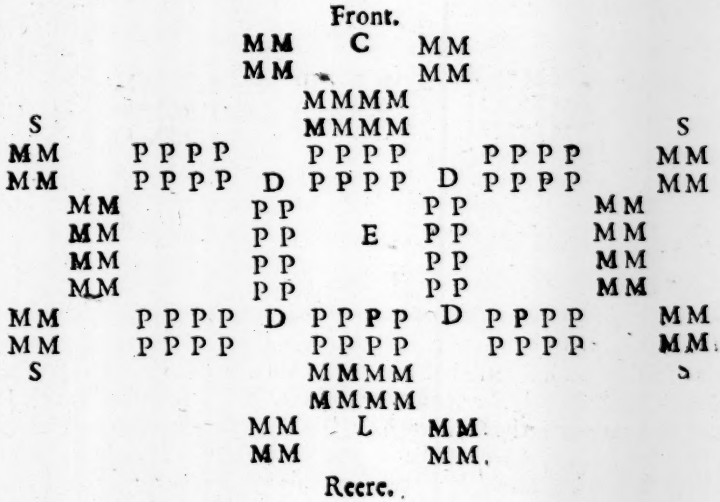
Two

Two last Ranks, of the two outer-most files of the Flank-divisions of Musquets, face to the Reer; and move to the Reer-angles of your own divisions.

Two first Ranks of the two out-most files (of the flank-divisions) of Musquets: move forwards to the front-angles, of your own divisions.

Four inmost files of the Battel of Pikes: face to the front and reer: (then) *move to the Angles of your own division of Pikes.*

The whole Body face to the Front.

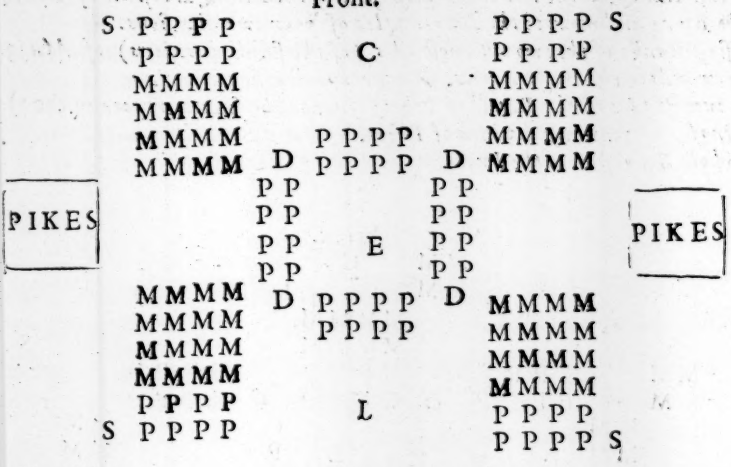


This is a very good form for the Musquettiers with half-pikes.

Although this *Figure* be here demonstrated by such smal *divisions* of men, let it not perplex the opinion of its worth, rather cast your eyes on the *several divisions of each Arme*, and supervise their *orderly placing*. How *offensive* to the *enemie*, how *defensive to themselves*. To demonstrate the several wayes of *firing* upon it, would prove as *tedious* as needless; Let it suffice that they may *fire, advance, retire, powr on their shot, and retreat behind their Pikes, inlarge their intervals*, or *joyn into one grosse*, any of them, or all of them, at discretion. Come we now to a* *firing*, that shall produce another *figure*. Let the *firing* be directed to the *Front* and *Reer*, and to that end command *half the Body to face about*; the out-most *files* of *Musquettiers* (which were advanced) begin the *firing*; doing their execution on the same ground (without moving forwards at all) by which means they become even in *Rank* with the *Musquettiers* from whence they were drawn: and so *give fire* together, once or twice over.

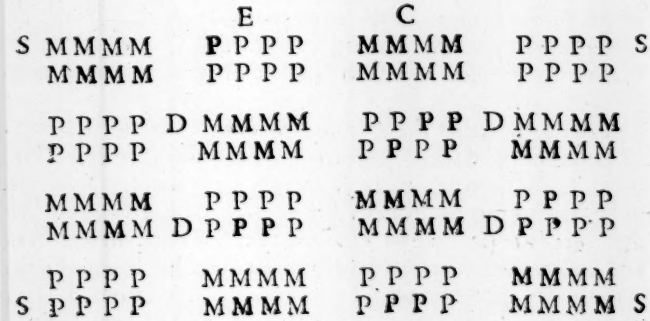
* *A firing to produce another Figure.*

You are further to observe, that the *Divisions of Pikes* on the *Wings*, are in the interim to advance (forwards) beyond the *Musquettiers*, there *charging their Pikes*; the *Musquettiers* then having *fired again*, are to *face to the right and left outward*, moving and placing themselves, behind the divisions of *Pikes*. The *Flank-division* of *Musquettiers*, in the interim of the *Pikes charging*, are to *give fire* after the same manner, as the others did before them: and lastly, place themselves behind the *shot* that began the *firing*. The *Bodies* of *Pikes* in the midst of the *Battel* (if occasion be) may move forwards and *charge*: if they keep their standing, and *face to the first front*; this ensuing *Figure* will be produced, &c.



This *Figure* according as the *Muſquettiers* ſtand now placed, is moſt fit for *firings* by *Extraduction*, but may by drawing forth of the *Muſquettiers* be varied into ſeveral other *forms*, as the occaſion and diſcretion of the Commander ſhall think meet, as the *Quadruple Horn-Battel*, to *Front* and *Reer*, and many others. Nevertheleſſe, becauſe I would not be tedious, I will next form the *Checker-Battel*. * Therefore to that end, cauſe *the Pikes in the midſt to cloſe their diviſions.* (That done) *let the Battel of the Pikes face to the right and left outward, and place themſelves even between the diviſions of Muſquettiers, and all face to the front.* This being done, the Body ſtands divided into two deep *Hearſes*. Next command, *firſt four Ranks (of each Hearſe) ſtand, the reſt by four ranks in a diviſion, move forward, and range even with the front.* This being performed, your Body ſtands in a long *Checker-Battel* 4. deep, and 32. a-breſt. If you will make them 8. deep, with diviſions (four of each Arms) checker-wiſe; Command one of the *flanks* to double the other by *diviſion*. If you pleaſe to make 16. *diviſions checker-wiſe*, and 8. deep (which is the Figure now intended) command, *left-flank, double the depth of your right-flank intire*, the which produceth this following *Figure*.

*The direction to make the Checker-Battel, either with 16. diviſions of each Armes, or with 8. diviſions.

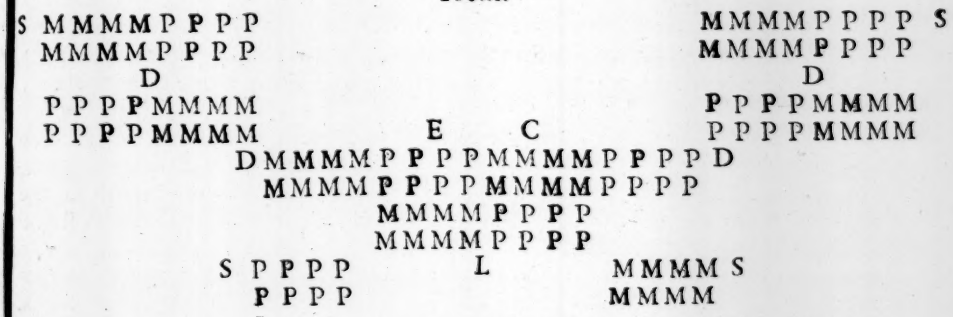


I ſhould

I should be much too tedious, should I enlarge my self upon the several *Firings*, and *Figures* of *Battel*, that might be drawn from this *Checker Form*. I shall demonstrate one, and so draw towards a conclusion of this Chapter. For the which, command the * *Front-half of the Body to face to the right and left-outward*; (then) *move to the Angles of the standing part of the Body*: That being done, *Stand, and face to the Front again*: Next, command the *two Reer-angle-divisions, face-about, and move to the Angles of the standing part of the Reer*; (then) *face to the Front again*; and it produceth this following *Figure*.

* By *front-half*, is to be under stood, that half of the Body next to the front.

Front.



Reer.

Any ingenious *Souldier*, at first sight, may contrive several wayes, and *Firings*, upon this *Figure*: And therefore, not to discourse what may be done, nor with what varieties to be done, I will come to the *Reducement*.

The reducement.

To which end, in the first place, *close your divisions* again into the *Checker-Battel*.

2. Command the *Front-half of the Body*, *face to the right*, and *move* until they are *clear of the standing part*: then *face as before*.

3. Command the *four out-most files, to the right of each division, stand*; the rest of the *Body*, *by four files in a division, invert after the right divisions*. Now your *Body* stands in two *Hearse-Battels*: Let the *hindermost* move forwards even-a-breast with the *foremost*, keeping the *Interval* open between them.

4. Command *all the Pikes of both divisions*, *face-inward, and close their divisions*.

Lastly, command *Musquettiers and Pikes*, *both of Front and Reer*, *close their divisions to the Battel of Pikes*. This being done, and all *faced* to the *proper-front*, they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first.

CHAP. CX.

How a Captain, or superiour Commander, ought to be qualified: What is requisite to every common Souldier. The use of variety of Forms and Figures of Battel; with several Regimental Forms, that may be practised with a single Company, and the Reducement.

Politick Stratagems having many times procured great victories.

NExt after our *Prayers*, for blessings from above, *Policy* and *Stratagems* of *War* have been found most prevalent; as more *availing* than numerous *strength*: seldome failing, most time gaining the wreath of *Honour*. Yea, perhaps, by some mean and ordinary *wile*, the which being once known, grows despicable; as falling within the capacity

of the meaneſt judgements. Of this, *holy Writ*, as well as *prophane Hiſtory*, is ſtored with ſufficient examples.

* *The Souldiers love to their General, a matter very conſiderable.*

A ſecond *means*, conducing towards the *advance of Victory*, is the * *love of our General, Captain, or Commander*; a Jem more prizable and eſtimate, then the beſt *armours of proof*; as being of ſuch force with the *Souldier*, that he will never *ſhun danger*, nor refuſe to hazzard the greateſt difficulties; (the further) thereby to *ingratiate* himſelf into the favour of his *worthy Chieftain*, whom for his *vertues* he *really affecteth*. For the attaining or gaining this *love of the Souldiers*, it were neceſſary, in the firſt place, that ſuch *Commanders* were known to be *wel-qulaified with skil*, having good [a] *experience* of the *Warrs*: for the *Souldiers* will not eaſily flinch or fly from ſuch a *Commander*, whoſe *wiſdom*, *skill*, and *experience*, they are well-aſſured of. Secondly, the [b] *Valour* of our *Chieftain* is not of leaſt *importance* to confirm the minds of the *multitude*: for the *courage* and *skill* of the *Commanders* makes even a *cowardly people hardy*: the want thereof, works the contrary effects. Thirdly, [c] *Juſtice*; for that *Captain* which with equity and juſtice can rule his *Souldiers*, neither ſuffering them to do injury to others, nor receive wrong to themſelves, ſhall gain the love of his *Souldiers*, and fear of his *Enemies*. Fourthly, [d] *Temperance*: and fifthly, [e] *Liberality*. Theſe together, build-up a man fit for the imployment of his *Prince and Countrey*. But whither am I ſoaring? let me check my flight and return to the common *Souldier*.

[a] *Experimented skil*

[b] *Valour.*

[c] *Juſtice.*

[d] *Temperance, and* [e] *Liberality*

"*Xenophon* declareth, that ſuch *Souldiers* as ſerve *God*, and are obedient to their *Captains*, may boldly and Couragiouſly fight with their *Enemies*, not doubting victory. Add theſe three other pertinent neceſſaries to every *Souldier*: Firſt, to [f] *harden the body*, that ſo it may be *inured*, and made *capable to endure pains*, *want*, *and travel*, with patience. Secondly, to *handle our Arms with facility and ſafety* Thirdly, to learn to keep our *orders*, in *martching*, *encamping*, and *fighting*: The which, as it cannot alwayes be in one and the ſelf-ſame *form*; neither ought the *Arms* to be alwayes placed after one and the ſame manner; but be varied according to the occaſion, and the wiſe fore-ſight of the *politick Commander*. Therefore whoſoever would be perfect in this part of the *Art military*, muſt often accuſtom [g] himſelf to the contriving and *drawing-forth* of many and ſeveral *forms* of *Battel*, conſulting their ſeveral *uſes*: As ſome againſt *Horſe*, others againſt *Foot*; ſome againſt *Horſe* and *Foot*: ſome for *ſtraits*, ſome for *Campania*, ſome for *Hilly and Mountainous places*, other for *Valleys and watry places*; ſome for *boggy and rotten ground*, ſome for *woody and buſhy grounds*; ſome for *night*, and ſome for *day*. Theſe notwithſtanding, *time*, *number*, and *place*, will thruſt in *accidents*, and often cauſe alteration of the moſt ſetled and ſelected *form*. Nevertheleſs, the *Captain* thus ſorted for all occaſions (*like the skilful Chirurgion, having ſalves for every ſore*) may with more *boldneſſe* addreſſe himſelf to ſuch enterpriſes, as by *command*, or *chance*, ſhall be caſt upon him.

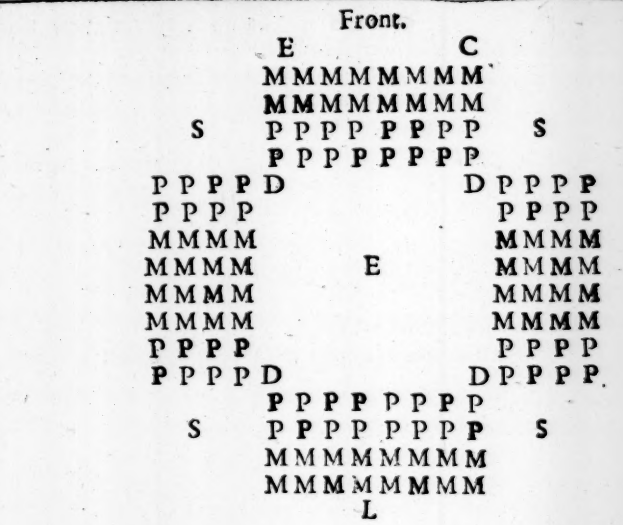
[f] *Souldiers ſhou'd inure their bodies to hardſhip. Hannibal effeminated his Souldiers by once wintering them in Capua.*

[g] *Excellent Commanders do oftentimes cuſtom themſelves to contrive and imbattel ſeveral forms.*

Theſe conſiderations prompt me to proceed; queſtioning the length of my diſcourſe, that hath ſo long detained you from the *Figures* of this Chapter. The which that I may timely remedy, take the [h] *Command* and *Direction* for this following *Figure*. Command the *Muſquettiers of the two firſt and laſt ranks face-inward*, the *Pikes of the ſame ranks face outward, and interchange ground with the Muſquettiers*. Secondly, Command the *Reer-half of the* 8. *inner-moſt files face about*: That done, Laſtly, let the 8. *files, ſo faced to the Front and Rier, move to the inner moſt Front and Reer-angles, then ſtand, and face all to the proper-front*; by which this *Figure* is produced.

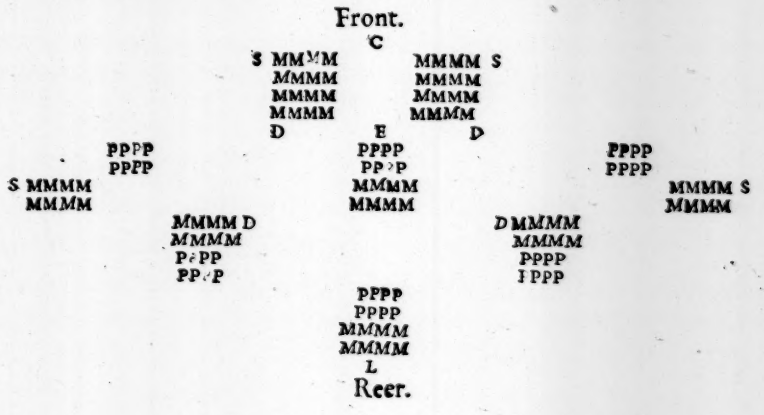
[h] *The Command and Direction to make the following Figure.*

Front.



The Musquettiers of the flank divisions may be drawn forth clear of their Pikes, and fire any way according to direction or they may give fire by extraduction.

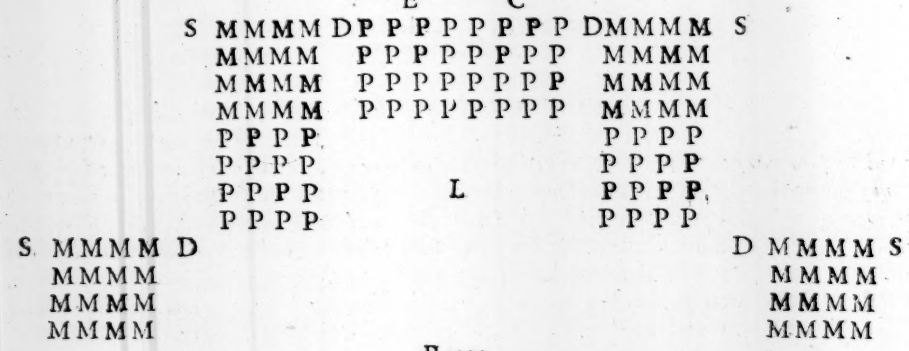
Having *fired* at discretion upon this *Figure*, and brought them again into the same *Order*. Observe a second form drawn from the first. To make the which, Command the *first four ranks of the flank divisions face outward, and move clear of the last four Ranks:* then stand, and *face as before*. Secondly, command the *front-division open to the right and left* (until they have made a *sufficient Interval* to receive another *division*;) then stand. Thirdly, command the *left-flank*, (or *half-ranks*) of the *Reer-division advance forwards and place themselves behind the Interval, of the Front-divisions*. Lastly, command the *Musquettiers, on the outer-most divisions, face outward, and move clear of their Pikes*. These Commands *duely executed*, renders this following *Figure*.



This *Figure* ſtands very apt for *fight*, each *Armes* being ſo placed, that they may be aiding and aſſiſting to the other. The *Diviſions*, *Maniples*, or *Battels* are ſo orderly contrived, that they may *advance*, *retreat*, or *relieve* one another, without any let, impediment, or incumbrance. When you have *given fire* at diſcretion upon this *Figure*, if you would come to a *Reducement*, cloſe the *Diviſion* back into their places from whence you drew them; and cauſe the *Pikes* of the two firſt and laſt *Ranks*, to interchange ground again with the *Muſquettiers*. This done, all is reduced as at firſt. But before we come to the concluſion of this Chapter, proceed we to ſome other *forms*, to ſatisfie the deſirous. The *Commands*, *Directions*, and *Figure* follow. * *Half-files* (of each Arms) *Face to the right and left outward, and move* (until the *Pikes* ſtand right) *after the Muſquettiers of the Front-half-files* (then) *ſtand and face as before*. Secondly, command *half-files of Muſquettiers face about, and move down even with the Reer-angles of Pikes*, then *ſtand and face to the front*. By the execution of theſe Commands, this *Figure* is produced from the ordinary ſquare of *Pikes* flanked with *Muſquettiers*.

The direction to make the following Figure.

Front.



Reeer.

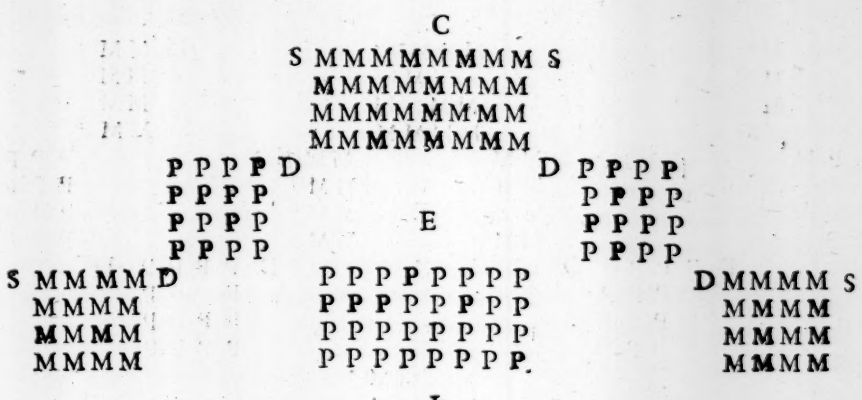
* *Natural ſcituation availes much for the defence of a battel.*

This *Figure* at firſt ſight, ſhews want of reſerves in the *Reer*: the which muſt be ſupplied either by *number*, by *nature*, or by *art*. If number be wanting, the * *Natural ſcituation* of the place affording either *Ditch*, *Wood*, or *River*, may ſuffice as a *reſonable defence*. If *number* and *nature* be both nigardly in their aſſiſtance; then let *Art* ſupply the defect, by *impalling the Reer*, with the *Wagons*, *Carts*, and *Baggage* of the *Army*. Having *given fire* on this *figure*, as you may ſeveral wayes, ſometimes placing the *Muſquettiers* in the *Reer* of their own *Diviſions*; and ſometimes in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*: The *Pikes* in the mean time ſometimes *porting*, ſometimes *charging*, ſometimes *advancing* forwards, and ſometimes *retreating*. From this take another *Figure*, the which is thus to be made: *Face the whole Body about*, and command the *Muſquettiers* (the which then are in the * *Front*) *to cloſe their diviſions*. Laſtly, Cauſe the *two reer-diviſions of Muſquettiers, face to the right and left outward, and move clear of the Pikes*, the which ſtood before them, (this done,) peruſe the *Figure*.

* *This facing about hath made the reer the front.*

Front

Front.



Reer.

When you *give fire* on this *Figure*, the *Muſquettiers* of the *Front-diviſion* are to *wheel-off* to the *right and left*: Nevertheleſs, if you would have them *wheel* all *off* to the *right*, then open the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt*, and make them an *Interval*. Having practiſed and tryed your *Souldiers* ſufficiently on this *Figure*, we will come to another: but firſt, * *face your Body about again after their proper File-leaders*. Secondly, Command the *Front-diviſion of Pikes*, *face to the right and left*, then *move*, and place themſelves *before the two other diviſions of Pikes*. Thirdly, Command the *two Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers move forwards, until their Reer be even with the Front of Pikes*; then, *face inwards, cloſe their diviſions, and face to the* Front. This produceth a *hollow Square, the Muſquettiers* being in the *Front and Reer-diviſions*, the *Pikes* on the *Flank-diviſions*. I forbear the *Figure*, being the ſame with that in Chapter 103. proceed we to our next *Figure*; to make the which, firſt Command.

* *The Body re-faced about after the proper File-leaders*

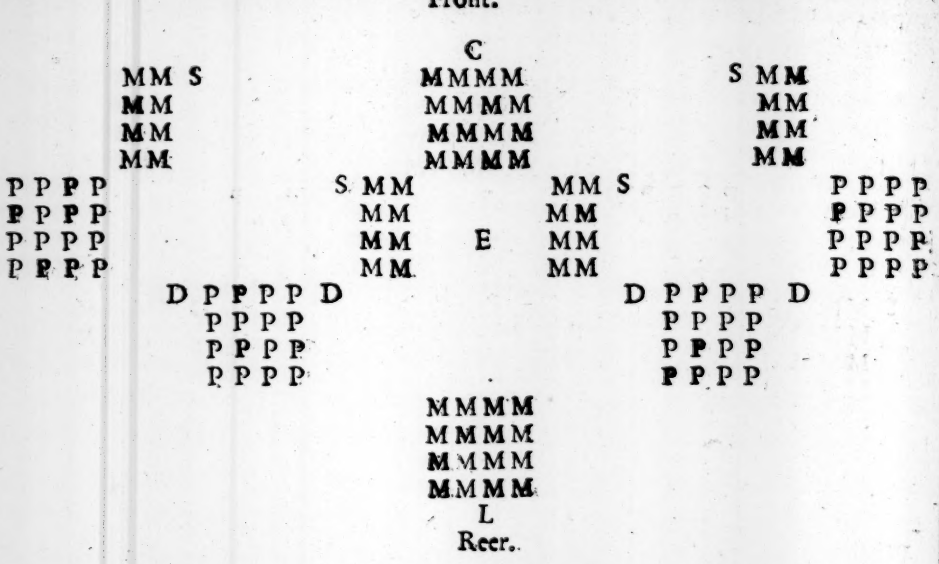
Two out-moſt files (of each Flank) of the Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers, face to the right and left; then, *move to the out-moſt Angles of your Pikes*.

The direction to make this following Figure:

Secondly, Command the *two out-moſt files of each Flank of the Reer-diviſion of Muſquettiers, ſleeve-up on the inſide of the Front-diviſion of Pikes*.

Thirdly, Cauſe the *Front-half files, of each diviſion of Pikes, face-outward, and move to the out-moſt Angles of your Wings of ſhot. Face all to the Front.*

Front.



It were needleſſe to tell you, that this *Figure* is moſt eſpecially uſeful for *Firings* in *Front*: Nevertheleſſe, it may in like manner very fitly ſerve for *Firings* in the *Reer*, provided, that you *face them about*, and then *move forwards your ſmall diviſions of Muſquettiers into the Front*: By which means, in like manner, it might be made a ſerviceable *Firing*. But not deſiring to be tedious, I will come to the *Reducement*, and ſo conclude this Chapter. First, Command the *two out-moſt files (or wings) of Muſquettiers face-inward, and cloſe their diviſions.* Secondly, Cauſe the *Muſquettiers in the Reere to move forwards into the Interval ſtraight before them.* Thirdly, Command the *outer-moſt diviſions of Pikes face-inward, and cloſe before the Reer-diviſions of Pikes*: then, *face as before, move forwards, and even the Front of Muſquettiers.* (This done, your *Muſquets* are all in the *midſt*, the *Pikes* on the *Flanks*.) Laſtly, Command, *Muſquettiers and Pikes, interchange grounds.* This brings all into the firſt order.

The reducements.

CHAP. CII.

Of the Muſquet and half-pike, with the ſeveral wayes that have been tried to make the Muſquettier defenſible againſt the Horſe. As alſo, ten Queries objected, to the Half-pike and Muſquet.

WHen I firſt began this Edition, I had not the leaſt intent to ſpeak any thing of the uſe of the *Half-pike* and *Muſquet*, but have wholly reſerved it until another time; yet at the importunity of ſome of my familiar friends, though it were late, yet they were not willing it ſhould be left out. Nevertheleſſe, when I conſidered that it had been the unhappy fate, even of the *greateſt* and *beſt inventions*, to be embaſed and vilified; yea, and to be accounted of but as idle fancies or dreams, before they were publiſhed; and being once made known, ſuffering too much embaſement, as being often under-valued, and accounted of but as a thing that every one could have well performed. And hereof I might

might demonſtrate many examples. Wherefore, if the * *paſſion* of *Envy* have in it any thing *allowable* and *natural*, as having *anger*, *fear*; and other like *affections*, it is in ſome ſuch caſe as this; and ſerveth againſt thoſe which would uſurp, and take to themſelves the *knowledge* and *invention* wherewith *God* hath denied to indue them. *Rawleigh *Hiſt. mundi*

Therefore, were it not for the common good, and the great affection that every one ought to bear to his Country, it would appear more commendable in wiſe men to conceale their ſtudies, making their *funerals* in their own *boſomes* (whence they had their firſt *births*) rather then to expoſe them to the publick, where *vertuous ſtudies are too often cruciated* by the *darts of envy*, which *malignant ſpirits too frequently pour upon them.* Notwithſtanding, I will not altogether diſcourage my ſelf, although I know by ſufficient triall, that *Cynnicks will bark at thoſe they know not*; and *others*, *of as bad a nature*, *will accompany their clamours*: For ſo it is with the inconſiderate multitude, who wanting that *vertue* which we call *honeſty*, and that *ſpeciall grace* which we call *charity*, *condemne* without *hearing*, and *wound* without any *offence given*. This I can ſpeak, with *pitty* to my ſelf, as having too frequent and familiar *experience* thereof. But of theſe *Natures*, that *lie as it were in* * *ambuſh*, *to carp and find fault*, endeavouring to wreſt *good intentions* to their *evill conſtructions*: ſeeing the *Wiſe-man* complained of ſuch long ſince, and that *Nature* hath not been wanting to thruſt-off the ſame *brood* daily into the World, as bad, and perhaps more malicious; I will leave them to their eaſie wayes of reprehenſion, then which there is nothing of more facilty, and return to the work of this Chapter. *Eccleſt. 13.

Having often conſidered with my ſelf the danger of he *Muſquettier*, and how unable he is to *reſiſt the Horſe*, after he hath *poured forth his ſhot*, without he be *ſheltered* either by ſome *naturall* or *artificiall defence*; and withall having knowledge, that in ſeverall parts of *Chriſtendome* divers *Captains and Souldiers* have oft been trying concluſions, to make the *Muſquettiers* as well *defenſive* as *offenſive*; ſome by *unſcrewing the heads of their Reſts*, *and then ſcrewing the ſtaffe of their Reſts into the muzzel of the Muſquet*, with the *arming of a Pike at the lower-end*; by which meanes, they would uſe the *Muſquet* and *Reſt* together, in the nature of a whole *Pike*. But this proved ſo tedious and troubleſome, that it fell without profit. Another ſort had made *Reſts*, with the one end of the *fork* (or *head*) being like a *ſpike*, about 12. inches in length: This alſo proved extream troubleſome to themſelves, *dangerous* to their *fellowes*, and of no *validity* againſt the *Enemy*. A third ſort had *Half-pikes* of about 7. or 8. foot in length, uſing it after the manner of a *Reſt*; but all the while the *Muſquettier* was *charging* (his *Muſquet*) one of them was enough to trouble a *whole file* beſide the danger in the *recovery*. A fourth ſort there was (yet better then the former) that with a *hook was faſtened to the girdle*, *the while the Muſquettier was making ready*; but this had his defects alſo, as being both *tedious* and *troubleſome*. Many other wayes and concluſions have alſo been tried, with ſucceſſe like the former, which I forbear to demonſtrate; for as their conceits proved uſeleſſe, ſo the diſcourſe would prove as fruitleſſe. Laſtly, my *ſelf*, with another *Gentleman* of *our ground*, (both well-affecting the uſe of the *Muſquet*) found out a way to uſe the *Half-pike* and *Muſquet*, with ſo much *facility* and *eaſe*, that it is *farre leſſe troubleſome then the Reſt*; and yet of a *greater length* than any of the former *Reſts*, or *Half-pikes*; as being compleat 10. foot in *length*, with the *arming*. *Mr. John Davies of Blackfriers.

All the former *devices*, if they could have been brought to any *maturity*, yet would have falne farre ſhort of this, for the *triple uſe thereof*: As being a *Reſt*, if there be no further occaſion: As being a * *Palliſado* (if there be occaſion) to *defend the Muſquettier from the Horſe*: As being a *Half-pike to uſe in Trenches*, as alſo when our *ſhot* have *poured out a feather*. *Or ſweins

great volly or shower of *Lead* on the adverse *Musquettiers*, they may then *nimbly* with their *half-pikes fall in amongst them.* And lastly, for the *pursuit* of an *enemy*, it being of all others the *best weapon.*

† *Musquettiers with half-pikes fittest for to be sent in parties.*

If a *party* of *Musquettiers* were to be sent out, those using the *half-pike* of all others are the fittest, for that they are able to *offend their enemies*, and best able to *defend* themselves. If after they have *given fire*, they should be *overtaken* before they have *made ready again*, and *charged by the Horse*; Yet they are able to defend themselves with their *half-pikes*, even in the time they are *charging*: for the *front-half-files* may couch with their *half-pikes charged brest-high, and swords drawn to keep off the Horse*, while the *Reere-half-files give fire* over them, whereby they will be sufficiently able to *defend* themselves, and *annoy their enemies.* In a word, the *half-pike* and *Musquet* for them that know how to manage it, is of so *excellent use*, that the worth thereof cannot, nor ought not to be confined to the poor demonstration of an unskillfull Writer, that will not take the liberty of a Hen to keckle over her own Egg: but leave it to the wide world to vindicate its own reputation. Therefore now let us come somewhat neerer, and examine *what queries* or *objections*, have been made against it, and you shall find these *tenne* following, *viz.*

1. *If Musquettiers with half-pikes be to encounter against Pikemen and Musquettiers with Rests (seeing there hath been no triall) Whether Armes in reason would have the advantage.*

2. *Whether the Musquet and half-pike be as serviceable against Horse, as the Musquettier with the Rest and whole Pikes.*

3. *Whether the Musquet and Half-pikes, can as conveniently be used in all respects as the Musquet and Rest.*

4. *Whether the Musquet and Half-pike be usefull in Trenches and Fortifications.*

5. *Whether the Musquets with Half-pikes can be used in woods, where ambushments are usually laid, if not, where those half-pikes are to be bestowed.*

6. *Whether the charge wherein the half-pike exceeds the Rest, will be countervailed by the services it hath beyond the Rest.*

7. *Whether in Company, or Regiment, it be convenient and necessary, to have whole Pikes, or no.*

8. *Whether Palisadoes or swines-feathers, be not as serviceable against the* Horse, *as the* Half-pikes.

9. *Whether if all these queries and objections have a satisfactory answer, it be necessary or convenient, that the use of the* Half-pike *and Musquet be knowne, before we have publique occasion for service.*

10. *Whether the weight of* Half-pike, *by which it exceedeth the Rest, be not more troublesome counter-poysing all the benefits it hath before the Rest.*

These *Queries* have been urged by men not of the meanest *Ranke*, nor *skill*, but even of such whose *opinions* were very *considerable*, and whose *judgments* could not *easily be misled*, unto which they received such satisfactory answers, as you may further peruse in the Chapter following.

CHAP. CXII.

The tenne Queries objected to the Musquet and half-pike fully answered. The Halfe-pike *joyned with the Musquet approved to be very usefull, as having received approbation from divers Souldiers of great Ranke and quality.*

HAving in the last Chapter shewed the queries objected to the *Half-pikes* and *Musquet*; Come we now without preamble, to give an answer to each of them successively.

ly. To the first we say, That * *Musquettiers* with *half-pikes* have the oddes, against *Musquettiers with Rests* and *whole Pikes*, for these and such like reasons; for presuppose what number you please, the one half *whole Pikes, the other Musquettiers and Rests.* The *fight* being begun at *distance* (as must needs be conceived) *the half-pike-men pour on a great deal more shot, at least three to one:* by which means the adverse part must needs be *broken and spoiled*, before they can possibly come up to the *push of pike.* Secondly, they that escape death and wounds, if their hearts serve them to come up to the *push*, will be so *weary, wind-lesse*, and out of *order*, with their *hast*, that they will not be able to stand against their Adversaries, who *keeping their ground*, will neither be *weary nor out of order.* Thirdly, the *Musquettiers* that come up *a breast* even with their *Pikes*, will with them be sufferers of the like inconveniences; and now being come to *close fight*, are not possibly able with their *Rests*, to withstand the better armed *half-pike-men.* Fourthly, if there were any reasonable proportion of *whole Pikes joyned* with the *half-pikes* & *Musquets*; the advantage then would be unquestionable. † To the first.

To the second we say, That *Musquettiers with half-pikes, instead of Rests*, are more *serviceable against horse, than whole Pikes and Musqettiers with Rests*, for these reasons: First, *Whole Pikes alone are two weak*, because the *Horse-man* carries *fiery weapons*, & can *kill the Pike-man at distance*, they neither being able to *defend* themselves, nor *offend* their *enemies.* Secondly, *musquettiers with Rests*, are not able in open *Campania*, to withstand the *able and resolute Horse-men*, which will *break* them through & through. Thirdly, both conjoyned in one *body*, are too *weak* in *open* and *even Countries* to withstand the *Horse*: for if your *Pikes* be *flanked* with *Musquettiers* (according to the usual manner) then the *Horse-men kill the Pikes* at distance (as aforesaid) and *rout* and *plunder the Musquettiers on the flanks*, they having little possibility of aid from their *Pike-men*, when the *Horse* are entred *pell-mell* amongst the *Musquettiers*, *knocking* and treading them down. Fourthly, If they draw into any other form of *impalment*, then one armes becomes a trouble to the other, neither being able to performe their due *execution.* Fifthly, *Musquettiers* with *Half-pikes*, are able in any *forme* or *figure* of Battel, to defend themselves from being broken by the *Horse*, and by so much as their *fiery weapon* doth exceed the *Horse-mans in execution*; by so much they will be too strong for him in the *open field*: and farre more in a *straight* or place of *advantage*; where either *Nature* or *Art* hath secured the *flanks.*

To the third we say, That the *Half-pike joyned with the Musquet*, may as conveniently in all respects be used for * *ease*, and indeed is more accommodable than the *Rest*, being more *expedite* for *execution*; and far more safe for *defence.* † The *Rest* was devised only for to ease men when the *Musquets* were of 18 or 20. l. weight: but now the *Musquets* are made lighter (as not exceeding 10. l. or 10 l. and 12 in the Magazines) the *Rest* is of small use: therefore no marvel the Souldiers threw them away: But the half-pike is an offensive weapon, yet so far exceeding the *Rest*, that it is many waies more serviceable than the sword it self, both for offence and defence.

To the fourth we say, That the *Rest* is of no use in *Trenches* and *Fortifications*, where men present upon a *breast-work* or *parapet*: the *half-pike* in such cases may be *useful*; as when it happens they come to *close fight*, where it proves advantagious.

To the fifth we say, Neither *Rests* nor *Half-pikes* are necessary or useful for the *Musquettier* to *carry* in *woods and thickets*: whether it be to lay *ambushments*, or to the contrary, to *search them out*, and *beat them off.* Yet in such cases they are farre more useful than *whole Pikes*, being more easily mannaged. Nevertheless if it be in great *timber woods and forrests*, there the *half-pike* may prove *useful* and *portable.* But if it shall be found inconvenient for such *service*, then they are to be disposed in the *Carts*, and *Wagons*, of *Ammunition* or else-where, as opportunity shall be offered.

great volly or ſhower of *Lead* on the adverſe *Muſquettiers*, they may then *nimbly* with their *half-pikes fall in amongſt them.* And laſtly, for the *purſuit* of an *enemy*, it being of all others the *beſt weapon.*

† *Muſquettiers with half-pikes fitteſt for to be ſent in parties.*

If a *party* of *Muſquettiers* were to be ſent out, thoſe uſing the *half-pike* of all others are the fitteſt, for that they are able to *offend their enemies*, and beſt able to *defend* themſelves. If after they have *given fire*, they ſhould be *overtaken* before they have *made ready again*, and *charged by the Horſe*; Yet they are able to defend themſelves with their *half-pikes*, even in the time they are *charging*: for the *front-half-files* may couch with their *half-pikes charged breſt-high, and ſwords drawn to keep off the Horſe*, while the *Reere-half-files give fire* over them, whereby they will be ſufficiently able to *defend* themſelves, and *annoy their enemies.* In a word, the *half-pike* and *Muſquet* for them that know how to manage it, is of ſo *excellent uſe*, that the worth thereof cannot, nor ought not to be confined to the poor demonſtration of an unskillfull Writer, that will not take the liberty of a Hen to keckle over her own Egg: but leave it to the wide world to vindicate its own reputation. Therefore now let us come ſomewhat neerer, and examine *what queries* or *obiections*, have been made againſt it, and you ſhall find theſe *tenne* following, *viz.*

1. *If Muſquettiers with half-pikes be to encounter againſt Pikemen and Muſquettiers with Reſts (ſeeing there hath been no triall) Whether Armes in reaſon would have the advantage.*

2. *Whether the Muſquet and half-pike be as ſerviceable againſt Horſe, as the Muſquettier with the Reſt and whole Pikes.*

3. *Whether the Muſquet and Half-pikes, can as conveniently be uſed in all reſpects as the Muſquet and Reſt.*

4. *Whether the Muſquet and Half-pike be uſefull in Trenches and Fortifications.*

5. *Whether the Muſquets with Half-pikes can be uſed in woods, where ambuſhments are uſually laid, if not, where thoſe half-pikes are to be beſtowed.*

6. *Whether the charge wherein the half-pike exceeds the Reſt, will be countervailed by the ſervices it hath beyond the Reſt.*

7. *Whether in Company, or Regiment, it be convenient and neceſſary, to have whole Pikes, or no.*

8. *Whether Palliſadoes or ſwines-feathers, be not as ſerviceable againſt the* Horſe, *as the* Half-pikes.

9. *Whether if all theſe queries and obiections have a ſatisfactory anſwer, it be neceſſary or convenient, that the uſe of the* Half-pike *and Muſquet be knowne, before we have publique occaſion for ſervice.*

10. *Whether the weight of* Half-pike, *by which it exceedeth the Reſt, be not more troubleſome counter-poyſing all the benefits it hath before the Reſt.*

Theſe *Queries* have been urged by men not of the meaneſt *Ranke*, nor *skill*, but even of ſuch whoſe *opinions* were very *conſiderable*, and whoſe *judgments* could not *eaſily be miſled*, unto which they received ſueh ſatisfactory anſwers, as you may further peruſe in the Chapter following.

CHAP. CXII.

The tenne Queries obiected to the Muſquet and half-pike fully anſwered. The Halfe-pike *joyned with the Muſquet approved to be very uſefull, as having received approbation from divers Souldiers of great Ranke and quality.*

HAving in the laſt Chapter ſhewed the queries objected to the *Half-pikes* and *Muſquet*; Come we now without preamble, to give an anſwer to each of them ſucceſſively.

ly. To the first we say, That * *Musquettiers* with *half-pikes* have the odds, against *Musquettiers with Rests* and *whole Pikes*, for these and such like reasons; for presuppose what number you please, the one half *whole Pikes, the other Musquettiers and Rests.* The *fight* being begun at *distance* (as must needs be conceived) *the half-pike-men pour on a great deal more shot, at least three to one:* by which means the adverse part must needs be *broken and spoiled*, before they can possibly come up to the *push of pike.* Secondly, they that escape death and wounds, if their hearts serve them to come up to the *push*, will be so *weary, wind-lesse*, and out of *order*, with their *hast*, that they will not be able to stand against their Adversaries, who *keeping their ground*, will neither be *weary nor out of order.* Thirdly, the *Musquettiers* that come up *a breast* even with their *Pikes*, will with them be sufferers of the like inconveniences; and now being come to *close fight*, are not possibly able with their *Rests*, to withstand the better armed *half-pike-men.* Fourthly, if there were any reasonable proportion of *whole Pikes joyned* with the *half-pikes* & *Musquets*, the advantage then would be unquestionable. † To the first.

To the second we say, That *Musquettiers with half-pikes, instead of Rests*, are more *serviceable against horse, than whole Pikes and Musqettiers with Rests*, for these reasons: First, *Whole Pikes alone are two weak*, because the *Horse-man* carries *fiery weapons*, & can *kill the Pike-man at distance*, they neither being able to *defend* themselves, nor *offend* their *enemies.* Secondly, *musquettiers with Rests*, are not able in open *Campania*, to withstand the *able and resolute Horse-men*, which will *break* them through & through. Thirdly, both conjoyned in one *body*, are too *weak* in *open* and *even Countries* to withstand the *Horse*: for if your *Pikes* be *flanked* with *Musquettiers* (according to the usual manner) then the *Horse-men kill the Pikes* at distance (as aforesaid) and *rout* and *plunder the Musquettiers on the flanks*, they having little possibility of aid from their *Pike-men*, when the *Horse* are entred *pell-mell* amongst the *Musquettiers, knocking* and treading them down. Fourthly, If they draw into any other form of *impalment*, then one armes becomes a trouble to the other, neither being able to performe their due *execution.* Fifthly, *Musquettiers* with *Half-pikes*, are able in any *forme* or *figure* of Battel, to defend themselves from being broken by the *Horse*, and by so much as their *fiery weapon* doth exceed the *Horse-mans in execution*; by so much they will be too strong for him in the *open field*: and farre more in a *straight* or place of *advantage*; where either *Nature* or *Art* hath secured the *flanks.*

To the third we say, That the *Half-pike joyned with the Musquet*, may as conveniently in all respects be used for * *ease*, and indeed is more accommodable than the *Rest*, being more *expedite* for *execution*; and far more safe for *defence.* † The *Rest* was devised only for to ease men when the *Musquets* were of 18 or 20. l. weight: but now the *Musquets* are made lighter (as not exceeding 10 l. or 10 l. and 12

To the fourth we say, That the *Rest* is of no use in *Trenches* and *Fortifications*, where men present upon a *brest-work* or *parapet*: the *half-pike* in such cases may be *useful*; as when it happens they come to *close fight*, where it proves advantagious.

To the fifth we say, Neither *Rests* nor *Half-pikes* are necessary or useful for the *Musquettier* to *carry* in *woods and thickets*: whether it be to lay *ambushments*, or to the contrary, to *search them out*, and *beat them off.* Yet in such cases they are farre more useful than *whole Pikes*, being more easily mannaged. Nevertheless if it be in great *timber woods and forrests*, there the *half-pike* may prove *useful* and *portable.* But if it shall be found inconvenient for such *service*, then they are to be disposed in the *Carts*, and *Wagons*, of *Ammunition* or else-where, as opportunity shall be offered.

in the Magazines) *the Rest is of small use: therefore no marvel if the Souldiers threw them away: But the half-pike is an offensive weapon, & so far exceeding the Rest, that it is many waies more serviceable than the sword it self, both for offence and defence.*

To the sixth we say, That the service considered of the *Half pike*, the charge of it above the *Rest*, is not considerable: for a *serviceable Half-pike* may be had for 2.s.6.d. which exceeds not much the price of a *Rest*. Further, when it shall appear, that the *Half-pike* and *Musquet* will prove more advantagious to our Nation, in case of invasion, then it can be to any Enemy invading; then it may be presumed, were the charge farre greater then it is, yet it ought not to be neglected.

To the seventh we say, That *whole-Pikes* by no meanes are to be left, or neglected; because, for some services they are especially usefull: notwithstanding $\frac{1}{5}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ part at the most is sufficient, either for *Company*, or *Regiment*; for the *Musquettiers* are easily transferred into *Pike-men*, by changing of their Armes when occasion requireth, but the *Pike-man* cannot so soon, nor so easily be made a *Musquettier*, when the suddenness of the occasion, or the quality of the Warres shall require it.

To the eighth we say, That *Half-Pikes* are equally usefull and serviceable against the Horse, as the *Pallisado*, when in the same kind they are used, *viz.* being struk or fastned into the ground; and hath these * advantages above the *Pallisado*. First, the *Pallisado* is alwayes troublesome to the *Musquettier* in the carrying, being never helpfull in the *Martch*: But the *Half-pike*, like the *Rest*, (and better) affordeth much ease to him that carrieth it, without trouble. Secondly, the *Musquettier*, while hee carrieth his *Pallisado* in his hand, cannot *give fire* upon occasion; but the *Half-pike* is then as *usefull* as the *Rest*. Thirdly, there can no use be made of the *Pallisado* against *Foot*: but the *half-pike* is then a serviceable weapon; and indeed is not only *half pike*, but also hath all the accommodations both of *Rest* and *Pallisado*.

* *The half-pike may be sooner grounded than the Pallisado*

To the ninth we say, because *England* is ill-furnished with Horse, the benefit of the *Half-pike*, in defending the Charge of invading Horse, is more necessary for us to embrace than for others; and therefore it ought by us generally to be practised.

To the tenth we say, That which hath been already delivered, and continual practice will make manifest, First, that the weight the *Half-pike* hath above the *Rest* is *doubly recompensed* by other benefits. Secondly, Experience makes it appear, that the weight, though it be more than of the *Rest*, yet it is no way more troublesome.

Let me add one benefit more of the *Half-pike*, although it concern none of the Queries: The *Musquettier*, whether he use *Rest* or *Half pike*, can do no *execution* at any great distance, if he want *pouder*, *match*, or *bullet*, the which often are in the one or other found defective; then the *Half-pike* is useful. Secondly, grant the *Musquettiers* to be wel-accommodated with fix *Arms*, and well fitted with good *powder*, *match* and *bullet*, yet sometimes the extremity of weather, even in the joyning of the *Battel*, may make the fiery weapon of no use, by exceſs of haile, snow, rain, or the like. but then shall the *Half-pike* have great advantage above the *Rests*, it then being a serviceable weapon, either offensive or defensive.

Now although this might suffice to give satisfaction to any rational men, yet besides this, it hath had the *approbation* of many of the better sort of *Souldiers*, that have seen the use thereof: as Sir *Thomas Glenham* Colonel, a Gentleman of as serene a judgment, and as great a lover of *Arms*, as any I know in the *whole Kingdome*; as also Lievtenant Collonel *Cvamberlain*, an approved *Souldier* in most of the *German* Warrs, the which have been in our time; who took such an especial liking to it, that he caused a *Swedish youth* that attended him, to learn the *use thereof*, and two of his *Serjeants*. Many others, both of skill and quality, that have seen it practised, have also given their approbation unto it. But I would not be tedious; therefore take this one for all, the which may serve to stop the mouths of the most malicious; it is a Letter sent by the Lord Viscount WIMBALDON.

DON, *to the Presidents, and Gentlemen of the Artillery Garden, London,* the third of *March*, 1637. The Copy of which Letter I have inserted *verbatim*, as followeth.

The use of the Half-pike and Musquet together.

WHereas the *Half-pike* and *Musquet* being practised by some *Gentlemen* using *Armes* in the *Artillery Garden*, which are *Armes* both *offensive* and *defensive*, and, after consideration of them, being desired to give my opinion of their usefulness; These are to certifie, that having well considered of the usefulness of the Invention, my judgment is, that *these Armes may prove very serviceable, and advantagious to the defence of the Kingdome*; *and therefore I hold it fit that they should be practised*, for these Reasons following.

First, That in regard that the greatest danger of this Kingdome doth consist in being surprised, and that there is nothing can defend *a Landing-place better*, than *Horse* with *Musquettiers* behind them; So I hold the *Half-pike* the more serviceable, for that the *Horse* shall carry both *offence* and *defence* by those *Armes*, and in farr shorter time come to the *Landing-place*, then any *Foot*; the *Horse marching* further in a day, then the *foot* in three.

Secondly, They are better than *single Musquettiers to force a quarter*, being mounted up behind *Horse-men*.

Thirdly, They are good in *Trenches*; for they will be able to defend themselves with their *Half-pikes*, after they have *discharged* their *Musquets*; for want of which, the *single Musquettier* is forced to retire, to a great confusion, and hindring those that are behind them.

Fourthly, And above all things in *Skirmishes*, when no *Pikes* are able to defend them, they are able to defend themselves; and when they do retire, as ordinarily they do, behind the *Rear* of the *Pikes*, being forced by a stronger *Enemy*, they are able to *gall the Enemy* upon the *Flanks*, and do great service without danger.

Fifthly, In *narrow straits and passages*, they can *defend* and *offend* more than any *Pikes* or *Musquettiers*; for where *Pikes* and *Musquettiers* cannot serve, they will do double service with single bodies.

For these and some other Reasons, I approve of the exercise of them in your several meetings; and do think it fit, *that all such Practitioners of these Armes* (which I could wish were more) *be not interrupted nor hindred in the use of them, but may receive good incouragements, for the better prosecution and finding out the compleat use and perfection of them*: And that the *Captain* and other *Commanders* of the *Company*, at their several times of *exercising, constantly put in practice the said Armes*; which I doubt not but will be found very advantagious to his Majesties service.

Cecill house, Martii 3. 1637. WIMBALDON.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of the Half-pike, how it may be serviceable on all formes: with several Figures, indifferently useful to Half-pike or Rest.

THe *Musquet and Half-pike*, having thus vindicated its reputation, it were needlesse to speak further to it; although much more might be said to good purpose, in the further *approbation* thereof. Nevertheless, being that as yet it hath not been seen by his Majesty, and his Councell of Warre; and till then it can receive no general allowance; the

use thereof for the present, being only for voluntary Companies, and such other Gentlemen, that practise the experiment for the good of the Kingdome. Therefore I must entreat my loving friends at present to accept of the *Postures* of the *Musquet* and *Half-pike*; and hold me excused that I do not enlarge my self in discoursing the *motions*, *formes*, and *figures* most proper to that weapon: Seeing, I hope, before it be long the use thereof being perceived, will be enjoyned by authority, and then, God willing, I will write something for the *Musquet* and *Half-pike* by it self. And now we will proceed to the *Postures* supposing our *Musquettiers* to come ready *charged* and *shouldred* into the *field*, and from thence make the entrance upon our *Postures* of the *Musquet* and *Half-pike*.

The *Carriage* of the *Half-pike* upon a *march*, may be useful these four several waies.

Viz. The *Musquets* being shouldered, the *Half-pikes*, *Advanced.* *Ordered.* *Comported.* *Trailed.*

1. *A full Body of Musquettiers marching with half-pikes advanced, is glorious to behold to our Friends: Terrible to be seen of our Enemies.*
2. *Marching with Half-pikes ordered, is no other but as a staffe to ease you in your march; or as you use the Rest marching in the Right-hand.*
3. *Comporting your Half-pikes marching, is to be understood, when you march under Trees, or some such place where they cannot be ordered or advanced.*
4. *Treyling your Half-pikes is at such time as you march thorow low woods, and thickets, when the Half-pikes can neither be advanced, ordered, nor comported.*

Being come to the place where you mean to shew the *Postures* and *motions* of the *musquet*, joyned with the *Half-pike*. First, take the *half-pike* into the *left hand* with the *Musquet*. Then.

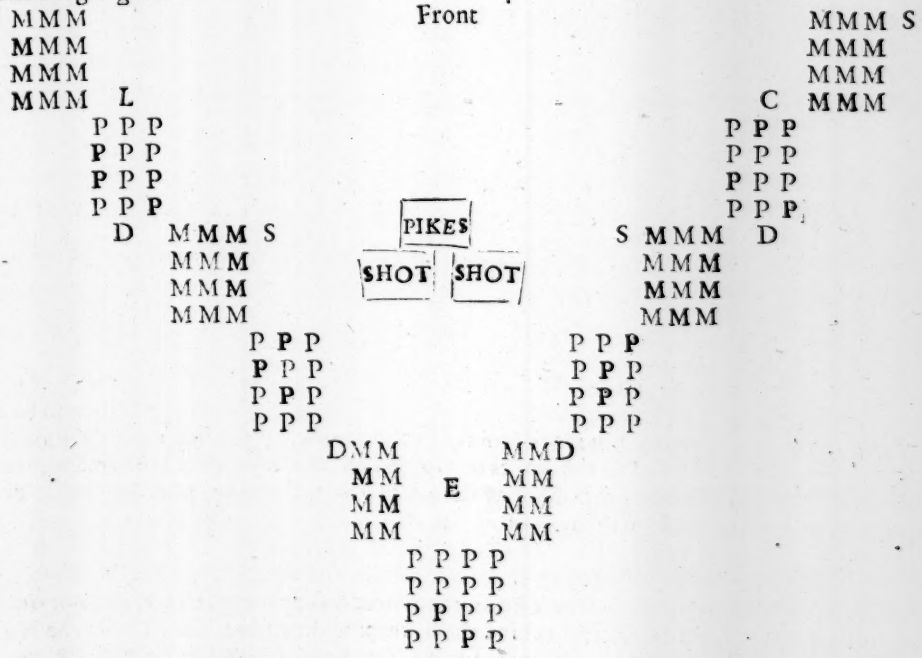
Unshoulder your Musquets and poise.
Joyne your half-pike to your Musquets.
Pitch your Armes.
If the wind be high, then
Sink your musquets down to your * *devise.*
In case of showers or raine,
Reverse your Musquets.
Recover your Musquets and half-pikes.
Draw forth your match.
Blow your Coal.
Cocke your / *Fit your* } Match.
Guard your pan.
Blow the ash from your coale.
Open your pan.
Present upon your half-pike.
Give fire brest high.
Dismount, joyning your half-pike, to the out-side of your musquet.
Uncock and return your match.
Cleere / *Prime* } Your Pan.
Shut

Cast off your loose cornes.
Blow off your loose cornes, and bring about your musquets and half-pikes to your left sides.
Sink your musquets upon your half-pikes.
Charge with Powder.
Draw forth / *Shorten* } Your Scowring-stick.
Charge with bullet, and put your scouring-stick into your Musquet.
Ram home your charge.
With-draw / *Shorten* / *Returne* } Your Scouring-stick.
Bring forward your musquets and half-Pikes.
Raise your musquets into your Rests.
Ground your half-pikes for the Horse.
Draw forth / *Cock* } Your Match.
Blow, Open, and Present, either in single rank, 2. 3. or 4. ranks together.
Give fire altogether.

* Which most call a Ketch.

Now

Now having ended the *Postures*, for matter of *firings*, *formes*, and *figures of Battell*; there is none in all the booke, but is *usefull* one way or other for the *Half-pike*: either in the way of a *Rest*, of a *Half-pike*, or of a *Pallisado*, and so may be used accordingly; but I have too long held you in discourse: proceed we now to demonstrate some more *formes*, the which may be indifferently usefull, either for *Half-pikes* or *Rests*, &c. First, Command, *Wheele your flanks into the front*, and then *face all as before*, this brings all the *Musquettiers* into the *Front*. Secondly, Command the four *innermost-files* (as well *Musquets* as *Pikes*) to stand, the rest of the Body to *face* to the *right and left*, and more untill there be *Intervalls* made sufficient to receive the *Musquettiers* of the standing part, then *stand, and face as before*. Thirdly, Command the *three outer-most Files of each flank* to *move*, and leave *Intervalls* as aforesaid. Fourthly, Command the *middle-division stand*, the other *divisions move forwards*, till their *reere* be *advanced even* with the *front-angle* of the *standing part*. Fiftly, Command the *two out-most divisions move forwards*, placing their *Reere* as aforesaid. Lastly, Command the *Musquettiers* to *face outwards*, and *move cleere of their whole Pikes*, then *face as before, and ground their Half-pikes*, as in the following *Figure*.



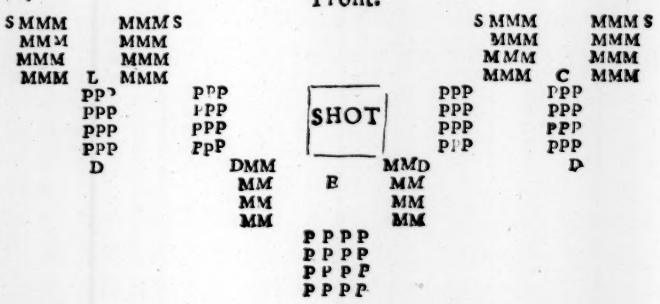
When this *Figure* is drawn, if your *Musquettiers* be *Rest-men*, then they may *fire*, and fall in the *Reere* of their own *divisions*. Secondly, they may *give fire*, and *flanke* their *Pikes*. Thirdly, they may *give fire*, and place themselves in the *Reere* of their *Pikes*, &c. If your *shot* be *Musquettiers* with *Half-pikes*; Then if there be any feare of the *Horse*, cause them to *ground* their *Half-pikes*, in the forme they now stand, the which being performed, they may *give fire* at discretion, either by *single rankes*, by two, three, or foure *rankes together*: having *fired*, they may either *face-about*, and move out of the

Horse-

Horſe-mans ſhot, untill they are ready again; or they may place themſelves *behind their Pikes*, according to the former directions for the *Reſt*, &c. If at any time the *Horſe* chance to find the *Muſquettier* unprovided, that is, take him in the time he is *charging*, before hee is *ready*, then *three or* * *foure of the former Ranks of ſhot may couch with their Half-pikes, (the one end againſt the ground, the other breſt-high) holding it Palliſado-wiſe in the left-hand, their Swords drawn in the right*; in this manner keeping-off the *Horſe*. The *Reer-half-files of Muſquettiers*, in the meane time having *made ready*, may ſecurely *poure-out their ſhot upon the Horſe*, either by *ſingle Ranke*, or by *two Ranks* together, which the *Horſe* are not able long to endure. Having *given fire* ſo often as you pleaſe on this *Figure*, Command the *fore-moſt diviſion of Muſquettiers on each Wing, to face-about and move, untill they range even with the next diviſions of Muſquets, then ſtand, and face as before.* Next, Command the *two fore-moſt diviſions of Pikes face-about, and move, untill their Front range even with the Reare angles of the two Front-diviſions of Muſquettiers*, then *face as before*, and it produceth this following *Figure*.

* *Four Ranks of Half-pikes being in this manner charged, are ſtronger then ſix Ranks of whole pikes charged over-hand.*

Front.

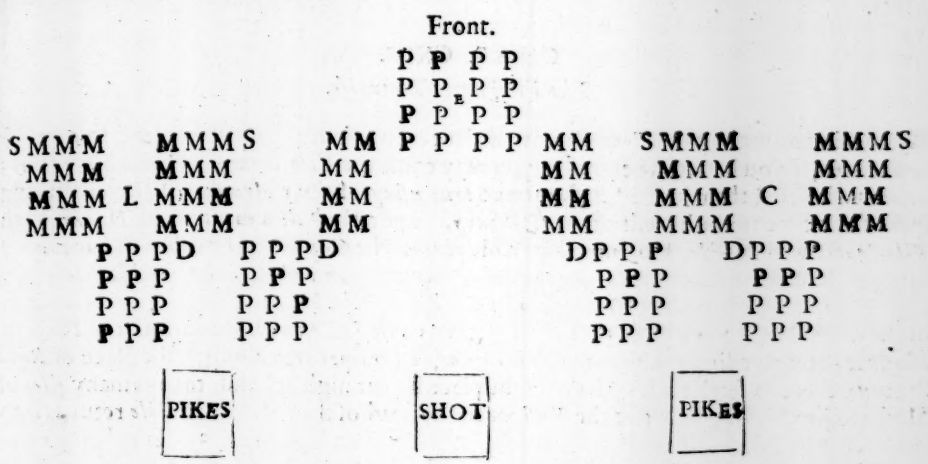


Reere.

When you have well peruſed this *Figure*, you will perceive that each *Battell, Manniple*, or *Diviſion*, ſtands well *ordered* and prepared for fight; if any *part* happen to be *diſtreſſed*, the other may readily move *forwards* to their *reliefe*; or they *retreit* without *incumbering* one another. For the wayes to *give fire* on this *form*, there are ſo many, that it were pitty to diſcribe any; for they may fire, *advancing, ſtanding*, or *retreiting*. They may alſo *give fire* and keep their *Figure*, the *Muſquettiers* moving forwards, and maintaining the ſame *ground, flanking* their *Pikes*, or falling in the *Reere* of the *Pikes*. If your *Shot* be *Half-pike-men*, then they may doe all this and more; for after that they have grounded their *Half-pikes*, (if there be any ſuch need) they may *give fire*, and *retreit*, by paſſing down into the *Intervalls* (behind them) keeping themſelves ſecure from the *Horſimans ſhot*, untill they have *made ready* again; for the *Half-pikes* ſticking in the ground (*Palliſado-wiſe*) *Rank* after *Rank*, the *Intervalls* are ſafely enough *blockt-up*. They may alſo, having *poured-on their ſhot*, fall behind their own *Diviſions* of *Pikes*: This being done, and the *Muſquettiers made ready* again, then they may *give fire* by * *Extraduction*, the *Pikes porting* over them, &c. Let not the *eaſineſſe* of the making, nor the *aptneſſe* of varying from one *form* into another, any way diſparage the work; for thoſe *Figures* that are beſt for *ſervice*, and *ordered* with moſt *facility*, are ever to be preferred. With ſome little alteration, proceed we to a third *Figure*: For the making whereof, Command the two

* *Of Extraction, look but into Chap.*

two *Reer-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers* to *move forwards, and range even a-breſt with the other diviſions of* Muſquettiers. Secondly, Command the *Reer-diviſion (or Battell) of Pikes to move forwards, untill the* Reer *range-even with the Muſquettiers that moved laſt before them.* The *figure* followeth.



Concerning *Firings*, what hath been ſaid of the *former figures*, may in like manner be *performed* on this: therefore, not to ſpend more time about it, wee will come to the *Reducement*. And to that purpoſe, firſt command the *Front-diviſion of Pikes face-about, and move even with the other diviſions of Pikes*, then *ſtand, and face as before*. Secondly, command all the *Diviſions (as well Muſquettiers as Pikes) to face to the right and left inward, and to cloſe together into one Body*. This done, next command them *wheele their Reer into the midſt*, (or *Flanks into the Reer.*) Laſtly, all being *faced* to the *proper-Front*, they are *reduced* as at firſt. I might have further inlarged my ſelf upon this ſubject of *Firings*, *and Figures of Battell*; and have ſhewed variety enough of *formes*, either *Regiment all*, or for *private* and *ſingle Companies*; as *Trine-battels*, *Round-Battels*, the *Croſſe* and *Round* in one, the *Sollid-Square impaled*, with infinite others: But I have advanced farther already, then I at firſt intended; though, well I hope, no further then will be freely, and lovingly accepted; Which if it be, I ſhall conceive my ſelf to have received a *gratefull*, and moſt *ample ſatisfaction*. The hope whereof doth ſomewhat incourage me to proceed a little further: And as I have already ſhewed divers and ſeverall *Motions*; with a large addition of *Formes, and Figures of Battell*; yea, and in all (or the moſt part of them) I have not only given the words of *Command* and *Direction*, to produce them from the ordinary *Square*; but alſo together with the demonſtration of the *Figure*, and direction for the *Firing*, I have in like manner given them proper Directions, for their *Reducements* again: So now, for the ſatisfaction of ſome of the quainter ſort of *Souldiers*, give me leave to adde one *Figure* unto another, untill that by *Firings I reduce Firings*. For the performance whereof, that I may obſerve ſome *method*, I will *digeſt* them into the way of *exerciſe*, &c. *The reducement.*

Nevertheleſſe, before I came to that, give me leave in one word to ſatisfie many, whoſe importunity would have preſt me to have writ ſomething for the exerciſe of the *Cavalry*. For my own part, I ſhould think it a great deal of labour ſpent to little purpoſe therein;

ſeeing

ing such Gentlemen that are desirous of information that way, may buy that excellent Book intituled *Military instruction for the Cavalry*, set forth by that worthy, and well-knowing Gentleman, Captaine *John Cruso* of *Norwich*. Wherein the meanest *Cavalier* may gaine knowledge, and the best may review, and super-vise, the *Idea* of his own experiments.

CHAP. CXIV.

The First dayes Exercise.

HAving brought your *Company* into a place convenient, where you intend to *exercise them*; if you have time enough, you may cause the *File-leaders*, *Corporals*, or *Serjeants*, to instruct them in the [a] *Postures* and *true using* of their *Armes*. Wherein having spent some time to the benefit of the *Company*, upon the [b] *Summons* of the *Drum*, each *File-leader* with his *file*, is to *march* into his *place*. The *Captaine* (or other *Commander*) being at the head of his *Company*, *commands* them to *even their Ranks*, *and to straighten their Files*, and *stand to their* [c] *Order both in Rank and File*. If your [d] *Ensigne* be not already in the field, but in some place neer at hand, then cause your *two innermost files* of *Pikes* to advance; commanding a *Serjeant* with a *Drum*, to *troope* them along to the place of *Rendezvouz* there to fetch their *Colours*. If the place be not nigh at hand, take as many *files* of *Musquettiers*. Having brought the *Ensigne* to the head of the *Pikes*, each *File* returns into his place; the *Officers* likewise withdrawing to their severall *stations*. [e] Silence being commanded, the *Captaine*, (or other *Commander*) begins first to instruct the *Souldiers* in the *severall* [f] *distances*, betwixt *Rank* and *File*, with the wayes to *open* and *close* to them. And if he think fit, to instruct them in the severall *uses* of each *distance*.

Next after *distance*, they are to be instructed in the [g] *Facings*, then in the *Doublings*; next in the *Counter marches*, and lastly, in *wheelings*. In each of which they are to be instructed, according to the opportunity of the *time* and *place*; but especially the capacity of the *Souldier* is to be observed. Wherein, the *Captaine* may doe very well, in each of the *motions* to lay down some speciall *rules* and *observations*; by which the *Souldier* may the better understand what he is to do, and how (the best way) to performe it.

After the *motions* ended, let them *prepare* for *skirmish*. And first you may cause them to *give fire* with *forlorne files*, *marching forth* twenty paces (or there-abouts) before the *Front*. Having all *fired over* that way, they may *give* fire once over, by *advancing two Ranks together*, ten paces before the *Front*. Then let them *give* fire, *even* with the *Front*, and then with the *half-files*: the *Pikes porting*, or *charging* according to discretion. The *Pikes* being *advanced*, and the *Musquettiers marched up even* with their *Front*, you may either [h] *face-about*, *wheele-about*, or *Counter-march*, and so *give fire* in the Reer; your *Pikes* then being *shouldered*. After your *Musquettiers* have *fired over* in the *Reer*, you may (if you please) [i] *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Front*, and so *charge Pikes* to the *Reer*. Which done, *wheele* your *Front* into the *midst*, pass into your place, and *face* them to you. Then (if you will) you may passe your *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank*, through betweene the *Ranks* of *Pikes*, and place them next to the *right-flank* of *Pikes*, opening the *right-flank* of *Musquettiers* to give them way. Then let the [k] *Pikes shoulder*, and *Musquettiers*

[a] *It is very necessary, still so often as time will permit, to instruct the Souldiers in the postures & the well handling of their Armes*

[b] *Each File-leader to lead up his file upon the first Summons of the Drum.*

[c] *Ever to observe to be even in Rank and strait in File and stand at the true distance.*

[d] *Fetching the Ensigne to the head of the Company.*

[e] *Souldiers ought to be very silent.*

[f] *First the Souldiers ought to have their due distance given them, with directions how they must properly to performe.*

[g] *Facings, Doublings, Counter marches, Wheelings, wherein the Souldier ought treatably to be instructed, the Commander always observing, what his Souldiers are he hath to deale withall, and to give his directions accordingly. Never striving to put more into the bottel then it can conveniently hold. Observe to march between each firing and upon each figure as may be convenient.*

[h] *Face-about, or Wheel-about; for to Counter-march if any Enemy be neere, is very dangerous.*

[i] *Wheele your flanks into the front, if your Souldiers have time enough, or otherwise face to the Reer, and charge Pikes.*

[k] *When the Pikes shoulder, the Musquettiers must observe to ranke even with them.*

give fire to the *right* upon a *martch*, their *leaders* leading them up between the *Pikes* and their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*. Having *fired* once over in this way, let them continue their *firing* to the *right*, each *leader* leading up his *file* on the *out-ſide* of the *left-flank* of *Pikes*. Then let the [l] *Pikes advance*, even whilſt the laſt *file* is *giving* of *fire*: and ſo ſoon as the *Pikes* are clear of the *Muſquettiers*, let them *face all* to the *right* and *charge*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and *faced* your *body* again to the *left*, you may then *wheel* your *battel about* to the *right*, and then *facing* the *whole body* to the *left*, the *Muſquettiers* will be all in *Front*. Then let your *Muſquettiers give fire*, and *wheel all off* to the *right*, the *Officers* to that end making an [m] *Interval* for the *left-flank*, or elſe let them *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers* Having given *fire* once (or oftner) *over* that way, let them *give fire* again, and *wheel-off by diviſion* to the *ranking even* with their *Pikes*. That being done, cauſe the *Pikes* to *charge*, the *Muſquettiers giving fire once over*, on that *figure*. The *Pikes* being *advanced*, *face* the whole *body* to the *right*, and cauſe the *Muſquettiers* to *ſtand*, and the *Pikes* to *open* to the *right* and *left* and ſo to make the [n] *hollow ſquare*. Then you may (if you pleaſe) *command* the *Enſign* to *diſplay his Coulours* in the *midſt* of the *hollow*, in ſigne of *triumph*, the *body* either *ſtanding* or *martching*. After which, command the *Pikes* to *cloſe their diviſions*: which being performed command the *Reer-diviſion* of *Muſquettiers*, to double their *Front* of *Pikes* by *diviſion*, and then they will ſtand in forme of [o] Captain *Wallers triple firing*: Let them *give fire* upon that *figure*, and *fall-off* again, according to the directions upon that *figure*. Which being performed, and the *Pikes charged*, and *re-advanced*, the *body* will be abſolutely *reduced* as at the firſt it was before you began your *firings*. Theſe *firings* may (with the *motions*) be ſufficient for the *firſt dayes Exerciſe*. Wherefore for this time, we will *lodge our Coulours*, until by the *Summons* of the *Drum*, we are *called forth* to the *ſecond dayes practiſe*.

[l] Upon this firing advance *pikes* when there is but one file of *muſquettiers* to give fire and cloſe forwards to the diſtance of order.

[m] Theſe kind of *Intervals* ought to contain ſix foot in diſtance, upon ſome other occaſions 12. foot is neceſſary.

[n] The hollow ſquare with Muſquettiers in Front and Reer, *Pikes* on the Flanks [o] Captain *Walers* firing, as in ch. 95.

CHAP. CXV.

The ſecond dayes Exerciſe.

HAving brought your *Souldiers* the ſecond time into the *field*, the body being drawn up into the ordinary ſquare, and every *Officer* vigilant in his place: the *Captain* commandeth [a] *ſilence*, with ſome other general termes of *obſervation*, both for the *leaders* and *right-hand-men*. Having thus commanded them (as before) to *even their* [b] *ranks*, and *ſtreighten* their *files*, he proceeds to ſhew (as formerly) the *diſtances*, the *facings*, the *doublings*, the *Counter-martches*, and the *wheelings*: therewithal inſtructing them either *file*. in *all*, or ſo many of them as the time will permit, and he thinks convenient. Ever (by the way) obſerving that in the Proverb, *A thing once well done, is twice done*. That Commander, that *exerciſeth* his *Souldiers* with [c] good *language*, and with *ſolid reaſons*, ſhall make them better *proficients* than he that ſhall uſe rigid termes, and rough hands. After the *Poſtures*, *Diſtances*, and ſeveral *motions*; that which next followes for this dayes *Exerciſe*, are *firings* and *figures* of *Battel*. So ſoon, therefore, as the *Drum* begins to *beat to a preparative*, the *Muſquettiers* are to begin to [d] *make ready*.

[a] *Silence.*

[b] *Upon all motions be ſure that he Souldiers ſtand even in rank and*

[c] *Good words more available than blows or ill language.*

[d] *The muſquettiers make ready to give fire.*

And firſt, you may cauſe them to *give fire* on the [e] *Horn-battel*, ſtill *martching-up* into their *leaders ground*, by that means preſerving their *Figure*.

[e] *Horn battel as in* chap 7.

Secondly, let the *Muſquettiers cloſe* their *diviſions* before their *Pikes*, and then *give fire* upon the [f] *demy-Hearſe-Battel*: *falling-off* preſently, either all to the *right*, (the one half paſſing down an *Interval*) or to the *right* and *left* by *diviſion*; and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*.

[f] *Demy-Herſe as in* ch. 6 *Between each firing cauſe your Body to martch either in forme of Battalia, extended in length: or upon any other figure, ſo that it may conveniently be done without diſorder.*

The third time of their *firing*, let them *wheel-off* by *diviſion*, and *flank* their *Pikes*; and when they have *fired over* that way, let the *Pikes charge*.

For the fourth *firing*, let them *give fire even* with the *Front* of *Pikes wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*.

Then let them *fire even* with the *half-files*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of the *Pikes*. The *Pikes* (you are to underſtand) ought to *charge* all the time of the laſt *Firing*; who being *advanced*, *wheel* your *Battel* about to the *right* or *left*.

A firing in the Reer.

Then your *Muſquettiers* being in the *Reer* of your *Pikes*, let your *ſixth Firing* be to the *Reer*: the *Muſquettiers wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves before the *Front* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*, next behind the *Reer* of *Pikes*. Having *fired once over* that way, let them *give fire* over again, and *flank their Pikes*: which being in like manner performed, command them to *wheel* their *flanks* into the *Front*, and then *face* to the *Reer*, and *charge Pikes* at the *in-ſide* of the *right-foot*, with their *Swords drawn* in their *right-hands*.

* *inſtead of giving fire over their Pike-men, wheeling* either all *off* to the *right* through *Intervals*; or elſe by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *files*. Otherwiſe (for want of room) the *firſt-rank* of *Muſquettiers* having *given fire*, let them *kneel* or *crowch* low upon the ground, and *make ready* again; the *ſecond-rank* in like manner *firing* and *kneeling*: and ſo for the reſt. Having all *fired once over* in that manner, let the *Pikes advance*, and put up their *Swords*: the *Muſquettiers*, in like manner, are to *riſe*, then to *even* their *Ranks* and *ſtreighten* their *Files*.

they may give fire by Extraduction, as in Chap. 80.

For the *eight firing*, you may face the *Body* to the *Reer*, (or if you will continue your *Firing*, the ſame way) then *wheel* your *Battel about*, and having opened your *Intervals*, your *form* will be the [a] *Broad-fronted phalang*, or *Broad-fronted Battel*. Let theſe *give fire*, the firſt time *falling* (or *wheeling*) all *off* to the *right*, and placing themſelves in the *Front* of the *Pikes*, and *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*. The ſecond time of *Firing*, let them *wheel all-off* to the *right*, (as before) and place themſelves in the *reere* of the *Pikes*, which follow next after their *own diviſions*. In the *interim* of the *laſt two Ranks firing*, cauſe your *Pikes* to *Port*; but when the *Muſquettiers* are *cleared away*, the *Pikes may charge*.

[a] *This Figure is moſt commonly called the Broad fronted Battel But moſt properly the Long fronted Battel; for that the length is the extenſion between flank and flank, this is in ch. 80.*

When the *Pikes* are *advanced*, and that they have *cloſed* their *diviſions*, for the *ninth Firing*, *face* them to one of the *Flanks*, and *wheel* them into a *Semi-circle* or [b] *Convex half-moon*; where the *Muſquettiers* being *outer-moſt*, *give fire* upon that *Figure*: the firſt time falling behind the *Muſquettiers* of their own *diviſions*; the ſecond time of *firing*, cauſe them to place themſelves behind their *Pikes*. For further *directions* look back upon *Chap.* 79. which diſcourſeth of the *Convex half-moon*. The *Pikes* may alſo *charge*, and the *Muſquettiers give fire* over again, according to diſcretion. The *Pikes* being *readvanced*, *face* the whole *body* to one of the *Flanks* and *martch* them out *Herſe-wiſe*: Then command them to *double their ranks to the right*: which being done, command that *Flank* which are *Muſquettiers* to *double* the *contrary Flank* by *diviſion*: which being performed, all the *Muſquettiers* will be in *Front* and *Reer*: then cauſe the *Reer diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* to *double*, the *front* of *Pikes* by *diviſion*. Then let them *give fire* on that *Figure*, as you may ſee further directions in *Chap.* 93. The *Pikes* having *charged*, and *advanced* again.

[b] *convex-half moon, as in ch. 79*

For the *eleventh Firing*, firſt *face* the whole *body* to the *right*; then cauſe the *half-files* that then are, to *face* to the *Reer*; and ſo let the *Muſquettiers give fire* to the *Front* and *Reer*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. The *Pikes* may alſo *charge*

to

to the *Front* and *Reer*; which being performed, *face* them all again to their [c] *Leader*.

For the *twelfth Firing*, make the *Plinthyum* or *four-fronted battel*: the *Angles* whereof being filled with *Musquettiers*. For further satisfaction, look upon *Chap.* 102. which gives *direction* both for the *motion* and *reducing* thereof. Next *face* the whole *body* to that part which was the *Front* before the *last firing* began. Then, if you would have your *Ensign* to *display* in an *hollow square*, cause your *Musquettiers* to *stand* and *half-files* of *Pikes* to *face* to the *Reer*; and so both *divisions* of *Pikes* to *martch*, until their *last ranks* are *even* with the *front* and *reer* of *Musquettiers*: Then *face* all to their *Leader*. If you please, the *Musquettiers* may *give fire* upon this *hollow square*, as they *martch*, to both *Flanks*; still *leading-up* their *files* on the *in side* of their own *divisions*: and this will make the *thirteenth firing*.

The leader is then conceived to stand on that part which was the right-flank the which was the front of the eleventh Firing.

But, by this time, our *powder* being *spent*, our *men weary*, and *night* approaching, we will come to the *Reducement*. Wherefore, first cause the *Pikes* to *close* their *divisions*, and the *Musquettiers* to *martch-up even* with their *Front* of *Pikes*. Then let the whole *Body wheel* their *Flanks* into the *Reer*; which being done, all the *Musquettiers* will be in the *Reer*. Then (if you will) *face* to the *reer*, and *give fire*, causing your *Musquettiers* to *wheel-off* by *division*, and to *flank* their *Pikes*. Or else, cause your *Musquettiers* to *open* to the *right* and *left*, and *double* your *Front* of *Pikes* by *division*. Which being done, *double files* to the *left*, and they will be all *reduced* as at first. Wherefore, we will now *lodge our Colours*, and conclude our *second dayes Exercise*.

CHAP. CXVI.

The third dayes Exercise.

HAving the third time (as formerly) brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, it is very necessary, in the first place; that they be taught the *Postures* of each *Arms*; either by the *file-leaders*, or some other of the *Officers*. Wherein, they must be careful to instruct them in the *Firings*, both to *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: As to *give fire* to the *front advancing* to *give fire* to the *Front*, upon a *stand*, to *give fire* to the *reer* upon a *Martch*: to *fire* to *either flank*, *martching* or *standing*. As also to instruct them in *Distances*, *Facings*, *Doublings*, *Counter-martches*, and *Wheelings*; that so they may be the more *apt* and *capable*, when they shall be brought into a *Body*. Having spent some time in the *exercising* of *files*, let the *Drumm summon* each *file-leader* to his place; the *Ensigne* be fetch to the *head* of the *Company*; the *Captain* command *silence*; and the *Souldiers* tender *obedience*. The *Ranks* being *evened* and the *Files straightened*, the *Captain* (according to his accustomed manner) begins to instruct them in the *Distances* and *Motions*: And after the performance of so many of them as he shall think fit for the present *Exercise*, he commands the *Drumms* to *beat*, and *Musquettiers* to *make ready*; and so causeth them to *give fire* * three or four several wayes, after the ordinary manner of *firing* in the *Front*.

Whosoever it be that teacheth the Postures of the Musquet, ought to be very diligent in his instruction, concerning the well-manniging of their arms; that they may not only fire to the Front Reer and Flank, but that they observe order in their motion, which will better their execution. The File-leader, if he have time, may instruct his File in the Distances, and the several motions.

Then cause your *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank*, to *give fire* to the *Reer*; and the *Musquettiers* of the *right-flank*, to *give fire* to the *Right*. This *firing* is to be performed upon a *martch*, the *Pike shouldred*.

For the *second firing*, let them *give fire* to both *flanks*. The [a] *gathering firing*.

For the *third*, let them *fire* to both *flanks*, *drawing them up* between the *divisions* of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*.

* By drawing forth of loose Files or otherwise. a The gathering firing as in Chap. 83.

For the *fourth Firing*, let them *give fire* again to both *Flanks*, *leading them up*, after they have *fired*, between the [b] *midſt* of *Pikes*. When the *laſt files* are *firing*, *advance* your *Pikes*, and *cloſe* your *ranks* forwards to their *Order*. Then, *face* to the *right* & *left*, & *charge* your *Pikes*. Your *Pikes* being *advanced*, and *faced* again to the *Front-proper*, all your *Muſquettiers* will be in the *midſt*.

[b] *Drawing up the Muſquettiers between the Pikes, as in Chap. 87.*

Then open them ſome *Intervals*, and let the *fifth firing* be to the *Front wheeling* all *off* to the [c] *right*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*. Then cauſe the *Pikes* to *charge*, & when your *Pikes* are *advanced* again, let your *half-files face-about* to the *right*.

[c] *As in Ch. 101.*

And ſo the *ſixth firing* may be to the *front* and *Reer*; the *Muſquettiers* of the *front-diviſion*, *wheeling-off* to the *right*; thoſe of the *Reer-diviſion*, *wheeling-off* to the *left*; either of them placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions*. The *Muſquettiers* having *fired once* or *twice over*, *wheel* your *Flanks* into the *Front* and *Reere*, and cauſe your *Pikes* to *charge* to the *Front* and *Reer*. The *Pikes* being again *advanced*, and all *faced* to their former *Front*, *wheel Front* and *Reer* into both *Flanks*, and *face* as before.

For the *ſeventh firing*, make the [d] *Plinthyum*, or *four-fronted Battel*; the *Angles* being filled with *Pikes*: and let them *give fire*, and *charge* their *Pikes*, according to *directions* for that *Figure*. As likewiſe, the *firing* being ended, *reduce* the men back into their places, as they were before this *firing* began. Then, *wheel-off* your *Front* by *diviſion*; which brings your *Muſquettiers* upon the *Flanks*, but doth not *reduce* your men juſtly into their places, if your *number* be any thing great.

[d] *The plinthyum is in Chap: 101.*

From thence make them a perfect [e] *Croſſe-battel*, and let your *Muſquettiers give fire*, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*.

[e] *The croſſe Battel as in Chap: 99*

For the *ninth firing*, let them *give fire* as before; but place themſelves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*; the *Pikes* moving forwards into their *ground*, and *charging*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, command your *Flank-diviſions* to *face-about* to the *right*, and to *cloſe* their *diviſions*. Then command the *Front* and *Reer-diviſions* to *wheel* their *Flanks* into the *Reer*: which being done, *face* them to the *Front-proper*, (that is) after the *right File-leaders*.

For the *tenth Firing*, (your *Muſquettiers* being ſtill in the *midſt*) let them *give fire* by [f] *Introduction* twice over, (ſtill beginning with the *ſecond rank*) the *Pikes* moving ſoftly forward.

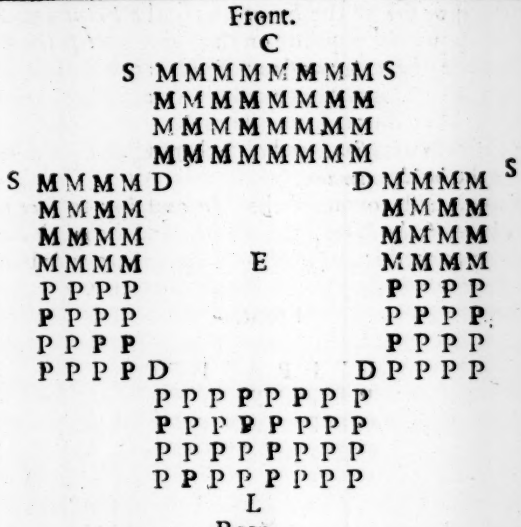
[f] *Introduction, as in Chap. 77.*

For the *eleventh Firing*, let them *give fire* by *Introduction*, (beginning with the *Bringers-up.*) The *Pikes* may *charge* at diſcretion: Then let the *Muſquettiers ſtand*, and the *Pikes march forwards*, *cloſing* their *diviſions* before the *Muſquettiers*.

And ſo let the *twelfth Firing* be by way of *Extraduction*. Let the *Pikes charge*; which being performed, command the *firſt* and *laſt* four *ranks* to *ſtand*, and the reſt of the *Body* to *face* to the *right* and *left*, and ſo to move, until they are clear of the *ſtanding ranks*. Then let the whole *Body face-about* to the *right*, and let the *Enſign* diſplay his *Colours* in the *midſt*, the *Body* ſtanding in this following *forme*.

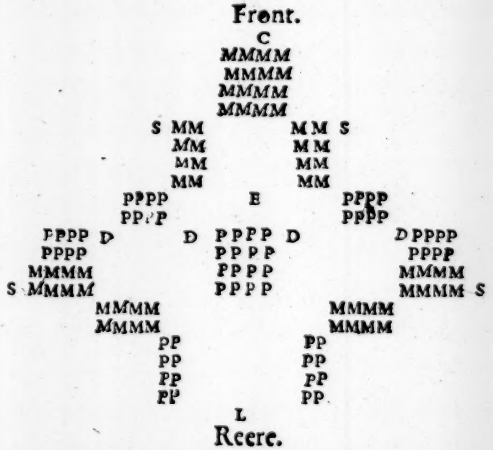
This firing is demonſtrated in Chap. 80.

Front



The *Musquettiers* now being fore-most, let the thirteenth be a *triple firing* to the *front*, having *fired*, let them *wheel-off* to the *right* and *left*, the *front-divisions* falling in the *reere* of themselves: the *flank-divisions* in the *reer of their Pikes*; they moving forwards, and *maintaining* the *Musquettiers ground*. The *Pikes* on the *flanks* may *charge*: the *Musquettiers* of the *front-division* had need be *Half-pike-men*, that so they may defend themselves from the *Horse*.

For the fourteenth *firing* make the *Crowne-battell*: for the producing whereof observe these following *directions*. First, command the *foure middle-most ranks, of the flanke-divisions face to the right and left outward, and move clear of the standing parts*. Secondly, command the *foure inner-most files of the front and reer-divisions to move forwards untill they stand cleare of the same Arms*: This being rightly performed, this following *figure* will be produced.



In

In this *forme* you may *give fire* to the *Front*, or to the *Front* and *Reere* at diſcretion: having performed what you hold requiſite on this *figure*; *cloſe* the *diviſions* back again into their *places*, (that done) *Face the two flank-diviſions* to the *right* and *left inward*, and let them *cloſe* in like manner. This makes your *body* ſixteen deep, four *ranks* of *Muſquets* and foure *ranks* of *Pikes*, then four other *ranks* of *ſhot*, and four of the contrary *Arms*. Next, *wheele off your Front by diviſion*, and *cloſe* them againe; this nothing altereth the *forme*; but only brings the *inſide outward*.

Or wheele your front inward to the Reer.

For the fifteenth *firing*, firſt command the *Muſquettiers* to *face to the right and left outward, and move cleere of the Pikes*, then ſtand, and the *whole body face-about to the right*, the *Captaine* going to the head of his *Pikes*, ſhall there find all his *proper file-leaders faced* towards him, and the whole *body* in this following forme.

Front.

C

P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P

S M M M M D D M M M M S
M M M M E M M M M
M M M M M M M M
M M M M M M M M

P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P
P P P P P P P P

M M M M D D M M M M
M M M M M M M M
M M M M L M M M M
M M M M M M M M

Reere.

Let the *Muſquettiers give fire to the Reere*, and *both flanks martching*. They may *give fire* and keep their *Figure*, or they may *give fire* and *flank* their *Pikes*: If the latter, then command the *reer-diviſion cloſe forwards*, and all is *reduced* as at the firſt. If the former, then *all the diviſions are to cloſe forwards*. And here with we will conclude our *third dayes Exerciſe*, *and lodge our Colours*, untill that the bellowing *Drum* call us the fourth time into the *field*, to give an account of our proficiency. Till when, we will leave our *Souldiers* to repaire to their *quarters*, reſt their *limbs*, refreſh their *ſpirits*, and repleniſh their *bandiliers*

The Reducement.

CHAP. CXVII.

The fourth dayes Exerciſe.

HAving the fourth time brought your *Souldiers* into the *field*, and (as formerly) cauſed them to be inſtructed in the *Poſtures* (both of *Muſquet* and *Pike*) that ſo they may be capable to uſe them both with *agility*, & with *ſafety*. As likewiſe taught them their divers wayes of *diſtance*, with the ſeverall and various *motions*; not forgetting particularly to inſtruct them with *rules* & *pertinent reaſons* to every one of them: that ſo they may not only learn to do, but like *rationall men underſtand* what they do. Which being deliberately performed, and each *Officer* diſpoſed to his ſeverall *place*, the *ranks* being *evened*, and

and the *files straightened*; the *Captain commands*, the *Drum beats*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* for *skirmish*, &c.

The *first firing*, being by drawing-forth the *inner-most files* of each *flank* of *Musquettiers*, to the *right* and *left*, obliquely before the *Front*; and so to *stand* and *give fire*. Having *given fire*, let the *Bringers-up lead* them back into their *places*. And, in the mean time, let the next *inner-most files lead-forth* and *fire*, after the same manner; and so likewise the rest, until all the *Musquettiers* have *fired once over* that way. *You may either draw forth the inner-most or outer-most at discretion.*

For the *second Firing*, let them *give fire* [a] *obliquely*, and *crosse* the *Front*, both at once. [a] *As in Chap. 99.*

For the *third*, let them *give fire obliquely*; the *Musquettiers* standing before the *Pikes*, in form of an *hollow wedge*. Upon this *Firing* the *Musquettiers fire outward*; whereas in the *other* they *fire inward*.

For the *fourth Firing*, let them *fire* upon the [b] *oblique* W. For the manner of these *Firings*, with the wayes both how to *make* them and *reduce* them, I refer you to their several places, where I have shewn them plainly. [b] *As in Chap. 97.*

For the *fifth Firing*, let them *give fire obliquely* on the *Fort-battell*; that is to say, to *Front*, *Reer*, or *Flanks*. These *oblique Firings*, howsoever that some of them may at some times be useful, yet here they are inserted but for variety of *exercise*, and no otherwise to be accounted of. In all these *oblique Firings* the *Pikes* never come to *charge*; but stand either in a *hollow* or *solid Square*, in danger of the *Enemies shot*; themselves neither being able to *offend the Enemy*, nor to defend themselves. And yet, if by frequent *practice* they were *inured* to the use of the *long Bow* fastened to their *Pikes*, I make no question but that when they should become expert in the use of the [c] *Bow and Pike*, they would not only be a *terrour* to their *Enemies*, by the continual *showers* of *Arrows* which they would send amongst them; but also they would be a great means to *rout* their *Battalions*, and utterly *break* their *Order*. On the contrary, if men should be put to use the *Bow and Pike*, and have not first well learned the use of the *Pike* alone, they would be so *cumbersome* to themselves, and so *troublesome* to others, that instead of *spoyling* their *Enemies*, they would *rout themselves*. But pardon this digression, whilest I proceed to the rest of this *dayes Exercise*. [c] *Expert Bow-men may be very serviceable.* [d] *In this form if the Musquets ground their half pikes, and be Pikes open to the right and left so the utmost Angle, then the musketiers after that they have fired may retreat to the Reer of the Pikes whilest they charge to the Flanks.*

The *sixth Firing*, being in form of a a *Romane* T, is to be made as followeth: Let the *Pikes stand*, and the *Flanks* of *Musquettiers wheel* into the *Front*: then let them *give fire*, making an *Interval* upon each *Flank*; the *Musquettiers* of the *Right-flank wheeling off* to the *right*, the *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank* to the *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*. When the *Musquettiers* have *fired once* or *twice over*, let the *Pikes passe thorough*, and *wheel* their *Front* into the *midst*; and then *facing* to the *Front*, let them *charge* their *Pikes*: and from thence having *advanced* their *Pikes*, let the *Commander passe* to the *right-flank*, and *face* the whole *Body* to the *right*. Then *wheele* the *Battell about* to the *left*, until the *Body* be brought into a *round Battell*: from whence we will begin the *seventh Firing*.

The *Figure* being made, *face* the whole *Body* to the *Center*, and give them their *directions*, what they have to do. When they have received their *instructions*, let them all *face-about* to the *right*, *present*, and *give fire*. The *first time* of their *firing* placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *Musquettiers*: The *second firing*, *counter-marching* to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*: The *Pikes* at the same time are to move forwards into the *Musquettiers ground*; where they may *charge over hand*, and (if need be) at the *foot*; the *Musquettiers giving fire* over them, as in the *Convex half moon*. The *firing* being ended, and the *Pikes advanced*, let the *Commander march-forth* of the *round Battell*, at that part where he shall find all his *proper File-leaders*: [e] *A quaint Reducement for a knowing Company; but not for a large or ignorant number.*

Then let the whole *Body* be *faced* to that part, and the *File-leaders* cauſed to *marteh-forth even-a-breſt*, the *Muſquettiers* and *Pike-men* following their *leaders* and *martching* until the *Body* have attained their *orderly Square* again. But note, that all your *Muſquettiers* are in the *midſt* of the *Battel*.

The eighth firing is the impaled ſolid ſquare.

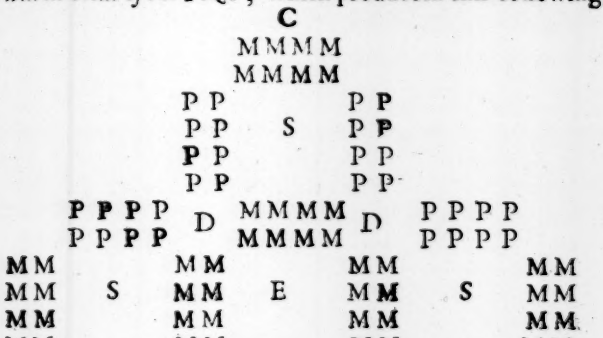
For the *Eighth Firing*, make the *impaled ſolid Square*: the way to perform it is as followeth.

Your *Pikes* being now the *Flankers*, *draw-forth the moity* of the *files* of *Pike-men* from the *right-flank*, croſs the *front* of the *Body*, (taking the *out-moſt files*) let half the *files* of *Pike-men* of the *left-flank* be *drawn croſſe* the *Reer*, following their *Bringers-up*.

Then *face* all your *Muſquettiers* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: The *Pikes* may *charge* all *over-hand*, and (if need be) at the *foot* with their *Swords drawn*; the *Muſquettiers firing* over them. Having *fired*, *charged*, and *advanced* their *Pikes*, *draw-off* the *Pikes* again, from the *Front* and *Reer*, into their *places*.

The hollow fronted Croſſe, the Muſquets making the hollow, is demonſtraced in *chap.* 100.

For the *ninth Firing*, (the *Muſquettiers* being ſtill in the *middle*) make the *hollow-fronted Croſſe-battel*; the *Pike-men* making the *hollow*, upon the *Flanks* of the *Muſquettiers*. For the making whereof, *wheel* the *Front* of the *two firſt Ranks* into the *midſt*: That being done, *wheel* the *Reer* of the *two laſt Ranks* after the ſame manner; and then *face* the reſt of the *Body* to the *right* and *left*, and cauſe them to *martch* until there be a *Square hollow in the midſt* of the *Battel*. Then command them to *face* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: which being in like manner performed, cauſe the *Pikes* (who are now in the *Front* of the *Muſquettiers*) to *open* to the *right* and *left*; the *laſt rank* of *Pikes* *ranking-even* with the *firſt rank* of *Muſquettiers*. The *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* upon this *Figure*, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*. If need be, the *Pikes* may *charge* to the *Angle*, whilſt the *Muſquettiers give fire* ſtraight forwards. This being done, and the *Pikes* again *advanced*, for the *tenth Figure* make the *quintipled-hollow-ſquare*, by commanding the *two firſt ranks of each diviſion*, *move forwards clear of the Pikes*; which produceth this following *Figure*.



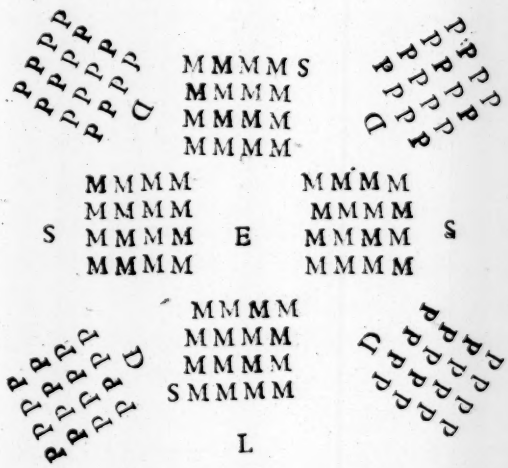
When

When you would come to *firing*, cauſe the *Muſquettiers* in the *midſt* to *cloſe to the Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*; and ſo they may *give* fire accordingly. The *firſt firing* the *Muſquettiers* may make good their *ground*: the *ſecond* time of *firing-over*, they are to *rank-even* with the *Pikes*: the *third* time of *firing*, the *Pikes* move a little forward, and the *Muſquettiers* loſe ground; which brings them again into the *hollow-fronted Croſſe*: all the while the *Muſquettiers* are *giving fire*, the *Pikes* are to *port* and *charge* to the *Angles*. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, Command them to *cloſe their diviſions before the Muſquettiers*: that done, Command all the *Pikes* to *face to the right*, *and move into the ſpace between the Angles of the Muſquettiers*; which produceth this following *Figure*; from whence we will make our *eleventh* Firing.

When the *Muſquettiers firſt give fire*, they will *ſtand in the form of a hollow diamond*. I forbear the figure, it may eaſily be conceived.

Front-proper.

C

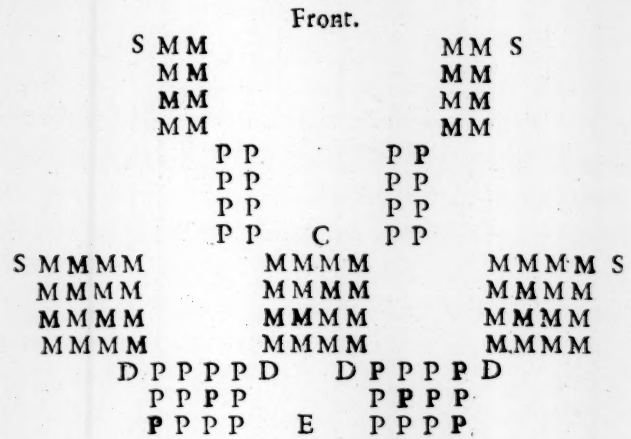


On this *double Croſſe-battell* you may, if you pleaſe, *give fire* to the *Front*, *Reer*, and *Flanks*: it is an excellent *Figure* for *Muſqnettiers* with *Half-pikes*; for that they may move forwards and ground their *Half-pikes*, and then *give fire*, *one*, *two*, *three*, or *foure Ranks* together, *wheeling-off*, & maintaining the place where their *Half-pikes are grounded* (*Palliſado-wiſe*:) or they may fire, and *retreit* into their Figure, and there *make ready* and *fire* again: the *Pikes* may *charge*, &c. The eleventh Firing.

When the *Pikes* are again *advanced*, let them move to the *left* into their places before the *Muſquettiers*, and the whole *Body face* to the *Front*.

To make the *twelfth Figure*, firſt, Command the *Muſquettiers of the Flank-diviſions to interchange ground with their Pikes*, *and then to move forwards*, *untill the Reere be advanced even with the Front-angle of their owne Pikes*. Secondly, Command the *Muſquettiers of the Front-diviſion to ſleeve-up to the right and left of their Pikes*, *untill the Reere be advanced even with the Front of Pikes*. Thirdly, Command the *Muſquets of the Reere to move forwards*, *and range-even with the Muſquettiers of the flank-diviſions*. Fourthly, Command the *Front-diviſion* (*as well Muſquets as Pikes*) *to open to the right and left*, *leaving an Intervall for the Muſquettiers behind* And when they be opened, let the muſquettiers move forwards as in the Figure.

them. Laſtly, *cloſe the Pikes forwards in the Reer*, that their *front* may be *even with the reer of the two other diviſions.* The *Figure* followeth.



The *Body* ſtanding in this Figure, the two *front-diviſions* of *Muſquettiers* may *give fire* once or twice over, and then *flank* their *Pikes*: They may fire again and fall in the *reer* of their *Pikes.* One, two, or three of the other *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers* may *move* forwards and *give fire*, the two *front-diviſions* of *Pikes* in the meane time *charging.* Having *fired* twice or thrice over at diſcretion, the two *middle diviſions* of *Pikes* are to *move forwards* to *port* and *charge*, the *Muſquettiers* in the meane time *firing* and *loſing ground.* By which meanes the *flank-diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* will againe *flank* their *Pikes.* Then, becauſe we will come to *reducement*, Firſt, command the *middle diviſion* of *Muſquettiers* (the which pertaine to the *reere*) to *move back into their places.* Secondly, command the *two front-diviſions to cloſe together.* Thirdly, command the *Muſquettiers and Pikes* of the *flank-diviſions* to *interchange ground*, and then *cloſe their diviſions.* Fourthly, command the *front* and *reer-diviſions* to *wheele their Muſquettiers* into the *midſt.* Laſtly, *wheel-off your battell by diviſion*, after which having *cloſed* their *diviſions*, they are perfectly *reduced* as at firſt. And herewith we will conclude this dayes *Exerciſe*, and leave our *Souldiers* to reſt, untill that the *morrows Sun*, and the *thundering Drum* ſhall call us forth againe into the *Field.*

CHAP. CXVIII.

The fifth dayes Exerciſe.

**The Poſtures cannot be to often practiſed by young Souldiers.*

HAving the fit time brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, if you have leiſure, it will not be amiſſe for to cauſe them to be inſtructed (in the firſt place) in the *Poſtures* of the *Pike* and *Muſquet.* For thoſe *Souldiers* which by often practiſe of their * *Poſtures* are growne

grown *perfect*, will mannage their *Armes* with *eaſe*, *ſurety*, and *celerity*, when on the contrary, the *unpractiſed Souldier*, will be a trouble to himſelf, a danger to his *fellowes*, and a dormant to his *Enemies*.

After the *Poſtures*, each *file* being drawn into his place; and the *Enſigne* (according to the former directions) brought to the head of the *Pikes*; the *ranks evened*, and the *files ſtraitned*, the *Captaine* having commanded *ſilence*, and delivered himſelf in ſuch termes as the preſent occaſion doth require, (ever preferring the *induſtrious* and *painfull*, and on the contrary, blaming the *careleſs* and the *ſlothfull*) he next proceeds to inſtruct them in their *ſeverall diſtances*; and theſe indeed are the *ground* of all *motion*: ſeeing that without *diſtance*, the *motions* cannot be *executed*. Next to the *diſtances*, they are to be inſtructed in the *motions*, ever obſerving to each *motion*, its due *diſtance*.

Diſtance is the ground of motion, becauſe no motion can properly be performed without its due diſtance

Next after *poſtures*, *diſtance*, and *motions*; let the reſt of the *dayes Exerciſe* be ſpent in *firings* and *figures* of *Battell*. Each *Officer* having now received his ſeverall *Charge*; The *Captain commands*, the *Drums beat*, and the *Muſquettiers make ready*.

Let the *firſt firing* be performed by *leading-forth* the *outermoſt file* of each *flanke*, twenty or thirty *paces* before the *front*. When being come to the place of *firing*, (where they may ſurely do *execution*) let them *rank four*. That is to ſay, the three men next behind the *right-hand-file-leader*, ſhall *rank* inward to the *left*, even with their *file-leaders*: the three next *men* after the *left-hand file-leader ranking* inwards to the *right*, even *a breaſt* with the *leader* of their *file*, the reſidue of each file, keeping themſelves in *file*, and cloſing forwards to the *diſtance* of *order*, juſt after their *file-leaders*. The firſt four of each *file*, having *preſented*, *fired*, and *wheeled-away*; the *laſt four men* (being the *Reer-half-files*) in the *interim* of their *wheeling-off*, *rank* to the *right* and *left* inward: *preſenting*, *firing*, and *wheeling-off*, (as aforeſaid) and placing themſelves in the *reer* of the former part of their *files*, which *wheeled-away* before them. The ſecond *files* are then to *lead forth* and to do the like, and ſo ſucceſſively, the *reſt*, untill they have all *fired over*, this way.

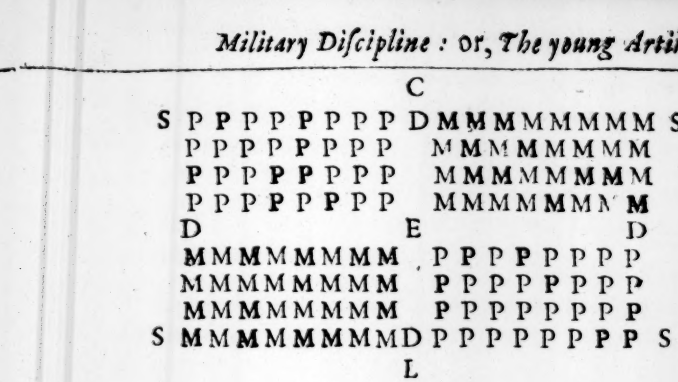
For further direction to this firing turne to cap. 73.

For the ſecond *Firing*, let the *outer-moſt files* lead forth to the ſame *diſtance* before the *Front*, whither being come, as to the *place* wherein to do their *execution*, let the *files ranke* to the *right* and *left inward*; and ſo *fire altogether*: *wheeling-off*, and placing themſelves as in the former *firings*. The reſidue of the other *files* of *Muſquettiers*, at the ſame time *martching forth*, *giving* fire, and ſtill placing themſelves *file-wiſe*, on the *innermoſt part* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*, and next to the *out-ſide* of *Pikes*. *Asinc 92.*

For the third *firing*, ſend forth the four *firſt ranks* about *ten paces* before the *front*, Let the two firſt *ranks preſent* together, the ſecond *rank cloſing forwards*, and *preſenting* between the *Intervals* (or ſpaces) of the *firſt rank* & ſo pour out their *ſhot* together. When they have *given* fire, let the *firſt ranks firſt wheele away*, the ſecond *ranks* following them. The other *firing*, *cloſing*, *preſenting*, *firing*, and *wheeling-away*, as aforeſaid, falling in the *Reer* of their own *diviſions* of *Muſquettiers*. The next four *ranks moving forward*, and doing the like, &c.

Let the fourth *firing* be performed to both *flanks* upon a ſtand: *facing* the whole *body* to the *right* and *left*, there *firing*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. Whilſt the two laſt *Ranks* are *giving* fire, let the *Pikes part*, and when the *Muſquettiers* have fired, and *wheeled-off*, let them *charge*.

Having *advanced their Pikes*, *face* the whole *body* to that part where you ſhall find your *file-leaders* of *Muſquettiers*; then will all your *Muſquettiers* be in *front* and *reer*. Next command your *half-files* that then are, to double your *front* to the *left intire*, which being done, this following *Figure* will be produced.



The *Muſquettiers* may *give* fire on this *Figure*, to the *Front and Reere*, or to the *right and left*: The *Firing* by me intended, is to both *Flanks*; to which purpoſe, *face the Body to the right and left by diviſion.* Let the *Drumme beat*, the *Muſquettiers make ready*, *preſent*, and *give* fire, all *wheeling-off* to the *left*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer of their own diviſions.* The *Pikes* may alſo *port*, and *charge* as they ſee occaſion. The *Muſquettiers* having all *fired*, the *Pikes* again *advanced*, and the whole *Company faced* to their *former-Front*, command the *half-ranks* of the *right* (both *Muſquettiers* & *Pikes*) to *march*, and the *half-ranks* of the *left-flank* to follow in the *Reer*.

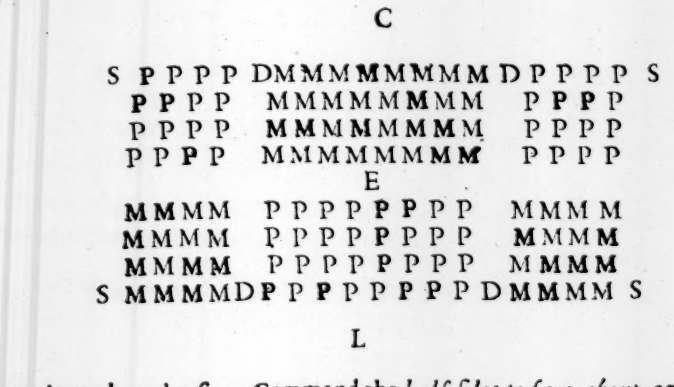
This is the fifth firing. Half-ranks of the right or left-flank both intend the ſame think.

Having given them ſome time of breathing, then for the *ſixth firing* cauſe the *half-files* that then are (*Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) to *face to to Reer.* Which being done, let the *Muſquettiers give fire to the Front and Reer*, upon a ſtand, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of their *Pikes*; they *moving forwards*, and maintaining the *Muſquettiers ground.* The *Pikes* are then to *charge*, when they are cleared of their *Muſquettiers.* Which being done, and they again *advanced*, *face them all to their former Front.*

The ſixth firing.

For the *ſeventh firing*, Command *Half-files to double the Front inward*, *Entire.* To which purpoſe, *open the Front-half-files* (both *Muſquettiers* and *Pikes*) *to the right and left*, for receiving the *half-files* of both *Armes* within them: which being executed, each *Armes* will ſtand in three *diviſions*, as you may perceive by the following *Figure.*

The ſeventh firing.



When you intend to *give fire*, Command the *half-files to face-about*, and performe the *firing* to the *front and reer*, *wheeling-off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *Reer* of

of their own diviſions. The *Pikes* may *charge* at diſcretion. Having *advanced* your *Pikes*, and *faced the whole body* to you, let your *eighth Firing* be upon the *Checker-Battell* (of eight *diviſions*.) To make the which, Command *Left-flank double the Right-flank by diviſion.* This Command being executed, the *Checker-Battell* is finiſhed; you may *give fire* upon it to the *Front, Reer and Flanks*, either *ſtanding*, or *martching*: the *Muſquettiers* ſtill placing themſelves either *after*, or *within their own diviſions of like Arms.* The *Pikes* may alſo *charge*, as you ſee occaſion, &c. Many *forms* might be made from this *Checker-Figure*, the which for the preſent I omit: Therefore, Command the *firſt and laſt four Ranks to face to the left, and martch*; being moved clear of the *ſtanding part of the Body*, let them *cloſe their diviſion*, and *face to the front again*: this brings them into *ſix diviſions.* Next, Command the *eight inner-moſt files to face-about*, and *martch into their places.* The *half-files* being *faced-about*, and *martched clear-off*, then are the *Front-half-files* to *cloſe their diviſion*: this being performed, and all rightly *faced*, the *Muſquettieres* will be in the *midſt*, and the *Pikes* on the *Front* and *Reer.* Let your *ninth Firing* be to the *Reer* and *Right-flank* together. And to that purpoſe, Firſt, Command *half-files double your Front to the right entire*: that being done, let the *half-files that doubled, wheel their Battell to the right*; and then being *faced to the Front*, they will ſtand as in this following *Figure.*

These 8. in moſt files, are the half files of muſquets and Pikes which doubled the front inward intire

E C

S P P P P P P P P D P P P P D M M M M S
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M
P P P P P P P P P P P P M M M M

M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
M M M M M M M M P P P P M M M M
S M M M M M M M M D P P P P D M M M M S
L

As the *Body* now ſtands *faced*, you may conceive a *Firing* to the *Reer* and *Right-flank*, *martching*; the which may be performed theſe two ſeveral wayes: * The *Muſquettiers* of the *Reer* having *fired*, may *wheel-off to the right*, and place themſelves next after the *Pikes*, in the *Front of their own diviſions.* The *Muſquettiers* of the *Right-flank* having at the ſame inſtant *fired*, may place themſelves in the *in-ſide* of their *own diviſions next the Pikes.* A ſecond way to place themſelves, after that they have *given fire*, is this: The *Muſquettiers*, which fire in the *Reer*, are to place themſelves before the *Front of Pikes*; the *Muſquettiers* of the *Flank* place themſelves on the *in-ſide* of the *Right-flank of Pikes.* The whole *body* may ſtand, and *Pikes charge to the Reer and right-flank.* If on this *Figure* you would *give fire* ſtanding, then *face the right-flank to the right, and left-flank to the Reer*; and open an *Interval* in the *middle* of the *left-flank* for the *Muſquettiers* to move thorow. The firſt time of their *firing* the *Muſquettiers may place themſelves in the Reer of their own diviſion of ſhot.* The ſecond time, *they may flank their Pikes whileſt they port.* The third time, *they may fall in the reer of their Pikes*; they in the mean time *charging.* Let the *tenth Firing* be performed by way of *Extraduction*: the which being done, the *Pikes* having *charged*, and being again *advanced*, Firſt Cauſe thoſe that ſtand *faced* to the *right*, to *wheel their Battell back again to the left.* Secondly, Command the *Left-flank*

Note that there muſt a diviſion be made between the midſt of the Muſquettiers and Pikes of the left-flank for the muſquets to move through.

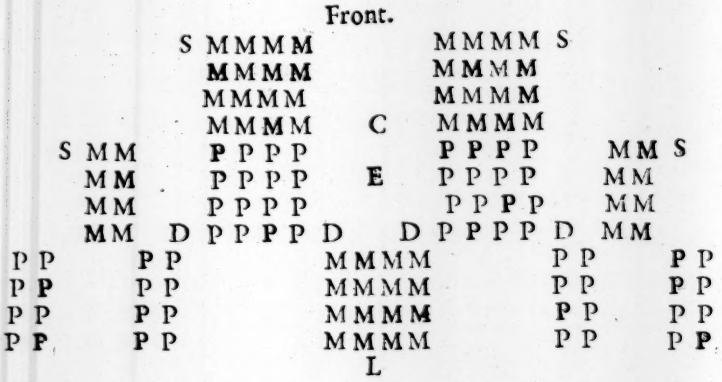
Extraduction, as in cap. 80.

Left-flank to martch, and the *Right-flank to follow on the Reer.* This brings all your *Musquettiers* into the *Front* and *Reer.*

The direction to make the following Figure

Having suffered your *Souldiers* to have a breathing time, come to the eleventh *Firing.* To make the *Figure*, first command, *front-half files* (as well Pikes as *Musquettiers*) *open* to the *right* and *left* to a convenient *distance*, (to receive another *division.*) Secondly, command *half-files* of Pikes move to the *right and left*, until you stand clear of the Pikes before you. Thirdly, Command the *four inner-most files* (of the *Reer-division*) of *Musquets move forwards* to the *Reer* of the *Intervall* between the Pikes. Fourthly, Command the two last *divisions* of Pikes, open to the *right* and *left*, and make *Intervals* for the *two divisions* of *shot* in the *Reer* to pass through: that so they may range *even-a breast* with the *Front* of *Pikes.* These *Commands* and *Directions* duly executed, produceth this following *Figure.*

Front.



On this *Figure* we will *give fire* to the *Front*; the two first *divisions* may begin the *Firing*, and the first time fall in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the second time of their *firing-over*, they may place themselves in the *Reer of the Pikes*: the *Pikes may charge*, and *the Reer-division of Musquettiers may move forwards*; being *advanced* into convenient ground, they may *present and give fire* together with the *two divisions of Shot*, *on the wings.* Let them *fire* and *gain ground*, let them *fire* and *maintain ground*, let them *fire* and *lose ground*, falling back into the *Reer*, behind the *Intervals* of their *Pikes*, All the *Pikes* having *charged*, may *advance.* By this time sable night begins to appear, and therefore we will come to * *Reducement.* First, Command all the *Musquettiers to close their divisions.* Secondly, Cause the *two reer-divisions of Pikes to close to the right and left inward*, and the *two Front-divisions of* Pikes *close to the right and left outward*, *just before the other divisions of* Pikes. Thirdly, Command the *Musquettiers to move forwards*, and *even their Front of* Pikes. All this being done, your *Musquettiers* are in the *midst*, and the Pikes on their *Flanks.* Now if you please to open the *Musquettiers* to the Front and *Reer*, it will make a *hollow square* for the *Ensign* to display his *Colours.* If you will come presently to *Reducement*, Command your *Musquettiers* and Pikes to *interchange ground*, and all will be perfectly *reduced* as at first. Therefore now let us *lodge our colours* with our accustomed *Bene vale*, and conclude our *fifth dayes exercise*; suffering our *Souldiers* to depart to their several habitations. There leaving them to *cleanse their Arms*, and to *refresh their Bodies*, until the morrows *clamouring Drum* invite again into the Field.

* *The reducements.*

The Musquettiers may soon close their divisions by reason they stand near all sege her being so left in this Figure.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXIX.

The sixth dayes Exercise.

HAving the sixth time brought your *Souldiers* into the *field*, according to the accusto, med manner: let each *file-leaders* exercise his *file*, in the *Postures* of such *Armes* as they carry. Which being performed, and the *files* againe re-joyned into one *Body*, the *Ensigne* being at the head of the *Pikes*, and the rest of the *Officers* in their severall places. The *Captaine* having commanded *silence*, *attention*, and *obedience*, (three especiall properties, most necessarily requisite to every *Common Souldier*) he proceeds to the several *distances*; instructing them in the *uses* of each of them. Next after the *distances*, he teaches them the *Facings*, the *Doublings*, the *Counter-martches*, and the *Wheelings*, with severall observations upon each of the *motions*. After which (having so *commanded*) the *Drummes beat*, and the *Musquettiers make ready* for *Skirmish*. Then (if you please) you may cause three or four of the *first firings* to be performed by *light skirmishing* before the *front*, and that which *loose ranks* or *files*, or both: either some of those, (or such like) as I have formerly spoken of in the preceding *Exercises*. After which, for your *next firing*; cause your *half files* to open to the *right* and *left* by *equall divisions*, untill the *Reere-divisions* of *Pikes*, stand right after the *Musquettiers* of the *front-division*. Now the *Musquettiers* standing in *four divisions*, let them all *present* and *give* fire to the *Front*: *wheeling* all off to the *right*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of like *Armes*, each *Rank* still making good the *leaders ground*. Having *given fire*, *once*, *or twice* over on this *figure*: For the second *firing*, cause the *Front-division* to *give fire* to the *front*; & the two *Reer-divisions* to each *flank* in a *martch*. The *front-division* which fires in *rank*, *wheele all off* to the *right*; *placing* themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*; the other *Divisions* which fire in *flank*, leading up their *files* between their own *Divisions* of *Musquettiers* and the *Pikes*.

The first firing by four divisions to the Front.

The second firing is to the front & both flankes marching.

Having *given fire once or oftner over*, according to discretion this way, let the third *firing* be performed upon a *stand*. For the which, cause your *Reer-divisions* to *face* to the *right* & *left ont-ward*: the *Front-division*, still to continue the same *aspect*.

The third firing is to be from & both flanks standing.

Then, Let the *Musquettiers give fire*, those of the *right-flank*, *wheeling-off* to the *right*: and the contrary *flanke*, to the contrary hand; the *Musquettiers* of the *Front-division*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquets*, The *Musqnettiers* of the *Reer-divisions*, *placing* themselves in the *Reere* (of the *Reer-divisions*) of *Pikes*. When they have *fired* all over, let the *Pikes charge*, to *front* and both *flanks*.

Having advanced your *Pikes* againe, and *faced* your *Body* to the *Front-proper*, each *Armes* still standing in three *divisions*. Then let the fourth *firing* be to the *Reere* and both *flanks* upon a *martch*. And to that end, open your *Front-divisions* of *Musquettiers* to the *right* and *left*, untill they are cleare of the *Reer-divisions* of *Pikes*: that so they be not troublesome unto them in their *martch*. Then let your *Pikes shoulder*; and the *Musquettiers give fire*: the *Front-divisions* of *Musquettiers*, *firing* in *flanke*, and *leading up* on the inside of their owne *divisions*. The *Musquettiers* of the *Reer-divisions* giving *fire* in the *Reere*, in *rank wheeling-off* by *division*, and placing themselves in the *Front* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*. Having *fired once over*, and the *Pikes charged*, let your fifth *firing* be to the *Reer*, and both *flanks* upon a stand. In the which, let the *half-files* (both of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes*) *face to the reer*; the *front-division* to the *right* and *left*, and so *give fire* on each part: those that *fire* to the *flanks wheeling off*, and placing themselves in the *reer* of their *divisions* of *Pikes*, and the *Musquets* of the *Reer-divisions*, *wheeling-off* to the *right* and *left*, and placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions*

The four.h firing is to the reer & both flanks marching.

The fifth firing is to the reer and both flanks standing.

of *Musquettiers*; each *Rank* moving forwards into their *leaders ground*. Having *fired over*, let the *Pikes charge*. The *Pikes* being again *advanced*, *face* the whole *Body* to the *proper-front*; and then all the *Musquettiers* will be in the *midst*, and the *Pike-men* on the *Flanks*.

The sixth is a firing tripartites as in Cap. 64.

For the *sixth Firing*, Cause your *half-ranks* of the *left*, *double* your *right-flank* by *division*. For further *directions*, look back to the *Tripartite Firing*: which you shall find *Chap.* 94. Having *fired-over* that way, *charged*, and *re-advanced* your *Pikes*, *face* the whole *Body* to their *former Front*.

The seventh is a firing to both flanks in three divisions.

For your *seventh Firing*, Cause the *Front* and *Reer-divisions* of *Musquettiers* and *Pikes* to *face* to the *right*; the rest of the *Body* (both *Musquets* and *Pikes*) to the *left*. Let the *Musquettiers give fire*, and *wheele* all *off*, either to the *right* or *left*, and place themselves in the *Reere* of their following *divisions* of *Pikes*; each *Rank* still moving-up into their *leaders ground*. When there rest but *two Ranks* of each *division* to *fire*, let the *Pikes port*. Having all *fired* and *wheeled-away*, let the *Pikes charge*. Then *face* the whole *Body* to their *first-front*; and command the *first* and *last four Ranks* to *face* to the *left*, and to *march*, untill they are clear of the *standing part* of the *Body*. Then, Cause the *Front-half files* to *face* to the *left*, the *Reer-half-files* to the *right*, and so to *close their divisions*; and after that to *face* towards their *Leaders*.

This perfectly reduceth the whole body; every man to his place.

The eighth firing is the solid square girdld with shot.

For the *eight Firing*, make the *solid Square girdled with Musquettiers*. For the which, draw half the *files* of the *right-flank* of *Musquettiers* crosse the *Front*, and halfe the *files* of *Musquettiers* from the *left-flank* crosse the *Reere*. Then *face* the whole *Body* (both *Musquets* and *Pikes*) to the *Front*, *Reere*, and *Flanks*. This done, let the *Musquettiers give fire*, and *wheel-off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *Reer* of their own *divisions* of *Musquettiers*.

The ninth firing is to the front & reer upon Captaine Wallers double figure.

All the time of this *Firing*, the *Pike-men* being in the *middle* of the *Musquettiers*, have good opportunity (if the *Enemy* be neare) to *gall* them with their thick showers of *feathered shot*. The *Musquettiers*, in the mean time, having *fired once*, *twice*, or *oftner over*, on this *Figure*, draw your *files* of *Musquettiere* back again into their places.

The tenth firing to both flanks standing. The bringers-up being now the file-leaders.

Then having *faced* the whole *Body* to the *proper-front*, let your *ninth Firing* be (Captain *Wallers double firing*) *to the Front and Reer*, after this manner:

First, *Wheele Front* and *Reere* into the *right-flank*: then *face* them all the same way they were before: which done, cause the *half-files* to *face* to the *Reere*, and command the *Musquettiers* which are in the *Reere* of each *division* of *Pikes*, to *double* their *Front* of *Pikes* by *division*. Then, let them *face-about* and *close* their *divisions*: and so having *refaced* them as they were, let them *give* fire, *wheel-off*, and *charge*, according to directions on Captain *Wallers Figure*.

The eleventh firing is on the diamond figure. As in c. 78

For the *tenth firing*, let them *face* to the *right* and *left*, and *give* fire to both *Flanks* upon a *stand*; *wheeling-off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*.

When the *Pikes* have *charged*, and are again *advanced*, let the *Captain* passe to the *Front-accidentall* of the *left-flank*, and face the rest of the *Body* to him; and in the next place, *wheele* their *Flanks* into the *Front*, and so all the *Musquettiers* will be in the *Front*: and by *facing* the whole *Body* to the *left*, all the *Musquettiers* will be on the *right flank*.

The Body again reduced.

Let the *eleventh Figure* be the *Diamond Battell*. Having *given fire* two or three severall wayes, according to the *directions* upon that *Figure*, *charged Pikes*, and *reduced* them again into the *Square*, *face* the *Body about* to the *right*; and *passe* the *Musquettiers* which belong to the *right-flank* between the *Ranks* of *Pikes* into their places. Then the *Musquettiers* of the *left-flank* being *closed* to their *Pikes*, the *Body* will stand at their *first Order*.

For

For the *twelfth firing* make the *hollow square girdled with shot*: Let them *give fire* upon that *Figure* (both *without* and *within*) according to the *directions* for that *Firing*. Let the *Pikes charge*; and *reduce* them in the same manner as I have discoursed upon that *Figure*.

The 12 firing is the hollow square girdled with shot as in Chap. 105.

For the *thirteenth firing*, make the *Plesium*; as you shall find *directions* in the 106 *Chapter*.

The 13. firing as is in Cap. 100.

Having made it, *given fire* upon it, and *reduced* it as at first, Let the *fourteenth* and *last firing* for this *Exercise* be the *hollow Hearse and Cross*. Turn back to *Chap.* 104. where you may find ample instructions for the *making*, *firing*, and *reducing* of it. And lastly, that you may conclude with *triumph*, cause your *Ensign* to be displayed in the *middle* of the *hollow Cross*: and then having *fired*, *charged Pikes*, and *reduced* your *men*, according to the directions on that *Figure*, your *men* will be as at first. And therefore, seeing that by this time night is come, and our *powder* gone, we will here give conclusion to our *sixth dayes Exercise*.

The 4. firing as in Cap. 104.

Wherefore, that you may observe some form in the *lodging* of our *Colours*, cause your *Musquettiers* to *march* in the *Front* of your *Pikes*. Then, as they *march*, let them *invert* to the *right* and *left*: which is, when the *Ranks file* to the *right* and *left* by *division*. Then, cause all your *Musquettiers* to *face in opposition*, to *cock* their *matches*, *guard* their *pans*, and *rest* their *Musquets*. In the mean time, let the *Pikes advance*, and *close* their *Ranks* and *Files* to their *Order*. Which being done, the *Captain*, *Lieutenant*, *Ensigne*, and *Drumms beating a troop* at the *head* of the *Pikes*, *passe through* this *guard* into the appointed place for the *allodgment* of the *Ensigne*. Then, the *Serjeants* cause the *Musquettiers* to *face* all *about* to the *right*, and *present*; and upon the first *beat* of the *Drum* they all *give fire* in one *volley*. And now having performed our *sixth dayes exercise*, the *Drum beats a Call*, and makes *proclamation*, that *every man depart unto his several home until his next summons into the Field*.

A direction to lodge the Colours

The Ranks of Musquettiers are to file to the right and left outwards.

CHAP. CXX.

Of the Brigade: the number and way of drawing up a Squadron. Next, the composing three Squadrons into one Brigade. And lastly, of embattelling three Brigades, after the manner of the King of Sweden.

FOr as much as that *Military mirrour* of our times, *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, was found not only able to wage a *Warr* with the *Imperial Austrian bird*; but that he *soared* even to admiration, *pluming* and *tearing* the best *feathers* from his *back* and *wings*, none of his *Commanders* nor *Generalissimo's* being able to withstand the *torrent* of his *victories*: It cannot be denied, but that (next under *God*) his *Discipline* and new manner of *Imbattelling* was a great (if not the greatest) means for the atchievement of the height of his designs. And therefore, as in all the former part of my Book I have explicated and set forth the *Postures*, *Motions*, *Firings*, and *Figures* of *Battel*; to be practised by *Files*, *Corporalships*, *Divisions*, *Companies*, *Squadrons*, and some for larger *Bodies*: So have I delivered and demonstrated them all by the number of an hundred twenty eight men. Whereby all such as have a fancy or delight in the exercise of the *Infantry* may be so enabled to the work, that they need not continually pore upon two or three *Figurings*, thereby breeding *satiety*; but with delectation to themselves, and profit to their *Souldiers*, may exercise their *bodies* with more *variety*. Unto which purpose, I have also added for the close of this my Book, the number, and manner of *Imbattelling* into that *form* of the *Swedish Brigade*, which hath proved so fatal a *Figure* to the House of *Austria*.

Philips new discipline raised the Macedonian glory,

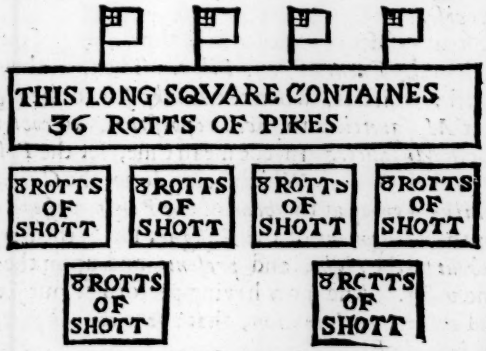
All the Figures in my Book are shewn with the number of 128 men.

The knowledge whereof, as I aſſume not particularly to be mine owne, but a collection: So the *Figure* ſhall be drawn-up according to its own *Termes of Art*, and *Words of Direction*. And therefore, for the better ſatisfaction of the deſirous, wee will begin with a *file*, and ſo proceed untill we have formed a perfect *Brigade*. Firſt, you are to note that *ſix men* make a * *Rot*: *Three Rots* of *Pikes* makes a *Corporalſhip*; but the *Muſquettiers* have *foure Files* to a *Corporalſhip*: *The Corporalſhips* of each *Armes* makes a compleat *Company*, that is to ſay, *nine Rots of Pikes*, and *twelve Rots* of *Muſquettiers*, twenty one *Rots* together; which amounts to the number of one hundred twenty ſix men, beſides all *Officers*, *Muſter-yonngs*, and *Paſvolants*: *foure* of theſe *Companies* make a *Squadron*; and *three* ſuch *Squadrons* formes a perfect *Brigade*. The *Squadrons* are ſometimes drawn-up as this following *Figure*.

* File.

One of theſe ſquadrons containes 504. men whereof 408. are ſometimes drawn up as in this Figure. Sometimes they are arranged all a breſt four corporalſhips being alwayes left in the reer as a reſerve. Of this more in the Intelligencer.

A Squadron or third part of a Swediſh Brigade.



By the ſtanding of this *Squadron*, or third part of a *Brigade*, you may eaſily perceive how apt and ready they are to be *Imbattelled* into any *form*, either *offenſive* or *defenſive*. But becauſe I in this Chapter intend no other variety, but only to ſhew the drawing-up of the *Brigade* it ſelf, therefore proceed we to the demonſtration thereof, as it is ſet forth and expreſſed in words, by Collonel *Robert Monro*, in his Book, entituled, *Monro his Expeditions and Obſervations*. His *directions*, in effect, are as followeth.

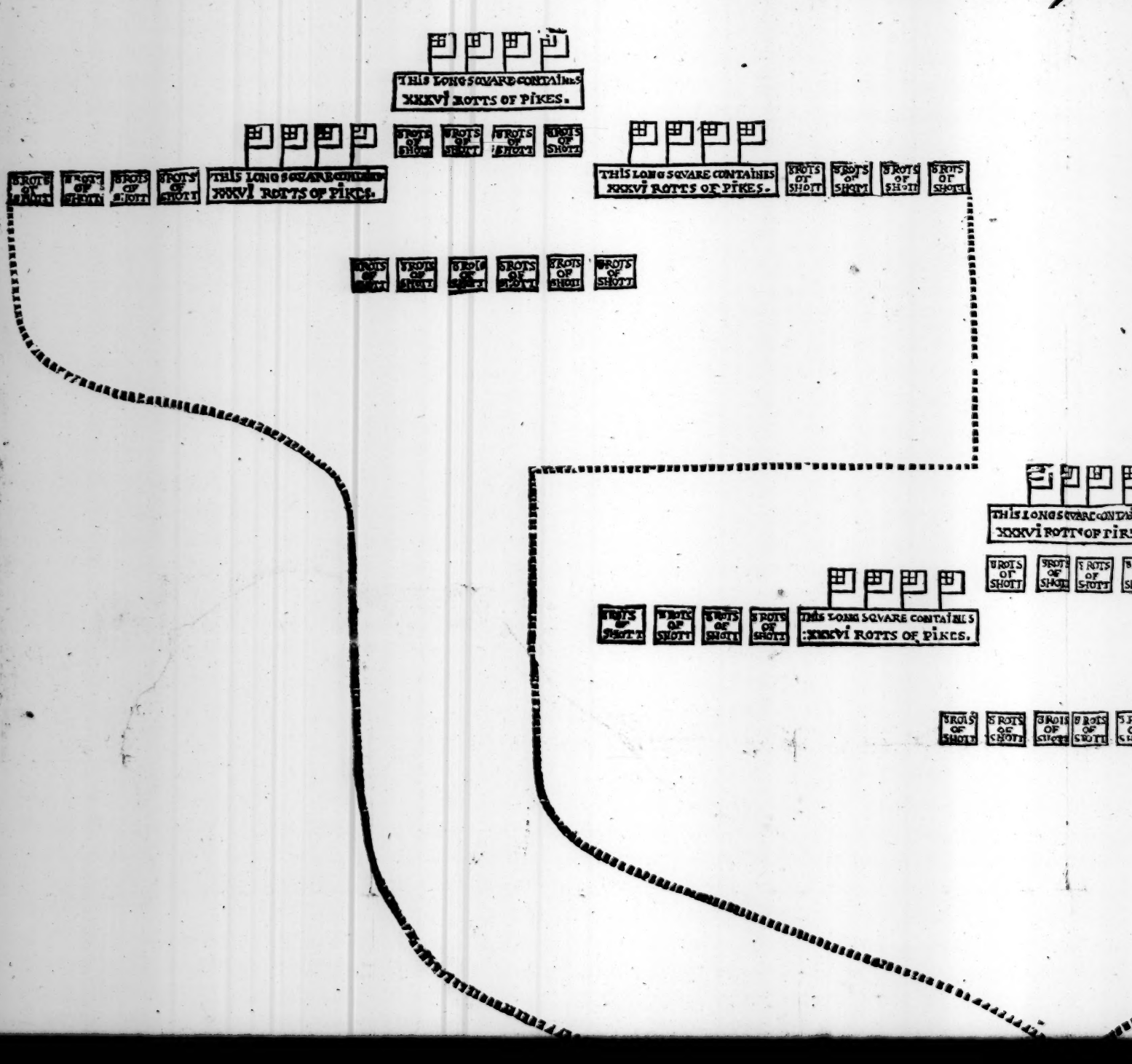
"Twelve compleat *Companies* make up three *Squadrons*: every *Squadron* of *Pikes* and
"*Muſquets* being drawn-up ſeverall a-part; the *Pikes* and *Colours* on the *right-hand*, the
"*Muſquettiers* on the *left*. Three *Squadrons* thus drawn-up, compleats a *Brigade* of *Foot*,
"to be divided as followeth: (*viz.*) Eight *Corporalſhips* of *Muſquettiers*, being thirty
"two *Rots*, divided into foure *Plottons*, every *Plotton* being eight in *Front*, led-off by a
"*Captaine*, and every *Diviſion* after him led-up by a ſufficient *Officer*; till coming to a
"*hault* all are drawn in *even-Front*. Next after theſe, the thirty ſix *Rots* of *Pikes* are to
"follow (being twelve *Corporalſhips*) with their *Colours*; a *Captaine* leading-off the
"firſt five *Rots*, before the foure *Colours* ſhould ſtirre. Then the *Enſignes* ſhould lead-off
"the next *Diviſion*, their *Farers* with their *Colours* following them, till they are drawn-
"up even in *Front* with the thirty two *Rots* of *Muſquettiers*. This makes the *right-*
"*wing* of the *Brigade*. Secondly, The *Battell* of *Pikes* moveth forwards in *Diviſions*,
"doing in all reſpects as the former, untill they *range-even* in *Front* with the *Pikes* of the
"*right-wing*. Then the other thirty two *Rots* of *Muſquettiers* belonging to the *middle-*
"*Squadron*, (who are appointed to make the *Battell* of the *Brigade*) are to be led-up as
"the

224. Men a compleat Company.

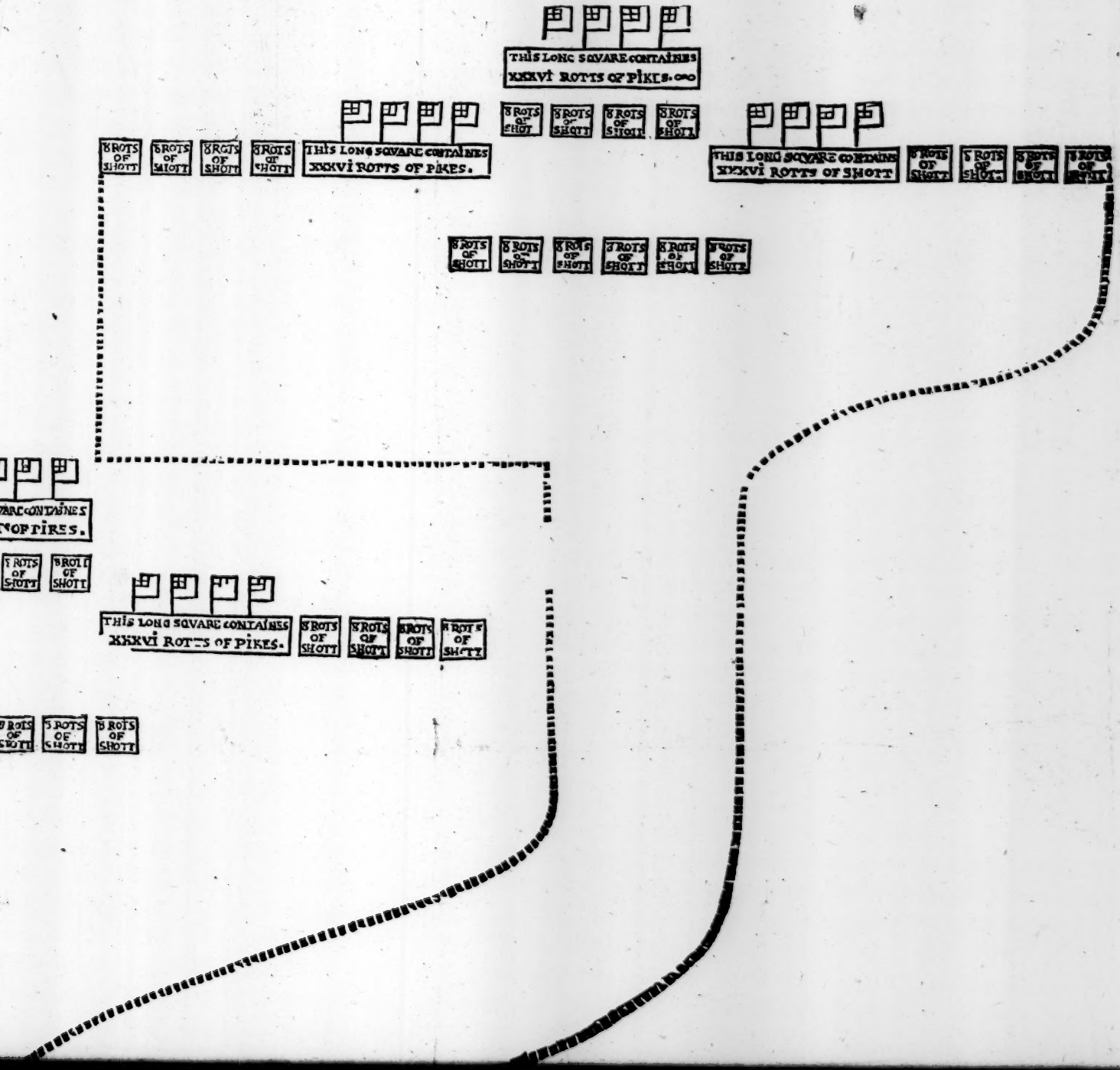
Plottons, are ſmal diviſions.

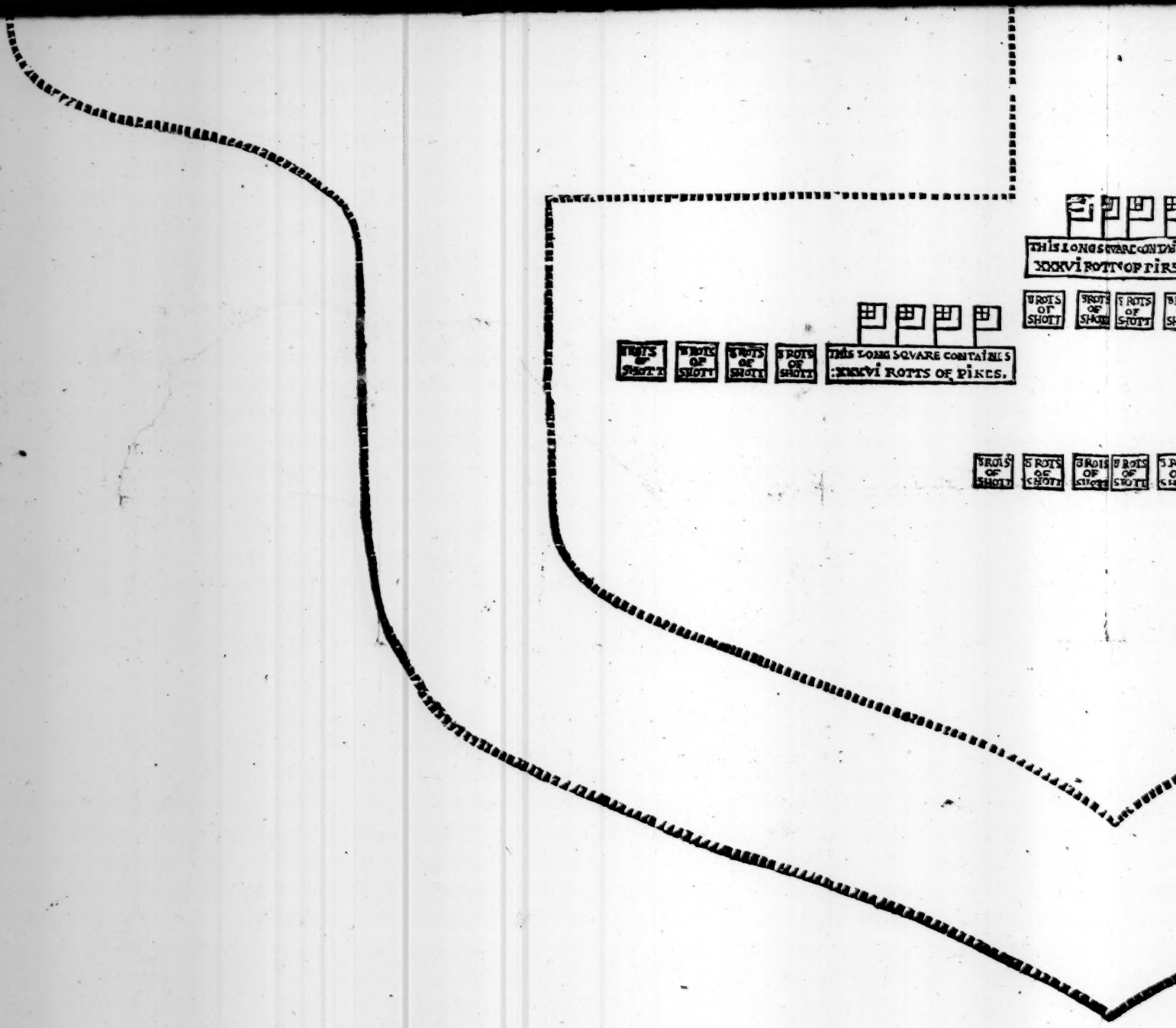
Even with the front but on the left flank.

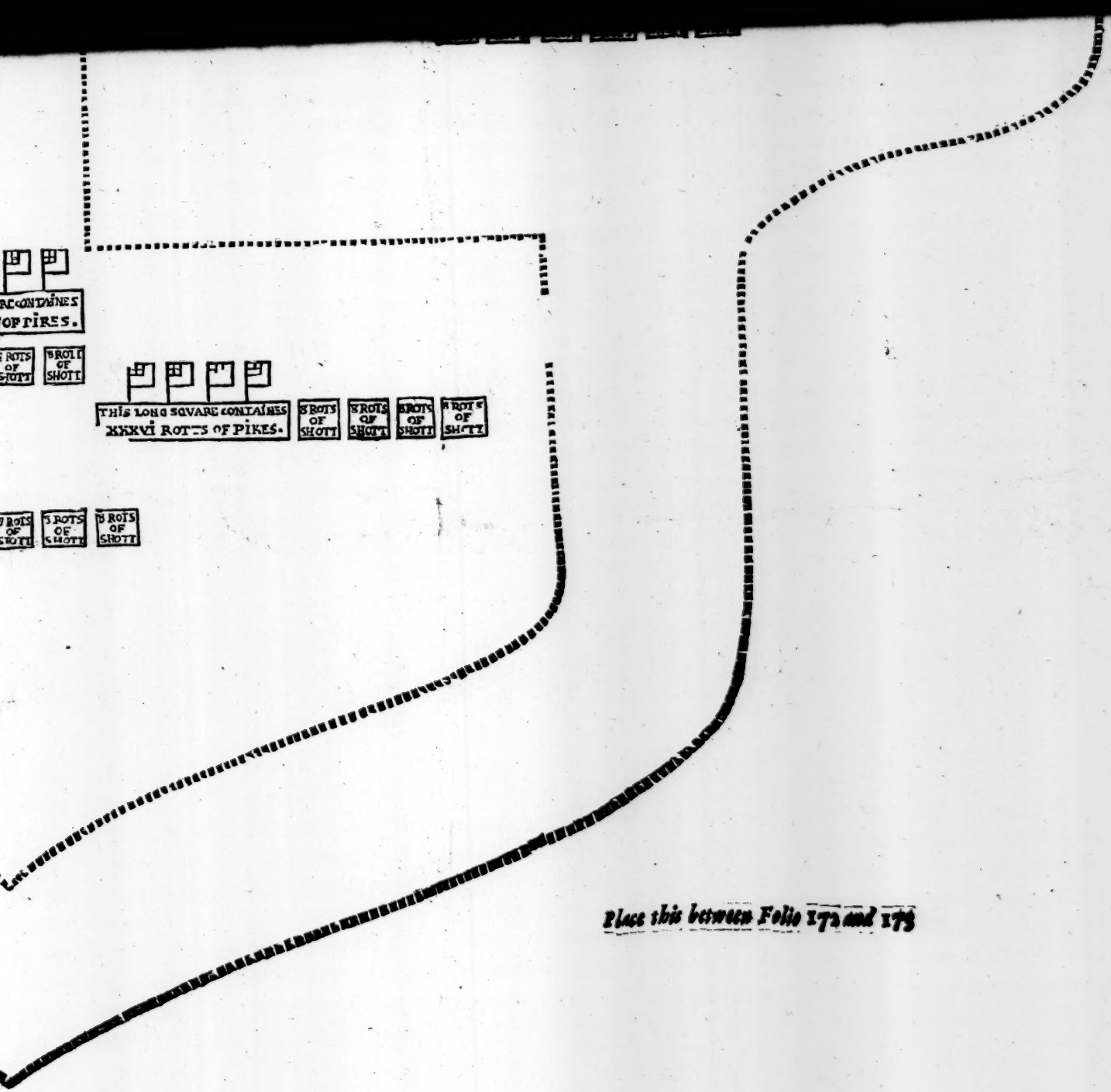
¶ THREE SWEDISH
drawne vp &



...ISH BRIGADES
...& imbattelled

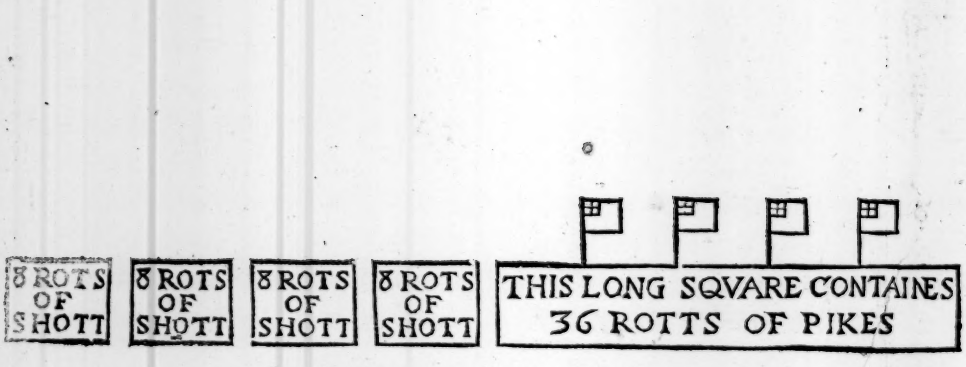



THIS LONGE SQVARE CONTAINES
XXXVI ROTTS OF PIKES.
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
THIS LONGE SQVARE CONTAINES
XXXVI ROTTS OF PIKES.
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT
5 ROTS OF SHOTT



Place this between Folio 172 and 173

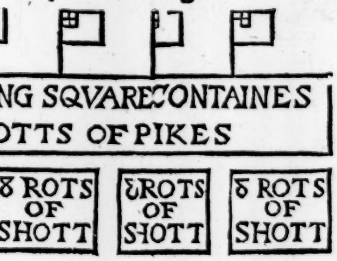
The Sw

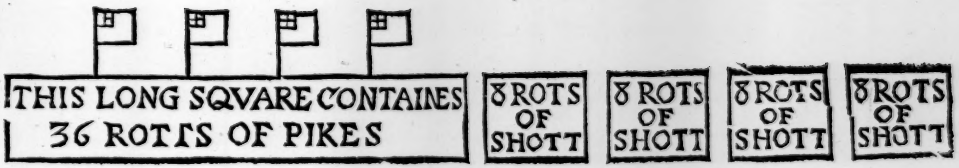


Place this between *Follio* 172 and 173.



The Swediſh Brigade.









"the firſt Musquettiers in all points: but to be drawn up at a reaſonable diſtance, behind "the Pikes of their own Squadron. Thirdly, The laſt Squadron of *Pikes* martcheth up, "in all reſpects obſerving the former order: moving forwards, untill they have attained "to range even in Front with the other Pikes. After them martcheth forwards the thirty "two Rots of Muſquettiers (in four diviſions) obſerving the former directions, untill "they are equall in Front with the whole Pikes, which maketh up the left wing.

"This being done, the Battell (or middle Squadron (of Pikes and Muskets are to advance "forwards in one body, till they are cleare of the *Pikes* and *Muſquettiers* of the wings. "Laſtly, the ſurplus of the three Squadrons, being forty eight Rots of *Muſquettiers*, are "drawn up behinde the Brigade; where they are to attend the Commands of their Offi- "cers, either to guard the Baggage, or Canon, to be Convoyes to bring Ammunition or Vi- "ctuals to the reſt; or to continue a reſerve to wait upon all occaſions. Obſerve the Fi- "gure of the Brigade, in this place.

Even with the left flank.

The ſurplus of each ſquadron is 16. Rots, which together makes 48. Rots.

A compleat *Brigade* (ſaith Collonel *Monro*) conſiſts of twelve companies, each *Company* containing 126 men. The which is to be underſtood of full and compleat *Companies*. Otherwiſe, and moſt uſually of two Regiments, eight *Companies* making a *Regiment*, conſiſting of one thouſand and eight men. So that one Regiment and a half, of whole and full companies, would perfect a *Brigade*: or two Regiments of torne and broken Companies, the overplus being alwayes added to the *Reſerve*. Notwithſtanding it ſo happened, at the *Battell of Lutzen*, that *Mitzlaff*, *Gerſtorfs*, and *Roſſes*, 3. crazed Regiments, made up but one *Brigade*, being the outmoſt *Brigade* to the left of the ſecond *Range*. And towards night in the ſame forenamed *Battell*, going to *rally up* the two broken and ſhattered *Brigades* of *yellow* and *blew*, belonging to *Grave Neeles*, and Collonel *Winkle*, there were not men enough left unhurt and killed, wherewith to make one Squadron (or third of a *Brigade*) to make another charge. Let this ſuffice both for the number and order for the drawing up and making the *Swediſh Brigade*. If any be deſirous to know the place of the *Commanders* and Officers of the *Brigade*, there is a draught communicated by my Lord of *Reay*, and ſet forth in the *Swediſh Intelligencer*.

The Swedes have but 8. Companies in a Regiment.

Look the Swediſh Intelligences.

The diſcription of the Battell of Lutzen pa. 168. The Intelligencer.

I ſhould now ſhew you the manner how the *Muſquettiers* performe their firings on this *Figure*. The which by all *information* that hitherto I could gather, have been theſe two: namely by **advancing* or gaining ground; or by *Salves*, powring on ſhowers of Lead, by firing two or three Ranks together. I might here adde how uſefull a Weapon our halfe Pikes would prove in this *Figure*: eſpecially, if the adverſe party had any Horſe in the midſt, or between his *Regiments*, as it happened *Tilly* to have in his Battell of *Leipſich*. But I willingly forbeare, that ſo I might demonſtrate the ſtanding of three *Brigades* together in order of *Battell*, according to the uſuall & accuſtomed manner of *Imbattelling* by that *Invincible King of Sweden*, of never dying memory; who placed them as in this *Figure* may be ſeen. The Battell of the following *Brigade* being alwayes placed directly behind the *Intervall Diviſion*, *or ſpace of ground* between the two wings of the former *Brigades*.

**Introduction.*

A ſalve is when 2. 3 or more ranks power out all their ſhot together in one uſually dee with our half Pikes.

This pains, *Gentle Reader*, have I taken for thy good, the which if it find a kindly and courteous *Acceptance*, ſhall be to me a *guerdion*, or ſatisfaction ſufficient for my labour and patience. As for the *Envious*, *who (like the dog in the manger) will neither eat himſelf, nor willingly ſuffer them that would*, It muſt be imputed to their *Cinicall* diſpoſitions: who *ſquare* other mens *endeavours* according to the *crooked line* of their own *conceits*. Condemning things *commendable in others*; but neither ſaying nor doing any thing conſiderable themſelves. Another ſort there be, that would ſeem to carry the *Port of knowledge* about them, yet infected with ſo much *malignity*; that being requeſted of their *opinions*, they will anſwer with an *Italian ſhrug*, or ſome ſuch like *mimick geſture*: thereby inſinuating a kind of doubtfulneſs of things amiſs, when themſelves are not able to *render a reaſon* of their *diſtaſt*. I have been toucht with the venom'd teeth of a *third ſort*. Who have rendred themſelves ſo *irrational*, and *ſtupidly beſtial*; that their *tongues* ſerve them but as *inſtruments to wound and goar the Reputations of men, then themſelves much more deſerving*. But ſeeing that to *diſplay their follies*, were but to *ſoile the purity of my ſubject*: I will leave them to the amendment of their *errors*. Deſiring once more of the *Courteous* (and well-knowing *Readers*) that they will put a *fair* conſtruction on mine, and the Printers *overſights*: by which they will not only *demonſtrate* the *goodneſs* of their own *diſpoſitions*; but put a further *Obligation* upon him, that will ever be ready to ſerve them.

The Glory be to God.

FINIS.

BRITISH MUSEUM